

# ETSI TS 102 812 V1.2.1 (2003-06)

---

*Technical Specification*

## Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Multimedia Home Platform (MHP) Specification 1.1.1

---

European Broadcasting Union



Union Européenne de Radio-Télévision

EBU·UER  
**DVB**  
Digital Video  
Broadcasting



---

Reference

RTS/JTC-DVB-149

---

Keywords

broadcasting, data, digital, DVB, MPEG,  
terrestrial, TV, video

***ETSI***

650 Route des Lucioles  
F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - NAF 742 C  
Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la  
Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° 7803/88

---

***Important notice***

---

Individual copies of the present document can be downloaded from:

<http://www.etsi.org>

The present document may be made available in more than one electronic version or in print. In any case of existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions, the reference version is the Portable Document Format (PDF). In case of dispute, the reference shall be the printing on ETSI printers of the PDF version kept on a specific network drive within ETSI Secretariat.

Users of the present document should be aware that the document may be subject to revision or change of status.

Information on the current status of this and other ETSI documents is available at

<http://portal.etsi.org/tb/status/status.asp>

If you find errors in the present document, send your comment to:

[editor@etsi.org](mailto:editor@etsi.org)

---

***Copyright Notification***

---

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission.  
The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© European Telecommunications Standards Institute 2003.

© European Broadcasting Union 2003.

All rights reserved.

DECT™, PLUGTESTS™ and UMTS™ are Trade Marks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members.  
TIPHON™ and the TIPHON logo are Trade Marks currently being registered by ETSI for the benefit of its Members.  
3GPP™ is a Trade Mark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners.

# Contents

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Intellectual Property Rights .....                                 | 37 |
| Foreword .....   | 37 |
| 0 Introduction .....   | 37 |
| 0.1 Purpose .....  | 37 |
| 0.2 Application areas .....  | 38 |
| 0.3 Profiles .....   | 38 |
| 1 Scope .....  | 39 |
| 2 References .....   | 39 |
| 3 Definitions and abbreviations .....                              | 46 |
| 3.1 Definitions .....  | 46 |
| 3.2 Abbreviations .....  | 49 |
| 4 Conventions .....  | 51 |
| 5 Basic Architecture .....   | 52 |
| 5.1 Context .....  | 52 |
| 5.2 Architecture .....   | 53 |
| 5.2.1 Resources .....  | 53 |
| 5.2.2 System software .....  | 53 |
| 5.2.2.1 Application Manager .....                                  | 53 |
| 5.2.3 Application .....  | 53 |
| 5.3 Interfaces Between an MHP Application and the MHP System ..... | 55 |
| 5.4 Plug-ins .....   | 56 |
| 5.4.1 Security Model .....   | 57 |
| 6 Transport Protocols .....  | 58 |
| 6.1 Introduction .....   | 58 |
| 6.2 Broadcast Channel Protocols .....                              | 58 |
| 6.2.1 MPEG-2 Transport Stream .....                                | 59 |
| 6.2.2 MPEG-2 Sections .....  | 59 |
| 6.2.3 DSM-CC Private Data .....                                    | 59 |
| 6.2.4 DSM-CC Data Carousel .....                                   | 59 |
| 6.2.5 DSM-CC User-to-User Object Carousel .....                    | 59 |
| 6.2.5.1 DVB-J class files .....                                    | 59 |
| 6.2.5.2 DVB-HTML document files .....                              | 60 |
| 6.2.5.3 Loss of Carousel Behaviour .....                           | 60 |
| 6.2.6 DVB Multiprotocol Encapsulation .....                        | 60 |
| 6.2.7 Internet Protocol (IP) .....                                 | 60 |
| 6.2.8 User Datagram Protocol (UDP) .....                           | 60 |
| 6.2.9 DVB Service Information .....                                | 60 |
| 6.2.10 IP signalling .....   | 61 |
| 6.3 Interaction Channel Protocols .....                            | 61 |
| 6.3.1 Network Dependent Protocols .....                            | 61 |
| 6.3.2 Internet Protocol (IP) .....                                 | 61 |
| 6.3.3 Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) .....                    | 61 |
| 6.3.4 UNO-RPC .....  | 61 |
| 6.3.5 UNO-CDR .....  | 62 |
| 6.3.6 DCM-CC User to User .....                                    | 62 |
| 6.3.7 Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) .....                     | 62 |
| 6.3.7.1 HTTP 1.1 .....   | 62 |
| 6.3.7.2 MHP profile of HTTP 1.0 .....                              | 62 |
| 6.3.7.2.1 HTTP 1.0 persistent connections .....                    | 62 |
| 6.3.7.2.2 The Keep-Alive Header .....                              | 62 |
| 6.3.7.2.3 MHP and proxies .....                                    | 62 |
| 6.3.7.2.4 Version compatibility .....                              | 63 |

|           |  |    |
|-----------|--|----|
| 6.3.7.3   | HTTPS .....  | 63 |
| 6.3.8     | Service Specific .....   | 63 |
| 6.3.9     | User Datagram Protocol (UDP) .....   | 63 |
| 6.3.10    | DNS .....  | 63 |
| 6.4       | Transport protocols for application loading over the interaction channel ..... | 64 |
| 6.4.1     | File system implemented only via the interaction channel .....                 | 64 |
| 6.4.1.1   | File system logical structure .....  | 64 |
| 6.4.1.2   | File transfer .....  | 65 |
| 6.4.1.3   | Class encoding .....   | 65 |
| 6.4.1.4   | Directory listing in this file system .....                                    | 65 |
| 6.4.2     | Hybrid between broadcast stream and interaction channel .....                  | 66 |
| 6.4.2.1   | File transfer .....  | 66 |
| 6.4.2.1.1 | Broadcast file delivery .....  | 66 |
| 6.4.2.1.2 | Interaction channel delivery .....   | 66 |
| 6.4.2.1.3 | HTTPProfileBody .....  | 66 |
| 6.4.2.2   | Class encoding .....   | 67 |
| 7         | Content formats .....  | 68 |
| 7.1       | Static formats .....   | 68 |
| 7.1.1     | Bitmap image formats .....   | 68 |
| 7.1.1.1   | Image encoding restrictions .....  | 68 |
| 7.1.1.2   | JPEG .....   | 68 |
| 7.1.1.3   | PNG .....  | 68 |
| 7.1.1.4   | GIF .....  | 68 |
| 7.1.2     | MPEG-2 I-Frames .....  | 68 |
| 7.1.3     | MPEG-2 Video "drips" .....   | 68 |
| 7.1.4     | Monomedia format for audio clips .....   | 70 |
| 7.1.5     | Monomedia format for text .....  | 70 |
| 7.1.5.1   | Built-in character set .....   | 70 |
| 7.2       | Broadcast streaming formats .....  | 70 |
| 7.2.1     | Audio .....  | 70 |
| 7.2.2     | Video .....  | 70 |
| 7.2.3     | Subtitles .....  | 70 |
| 7.2.3.1   | DVB Subtitles .....  | 70 |
| 7.2.3.2   | Teletext .....   | 71 |
| 7.3       | Resident fonts .....   | 71 |
| 7.4       | Downloadable Fonts .....   | 71 |
| 7.5       | Colour Representation .....  | 72 |
| 7.5.1     | Background (informative) .....   | 72 |
| 7.5.2     | Specification .....  | 73 |
| 7.5.2.1   | The sRGB Reference Viewing Environment .....                                   | 73 |
| 7.5.2.2   | Colourimetric Definitions and Encodings .....                                  | 73 |
| 7.6       | MIME Types .....   | 75 |
| 7.6.1     | Rationale .....  | 75 |
| 8         | DVB-HTML .....   | 76 |
| 8.1       | Introduction .....   | 76 |
| 8.1.1     | Application Area .....   | 76 |
| 8.1.2     | Profiles .....   | 77 |
| 8.2       | Architecture .....   | 77 |
| 8.2.1     | Context .....  | 77 |
| 8.2.2     | Integration Aspects .....  | 77 |
| 8.2.2.1   | Accessing DVB-J from ECMAScript .....  | 77 |
| 8.2.2.2   | Implementation of user agents via plug-ins .....                               | 77 |
| 8.3       | Application Format .....   | 78 |
| 8.3.1     | Basic Considerations .....   | 78 |
| 8.3.2     | Approach to Subsetting .....   | 78 |
| 8.4       | XML .....  | 79 |
| 8.5       | DVB Mark-up Language (DVB-HTML) .....  | 79 |
| 8.5.1     | Conformance considerations .....   | 79 |

|            |   |    |
|------------|---|----|
| 8.5.1.1    | Document conformance . . . . .                          | 79 |
| 8.5.1.1.1  | General rules . . . . .                                 | 79 |
| 8.5.1.1.2  | Invalid but conformant documents . . . . .              | 80 |
| 8.5.1.2    | DVB-HTML user agent conformance . . . . .               | 80 |
| 8.5.1.2.1  | Error handling . . . . .                                | 82 |
| 8.5.1.2.2  | Handling of invalid but conformant documents . . . . .  | 82 |
| 8.5.2      | Set of modules required by this specification . . . . . | 82 |
| 8.5.3      | Semantics for modules . . . . .                         | 83 |
| 8.5.3.1    | XHTML modules . . . . .                                 | 83 |
| 8.5.3.1.1  | Structure . . . . .                                     | 83 |
| 8.5.3.1.2  | Text . . . . .  | 83 |
| 8.5.3.1.3  | Hypertext . . . . .                                     | 83 |
| 8.5.3.1.4  | Presentation . . . . .                                  | 83 |
| 8.5.3.1.5  | Forms . . . . .   | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.6  | Client-side Image Map . . . . .                         | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.7  | Image . . . . .   | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.8  | Object . . . . .  | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.9  | Frames . . . . .  | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.10 | Target . . . . .  | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.11 | Iframes . . . . .                                       | 84 |
| 8.5.3.1.12 | Metainformation . . . . .                               | 85 |
| 8.5.3.1.13 | Scripting . . . . .                                     | 85 |
| 8.5.3.1.14 | Link . . . . .  | 85 |
| 8.5.3.1.15 | Base . . . . .  | 85 |
| 8.5.3.2    | XHTML attributes . . . . .                              | 85 |
| 8.5.3.2.1  | Longdesc, alt and cite attributes . . . . .             | 85 |
| 8.5.3.2.2  | Accesskey attribute . . . . .                           | 85 |
| 8.5.3.3    | DVB-HTML modules . . . . .                              | 86 |
| 8.5.3.3.1  | DVB Intrinsic events . . . . .                          | 86 |
| 8.6        | Media Types . . . . .                                   | 88 |
| 8.6.1      | Uses of MIME media types . . . . .                      | 88 |
| 8.6.2      | MIME media type use restrictions . . . . .              | 89 |
| 8.6.3      | Semantics of media type . . . . .                       | 91 |
| 8.6.4      | Frame content . . . . .                                 | 91 |
| 8.6.5      | Application content . . . . .                           | 91 |
| 8.6.5.1    | When referenced via an AIT locator . . . . .            | 91 |
| 8.6.5.2    | When not referenced via an AIT locator . . . . .        | 92 |
| 8.6.6      | Relative linking . . . . .                              | 92 |
| 8.6.7      | MPEG Audio . . . . .                                    | 92 |
| 8.6.7.1    | Resources of indefinite duration . . . . .              | 92 |
| 8.6.7.1.1  | Relation to document events . . . . .                   | 92 |
| 8.6.7.2    | Resources of definite duration . . . . .                | 93 |
| 8.6.7.2.1  | Relation to document events . . . . .                   | 93 |
| 8.6.8      | MPEG Video . . . . .                                    | 93 |
| 8.6.8.1    | Video Resources of indefinite duration . . . . .        | 93 |
| 8.6.8.1.1  | Relation to document events . . . . .                   | 94 |
| 8.6.8.2    | Resources of definite duration . . . . .                | 94 |
| 8.6.9      | DVB Services . . . . .                                  | 94 |
| 8.6.10     | Graphics content . . . . .                              | 94 |
| 8.6.11     | Script content . . . . .                                | 94 |
| 8.6.12     | Style sheet content . . . . .                           | 94 |
| 8.6.13     | HTTP(S) URLs . . . . .                                  | 95 |
| 8.6.14     | CSS Properties . . . . .                                | 95 |
| 8.6.14.1   | Sources of MIME media type use points . . . . .         | 95 |
| 8.6.14.2   | MIME media type use restrictions . . . . .              | 95 |
| 8.6.15     | Generated Content . . . . .                             | 96 |
| 8.6.16     | Graphics styling . . . . .                              | 96 |
| 8.6.17     | Video Styling . . . . .                                 | 96 |
| 8.6.18     | DVB Service styling . . . . .                           | 96 |

|           |   |     |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 8.7       | Synchronization . . . . .                                   | 97  |
| 8.7.1     | Triggers Overview . . . . .                                 | 97  |
| 8.7.1.1   | Transport of triggers . . . . .                             | 97  |
| 8.7.1.2   | Application registration and reception. . . . .             | 97  |
| 8.7.1.3   | Binding to DSM-CC Stream events. . . . .                    | 97  |
| 8.7.2     | Trigger Events . . . . .                                    | 98  |
| 8.7.2.1   | Converting stream events into DOM events . . . . .          | 98  |
| 8.7.2.2   | Event Factory File definition . . . . .                     | 99  |
| 8.7.2.2.1 | Syntax . . . . .  | 99  |
| 8.7.2.2.2 | Element semantics . . . . .                                 | 100 |
| 8.7.2.2.3 | Attributes semantics . . . . .                              | 100 |
| 8.7.2.3   | Default Event Factory Element . . . . .                     | 102 |
| 8.7.2.4   | Default Event Factory File. . . . .                         | 102 |
| 8.7.2.5   | Worked example . . . . .                                    | 102 |
| 8.7.2.6   | System events . . . . .                                     | 103 |
| 8.7.2.6.1 | dvb.start event . . . . .                                   | 103 |
| 8.7.2.6.2 | dvb.page event . . . . .                                    | 104 |
| 8.7.3     | Binding the event factory file to the application . . . . . | 104 |
| 8.7.3.1   | Syntax of event linkage file . . . . .                      | 105 |
| 8.7.3.2   | Semantics of event linkage file . . . . .                   | 105 |
| 8.7.3.3   | Example . . . . .   | 106 |
| 8.7.3.4   | Name and location of linkage file . . . . .                 | 106 |
| 8.7.4     | Default Trigger Mechanism. . . . .                          | 106 |
| 8.8       | CSS . . . . .   | 108 |
| 8.8.1     | Summary of CSS profiling for MHP. . . . .                   | 108 |
| 8.8.2     | MHP profile of CSS data types . . . . .                     | 108 |
| 8.8.3     | MHP profile of CSS @ rules . . . . .                        | 108 |
| 8.8.4     | MHP profile of CSS media types . . . . .                    | 109 |
| 8.8.4.1   | "screen" media type . . . . .                               | 109 |
| 8.8.4.2   | 'dvb-tv' media type . . . . .                               | 109 |
| 8.8.4.2.1 | Additional Properties of "dvb-tv" media type . . . . .      | 109 |
| 8.8.4.2.2 | Policy rules . . . . .                                      | 110 |
| 8.8.4.3   | Clarifications on support of paged properties . . . . .     | 110 |
| 8.8.5     | Graphics and video integration . . . . .                    | 110 |
| 8.8.5.1   | General recap of the MHP graphics. . . . .                  | 110 |
| 8.8.5.1.1 | Input video space . . . . .                                 | 110 |
| 8.8.5.1.2 | Device space. . . . .                                       | 110 |
| 8.8.5.1.3 | Normalised space . . . . .                                  | 110 |
| 8.8.5.1.4 | Colour. . . . .   | 110 |
| 8.8.5.2   | Coordinate spaces . . . . .                                 | 111 |
| 8.8.5.2.1 | Screen coordinates . . . . .                                | 111 |
| 8.8.5.2.2 | Pixel coordinates . . . . .                                 | 111 |
| 8.8.5.2.3 | Video coordinates. . . . .                                  | 111 |
| 8.8.5.3   | How to define the initial containing block. . . . .         | 112 |
| 8.8.5.3.1 | Problem . . . . .   | 112 |
| 8.8.5.3.2 | The @dvb-viewport rule . . . . .                            | 112 |
| 8.8.5.3.3 | Establishing a viewport . . . . .                           | 113 |
| 8.8.5.3.4 | Pseudo classes . . . . .                                    | 117 |
| 8.8.5.4   | Cascading. . . . .  | 118 |
| 8.8.5.5   | How to discover where the video is. . . . .                 | 118 |
| 8.8.5.5.1 | The area property . . . . .                                 | 118 |
| 8.8.5.6   | Placing content in relation to video . . . . .              | 119 |
| 8.8.5.6.1 | Definition of boxes. . . . .                                | 120 |
| 8.8.5.6.2 | Definition of pel areas in the video . . . . .              | 120 |
| 8.8.5.7   | Placing video within the presentation . . . . .             | 120 |
| 8.8.5.8   | Box Layout . . . . .  | 120 |
| 8.8.5.8.1 | Video Boxes . . . . .                                       | 120 |
| 8.8.5.9   | DOM Access to CSS . . . . .                                 | 121 |
| 8.8.5.10  | Focus traversal and short-cuts . . . . .                    | 121 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| 8.8.6      | Font selection . . . . .   | 122 |
| 8.8.6.1    | Restrictions on "src" descriptor . . . . .                             | 123 |
| 8.8.7      | Font specification . . . . .   | 123 |
| 8.8.8      | Default behaviour . . . . .  | 123 |
| 8.8.8.1    | Default style sheet font rules . . . . .                               | 124 |
| 8.8.8.1.1  | Extending the simple rule. . . . .                                     | 124 |
| 8.8.8.1.2  | Fallback for italic, small caps and font stretch. . . . .              | 124 |
| 8.9        | Xlet integration . . . . .   | 125 |
| 8.9.1      | Object element. . . . .  | 125 |
| 8.9.2      | Param element . . . . .  | 126 |
| 8.9.3      | Example. . . . .   | 126 |
| 8.10       | Scripting . . . . .  | 127 |
| 8.10.1     | DOM 2 binding . . . . .  | 127 |
| 8.10.2     | Interface between ECMAScript and DVB-J . . . . .                       | 127 |
| 8.10.2.1   | ECMAScript APIs for accessing DVB-J . . . . .                          | 127 |
| 8.10.2.2   | Inter-Xlet and Xlet-ECMAScript Communication via org.dvb.ixc . . . . . | 127 |
| 8.10.2.3   | Security . . . . .   | 128 |
| 8.10.2.4   | Implicit Method Selection . . . . .                                    | 128 |
| 8.10.2.5   | Explicit Method Selection . . . . .                                    | 128 |
| 8.10.2.6   | Static Method Invocation. . . . .                                      | 128 |
| 8.10.2.7   | Method Signature Matching . . . . .                                    | 128 |
| 8.10.2.8   | New ECMAScript Object Types . . . . .                                  | 129 |
| 8.10.2.9   | Type Conversion (ECMAScript to DVB-J). . . . .                         | 129 |
| 8.10.2.10  | Subclassing and Interface Instance Creation . . . . .                  | 131 |
| 8.10.2.11  | Type Conversion (DVB-J to ECMAScript). . . . .                         | 131 |
| 8.10.2.12  | Catching DVB-J Exceptions in ECMAScript . . . . .                      | 132 |
| 8.11       | Document Object Model (DOM) . . . . .                                  | 133 |
| 8.11.1     | DOM Level 2 Events. . . . .  | 133 |
| 8.11.1.1   | Fundamental interfaces . . . . .                                       | 133 |
| 8.11.1.2   | Event interfaces . . . . .   | 133 |
| 8.11.2     | DVB Events DOM module . . . . .  | 134 |
| 8.11.2.1   | Key events . . . . .   | 134 |
| 8.11.2.2   | Lifecycle events . . . . .   | 134 |
| 8.11.2.2.1 | Interface DVBLifecycleEvent . . . . .                                  | 134 |
| 8.11.2.2.2 | Event definitions . . . . .  | 135 |
| 8.11.2.2.3 | State transition summary . . . . .                                     | 137 |
| 8.11.2.3   | Additional DVB Events. . . . .   | 137 |
| 8.11.2.3.1 | Trigger events. . . . .  | 137 |
| 8.11.2.3.2 | DVBDOMStable event . . . . .   | 137 |
| 8.11.2.3.3 | DVB-HTML events . . . . .  | 138 |
| 8.11.3     | DVB Key events DOM module . . . . .                                    | 138 |
| 8.11.3.1   | Interface DVBKeyEvent . . . . .  | 138 |
| 8.11.3.1.1 | IDL Definition . . . . .   | 139 |
| 8.11.3.1.2 | Attributes . . . . .   | 140 |
| 8.11.3.1.3 | Methods . . . . .  | 140 |
| 8.11.4     | DVB-HTML DOM module. . . . .   | 140 |
| 8.11.4.1   | Conformance . . . . .  | 140 |
| 8.11.4.2   | Differences from W3C DOM Level 1 HTML interfaces . . . . .             | 141 |
| 8.11.4.3   | Extensions . . . . .   | 141 |
| 8.11.4.3.1 | Enumerations . . . . .   | 141 |
| 8.11.4.3.2 | Initial and current values of form controls. . . . .                   | 141 |
| 8.11.4.4   | System aspects . . . . .   | 142 |
| 8.11.4.4.1 | Access to the document . . . . .                                       | 142 |
| 8.11.4.4.2 | DOM DVB-HTML module . . . . .  | 142 |
| 8.11.4.4.3 | DOM modification . . . . .   | 142 |
| 8.11.4.5   | Miscellaneous interfaces . . . . .                                     | 142 |
| 8.11.4.5.1 | DVB-HTMLCollection Interface. . . . .                                  | 142 |
| 8.11.4.5.2 | DVBHTMLDocument Interface . . . . .                                    | 143 |
| 8.11.4.6   | DVB-HTML element related interfaces . . . . .                          | 145 |

|             |  |     |
|-------------|--|-----|
| 8.11.4.6.1  | DVBHTMLElement Interface . . . . .                                     | 145 |
| 8.11.4.6.2  | DVBHTMLAnchorElement Interface . . . . .                               | 146 |
| 8.11.4.6.3  | DVBHTMLMapElement Interface . . . . .                                  | 146 |
| 8.11.4.6.4  | DVBHTMLAreaElement Interface . . . . .                                 | 147 |
| 8.11.4.6.5  | DVBHTMLButtonElement Interface . . . . .                               | 147 |
| 8.11.4.6.6  | DVBHTMLFormElement Interface . . . . .                                 | 148 |
| 8.11.4.6.7  | DVBHTMLFrameElement Interface . . . . .                                | 149 |
| 8.11.4.6.8  | DVBHTMLFrameSetElement Interface . . . . .                             | 150 |
| 8.11.4.6.9  | DVBHTMLIFrameElement Interface . . . . .                               | 150 |
| 8.11.4.6.10 | DVBHTMLImageElement Interface . . . . .                                | 150 |
| 8.11.4.6.11 | DVBHTMLObjectElement Interface . . . . .                               | 151 |
| 8.11.4.6.12 | DVBHTMLInputElement Interface . . . . .                                | 152 |
| 8.11.4.6.13 | DVBHTMLOptionElement Interface . . . . .                               | 154 |
| 8.11.4.6.14 | DVBHTMLSelectElement Interface . . . . .                               | 155 |
| 8.11.4.6.15 | DVBHTMLTextAreaElement Interface . . . . .                             | 156 |
| 8.11.5      | DVB Exceptions . . . . .   | 157 |
| 8.11.5.1    | DVBException . . . . .   | 158 |
| 8.11.5.1.1  | IDL Definition . . . . .   | 158 |
| 8.11.5.1.2  | Defined Constants . . . . .  | 158 |
| 8.11.6      | Language bindings . . . . .  | 158 |
| 8.11.6.1    | ECMAScript Binding . . . . .   | 158 |
| 8.11.6.2    | Java Binding . . . . .   | 158 |
| 8.11.7      | DVB Environment object module . . . . .                                | 158 |
| 8.11.7.1    | Free variables . . . . .   | 158 |
| 8.11.7.2    | Environmental host objects . . . . .                                   | 159 |
| 8.11.7.2.1  | Navigator Object . . . . .   | 159 |
| 8.11.7.2.2  | Window object . . . . .  | 159 |
| 8.11.7.2.3  | Location object . . . . .  | 162 |
| 8.11.8      | CSS Support . . . . .  | 162 |
| 8.11.8.1    | DVB CSS DOM module . . . . .   | 162 |
| 8.11.8.1.1  | DVBCSSInlineStyle . . . . .  | 162 |
| 8.11.8.1.2  | DVBCSSStyle . . . . .  | 163 |
| 8.11.8.1.3  | DVBCSSViewportRule . . . . .   | 163 |
| 8.11.8.1.4  | DVBCSSViewportProperties . . . . .                                     | 163 |
| 8.12        | Cookie support . . . . .   | 166 |
| 8.12.1      | DOM Cookie Interface . . . . .   | 166 |
| 8.12.2      | Cookie Storage and Lifetime . . . . .                                  | 166 |
| 8.12.2.1    | Cookie Storage Limits . . . . .  | 166 |
| 8.12.2.2    | Cookie Persistence . . . . .   | 167 |
| 8.12.2.3    | Privacy Considerations . . . . .                                       | 167 |
| 8.12.3      | Cookie Scoping . . . . .   | 167 |
| 8.12.3.1    | General Rules . . . . .  | 167 |
| 8.12.3.2    | Documents delivered via DSM-CC Object Carousel . . . . .               | 167 |
| 8.12.3.3    | Documents delivered via HTTP transport . . . . .                       | 167 |
| 8.12.4      | HTTP Cookie Support . . . . .  | 167 |
| 8.12.4.1    | Background . . . . .   | 167 |
| 8.12.4.2    | Sending Cookies . . . . .  | 168 |
| 8.12.4.3    | Receiving Cookies . . . . .  | 168 |
| 8.13        | HTTP User Agent String Support . . . . .                               | 168 |
| 8.13.1      | User agent strings . . . . .   | 168 |
| 8.13.1.1    | Current user agent-related strings . . . . .                           | 168 |
| 8.13.1.2    | User agent string BNF . . . . .  | 168 |
| 8.14        | Security of DVB-HTML applications . . . . .                            | 169 |
| 8.14.1      | Authentication of DVB-HTML files . . . . .                             | 169 |
| 8.14.2      | Runtime code extension . . . . .                                       | 169 |
| 8.14.2.1    | Security principles . . . . .  | 169 |
| 8.14.2.1.1  | Uses of runtime code extension in ECMAScript . . . . .                 | 169 |
| 8.14.2.2    | Extensions to ECMAScript for trusted executable code . . . . .         | 170 |
| 8.14.2.2.1  | Propagation of Internal (safe) vs. External (unsafe) strings . . . . . | 170 |



|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| 8.14.2.2.2 | Modifying ECMA-262 to support Internal and External strings . . . . .      | 170 |
| 8.14.2.3   | Sources of Unsafe (external) strings . . . . .                             | 176 |
| 8.14.2.3.1 | Sources within ECMAScript . . . . .  | 176 |
| 8.14.2.3.2 | Sources from Host Objects. . . . .   | 176 |
| 8.14.2.4   | Use of strings in RCEs. . . . .  | 176 |
| 8.14.2.5   | Mutation of Host Objects. . . . .  | 177 |
| 8.14.3     | Inter application security . . . . .                                       | 177 |
| 8.14.3.1   | Restrictions on DOM elements introduced for security . . . . .             | 177 |
| 8.15       | DVB-HTML permissions . . . . .   | 177 |
| 8.15.1     | Permissions for unsigned applications . . . . .                            | 178 |
| 8.15.1.1   | java.awt.AWTPermission . . . . .   | 178 |
| 8.15.1.2   | java.net.SocketPermission: . . . . .                                       | 178 |
| 8.15.1.3   | java.util.PropertyPermission . . . . .                                     | 178 |
| 8.15.1.4   | java.lang.RuntimePermission . . . . .                                      | 178 |
| 8.15.1.5   | java.io.SerializablePermission . . . . .                                   | 178 |
| 8.15.1.6   | java.io.FilePermission . . . . .   | 178 |
| 8.15.1.7   | javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission . . . . .                             | 179 |
| 8.15.1.8   | javax.tv.service.ReadPermission . . . . .                                  | 179 |
| 8.15.1.9   | javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission . . . . .              | 179 |
| 8.15.1.10  | java.util.Locale.setDefault . . . . .                                      | 180 |
| 8.15.1.11  | org.dvb.security.PrivilegedRCEPermission . . . . .                         | 180 |
| 8.15.2     | Additional Permissions for signed applications . . . . .                   | 180 |
| 8.15.2.1   | java.util.PropertyPermission . . . . .                                     | 180 |
| 8.15.2.2   | java.io.FilePermission . . . . .   | 180 |
| 8.15.2.3   | org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission . . . . .                                      | 181 |
| 8.15.2.4   | org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission. . . . .                         | 181 |
| 8.15.2.5   | org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission. . . . .                                       | 182 |
| 8.15.2.6   | org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission . . . . .                               | 182 |
| 8.15.2.7   | javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission. . . . .                       | 183 |
| 8.15.2.8   | org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission . . . . .                            | 183 |
| 8.15.2.9   | java.net.SocketPermission . . . . .  | 183 |
| 8.15.2.10  | org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission . . . . .                                 | 183 |
| 8.15.2.11  | org.dvb.security.PrivilegedRCEPermission . . . . .                         | 184 |
| 8.15.2.12  | org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission . . . . .         | 184 |
| 8.15.2.13  | org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission . . . . .                            | 184 |
| 8.16       | Miscellaneous . . . . .  | 184 |
| 8.16.1     | Date Values . . . . .  | 184 |
| 8.16.1.1   | Syntax . . . . .   | 184 |
| 8.16.2     | Clock values . . . . .   | 184 |
| 8.16.2.1   | Syntax . . . . .   | 184 |
| 8.16.2.2   | Offset values . . . . .  | 185 |
| 8.16.3     | Unrealisable locators . . . . .  | 185 |
| 8.16.3.0.1 | Presentation of Locators in DVB HTML. . . . .                              | 185 |
| 8.16.4     | Relation to HTTP and HTTPS . . . . .                                       | 186 |
| 8.16.5     | DVB-HTML specific locators. . . . .  | 186 |
| 8.16.5.1   | Extended DVB locator . . . . .   | 186 |
| 8.16.5.1.1 | Extended DVB locator syntax . . . . .                                      | 186 |
| 8.16.5.1.2 | TV locators. . . . .   | 186 |
| 8.16.5.1.3 | Application locator. . . . .   | 187 |
| 8.16.5.1.4 | AIT locators . . . . .   | 187 |
| 8.16.5.2   | Exit locator. . . . .  | 187 |
| 8.16.6     | Domain . . . . .   | 187 |
| 9          | Application model . . . . .  | 188 |
| 9.1        | Broadcast MHP applications. . . . .  | 188 |
| 9.1.1      | Basic lifecycle control. . . . .   | 188 |
| 9.1.2      | Starting applications . . . . .  | 189 |
| 9.1.3      | Support for execution of multiple simultaneous applications . . . . .      | 189 |
| 9.1.4      | Stopping applications . . . . .  | 189 |
| 9.1.4.1    | A new service being selected replacing a previously selected one . . . . . | 189 |

|           |  |     |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 9.1.4.2   | The stopping of an application by another application . . . . .                                | 189 |
| 9.1.4.3   | Changes in the application signalling to request a particular application be stopped . . . . . | 189 |
| 9.1.4.4   | Stopping by the MHP terminal due to a shortage of resources . . . . .                          | 190 |
| 9.1.5     | Persistence of Applications Across Service Boundaries . . . . .                                | 190 |
| 9.1.6     | Management of autostarting . . . . .   | 190 |
| 9.1.7     | When tuning is not service selection! . . . . .  | 191 |
| 9.1.8     | MHP Applications and Service Selection . . . . .   | 191 |
| 9.1.9     | Broadcast service related stored applications . . . . .  | 191 |
| 9.1.9.1   | Version management . . . . .   | 192 |
| 9.2       | DVB-J Model . . . . .  | 192 |
| 9.2.1     | Starting DVB-J Applications . . . . .  | 192 |
| 9.2.2     | Stopping a DVB-J Application . . . . .   | 192 |
| 9.2.3     | DVB-J Application Lifecycle . . . . .  | 193 |
| 9.2.3.1   | Introduction . . . . .   | 193 |
| 9.2.3.2   | Lifecycle state machine for DVB-J application instances . . . . .                              | 193 |
| 9.2.4     | Xlet API . . . . .   | 196 |
| 9.2.4.1   | Xlet State Change Semantics . . . . .  | 197 |
| 9.2.4.2   | Xlet state change requests . . . . .   | 197 |
| 9.2.5     | Multiple application environment support . . . . .   | 197 |
| 9.2.5.1   | Control of DVB-J applications by other DVB-J applications . . . . .                            | 197 |
| 9.2.5.2   | Input Focus management . . . . .   | 197 |
| 9.2.5.3   | Other resources management . . . . .   | 198 |
| 9.2.5.4   | VM implementation . . . . .  | 198 |
| 9.3       | DVB-HTML Model . . . . .   | 198 |
| 9.3.1     | The DVB-HTML Application . . . . .   | 198 |
| 9.3.1.1   | DVB-HTML Application . . . . .   | 198 |
| 9.3.1.2   | User agent . . . . .   | 198 |
| 9.3.1.3   | DVB-HTML Actor . . . . .   | 198 |
| 9.3.1.4   | Application boundary . . . . .   | 199 |
| 9.3.1.4.1 | Regular Expression Syntax . . . . .  | 199 |
| 9.3.2     | DVB-HTML Application Lifecycle . . . . .   | 200 |
| 9.3.2.1   | Introduction . . . . .   | 200 |
| 9.3.2.2   | Signalling . . . . .   | 200 |
| 9.3.2.3   | Lifecycle control . . . . .  | 201 |
| 9.3.2.3.1 | State diagram . . . . .  | 201 |
| 9.3.3     | The State Model . . . . .  | 201 |
| 9.3.3.1   | Loading . . . . .  | 202 |
| 9.3.3.1.1 | Name . . . . .   | 202 |
| 9.3.3.1.2 | Entry actions . . . . .  | 202 |
| 9.3.3.1.3 | Activities . . . . .   | 202 |
| 9.3.3.1.4 | Resources . . . . .  | 202 |
| 9.3.3.1.5 | Transitions . . . . .  | 202 |
| 9.3.3.1.6 | Comment . . . . .  | 202 |
| 9.3.3.2   | Active . . . . .   | 202 |
| 9.3.3.2.1 | Name . . . . .   | 202 |
| 9.3.3.2.2 | Activities . . . . .   | 202 |
| 9.3.3.2.3 | Entry actions . . . . .  | 202 |
| 9.3.3.2.4 | Resources . . . . .  | 203 |
| 9.3.3.2.5 | Transitions . . . . .  | 203 |
| 9.3.3.2.6 | Comment . . . . .  | 203 |
| 9.3.3.3   | Paused . . . . .   | 203 |
| 9.3.3.3.1 | Name . . . . .   | 203 |
| 9.3.3.3.2 | Activities . . . . .   | 203 |
| 9.3.3.3.3 | Resources . . . . .  | 203 |
| 9.3.3.3.4 | Transitions . . . . .  | 203 |
| 9.3.3.3.5 | Comment . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.3.3.4   | Destroyed . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.3.3.4.1 | Name . . . . .   | 204 |
| 9.3.3.4.2 | Activities . . . . .   | 204 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| 9.3.3.4.3  | Resources . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.3.3.4.4  | Transitions: . . . . .   | 204 |
| 9.3.3.4.5  | Comment . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5    | Killed . . . . .   | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5.1  | Name . . . . .   | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5.2  | Entry actions. . . . .   | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5.3  | Activities . . . . .   | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5.4  | Resources . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5.5  | Transitions . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.3.3.5.6  | Comment . . . . .  | 204 |
| 9.4        | Application activity events . . . . .  | 205 |
| 9.4.1      | Event queue handling . . . . .   | 207 |
| 9.5        | Inter application resource management. . . . .                                 | 207 |
| 9.6        | Life cycle of Xlets embedded in DVB-HTML . . . . .                             | 208 |
| 9.6.1      | Starting embedded Xlets . . . . .  | 208 |
| 9.6.2      | Termination . . . . .  | 208 |
| 9.6.3      | General issues . . . . .   | 208 |
| 9.7        | Services and applications not related to<br>conventional DVB services. . . . . | 209 |
| 9.7.1      | Applications loaded from the interaction channel. . . . .                      | 209 |
| 9.7.2      | Stored services. . . . .   | 209 |
| 9.7.3      | DVB-J Model . . . . .  | 211 |
| 9.7.4      | Common behaviour . . . . .   | 211 |
| 9.8        | Lifecycle of internet access applications. . . . .                             | 211 |
| 9.8.1      | General issues . . . . .   | 211 |
| 9.8.2      | Starting internet access applications from MHP applications. . . . .           | 211 |
| 9.8.3      | Selecting DVB services from internet access applications . . . . .             | 212 |
| 9.9        | Plug-ins . . . . .   | 212 |
| 10         | Application Signalling . . . . .   | 214 |
| 10.1       | Introduction. . . . .  | 214 |
| 10.1.1     | Summary of common signalling . . . . .   | 214 |
| 10.1.2     | Summary of additional signalling for DVB-J applications . . . . .              | 214 |
| 10.1.3     | Summary of additional signalling for DVB-HTML applications . . . . .           | 214 |
| 10.1.4     | Summary of additional signalling for applications carried via OC. . . . .      | 214 |
| 10.1.5     | Summary of additional signalling for applications carried via IP. . . . .      | 215 |
| 10.1.6     | How to add a new scheme (informative). . . . .                                 | 215 |
| 10.1.7     | Service information . . . . .  | 215 |
| 10.2       | Program Specific Information. . . . .  | 215 |
| 10.2.1     | Application signalling stream . . . . .  | 215 |
| 10.2.2     | Data broadcast streams . . . . .   | 215 |
| 10.3       | Notation. . . . .  | 216 |
| 10.3.1     | reserved . . . . .   | 216 |
| 10.3.2     | reserved_future_use. . . . .   | 216 |
| 10.4       | Application Information Table . . . . .  | 216 |
| 10.4.1     | Data errors . . . . .  | 216 |
| 10.4.2     | AIT transmission and monitoring . . . . .                                      | 216 |
| 10.4.3     | Optimised AIT signalling . . . . .   | 217 |
| 10.4.4     | Visibility of AIT . . . . .  | 217 |
| 10.4.5     | Definition of sub-table for the AIT . . . . .                                  | 217 |
| 10.4.6     | Syntax of the AIT . . . . .  | 217 |
| 10.4.7     | Use of private descriptors in the AIT . . . . .                                | 219 |
| 10.4.8     | Text encoding in AIT . . . . .   | 219 |
| 10.4.9     | AIT file . . . . .   | 219 |
| 10.4.9.1   | Syntax . . . . .   | 219 |
| 10.4.9.2   | Syntactic restrictions . . . . .   | 220 |
| 10.4.9.2.1 | Transport protocols . . . . .  | 220 |
| 10.4.9.3   | Semantics . . . . .  | 220 |
| 10.4.9.4   | MIME type. . . . .   | 220 |
| 10.5       | Application identification . . . . .   | 220 |

|           |   |     |
|-----------|---|-----|
| 10.5.1    | Encoding . . . . .  | 220 |
| 10.5.2    | Effects on life cycle . . . . .                             | 221 |
| 10.5.3    | Authentication of application identification . . . . .      | 221 |
| 10.6      | Control of application life cycle . . . . .                 | 221 |
| 10.6.1    | Entering and leaving the domain of an application . . . . . | 222 |
| 10.6.2    | Dynamic control of the application life cycle . . . . .     | 222 |
| 10.6.2.1  | DVB-J . . . . .   | 222 |
| 10.6.2.2  | DVB-HTML . . . . .  | 223 |
| 10.7      | Generic descriptors . . . . .                               | 223 |
| 10.7.1    | Application Signalling Descriptor . . . . .                 | 223 |
| 10.7.2    | Data broadcast id descriptor . . . . .                      | 224 |
| 10.7.2.1  | Generic descriptor . . . . .                                | 224 |
| 10.7.2.2  | MHP data broadcast id descriptor . . . . .                  | 225 |
| 10.7.3    | Application descriptor . . . . .                            | 225 |
| 10.7.4    | User information descriptors . . . . .                      | 227 |
| 10.7.4.1  | Application name descriptor . . . . .                       | 227 |
| 10.7.4.2  | Application icons descriptor . . . . .                      | 228 |
| 10.7.5    | External application authorisation descriptor . . . . .     | 229 |
| 10.8      | Transport protocol descriptors . . . . .                    | 230 |
| 10.8.1    | Transport protocol descriptor . . . . .                     | 230 |
| 10.8.1.1  | Transport via OC . . . . .                                  | 231 |
| 10.8.1.2  | Transport via IP . . . . .                                  | 231 |
| 10.8.1.3  | Transport via interaction channel. . . . .                  | 232 |
| 10.8.2    | IP signalling descriptor . . . . .                          | 233 |
| 10.8.3    | Pre-fetch signalling . . . . .                              | 233 |
| 10.8.3.1  | Introduction . . . . .                                      | 233 |
| 10.8.3.2  | Pre-fetch descriptor . . . . .                              | 234 |
| 10.8.3.3  | DII location descriptor . . . . .                           | 234 |
| 10.9      | DVB-J specific descriptors . . . . .                        | 235 |
| 10.9.1    | DVB-J application descriptor . . . . .                      | 235 |
| 10.9.2    | DVB-J application location descriptor . . . . .             | 236 |
| 10.10     | DVB-HTML Specific descriptors . . . . .                     | 237 |
| 10.10.1   | DVB-HTML application descriptor . . . . .                   | 237 |
| 10.10.2   | DVB-HTML application location descriptor . . . . .          | 237 |
| 10.10.2.1 | Example . . . . .   | 238 |
| 10.10.2.2 | Application Entry Point . . . . .                           | 238 |
| 10.10.3   | DVB-HTML application boundary descriptor . . . . .          | 239 |
| 10.11     | Constant values . . . . .                                   | 240 |
| 10.11.1   | MHP Application Service . . . . .                           | 241 |
| 10.12     | Service Information. . . . .                                | 241 |
| 10.12.1   | Service identifier descriptor. . . . .                      | 241 |
| 10.13     | Plug-in signalling . . . . .                                | 242 |
| 10.13.1   | Native signalling scenario . . . . .                        | 242 |
| 10.13.2   | MHP signalling scenario . . . . .                           | 242 |
| 10.13.3   | delegated application descriptor . . . . .                  | 242 |
| 10.13.4   | Plug-in descriptor . . . . .                                | 243 |
| 10.14     | Stored applications . . . . .                               | 244 |
| 10.14.1   | Use of signalling defined in MHP 1.0. . . . .               | 244 |
| 10.14.1.1 | Stored broadcast service related applications . . . . .     | 244 |
| 10.14.1.2 | Stored stand-alone applications . . . . .                   | 244 |
| 10.14.2   | Application storage descriptor. . . . .                     | 244 |
| 10.14.3   | Application description file . . . . .                      | 245 |
| 10.14.3.1 | Description. . . . .  | 245 |
| 10.14.3.2 | Application description file name and location . . . . .    | 246 |
| 10.14.3.3 | Syntax . . . . .  | 246 |
| 10.14.3.4 | Semantics. . . . .  | 246 |
| 11        | DVB-J Platform . . . . .                                    | 248 |
| 11.1      | The Virtual Machine . . . . .                               | 248 |
| 11.2      | General issues . . . . .                                    | 248 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| 11.2.1     | Basic Considerations . . . . .   | 248 |
| 11.2.2     | Approach to Subsetting . . . . .   | 249 |
| 11.2.3     | Class Loading . . . . .  | 249 |
| 11.2.4     | Unloading . . . . .  | 249 |
| 11.2.5     | Event listeners . . . . .  | 249 |
| 11.2.6     | Event model in DAVIC APIs . . . . .  | 249 |
| 11.2.7     | Event model in DAVIC & DVB APIs . . . . .  | 249 |
| 11.2.8     | Tuning as a side-effect. . . . .   | 249 |
| 11.2.9     | Intra application media resource management . . . . .  | 250 |
| 11.2.10    | Application thread priority . . . . .  | 250 |
| 11.2.11    | Text Encodings . . . . .   | 250 |
| 11.2.11.1  | Text encoding in Service Information . . . . .   | 250 |
| 11.3       | Fundamental DVB-J APIs. . . . .  | 251 |
| 11.3.1     | Java platform APIs . . . . .   | 251 |
| 11.3.1.1   | java.lang package. . . . .   | 251 |
| 11.3.1.2   | java.lang.reflect package . . . . .  | 252 |
| 11.3.1.3   | java.util . . . . .  | 252 |
| 11.3.1.4   | java.util.zip. . . . .   | 252 |
| 11.3.1.5   | java.io. . . . .   | 253 |
| 11.3.1.6   | java.net. . . . .  | 253 |
| 11.3.1.7   | java.beans. . . . .  | 254 |
| 11.3.1.8   | java.math . . . . .  | 254 |
| 11.3.1.9   | java.text . . . . .  | 255 |
| 11.3.2     | MHP platform APIs. . . . .   | 255 |
| 11.3.2.1   | org.dvb.lang . . . . .   | 255 |
| 11.3.2.2   | org.dvb.event . . . . .  | 255 |
| 11.4       | Presentation APIs . . . . .  | 256 |
| 11.4.1     | Graphical User Interface API . . . . .   | 256 |
| 11.4.1.1   | The Core GUI API. . . . .  | 256 |
| 11.4.1.2   | TV user interface . . . . .  | 257 |
| 11.4.1.3   | Extended graphics . . . . .  | 258 |
| 11.4.1.4   | Handling of input events . . . . .   | 258 |
| 11.4.1.5   | Font bindings . . . . .  | 260 |
| 11.4.1.5.1 | PFR0. . . . .  | 260 |
| 11.4.2     | Streamed Media API . . . . .   | 260 |
| 11.4.2.1   | Framework of solution. . . . .   | 260 |
| 11.4.2.2   | Clarifications . . . . .   | 260 |
| 11.4.2.3   | Default media player behaviour. . . . .  | 261 |
| 11.4.2.4   | Required controls for video drips . . . . .  | 261 |
| 11.4.2.5   | Extensions to the Framework . . . . .  | 261 |
| 11.4.2.5.1 | DVB specified extensions . . . . .   | 261 |
| 11.4.2.5.2 | Extensions in org.davic . . . . .  | 262 |
| 11.4.2.5.3 | Extensions in javax.tv . . . . .   | 262 |
| 11.4.2.5.4 | Required controls for broadcast profiles . . . . .   | 263 |
| 11.4.2.5.5 | Clarifications . . . . .   | 263 |
| 11.4.2.6   | Restrictions on the Framework for Broadcast . . . . .  | 264 |
| 11.4.2.7   | Intersection Between MediaSelectControl and<br>SubtitlingLanguageControl / AudioLanguageControl. . . . . | 265 |
| 11.4.2.8   | Intersection between Streamed Media API and TV User Interface API . . . . .                              | 265 |
| 11.4.2.8.1 | Basic Principles . . . . .   | 265 |
| 11.4.2.8.2 | TV Behaviour Control . . . . .   | 266 |
| 11.4.2.8.3 | Application Behaviour Control . . . . .  | 266 |
| 11.4.2.8.4 | Dynamic Behaviour . . . . .  | 266 |
| 11.4.2.8.5 | Resource Management Details. . . . .   | 266 |
| 11.5       | Data Access APIs . . . . .   | 267 |
| 11.5.1     | Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API . . . . .  | 267 |
| 11.5.1.1   | Constraints on the java.io.File methods<br>for broadcast carousels. . . . .                              | 267 |
| 11.5.1.2   | Methods dealing with write access . . . . .  | 268 |

|            |   |     |
|------------|---|-----|
| 11.5.1.3   | Behaviour following loss of a broadcast carousel . . . . .                    | 268 |
| 11.5.2     | Support for Multicast IP over the Broadcast Channel . . . . .                 | 268 |
| 11.5.3     | Support for IP over the Return Channel . . . . .                              | 269 |
| 11.5.4     | MPEG-2 Section Filter API . . . . .   | 269 |
| 11.5.5     | Mid-Level Communications API . . . . .  | 269 |
| 11.5.6     | Persistent Storage API . . . . .  | 270 |
| 11.6       | Service Information and Selection APIs . . . . .                              | 271 |
| 11.6.1     | DVB Service Information API . . . . .   | 271 |
| 11.6.2     | Service Selection API . . . . .   | 272 |
| 11.6.3     | Tuning API . . . . .  | 273 |
| 11.6.4     | Conditional Access API . . . . .  | 274 |
| 11.6.5     | Protocol Independent SI API . . . . .   | 274 |
| 11.7       | Common Infrastructure APIs . . . . .  | 275 |
| 11.7.1     | APIs to support DVB-J application lifecycle . . . . .                         | 275 |
| 11.7.1.1   | Xlet properties . . . . .   | 275 |
| 11.7.1.2   | Actions for DVB-J applications to perform in their<br>destroy method. . . . . | 275 |
| 11.7.2     | Application discovery and launching APIs . . . . .                            | 276 |
| 11.7.3     | Inter-Application and Inter-Xlet communication API . . . . .                  | 277 |
| 11.7.3.1   | Remote Call Semantics . . . . .   | 277 |
| 11.7.3.1.1 | Objects Passed by Remote Reference . . . . .                                  | 278 |
| 11.7.3.1.2 | Objects Passed by Remote Copy . . . . .                                       | 279 |
| 11.7.3.1.3 | Classloading Considerations . . . . .   | 279 |
| 11.7.3.1.4 | Thread Usage . . . . .  | 279 |
| 11.7.3.1.5 | Garbage Collection of Remote Objects . . . . .                                | 279 |
| 11.7.4     | Basic MPEG Concepts . . . . .   | 280 |
| 11.7.5     | Resource Notification . . . . .   | 280 |
| 11.7.6     | Content Referencing . . . . .   | 280 |
| 11.7.7     | Common Error Reporting . . . . .  | 281 |
| 11.7.8     | Plug-in APIs . . . . .  | 281 |
| 11.8       | Security . . . . .  | 282 |
| 11.8.1     | Basic Security . . . . .  | 282 |
| 11.8.1.1   | java.security . . . . .   | 282 |
| 11.8.1.2   | java.security.cert . . . . .  | 283 |
| 11.8.1.3   | Other classes . . . . .   | 283 |
| 11.8.2     | APIs for return channel security . . . . .                                    | 283 |
| 11.8.3     | Additional permissions classes . . . . .                                      | 284 |
| 11.8.4     | General security issues . . . . .   | 284 |
| 11.9       | Other APIs . . . . .  | 284 |
| 11.9.1     | Timer Support . . . . .   | 284 |
| 11.9.2     | User Settings and Preferences API . . . . .                                   | 284 |
| 11.9.3     | Profile and version properties . . . . .                                      | 284 |
| 11.9.3.1   | Information on options . . . . .  | 285 |
| 11.9.4     | Non-CA smart card API . . . . .   | 286 |
| 11.9.4.1   | Framework . . . . .   | 286 |
| 11.9.4.2   | Clarifications . . . . .  | 286 |
| 11.9.4.3   | Extensions . . . . .  | 286 |
| 11.9.4.4   | Restrictions . . . . .  | 286 |
| 11.9.4.5   | Modified semantics . . . . .  | 286 |
| 11.10      | Java permissions . . . . .  | 287 |
| 11.10.1    | Permissions for unsigned applications . . . . .                               | 287 |
| 11.10.1.1  | java.awt.AWTPermission . . . . .  | 287 |
| 11.10.1.2  | java.net.SocketPermission: . . . . .  | 287 |
| 11.10.1.3  | java.util.PropertyPermission . . . . .  | 287 |
| 11.10.1.4  | java.lang.RuntimePermission . . . . .   | 287 |
| 11.10.1.5  | java.io.SerializablePermission . . . . .                                      | 287 |
| 11.10.1.6  | java.io.FilePermission . . . . .  | 287 |
| 11.10.1.7  | javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission . . . . .                                | 287 |
| 11.10.1.8  | javax.tv.service.ReadPermission . . . . .                                     | 287 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| 11.10.1.9  | javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission      | 287 |
| 11.10.1.10 | java.util.Locale.setDefault                              | 288 |
| 11.10.1.11 | Applications signalled in AIT file                       | 288 |
| 11.10.2    | Additional Permissions for signed applications           | 288 |
| 11.10.2.1  | java.util.PropertyPermission                             | 288 |
| 11.10.2.2  | java.io.FilePermission                                   | 288 |
| 11.10.2.3  | org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission                              | 288 |
| 11.10.2.4  | org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission                | 288 |
| 11.10.2.5  | org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission                              | 289 |
| 11.10.2.6  | org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission                       | 289 |
| 11.10.2.7  | javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission              | 289 |
| 11.10.2.8  | org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission                    | 289 |
| 11.10.2.9  | java.net.SocketPermission                                | 289 |
| 11.10.2.10 | org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission                         | 289 |
| 11.10.2.11 | org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission | 289 |
| 11.10.2.12 | org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission                    | 289 |
| 11.10.2.13 | ServiceContextPermission                                 | 290 |
| 11.11      | Content referencing                                      | 290 |
| 11.11.1    | Transport stream   | 290 |
| 11.11.2    | Network  | 291 |
| 11.11.3    | Bouquet  | 291 |
| 11.11.4    | Service  | 291 |
| 11.11.4.1  | MPEG/DVB specific service                                | 291 |
| 11.11.4.2  | Generic Service  | 292 |
| 11.11.5    | DVB Event  | 292 |
| 11.11.6    | MPEG elementary stream                                   | 293 |
| 11.11.7    | File   | 294 |
| 11.11.8    | Directory  | 294 |
| 11.11.9    | Drip feed decoder  | 294 |
| 11.11.10   | Irrelevant   | 294 |
| 11.11.11   | Methods working on many Locator types                    | 294 |
| 11.11.12   | Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J                   | 295 |
| 11.12      | Stand-alone applications                                 | 296 |
| 11.12.1    | Common behaviour   | 296 |
| 11.12.2    | Stored services  | 296 |
| 11.12.2.1  | Stored application APIs                                  | 296 |
| 11.12.2.2  | Modified behaviour of MHP 1.0 APIs                       | 296 |
| 11.13      | Support for DVB-HTML                                     | 297 |
| 11.13.1    | Document object model APIs                               | 297 |
| 11.13.1.1  | Framework  | 297 |
| 11.13.1.2  | DVB defined extensions                                   | 297 |
| 11.13.1.3  | Read Only Access to DOM                                  | 297 |
| 11.13.2    | Embedded Xlets in a DVB-HTML Page                        | 297 |
| 11.14      | Internet access  | 298 |
| 11.14.1    | Internet client control APIs                             | 298 |
| 11.14.2    | Internet applet support                                  | 298 |
| 11.14.2.1  | HTML tags  | 298 |
| 11.14.2.2  | Common MHP features                                      | 299 |
| 11.14.2.3  | Extended or modified common MHP features                 | 299 |
| 11.14.2.4  | The java.awt package                                     | 299 |
| 11.14.2.5  | Additional features for applet support                   | 300 |
| 11.14.2.6  | Security   | 300 |
| 12         | Security   | 301 |
| 12.1       | Introduction   | 301 |
| 12.1.1     | Overview of the security framework for applications      | 301 |
| 12.1.2     | Overview of return channel security                      | 301 |
| 12.2       | Authentication of applications                           | 301 |
| 12.2.1     | Overview of authentication messages                      | 301 |
| 12.2.1.1   | Hash codes   | 302 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| 12.2.1.2   | Signatures . . . . .   | 302 |
| 12.2.1.3   | Certificates . . . . .   | 303 |
| 12.2.1.4   | Authentication of hierarchical file systems . . . . .                                | 303 |
| 12.3       | Message transport . . . . .  | 304 |
| 12.4       | Detail of application authentication messages . . . . .                              | 304 |
| 12.4.1     | HashFile . . . . .   | 304 |
| 12.4.1.1   | Description . . . . .  | 304 |
| 12.4.1.2   | HashFile location and naming conventions . . . . .                                   | 305 |
| 12.4.1.3   | Digest value computation rules . . . . .   | 305 |
| 12.4.1.3.1 | Example . . . . .  | 306 |
| 12.4.1.4   | Warning concerning grouping of objects under a single digest (Informative) . . . . . | 306 |
| 12.4.1.5   | Special authentication rules . . . . .   | 307 |
| 12.4.2     | SignatureFile . . . . .  | 307 |
| 12.4.2.1   | Description . . . . .  | 307 |
| 12.4.2.2   | SignatureFile location and naming conventions . . . . .                              | 308 |
| 12.4.2.3   | Supported algorithms . . . . .   | 308 |
| 12.4.2.4   | Signature computation rules . . . . .  | 308 |
| 12.4.2.5   | Authentication rules . . . . .   | 308 |
| 12.4.3     | CertificateFile . . . . .  | 309 |
| 12.4.3.1   | Description . . . . .  | 309 |
| 12.4.3.2   | ASN.1 encoding . . . . .   | 309 |
| 12.4.3.3   | Supported algorithms . . . . .   | 309 |
| 12.4.3.4   | Name matching . . . . .  | 309 |
| 12.4.3.5   | CertificateFile location and naming conventions . . . . .                            | 309 |
| 12.4.3.6   | Authentication rules . . . . .   | 310 |
| 12.4.4     | Integration . . . . .  | 310 |
| 12.5       | Profile of X.509 certificates for authentication of applications . . . . .           | 311 |
| 12.5.1     | signatureAlgorithm . . . . .   | 311 |
| 12.5.1.1   | MD5 with RSA . . . . .   | 311 |
| 12.5.1.2   | SHA-1 with RSA . . . . .   | 311 |
| 12.5.1.3   | parameters . . . . .   | 311 |
| 12.5.2     | signatureValue . . . . .   | 311 |
| 12.5.3     | version . . . . .  | 311 |
| 12.5.4     | issuer . . . . .   | 311 |
| 12.5.4.1   | minimum requirement . . . . .  | 311 |
| 12.5.4.2   | certificate authority responsibility . . . . .                                       | 311 |
| 12.5.5     | validity . . . . .   | 312 |
| 12.5.6     | subject . . . . .  | 312 |
| 12.5.7     | SubjectPublic Key Info . . . . .   | 312 |
| 12.5.7.1   | rsaEncryption . . . . .  | 312 |
| 12.5.7.2   | subjectPublicKey . . . . .   | 312 |
| 12.5.8     | Unique Identifiers . . . . .   | 313 |
| 12.5.9     | Extensions . . . . .   | 313 |
| 12.6       | Security policy for applications . . . . .   | 314 |
| 12.6.1     | General principles . . . . .   | 314 |
| 12.6.2     | Permission request file . . . . .  | 315 |
| 12.6.2.1   | File encoding . . . . .  | 315 |
| 12.6.2.1.1 | XML . . . . .  | 315 |
| 12.6.2.1.2 | MHP 1.0 . . . . .  | 315 |
| 12.6.2.1.3 | MHP 1.1 . . . . .  | 316 |
| 12.6.2.1.4 | Number representation . . . . .  | 318 |
| 12.6.2.2   | File integrity . . . . .   | 318 |
| 12.6.2.3   | Example . . . . .  | 318 |
| 12.6.2.4   | Permission request file name and location . . . . .                                  | 319 |
| 12.6.2.5   | Permission request file . . . . .  | 319 |
| 12.6.2.5.1 | Minimum permissions . . . . .  | 319 |
| 12.6.2.5.2 | Syntax and semantics . . . . .   | 319 |
| 12.6.2.5.3 | Defaults . . . . .   | 320 |
| 12.6.2.6   | Credentials . . . . .  | 320 |



|             |  |     |
|-------------|--|-----|
| 12.6.2.7    | File Access . . . . .  | 323 |
| 12.6.2.7.1  | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 323 |
| 12.6.2.7.2  | Policy for signed applications . . . . .   | 323 |
| 12.6.2.7.3  | Permission request syntax . . . . .  | 324 |
| 12.6.2.8    | CA API . . . . .   | 324 |
| 12.6.2.8.1  | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 324 |
| 12.6.2.8.2  | Signed applications . . . . .  | 324 |
| 12.6.2.8.3  | Conditional Access Permission syntax . . . . .                                     | 325 |
| 12.6.2.9    | Application lifecycle control policy . . . . .                                     | 325 |
| 12.6.2.9.1  | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 325 |
| 12.6.2.9.2  | Default policy for Signed applications . . . . .                                   | 325 |
| 12.6.2.9.3  | Syntax . . . . .   | 325 |
| 12.6.2.10   | Return channel access policy . . . . .   | 325 |
| 12.6.2.10.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 325 |
| 12.6.2.10.2 | Signed applications . . . . .  | 326 |
| 12.6.2.10.3 | Return channel permission syntax . . . . .   | 326 |
| 12.6.2.11   | Tuning access policy . . . . .   | 326 |
| 12.6.2.11.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 326 |
| 12.6.2.11.2 | Signed applications . . . . .  | 326 |
| 12.6.2.11.3 | Tuner Permission syntax . . . . .  | 326 |
| 12.6.2.12   | Service selection policy . . . . .   | 326 |
| 12.6.2.12.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 326 |
| 12.6.2.12.2 | Signed applications . . . . .  | 326 |
| 12.6.2.12.3 | Service Selection Permission . . . . .   | 327 |
| 12.6.2.13   | Media API access policy . . . . .  | 327 |
| 12.6.2.14   | Inter-application communication policy . . . . .                                   | 327 |
| 12.6.2.14.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 327 |
| 12.6.2.14.2 | Signed applications . . . . .  | 327 |
| 12.6.2.15   | User Setting and Preferences access policy . . . . .                               | 327 |
| 12.6.2.15.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 327 |
| 12.6.2.15.2 | Signed applications . . . . .  | 327 |
| 12.6.2.15.3 | Permission syntax . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.16   | Network permissions . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.16.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.16.2 | Signed applications . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.16.3 | Permission syntax . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.17   | Dripfeed permissions . . . . .   | 328 |
| 12.6.2.17.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.17.2 | Default policy for signed applications . . . . .                                   | 328 |
| 12.6.2.17.3 | Permission request syntax . . . . .  | 328 |
| 12.6.2.18   | Privileged Runtime Code Extension Permission . . . . .                             | 328 |
| 12.6.2.18.1 | Unsigned Applications . . . . .  | 329 |
| 12.6.2.18.2 | Signed applications with no permission request file . . . . .                      | 329 |
| 12.6.2.18.3 | Signed applications with a permission request file . . . . .                       | 329 |
| 12.6.2.18.4 | Permission request syntax . . . . .  | 329 |
| 12.6.2.19   | Application storage . . . . .  | 329 |
| 12.6.2.19.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 329 |
| 12.6.2.19.2 | Default policy for signed applications . . . . .                                   | 329 |
| 12.6.2.19.3 | Permission request syntax . . . . .  | 329 |
| 12.6.2.20   | Non-CA smart card access . . . . .   | 330 |
| 12.6.2.20.1 | Unsigned applications . . . . .  | 330 |
| 12.6.2.20.2 | Default policy for signed applications . . . . .                                   | 330 |
| 12.6.2.20.3 | Permission request syntax . . . . .  | 330 |
| 12.7        | Example of creating an application that can be authenticated . . . . .             | 330 |
| 12.7.1      | Scenario Example . . . . .   | 330 |
| 12.7.2      | Hashes and signature computations: . . . . .                                       | 331 |
| 12.7.2.1    | Computation of the hashes of the root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses directory . . . . . | 331 |
| 12.7.2.2    | Computation of the hashes of the of root/Xlet1/classes directory . . . . .         | 331 |
| 12.7.2.3    | Computation of the hashes of the of root/Xlet1 directory . . . . .                 | 332 |

|              |  |     |
|--------------|--|-----|
| 12.7.2.4     | Computation of the signature. . . . .                          | 332 |
| 12.8         | MHP certification procedures . . . . .                         | 333 |
| 12.9         | Certificate management. . . . .                                | 333 |
| 12.9.1       | Certificate Revocation Lists . . . . .                         | 333 |
| 12.9.1.1     | Introduction (informative) . . . . .                           | 333 |
| 12.9.1.2     | Distribution of CRLs (informative) . . . . .                   | 333 |
| 12.9.1.2.1   | Distribution via return channel. . . . .                       | 333 |
| 12.9.1.2.2   | Distribution via MPEG stream. . . . .                          | 333 |
| 12.9.1.3     | CRL retention . . . . .  | 334 |
| 12.9.1.3.1   | Requirement . . . . .  | 334 |
| 12.9.1.3.2   | Storage requirement . . . . .                                  | 334 |
| 12.9.1.3.3   | Storage management . . . . .                                   | 334 |
| 12.9.1.4     | CRL file location and naming convention. . . . .               | 334 |
| 12.9.1.5     | Operational model . . . . .                                    | 334 |
| 12.9.1.6     | Examples . . . . .   | 335 |
| 12.9.1.6.1   | Revocation of a broadcaster's certificate . . . . .            | 335 |
| 12.9.1.6.2   | Revocation of a CA's certificate. . . . .                      | 335 |
| 12.9.1.7     | CRL format . . . . .   | 335 |
| 12.9.1.8     | Profile of CRL . . . . .                                       | 336 |
| 12.9.1.9     | CRL Processing . . . . .                                       | 336 |
| 12.9.2       | Root certificate management. . . . .                           | 337 |
| 12.9.2.1     | Introduction . . . . .   | 337 |
| 12.9.2.2     | Security of RCMM . . . . .                                     | 337 |
| 12.9.2.3     | Format of RCMM . . . . .                                       | 337 |
| 12.9.2.4     | Distribution of RCMM . . . . .                                 | 338 |
| 12.9.2.5     | RCMM Processing. . . . .                                       | 338 |
| 12.9.2.6     | Example: Renewal of a root certificate . . . . .               | 339 |
| 12.9.3       | Test certificates . . . . .                                    | 339 |
| 12.10        | Security on the return channel. . . . .                        | 339 |
| 12.10.1      | MHP functionality . . . . .                                    | 340 |
| 12.10.2      | TLS cipher suites. . . . .                                     | 340 |
| 12.10.3      | Downloading of certificates for TLS. . . . .                   | 340 |
| 12.10.3.1    | Introduction . . . . .   | 340 |
| 12.10.3.2    | Usage of certificate in TLS . . . . .                          | 341 |
| 12.10.3.2.1  | When certificates are delivered with the application . . . . . | 341 |
| 12.10.3.2.2  | When no certificates are provided . . . . .                    | 341 |
| 12.10.3.2.3  | CRL distribution points . . . . .                              | 341 |
| 12.11        | The internet profile of X.509 (informative) . . . . .          | 342 |
| 12.11.1      | Main part of the certificate . . . . .                         | 342 |
| 12.11.1.1    | Certificate. . . . .   | 342 |
| 12.11.1.2    | signatureAlgorithm . . . . .                                   | 342 |
| 12.11.1.3    | signatureValue . . . . .                                       | 342 |
| 12.11.1.4    | tbsCertificate . . . . .                                       | 342 |
| 12.11.1.5    | version . . . . .  | 343 |
| 12.11.1.6    | serialNumber . . . . .   | 343 |
| 12.11.1.7    | signature. . . . .   | 343 |
| 12.11.1.8    | issuer . . . . .   | 343 |
| 12.11.1.9    | validity . . . . .   | 344 |
| 12.11.1.9.1  | UTCTime . . . . .  | 344 |
| 12.11.1.9.2  | GeneralizedTime . . . . .                                      | 344 |
| 12.11.1.10   | subject . . . . .  | 344 |
| 12.11.1.10.1 | issuerUniqueID . . . . .                                       | 345 |
| 12.11.1.10.2 | subjectUniqueID . . . . .                                      | 345 |
| 12.11.1.11   | SubjectPublic Key Info . . . . .                               | 345 |
| 12.11.1.12   | Unique Identifiers . . . . .                                   | 345 |
| 12.11.1.13   | Extensions . . . . .   | 346 |
| 12.11.2      | Standard certificate extensions . . . . .                      | 346 |
| 12.11.2.1    | Authority key identifier . . . . .                             | 346 |
| 12.11.2.2    | Subject key identifier . . . . .                               | 346 |

|            |   |     |
|------------|---|-----|
| 12.11.2.3  | Key usage . . . . .   | 346 |
| 12.11.2.4  | Private key usage period . . . . .  | 346 |
| 12.11.2.5  | Certificate policies . . . . .  | 347 |
| 12.11.2.6  | Policy mappings . . . . .   | 347 |
| 12.11.2.7  | Subject Alternative Name . . . . .  | 347 |
| 12.11.2.8  | Issuer Alternative Name . . . . .   | 348 |
| 12.11.2.9  | Subject Directory attributes . . . . .                                      | 348 |
| 12.11.2.10 | Basic Constraints . . . . .   | 348 |
| 12.11.2.11 | Name Constraints . . . . .  | 348 |
| 12.11.2.12 | Policy Constraints . . . . .  | 348 |
| 12.11.2.13 | Extended key usage field . . . . .  | 349 |
| 12.11.2.14 | CRL Distribution points . . . . .   | 349 |
| 12.12      | Platform minima . . . . .   | 349 |
| 12.13      | Plug-ins . . . . .  | 350 |
| 12.14      | Applications loaded from an interaction channel . . . . .                   | 350 |
| 12.14.1    | Permission for application loading from the return channel . . . . .        | 350 |
| 12.15      | Stored applications . . . . .   | 350 |
| 12.16      | Inner applications and content embedded within other applications . . . . . | 351 |
| 13         | Graphics reference model . . . . .  | 352 |
| 13.1       | Introduction . . . . .  | 352 |
| 13.1.1     | Interapplication interaction . . . . .                                      | 352 |
| 13.2       | General Issues . . . . .  | 353 |
| 13.2.1     | Coordinate Spaces . . . . .   | 353 |
| 13.2.1.1   | Normalised screen space . . . . .   | 353 |
| 13.2.1.2   | User space . . . . .  | 354 |
| 13.2.1.3   | Pixel Aspect Ratio . . . . .  | 356 |
| 13.2.1.4   | Video space . . . . .   | 357 |
| 13.3       | Graphics . . . . .  | 357 |
| 13.3.1     | Modelling of the MHP display stack composition . . . . .                    | 357 |
| 13.3.2     | AWT Reference Model in the MHP . . . . .                                    | 360 |
| 13.3.3     | HAVi devices and AWT components . . . . .                                   | 360 |
| 13.3.3.1   | Video and graphics pixel aligned . . . . .                                  | 362 |
| 13.3.3.2   | Zero graphics impact . . . . .  | 362 |
| 13.3.4     | Composition . . . . .   | 362 |
| 13.3.4.1   | AWT paint rule . . . . .  | 362 |
| 13.3.5     | Composition Rules . . . . .   | 363 |
| 13.3.5.1   | Components generally . . . . .  | 363 |
| 13.3.6     | Extensions to the AWT graphics capabilities . . . . .                       | 364 |
| 13.3.6.1   | Graphics Objects in the MHP . . . . .                                       | 364 |
| 13.3.6.2   | Buffered Image . . . . .  | 364 |
| 13.3.6.3   | DVBColor . . . . .  | 364 |
| 13.3.6.3.1 | Modified packed colour representation . . . . .                             | 365 |
| 13.3.7     | 14:9 Aspect Ratio Support . . . . .   | 365 |
| 13.4       | Video . . . . .   | 365 |
| 13.4.1     | Component-based players and background players . . . . .                    | 365 |
| 13.4.2     | Modelling MPEG decoding and presentation pipeline . . . . .                 | 366 |
| 13.4.3     | Coordinate Spaces . . . . .   | 367 |
| 13.4.4     | Video components . . . . .  | 368 |
| 13.5       | Subtitles . . . . .   | 369 |
| 13.5.1     | Language and presentation setting . . . . .                                 | 369 |
| 13.5.2     | Relation to graphics . . . . .  | 369 |
| 13.5.3     | Coordinate Spaces . . . . .   | 369 |
| 13.6       | Approximations . . . . .  | 370 |
| 13.6.1     | Approximations in composition . . . . .                                     | 370 |
| 13.6.1.1   | Implementation of modes . . . . .   | 370 |
| 13.6.1.1.1 | Graphics directly over video . . . . .                                      | 370 |
| 13.6.1.1.2 | Graphics over other graphics . . . . .                                      | 370 |
| 13.6.1.2   | Approximation of alpha . . . . .  | 372 |
| 13.6.1.3   | Approximation of colour . . . . .   | 372 |

|  |  |            |
|--|--|------------|
| 14   | System integration aspects . . . . .   | 373        |
| 14.1   | Namespace mapping (DVB Locator) . . . . .  | 373        |
| 14.1.1   | dvb_entity = dvb_service . . . . .   | 373        |
| 14.1.2   | dvb_entity = dvb_service_component . . . . .   | 374        |
| 14.1.3   | dvb_hier_part = dvb_abs_path . . . . .   | 374        |
| 14.1.4   | dvb_abs_path . . . . .   | 374        |
| 14.1.5   | dvb_entity = dvb_transport_stream . . . . .  | 374        |
| 14.2   | Reserved names . . . . .   | 374        |
| 14.3   | XML notation . . . . .   | 375        |
| 14.4   | Network signalling . . . . .   | 377        |
| 14.5   | Text encoding of application identifiers . . . . .                                       | 377        |
| 14.6   | Filename requirements . . . . .  | 378        |
| 14.6.1   | Persistent storage . . . . .   | 378        |
| 14.6.2   | DSMCC object carousel . . . . .  | 378        |
| 14.7   | Files and file names . . . . .   | 379        |
| 14.8   | Locators and content referencing . . . . .   | 379        |
| 14.9   | Service identification . . . . .   | 380        |
| 14.9.1   | Syntax of the textual service identifier . . . . .                                       | 381        |
| 14.9.2   | Handling of the textual service identifiers within the MHP terminal . . . . .            | 381        |
| 14.10  | CA system . . . . .  | 382        |
| 14.10.1  | Service selection . . . . .  | 382        |
| 14.10.2  | Media component selection . . . . .  | 382        |
| 14.10.3  | Non-media component selection . . . . .  | 382        |
| 15   | Detailed platform profile definitions . . . . .  | 383        |
| 15.1   | PNG - restrictions . . . . .   | 385        |
| 15.1.1   | PNG Aspect ratios . . . . .  | 385        |
| 15.2   | Minimum media formats supported by DVB-J APIs . . . . .                                  | 386        |
| 15.3   | JPEG - restrictions . . . . .  | 386        |
| 15.4   | Locale support . . . . .   | 386        |
| 15.5   | Video raster format dependencies . . . . .   | 386        |
| 15.5.1   | 25 Hz standard definition . . . . .  | 386        |
| 15.5.1.1   | Logical pixel resolution . . . . .   | 386        |
| 16   | Registry of Constants . . . . .  | 387        |
| 16.1   | System constants . . . . .   | 387        |
| 16.2   | DVB-J constants . . . . .  | 387        |
| 16.2.1   | Public and Protected final static primitive fields from DVB packages . . . . .           | 387        |
| 16.2.2   | Public and Protected final static primitive fields from standard Java packages . . . . . | 390        |
| 17   | Internet access clients . . . . .  | 391        |
| 17.1   | Referencing DVB services and content within WWW content . . . . .                        | 391        |
| 17.2   | Minimum requirements for internet clients . . . . .                                      | 391        |
| 17.3   | Internet streamed media . . . . .  | 391        |
| 17.4   | Internet Connection Management . . . . .   | 392        |
| <b>Annex A (normative): External references; errata, clarifications and exemptions . . . . .</b> |  | <b>393</b> |
| A.1  | JAE 1.1.8 API [31] . . . . .   | 393        |
| A.1.1  | java.lang.ThreadGroup.getParent() . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.2  | java.net.URLConnection.setFileNameMap . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.3  | java.util.Locale.setDefault . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.4  | java.lang.Class . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.5  | java.awt.Font . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.6  | java.io.PrintStream . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.7  | java.io.Serializable . . . . .   | 393        |
| A.1.8  | java.io.ObjectStreamConstants . . . . .  | 393        |
| A.1.9  | java.net.SocketOptions . . . . .   | 394        |
| A.1.10   | java.util.zip.ZipConstants . . . . .   | 394        |
| A.1.11   | Component . . . . .  | 394        |
| A.1.12   | java.awt.event.KeyEvent . . . . .  | 394        |
| A.1.13   | java.awt.Component . . . . .   | 394        |

|          |   |     |
|----------|---|-----|
| A.1.13.1 | java.awt.Component.update(Graphics) . . . . .                   | 394 |
| A.1.13.2 | java.awt.Component.repaint() . . . . .                          | 394 |
| A.1.13.3 | java.awt.Component.repaint(long) . . . . .                      | 395 |
| A.1.13.4 | java.awt.Component.repaint(int, int, int, int). . . . .         | 395 |
| A.1.14   | java.lang.Thread . . . . .                                      | 395 |
| A.1.15   | java.lang.Object . . . . .                                      | 395 |
| A.1.16   | java.awt.Graphics . . . . .                                     | 395 |
| A.1.16.1 | drawBytes(byte[], ...) . . . . .                                | 395 |
| A.1.17   | java.lang.Character . . . . .                                   | 395 |
| A.1.18   | java.awt.FontMetrics . . . . .                                  | 395 |
| A.1.19   | General . . . . .   | 395 |
| A.1.19.1 | Unicode version exemption . . . . .                             | 395 |
| A.1.20   | java.net.MulticastSocket.setInterface . . . . .                 | 396 |
| A.2      | <b>Java Language Spec [32].</b> . . . . .                       | 396 |
| A.2.1    | java.lang.ThreadGroup.getParent() . . . . .                     | 396 |
| A.2.2    | java.lang.Runtime.runFinalizersOnExit() . . . . .               | 396 |
| A.2.3    | java.lang.System.runFinalizersOnExit() . . . . .                | 396 |
| A.3      | <b>Java Media Player Specification [33]</b> . . . . .           | 396 |
| A.3.1    | javax.media.protocol.URLDataSource.sources . . . . .            | 396 |
| A.3.2    | javax.media.protocol.ContentDescriptor . . . . .                | 396 |
| A.3.2.1  | getContentType . . . . .  | 396 |
| A.3.2.2  | mimeTypeToPackageName . . . . .                                 | 396 |
| A.4      | <b>Java VM [34].</b> . . . . .                                  | 396 |
| A.5      | <b>Java TV [51]</b> . . . . .                                   | 397 |
| A.5.1    | javax.tv.service.selection . . . . .                            | 397 |
| A.5.1.1  | PresentationTerminatedEvent . . . . .                           | 397 |
| A.5.1.2  | ServiceContext.select( Locator [] ) . . . . .                   | 397 |
| A.5.1.3  | ServiceContext.getServiceContentHandlers . . . . .              | 398 |
| A.5.1.4  | ServiceContextPermission . . . . .                              | 398 |
| A.5.2    | javax.tv.util.TVTimer . . . . .                                 | 398 |
| A.5.2.1  | scheduleTimerSpec(TVTimerSpec) . . . . .                        | 398 |
| A.5.2.2  | deschedule(TVTimerSpec) . . . . .                               | 399 |
| A.5.3    | javax.tv.util.TVTimerSpec . . . . .                             | 399 |
| A.5.3.1  | setAbsoluteTime(long) . . . . .                                 | 399 |
| A.5.3.2  | setTime(long) . . . . .   | 399 |
| A.5.4    | javax.tv.xlet.Xlet . . . . .                                    | 399 |
| A.5.4.1  | Xlet state descriptions . . . . .                               | 399 |
| A.5.4.2  | initXlet . . . . .  | 399 |
| A.5.5    | javax.tv.graphics.AlphaColor . . . . .                          | 399 |
| A.5.6    | javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl . . . . .                     | 400 |
| A.5.6.1  | addMediaSelectListener . . . . .                                | 400 |
| A.5.6.2  | Class Description . . . . .                                     | 400 |
| A.5.6.3  | All methods throwing InvalidServiceComponentException . . . . . | 400 |
| A.5.7    | javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer . . . . .                         | 400 |
| A.5.7.1  | getRootContainer . . . . .                                      | 400 |
| A.5.8    | javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceList . . . . .               | 400 |
| A.5.9    | javax.tv.service.SIManager . . . . .                            | 400 |
| A.5.9.1  | getService . . . . .  | 400 |
| A.5.9.2  | retrieveSIElement . . . . .                                     | 400 |
| A.5.9.3  | retrieveProgramEvent . . . . .                                  | 401 |
| A.5.10   | javax.tv.service.SIElement.getServiceInformationType . . . . .  | 401 |
| A.5.11   | retrieveProgramEvent(Locator, SIRequestor) . . . . .            | 401 |
| A.6      | <b>DAVIC 1.4.1p9 [3]</b> . . . . .                              | 401 |
| A.6.1    | org.davic.mpeg . . . . .  | 401 |
| A.6.1.1  | General . . . . .   | 401 |
| A.6.1.2  | NotAuthorizedException . . . . .                                | 401 |
| A.6.2    | Chapter 9, Application Format . . . . .                         | 403 |
| A.6.2.1  | Section 9.4.7. "The MPEG-2 Section Filter API" . . . . .        | 403 |
| A.6.3    | org.davic.mpeg.dvb . . . . .                                    | 404 |

|            |   |     |
|------------|---|-----|
| A.6.3.1    | General . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4      | org.davic.mpeg.sections . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.1    | RingSectionFilter . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.2    | Section . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.2.1  | clone() . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.2.2  | getData() . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.2.3  | getFullStatus() . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.2.4  | Class Description . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.3    | SectionFilter . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.3.1  | Cross reference error . . . . .   | 404 |
| A.6.4.3.2  | startFiltering( all signatures ) . . . . .  | 404 |
| A.6.4.3.3  | startFiltering(java.lang.Object, int, int, int, byte[], byte[]) . . . . .   | 405 |
| A.6.4.3.4  | startFiltering (appData, pid, tableId) exceptions . . . . .   | 405 |
| A.6.4.3.5  | Started Section Filters . . . . .   | 405 |
| A.6.4.4    | SectionFilterGroup . . . . .  | 405 |
| A.6.4.4.1  | attach . . . . .  | 405 |
| A.6.4.4.2  | Constructors . . . . .  | 405 |
| A.6.4.4.3  | sectionSize . . . . .   | 405 |
| A.6.4.4.4  | newRingSectionFilter . . . . .  | 405 |
| A.6.4.4.5  | Constructor(int, boolean) . . . . .   | 405 |
| A.6.4.5    | TimeOutEvent . . . . .  | 405 |
|            | TimeOutEvent . . . . .  | 406 |
| A.6.5      | Simple Section Filter . . . . .   | 407 |
| A.6.6      | org.davic.media . . . . .   | 407 |
| A.6.6.1    | FreezeControl.resume() . . . . .  | 407 |
| A.6.6.2    | MediaTimePositionChangedEvent . . . . .   | 407 |
| A.6.6.3    | NotAuthorizedMediaException . . . . .   | 407 |
| A.6.6.4    | LanguageControl . . . . .   | 408 |
| A.6.7      | org.davic.net . . . . .   | 409 |
| A.6.7.1    | InvalidLocatorException . . . . .   | 409 |
| A.6.7.2    | Locator . . . . .   | 409 |
| A.6.7.2.1  | Locator() . . . . .   | 409 |
| A.6.7.2.2  | toExternalForm() . . . . .  | 410 |
| A.6.7.3    | tuning . . . . .  | 410 |
| A.6.7.3.1  | NetworkInterfaceController . . . . .  | 410 |
| A.6.7.3.2  | NetworkInterface . . . . .  | 410 |
| A.6.7.4    | ca . . . . .  | 411 |
| A.6.7.4.1  | CAMessage . . . . .   | 411 |
| A.6.7.4.2  | CAModule . . . . .  | 411 |
| A.6.7.4.3  | CAModuleManager . . . . .   | 414 |
| A.6.7.4.4  | NoFreeCapacityException . . . . .   | 415 |
| A.6.7.4.5  | MMIOObject . . . . .  | 415 |
| A.6.7.4.6  | DescramblerProxy . . . . .  | 416 |
| A.6.7.4.7  | StartMMIEvent(MMIOObject, int, java.lang.Object) . . . . .  | 418 |
| A.6.7.4.8  | ModuleResponseEvent . . . . .   | 418 |
| A.6.7.4.9  | NewModuleEvent . . . . .  | 418 |
| A.6.7.4.10 | PIDChangeEvent . . . . .  | 418 |
| A.6.7.4.11 | TuneRequestEvent . . . . .  | 419 |
| A.6.7.4.12 | DescramblingStartedEvent . . . . .  | 420 |
| A.6.7.4.13 | DescramblingStoppedEvent . . . . .  | 420 |
| A.6.7.5    | dvb.DvbLocator(int onid, int tsid, int serviceid, int eventid,<br>int componenttags[], String filePath) . . . . . | 420 |
| A.6.7.6    | dvb.DvbLocator . . . . .  | 420 |
| A.6.7.6.1  | DvbLocator(int, int, int, int, int[]) . . . . .   | 420 |
| A.6.7.6.2  | Additional method . . . . .   | 420 |
| A.6.7.6.3  | getOriginalNetworkId . . . . .  | 420 |
| A.6.8      | org.davic.net.tuning . . . . .  | 420 |
| A.6.8.1    | Figure H-1 . . . . .  | 420 |
| A.6.8.2    | Figure H-2 . . . . .  | 421 |

|            |  |     |
|------------|--|-----|
| A.6.9      | Extensibility and Over-Riding . . . . .                                  | 421 |
| A.7        | HAVi [50] . . . . .  | 421 |
| A.7.1      | Drafting conventions . . . . .   | 421 |
| A.7.2      | General . . . . .  | 421 |
| A.7.2.1    | Thread-safety . . . . .  | 421 |
| A.7.2.2    | javadoc errors . . . . .   | 421 |
| A.7.3      | Event mechanism . . . . .  | 421 |
| A.7.3.1    | Introduction . . . . .   | 421 |
| A.7.3.2    | Overview of HAVi events . . . . .  | 422 |
| A.7.3.3    | Relation between HAVi events and AWT events . . . . .                    | 423 |
| A.7.3.4    | Application guidelines . . . . .   | 424 |
| A.7.4      | org.havi.ui . . . . .  | 424 |
| A.7.4.1    | HActionable . . . . .  | 424 |
| A.7.4.1.1  | getActionSound . . . . .   | 424 |
| A.7.4.2    | HActionInputPreferred . . . . .  | 424 |
| A.7.4.3    | HAdjustmentInputPreferred . . . . .                                      | 424 |
| A.7.4.3.1  | Interface description . . . . .  | 424 |
| A.7.4.3.2  | getAdjustMode . . . . .  | 424 |
| A.7.4.3.3  | processHAdjustmentEvent . . . . .  | 425 |
| A.7.4.3.4  | setAdjustMode . . . . .  | 425 |
| A.7.4.4    | HAdjustmentValue . . . . .   | 425 |
| A.7.4.4.1  | Class description . . . . .  | 425 |
| A.7.4.4.2  | getAdjustmentSound . . . . .   | 425 |
| A.7.4.4.3  | getBlockIncrement . . . . .  | 425 |
| A.7.4.4.4  | getUnitIncrement . . . . .   | 425 |
| A.7.4.5    | HAnimateEffect . . . . .   | 425 |
| A.7.4.5.1  | getRepeatCount . . . . .   | 425 |
| A.7.4.6    | HBackgroundDevice . . . . .  | 425 |
| A.7.4.6.1  | setBackgroundConfiguration . . . . .                                     | 425 |
| A.7.4.6.2  | getConfigurations . . . . .  | 425 |
| A.7.4.7    | HBackgroundImage . . . . .   | 426 |
| A.7.4.7.1  | Constructors - HBackgroundImage(String), HBackgroundImage(URL) . . . . . | 426 |
| A.7.4.7.2  | load . . . . .   | 426 |
| A.7.4.7.3  | Constructor(byte[]). . . . .   | 426 |
| A.7.4.8    | HComponent . . . . .   | 426 |
| A.7.4.8.1  | processEvent . . . . .   | 426 |
| A.7.4.9    | HComponentOrdering . . . . .   | 426 |
| A.7.4.9.1  | addAfter, addBefore . . . . .  | 426 |
| A.7.4.10   | HEventMulticaster . . . . .  | 426 |
| A.7.4.10.1 | Class description . . . . .  | 426 |
| A.7.4.10.2 | Constructor . . . . .  | 427 |
| A.7.4.10.3 | remove . . . . .   | 427 |
| A.7.4.11   | HFontCapabilities . . . . .  | 427 |
| A.7.4.11.1 | getSupportedCharacterRanges . . . . .                                    | 427 |
| A.7.4.12   | HGraphicsDevice . . . . .  | 427 |
| A.7.4.12.1 | getBestConfiguration . . . . .   | 427 |
| A.7.4.12.2 | setGraphicsConfiguration . . . . .                                       | 427 |
| A.7.4.12.3 | getConfigurations . . . . .  | 427 |
| A.7.4.13   | HGraphicsConfigTemplate . . . . .  | 428 |
| A.7.4.13.1 | setPreference . . . . .  | 428 |
| A.7.4.14   | HListElement . . . . .   | 428 |
| A.7.4.14.1 | Class description . . . . .  | 428 |
| A.7.4.15   | HListGroup . . . . .   | 428 |
| A.7.4.15.1 | Class description . . . . .  | 428 |
| A.7.4.15.2 | Fields . . . . .   | 428 |
| A.7.4.15.3 | Use of "action" and "actioning" . . . . .                                | 429 |
| A.7.4.15.4 | addItem(HListItem item, int index) . . . . .                             | 429 |
| A.7.4.15.5 | addItem(HListItem items[], int index) . . . . .                          | 429 |
| A.7.4.15.6 | getIconSize . . . . .  | 429 |

|             |  |     |
|-------------|--|-----|
| A.7.4.15.7  | getLabelSize . . . . .   | 429 |
| A.7.4.15.8  | getOrientation . . . . .   | 429 |
| A.7.4.15.9  | setFocusTraversal . . . . .  | 430 |
| A.7.4.15.10 | setItemSelected . . . . .  | 430 |
| A.7.4.15.11 | setIconSize . . . . .  | 430 |
| A.7.4.15.12 | setLabelSize . . . . .   | 430 |
| A.7.4.15.13 | setListContent . . . . .   | 430 |
| A.7.4.15.14 | setMove . . . . .  | 431 |
| A.7.4.15.15 | setScrollPosition . . . . .  | 431 |
| A.7.4.15.16 | setSelectionMode . . . . .   | 431 |
| A.7.4.15.17 | removeItem . . . . .   | 431 |
| A.7.4.15.18 | removeAllItems . . . . .   | 431 |
| A.7.4.15.19 | setCurrentItem . . . . .   | 431 |
| A.7.4.15.20 | setMultiSelection . . . . .  | 432 |
| A.7.4.16    | HListGroupLook . . . . .   | 432 |
| A.7.4.16.1  | getMaximumSize . . . . .   | 432 |
| A.7.4.16.2  | getMinimumSize . . . . .   | 432 |
| A.7.4.16.3  | getPreferredSize . . . . .   | 433 |
| A.7.4.16.4  | getValue . . . . .   | 433 |
| A.7.4.16.5  | hitTest . . . . .  | 433 |
| A.7.4.16.6  | showLook . . . . .   | 434 |
| A.7.4.16.7  | Class description . . . . .  | 435 |
| A.7.4.16.8  | showLook and renderVisible . . . . .                               | 435 |
| A.7.4.16.9  | renderVisible . . . . .  | 435 |
| A.7.4.17    | HLook . . . . .  | 435 |
| A.7.4.17.1  | General . . . . .  | 435 |
| A.7.4.17.2  | Class description . . . . .  | 435 |
| A.7.4.17.3  | getPreferredSize . . . . .   | 435 |
| A.7.4.17.4  | showLook . . . . .   | 435 |
| A.7.4.18    | HMultilineEntry . . . . .  | 436 |
| A.7.4.19    | HMultilineEntryLook . . . . .                                      | 436 |
| A.7.4.19.1  | getCaretCharPositionForLine . . . . .                              | 436 |
| A.7.4.19.2  | getSoftLineBreakPositions . . . . .                                | 436 |
| A.7.4.19.3  | getVisibleSoftLineBreakPositions . . . . .                         | 436 |
| A.7.4.20    | HNavigable . . . . .   | 436 |
| A.7.4.20.1  | Class description . . . . .  | 436 |
| A.7.4.20.2  | setMove . . . . .  | 436 |
| A.7.4.20.3  | setFocusTraversal . . . . .  | 436 |
| A.7.4.21    | HOrientable . . . . .  | 436 |
| A.7.4.21.1  | Interface description . . . . .                                    | 436 |
| A.7.4.21.2  | getOrientation . . . . .   | 437 |
| A.7.4.21.3  | setOrientation . . . . .   | 437 |
| A.7.4.22    | HScene . . . . .   | 437 |
| A.7.4.22.1  | addAfter, addBefore . . . . .                                      | 437 |
| A.7.4.22.2  | getFocusOwner . . . . .  | 437 |
| A.7.4.22.3  | Rendering behavior . . . . .                                       | 437 |
| A.7.4.23    | HScreenConfigurationListener . . . . .                             | 437 |
| A.7.4.24    | HSceneFactory . . . . .  | 438 |
| A.7.4.24.1  | getDefaultHScene . . . . .   | 438 |
| A.7.4.24.2  | Class Description . . . . .  | 438 |
| A.7.4.25    | HSelectionInputPreferred . . . . .                                 | 438 |
| A.7.4.25.1  | Interface description . . . . .                                    | 438 |
| A.7.4.25.2  | getSelectionMode . . . . .   | 438 |
| A.7.4.25.3  | processHItemEvent . . . . .  | 438 |
| A.7.4.25.4  | setSelectionMode . . . . .   | 439 |
| A.7.4.26    | HSingleLineEntry . . . . .   | 439 |
| A.7.4.26.1  | Class description . . . . .  | 439 |
| A.7.4.26.2  | Default parameter values not exposed in the constructors . . . . . | 439 |
| A.7.4.26.3  | setType(int) . . . . .   | 439 |



|            |   |     |
|------------|---|-----|
| A.7.4.26.4 | getValidInput . . . . .                                       | 439 |
| A.7.4.27   | HStaticAnimation . . . . .                                    | 440 |
| A.7.4.28   | HStaticRange . . . . .  | 440 |
| A.7.4.28.1 | Fields . . . . .  | 440 |
| A.7.4.28.2 | getOrientation. . . . .                                       | 440 |
| A.7.4.28.3 | setBehavior. . . . .  | 440 |
| A.7.4.28.4 | setRange. . . . .   | 440 |
| A.7.4.28.5 | setThumbOffsets . . . . .                                     | 440 |
| A.7.4.28.6 | setValue . . . . .  | 441 |
| A.7.4.29   | HVideoDevice . . . . .  | 441 |
| A.7.4.29.1 | getBestConfiguration . . . . .                                | 441 |
| A.7.4.29.2 | setVideoConfiguration . . . . .                               | 441 |
| A.7.4.29.3 | getVideoController. . . . .                                   | 441 |
| A.7.4.29.4 | setVideoConfiguration . . . . .                               | 441 |
| A.7.4.29.5 | getConfigurations. . . . .                                    | 441 |
| A.7.4.30   | HVisible . . . . .  | 442 |
| A.7.4.30.1 | Class description . . . . .                                   | 442 |
| A.7.4.30.2 | Constructors . . . . .  | 442 |
| A.7.4.30.3 | setDefaultSize . . . . .                                      | 442 |
| A.7.4.30.4 | setLookData . . . . .   | 442 |
| A.7.4.30.5 | setResizeMode . . . . .                                       | 442 |
| A.7.4.30.6 | setTextContent . . . . .                                      | 443 |
| A.7.4.30.7 | NO_DEFAULT_SIZE . . . . .                                     | 443 |
| A.7.4.31   | HVideoConfigTemplate. . . . .                                 | 443 |
| A.7.4.31.1 | setPreference . . . . .                                       | 443 |
| A.7.4.32   | HVideoComponent . . . . .                                     | 443 |
| A.7.4.33   | HBackgroundConfiguration. . . . .                             | 443 |
| A.7.4.33.1 | setColor . . . . .  | 443 |
| A.7.4.33.2 | getConfigTemplate. . . . .                                    | 443 |
| A.7.4.34   | HScreenDevice . . . . .                                       | 443 |
| A.7.4.34.1 | reserveDevice. . . . .  | 443 |
| A.7.4.35   | HImageMatte . . . . .   | 444 |
| A.7.4.35.1 | setMatteData . . . . .  | 444 |
| A.7.4.36   | HVersion . . . . .  | 444 |
| A.7.4.36.1 | General . . . . .   | 444 |
| A.7.4.36.2 | MHP Specific Clarification . . . . .                          | 444 |
| A.7.4.36.3 | Field descriptions . . . . .                                  | 444 |
| A.7.4.37   | HKeyboardInputPreferred . . . . .                             | 445 |
| A.7.4.37.1 | INPUT_NUMERIC . . . . .                                       | 445 |
| A.7.4.37.2 | INPUT_ALPHA. . . . .  | 445 |
| A.7.4.37.3 | getValidInput . . . . .                                       | 445 |
| A.7.4.38   | HScreenConfigTemplate . . . . .                               | 445 |
| A.7.4.38.1 | Class description . . . . .                                   | 445 |
| A.7.4.39   | HGraphicsConfiguration . . . . .                              | 445 |
| A.7.4.39.1 | getConfigTemplate. . . . .                                    | 445 |
| A.7.4.40   | HVideoConfiguration . . . . .                                 | 446 |
| A.7.4.40.1 | getConfigTemplate. . . . .                                    | 446 |
| A.7.4.41   | HToggleButton . . . . .                                       | 446 |
| A.7.4.41.1 | Default parameter values exposed in the constructors. . . . . | 446 |
| A.7.4.42   | HGraphicButton. . . . .                                       | 446 |
| A.7.4.42.1 | Default parameter values exposed in the constructors. . . . . | 446 |
| A.7.4.43   | HTextButton . . . . .   | 446 |
| A.7.4.43.1 | Default parameter values exposed in the constructors. . . . . | 446 |
| A.7.4.44   | HLook and classes implementing HLook . . . . .                | 446 |
| A.7.4.45   | HTextLook. . . . .  | 446 |
| A.7.4.45.1 | General . . . . .   | 446 |
| A.7.4.46   | HExtendedLook . . . . .                                       | 447 |
|            | HExtendedLook . . . . .                                       | 447 |
| A.7.4.47   | HAnimateLook, HGraphicLook, HListGroupLook,                   |     |

|   |  |            |
|---|--|------------|
|   | HMultilineEntryLook, HRangeLook,<br>HSinglelineEntryLook and HTextLook. .... | 449        |
| A.7.5   | org.havi.ui.event .....  | 449        |
| A.7.5.1   | HActionEvent .....   | 449        |
| A.7.5.2   | HItemEvent .....   | 450        |
| A.7.5.2.1   | Constructor .....  | 450        |
| A.7.5.2.2   | ITEM_SET_CURRENT .....   | 450        |
| A.7.5.3   | HKeyEvent .....  | 450        |
| A.7.5.3.1   | Constructors .....   | 450        |
| A.7.5.4   | HReEvent .....   | 450        |
| A.7.5.5   | HReCapabilities .....  | 450        |
| A.7.5.6   | HEventGroup .....  | 451        |
| A.7.5.6.1   | getKeyEvents .....   | 451        |
| A.7.6   | References to ISO/IEC10646-1:1993 .....                                      | 451        |
| A.8   | ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26] .....   | 451        |
| A.8.1   | Reconstruction of NPT .....  | 451        |
| A.9   | JAE 1.1.8 const [72] .....   | 451        |
| A.10  | CSS 2 [101] .....  | 451        |
| <b>Annex B (normative): Object carousel .....</b> |  | <b>453</b> |
| B.1   | Introduction .....   | 453        |
| B.1.1   | Key to notation .....  | 453        |
| B.2   | Object Carousel Profile .....  | 453        |
| B.2.1   | DSM-CC Sections .....  | 453        |
| B.2.1.1   | Sections per TS packet .....   | 454        |
| B.2.2   | Data Carousel .....  | 454        |
| B.2.2.1   | General .....  | 454        |
| B.2.2.2   | DownloadInfoIndication .....   | 454        |
| B.2.2.3   | DownloadServerInitiate .....   | 454        |
| B.2.2.4   | ModuleInfo .....   | 455        |
| B.2.2.4.1   | Label descriptor .....   | 456        |
| B.2.2.4.2   | Caching priority descriptor .....  | 456        |
| B.2.2.5   | ServiceGatewayInfo .....   | 457        |
| B.2.2.6   | Download Cancel .....  | 458        |
| B.2.3   | The Object Carousel .....  | 458        |
| B.2.3.1   | BIOP Generic Object Message .....  | 458        |
| B.2.3.2   | CORBA strings .....  | 458        |
| B.2.3.3   | BIOP FileMessage .....   | 459        |
| B.2.3.4   | Content type descriptor .....  | 460        |
| B.2.3.5   | BIOP DirectoryMessage .....  | 460        |
| B.2.3.6   | BIOP ServiceGateway message .....  | 462        |
| B.2.3.7   | BIOP Interoperable Object References .....                                   | 462        |
| B.2.3.7.1   | BIOPProfileBody .....  | 463        |
| B.2.3.7.2   | LiteOptionsProfileBody .....   | 465        |
| B.2.3.8   | BIOP StreamMessage .....   | 467        |
| B.2.3.9   | BIOP StreamEventMessage .....  | 469        |
| B.2.4   | Stream Events .....  | 470        |
| B.2.4.1   | Stream & StreamEvent messages .....  | 470        |
| B.2.4.1.1   | Association with time bases .....  | 470        |
| B.2.4.1.2   | Event names and event ids .....  | 471        |
| B.2.4.1.3   | Stream event life time .....   | 471        |
| B.2.4.2   | Stream Descriptors .....   | 471        |
| B.2.4.2.1   | NPT Reference descriptor .....   | 471        |
| B.2.4.2.2   | Stream event descriptor .....  | 472        |
| B.2.4.2.3   | Unused descriptors .....   | 473        |
| B.2.4.2.4   | Clarification of number encoding .....                                       | 473        |
| B.2.4.3   | DSM-CC Sections carrying Stream Descriptors .....                            | 473        |
| B.2.4.3.1   | Section version number .....   | 473        |
| B.2.4.3.2   | Single firing of "do it now" events .....                                    | 473        |

|                               |  |            |
|-------------------------------|--|------------|
| B.2.4.3.3                     | Section number . . . . .                                 | 473        |
| B.2.4.3.4                     | DSM-CC sections for DSMCC_descriptor_list() . . . . .    | 473        |
| B.2.4.3.5                     | Encoding of table id extension . . . . .                 | 473        |
| B.2.4.4                       | Timebases . . . . .                                      | 474        |
| B.2.4.5                       | Monitoring stream events . . . . .                       | 475        |
| B.2.4.5.1                     | NPT reference monitoring . . . . .                       | 475        |
| B.2.4.5.2                     | Timebase stimulated event monitoring . . . . .           | 475        |
| B.2.4.5.3                     | "do it now" events . . . . .                             | 475        |
| B.2.4.5.4                     | scheduled events . . . . .                               | 475        |
| B.2.4.5.5                     | number of NPT components . . . . .                       | 475        |
| B.2.5                         | Assignment and use of transactionId values . . . . .     | 476        |
| B.2.6                         | Informative Background . . . . .                         | 476        |
| B.2.7                         | DVB semantics of the transactionId field . . . . .       | 476        |
| B.2.8                         | Mapping of objects to data carousel modules . . . . .    | 477        |
| B.2.9                         | Compression of modules . . . . .                         | 477        |
| B.2.10                        | Mounting an Object Carousel . . . . .                    | 478        |
| B.2.10.1                      | carousel_id_descriptor . . . . .                         | 478        |
| B.2.10.2                      | DVB-J mounting of an object carousel . . . . .           | 479        |
| B.2.11                        | Unavailability of a carousel . . . . .                   | 479        |
| B.2.12                        | Delivery of Carousel within multiple services . . . . .  | 480        |
| B.3                           | AssociationTag Mapping . . . . .                         | 481        |
| B.3.1                         | Decision algorithm for association tag mapping . . . . . | 481        |
| B.3.1.1                       | TapUse is <b>not</b> BIOP_PROGRAM_USE . . . . .          | 481        |
| B.3.1.2                       | TapUse <b>is</b> BIOP_PROGRAM_USE . . . . .              | 482        |
| B.3.2                         | DSM-CC association_tags to DVB component_tags . . . . .  | 482        |
| B.3.3                         | deferred_association_tags_descriptor . . . . .           | 482        |
| B.4                           | Example of an Object Carousel (informative) . . . . .    | 483        |
| B.5                           | Caching . . . . .  | 484        |
| B.5.1                         | Determining file version . . . . .                       | 484        |
| B.5.2                         | Transparency levels of caching . . . . .                 | 484        |
| B.5.2.1                       | Transparent caching . . . . .                            | 484        |
| B.5.2.1.1                     | Active caching . . . . .                                 | 485        |
| B.5.2.1.2                     | Passive caching . . . . .                                | 485        |
| B.5.2.1.3                     | DII repetition rate . . . . .                            | 485        |
| B.5.2.2                       | Semi-transparent caching . . . . .                       | 485        |
| B.5.2.2.1                     | Implications for the terminal (informative) . . . . .    | 485        |
| B.5.2.3                       | Static caching . . . . .                                 | 486        |
| B.5.2.3.1                     | Implications for the broadcaster (informative) . . . . . | 486        |
| B.5.2.3.2                     | Implications for the terminal (informative) . . . . .    | 486        |
| <b>Annex C (informative):</b> | <b>References . . . . .</b>                              | <b>487</b> |
| <b>Annex D (normative):</b>   | <b>Text presentation . . . . .</b>                       | <b>488</b> |
| D.1                           | Scope . . . . .  | 488        |
| D.2                           | Fonts . . . . .  | 488        |
| D.2.1                         | Embedded fonts . . . . .                                 | 488        |
| D.2.2                         | Downloaded fonts . . . . .                               | 488        |
| D.2.2.1                       | Font technology . . . . .                                | 488        |
| D.2.2.2                       | Font index files . . . . .                               | 489        |
| D.2.2.2.1                     | Format of file . . . . .                                 | 489        |
| D.2.2.2.2                     | Element semantics . . . . .                              | 489        |
| D.2.2.2.3                     | Example . . . . .  | 490        |
| D.2.2.3                       | Name and location of font index files . . . . .          | 490        |
| D.2.2.3.1                     | General . . . . .  | 490        |
| D.2.2.3.2                     | Name of file . . . . .                                   | 490        |
| D.2.2.3.3                     | Location . . . . .                                       | 490        |
| D.2.2.4                       | Specification of fonts at run time . . . . .             | 490        |
| D.2.2.4.1                     | DVB-J . . . . .  | 490        |
| D.3                           | Text rendering . . . . .                                 | 491        |
| D.3.1                         | Low and high level rendering . . . . .                   | 491        |

|                               |   |            |
|-------------------------------|---|------------|
| D.3.1.1                       | Low level rendering . . . . .                                   | 491        |
| D.3.1.2                       | High level rendering . . . . .                                  | 491        |
| D.3.2                         | Philosophy . . . . .  | 491        |
| D.3.2.1                       | High level rendering conceptual process . . . . .               | 491        |
| D.3.3                         | Font Definition . . . . .                                       | 492        |
| D.3.3.1                       | Font bounds . . . . .   | 492        |
| D.3.3.2                       | "Physical" font data . . . . .                                  | 493        |
| D.3.3.3                       | Ligatures . . . . .   | 493        |
| D.3.4                         | Converting font metrics to display pixels . . . . .             | 493        |
| D.3.4.1                       | Vertical resolution . . . . .                                   | 493        |
| D.3.4.2                       | Horizontal resolution . . . . .                                 | 493        |
| D.3.5                         | Rendering within limits and insets . . . . .                    | 494        |
| D.3.5.1                       | Low level rendering . . . . .                                   | 494        |
| D.3.5.2                       | High level rendering . . . . .                                  | 494        |
| D.3.5.3                       | Conversion of units . . . . .                                   | 494        |
| D.3.5.3.1                     | yOffsetTop . . . . .  | 495        |
| D.3.5.3.2                     | yOffsetBottom . . . . .   | 495        |
| D.3.5.3.3                     | xOffsetLeft . . . . .   | 495        |
| D.3.6                         | "logical" text width rules . . . . .                            | 495        |
| D.3.6.1                       | Computing "logical" text width . . . . .                        | 496        |
| D.3.6.1.1                     | Font sizes . . . . .  | 496        |
| D.3.6.1.2                     | Character widths . . . . .                                      | 496        |
| D.3.6.1.3                     | Kerning . . . . .   | 496        |
| D.3.6.1.4                     | Letter spacing . . . . .  | 496        |
| D.3.6.2                       | Logical text width . . . . .                                    | 497        |
| D.3.7                         | Line breaking . . . . .   | 497        |
| D.3.7.1                       | Text wrapping setting is false . . . . .                        | 497        |
| D.3.7.2                       | Text wrapping setting is true . . . . .                         | 497        |
| D.3.8                         | Positioning lines of text vertically within an object . . . . . | 498        |
| D.3.8.1                       | Number of lines . . . . .                                       | 498        |
| D.3.8.2                       | Truncation . . . . .  | 499        |
| D.3.8.3                       | Positioning . . . . .   | 499        |
| D.3.8.3.1                     | Vertical alignment setting is VERTICAL_START_ALIGN . . . . .    | 499        |
| D.3.8.3.2                     | Vertical alignment setting is VERTICAL_END_ALIGN . . . . .      | 499        |
| D.3.8.3.3                     | Vertical alignment setting is VERTICAL_CENTER . . . . .         | 500        |
| D.3.8.3.4                     | Examples . . . . .  | 501        |
| D.3.9                         | Rendering lines of text horizontally . . . . .                  | 501        |
| D.3.9.1                       | Available width . . . . .                                       | 501        |
| D.3.9.2                       | Truncation . . . . .  | 501        |
| D.3.9.3                       | Placement . . . . .   | 502        |
| D.3.10                        | Text overflow . . . . .   | 502        |
| D.3.11                        | Tabulation . . . . .  | 503        |
| D.3.12                        | Placing runs of characters & words . . . . .                    | 503        |
| D.3.13                        | Control of text flow . . . . .                                  | 504        |
| D.4                           | Text mark-up . . . . .  | 504        |
| D.4.1                         | White Space Characters . . . . .                                | 504        |
| D.4.2                         | Marker characters . . . . .                                     | 505        |
| D.4.3                         | Non-printing characters . . . . .                               | 505        |
| D.4.4                         | Format Control Mark-up . . . . .                                | 505        |
| D.4.5                         | Future compatibility . . . . .                                  | 506        |
| <b>Annex E (normative):</b>   | <b>Character set . . . . .</b>                                  | <b>507</b> |
| E.1                           | Basic Euro Latin character set . . . . .                        | 507        |
| <b>Annex F (informative):</b> | <b>Authoring &amp; Implementation Guidelines . . . . .</b>      | <b>512</b> |
| F.1                           | Authoring Guidelines . . . . .                                  | 512        |
| F.2                           | Implementation Guidelines . . . . .                             | 512        |
| F.3                           | Authoring guidelines for DVB-J . . . . .                        | 512        |
| F.4                           | Authoring guidelines for DVB HTML . . . . .                     | 512        |
| F.4.1                         | CSS2 Authoring guidelines . . . . .                             | 512        |

|   |   |            |
|---|---|------------|
| F.4.1.1   | Selectors . . . . .                         | 512        |
| F.4.1.2   | Properties . . . . .                        | 512        |
| F.4.1.2.1   | Generalities . . . . .                      | 512        |
| F.4.1.2.2   | Visual Formatting Model . . . . .           | 512        |
| F.4.1.2.3   | Colours and Background . . . . .            | 513        |
| F.4.1.2.4   | Visual Effects . . . . .                    | 513        |
| F.4.1.2.5   | Fonts . . . . .                             | 513        |
| F.4.1.2.6   | Text . . . . .                              | 513        |
| F.4.1.2.7   | User Interface . . . . .                    | 514        |
| <b>Annex G (normative): Minimum Platform Capabilities . . . . .</b>     |   | <b>515</b> |
| G.1   | Graphics . . . . .                          | 515        |
| G.1.1   | Device capabilities . . . . .               | 515        |
| G.1.2   | Video presentation capabilities . . . . .   | 516        |
| G.1.3   | Image processing capabilities . . . . .     | 516        |
| G.1.3.1   | Composition rules . . . . .                 | 516        |
| G.1.4   | Alpha capabilities . . . . .                | 516        |
| G.1.5   | Colour capabilities . . . . .               | 517        |
| G.1.6   | MPEG I frame and Video drips . . . . .      | 517        |
| G.2   | Audio . . . . .                             | 518        |
| G.3   | Video . . . . .                             | 518        |
| G.4   | Resident fonts and text rendering . . . . . | 518        |
| G.4.1   | The built-in font . . . . .                 | 518        |
| G.4.2   | Presentation to DVB-J . . . . .             | 518        |
| G.4.3   | Text directions . . . . .                   | 518        |
| G.5   | Input events . . . . .                      | 519        |
| G.6   | Memory . . . . .                            | 519        |
| G.7   | Other resources . . . . .                   | 520        |
| <b>Annex H (normative): Extensions . . . . .</b>                        |   | <b>522</b> |
| <b>Annex I (normative): DVB-J fundamental classes . . . . .</b>         |   | <b>523</b> |
|   | DVBClassLoader . . . . .                    | 525        |
| <b>Annex J (normative): DVB-J event API . . . . .</b>                   |   | <b>527</b> |
| J.1   | Overview . . . . .                          | 527        |
| J.2   | The resource management . . . . .           | 529        |
| J.3   | The Event Repository . . . . .              | 529        |
| J.3.1   | Example . . . . .                           | 529        |
| J.4   | Unicode . . . . .                           | 530        |
| J.5   | Virtual keyboards . . . . .                 | 530        |
|   | EventManager . . . . .                      | 532        |
|   | OverallRepository . . . . .                 | 535        |
|   | RepositoryDescriptor . . . . .              | 536        |
|   | UserEvent . . . . .                         | 537        |
|   | UserEventAvailableEvent . . . . .           | 541        |
|   | UserEventListener . . . . .                 | 543        |
|   | UserEventRepository . . . . .               | 544        |
|   | UserEventUnavailableEvent . . . . .         | 547        |
| <b>Annex K (normative): DVB-J persistent storage API . . . . .</b>      |   | <b>549</b> |
|   | FileAccessPermissions . . . . .             | 551        |
|   | FileAttributes . . . . .                    | 553        |
| <b>Annex L (normative): User Settings and Preferences API . . . . .</b> |   | <b>556</b> |
|   | Facility . . . . .                          | 558        |
|   | GeneralPreference . . . . .                 | 559        |
|   | Preference . . . . .                        | 560        |
|   | UnsupportedPreferenceException . . . . .    | 564        |
|   | UserPreferenceChangeEvent . . . . .         | 565        |

|                             |                                      |            |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|
|                             | UserPreferenceChangeListener         | 566        |
|                             | UserPreferenceManager                | 567        |
|                             | UserPreferencePermission             | 569        |
| <b>Annex M (normative):</b> | <b>SI Access API</b>                 | <b>570</b> |
| M.1                         | Unicode                              | 570        |
|                             | Descriptor                           | 574        |
|                             | DescriptorTag                        | 576        |
|                             | PMTElementaryStream                  | 580        |
|                             | PMTService                           | 582        |
|                             | PMTStreamType                        | 584        |
|                             | SIBouquet                            | 585        |
|                             | SIDatabase                           | 589        |
|                             | SIEvent                              | 606        |
|                             | SIException                          | 610        |
|                             | SIIllegalArgumentException           | 611        |
|                             | SIInformation                        | 612        |
|                             | SIInvalidPeriodException             | 616        |
|                             | SIIterator                           | 617        |
|                             | SILackOfResourcesEvent               | 618        |
|                             | SIMonitoringEvent                    | 619        |
|                             | SIMonitoringListener                 | 622        |
|                             | SIMonitoringType                     | 623        |
|                             | SINetwork                            | 624        |
|                             | SINotInCacheEvent                    | 628        |
|                             | SIObjectNotInTableEvent              | 629        |
|                             | SIRequest                            | 630        |
|                             | SIRequestCancelledEvent              | 631        |
|                             | SIRetrievalEvent                     | 632        |
|                             | SIRetrievalListener                  | 634        |
|                             | SIRunningStatus                      | 635        |
|                             | SIService                            | 636        |
|                             | SIServiceType                        | 642        |
|                             | SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent            | 644        |
|                             | SITableNotFoundEvent                 | 645        |
|                             | SITableUpdatedEvent                  | 646        |
|                             | SITime                               | 647        |
|                             | SITransportStream                    | 648        |
|                             | SITransportStreamBAT                 | 650        |
|                             | SITransportStreamDescription         | 651        |
|                             | SITransportStreamNIT                 | 652        |
|                             | SIUtil                               | 653        |
|                             | TextualServiceIdentifierQuery        | 654        |
| <b>Annex N (normative):</b> | <b>Streamed Media API Extensions</b> | <b>655</b> |
|                             | ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent  | 658        |
|                             | AspectRatioChangedEvent              | 659        |
|                             | BackgroundVideoPresentationControl   | 660        |
|                             | CAException                          | 661        |
|                             | CAStopEvent                          | 662        |
|                             | DFCChangedEvent                      | 664        |
|                             | DripFeedDataSource                   | 665        |
|                             | DripFeedPermission                   | 668        |
|                             | DVBMediaSelectControl                | 670        |
|                             | NoComponentSelectedEvent             | 671        |
|                             | PresentationChangedEvent             | 673        |
|                             | ServiceRemovedEvent                  | 675        |
|                             | StopByResourceLossEvent              | 677        |
|                             | SubtitleAvailableEvent               | 679        |
|                             | SubtitleListener                     | 680        |

|                             |  |            |
|-----------------------------|--|------------|
|                             | SubtitleNotAvailableEvent .....                              | 681        |
|                             | SubtitleNotSelectedEvent .....                               | 682        |
|                             | SubtitleSelectedEvent .....                                  | 683        |
|                             | SubtitlingEventControl .....                                 | 684        |
|                             | VideoFormatControl .....                                     | 685        |
|                             | VideoFormatEvent .....                                       | 691        |
|                             | VideoFormatListener .....                                    | 692        |
|                             | VideoPresentationControl .....                               | 693        |
|                             | VideoTransformation .....                                    | 698        |
| <b>Annex O (normative):</b> | <b>Integration of the JavaTV SI API and DVB SI .....</b>     | <b>701</b> |
| O.1                         | Introduction .....   | 701        |
| O.2                         | Mapping of the JavaTV SI API to DVB SI .....                 | 701        |
| O.2.1                       | javax.tv.service.Service .....                               | 701        |
| O.2.1.1                     | getName .....  | 701        |
| O.2.1.2                     | getServiceType .....   | 701        |
| O.2.2                       | javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceComponent .....           | 701        |
| O.2.2.1                     | getComponentName .....                                       | 701        |
| O.2.2.2                     | getAssociatedLanguage .....                                  | 702        |
| O.2.2.3                     | getStreamType .....  | 702        |
| O.2.3                       | javax.tv.service.ServiceType .....                           | 702        |
| O.2.4                       | javax.tv.service.navigation.StreamType .....                 | 702        |
| O.2.5                       | javax.tv.service.SIElement .....                             | 703        |
| O.2.5.1                     | getServiceInformationType .....                              | 703        |
| O.2.6                       | javax.tv.service.SIManager .....                             | 703        |
| O.2.6.1                     | getSupportedDimensions .....                                 | 703        |
| O.2.6.2                     | getRatingDimension .....                                     | 703        |
| O.2.6.3                     | retrieveSIElement .....                                      | 703        |
| O.2.6.4                     | getTransports .....  | 703        |
| O.2.6.5                     | filterServices .....   | 703        |
| O.2.6.6                     | retrieveProgramEvent .....                                   | 703        |
| O.2.7                       | javax.tv.service.navigation.SIElementFilter .....            | 703        |
| O.2.8                       | javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceDetails .....             | 703        |
| O.2.8.1                     | getLongName .....  | 704        |
| O.2.8.2                     | getServiceType .....   | 704        |
| O.2.8.3                     | retrieveServiceDescription .....                             | 704        |
| O.2.8.4                     | retrieveComponents .....                                     | 704        |
| O.2.8.5                     | getService .....   | 704        |
| O.2.9                       | javax.tv.service.navigation.CAIdentification .....           | 704        |
| O.2.9.1                     | getCASystemIds .....   | 704        |
| O.2.9.2                     | isFree .....   | 704        |
| O.2.10                      | javax.tv.service.RatingDimension .....                       | 704        |
| O.2.10.1                    | getDimensionName .....                                       | 704        |
| O.2.10.2                    | getNumberOfLevels .....                                      | 704        |
| O.2.10.3                    | getRatingLevelDescription .....                              | 705        |
| O.2.11                      | javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceProviderInformation ..... | 705        |
| O.2.11.1                    | getProviderName .....  | 705        |
| O.2.12                      | javax.tv.service.transport.Transport .....                   | 705        |
| O.2.13                      | javax.tv.service.transport.Bouquet .....                     | 705        |
| O.2.13.1                    | getBouquetID .....   | 705        |
| O.2.13.2                    | getName .....  | 705        |
| O.2.13.3                    | getLocator .....   | 705        |
| O.2.14                      | javax.tv.service.transport.Network .....                     | 705        |
| O.2.14.1                    | getNetworkID .....   | 705        |
| O.2.14.2                    | getName .....  | 705        |
| O.2.14.3                    | getLocator .....   | 705        |
| O.2.15                      | javax.tv.service.transport.TransportStream .....             | 706        |
| O.2.15.1                    | getTransportStreamID .....                                   | 706        |
| O.2.15.2                    | getDescription .....   | 706        |

|          |   |     |
|----------|---|-----|
| O.2.16   | javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramEvent                 | 706 |
| O.2.16.1 | getDuration   | 706 |
| O.2.16.2 | getStartTime  | 706 |
| O.2.16.3 | getEndTime  | 706 |
| O.2.16.4 | getName   | 706 |
| O.2.16.5 | retrieveDescription                                 | 706 |
| O.2.16.6 | getRating   | 706 |
| O.2.17   | javax.tv.service.guide.ContentRatingAdvisory        | 706 |
| O.2.17.1 | getDimensionNames                                   | 706 |
| O.2.17.2 | getRatingLevel                                      | 707 |
| O.2.17.3 | getRatingText                                       | 707 |
| O.2.17.4 | getDisplayText                                      | 707 |
| O.2.17.5 | O.2.x.1 retrieveProgramEvent(Locator, SIRequestor)  | 707 |
| O.3      | Integration of the JavaTV SI API and the DVB SI API | 708 |

## **Annex P (normative): Broadcast Transport Protocol Access . . . . . 709**

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| AsynchronousLoadingEvent         | 713 |
| AsynchronousLoadingEventListener | 714 |
| DSMCCException                   | 715 |
| DSMCCObject                      | 716 |
| DSMCCStream                      | 724 |
| DSMCCStreamEvent                 | 728 |
| IllegalObjectTypeException       | 731 |
| InsufficientResourcesEvent       | 732 |
| InsufficientResourcesException   | 733 |
| InvalidAddressException          | 734 |
| InvalidFormatEvent               | 735 |
| InvalidFormatException           | 736 |
| InvalidPathnameEvent             | 737 |
| InvalidPathNameException         | 738 |
| LoadingAbortedEvent              | 739 |
| MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent           | 740 |
| MPEGDeliveryException            | 741 |
| NotEntitledEvent                 | 742 |
| NotEntitledException             | 743 |
| NothingToAbortException          | 744 |
| NotLoadedException               | 745 |
| NPTDiscontinuityEvent            | 746 |
| NPTListener                      | 748 |
| NPTPresentEvent                  | 749 |
| NPTRate                          | 750 |
| NPTRateChangeEvent               | 751 |
| NPTRemovedEvent                  | 752 |
| NPTStatusEvent                   | 753 |
| ObjectChangeEvent                | 754 |
| ObjectChangeListener             | 756 |
| ServerDeliveryErrorEvent         | 757 |
| ServerDeliveryException          | 758 |
| ServiceDomain                    | 759 |
| ServiceXFRErrorEvent             | 764 |
| ServiceXFRException              | 766 |
| ServiceXFRReference              | 768 |
| StreamEvent                      | 770 |
| StreamEventListener              | 772 |
| SuccessEvent                     | 773 |
| UnknownEventException            | 774 |

## **Annex Q (normative): Datagram Socket Buffer Control . . . . . 775**

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| DatagramSocketBufferControl | 777 |
|-----------------------------|-----|



|                               |  |            |
|-------------------------------|--|------------|
| <b>Annex R (normative):</b>   | <b>DVB-J Return Channel Connection Management API</b> . . . . .              | <b>778</b> |
|                               | ConnectionEstablishedEvent . . . . .   | 780        |
|                               | ConnectionFailedEvent . . . . .  | 781        |
|                               | ConnectionListener . . . . .   | 782        |
|                               | ConnectionParameters . . . . .   | 783        |
|                               | ConnectionRCEvent . . . . .  | 785        |
|                               | ConnectionRCInterface . . . . .  | 786        |
|                               | ConnectionTerminatedEvent . . . . .  | 790        |
|                               | IncompleteTargetException . . . . .  | 791        |
|                               | PermissionDeniedException . . . . .  | 792        |
|                               | RCInterface . . . . .  | 793        |
|                               | RCInterfaceManager . . . . .   | 796        |
|                               | RCInterfaceReleasedEvent . . . . .   | 798        |
|                               | RCInterfaceReservedEvent . . . . .   | 799        |
|                               | RCPermission . . . . .   | 800        |
| <b>Annex S (normative):</b>   | <b>Application Listing and Launching</b> . . . . .                           | <b>802</b> |
|                               | AppAttributes . . . . .  | 805        |
|                               | AppIcon . . . . .  | 810        |
|                               | AppID . . . . .  | 811        |
|                               | AppProxy . . . . .   | 813        |
|                               | AppsControlPermission . . . . .  | 817        |
|                               | AppsDatabase . . . . .   | 819        |
|                               | AppsDatabaseEvent . . . . .  | 823        |
|                               | AppsDatabaseEventListener . . . . .  | 825        |
|                               | AppsDatabaseFilter . . . . .   | 827        |
|                               | AppStateChangeEvent . . . . .  | 828        |
|                               | AppStateChangeListener . . . . .   | 830        |
|                               | CurrentServiceFilter . . . . .   | 831        |
|                               | DVBHTMLProxy . . . . .   | 832        |
|                               | DVBJProxy . . . . .  | 834        |
|                               | IllegalProfileParameterException . . . . .                                   | 836        |
|                               | LanguageNotAvailableException . . . . .                                      | 837        |
|                               | RunningApplicationsFilter . . . . .  | 838        |
| <b>Annex T (normative):</b>   | <b>Permissions</b> . . . . .   | <b>839</b> |
|                               | CAPermission . . . . .   | 841        |
|                               | DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil . . . . .  | 844        |
|                               | TunerPermission . . . . .  | 845        |
| <b>Annex U (normative):</b>   | <b>Extended graphics APIs</b> . . . . .                                      | <b>847</b> |
|                               | DVBAAlphaComposite . . . . .   | 849        |
|                               | DVBBufferedImage . . . . .   | 855        |
|                               | DVBColor . . . . .   | 863        |
|                               | DVBBGraphics . . . . .   | 867        |
|                               | DVBRasterFormatException . . . . .   | 871        |
|                               | DVBBTextLayoutManager . . . . .  | 872        |
|                               | FontFactory . . . . .  | 879        |
|                               | FontFormatException . . . . .  | 881        |
|                               | FontNotAvailableException . . . . .  | 882        |
|                               | TestOpacity . . . . .  | 883        |
|                               | TextOverflowListener . . . . .   | 884        |
|                               | UnsupportedDrawingOperationException . . . . .                               | 885        |
| <b>Annex V :</b>              | <b>Void</b> . . . . .  | <b>886</b> |
| <b>Annex W (informative):</b> | <b>DVB-J examples</b> . . . . .  | <b>887</b> |
| W.1                           | DVB-J Application lifecycle implementation example . . . . .                 | 887        |
| W.2                           | Example of exporting an object for inter-application communication . . . . . | 888        |
| W.3                           | Example of use of video drip feed . . . . .                                  | 888        |

|                               |  |            |
|-------------------------------|--|------------|
| W.4                           | Example of CPU bound animation .....   | 890        |
| <b>Annex X (normative):</b>   | <b>Test support .....</b>  | <b>893</b> |
|                               | DVBTest .....  | 896        |
| <b>Annex Y (normative):</b>   | <b>Inter-application and Inter-Xlet communication API .....</b>                | <b>902</b> |
|                               | IxcRegistry .....  | 904        |
| <b>Annex Z (informative):</b> | <b>Services, Service Contexts and Applications in an MHP Environment .....</b> | <b>908</b> |
| Z.1                           | Introduction .....   | 908        |
| Z.2                           | Basic concepts .....   | 908        |
| Z.3                           | Presenting a service in MHP .....  | 908        |
| Z.3.1                         | Presenting the media components of a service .....                             | 908        |
| Z.3.2                         | Presenting the application components of a service .....                       | 908        |
| Z.4                           | Multiple service contexts in an MHP platform .....                             | 909        |
| Z.5                           | How does the platform know which services are available? .....                 | 910        |
| <b>Annex AA (normative):</b>  | <b>DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD .....</b>  | <b>911</b> |
| AA.1                          | DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD .....   | 911        |
| AA.1.1                        | DVB-HTML DTD driver .....  | 911        |
| AA.1.2                        | DVB-HTML DVB Intrinsic Events module .....                                     | 915        |
| AA.1.3                        | DVB-HTML Qualified Names module .....  | 916        |
| AA.1.4                        | DVB-HTML Content Model module .....  | 917        |
| <b>Annex AB (normative):</b>  | <b>DVB HTML StyleSheet .....</b>   | <b>921</b> |
| <b>Annex AC (normative):</b>  | <b>ECMAScript Binding .....</b>  | <b>924</b> |
| AC.1                          | ECMAScript language binding .....  | 924        |
| AC.1.1                        | Shortcuts to access objects .....  | 924        |
| AC.1.2                        | Grouping the objects of a form .....   | 925        |
| AC.2                          | The DVB-HTML host objects .....  | 925        |
| AC.2.1                        | Object DVBHTMLCollection .....   | 925        |
| AC.2.2                        | Object DVBHTMLDocument .....   | 925        |
| AC.2.3                        | Object DVBHTMLElement .....  | 926        |
| AC.2.4                        | Object DVBHTMLFormElement .....  | 927        |
| AC.2.5                        | Object DVBHTMLSelectElement .....  | 927        |
| AC.2.6                        | Object DVBHTMLOptionElement .....  | 928        |
| AC.2.7                        | Object DVBHTMLInputElement .....   | 928        |
| AC.2.8                        | Object DVBHTMLTextAreaElement .....  | 929        |
| AC.2.9                        | Object DVBHTMLButtonElement .....  | 930        |
| AC.2.10                       | Object DVBHTMLAnchorElement .....  | 930        |
| AC.2.11                       | Object DVBHTMLImageElement .....   | 931        |
| AC.2.12                       | Object DVBHTMLObjectElement .....  | 931        |
| AC.2.13                       | Object DVBHTMLMapElement .....   | 932        |
| AC.2.14                       | Object DVBHTMLAreaElement .....  | 932        |
| AC.2.15                       | Object DVBHTMLFrameSetElement .....  | 932        |
| AC.2.16                       | Object DVBHTMLFrameElement .....   | 932        |
| AC.2.17                       | Object DVBHTMLIFrameElement .....  | 933        |
| AC.3                          | DVB-HTML event host objects .....  | 933        |
| AC.3.1                        | Object DVBLifecycleEvent .....   | 933        |
| AC.4                          | DVB-HTML environment host objects .....  | 934        |
| AC.4.1                        | Navigator Object .....   | 934        |
| AC.4.2                        | Window Object .....  | 934        |
| AC.4.3                        | Location object .....  | 935        |
| AC.5                          | DVB-HTML CSS host objects .....  | 935        |
| AC.5.1                        | DVBInlineStyle .....   | 935        |
| AC.5.2                        | DVBCSSStyle .....  | 935        |
| AC.5.3                        | DVBCSSViewportRule .....   | 936        |
| AC.5.4                        | DVBCSSViewportProperties .....   | 936        |

|                              |                                     |            |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Annex AD (normative):</b> | <b>Support for DVB-HTML</b>         | <b>937</b> |
| AD.1                         | Java bindings to DVB extensions     | 937        |
| AD.1.1                       | The org.dvb.dom.dvbhtml package     | 937        |
| AD.1.1.1                     | DVBHTMLButtonElement                | 937        |
| AD.1.1.2                     | DVBHTMLCollection                   | 937        |
| AD.1.1.3                     | DVBHTMLDocument                     | 937        |
| AD.1.1.4                     | DVBHTMLElement                      | 938        |
| AD.1.1.5                     | DVBHTMLFormElement                  | 938        |
| AD.1.1.6                     | DVBHTMLSelectElement                | 938        |
| AD.1.1.7                     | DVBHTMLOptionElement                | 939        |
| AD.1.1.8                     | DVBHTMLInputElement                 | 939        |
| AD.1.1.9                     | DVBHTMLTextAreaElement              | 940        |
| AD.1.1.10                    | DVBHTMLAnchorElement                | 940        |
| AD.1.1.11                    | DVBHTMLImageElement                 | 941        |
| AD.1.1.12                    | DVBHTMLObjectElement                | 941        |
| AD.1.1.13                    | DVBHTMLMapElement                   | 942        |
| AD.1.1.14                    | DVBHTMLAreaElement                  | 942        |
| AD.1.1.15                    | DVBHTMLFrameSetElement              | 942        |
| AD.1.1.16                    | DVBHTMLFrameElement                 | 942        |
| AD.1.1.17                    | DVBHTMLIFrameElement                | 943        |
| AD.1.2                       | The org.dvb.dom.css package         | 943        |
| AD.1.2.1                     | DVBInlineStyle                      | 943        |
| AD.1.2.2                     | DVBStyleSheet                       | 944        |
| AD.1.2.3                     | DVBStyleSheetViewRule               | 944        |
| AD.1.2.4                     | DVBStyleSheetViewRuleProperties     | 944        |
| AD.1.3                       | The org.dvb.dom.environment package | 945        |
| AD.1.3.1                     | Navigator                           | 945        |
| AD.1.3.2                     | Window                              | 945        |
| AD.1.3.3                     | Location                            | 945        |
| AD.1.4                       | The org.dvb.dom.event package       | 946        |
| AD.1.4.1                     | DVBLifecycleEvent                   | 946        |
|                              | DocumentAction                      | 948        |
|                              | DocumentFactory                     | 949        |
|                              | MultipleDocumentsAction             | 951        |
|                              | HTMLApplication                     | 953        |
|                              | HTMLInnerApplicationContainer       | 954        |
| <b>Annex AE (normative):</b> | <b>Inner Applications</b>           | <b>955</b> |
|                              | DVBScene                            | 957        |
|                              | InnerApplication                    | 961        |
|                              | InnerApplicationContainer           | 962        |
|                              | InnerApplicationEvent               | 967        |
|                              | InnerApplicationListener            | 968        |
| <b>Annex AF (normative):</b> | <b>Plug-in APIs</b>                 | <b>969</b> |
|                              | ApplicationSecurityContext          | 971        |
|                              | InvalidApplicationException         | 974        |
|                              | InvocationHandler                   | 975        |
|                              | Plugin                              | 976        |
|                              | Proxy                               | 978        |
|                              | UndeclaredThrowableException        | 983        |
|                              | XletContainer                       | 985        |
|                              | XletSystemCall                      | 987        |
| <b>Annex AG (normative):</b> | <b>Stored application APIs</b>      | <b>989</b> |
|                              | ApplicationDownloadException        | 991        |
|                              | ApplicationStorage                  | 992        |
|                              | ApplicationStoragePermission        | 995        |
|                              | ExtendedAppAttributes               | 997        |
|                              | InvalidApplicationException         | 998        |

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| InvalidDescriptionFileException . . . . .                    | 999         |
| NotEnoughResourcesException . . . . .                        | 1000        |
| ServiceAlreadyExistsException . . . . .                      | 1001        |
| StoredApplicationService . . . . .                           | 1002        |
| StoredServiceCreator . . . . .                               | 1005        |
| UserRejectedInstallException . . . . .                       | 1006        |
| <b>Annex AH (normative): Internet client APIs . . . . .</b>  | <b>1007</b> |
| CancelledByUserEvent . . . . .                               | 1011        |
| ClientNotRunningException . . . . .                          | 1012        |
| EmailClient . . . . .  | 1013        |
| EmailClientService . . . . .                                 | 1014        |
| EntryExistsException . . . . .                               | 1016        |
| HomePagePermission . . . . .                                 | 1017        |
| InternetClient . . . . .                                     | 1018        |
| InternetClientEvent . . . . .                                | 1020        |
| InternetClientFailureEvent . . . . .                         | 1021        |
| InternetClientListener . . . . .                             | 1022        |
| InternetClientService . . . . .                              | 1023        |
| InternetClientSuccessEvent . . . . .                         | 1025        |
| InternetServiceFilter . . . . .                              | 1026        |
| InternetServiceType . . . . .                                | 1028        |
| PermissionDeniedEvent . . . . .                              | 1029        |
| URLUnavailableEvent . . . . .                                | 1030        |
| UsenetClient . . . . .                                       | 1031        |
| UsenetClientService . . . . .                                | 1033        |
| WWWBrowser . . . . .   | 1035        |
| WWWBrowserService . . . . .                                  | 1036        |
| <b>Annex AI (normative): Non-CA Smartcard APIs . . . . .</b> | <b>1039</b> |
| SmartCardPermission . . . . .                                | 1041        |
| Index . . . . .  | 1042        |
| History . . . . .  | 1086        |

---

# Intellectual Property Rights

IPRs essential or potentially essential to the present document may have been declared to ETSI. The information pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, is publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "*Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards*", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI Web server (<http://webapp.etsi.org/IPR/home.asp>).

Pursuant to the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

---

## Foreword

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by the Joint Technical Committee (JTC) Broadcast of the European Broadcasting Union (EBU), Comité Européen de Normalisation ELECTrotechnique (CENELEC) and the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI).

**NOTE:** The EBU/ETSI JTC Broadcast was established in 1990 to co-ordinate the drafting of standards in the specific field of broadcasting and related fields. Since 1995 the JTC Broadcast became a tripartite body by including in the Memorandum of Understanding also CENELEC, which is responsible for the standardization of radio and television receivers. The EBU is a professional association of broadcasting organizations whose work includes the co-ordination of its members' activities in the technical, legal, programme-making and programme-exchange domains. The EBU has active members in about 60 countries in the European broadcasting area; its headquarters is in Geneva.

European Broadcasting Union  
CH-1218 GRAND SACONNEX (Geneva)  
Switzerland  
Tel: +41 22 717 21 11  
Fax: +41 22 717 24 81

Founded in September 1993, the DVB Project is a market-led consortium of public and private sector organizations in the television industry. Its aim is to establish the framework for the introduction of MPEG-2 based digital television services. Now comprising over 200 organizations from more than 25 countries around the world, DVB fosters market-led systems, which meet the real needs, and economic circumstances, of the consumer electronics and the broadcast industry.

---

## 0 Introduction

### 0.1 Purpose

The DVB system already provides a comprehensive toolbox to enable interoperable digital video broadcasting systems based on MPEG-2 standards for various transmission media including satellite, cable, terrestrial and microwave. This toolbox also covers interactive services using different kinds of return channels and further supporting functionalities such as service information and many others.

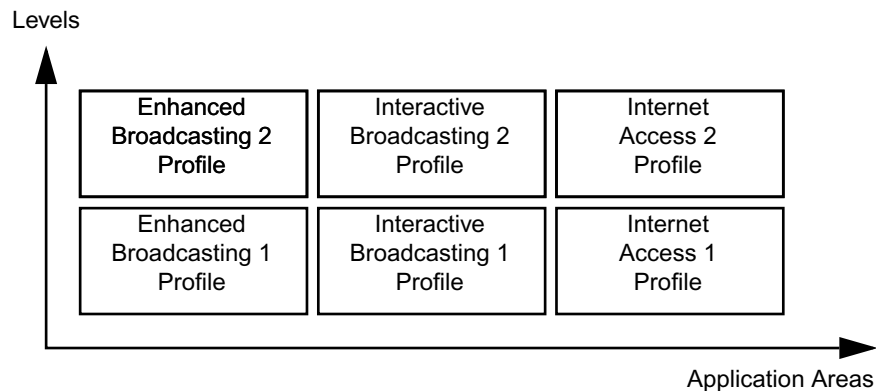
The Multimedia Home Platform (MHP) adds a technical solution for the user terminal that enables the reception and presentation of applications in a vendor, author and broadcaster neutral framework. Here "neutral" includes scenarios that consider legacy infrastructure. Applications from various service providers will be interoperable with different MHP implementations in an horizontal market, where applications, networks, and MHP terminals can be made available by independent providers.

## 0.2 Application areas

At the beginning the following application areas are considered - Enhanced Broadcasting, Interactive Broadcasting and Internet Access. Enhanced Broadcasting combines digital broadcast of audio/video services with downloaded applications which can enable local interactivity. It does not need an interaction channel. The application area Interactive Broadcasting enables a range of interactive services associated or independent from broadcast services. This application area requires an interaction channel. The application area of Internet Access is intended for the provisioning of Internet services. It also includes links between those Internet services and broadcast services.

## 0.3 Profiles

As not all MHP implementations will be able to support all application areas and as there is a further evolution expected over time, different profiles of the MHP are considered. For the first release of the MHP specification, profiles are mapped to the above mentioned application areas.



**Figure 1 : Application areas and levels of profiles**

Fig. 1 shows six example profiles, derived from two levels for each of the three application areas. The specific definition of the profiles and the particular backward and cross compatibility between profiles is provided in the detailed profile definition chapter of the MHP specification. The following initial definitions apply: <profile><n+1> shall be a strict superset of <profile><n>, and Interactive Broadcasting Profile 1 is defined as a strict superset of Enhanced Broadcasting Profile 1. Other dependencies are left to the detailed definition of future profiles.

## 1 Scope

The present document defines the DVB solution for Multimedia Home Platforms (MHPs) that was developed to fulfil the related DVB commercial requirements [MHP045 \[A\]](#). It relies on the use of appropriate DVB specifications for digital video broadcast and associated interactive services [ETSI TR 101 200 \[47\]](#). The MHP is applicable to all DVB defined transmission media and networks such as satellite, cable, terrestrial, microwave.

The final DVB MHP solution is intended to cover the whole range of implementations including Integrated Receiver Decoders (IRDs), integrated TV sets, multimedia computers and local clusters of such devices connected via In-Home Digital Networks (IHDN). This first release focuses on single MHP terminals and does not include such local clusters. Chapters 1-14 specify the applicable technologies and technical definitions in a generic way. Chapter 15 provides detailed profile definitions for the initial profiles Enhanced Broadcasting 2, Interactive Broadcasting 2 and Internet Access 2, which can be extended with future additional profile definitions.

This specification is firstly intended for implementers of MHPs on various hardware and software platforms. Secondly it is intended for developers of applications that use the MHP functionality and APIs.

The MHP specification aims to ensure interoperability between MHP applications and different MHP implementations. Implementers should consult the publisher of this specification regarding conformance.

NOTE: This specification defines the interfaces visible to applications. Application developers should not assume that other related interfaces are available unless they are specifically listed.

## 2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication and/or edition number or version number) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.

Referenced documents which are not found to be publicly available in the expected location might be found at <http://docbox.etsi.org/Reference>.

Some known errata in these references are identified in [A, "\(normative\): External references; errata, clarifications and exemptions" on page 393](#). These errata take precedence over the published reference.

The following comments apply to particular sources of documents:

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| [1] | Where the reference is to an ISO specifications it is considered to be a "non-specific" reference additionally officially published amendments and corrigenda are considered to automatically update the referenced document. |
| [2] | Where an ISBN number is provided for a referenced document it is considered to be "specific reference".   |
| [3] | References to RFCs are considered to be "specific references". An RFC being indicated obsoleted by another RFC is not considered significant.   |
| [4] | URL references with note <a href="#">[4]</a> are provided for convenience to access the document in electronic form.  |
| [5] | URL references with note <a href="#">[5]</a> are the normative method to access the reference   |

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| [6] | ETSI specifications are available from the ETSI server at: <a href="http://www.etsi.org">http://www.etsi.org</a> . However, the ETSI server provides the current edition of the specification and in every case this specification makes "specific" references which in the future may not be the current reference.  |
| [7] | The Sun Specifications for DVB are available from:<br><a href="http://java.sun.com/products/specformhp/">http://java.sun.com/products/specformhp/</a><br>or on CD-ROM (ISBN 1-892488-25-6) published by:<br>Sun Microsystems<br>MS USCA14-103<br>Palo Alto<br>CA 94303<br>USA<br>e-mail: <a href="mailto:docs@java.sun.com">docs@java.sun.com</a><br>Phone: +1 408 276-7426 |

|      | Reference       | Edition                                  | Description  | Note |
|------|-----------------|--|--|------|
| [1]  | CIE 15          | 2nd Edition, 1986<br>ISBN 3 900 734 00 3 | Colorimetry, CIE, Vienna   | [2]  |
| [2]  | CORBA/IIOP      | 2.1                                      | The Common Object Request Broker: Architecture and Specification, Object Management Group.<br><a href="ftp://ftp.omg.org/pub/docs/formal/97-09-01.pdf">ftp://ftp.omg.org/pub/docs/formal/97-09-01.pdf</a>  | [5]  |
| [3]  | DAVIC 1.4.1p9   | June 1999                                | DAVIC 1.4.1 Specification Part 9, Complete DAVIC Specifications, DAVIC.<br><a href="http://www.davic.org">http://www.davic.org</a>   | [5]  |
| [4]  | ETSI EN 300 468 | 1.5.1                                    | Digital broadcasting systems for television, sound and data services; Specification for Service Information (SI) in Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB) systems   | [6]  |
| [5]  | ETSI EN 301 192 | 1.3.1                                    | Specification for Data Broadcast   | [6]  |
| [6]  | ETSI EN 301 193 | 1.1.1                                    | DVB Interaction Channel through DECT   | [6]  |
| [7]  | ETSI EN 301 195 | 1.1.1                                    | DVB Interaction Channel through GSM  | [6]  |
| [8]  | ETSI EN 301 199 | 1.2.1                                    | DVB Interaction channel for LMDS distribution systems  | [6]  |
| [9]  | ETSI TR 101 154 | 1.4.1                                    | DVB Implementation Guidelines for the use of MPEG-2 Systems, Video and Audio in Satellite, Cable and Terrestrial Broadcasting Applications.  | [6]  |
| [10] | ETSI TR 101 162 |  | Digital broadcasting systems for television, sound and data services; Allocation of Service Information (SI) codes for Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB) systems.<br>The normative version of this document is available on-line from:<br><a href="http://www.dvb.org">http://www.dvb.org</a><br>This document is also available in physical form from the DVB project office at:<br>DVB Project Office, 17a Ancienne Route, CH-1218 Grand Saconnex, Geneva, Switzerland. | [5]  |
| [11] | ETSI ETR 211    | 2  | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Guidelines on implementation and usage of Service Information (SI)   | [6]  |
| [12] | ETSI EN 300 472 | 1.2.2                                    | DVB Specification for conveying ITU-R System B Teletext in DVB bitstreams.   | [6]  |
| [13] | ETSI EN 300 743 | 1.2.1                                    | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB), DVB subtitling   | [6]  |



| Reference | Edition  | Description  | Note       |
|-----------|--|--|------------|
| [14]      | ETSI ETS 300 800 1   | DVB Interaction Channel for Cable TV distribution systems  | [6]        |
| [15]      | ETSI ETS 300 801 1   | DVB Interaction Channel through PSTN/ISDN  | [6]        |
| [16]      | ETSI ETS 300 802 1   | Network Independent Protocols for Interactive Services   | [6]        |
| [17]      | GIF 89a  | GRAPHICS INTERCHANGE FORMAT(sm)<br>Version 89a, (c)1987, 1988, 1989, 1990 Copyright CompuServe Incorporated Columbus, Ohio<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/Graphics/GIF/spec-gif89a.txt">http://www.w3.org/Graphics/GIF/spec-gif89a.txt</a>  |            |
| [18]      | ISO 10646-1  | Information technology - Universal multiple-octet coded character set (UCS), part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane   | [1]        |
| [19]      | ISO 639.2  | Code for the representation of names of languages  | [1]        |
| [20]      | ISO 8859-1   | Information technology -- 8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets -- Part 1: Latin alphabet No. 1   | [1]        |
| [21]      | ISO/IEC 10918-1  | Digital compression encoding of continuous-tone still images (JPEG).<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/Graphics/JPEG/itu-t81.pdf">http://www.w3.org/Graphics/JPEG/itu-t81.pdf</a>  | [1]<br>[4] |
| [22]      | ISO/IEC 11172-3 1993   | Information technology—Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1.5 Mbit/s—Part 3: Audio (Note: known as MPEG-1 Audio)  | [1]        |
| [23]      | ISO/IEC 13818-1 1996   | Information technology - Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information: Systems.  | [1]        |
| [24]      | ISO/IEC 13818-2 1996   | Information technology—Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information—Part 2: Video (MPEG-2 Video)   | [1]        |
| [25]      | ISO/IEC 13818-3 2 <sup>nd</sup> Ed. 1998                         | Information technology - Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio - Part 3, MPEG-2 Audio.  | [1]        |
| [26]      | ISO/IEC 13818-6 1998   | Information technology -Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information: Extensions for Digital Storage Media Command and Control.  | [1]        |
| [27]      | IEC 61966-2-1 1  | Multimedia systems and equipment - Colour measurement and management - Part 2-1: Colour management - Default RGB colour space - sRGB   |            |
| [28]      | ITU-R BT.470 6   | Conventional television systems  |            |
| [29]      | ITU-R BT.601 5   | Studio Encoding Parameters of Digital Television for standard 4:3 and Wide-Screen 16:9 aspect ratios   |            |
| [30]      | ITU-R BT.709 3   | Parameter values for the HDTV standards for production and international programme exchange  |            |
| [31]      | JAE 1.1.8 API<br>Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6                   | Java Platform 1.1 API Specification  | [7]        |
| [32]      | Java Language Spec<br>ISBN 0-201-63451-1                         | The Java Language Specification by James Gosling, Bill Joy and Guy Steele.<br><a href="ftp://ftp.javasoft.com/docs/specs/langspec-1.0.pdf">ftp://ftp.javasoft.com/docs/specs/langspec-1.0.pdf</a><br>including the clarifications at:<br><a href="http://java.sun.com/docs/books/jls/clarify.html">http://java.sun.com/docs/books/jls/clarify.html</a> | [2]<br>[4] |
| [33]      | Java Media Player Specification<br>Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | Java Media Framework API Version 1.0 specification   | [7]        |

| Reference            | Edition                       | Description   | Note |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|---|------|
| [34] Java VM         | ISBN: 0-201-63452-X           | The Java Virtual Machine Specification, T. Lindholm and F. Yellin, Addison-Wesley.  | [2]  |
| [35] JFIF            |                               | JPEG File Interchange Format, Eric Hamilton, C-Cube Microsystems.<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/Graphics/JPEG/jif3.pdf">http://www.w3.org/Graphics/JPEG/jif3.pdf</a>  | [5]  |
| [36] PersonalJAE     | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | The OEM PersonalJava Application Environment Version 1.2a specification   | [7]  |
| [37] PNG             | V1 01-Oct-96                  | Portable Network Graphics. Available at:<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-png.html">http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-png.html</a>   | [5]  |
| [38] IETF RFC 1321   | April 1992                    | The MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm  | [3]  |
| [39] IETF RFC 1990   | August 1996                   | (MP) "The PPP Multilink Protocol", K. Sklower, B. Lloyd, G. McGregor, D. Carr, T. Coradetti.  | [3]  |
| [40] IETF RFC 2616   | June 1999                     | IETF Hypertext Transfer Protocol -- HTTP/1.1  | [3]  |
| [41] IETF RFC 2396   | August 1998                   | IETF Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax   | [3]  |
| [42] IETF RFC 768    | 28.08.1980                    | (UDP) "User Datagram Protocol", J. Postel.  | [3]  |
| [43] IETF RFC 791    | 01.09.1981                    | (IP) "Internet Protocol", J. Postel.  | [3]  |
| [44] IETF RFC 793    | 01.09.1981                    | (TCP) "Transmission Control Protocol", J. Postel.   | [3]  |
| [45] IETF RFC 1112   | August 1989                   | IETF Host extensions for IP multicasting.   | [3]  |
| [46] ETSI TR 101 194 | 1.1.1                         | Guidelines for the use of ETS 300 802   |      |
| [47] ETSI TR 101 200 | 1.1.1                         | "Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Guideline for the use of DVB specifications and standards".  |      |
| [48] ETSI TR 101 201 | 1.1.1                         | DVB Interaction channel for SMATV systems   |      |
| [49] ETSI TR 101 202 | 1.1.1                         | Guidelines for the use of EN 301 192  |      |
| [50] HAVi            | 1.1                           | This comprises the following documents:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HAVi v1.1 Chapter 8, 15-May-2001</li> <li>• HAVi v1.1 Java L2 APIs, 15-May-2001</li> <li>• HAVi v1.1 Chapter 7, 15-May-2001</li> </ul> available at:<br><a href="http://www.havi.org">http://www.havi.org</a> |      |
| [51] Java TV         | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | Java TV API Version 1.0 specification   | [7]  |
| [52] Hunt, R.W.G.    | 1987                          | Measuring Colour, Ellis Horwood Series in Applied Science and Industrial Technology. Ellis Harwood Limited, Chichester, England.  |      |
| [53] ITU-T X.501     | 1993                          | ITU-T Recommendation X.501: Information Technology - Open Systems Interconnection - The Directory: Models, 1993.  |      |
| [54] ITU-T X.509     | 08/97                         | Information technology - Open Systems Interconnection - The Directory: Authentication framework   |      |
| [55] ITU-T X.520     | 11/93                         | Information Technology Open Systems Interconnection The Directory: Selected Attribute Types   |      |
| [56] IETF RFC 2313   | March 98                      | PKCS #1: RSA Encryption Version 1.5   | [3]  |

| Reference             | Edition                       | Description  | Note |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--|------|
| [57] ASN.1            | 07/94                         | ITU-T X.680 "Information Technology Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1): Specification Of Basic Notation"<br><br>and<br><br>ITU-T X.690 "Information Technology ASN.1 Encoding Rules: Specification Of Basic Encoding Rules (BER), Canonical Encoding Rules (CER) And Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER)" |      |
| [58] IETF RFC 2459    | January 1999                  | Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure. Certificate and CRL Profile.   | [3]  |
| [59] POSIX            | ISBN:1-55937-255-9            | IEEE Standard for Information Technology - Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) - Part 2: Shell and Utilities (Vol. 1);<br><br>IEEE Std 1003.2-1992; The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers; New York; 1993.   |      |
| [60] JSSE             | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | Java Secure Sockets Extension API Specification Version 1.0.2  | [7]  |
| [61] ETSI ETS 300 706 | Edition 1 - 1997-05           | Enhanced Teletext Specification  | [6]  |
| [62] FIPS-180-1       | April 1995                    | NIST, FIPS PUB 180-1: Secure Hash Standard<br><br><a href="http://csrc.nist.gov/fips/fip180-1.txt">http://csrc.nist.gov/fips/fip180-1.txt</a>  | [4]  |
| [63] IETF RFC 2246    | January 1999                  | The TLS Protocol, Version 1.0  | [3]  |
| [64] IETF RFC 2045    | November 1996                 | Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Part One: Format of Internet Message Bodies   | [3]  |
| [65] XML 1.0          | Second Edition                | Extensible Markup Language (XML) 1.0<br><br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/REC-xml-20001006">http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/REC-xml-20001006</a>  |      |
| [66] ISO 639.2        |                               | Codes for the representation of names of languages – Part 2: Alpha-3 code.   |      |
| [67] IETF RFC 1738    | December 1994                 | Uniform Resource Locators (URL)  |      |
| [68] JVM Errata       | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | Errata for the Java Virtual Machine Specification  | [7]  |
| [69] Inner Classes    | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | Inner Classes Specification  | [7]  |
| [70] ETSI EN 50221    |                               | Common Interface Specification for Conditional Access and other Digital Video Broadcasting Decoder Applications  |      |
| [71] ETSI TS 101 699  | 1.1.1                         | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Extensions to the Common Interface Specification   |      |
| [72] JAE 1.1.8 const  | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | JAE 1.1.8 API Constants  | [7]  |
| [73] JAE 1.2.2 const  | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | JAE 1.2.2 API Constants  | [7]  |
| [74] JMF const        | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6 | Java Media Framework API Version 1.0 Constants   | [7]  |
| [75] IETF RFC 1035    | November 1987                 | Domain names implementation and specification  |      |
| [76] IETF RFC 1950    | May 1996                      | ZLIB Compressed Data Format Specification version 3.3  |      |
| [77] IETF RFC 1951    | May 1996                      | DEFLATE Compressed Data Format Specification version 1.3   |      |

| Reference | Edition  | Description  | Note |
|-----------|--|--|------|
| [78]      | JDK 1.2.2  | Part of<br>ISBN:1-892488-25-6  |      |
| [79]      | R206   | Guidelines for Implementation and Use of the<br>Common Interface for DVB Decoder Applications  |      |
| [80]      | Tiresias   | The RNIB/DTG "Tiresias" font version 8.02<br><br>For information on obtaining this font, please contact<br>the DVB project office.   |      |
| [81]      | ETSI TR 101 262  | V1.1.1<br>ETSI drafting rules  |      |
| [82]      | ETSI EN 301 790  | V1.2.2<br>Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Interaction channel<br>for satellite distribution systems;   |      |
| [83]      | IETF RFC 1034  | November 1987<br>Domain Names - Concepts and facilities  |      |
| [84]      | IETF RFC 1035  | November 1987<br>Domain Names - Implementation and specification   |      |
| [85]      | IETF RFC 1982  | August 1996<br>Serial Number Arithmetic  |      |
| [86]      | IETF RFC 2181  | July 1997<br>Clarifications to the DNS Specification   |      |
| [87]      | IETF RFC 1877  | December 1995<br>PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol Extensions for<br>Name Server Addresses  |      |
| [88]      | IETF RFC 1332  | May 1992<br>The PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP)  |      |
| [89]      | IETF RFC 1661  | July 1994<br>The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)   |      |
| [90]      | IETF RFC 1717  | November 1994<br>The PPP Multilink Protocol (MP)   |      |
| [91]      | ZIP  | ATSC A/100-5 "DASE-1 ZIP Archive Resource<br>Format"   |      |
| [92]      | IETF RFC 1945  | May 1996<br>Hypertext Transfer Protocol -- HTTP/1.0  |      |
| [93]      | XHTML™ 1.0: The<br>Extensible HyperText<br>Markup Language     | <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1">http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1</a>  |      |
| [94]      | Modularization of<br>XHTML                                     | <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization">http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization</a>  |      |
| [95]      | ECMAScript   | 'Information technology - ECMAScript language<br>specification' ISO/IEC 16262, First Edition 1998-12-<br>15: ICS 35.060<br><br>ECMA (European Computer Manufacturers<br>Association) ECMAScript Language Specification.<br><br><a href="http://www.ecma.ch/ecma1/STAND/ECMA-262.HTM">http://www.ecma.ch/ecma1/STAND/ECMA-262.HTM</a> |      |
| [96]      | Document Object<br>Model (DOM) Level 2<br>Core Specification   | Document Object Model DOM Level 2 Core:<br><br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Core">http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Core</a>   |      |
| [97]      | Document Object<br>Model (DOM) Level 1<br>Specification        | Document Object Model DOM Level 1:<br><br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-DOM-Level-1">http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-DOM-Level-1</a>  |      |
| [98]      | Document Object<br>Model (DOM) Level 2<br>Events Specification | Document Object Model DOM Level 2 Events:<br><br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Events">http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Events</a>   |      |
| [99]      | Document Object<br>Model (DOM) Level 2<br>Style Specification  | Document Object Model DOM Level 2 Style:<br><br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Style">http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Style</a>  |      |
| [100]     | Document Object<br>Model (DOM) Level 2<br>Views Specification  | Document Object Model DOM Level 2 Views:<br><br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Views">http://www.w3.org/TR/DOM-Level-2-Views</a>  |      |

| Reference   | Edition       | Description   | Note |
|---|---------------|---|------|
| [101] CSS 2                                       |               | Cascading Style Sheets CSS 2:<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-CSS2/">http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-CSS2/</a><br>Including the errata published in REC-CSS2-19980512.                                    |      |
| [102] IETF RFC2318                                |               | The text/css Media Type   |      |
| [103] Namespaces in XML                           |               | Namespaces in XML:<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names">http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml-names</a>   |      |
| [104] HTML 4                                      | 4.01          | HTML 4.01 Specification<br>W3C Recommendation 24 December 1999<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/html401">http://www.w3.org/TR/html401</a>   |      |
| [105] SVG   | 1.0           | Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG) 1.0 Specification.<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/CR-SVG-20000802/">http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/CR-SVG-20000802/</a>  |      |
| [106] Embedded OCF                                | 1.2.2         | OpenCard Framework for Embedded Devices Specification<br><a href="http://www.opencard.org/download/docs/1.2T/ocfembeddedspec.zip">http://www.opencard.org/download/docs/1.2T/ocfembeddedspec.zip</a>    |      |
| [107] SMTP  |               | IETF RFC 821, Simple Mail Transport Protocol  |      |
| [108] NNTP  |               | IETF RFC 977, Network News Transport Protocol   |      |
| [109] Namespaces in XML                           | 19990114      | REC-xml-names-19990114, Namespaces in XML, World Wide Web Consortium 14-January-1999<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xml-names-19990114">http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xml-names-19990114</a> |      |
| [110] IETF RFC 2109                               | February 1997 | HTTP State Management Mechanism   |      |
| [111] IETF RFC 1123                               | October 1989  | Requirements for Internet Hosts •• Application and Support  |      |
| [112] IETF RFC 2818                               |               | HTTP over TLS   |      |
| [113] Associating Style Sheets with XML documents | 1.0           | <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/xml-styleSheet">http://www.w3.org/TR/xml-styleSheet</a>   |      |
| [114] IETF RFC 2368                               | July 1998     | The Use of URLs as Meta-Syntax for Core Mail List Commands and their Transport through Message Header Fields  |      |

## 3 Definitions and abbreviations

### 3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions apply:

**API:** Application Program Interface. An interface between an application and a particular feature, function or resource of the MHP.

**application:** A functional implementation realised as software running in one or spread over several interplaying hardware entities.

**application boundary:** A concise general description of the data elements (HTML documents, code files, images etc.) used to form one application and the logical locator of the entry point, the application boundary is described by a regular expression over the URL language. Where no such boundary is drawn, the default boundary shall be the entire set of documents that the MHP platform can access.

**application instance:** A unique invocation of an application. i.e. running the same application twice results in two distinct application instances.

**application manager:** The Application Manager is the entity in the MHP that is responsible for managing the lifecycle of the applications in the MHP. It manages both the DVB-J applications and non-DVB-J applications.

**autostart applications:** This terms has different definitions depending on the application format:

A DVB-J autostart application is an application that is automatically loaded and executed by the Application Manager as soon as the user selects a service on which the application is signalled as autostart.

Auto start application a DVB-HTML application in a broadcast stream can be signalled as auto start in the same way that other DVB applications can, but note that it may not actually start providing service until it receives a start trigger.

**best effort:** an implementation dependent approximation which is as close as reasonable to what has requested in the circumstances concerned.

**character:** A specific "letter" or other identifiable symbol, e.g. "A".

**character encoding:** A character encoding is a mapping between an integer input value, and the textual character that is represented by this mapping, e.g. in ASCII value 65 (decimal) is character "A", or shift-JIS for Japanese characters.

**character set:** See character encoding.

**communications network:** A system of interconnected entities providing data interchange between points or from a point to multiple points.

**definite:** A resource is considered of indefinite duration if the exact end point is not known in advance of accessing the resource (e.g. Transport Streams in MPEG-2). A resource is considered of definite duration if in principle the exact length is known (e.g. a file resource).

**delegated application:** An application encoded in a representation that is not directly consumable by an MHP terminal's standard mechanisms.

**domain of an application:** The domain of an Xlet characterizes the "space" within which the Xlet is able to execute. This includes both the "connection" where the Xlet is delivered and other "connections" where an already executing Xlet is allowed to continue executing.

An application cannot run outside its domain. The maximum lifetime of an application extends from the moment the user navigates to its domain until the moment that the user navigates away from its domain.

In the broadcast case a "connection" corresponds to a DVB-service. Broadcast signalling indicates which services can load an application and which services allow an already active application to continue.

**DVB network:** A collection of MPEG-2 Transport Stream multiplexes transmitted on a single delivery system, e.g. all digital channels on a specific cable system.

**DVB-HTML actor:** A DVB-HTML actor is defined as the locus of activity or process involved in running the specific set of DVB-HTML documents for some DVB-HTML application, plus any instantiated context for that data. The actor runs inside a user agent (native, plug-in or downloaded). The nature of the process is not defined explicitly as it depends on the nature of the user agent itself. More than one such locus of activity may be present in any given user agent.

**DVB-HTML application:** A DVB-HTML application is defined as a set of documents selected from the DVB-HTML family of elements and content formats as defined in the specification. The extent of the set is described by the application boundary.

**DVB-HTML application states:** DVB-HTML application states are logical states that a DVB-HTML actor can be in, (as opposed to states the user agent may be in), these states may have instance data logically associated with them (e.g. the application id and entry point).

**DVB-HTML document:** A complete unit of one the HTML family of elements or content formats defined in this specification.

**DVB-J:** The Java platform defined as part of the MHP specification.

**DVB-J API:** One of the Java APIs standardised as part of the MHP specification.

**DVB-J application:** A DVB-J Application is a set of DVB-J classes that operate together and need to be signalled as a single instance to the Application Manager so that it is aware of its existence and can control its lifetime through a lifecycle interface.

**events:** Asynchronous communication between applications and the MHP on which they are being executed. They provide communication between solution elements.

**font:** A font is a mechanism that allows the specific rendering of a particular character to be specified – e.g. Tiresias, 12 point. In practice a font file format will incorporate some aspects of a character encoding.

**function:** A function is a process which conveys or transforms data in a predictable way. It may be effected by hardware, software or a combination of the two.

**hardware entity:** Is an independent piece of hardware which forms part of a (multiple) local cluster of elements which as a whole is called MHP. A hardware entity is for example: a Set top box, a digital VCR or a conditional access module. A hardware entity includes a number of resources. Each resource provides a number of functions.

**indefinite:** See definite.

**internet access application:** An application which is resident on an MHP terminal and used for presenting content from the internet. Applications which are downloaded to an MHP terminal when required are also covered by this definition only if this downloading process is transparent to any MHP applications. Internet access applications do not include the applications or content obtained from the internet. They are very similar conceptually to a DVB-HTML support application.

These are also referred to as "internet clients" and "internet client applications".

**inner application:** Application content that forms part of a larger application and possibly of a different type. For example, an Xlet embedded within an DVB-HTML application.

**interoperable plug-in:** A plug-in that only requires standard MHP APIs.

**interoperability:** The reception and presentation of applications in a vendor, author and broadcaster neutral framework (From MHP45r12).

**java API:** Is a standard interface for use by platform independent application software. It is expressed in the Java language.

**lifetime of an application:** The lifetime of an application characterizes the time from which the application is Loaded to the time the application is Destroyed.

**locator:** This term has different definitions depending on the application format:

A DVB-HTML locator is a link, expressed in the syntax in [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#), which provides an unambiguous pointer to a DVB-HTML document accessible to the MHP in a specific transport stream. The scheme specified should resolve to one of the available transports signalled for the DVB-HTML application. For signed DVB-HTML applications the schemes http and https (ftp, others?) may use the return channel. This version of the specification does not include a scheme for transport independent locators, future versions are expected to do so.

This term in the DVB-HTML context should not be confused with the DVB-J class of the same name.

**MHP:** The Multimedia Home Platform (MHP) consists of an MHP viewer terminal, including all possible low to high functionality implementations, its associated peripherals and the in-home digital network.

**MHP connected resource:** A resource used as part of the MHP which, on its own, is not conformant to the specification but which is connected to an MHP Terminal in such a way that the whole is part of the MHP.

**MHP service:** A logical service in an MHP which can be selected through the service selection API or functional equivalents. This includes broadcast DVB services, stored services and MHP applications executed in response to an AIT file loaded over the interaction channel.

**MHP solution:** The MHP solution encompasses the whole set of technologies necessary to implement the MHP including protocols and APIs.

**MHP terminal:** A single piece of physical equipment conforming to the MHP specification, in particular in that it contains a Virtual Machine and an instance of the MHP API.

**native signalling:** Signalling infrastructure for a delegated application that are not part of an MHP terminal's standard mechanisms.

**navigator:** A resident application, typically provided by the manufacturer, which the end-user can activate at any time. The navigator can be used to select services, applications, and initiate Interoperable applications.

**object carousel:** A repetitively broadcast file system.

**OID:** X.509 Object Identifier.

**persistent storage:** Memory available in the MHP which can be read/written to by an application and which may outlive the application's own life.

Persistent storage shall be non-volatile.

**plug-in:** A set of functionality which can be added to a generic platform in order to provide interpretation of DVB registered, but non-DVB-J, application formats; e.g. HTML3.2 or MHEG-5.

**profile:** A description of a series of minimum configurations, defined as part of the specification, providing different capabilities of the MHP. It maps a set of functions which characterise the scope of service options. The number of profiles is small. The mapping of functions into resources and subsequently into hardware entities is out of the scope of the specification and is left to manufacturers.

**regular expression:** A method of capturing a large, possibly infinite set of strings in a compact representation.

**resident application:** An application available from non-volatile storage in an MHP device which may be expressed in DVB-J but need not be so. Its delivery route is not specified.

**resource:** Is a well defined capability or asset of a system entity, which can be used to contribute to the realisation of a service. Examples: MPEG decoder, Graphics system.

**return channel:** The communications mechanism which provides connection between the MHP and a remote server.

**runtime code extension:** The ability to extend, at runtime, the executable code of an application with code not originally packaged with the application. This facility is provided, for example, by `org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader` in DVB-J and by `eval()` in ECMAScript.

**sandbox:** Unsigned applications and signed applications without a permission file have access to all the APIs for which there is no permission signalling defined. This is commonly called the sandbox.



**service:** A sequence of programs under the control of a broadcaster which can be broadcast as part of a schedule.

**service component:** A part of a service. For a DVB service, service components are normally the MPEG elementary streams listed in the PMT for the service. Where multiple streams of subtitles or MPEG-2 audio representing different languages are carried in the same MPEG elementary stream these are logically service components but are not exposed through the MHP APIs as being distinct and separate.

**stand-alone application:** An application which is not related to a conventional DVB service. In this version of this specification, this includes applications running as part of a stored service and applications whose signalling was carried over the interaction channel.

**stream:** A unidirectional continuous flow of content. Example: MPEG2 video.

**stored service:** A set of MHP applications stored within the MHP terminal and treated as a service with regard to life cycle, service selection etc.

**system software:** Software implementation below the API for a specific platform entirely under control of the manufacturer.

**trigger:** A trigger is an event that may cause a change in the behaviour of a DVB-HTML application that registers interest in such events. Triggers may come from many sources e.g. the broadcast stream, or may be generated from other data (such as the system clock), or may be generated as a result of user interaction. The trigger may include a reference to time, which may be absolute (UTC), relative to some other event, relative to the NPT of a media stream. It also can carry some semantically significant payload in order to affect changes in an application based on information not available at the time an application was written.

**tuning:** the act of switching between two MPEG transport streams or multiplexes. Switching between two DVB services carried in the same transport stream is not tuning.

**viewer:** End-user of the MHP terminal.

**xlet:** Interface used for DVB-J application life cycle control.

## 3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the following abbreviations apply:

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| API       | Application Programming Interface                           |
| AV        | Audio Video   |
| AWT       | Abstract Windowing Toolkit                                  |
| CA        | Conditional Access  |
| CI        | Common Interface  |
| CLUT      | Colour Lookup Table   |
| CSS       | Cascading Style Sheets                                      |
| DAVIC     | Digital Audio Visual Council                                |
| DCT       | Discrete Cosine Transformation                              |
| DECT      | Digital Enhanced Cordless Telecommunications                |
| DOM       | Document Object Model                                       |
| DSM-CC    | Digital Storage Media - Command and Control                 |
| DSM-CC-OC | Digital Storage Media - Command and Control Object Carousel |
| DSM-CC-UU | Digital Storage Media - Command and Control User to User    |
| DVB       | Digital Video Broadcasting                                  |
| ECMA      | European Computer Manufacturers Association                 |
| EPG       | Electronic Program Guide                                    |
| ETSI      | European Telecommunications Standards Institute             |

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| GIF   | Graphics Interchange Format                    |
| GSM   | Global System for Mobile communications        |
| GUI   | Graphical User Interface                       |
| HTML  | Hyper Text Mark-up Language                    |
| HTTP  | Hyper Text Transport Protocol                  |
| I/O   | Input / Output                                 |
| IHDN  | In Home Digital Network                        |
| IP    | Internet Protocol                              |
| IPR   | Intellectual Property Rights                   |
| IRD   | Integrated Receiver Decoder                    |
| ISDN  | Integrated Services Digital Network            |
| ISO   | International Organization for Standardization |
| ITU   | International Telecommunication Union          |
| JDK   | Java Development Kit                           |
| JFIF  | JPEG File Interchange Format                   |
| JMF   | Java Media Framework                           |
| JPEG  | Joint Picture Expert Group                     |
| LMDS  | Local Multipoint Distribution System           |
| MHEG  | Multimedia Hypermedia Expert Group             |
| MHP   | Multimedia Home Platform                       |
| MMDS  | Multipoint Microwave Distribution System       |
| MPEG  | Moving Picture Expert Group                    |
| OC    | Object Carousel                                |
| OS    | Operating System                               |
| OSD   | On Screen Display                              |
| PFR   | Portable Font Resource                         |
| PMT   | Program Map Table                              |
| PNG   | Portable Network Graphics                      |
| PSI   | Program Specific Information                   |
| PSTN  | Public Switched Telephone Network              |
| RAM   | Random Access Memory                           |
| ROM   | Read Only Memory                               |
| SI    | Service Information                            |
| SMATV | Satellite Master-Antenna Television            |
| TCP   | Transmission Control Protocol                  |
| TS    | Transport Stream                               |
| UCS   | Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set   |
| UDP   | User Datagram Protocol                         |
| UI    | User Interface                                 |
| URL   | Uniform Resource Locator                       |
| UTF   | UCS Transformation Coding                      |
| UU    | User to User                                   |
| VM    | Virtual Machine                                |
| WAN   | Wide Area Network                              |

---

## 4 Conventions

Unless otherwise specified, the BNF notation in this specification shall follow the definitions of section 2.1 of [IETF RFC 2616 \[40\]](#).

## 5 Basic Architecture

### 5.1 Context

At its simplest level, the MHP is set in the following context (see figure 2). The software of the MHP has access to flows of streams and data, and may write some data to storage. The platform may be able to route streams and data outwards to a sink or store.

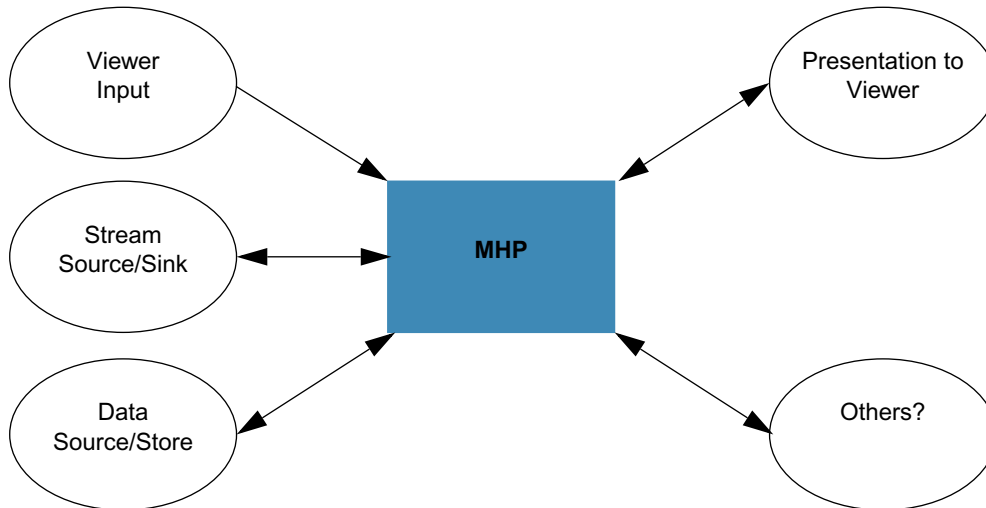


Figure 2 : MHP context

The platform will receive inputs from Viewer input devices and output communications through a screen or other outputs like loudspeakers to present to the viewer. The platform may have access to communications with remote entities.

The diagram in figure 3 shows a possible set of external interfaces between an MHP and the outside world. This is one example only but it serves to illustrate a series of principles.

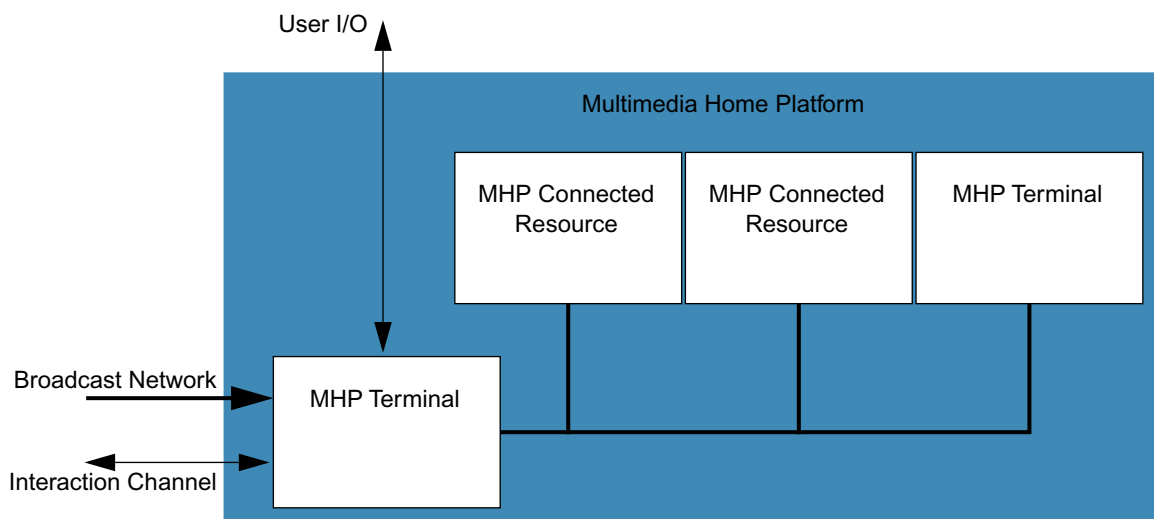


Figure 3 : External interfaces between an MHP and the outside world

The resources of the MHP, accessible by an application, may be contained in a series of different but connected physical entities.

The local cluster may connect a number of MHP terminals and resources

A cluster may also include resources which are not part of the MHP infrastructure and are not available to the application.

The local cluster is understood to be consistent with the DVB IHDN specification. The detailed description of the MHP in the local cluster is not in the first version of the specification.

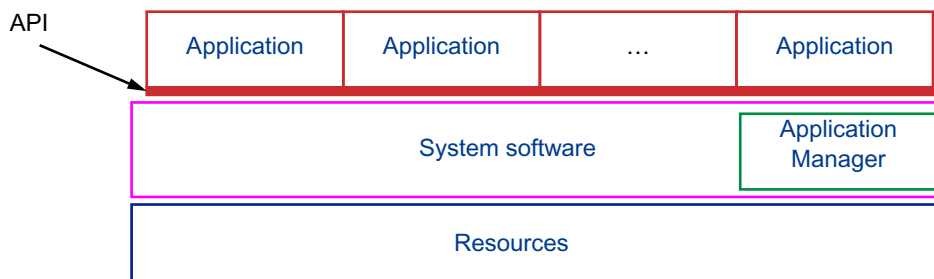
## 5.2 Architecture

The Architecture describes how the MHP software elements are organized.

The MHP model considers 3 layers (figure 4):

- Resources
- System software
- Applications

The API lies between the Applications and the System Software seen from the perspective of an application.



**Figure 4 : Basic architecture**

### 5.2.1 Resources

The hardware entities in the platform include a number of functions. They are represented by hardware or software resources. There is no assumption about how they are grouped. The model considers that there can be more than one hardware entity in the total Platform.

From an abstract point of view it makes no difference if the logical resources are mapped into one or several hardware entities. What is important is that resources are provided to the MHP transparently. An application should be able to access all locally connected resources as if they were elements of a single entity.

### 5.2.2 System software

Applications will not directly address resources. The system software brings an abstract view of such resources. This middle layer isolates the application from the hardware, enabling portability of the application.

The implementations of the Resources and System software are not specified in this document.

#### 5.2.2.1 Application Manager

The system software includes an application management function, which is responsible for managing the lifecycle of all applications, including Interoperable ones.

### 5.2.3 Application

Applications implement interactive services as software running in one or more hardware entities. The interface for MHP applications is a top view from application to the system software.

Figure 4 on page 53 illustrates an idealised architecture model of the processes which will occur in an MHP. A hierarchy of control is assumed in which each layer controls the processes in adjacent layers. The top layer is responsible for the control of the operation via interactive applications. The Application Manager is part of the System Software and as such is implementation specific. It interacts with all applications.

The System Software implements the API by presenting an abstract model of:

- Streams played from different sources and pipes for conducting them.
- Commands and events
- Data records or files
- The hardware resources

The API provides the associated services to applications.

In fact there are many APIs which implement distinct services and interfaces. These are described in detail in the specification, either by reference to external documents, or by detailed specification.

The specification describes the interfaces between the network, the application and the system software of the MHP terminal. The implementation of any of these three is not specified in this document.

## 5.3 Interfaces Between an MHP Application and the MHP System

Application(s) use the API to access the actual resources of the receiver, including: databases, streamed media decoders, static content decoders and communications. These resources are functional entities of the receiver and may be finally mapped onto the hardware of the receiver in some manner.

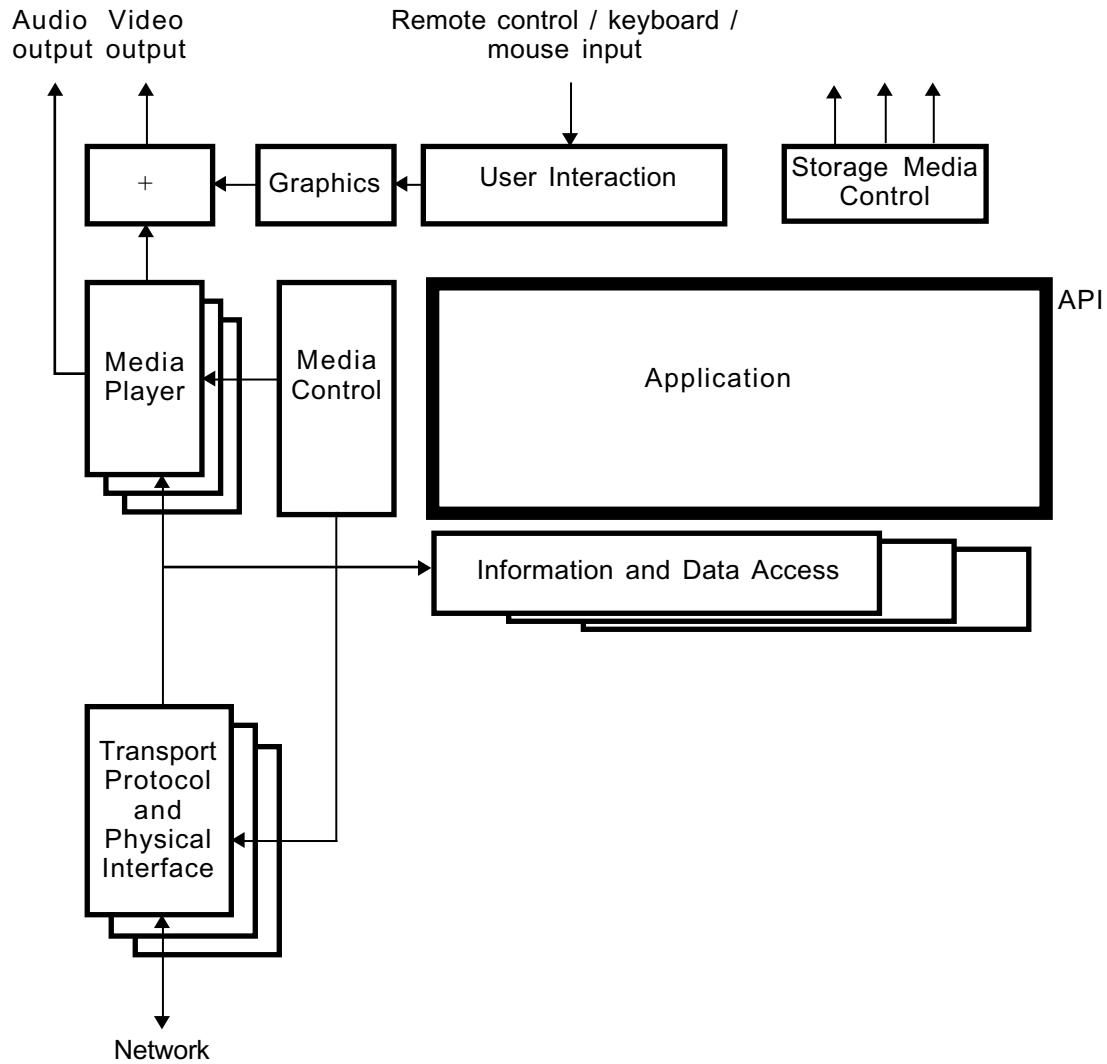
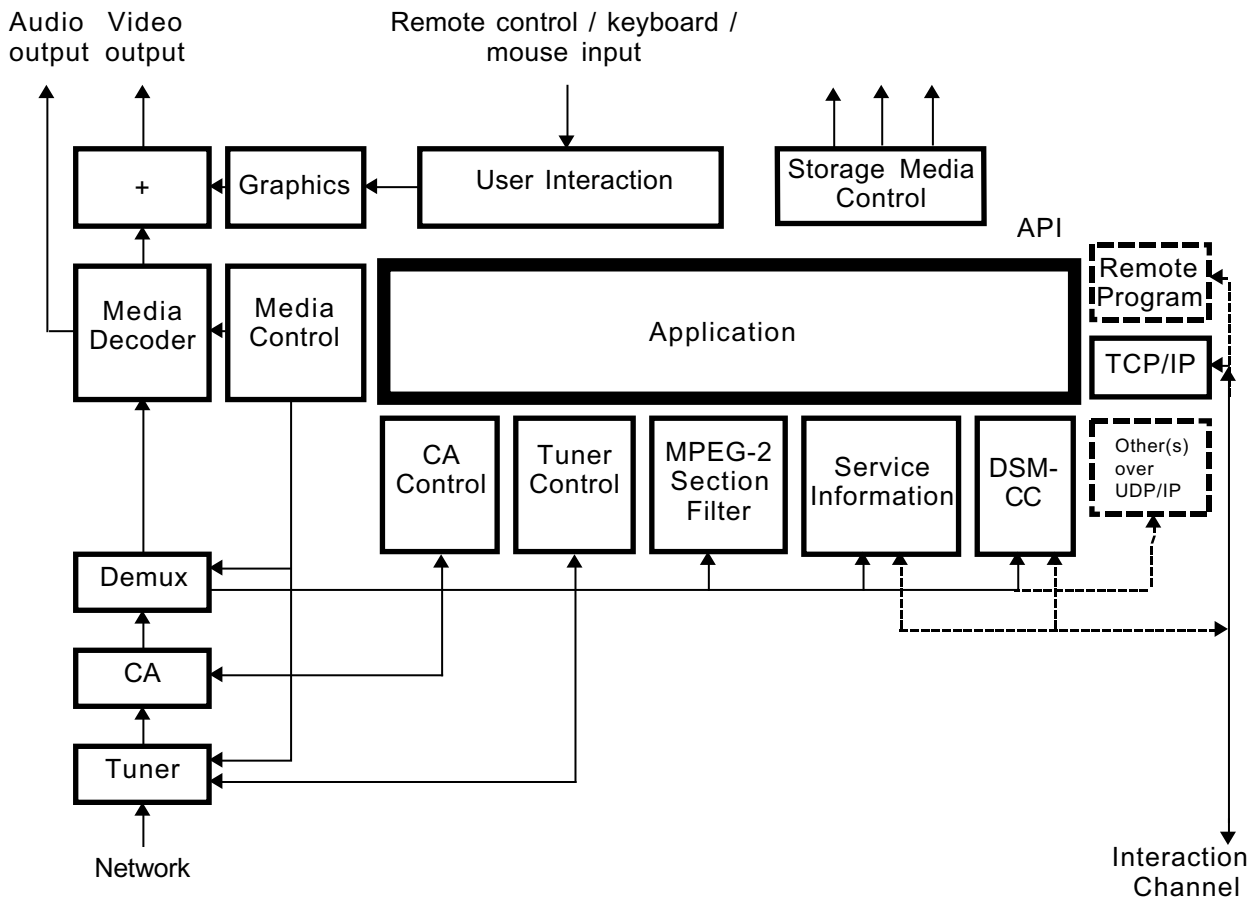


Figure 5 : Interfaces between an MHP application and the MHP system



**Figure 6 : Interfaces between an MHP application and the MHP system with more details**

The diagrams in figure 5 and figure 6 show these interfaces and their relationships to media and information flows within an MHP system - excluding any local cluster issues. The first diagram shows a generic MHP, the second a specific instance of an enhanced broadcast or interactive TV profile system, with optional additions shown.

In figure 5 and figure 6, only the border between the application and the rest of the system is in the scope of this specification. All the rest of each diagram is implementation dependent and shown for information purposes only.

## 5.4 Plug-ins

A "plug-in" is a set of functionality that can be added to a generic platform in order to provide interpretation of application and content formats not specified by this specification to be included in MHP terminals.

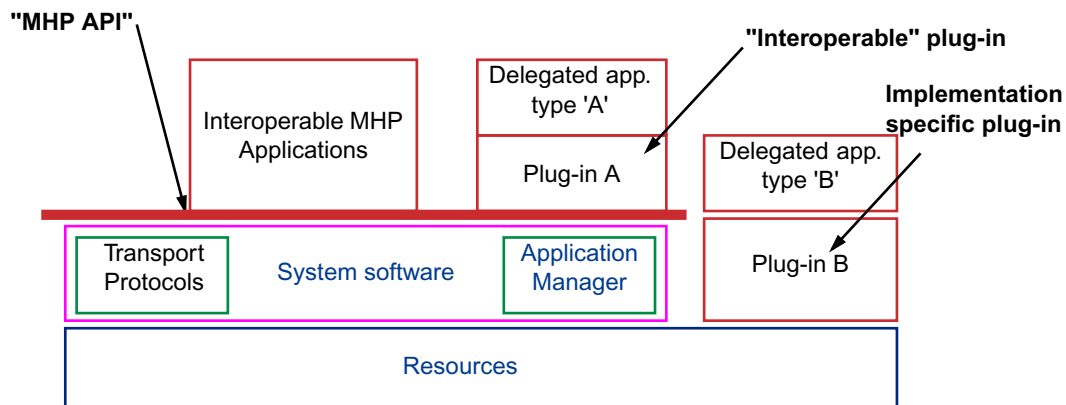
**NOTE:** Those organisations concerned with interoperation between the standard MHP platform and other platforms need to specify the plug-in properly for such platforms.

The choice of which plug-ins to use must be in the hands of the end-user in order that he can have a choice of sources of service. This option can be exercised in a number of ways, including the purchase of equipment with "built-in" plug-in functionality, the positive selection of a download, or the automatic selection of a download where there is no memory resource limitation.

The plug-in may stay resident where the design of the platform implementation allows. The MHP including the plug-in must behave, once the plug-in is loaded and operational, in the same way as a platform supporting the format of the delegated applications without the use of a plug-in.



Figure 7 illustrates the position of two types of Plug-in in the MHP.



**Figure 7 : Illustrative plug-in implementation options**

There are two possible types of Plug-in implementation:

- Using implementation-specific code (e.g. in native code, or using implementation-specific Java APIs). This is called an implementation-specific plug-in, illustrated as plug-in "B" in the figure.
- An MHP application. This is called an interoperable plug-in, illustrated as plug-in "A" in the figure.

The internal specification of both plug-ins ("A" and "B") is outside of the scope of this specification. They are illustrated to show their relationship to the platform.

There are two varieties of inter-operable plug-ins depending on the signalling used for the delegated applications.

- Ones which work with delegated applications signalled with MHP signalling and which implement `org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin`. These delegated applications are visible to the MHP receiver and are managed by the MHP application manager.
- Ones which work with delegated applications signalled with native signalling and only look like an MHP application to the MHP receiver. These do not implement the plug-in interface. These delegated applications are invisible to the MHP receiver and totally managed by the plug-in.

### 5.4.1 Security Model

Plug-ins must have sufficient access to the resources in the platform to implement the specification concerned. An implementation-specific plug-in may have access to many of the resources of the platform irrespective of the MHP security model. All plug-ins are responsible for managing the security of the applications they execute.

If a plug-ins needs privileged access to resources not available to all downloaded applications (i.e. not in the "sand box") in order to provide equivalent function to the "legacy" supported they will require the appropriate authentication.

---

## 6 Transport Protocols

### 6.1 Introduction

In order to be able to talk to the external world, the MHP has to be able to communicate through different network types. This part of the MHP specification deals with the Network Independent Protocols and on the networks as defined in two specifications from the DVB project, as specified in [ETSI ETS 300 802 \[16\]](#) and [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#).

The protocols defined in these standards provide a generic solution for a variety of broadcast only and interactive services, through the use of DSM-CC User-to-User, Data and Object Carousel protocols, as specified in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) and support for IP over the interaction channel as well as over the broadcast channel through the Multiprotocol Encapsulation [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#).

Broadcast only services are provided on systems consisting of a downstream channel from the Service Providers to Service consumers.

Interactive services are provided on systems consisting of a downstream channel together with interaction channels.

There are many possible network configurations covering the currently specified DVB broadcast options including satellite, terrestrial, cable, SMATV and MMDS in conjunction with PSTN, ISDN, cable and other interactive channel options.

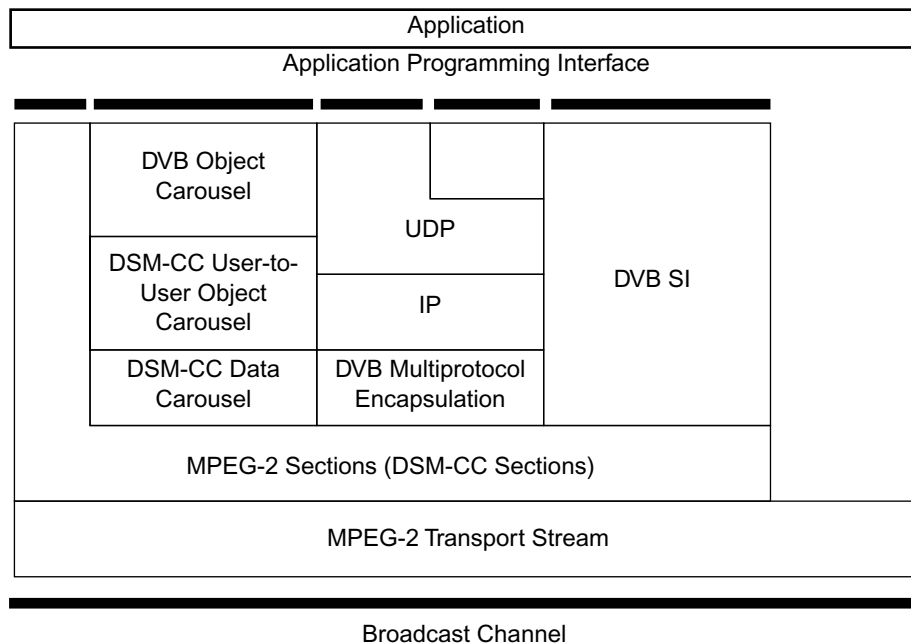
The network dependent protocols for the interaction channels in the DVB context are specified in [ETSI ETS 300 800 \[14\]](#), [ETSI ETS 300 801 \[15\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 193 \[6\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 195 \[7\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 199 \[8\]](#), [ETSI TR 101 201 \[48\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 790 \[82\]](#) respectively for CATV, PSTN/ISDN, DECT, GSM, LMDS, SMATV and satellite networks. The network dependent protocols work together with the Network Independent Protocols.

### 6.2 Broadcast Channel Protocols

This section deals with the DVB defined or referenced broadcast channel protocols. This chapter does not consider other protocols and the APIs that would provide access to them.

Other protocols and their APIs are considered as extensions to the DVB MHP platform, see [H, "\(normative\): Extensions" on page 522](#).

Figure 8 illustrates the set of DVB defined broadcast protocols that are accessible by MHP applications in some or all profiles (see 15, "Detailed platform profile definitions" on page 383). The full details of the APIs that provide access to these broadcast protocols are in chapter 11, "DVB-J Platform" on page 248.



**Figure 8 : Broadcast Channel Protocol Stack**

Except in the case of MPEG-2 sections (see 6.2.2 "MPEG-2 Sections"), when an MHP application attempts to access conditional access scrambled data through one of these broadcast channel protocols, the MHP terminal shall attempt to initiate descrambling of this data without the application needing to explicitly ask for it. Attempts to access conditional access scrambled data at the level of MPEG-2 sections shall not happen without the application explicitly asking for this.

## 6.2.1 MPEG-2 Transport Stream

MPEG-2 Transport Stream is defined in [ISO/IEC 13818-1 \[23\]](#).

## 6.2.2 MPEG-2 Sections

MPEG-2 private sections as defined in [ISO/IEC 13818-1 \[23\]](#) is based on the MPEG-2 Transport Stream protocol in 6.2.1.

## 6.2.3 DSM-CC Private Data

DSM-CC Private Data protocol as defined in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#).

## 6.2.4 DSM-CC Data Carousel

DSM-CC Data Carousel as defined in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#).

## 6.2.5 DSM-CC User-to-User Object Carousel

DSM-CC User-to-User Object Carousel protocols as defined in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) with the restrictions and extensions as defined in [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#), [ETSI TR 101 202 \[49\]](#) and annex B, "(normative): Object carousel" on page 453.

### 6.2.5.1 DVB-J class files

Java bytecode for each Java class is carried as the content bytes of the `BIOP::FileMessage` corresponding exactly to the contents of a "class" file as specified in [Java VM \[34\]](#).

### 6.2.5.2 DVB-HTML document files

The set of documents defining a DVB-HTML application is transported with the content bytes of `BIOP::FileMessage` messages corresponding exactly to the contents of the documents (i.e. the `BIOP::FileMessage` doesn't include any HTTP headers, etc.).

### 6.2.5.3 Loss of Carousel Behaviour

Under some conditions, carousel data streams servicing broadcast file systems may become unavailable. The conditions for permanent loss of carousel are defined in [B.2.11, "Unavailability of a carousel" on page 479](#). The conditions for temporary disconnection and reconnection of carousel are defined in [9.1.5, "Persistence of Applications Across Service Boundaries" on page 190](#).

When this happens, implementations may continue to provide data from carousels which have been lost where they have that data cached. The extent of this is clearly implementation dependent. It is also implementation dependent how this changes with time. Permanently lost carousels shall never be restored automatically. Temporary disconnections and reconnections are automatic and are largely invisible to the application. However, implementations must preserve Java IO semantics. For example, the `InputStream.available()` method should accurately report the number of bytes available without blocking.

Data not in such a cache shall be unavailable to applications. When applications attempt to access unavailable data from permanently lost carousels, the operation shall fail. The failure mode shall be one appropriate to the content format and the mechanism being used to access the data.

Failure modes for DVB-J applications are defined in [11.5.1.3, "Behaviour following loss of a broadcast carousel" on page 268](#).

When an application attempts to access unavailable data from a temporarily disconnected carousel, the operation shall block until the data becomes available, or it is interrupted. This includes any operations that indirectly cause synchronous loading operations, as stated in [11.5.1.1, "Constraints on the java.io.File methods for broadcast carousels" on page 267](#).

Upon reconnection to a carousel, the system shall start fetching any outstanding data. Any blocked I/O operations shall return once the data is received.

A temporarily disconnected service may become permanently lost if the system determines that the loss of connection is irrecoverable - as stated in [P, "\(normative\): Broadcast Transport Protocol Access" on page 709](#), org.dvb.dsmcc. `ServiceDomain`. The cases in which this may occur are:

- The carousel becomes permanently unavailable, as stated in [B.2.11, "Unavailability of a carousel" on page 479](#).
- The period since the carousel became disconnected is at least 60 seconds.

If this occurs, any blocked I/O operations shall terminate with `InterruptedException` and the `ServiceDomain` shall enter the detached state. An implementation may choose to use longer timeouts other strategies to determine when to permanently lose carousels, within the constraints listed above. For example, boot carousels for running applications may be kept in preference to carousels mounted by applications.

## 6.2.6 DVB Multiprotocol Encapsulation

DVB Multiprotocol Encapsulation as defined in [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#) provides support for IP and is based on the DSM-CC Private Data protocol.

### 6.2.7 Internet Protocol (IP)

Internet Protocol as defined in [IETF RFC 791 \[43\]](#).

### 6.2.8 User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

User Datagram Protocol as defined in [IETF RFC 768 \[42\]](#).

### 6.2.9 DVB Service Information

DVB Service Information as defined in [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#) and [ETSI ETR 211 \[11\]](#).

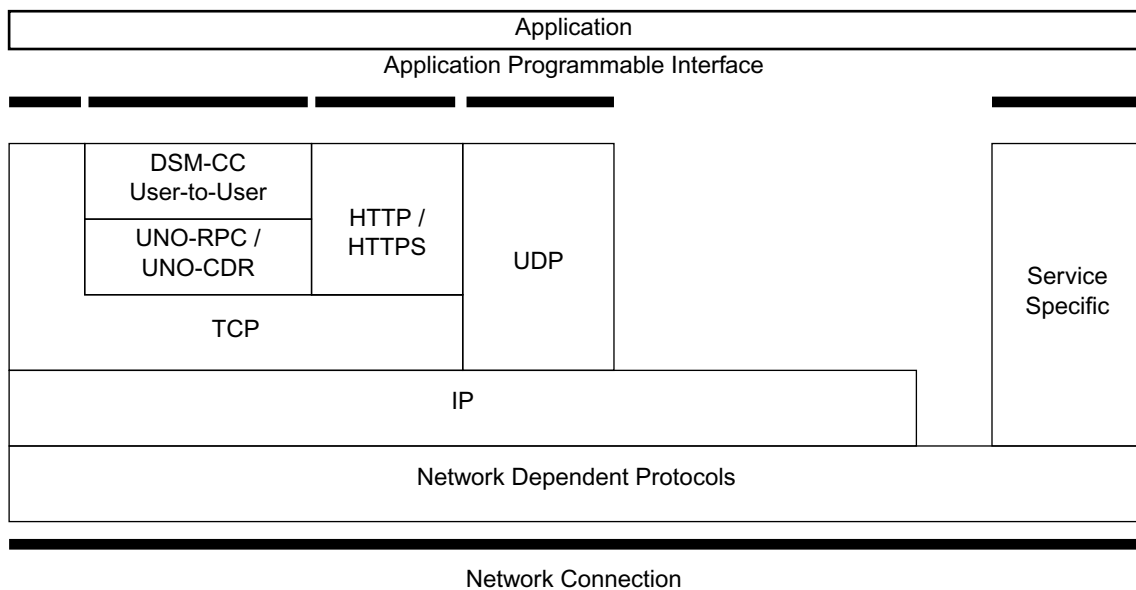
## 6.2.10 IP signalling

IP Notification Table (INT) as defined in [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#).

## 6.3 Interaction Channel Protocols

This section deals with the DVB defined or referenced interaction channel protocols. This chapter does not consider other protocols and the APIs that would provide access to them. Other private protocols and possibly APIs are not precluded and are outside of the scope of the MHP.

Figure 9 illustrates the set of DVB defined interaction channel protocols that are accessible by MHP applications in some or all profiles (see 15, "Detailed platform profile definitions" on page 383). The full details of the APIs that provide access to these interaction protocols are in chapter 11, "DVB-J Platform" on page 248.



**Figure 9 : Interaction Channel Protocol Stack**

### 6.3.1 Network Dependent Protocols

As defined in [ETSI ETS 300 800 \[14\]](#), [ETSI ETS 300 801 \[15\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 193 \[6\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 195 \[7\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 199 \[8\]](#), [ETSI TR 101 201 \[48\]](#), [ETSI EN 301 790 \[82\]](#) respectively for CATV, PSTN/ISDN, DECT, GSM, LMDS SMATV and satellite networks.

For connection based interaction channels, the PPP protocol is used as defined in [IETF RFC 1332 \[88\]](#), [IETF RFC 1661 \[89\]](#), [IETF RFC 1717 \[90\]](#). Network supplied DNS server addresses shall be supported as in [IETF RFC 1877 \[87\]](#).

### 6.3.2 Internet Protocol (IP)

Internet Protocol as defined in [IETF RFC 791 \[43\]](#).

### 6.3.3 Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)

Transmission Control Protocol as defined in [IETF RFC 793 \[44\]](#).

### 6.3.4 UNO-RPC

The UNO-RPC consists of the Internet Inter-ORB Protocol (IIOP) as specified in [CORBA/IIOP \[2\]](#).

### 6.3.5 UNO-CDR

The UNO-CDR as defined in [CORBA/IIOP \[2\]](#).

### 6.3.6 DCM-CC User to User

DSM-CC User-to-user as defined in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) with the restrictions and extensions as defined in [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#) and [ETSI TR 101 202 \[49\]](#).

### 6.3.7 Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)

#### 6.3.7.1 HTTP 1.1

Hypertext Transfer Protocol as defined in [IETF RFC 2616 \[40\]](#).

#### 6.3.7.2 MHP profile of HTTP 1.0

HTTP 1.0 is defined in [IETF RFC 1945 \[92\]](#). MHP terminals supporting HTTP 1.0 are required to support persistent connections as defined below. MHP terminals implementing profiles where HTTP 1.0 is required are also allowed to implement subsequent versions of the HTTP specification (e.g. HTTP 1.1, [IETF RFC 2616 \[40\]](#)) as long as these are backwards compatible and persistent connections or their equivalent in the subsequent version of the specification are supported.

With no support for persistent connections, a separate TCP connection has to be established to fetch each URL, increasing the load on HTTP servers and causing congestion. The use of multiple separate image files and other associated data, for example often require a client to make multiple requests to the same server in a short amount of time. Therefore an MHP terminal implementation shall include support for persistent connections.

The following section explains how persistent connection is to be used within the MHP. The original form of HTTP 1.0 persistent connections is defined as informational text in [RFC 2068 \[J\]](#). The normative specification text included here is intended to be fully compatible with this RFC.

##### 6.3.7.2.1 HTTP 1.0 persistent connections

When connecting to a server, an MHP terminal shall send the Keep-Alive connection-token:

```
Connection: Keep-Alive
```

An HTTP server (1.0 or 1.1) would then respond with the Keep-Alive connection token and the client may proceed with an HTTP 1.0 (Keep-Alive) persistent connection.

##### 6.3.7.2.2 The Keep-Alive Header

When the Keep-Alive connection-token has been transmitted with a request or a response, a Keep-Alive header field may also be included. The Keep-Alive header field takes the following form:

```
Keep-Alive-header = "Keep-Alive" ":" 0# keepalive-param
keepalive-param = param-name "=" value
```

where the "0#" notation means that the "keepalive-param" field may be repeated 0 or more times and they are separated by a comma character "," if the field is included more than once.

The Keep-Alive header itself is optional, and is used only if a parameter is being sent. This specification does not define any parameters.

If the Keep-Alive header is sent, the corresponding connection token must be transmitted. The Keep-Alive header must be ignored if received without the connection token.

##### 6.3.7.2.3 MHP and proxies

An MHP terminal must not send the Keep-Alive connection token to a HTTP 1.0 proxy server, as HTTP 1.0 proxy servers do not obey the rules of HTTP 1.1 for parsing the Connection header field.

If an MHP terminal sends Keep-Alive to a proxy server that doesn't understand Connection, which would then erroneously forward it to the next inbound server, which would establish the Keep-Alive connection and result in a hung HTTP 1.0 proxy waiting for the close on the response. The result is that the MHP terminal must be prevented from using Keep-Alive when talking to proxies that doesn't understand Connection.

#### 6.3.7.2.4 Version compatibility

An HTTP 1.1 server may also establish persistent connections with an MHP terminal upon receipt of a Keep-Alive connection token. However, a persistent connection with an MHP terminal can't make use of the chunked transfer coding, and therefore MUST use a content-length for marking the ending boundary of each message.

For servers used for MHP applications, it is recommended that if HTTP 1.1 servers are used, they should support the HTTP 1.0 persistent connections when initiated by an HTTP 1.0 client using the Keep-Alive connection token.

#### 6.3.7.3 HTTPS

This is described in [IETF RFC 2818 \[112\]](#).

### 6.3.8 Service Specific

Service Specific protocols are proprietary protocols used by a service as defined in the guidelines for the Data Broadcast Specification [ETSI TR 101 202 \[49\]](#). The DVB provides a registry mechanism for new, proprietary broadcast protocols.

### 6.3.9 User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

User Datagram Protocol as defined in [IETF RFC 768 \[42\]](#).

### 6.3.10 DNS

MHP terminals shall implement at least the DNS resolver protocols that enable forward translation of fully qualified domain names to IP addresses as defined by [IETF RFC 1034 \[83\]](#) and [IETF RFC 1035 \[84\]](#) and clarified by [IETF RFC 1982 \[85\]](#) and [IETF RFC 2181 \[86\]](#).

In connection based return channels, where DNS server addresses are provided both from the network as part of connection setup and from an MHP application, those provided from the network shall take precedence.

## 6.4 Transport protocols for application loading over the interaction channel

Three scenarios are envisaged:

- The file system is completely implemented in the broadcast channel (the classic MHP 1.0 model which is not described further here)
- [File system implemented only via the interaction channel](#)
- [Hybrid between broadcast stream and interaction channel](#)

### 6.4.1 File system implemented only via the interaction channel

This clause addresses the case where the interaction channel presents the only file system i.e. where the protocol ID is 0x0003.

#### 6.4.1.1 File system logical structure

The list of items signalled in the transport protocol descriptor(s) (see [10.8.1.3, "Transport via interaction channel" on page 232](#)) are considered to form a single name space.

The MHP terminal when trying to locate a file specified by an incomplete (relative) filename, shall attempt to fetch a file from each of the items in that list in the order in which they are found in the list until the file is found or the list is exhausted.

The items in the list shall either be references to .zip files (see [ZIP \[91\]](#)) or base URLs ending in '/' onto which the path of the requested file shall be concatenated. Any items in the list which are not one of these two types shall be ignored. Errors in discovering whether a specific file can be reached through a specific list item shall be ignored. The list must contain at least one item.

As an example, consider the MHP platform retrieving the "dvb.fontindex" file for an application from an which AIT includes two transport protocol descriptors with the following contents;

**Table 1 : Example transport descriptor selector byte payload**

| URL base             | URL extension                                 |
|----------------------|---|
| "http://www.dvb.org" | "applications/application1.zip"               |
|                      | "graphics/"                                   |
|                      | "shared/utills.zip"                           |
| "http://www.ebu.ch"  | "general/misc.zip"                            |
| "http://www.dvb.org" | "other_stuff/we_dont_use_this_very_often.zip" |

Then the search order for "dvb.fontindex" would be the following:-

- a) in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/applications/application1.zip>
- b) from the URL <http://www.dvb.org/graphics/dvb.fontindex>
- c) in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/shared/utills.zip>
- d) in the contents of <http://www.ebu.ch/general/misc.zip>
- e) in the contents of [http://www.dvb.org/we\\_dont\\_use\\_this\\_very\\_often.zip](http://www.dvb.org/we_dont_use_this_very_often.zip)

The search order for "abc/dvb.hashfile" would be the following:-

- a) for "abc/dvb.hashfile" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/applications/application1.zip>
- b) from the URL <http://www.dvb.org/graphics/abc/dvb.hashfile>
- c) for "abc/dvb.hashfile" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/shared/utills.zip>
- d) for "abc/dvb.hashfile" in the contents of <http://www.ebu.ch/general/misc.zip>



These file system semantics shall be followed for all files fetched by or on behalf of an MHP application. This includes the files whose names and locations are standardised by this specification, e.g. 'dvb.fontindex', 'dvb.hashfile', 'dvb.signature.x' and 'dvb.certificate.x'.

For DVB-J, with the following application location descriptor:-

- a) base\_directory "/app1/starting"
- b) classpath\_extension "/shared;/app1/later"
- c) initial\_class "org.dvb.demo.myXlet"

The search order for a class would be the following:-

- a) for "app1/starting/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/applications/application1.zip>
- b) from the URL <http://www.dvb.org/graphics/app1/starting/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class>
- c) for "app1/starting/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/shared/utills.zip>
- d) for "app1/starting/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.ebu.ch/general/misc.zip>
- e) other\_stuff/we\_dont\_use\_this\_very\_often.zip
- f) for "/app1/starting/shared/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/applications/application1.zip>
- g) from the URL <http://www.dvb.org/graphics/app1/starting/shared/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class>
- h) for "/app1/starting/shared/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/shared/utills.zip>
- i) for "/app1/starting/shared/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.ebu.ch/general/misc.zip>
- j) other\_stuff/we\_dont\_use\_this\_very\_often.zip
- k) for "/app1/starting/app1/later/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/applications/application1.zip>
- l) from the URL <http://www.dvb.org/graphics/app1/starting/app1/later/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class>
- m) for "/app1/starting/app1/later/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.dvb.org/shared/utills.zip>
- n) for "/app1/starting/app1/later/org/dvb/demo/myXlet.class" in the contents of <http://www.ebu.ch/general/misc.zip>
- o) other\_stuff/we\_dont\_use\_this\_very\_often.zip

#### 6.4.1.2 File transfer

Files shall be transferred using the profile of HTTP specified under [6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62](#).

#### 6.4.1.3 Class encoding

The classes of DVB-J applications can be delivered either as discrete class files or within ZIP files (see [ZIP \[91\]](#)).

NOTE: This contrasts to the broadcast case where object carousel files are simply class files.

The classes of DVB-J applications shall be delivered as discrete class files at the level of the file system.

NOTE: This means that DVB-J class files are allowed to be held on an HTTP server either as discrete class files or in ZIP files (see [ZIP \[91\]](#)) where ZIP files form part of the overall file system.

#### 6.4.1.4 Directory listing in this file system

This file system is considered to be one that does not support directory listing in the following contexts:

- authentication (see [12.4.1.5, "Special authentication rules" on page 307](#)).
- listing the files in a directory (see [14.7, "Files and file names" on page 379](#)).

## 6.4.2 Hybrid between broadcast stream and interaction channel

In the hybrid case all directory information is provided in the broadcast stream but some, or possibly all, of the file contents are provided via the interaction channel.

### 6.4.2.1 File transfer

#### 6.4.2.1.1 Broadcast file delivery

The file contents are carried via a BIOP::File as is the normal case for an Object Carousel defined in MHP 1.0. As described in MHP 1.0 the IOR from the file binding to the file contents uses either a BIOPProfileBody or a LiteOptionsProfileBody.

#### 6.4.2.1.2 Interaction channel delivery

In this case the IOR from the file binding to the file contents uses the HTTPProfileBody (see table 2) to identify the location of the file contents on the interaction channel.

This form of IOR shall only be used for BIOP::File objects.

See 6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62 for the profile of HTTP that is used to retrieve the contents of the file.

#### 6.4.2.1.3 HTTPProfileBody

The HTTP Profile body specifies host, port and path\_segments. In HTTP requests these are concatenated to form a URL of the form:

```
http://host:port/path_segments
```

**Table 2 : HTTP Profile Body syntax**

| Syntax                  | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment                  |
|-------------------------|------|--------|------------|--------------------------|
| HTTPProfileBody {       |      |        |            |                          |
| profileId_tag           | 32   | uimsbf | 0x44564200 |                          |
| profile_data_length     | 32   | uimsbf | *          |                          |
| profile_data_byte_order | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | big endian byte order    |
| version.major           | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01       | protocol major version 1 |
| version.minor           | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | protocol minor version 0 |
| host_data_length        | 8    | uimsbf | N1         |                          |
| for (k=0; k<N1; k++) {  |      |        |            |                          |
| host_data               | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                          |
| }                       |      |        |            |                          |
| port                    | 16   | uimsbf |            |                          |
| objectKey_length        | 16   | uimsbf | N2         |                          |
| for (k=0; k<N2; k++) {  |      |        |            |                          |
| objectKey_data          | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                          |
| }                       |      |        |            |                          |
| }                       |      |        |            |                          |

NOTE: The tag values 0x44564201...0x44564201 have been reserved for future use by the DVB. 0x44 is ASCII for "D", 0x56 is "V" and 0x42 is "B".

**version:** These 8-bit fields indicate the version of the protocol that the server will use to deliver the file specified. The version value 1.0 indicates that the transport protocol is as defined in 6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62.

**host\_data:** These bytes convey the identifier of the Internet host to which messages may be sent. It may be a fully qualified domain name or Internet standard "dotted decimal" form (e.g., "192.231.79.52").

**port:** This 16 bit unsigned integer is the TCP/IP port number at the specified host where the target agent is listening for requests.

**objectKey\_data:** These bytes form a string which carries the path\_segments portion of the URL which uniquely identifies the object on the server [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#).

#### 6.4.2.2 Class encoding

Each class of the DVB-J application shall be delivered in an individual file regardless of whether the file contents are retrieved from the broadcast channel or from the interaction channel.

## 7 Content formats

### 7.1 Static formats

#### 7.1.1 Bitmap image formats

##### 7.1.1.1 Image encoding restrictions

Any indications in the transmitted image with respect to pixel scaling, colour space or gamma are to be ignored in the presenting of the image. One image pixel shall be mapped to one graphics pixel in the current graphics configuration, unless otherwise scaled by the application directly.

See also [7.5, "Colour Representation" on page 72](#).

##### 7.1.1.2 JPEG

JPEG as defined in [ISO/IEC 10918-1 \[21\]](#) using the [JFIF \[35\]](#) file exchange format.

Only coding using sequential DCT-based mode or progressive DCT-based mode is required to be supported by implementations.

Specifically, lossless and hierarchical modes need not be supported.

##### 7.1.1.3 PNG

PNG is defined as in [PNG \[37\]](#).

See also [15.1, "PNG - restrictions" on page 385](#).

##### 7.1.1.4 GIF

GIF is defined as in [GIF 89a \[17\]](#).

#### 7.1.2 MPEG-2 I-Frames

MPEG-2 I-Frames are defined as in [ISO/IEC 13818-2 \[24\]](#).

The payload of a file delivering an MPEG -2 I frame shall:

- be a valid `video_sequence()` including a `sequence_extension()`
- contain one I frame only, i.e. one `picture_header()`, one `picture_coding_extension()`, and one `picture_data()` encoded as an intra coded frame, with `picture structure = "frame"`

That is the structure is:

```
sequence_header()
sequence_extension()
extension_and_user_data(0)
optional group_of_pictures_header() and extension_and_user_data(1)
picture_header ( picture_coding_type = "I frame")
picture_coding_extension ( picture_structure = "frame picture")
extension_and_user_data(2)
picture_data()
sequence_end_code()
```

#### 7.1.3 MPEG-2 Video "drips"

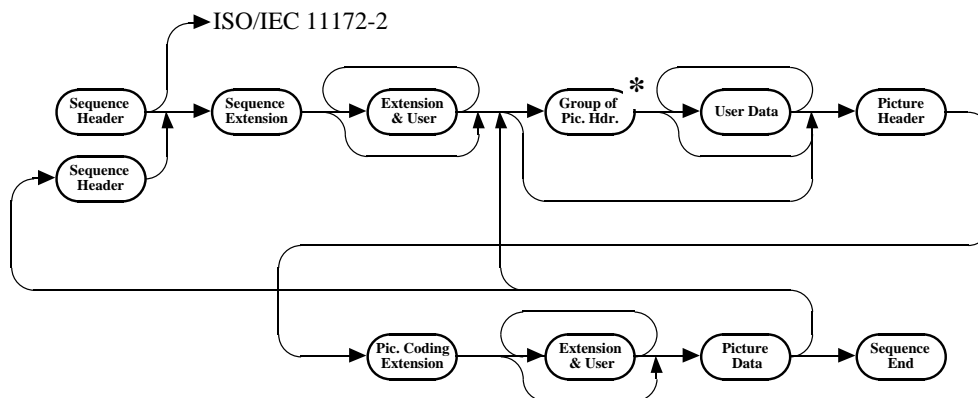
The drip feed mode consists of letting an application progressively feed the MPEG-2 video decoder with chunks of an MPEG-2 video stream. In this mode, it is only required for the decoder to handle I and P frames (i.e. not B frame). Each chunk shall contain one frame and a certain number of syntactic elements (as described in [ISO/IEC 13818-2 \[24\]](#)) such as `sequence_header()` or `group_of_picture_header()`.

Firstly, the content of each of the chunks of bytes fed to the decoder shall comply with the following syntax:

```
optional {
  sequence_header()
  sequence_extension()
  extension_and_user_data(0)
  optional {
    group_of_pictures_header()
    extension_and_user_data(1)
  }
}

picture_header ( picture_coding_type = "I frame" or "P frame")
picture_coding_extension ( picture_structure = "frame picture")
extension_and_user_data(2)
picture_data()
optional {
  sequence_end_code()
}
```

In addition, the overall concatenation of chunks over time shall respect the authorized combinations of syntactic elements described in ISO/IEC 13818-2 [24] to build a legal MPEG-2 video stream. The following diagram, extracted from ISO/IEC 13818-2 [24], reflect the rules defined in that standard:



\* After a GOP the first picture shall be an I-picture

**Figure 10 :**

The following restrictions are applied to P-frames:

- The P-frame shall contain no prediction information (i.e. no motion vector shall be present in macroblock elements).
- The allowed macroblock\_types for P-frames are:
  - "Intra" (i.e. VLC code 0001 1)
  - "Intra, Quant" (i.e. VLC code 0000 01)
  - "No MC, Coded" (i.e. VLC code 01)
  - "No MC, Coded, Quant" (i.e. VLC code 0000 1)

NOTE: The standard semantics for P-frames allow macroblock\_escape and macroblock\_address\_increment to signal skipped macroblocks. This allows P-frames to be very sparse, only carrying macroblocks positioned at certain locations on the screen. This contrasts with semantics for an I-frame where macroblocks are required to fill the full screen.

If invalid content is fed to the MPEG-2 video decoder, the content is discarded and there are no guarantees when subsequent valid chunk of byte fed to the decoder will be displayed (unless the decoder is restarted).

This mode requires the decoder to be in the "low delay" mode as defined in ISO/IEC 13818-2 [24].

This mode can be used by connecting a `org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource` instance to a Player representing a MPEG-2 video decoder. See [N, "\(normative\): Streamed Media API Extensions" on page 655](#).

## 7.1.4 Monomedia format for audio clips

The format for audio clips is MPEG-1 Audio (Layer 1 & 2) ES data as defined as in [ISO/IEC 11172-3 \[22\]](#) and constrained in [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#).

Each "file" of audio content is a binary data file carrying Audio elementary stream data. Each "file" delivers an integer number of audio access units and the first byte of each file is the first byte of an audio access unit. The MPEG Audio data in all other respects conforms to the specifications provided in [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#).

Implementations decoding audio clips can assume that they have an approximately constant number of bytes per second. If this not true then the behaviour is implementation dependent.

## 7.1.5 Monomedia format for text

Java modified UTF-8 as defined in [Java Language Spec \[32\]](#) section 22.2.14 "writeUTF" is the coding of text in MHP.

NOTE: Based on [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#) but modified with respect to the encoding of the character code zero.

### 7.1.5.1 Built-in character set

See [E, "\(normative\): Character set" on page 507](#).

## 7.2 Broadcast streaming formats

### 7.2.1 Audio

MPEG Audio with the restrictions and enhancements defined in [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#)

### 7.2.2 Video

Standard Definition 25 Hz MPEG Video with the restrictions and enhancements defined in [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#).

### 7.2.3 Subtitles

The content formats supported for subtitles are:

- DVB Subtitles
- Teletext

See [13.5, "Subtitles" on page 369](#).

In the event that both DVB Subtitles and DVB Teletext are available then DVB Subtitles will take precedence (i.e. if a stream is flagged as having both DVB Subtitles and Teletext Subtitles then the DVB Subtitles will be displayed).

Teletext Subtitles conform to the same display model, as DVB subtitles.

Application control and detection of subtitles, whether they be DVB Subtitles or Teletext Subtitles, will be through JMF. The application will have no knowledge of the delivery/presentation protocol being used to provide subtitles.

No APIs will be provided to access Teletext data packets and no timing model is provided for the decoding of Teletext subtitle. Text subtitles will be decoded as soon as the data becomes available.

#### 7.2.3.1 DVB Subtitles

DVB Subtitles are defined as in [ETSI EN 300 743 \[13\]](#).

### 7.2.3.2 Teletext

Transmission of the text is as defined in [ETSI EN 300 472 \[12\]](#). The data format is as defined in [ETSI ETS 300 706 \[61\]](#) but restricted to presentation level 1.5 or lower. Signalling of the Teletext subtitle page will be via the Teletext descriptor as defined in [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#).

Within the MHP specification Teletext is only supported as an alternative content format for delivery of subtitles. The MHP specification does not address its possible use as a navigable content format.

NOTE: Manufactures remain free to implement full Teletext support based on regulatory requirement or market demand. Such support would be implemented outside of the MHP environment, by VBI re-insertion of the non-subtitle text or through a native Teletext Decoder. The user interface integration is then an issue for the manufacturer to resolve.

It is envisaged that broadcasters will use MHP applications to deliver navigable text services providing a greater level of interactivity and enhanced graphics.

## 7.3 Resident fonts

See section [G.4, "Resident fonts and text rendering"](#) on page 518.

See also annex [D, "\(normative\): Text presentation"](#) on page 488.

## 7.4 Downloadable Fonts

PFR0 (Portable Font Resource version 0) is defined as in [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) as the coding format for fonts. Receivers are only required to provide support for the outline version of the font.

The `charCode` value in the PFR `charRecord` shall be the [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#) code for the glyph encoded using UCS-2.

See also [D.2.2, "Downloaded fonts"](#) on page 488.

For fonts in the PFR format, the font name shall be the `fontID` field in the font file.

Each font in a PFR file can have auxiliary data in its physical font record. If present this auxiliary data shall adhere to the syntax as specified in [table 3](#) below. It shall consist of a number of blocks terminated by a block of length 0 and type 0.

**Table 3 : PFR auxiliary data**

|  | No.of Bits  | Identifier   |
|--|---|--|
| <pre> auxDataFontRecord() {   do {     blockLength     blockType     switch (blockType) {       case 2:         for (i = 0; i &lt; 10; i++) {           reserved         }         ascent         descent         reserved         externalLeading         for (i = 0; i &lt; (blockLength - 24); i++) {           reserved         }         break;       default: </pre> | <p>16</p> <p>16</p> <p>8</p> <p>16</p> <p>16</p> <p>32</p> <p>16</p> <p>8</p> | <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>tcimsbf</p> <p>tcimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>tcimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> |

Table 3 : PFR auxiliary data

|  | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|--|------------|------------|
| <pre> for (i = 0; i &lt; (blockLength - 4); i++) {     reserved } break; } } while (blockLength &gt; 0    blockType != 0) } </pre> | 8          | uimsbf     |

An auxiliary data font record consists of a number of blocks terminated by a block of length 0 and type 0.

**blockLength:** The total number of bytes in this block, including the blockLength and the blockType.

**blockType:** A number that defines the type of data in the block. 0x0000-0x7fff are reserved, 0x8000-0xffff are user defined types.

**ascent:** Represents the font ascent, which is the distance from the base line to the top of most alphanumeric characters.

**descent:** Specifies the descent (units below the base line) of most alphanumeric characters.

**externalLeading:** Specifies the amount of extra leading (space) that the application adds between rows. The designer may set this member to zero.

MHP terminals shall ignore the contents of the reserved fields within block type 2 for the purposes of computing font metrics. MHP terminal behaviour for block types other than 2 is implementation dependent and these should not be used by MHP applications.

## 7.5 Colour Representation

### 7.5.1 Background (informative)

The method of colour encoding is critical to how consistently the colours in an image can be reproduced across different systems. The description must be cast in a way which is independent of the mechanisms by which it will finally be reproduced for the viewer.

The International Colour Consortium (ICC) has proposed a thorough solution to the precise communication of colour in open systems. However the ICC profile format is somewhat over-specified for the MHP. The ICC mechanism for ensuring that a colour is correctly mapped from an input to the output colour space is by attaching a profile for the input colour space to the image in question. This is appropriate for high end systems, especially those in the print media. However, a primarily CRT based home platform neither needs, nor has the processing power and available bandwidth, to handle an embedded profile mechanism. It would also require some sophistication on the part of the end consumer to set up properly.

Fortunately by adopting a single default colour space that can be processed as an **implicit** ICC profile the advantages of the ICC approach are gained, and the system is later scalable to a full colour management system with a clear relationship to existing ICC colour management systems while minimizing software and support requirements in an MHP today.

A colour space is a model for representing colour numerically in terms of three or more coordinates or tristimulus values. An RGB colour space represents colours in terms of Red, Green and Blue coordinates. The MHP format shall use the specific RGB encoding for colour imagery, sRGB as defined in IEC 61966-2-1 [27]. This is suitable for a wide range of presentation environments including TV's and has become widely adopted in the computer environment and WWW. It is, for example, compatible with CCIR Recommendation ITU-R BT.709 [30] standard for colour encoding in HDTV. This format has the advantage of device independence without a great deal of additional overhead.

For sRGB, the goal is to communicate the appearance of colours as displayed on a reference monitor in terms of 8-bit digital code values for each coordinate. sRGB colour values represent colour appearance with respect to a defined reference viewing environment.



For colour stimuli viewed in the reference viewing environment, sRGB values are defined by a series of simple mathematical operations from standard CIE colourimetric values.

The sRGB format is a good match for 24 bit colour on most CRT's. In devices where a great deal of damage is done to the colour space it may not give consistent results. For example dithering to a 4-bit per primary colour map will violate the gamma assumptions.

## 7.5.2 Specification

All images transmitted shall be within the gamut encompassed by the sRGB colourspace. Where possible this should be coded so that the terminal does not have to translate. Where this is impractical the sRGB image may be transcoded into a different colourspace provided the gamut assumption is not violated (i.e. to be consistent with JFIF, JPEG images shall be sent in the region of the  $YC_rC_b$  colourspace that overlaps with the sRGB gamut).

NOTE: that the presentation of images using colours outside of the sRGB gamut shall be platform dependent.

Images created in the MHP will be in the sRGB colourspace by default, although manufacturers are free to provide support for other colour spaces if they choose. All MHPs shall support transformations from sRGB to the colour spaces allowed by the MPEG-2 definition (e.g. BT 709 and BT 420) and vice versa, manufacturers may choose to support transformations to and from other colour spaces.

### 7.5.2.1 The sRGB Reference Viewing Environment

The reference display conditions and viewing environment for sRGB are partly described in table 4. A reference viewing environment must be provided to allow for the unambiguous definition of colour, the sRGB reference viewing environment corresponds to conditions typical of indoor viewing of CRTs – further details can be found in the IEC 61966-2-1 [27].

The sRGB reference conditions therefore provides a well defined reference compatible with ITU-R BT.709 [30].

**Table 4 : sRGB reference Display conditions**

| Condition                  | sRGB   |
|----------------------------|--|
| Viewing flare              | 1,0 %  |
| Reference Background       | 20 %   |
| Display model Offset       | 0,055  |
| Display Gun/Phosphor Gamma | 2,4  |
| Display white point        | $x = 0,3127$ $y = 0,3290$ (D65 <a href="#">Hunt, R.W.G. [52]</a> ) |
| Ambient Lighting           | 64 lx  |
| Display Luminance level    | 80 cd/m <sup>2</sup>   |

### 7.5.2.2 Colourimetric Definitions and Encodings

sRGB tristimulus values can be computed as follows, firstly linear sRGB tristimulus are computed as linear combinations of the 1931 CIE XYZ (CIE 15 [1]) values using the following relationship:

$$\begin{bmatrix} R_{sRGB} \\ G_{sRGB} \\ B_{sRGB} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3,2410 & -1,5374 & -0,4986 \\ -0,9682 & 1,8760 & -0,0416 \\ 0,0556 & -0,2040 & -1,0570 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} X_{D65} \\ Y_{D65} \\ Z_{D65} \end{bmatrix}$$

In the encoding process, negative sRGB tristimulus values, and sRGB tristimulus values greater than 1,00 are not retained. The luminance dynamic range and colour gamut of sRGB is limited to the tristimulus values between 0,0 and 1,0 by simple clipping. This gamut, however, is large enough to encompass most colours that can be displayed on CRT monitors.

For comparison, the CIE chromaticities for the red, green, and blue ITU-R BT.709 and ITU-R BT.470 reference primaries, and for CIE Standard Illuminant D65 (IEC 61966-2-1 [27]), are given in tables 5, 6. From these primaries the  $Y_C, C_r$  transmitted values are computed by similar relationships.

Therefore ITU-R BT.709  $Y_C, C_r$  colour space and similar video colour spaces can be converted to sRGB and vice versa by way of CIE XYZ. Chromaticities for other video formats allowed in MPEG streams can be found in their respective standards.

**Table 5 : ITU-R BT.709 reference primaries and CIE standard illuminant**

|          | Red    | Green  | Blue   | D65    |
|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| <b>x</b> | 0,6400 | 0,3000 | 0,1500 | 0,3127 |
| <b>y</b> | 0,3300 | 0,6000 | 0,0600 | 0,3290 |
| <b>z</b> | 0,0300 | 0,1000 | 0,7900 | 0,3583 |

**Table 6 : TU-R BT.470-2 reference primaries and CIE standard illuminant**

|          | Red    | Green  | Blue   | D65    |
|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| <b>x</b> | 0,6700 | 0,2100 | 0,1400 | 0,3100 |
| <b>y</b> | 0,3300 | 0,7100 | 0,0800 | 0,3160 |
| <b>z</b> | 0,0100 | 0,0800 | 0,7800 | 0,3740 |

The linear sRGB tristimulus values are next transformed to non linear sR'G'B' values. This process closely approximates the effect of a "gamma" curve of 2,2 with a slight offset. This makes sRGB consistent with legacy systems and images.

if  $R_{sRGB} > 0,00304$  and  $G_{sRGB} > 0,00304$  and  $B_{sRGB} > 0,00304$

then

$$R'_{sRGB} = 1,055 * R_{sRGB}^{(1,0/2,4)} - 0,055$$

$$G'_{sRGB} = 1,055 * G_{sRGB}^{(1,0/2,4)} - 0,055$$

$$B'_{sRGB} = 1,055 * B_{sRGB}^{(1,0/2,4)} - 0,055$$

else

$$R'_{sRGB} = 12,92 * R_{sRGB}$$

$$G'_{sRGB} = 12,92 * G_{sRGB}$$

$$B'_{sRGB} = 12,92 * B_{sRGB}$$

end if

Finally, the non-linear sR'G'B' values are converted to digital code values. This conversion scales the sR'G'B' values by using the equation below where WDC represents the white digital count and KDC represents the black digital count.

$$R_{8bit} = ((WDC - KDC) * R'_{sRGB}) + KDC$$

$$G_{8bit} = ((WDC - KDC) * G'_{sRGB}) + KDC$$

$$B_{8bit} = ((WDC - KDC) * B'_{sRGB}) + KDC$$

The current sRGB specification uses a black digital count of 0 and a white digital count of 255 for 24-bit (8-bits/channel) encoding, and the MHP shall adopt the same convention. However, note that some digital video signals may use a black digital count of 16 and a white digital count of 235 in order to provide a larger encoded colour gamut.

Details of the reverse transformation from sRGB to CIE XYZ are given in IEC 61966-2-1 [27], mappings from ITU-R BT.709 and ITU-R BT.470 to CIE XYZ are given in ISO/IEC 13818-2 [24].

## 7.6 MIME Types

**Table 7 : File type identification**

| MIME type   | Extension (note 1) | Definition of content   |
|---|--------------------|---|
| "image/jpeg"  | ".jpg"             | As defined in 7.1.1.2, "JPEG" on page 68.   |
| "image/png"   | ".png"             | As defined in 7.1.1.3, "PNG" on page 68 possibly with a constrained profile as defined in 15.1, "PNG - restrictions" on page 385. |
| "image/gif"   | ".gif"             | As defined in 7.1.1.4, "GIF" on page 68.  |
| "image/mpeg"  | ".mpg"             | As defined in 7.1.2, "MPEG-2 I-Frames" on page 68.  |
| "video/mpeg"  | ".mpg"             | As defined in 7.2.2, "Video" on page 70.  |
| "video/dvb.mpeg.drip"   | ".drip"            | As defined in 7.1.3, "MPEG-2 Video "drips"" on page 68.   |
| "audio/mpeg"  | ".mp2"             | As defined in 7.1.4, "Monomedia format for audio clips" on page 70 or as defined in 7.2.1, "Audio" on page 70.                    |
| "text/dvb.utf8"   | ".txt"             | As defined in 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70.  |
| "text/xml"  | ".xml"             | As defined in 8, "DVB-HTML" on page 76.   |
| "text/css"  | ".css"             | As defined in 8.8, "CSS" on page 108.   |
| "text/plain"  | ".txt"             | As defined in 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70.  |
| "text/ecmascript"   | ".js"              | As defined in 8.6.11, "Script content" on page 94.  |
| "image/dvb.subtitle"  | ".sub"             | As defined in 7.2.3, "Subtitles" on page 70.  |
| "text/dvb.subtitle"   |                    |   |
| "text/dvb.teletext"   | ".tlx"             | As defined in 7.2.3.2, "Teletext" on page 71.   |
| "application/dvb.pfr"   | ".pfr"             | As defined in 7.4, "Downloadable Fonts" on page 71.   |
| "application/dvbj"  | ".class"           | A DVB-J class file. See 6.2.5.1, "DVB-J class files" on page 59.  |
| "application/xml"   | ".xml"             | As defined in 8, "DVB-HTML" on page 76.   |
| "multipart/dvb.service"   | ".svc"             | An MPEG Program (DVB Service) conforming to DVB norms.  |
| NOTE 1: Future formats may use more characters in the extension |                    |   |

### 7.6.1 Rationale

The MIME types are defined to reserve a name space for the possible future support of downloadable JMF players.

The file name extensions shall be included in broadcasts to assist receivers identify the type of the content. For DVB-J applications, this is described in table 113, "Return types of URL.getContent()" on page 253).

Not all MIME and filename extensions defined in the above table are actually used in this specification. For DVB-J, the APIs which consume media types are described in 15.2, "Minimum media formats supported by DVB-J APIs" on page 386. With MIME types whose corresponding media is not listed for a particular profile, access to that content type from files is not defined for that profile.

---

## 8 DVB-HTML

NOTE: The contents of this chapter may be substantially replaced in a later release of this specification. Readers are encouraged to check for the existence of such a later release before proceeding.

### 8.1 Introduction

#### 8.1.1 Application Area

One application area considered of commercial importance for the Multimedia Home Platform (MHP) is that of the provision of a hypertext or "super teletext" system for the presentation of information alongside broadcast. In order to promote interoperability, both between different MHP vendors and where possible with the wider internet, this document describes a specific subset of the data formats defined for use in the World Wide Web adopted by the MHP, plus DVB specific extensions.

The DVB MHP specification provides the basic definitions needed for integration of DVB HTML applications into the MHP:

- Definition of the term DVB HTML application and its lifecycle in 9.3.1, "[The DVB-HTML Application](#)" on page 198.
- How to signal a DVB HTML application in 10, "[Application Signalling](#)" on page 214.
- Extensions on how to transport a DVB HTML application in 6.2.5.2, "[DVB-HTML document files](#)" on page 60.
- The definition of content for DVB HTML in this chapter.

## 8.1.2 Profiles

There is only one DVB-HTML profile defined see (15, ["Detailed platform profile definitions" on page 383](#)).

# 8.2 Architecture

## 8.2.1 Context

A DVB-HTML application in the context of MHP is a set of resources selected from the DVB-HTML family of content formats as defined in this specification. The resources of a DVB-HTML application form a directed graph, rooted by the resource referenced in the Application Entry Point (see ["DVB-HTML application location descriptor" on page 237](#)). The allowed extent of the graph is described by the application boundary descriptor, the nodes of the graph are the physical representation of the resources, the arcs are naming references defined in the content formats. The interpretation of a DVB-HTML application is handled by a support application (commonly called a user agent in W3C terminology). For the purposes of exposition DVB defines an "actor" which is the runtime context associated with a DVB-HTML application maintained by the user agent, there is a one to one correspondence between actors and running applications. There may be a many to one relationship between actors and user agents. The lifecycle of a DVB-HTML application is described in 9.3, ["DVB-HTML Model" on page 198](#).

During the lifetime of a DVB-HTML application the user agent performs three types of processing on resources to enable the behaviour of the DVB-HTML application:

- **Decoding**
- **Presentation**
- **Interaction**

**Decoding** is the process of reading the bit representation of the resource and constructing a runtime representation in the actor context. The nature of the runtime representation is not specified, but it shall respect the required semantics of the resource type. Most resource types have a visible or audible representation, and **Presentation** is the process of rendering the runtime representation of a resource to the relevant device. Many resources can be partially presented whilst decoding is taking place, it is an implementation option as to whether this occurs in any given user agent. Some resource types have a behavioural model, and **Interaction** is the generic term used for the processing required by the user agent to correctly exhibit the behaviour model defined by the semantics of the resource. Similarly it is possible that the interaction processing may overlap with decoding and presentation.

## 8.2.2 Integration Aspects

### 8.2.2.1 Accessing DVB-J from ECMAScript

All of the APIs available to DVB-J shall be available to ECMAScript, See 8.10.2, ["Interface between ECMAScript and DVB-J" on page 127](#).

### 8.2.2.2 Implementation of user agents via plug-ins

In the case that the user agent is implemented as an interoperable plug-in, at least the following parts of the specification will be relevant:

- 5, ["Basic Architecture" on page 52](#)
- 9.9, ["Plug-ins" on page 212](#)
- 10, ["Application Signalling" on page 214](#)  
10.13, ["Plug-in signalling" on page 242](#)
- 12, ["Security" on page 301](#)  
12.13, ["Plug-ins" on page 350](#)

## 8.3 Application Format

### 8.3.1 Basic Considerations

The main parts of this specification are based on World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) recommendations. W3C provides the fundamental building block standards of the WWW, that are also used in the DVB-HTML standard as well as for HTML standards for other devices like cell phones, PDAs and Internet appliances. Authoring tools and software used for displaying content for the WWW are based on these recommendations. This specification uses W3C recommendations, as far as possible, to allow authoring of a common content basis for both the DVB-HTML applications and the content distributed on the WWW.

In particular the following technologies are used:

- XHTML (see [8.5 on page 79](#))
- CSS (see [8.8 on page 108](#))
- DOM (see [8.11 on page 133](#))
- ECMAScript (see [8.10 on page 127](#))
- XML (see [8.4 on page 79](#))

### 8.3.2 Approach to Subsetting

The W3C recommendations contain conformance clauses under which a product or code implementing the specification is considered a conformant implementation. In this specification this approach is supported to the largest extent possible. If in special cases deviation is required it is clearly marked in the text.

## 8.4 XML

XML is a license-free, platform-independent and well-supported method for structuring data in textual form. The DVB-HTML language as defined in section 8.5, "[DVB Mark-up Language \(DVB-HTML\)](#)" on page 79 conforms to [XML 1.0 \[65\]](#). Since its creation XML has become the foundation of new internet mark-up languages specified by the W3C.

The grammar of the DVB-HTML language is described in the DTD (Document Type Definition) in annex [AA "\(normative\): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD"](#). This DTD conforms to the XHTML Host Language Document Type conformance clauses defined in the XHTML modularization specification [Modularization of XHTML \[94\]](#).

## 8.5 DVB Mark-up Language (DVB-HTML)

DVB-HTML is an application of XML. The XML document character set for DVB-HTML shall be either the UTF-8 or UTF-16 transformation format of the Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS) [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#). The set of characters that shall be displayable is defined in annex [E, "\(normative\): Character set"](#) on page 507.

### 8.5.1 Conformance considerations

#### 8.5.1.1 Document conformance

An XML document is a DVB-HTML conformant document if it conforms to all the general rules in section [8.5.1.1.1, "General rules."](#) on page 79 and is either:

- a valid document against the DVB-HTML DTD.
- an invalid document made conformant by the clauses in [8.5.1.1.2, "Invalid but conformant documents"](#) on page 80.

DVB HTML documents shall either not include a standalone declaration, or shall use the value "no".

##### 8.5.1.1.1 General rules.

A DVB-HTML conformant document shall be well-formed.

A DVB HTML conformant document should include an XML declaration.

A DVB-HTML conformant document shall respect the following clauses:

- a) The root element shall be <html>.
- b) The root element of the document shall designate the XHTML namespace using the xmlns attribute defined in [Namespaces in XML \[103\]](#). The namespace designator for XHTML is "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml".
- c) There shall be a DOCTYPE declaration in the document prior to the root element. The public identifier included in the DOCTYPE declaration shall be present and should reference the DTD found in annex [AA "\(normative\): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD"](#) using its Formal Public Identifier (FPI).

The FPIs that reference the DVB-HTML DTD shall be:

```
"-//DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML x.y//EN"
```

Where values of x and y are found in Table 8, "[Version identifiers](#)" on page 80 for this version of the DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD

The following system identifiers are guaranteed to locate the above DTD. Other system identifiers may be used to locate the DVB DTD if required. Implementations of this specification are required to work correctly without fetching any DTDs from this location as part of their normal operation.

```
http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-x-y.dtd
```

Where values of x and y are found in Table 8, "[Version identifiers](#)" on page 80 for this version of the DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD

**Table 8 : Version identifiers**

|              | <b>x</b> | <b>y</b> |
|--------------|----------|----------|
| <b>value</b> | 1        | 0        |

The following DOCTYPE declaration example indicates recommended practice in DVB-HTML documents:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML 1.0//EN"
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-1-0.dtd"
>
```

#### 8.5.1.1.2 Invalid but conformant documents

The MHP platform is designed to support future compatibility and the possible presence of proprietary extensions; this specification defines how this is done in a way that authors can be sure of the behaviour of an MHP implementation that does not support the extension. Therefore, in addition to the support of the general rules, a DVB-HTML conformant document is also defined by one or more of the following conditions:

- An invalid document with respect to the DTD found in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD" and for which invalidity is only due to the presence of additional elements and attributes in a different namespace to the XHTML or DVB-HTML namespaces, and which does not define a new default namespace (see [Namespaces in XML \[109\]](#)).
- An invalid document with respect to the DTD found in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD" with an FPI in the document type declaration identifying a strictly later version of DVB-HTML than that defined in this specification and with additional elements or attributes in the XHTML or DVB-HTML namespaces, which, when removed, results in a document that would validate against the DTD found in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD".

A non-conformant document is one which is not valid with respect to the DTD found in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD", and is not made conformant by the above clauses.

Handling of non-conformant DVB-HTML documents is specified in section 8.5.1.2.1, "Error handling" on page 82

A document that is DVB-HTML conformant but not valid with respect to the DTD found in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD", is handled as detailed in section 8.5.1.2.2, "Handling of invalid but conformant documents" on page 82.

#### 8.5.1.2 DVB-HTML user agent conformance

The DVB-HTML user agent shall be conformant with the XHTML Family User Agent conformance clauses defined in [Modularization of XHTML \[94\]](#).

Additionally, before attempting to use it as part of an application the DVB-HTML user agent shall assess the conformance of:

- any received XML document signalled in the AIT as being part of the DVB-HTML application.
- any XML document whose document type declaration contains one of the DVB-HTML FPIs (see 8.5.1.1, "Document conformance" on page 79).

For the purpose of validation, it shall:

- remove from the XML document any elements and attributes in a different namespace than the XHTML or DVB-HTML namespaces.
- if the FPI of the document indicates that the version of the DVB-HTML document strictly superior to the version of the DVB-HTML language the implementation supports: remove any elements and attributes in the DVB-HTML or default XHTML namespace not present in the supported DVB-HTML DTD.



It shall subsequently validate (see clause 5.1 in XML 1.0 [65]) the resulting XML document against the DTD found in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD". Validation is performed by checking that the document does not violate any validity constraints as listed in table 9 "List of applicable validity constraints". Any violation report indicates the non conformance of the received XML document. Corresponding error handling is described in section 8.5.1.2.1, "Error handling" on page 82.

The way this process is performed is implementation dependent.

The document conformance shall be assessed before the generation of the DVBDOMStable event (see 8.11.2.3.2 on page 137). This conformance status shall be re-assessed by the DVB-HTML user agent in the presence of modification of the DOM tree. The way this constraint is checked is implementation dependent, but the invariant must be that the document continues to be conformant. If a document becomes at any point non-conformant, it shall be handled as described in section 8.5.1.2.1.2, "On DOM mutation" on page 82.

The DVB-HTML user agent is not required to be a full validating processor (according to W3C terminology in XML 1.0 [65]), in the sense that it is not required to be able to read and process any arbitrary DTDs and external parsed entities referenced in the document. It is also not required to handle an internal DTD subset attached to the document type declaration. For that reason, only the following XML validity constraints (see XML 1.0 [65]) are required to be checked:

**Table 9 : List of applicable validity constraints**

| Validity constraint  | Required     |
|--|--------------|
| Root element type  | Yes          |
| Proper Declaration/PE Nesting  |              |
| Standalone Document Declaration  | No (note 1)  |
| Element Valid  | Yes          |
| Attribute Value Type   | Yes          |
| Unique Element Type Declaration  |              |
| Proper Group/PE Nesting  |              |
| No Duplicate Types   |              |
| ID   | Yes          |
| One ID per Element Type  |              |
| ID Attribute Default   |              |
| IDREF  | Yes          |
| Entity Name  |              |
| Name Token   | Yes          |
| Notation Attributes  |              |
| One Notation Per Element Type  |              |
| No Notation on Empty Element   |              |
| Enumeration  | Yes          |
| Required Attribute   | Yes          |
| Attribute Default Legal  |              |
| Fixed Attribute Default  | Yes          |
| Proper Conditional Section/PE Nesting  |              |
| Entity Declared  | Yes (note 2) |
| Notation Declared  |              |
| Unique Notation Name   |              |
| NOTE 1: the user agent is not required to fetch and interpret the external mark up declarations or any internal DTD subset attached to the document type declaration.  |              |
| NOTE 2: only the requirement on entity reference matching is applicable. A DVB-HTML user agent is not required to check the XML requirements on parameter-entity or general entities declarations locations. |              |

### 8.5.1.2.1 Error handling

The user agent shall not present or allow interaction with a document which is not conformant (see 8.5.1.1, "Document conformance" on page 79). The "DVBDOMStable event" on page 137 shall not be generated for this document.

#### 8.5.1.2.1.1 On receipt of a document

If the non-conformant document is the root document of a DVB-HTML application, this application shall not be started, i.e. the corresponding DVB-HTML actor shall go from the Loading state to the Killed state. If the non-conformant document is not the root document, then the DVB-HTML application shall remain in the current state and the non-conformant document is treated as an unreachable resource.

During the parsing of a document, the DOM structure will necessarily be incomplete. No DOMExceptions indicating invalid structure will be thrown during this phase, and authors should make no assumptions on which elements will be available. See 8.11.2.3.2, "DVBDOMStable event" on page 137.

If an attempt is made to alter the DOM structure using the DOM APIs prior to delivery of the DVBDOMStable event then the DOMException with the error code INVALID\_STATE\_ERR shall be raised.

#### 8.5.1.2.1.2 On DOM mutation

A DVBException with the error code NON\_CONFORMANT\_ERR may be raised if an attempted modification of the DOM would result in a non-conformant document. The DOM shall remain unchanged on generating the exception (see 8.11.5, "DVB Exceptions" on page 157).

NOTE: The DOM allows for a DocumentFragment object for construction of partial intermediate structures which are not required to be valid or conformant.

Documents generated using `document.write` shall be handled as defined in 8.5.1.2.1.1, "On receipt of a document" on page 82, on closing the document.

### 8.5.1.2.2 Handling of invalid but conformant documents

When using only the default style sheet, the user agent shall not present or allow interaction with elements that make a conformant document invalid. Such elements are removed from presentation by the default style sheet (see annex AB, "(normative): DVB HTML StyleSheet" on page 921), however the elements shall be retained in the DOM.

Implementations supporting such elements, or documents using them, may override the stylesheet to cause them to be presented to the user. The XHTML Family User Agent conformance clauses require that the text content of any unrecognised elements be presented to the user (unless a stylesheet changes this), so the stylesheet should not be overridden unless it is certain that the elements are supported and/or have no text content.

Attributes that make a conformant document invalid may be ignored by the user agent.

## 8.5.2 Set of modules required by this specification

The DVB-HTML document type definitions are made up of the following abstract modules indicated in table 10 below. The modules are defined in [p.15] of Modularization of XHTML [94]. An implementation of the DTD is defined in annex AA "(normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD".

**Table 10 : Required modules for DVB-HTML (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Modularization      | Required |
|---------------------|----------|
| Structure           | Yes      |
| Text                | Yes      |
| Hypertext           | Yes      |
| List                | Yes      |
| Applet              |          |
| Presentation        | Yes      |
| Edit                |          |
| Bi-directional Text | Yes      |

**Table 10 : Required modules for DVB-HTML (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Modularization         | Required |
|------------------------|----------|
| Basic Forms            |          |
| Forms                  | Yes      |
| Basic Tables           | Yes      |
| Tables                 |          |
| Image                  | Yes      |
| Client side Image map  | Yes      |
| Server side image map  |          |
| Object                 | Yes      |
| Frames                 | Yes      |
| Target                 | Yes      |
| Iframe                 | Yes      |
| Intrinsic events       |          |
| DVB Intrinsic events   | Yes      |
| Metainformation Module | Yes      |
| Scripting              | Yes      |
| Style sheet            | Yes      |
| Style Attribute        | Yes      |
| Link                   | Yes      |
| Base                   | Yes      |
| Name Identification    |          |
| Legacy                 |          |

### 8.5.3 Semantics for modules

#### 8.5.3.1 XHTML modules

For the modules defined by [Modularization of XHTML \[94\]](#) the semantics are as defined there except as elaborated below and in 8.6, "Media Types" on page 88.

##### 8.5.3.1.1 Structure

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the profile link in the <head> element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

##### 8.5.3.1.2 Text

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `cite` attribute in the <q> element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

##### 8.5.3.1.3 Hypertext

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `href` attribute (hypertext links) in the <a> element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

##### 8.5.3.1.4 Presentation

NOTE: The HTML conformance clause (see [HTML 4 \[104\]](#)) for this module does not require text to be rendered with a different appearance when these elements are used in the absence of other styling information.

### 8.5.3.1.5 Forms

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `action` attribute in the `<form>` element and the `src` attribute in the `<input>` element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89

NOTE: An implementation is not required to support uploading of local files, therefore where input `type="file"` appears in a DVB-HTML document, the implementation may substitute input `type="hidden"`.

### 8.5.3.1.6 Client-side Image Map

Semantics on the way to associate an image map with an element are defined in section 13.6.1 in HTML 4 [104] with the following exception:

- the URI in the `usemap` attribute shall point to the identifier of the `<map>` element as set by the `id` attribute.

If no `<map>` element is identified through the `usemap` attribute, then no association shall be assumed. This is in line with the module DTD implementation as defined in Modularization of XHTML [94]. In HTML 4 [104] this association was performed using the `name` attribute of the `<map>` element.

### 8.5.3.1.7 Image

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `longdesc` and `src` attributes in the `<img>` element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89

### 8.5.3.1.8 Object

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `archive`, `classid`, `codebase` and `data` attributes in the `<object>` element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

When the referenced object is an MPEG stream, see 8.6.7, "MPEG Audio" on page 92 and 8.6.8, "MPEG Video" on page 93.

When the referenced object is a DVB service, see 8.6.9, "DVB Services" on page 94.

When the referenced object is an Xlet see 8.9, "Xlet integration" on page 125.

For other media types, see 8.6.10, "Graphics content" on page 94.

### 8.5.3.1.9 Frames

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `src` attributes in the `<frame>` element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

### 8.5.3.1.10 Target

The semantics of specifying target frame information is described in section 16.3 in HTML 4 [104] with the following exception:

- the value of the `target` attribute shall point to the identifier of the frame as set through the `id` attribute.

If a target attribute refers to an unknown frame, then no action shall be performed.

NOTE: In HTML 4 [104], this was performed through the `name` attribute. Appendix B.8 in HTML 4 [104] is not relevant any more.

Use of target names are also subject to security considerations, see 8.14.3.1, "Restrictions on DOM elements introduced for security" on page 177.

### 8.5.3.1.11 Iframes

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `src` and `longdesc` attributes in the `<iframe>` element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

### 8.5.3.1.12 Metainformation

See 8.10.2.1, "ECMAScript APIs for accessing DVB-J" on page 127.

### 8.5.3.1.13 Scripting

Media types for which semantics have been specified when used in the `src` attribute in the `<script>` element are defined in 8.6.2, "MIME media type use restrictions" on page 89.

### 8.5.3.1.14 Link

Only the following `LinkTypes` are required to be supported in DVB-HTML for the `rev` and `rel` attributes:

**Alternate:** Designates substitute versions for the document in which the link occurs. When used together with the `lang` attribute, it implies a translated version of the document. When used together with the `media` attribute, it implies a version designed for a different medium (or media). Without one of these other attributes the value may be ignored.

**Stylesheet:** Refers to an external style sheet.

Style Sheets can also be associated with a DVB-HTML document by using a processing instruction whose target is `xml-stylesheet` as defined in "Associating Style Sheets with XML documents". This processing instruction follows the behaviour of the `<link rel="stylesheet">` semantics.

**Start:** Refers to the first document in a collection of documents. Use of this information is user agent specific.

**Next:** Refers to the next document in a linear sequence of documents. Use of this information is user agent specific.

**Previous:** Refers to the previous document in an ordered series of documents. the synonym "Prev" may also be used. Use of this information is user agent specific.

**Help:** Refers to a document offering help (more information, links to other source information, etc.). Navigation to this resource is user agent specific.

### 8.5.3.1.15 Base

Any media type is allowed for the `href` attribute in the `<base>` element since it is the structure of the `href` itself which is relevant, and not the resource referenced (which need not be accessed, or even present).

## 8.5.3.2 XHTML attributes

### 8.5.3.2.1 Longdesc, alt and cite attributes

DVB-HTML user agents shall make available a mechanism to access the alternate text or referenced resource and present it to the user. The specific means are implementation dependent.

### 8.5.3.2.2 Accesskey attribute

The `accesskey` attribute of [HTML 4 \[104\]](#) assigns an access key to an element. An access key is a single character from the document character set, which if pressed gives focus to the element, the semantics of giving focus to an element are element specific (see [HTML 4 \[104\]](#) section 17.11.2).

In order to have some measure of compatibility with the JAVA AWT [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) and HAVi [HAVi \[50\]](#) event sets, the DTD used by the user agent points to an implementation specific DVB character entities module which shall define a set of XML entities which map all of the JAVA AWT [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) and HAVi [HAVi \[50\]](#) "VK\_" events onto implementation specific characters.

The specific range of characters mapped to the "VK\_" entities is implementation specific, but shall not overlap with any character range that might be generated by an end user (e.g. on an optional attached keyboard).

So, for example given the following text in DVB-HTML:

```
<A accesskey="&VK_GUIDE;" href="guide/contents.html">
Guide information
</A>
```

The user agent shall, on receipt of the device specific operation that would generate a VK\_GUIDE event, give the focus to the <a> element (which in this case would cause the link to the guide content to be traversed).

It is not required for implementations to generate "VK\_" events other than the minimum set specified in table G.3, "Minimum set of input events" on page 519. But the user agent shall allow documents to refer to any of them. Generation of the "VK\_" events is allowed to be contextual, for example, when a text area element has the focus the "VK\_0" event may not be generatable by the user, since the device specific operation may generate a "0" character instead.

NOTE: The range of Unicode values 0xFB50..0xFDFF is unlikely ever to be used for legitimate input characters as they are presentations forms that don't belong in the Unicode coding space and could be used as a coding set.

The following is a partial example DTD fragment that defines the minimum set of entities:

```
<!ENTITY % VK_0 "&#01">
<!ENTITY % VK_1 "&#02">
<!ENTITY % VK_2 "&#03">
<!ENTITY % VK_3 "&#04">
<!ENTITY % VK_4 "&#05">
<!ENTITY % VK_5 "&#06">
<!ENTITY % VK_6 "&#07">
<!ENTITY % VK_7 "&#08">
<!ENTITY % VK_8 "&#09">
<!ENTITY % VK_9 "&#0A">
<!ENTITY % VK_UP "&#0B">
<!ENTITY % VK_DOWN "&#0C">
<!ENTITY % VK_LEFT "&#0D">
<!ENTITY % VK_RIGHT "&#0E">
<!ENTITY % VK_ENTER "&#0F">
<!ENTITY % VK_TELETEXT "&#10">
<!ENTITY % VK_COLORED_KEY_0 "&#11">
<!ENTITY % VK_COLORED_KEY_1 "&#12">
<!ENTITY % VK_COLORED_KEY_2 "&#13">
<!ENTITY % VK_COLORED_KEY_3 "&#14">
```

### 8.5.3.3 DVB-HTML modules

#### 8.5.3.3.1 DVB Intrinsic events

DVB Intrinsic events are attributes that are used in conjunction with elements that can have specific actions occur when certain events are performed by the user. The attributes indicated in the following table are added to the attribute set for their respective elements. Attributes defined by this module are:

**Table 11 : Elements of DVB Intrinsic events**

| Elements | Attributes  |
|----------|---|
| body&    | onload (Script), onunload (Script) (see 8.10, "Scripting" on page 127).<br>onvbdomstable (Script) (see 8.11.2.3.2, "DVBDOMStable event" on page 137). |
| frame&   | onload (Script), onunload (Script) (see 8.10, "Scripting" on page 127).<br>onvbdomstable (Script) (see 8.11.2.3.2, "DVBDOMStable event" on page 137). |

If these attributes are used then they must be within the scope of a namespace definition, namely "http://www.dvb.org/mhp". The namespace prefix shall be declared on the element of the document that uses them. And the namespace shall be "dvbhtml" (see Namespaces in XML [103]).

The following is an example of how these attributes should be used.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html
  PUBLIC "-// DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML 1.0//EN"
  "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-1-0.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml" >

<head>
  <title>Namespace vs. Intrinsic Events Example</title>
  <script type="text/ecmascript" src="setupEventHandlers.js" />
</head>
<body xmlns:dvbhtml="http://www.dvb.org/mhp" dvbhtml:ondvbdomstable="setupEventListeners()">
  <!-- rest of document here -->
</body>
</html>
```

## 8.6 Media Types

A DVB-HTML user agent shall be able to recognize and handle (in accordance with the appropriate conformance clauses see 7, "Content formats" on page 68) the following media types:

**Table 12 : Content types accessible in DVB-HTML**

| MIME media type       | Common name                               |
|-----------------------|---|
| text/xml              | XML                                       |
| application/xml       |   |
| text/css              | CSS                                       |
| text/plain            | Monomedia format for text                 |
| text/dvb.utf8         |   |
| audio/mpeg            | Monomedia format for audio clips or Audio |
| image/jpeg            | JPEG                                      |
| image/png             | PNG                                       |
| image/gif             | GIF                                       |
| image/mpeg            | MPEG-2 I-Frames                           |
| video/dvb.mpeg.drip   | MPEG-2 Video drips                        |
| video/mpeg            | MPEG video                                |
| multipart/dvb.service | Multipart DVB Service                     |
| application/dvb.pfr   | Downloadable Fonts                        |
| application/dvbj      | Initial class file of an Xlet             |
| text/ecmascript       | ECMAScript                                |

Resources of these MIME media types can be referenced using the locators defined in 14, "System integration aspects" on page 373 and 8.16.5, "DVB-HTML specific locators" on page 186 subject to the usage conditions below.

NOTE: User agents are recommended to be prepared to handle the eventuality that the MIME media type is incorrectly indicating the media type, alternative strategies (e.g. based on the filename, and inspecting the contents) should be employed. In addition a resource labelled as a specific MIME media type may or may not be conformant with the subsetting restrictions imposed by this specification (see 15.1, "PNG - restrictions" on page 385, 15.3, "JPEG - restrictions" on page 386). How the User Agent detects and handles this is implementation specific.

### 8.6.1 Uses of MIME media types

**%ContentType.datatype;** The DVB HTML DTDs define the entity "%ContentType.datatype;", for use in attribute declarations where MIME media types may be used. The following table lists these attributes along with the XHTML Modules in which they occur.

**Table 13 : Use of ContentType attribute on elements**

| elem.attr       | XHTML Modules      |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| a.type          | Hypertext          |
| link.type       | Link               |
| object.type     | Object             |
| object.codetype | Object             |
| param.type      | Object             |
| form.enctype    | Basic Forms, Forms |
| style.type      | Stylesheet         |
| script.type     | Scripting          |



**%URI.datatype**; The DTDs also define "%URI.datatype;", describing where URIs shall be supported. The following table lists those attributes with the relevant XHTML Modules for reference.

**Table 14 : Use of URI attribute on elements**

| elem.attr       | XHTML Module(s)       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| a.href          | Hypertext             |
| area.href       | Client-side Image Map |
| base.href       | Base                  |
| blockquote.cite | Basic Text            |
| form.action     | Basic Forms, Forms    |
| frame.longdesc  | Frames                |
| frame.src       | Frames                |
| head.profile    | Structure             |
| iframe.longdesc | Iframe                |
| iframe.src      | Iframe                |
| img.src         | Image                 |
| img.longdesc    | Image                 |
| img.usemap      | Client-side Image Map |
| input.src       | Basic Forms, Forms    |
| input.usemap    | Basic Forms, Forms    |
| link.href       | Link                  |
| object.archive  | Object                |
| object.classid  | Object                |
| object.codebase | Object                |
| object.data     | Object                |
| object.usemap   | Client-side Image Map |
| q.cite          | Basic Text            |
| script.src      | Scripting             |

## 8.6.2 MIME media type use restrictions

The behaviour of the MHP terminal is only specified where there is an "X" at the intersection of element.attribute and MIME media type in table 15 "Use of MIME media type by element".

**Table 15 : Use of MIME media type by element (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Element.<br>attribute | MIME media type |                 |          |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|------------|---------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|                       | text/xml        | application/xml | text/css | text/plain | text/dvb-utf8 | audio/mpeg | image/jpeg | image/png | image/gif | image/mpeg | video/mpeg | multipart/dvb.service | application/dvb | video/dvb.mpeg.drip | text/ecmascript |
| As root element       | X               |                 |          |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     |                 |
| a.type                | X               |                 |          |            |               | X          |            |           |           |            |            | X                     | X               |                     |                 |
| link.type (note 3)    | X               |                 | X        |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     |                 |
| object.type           | X               |                 |          |            |               | X          | X          | X         | X         | X          | X          | X                     |                 | X                   |                 |
| object.codetype       |                 |                 |          |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       | X               |                     |                 |
| param.type            | (note 3)        |                 |          |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     |                 |

Table 15 : Use of MIME media type by element (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Element.<br>attribute | MIME media type |                 |          |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|------------|---------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|                       | text/xml        | application/xml | text/css | text/plain | text/dvb.utf8 | audio/mpeg | image/jpeg | image/png | image/gif | image/mpeg | video/mpeg | multipart/dvb.service | application/dvb | video/dvb.mpeg.drip | text/ecmascript |
| style.type            |                 |                 | X        |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     |                 |
| script.type           |                 |                 |          |            |               |            |            |           |           |            |            |                       |                 |                     | X               |

NOTE 3: Informative, authoring guideline: MIME media type constraints only apply to this attribute when the param.valuetype attribute has value "ref". No allowed object types required to be supported by this specification make use of this "type" attribute.

The following table shows whether the resource identified by the URI value of each element.attribute pair (vertical axis) has DVB defined semantics for each MIME media type (horizontal axis) in DVB-HTML; "X" = Yes, blank = No.

Table 16 : MIME media type usage (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Element.<br>attribute       | exit:          | MIME media type |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
|                             |                | text/xml        | application/xml | text/css       | text/plain     | text/dvb.utf8  | audio/mpeg     | image/jpeg     | image/png      | image/gif      | image/mpeg     | video/mpeg     | multipart/dvb.service | application/dvb | video/dvb.mpeg.drip |
| a.href                      | X <sup>a</sup> | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 |                |                | X <sup>b</sup> |                |                |                |                |                | X <sup>e</sup> | X <sup>d</sup>        |                 |                     |
| area.href                   | X <sup>a</sup> | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 |                |                | X <sup>b</sup> |                |                |                |                |                | X <sup>e</sup> | X <sup>d</sup>        |                 |                     |
| base.href                   |                | X (note 1)      |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| blockquote.cite             |                |                 |                 |                | X <sup>f</sup> |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| form.action<br>(see 8.6.13) |                |                 |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| frame.longdesc              |                |                 |                 |                | X <sup>f</sup> |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| frame.src                   |                | X <sup>g</sup>  |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| head.profile                |                |                 |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| iframe.longdesc             |                |                 |                 |                | X <sup>f</sup> |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| iframe.src                  |                | X <sup>g</sup>  |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| img.src                     |                |                 |                 |                |                |                | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>c</sup> |                |                       | X               |                     |
| img.longdesc                |                |                 |                 |                | X <sup>f</sup> |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| img.usemap                  |                | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| input.src                   |                |                 |                 |                |                |                | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>c</sup> |                |                       | X               |                     |
| input.usemap                |                | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| link.href                   |                | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 | X <sup>j</sup> |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| object.archive              |                | (note 2)        |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                 |                     |
| object.classid              |                |                 |                 |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                | X <sup>d</sup>        |                 |                     |

Table 16 : MIME media type usage (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Element.<br>attribute  | exit: | MIME media type |                 |          |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     |                 |
|--|-------|-----------------|-----------------|----------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|  |       | text/xml        | application/xml | text/css | text/plain     | text/dvb.utf8  | audio/mpeg     | image/jpeg     | image/png      | image/gif      | image/mpeg     | video/mpeg     | multipart/dvb.service | application/dvbj | video/dvb.mpeg.drip | text/ecmascript |
| object.codebase  |       | (note 1)        |                 |          |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     |                 |
| object.data  |       | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 |          |                | X <sup>b</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>h</sup> | X <sup>c</sup> | X <sup>e</sup> |                       |                  | X <sup>h</sup>      |                 |
| object.usemap  |       | X <sup>d</sup>  |                 |          |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     |                 |
| q.cite   |       |                 |                 |          | X <sup>f</sup> |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     |                 |
| script.src   |       |                 |                 |          |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     | X <sup>i</sup>  |
| NOTE 1: MIME type is irrelevant here as it's just the URI that matters, not the thing it identifies. |       |                 |                 |          |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     |                 |
| NOTE 2: Specific to the object.  |       |                 |                 |          |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                |                       |                  |                     |                 |

### 8.6.3 Semantics of media type

- a) See 8.16.5.2, "Exit locator" on page 187.
- b) See 8.6.7, "MPEG Audio" on page 92
- c) See 8.6.8, "MPEG Video" on page 93
- d) See 8.6.5, "Application content" on page 91.
- e) See 8.6.9, "DVB Services" on page 94.
- f) See 8.5.3.2.1, "Longdesc, alt and cite attributes" on page 85
- g) See 8.6.4, "Frame content" on page 91
- h) See 8.6.10, "Graphics content" on page 94
- i) See 8.6.11, "Script content" on page 94
- j) See 8.6.12, "Style sheet content" on page 94

### 8.6.4 Frame content

The contents of a frame are restricted to be conformant DVB-HTML documents.

NOTE An implementation is not required to provide a scrolling mechanism for frames.

### 8.6.5 Application content

#### 8.6.5.1 When referenced via an AIT locator

An AIT locator is a locator of the form "dvb://current.ait/..." which is used to refer to application content via the AIT signalling. Using this form of locator, DVB-HTML applications are able to refer to currently available applications (see 11.7.2, "Application discovery and launching APIs" on page 276). For example:

```
<a type="application/dvbj" href="dvb://current.ait/Orgid.Appid?arg_0=val">
  Click here to launch application
</a>
```

The literal text of the locator, and not the translated form is stored in the DOM.

Activating such a link shall request the application manager to start the application referenced by this URL, passing to that application the specified parameters. The type attribute is used as a hint in the case that there are multiple application types with the same AppID and OrgID and should give preference to applications of the indicated type. The application shall be started depending on machine resources etc.

NOTE: Starting the new application may involve terminating the launching application.

This activation will fail as if the resource were not found if the launching application does not have the authority to start applications.

### 8.6.5.2 When not referenced via an AIT locator

Other references to DVB-HTML documents or fragments content can occur as a result of:

**href:** The semantics are as defined in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

**usemap:** The referenced element defines a map to overlay on the image. The semantics are as defined in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

**object.data:** The referenced document is rendered within the object as if it were a frame. The semantics are as defined in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

**src:** The referenced document is rendered within a frame or iframe. The semantics are as defined in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

## 8.6.6 Relative linking

The MIME media types allowed for this attribute depend on the value of the `link.rel` attribute.

For `link.rel="stylesheet"`, only the type `"text/css"` is defined and the user agent shall interpret this as specified in "14.3.2 Specifying external style sheets" of [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

For all other values of `link.rel`, the resource pointed to shall be a conformant DVB-HTML document. The user agent may use this information in implementation specific ways (e.g. to prefetch the referenced document)

## 8.6.7 MPEG Audio

DVB HTML shall be able to reference MPEG audio as indicated in table "Use of MIME media type by element" on [page 89](#). The referenced audio may be of either indefinite (see [7.2.1, "Audio" on page 70](#)) or definite duration (see [7.1.4, "Monomedia format for audio clips" on page 70](#)).

### 8.6.7.1 Resources of indefinite duration

Links to an MPEG elementary stream of indefinite length carried in the broadcast as specified in [7.2.1, "Audio" on page 70](#) shall select the service component for presentation into the current service context. If an audio service component is currently playing, it is replaced in its entirety by the specified selection

If the reference requires specific interaction to invoke (i.e. `a.href`, `area.href`) then the audio selection shall be after the reference is actioned. An implementation may impose a short delay before audio is audible, but this shall not be so long as to make the new audio appear unconnected to the user action.

If the reference does not require a specific reference to invoke (i.e. `object.archive`, `object.data`) on an object with the content type of `"audio/mpeg"`, then the audio stream shall be selected at an implementation specific time after the containing document becomes active. Any `<param>` elements included in such objects shall be ignored.

#### 8.6.7.1.1 Relation to document events

In the case of non-actioned references, the following constraints shall be observed:

- The `DVBDOMStable` event shall be generated prior to playing the stream.
- The media should be rendered as soon as possible after the `DVBDOMStable` event.
- The `load` event shall only be generated after the stream is playing

### 8.6.7.2 Resources of definite duration

Referencing an audio file resource of finite length (e.g. carried in DSMCC carousel), that carries audio data as specified in 7.1.4, "[Monomedia format for audio clips](#)" on page 70: shall cause audio to be rendered according to the restrictions in G.2, "[Audio](#)" on page 518.

If the reference requires specific interaction to invoke (i.e. `a.href`, `area.href`) then the audio shall be rendered once in its entirety after the reference is actioned. An implementation may impose a short delay before audio is audible, but this shall not be so long as to make the audio appear unconnected to the user action.

If the reference does not require a specific reference to invoke (i.e. `object.archive`, `object.data`) on an object of type "`audio/mpeg`", then by default the audio is rendered once at an implementation specific time after the containing document becomes active. The following `<param>` name, value pairs shall be implemented for audio of finite duration rendered in an object:

| name | legal values   | meaning   |
|------|----------------|---|
| loop | (true   false) | When the audio data has been played in its entirety, then it should be played again from the beginning of its associated data, so as to cause a "seamless" continuous (infinite) audio playback until the document is unloaded. |

#### 8.6.7.2.1 Relation to document events

In the case of non-actioned references, the following constraints shall be observed:

- The `DVBDOMStable` event and the `load` event shall be generated prior to playing the audio.

## 8.6.8 MPEG Video

NOTE: MPEG video or images may only be displayable full- or quarter-screen: if authors ask an object to display it in a way the hardware doesn't support, the user agent should follow the usual fallback rules for unavailable resources in object. Authors may need to provide alternate content to cover this, probably also fixing the size to prevent layout differences. However, the `img` and `input` tags do not provide this fallback capability, so authors should be more careful in using them, to be sure that all target STBs will display the image as desired.

### 8.6.8.1 Video Resources of indefinite duration

Referencing an MPEG elementary stream of indefinite length carried in the broadcast as specified in 7.2.2, "[Video](#)" on page 70 shall cause the referenced video to be placed in the bounding rectangle of the element after styling is applied (see 8.8.4.2.1.3, "[dvb-clip-video](#)" on page 110). Access to the referenced video stream shall not cause tuning to occur, if this would cause the implementation to lose access to the service carrying the application.

DVB HTML defines only the case where the reference does not require user interaction to invoke (i.e. `img.src`, `input.src`, `object.archive`, `object.data`), if access to the stream requires tuning, the referenced video stream is tuned to at an implementation specific time after the containing document becomes active.

Video referenced by an `<object>`, `<img>` or `<input>` is considered to be referenced later than that in external style sheets, and thus takes precedence over the selected background video in the case that there are insufficient resources to display both the referenced video and the background video simultaneously (in accordance with 11.2.9, "[Intra application media resource management](#)" on page 250). In the case of multiple references within a document, it is implementation specific which is considered referenced later.

No `<param>` elements are defined in for objects of type "`mpeg/video`".

### 8.6.8.1.1 Relation to document events

In the case of non-actioned references to video of indefinite length, the following constraints shall be observed:

- The `DVBDOMStable` event shall be generated prior to playing the video.
- The media should be rendered as soon as possible after the `DVBDOMStable` event.
- The `load` event shall only be generated after the stream is playing

#### 8.6.8.1.1.1 Modification of the referencing attribute using the DOM

Alterations to the video source due to script (e.g changing styling or `src` attributes) are considered as later references than any declarative reference. The playing video is replaced with the newly referenced video source using the same rules as for the original value of the attribute.

### 8.6.8.2 Resources of definite duration

This version of the specification does not define referencing of video segments of finite duration.

## 8.6.9 DVB Services

Use of URLs with that reference a service in contexts that do not require user action (i.e `object.data`, `object.archive`) on objects of type "multipart/dvb.service" are defined only for the media aspects of a service (e.g. video, audio, subtitles) and shall not cause service selection, but the media components of that service shall be displayed according to ("[MPEG Audio](#)" on page 92 and "[MPEG Video](#)" on page 93).

Links to DVB services in contexts that require user action (i.e. `a.href`, `area.href`) shall cause service selection to the referenced service if the application is authorised (see 8.15.1.9, "[javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission](#)" on page 179). If authorisation fails, then the link shall be treated as if referencing an unavailable resource.

Links to DVB services of the form "dvb:" referencing broadcast services, and other locators referencing stored services (see 9.7.2, "[Stored services](#)" on page 209) or services over the interaction channel shall be allowed (see 9.7.1, "[Applications loaded from the interaction channel](#)" on page 209).

NOTE: Selecting the new service can cause the selecting application to be terminated.

### 8.6.10 Graphics content

Graphics formats shall be supported as specified in 7.1, "[Static formats](#)" on page 68. Such graphics shall be displayed inline with the content in the box generated as a result of processing any CSS rules.

NOTE: Images of other types than the minimum requirements for the MHP may be referenced, but the implementation may not display them. Since the `img` and `input` tags do not provide fallback capability, authors should be careful in using them, to be sure that all target STBs will display the content as desired.

### 8.6.11 Script content

The referenced resource shall be in a plain text format admitted by this specification 7.1.5, "[Monomedia format for text](#)" on page 70. The content shall be ECMAScript source code as defined in [ECMAScript \[95\]](#), and shall be handled as if it were inline.

### 8.6.12 Style sheet content

The referenced resource shall be in a plain text format admitted by this specification 7.1.5, "[Monomedia format for text](#)" on page 70. The content shall be CSS source code as defined in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#), and shall be handled as defined by the cascading rules therein.

## 8.6.13 HTTP(S) URLs

For `form.action` only HTTP(S) URLs are valid (as form submission relies on GET/POST). The the user agent is only required to handle the case where the content returned is a conformant top-level document.

## 8.6.14 CSS Properties

### 8.6.14.1 Sources of MIME media type use points

**<uri>**: The CSS 2 specification defines the value type `<uri>`. For the places where `<uri>` is a permitted value in CSS see [CSS 2 \[101\]](#).

### 8.6.14.2 MIME media type use restrictions

Behaviour when referencing the following MIME media types is not specified for any of the `<uri>` type in CSS (but may nevertheless be the MIME media types of some parts of a DVB-HTML application):

- `text/xml`
- `application/xml`
- `text/css`
- `audio/mpeg`
- `text/dvb.subtitle`
- `image/dvb.subtitle`
- `application/dvbj`
- `text/ecmascript`

The following table shows whether the resource identified by the URI value of each CSS attribute (vertical axis) has DVB defined semantics for each MIME media type (horizontal axis) in DVB-HTML; "X" = Yes, blank = No.

**Table 17 : Usage of <uri> type in CSS**

| CSS Attribute                 |                                   | MIME media Type         |                            |                         |                        |                        |                         |                         |                                  |                                    |                                  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
|                               |                                   | <code>text/plain</code> | <code>text/dvb.utf8</code> | <code>image/jpeg</code> | <code>image/png</code> | <code>image/gif</code> | <code>image/mpeg</code> | <code>video/mpeg</code> | <code>video/dvb.mpeg.drip</code> | <code>multipart/dvb.service</code> | <code>application/dvb.pfr</code> |
| <code>background-image</code> |                                   |                         |                            | x <sup>b</sup>          | x <sup>b</sup>         | x <sup>b</sup>         | x <sup>b</sup>          | x <sup>c</sup>          | x <sup>c</sup>                   |                                    |                                  |
| <code>content (note )</code>  |                                   | x <sup>a</sup>          |                            |                         |                        |                        |                         |                         |                                  |                                    |                                  |
| <code>list-style-image</code> |                                   |                         |                            | x <sup>b</sup>          | x <sup>b</sup>         | x <sup>b</sup>         | x <sup>b</sup>          |                         |                                  |                                    |                                  |
| <code>@font-face</code>       | <code>src</code>                  |                         |                            |                         |                        |                        |                         |                         |                                  |                                    | x                                |
| <code>@viewport</code>        | <code>"background:"</code>        |                         |                            | x <sup>b</sup>          | x <sup>b</sup>         | x <sup>b</sup>         | x <sup>b</sup>          |                         | x <sup>c</sup>                   |                                    |                                  |
|                               | <code>"background-video-n"</code> |                         |                            |                         |                        |                        |                         | x <sup>c</sup>          |                                  | x <sup>d</sup>                     |                                  |
| NOTE 1:                       |                                   |                         |                            |                         |                        |                        |                         |                         |                                  |                                    |                                  |

a) See "Generated Content" on page 96

- b) See "Graphics styling" on page 96
- c) See "Video Styling" on page 96
- d) See "DVB Service styling" on page 96

## 8.6.15 Generated Content

The referenced resource shall be in a plain text format admitted by this specification 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70. The content shall be handled as if it were inline as defined in CSS 2 [101].

- NOTE: Informative, authoring guideline, in CSS2 you cannot:
- generate markup (only XML CDATA)
  - apply further style to generated content
  - access generated content via DOM

## 8.6.16 Graphics styling

Graphics formats shall be supported as specified in 7.1.1, "Bitmap image formats" on page 68. Such graphics shall be handled as defined in CSS 2 [101].

## 8.6.17 Video Styling

Video and video drips may be used as the `background-image` style property. The resource shall be handled as an image type as defined in CSS 2 [101]. Video is displayed as defined in 8.6.8.1, "Video Resources of indefinite duration" on page 93 as a reference that does not require user interaction.

- NOTE: MPEG video or images may only be displayable full- or quarter-screen: if you ask an object to display it in a way the hardware doesn't support, the user agent should follow the usual fallback rules for unavailable resources in object.

Video may be used as the viewport "`background-video-n`" style property. The resource shall be used to select the referenced video stream into service context, and cause it to be displayed in the corresponding background video plane.

Video drips may be used as the viewport "`background:`" property. The resource shall be used to fill the corresponding background plane.

## 8.6.18 DVB Service styling

Use of URLs with that reference a service as background-video styling are defined only for the media aspects of a service (e.g. video, audio, subtitles) and shall not cause service selection, but the only the media components of that service shall be displayed see 8.8.5.3.2, "The `@dvb-viewport` rule" on page 112.



## 8.7 Synchronization

### 8.7.1 Triggers Overview

Triggers provide a means by which the application provider can interact with an application running on an end user terminal. Although in principal this interaction could be delivered by any communication channel available to the MHP, this specification defines only a binding to DSM-CC stream events. Triggers are received by the user agent and used to raise events in a running DVB-HTML application.

Triggers are small messages sent in a broadcast separately from the main content, which may cause a change in the behaviour of applications that choose to register for them. Triggers can carry a time at which they should be delivered, plus a small amount of payload data which an application can register for.

Application authors can think in terms of traditional media time bases (e.g. SMPTE time codes) that are a simple frames/seconds offset from the beginning of the media. Triggers can signal that a point on the time base has been reached. The author has to "name" these events so that applications can subscribe to them. This name may be meaningful to the author as is illustrated in table 18:

**Table 18 :**

| Event name          | Event time  |
|---------------------|-------------|
| Start               | 00:00:00.00 |
| End of introduction | 00:00:30.00 |
| End of recipe       | 00:05:00.00 |
| End of recipe       | 00:08:00.00 |
| Start or roll out   | 00:11:00.00 |
| End                 | 00:11:30.00 |

The behaviour following the event is implemented in the code of the application. It is possible that data is delivered with the event to modify the behaviour.

The following issues are described in more detail below:

- How triggers are transported (see [8.7.1.1 "Transport of triggers"](#))
- How an application registers for and receives triggers (see [8.7.1.2 "Application registration and reception"](#))

#### 8.7.1.1 Transport of triggers

We consider here transport of triggers in:

- DSM-CC stream events.

#### 8.7.1.2 Application registration and reception

In order to integrate with W3C event models, triggers are delivered to DVB-HTML applications as DOM events. Registration is through:

- Explicit registration using the DOM API

Delivery is by DOM event. Trigger DOM event interfaces inherit from the interface Event in DOM (see [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Events Specification \[98\]](#)).

#### 8.7.1.3 Binding to DSM-CC Stream events

A mechanism is provided in section 8.7.3, "[Binding the event factory file to the application](#)" on page 104 that identifies the location of the DSMCC Stream Event message associated with any document entity of the DVB-HTML application that registers to a trigger event. However, it is possible to bypass this mechanism through a default location binding.

By default, a DVB-HTML application is bound to all DSMCC Stream Event messages which are located in the application root directory defined in the `physical_root` field in the `dvb_html_application_location` descriptor of the AIT. In that case, those DSMCC Stream Event messages list the events used in the context of the whole application. See section on default trigger mechanism (See 8.7.4, "Default Trigger Mechanism" on page 106).

## 8.7.2 Trigger Events

### 8.7.2.1 Converting stream events into DOM events

DVB-HTML triggering contains a mechanism by which the stream events are converted into DOM events. This has several features.

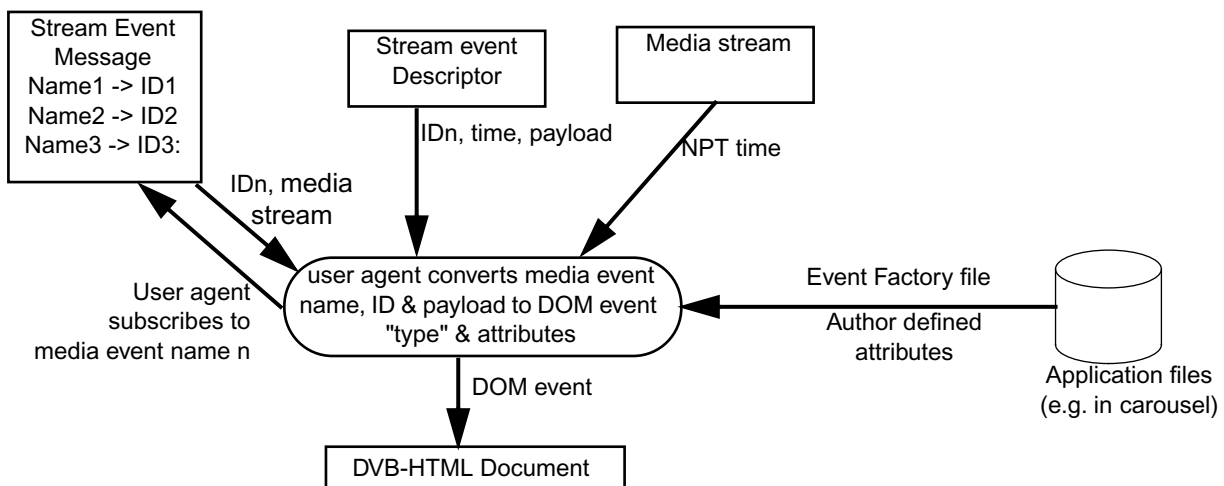
- A mechanism to override the default association between application and stream event message which provides a degree of abstraction between the transport mechanism of the stimulus aspect of the event and the author's behavioural view
- A mechanism which expands the media event into one or more DOM events, this includes mapping the media event name into a DOM type, and extracting any or all of the media event payload and converting it into properties of the DOM event

The application document receives the DOM events and has its behaviour modified by them using the standard mechanism of DOM event delivery (see 98 "Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Events Specification").

In order to describe the above, the application has associated with it an "event factory file" (See 8.7.2.2, "Event Factory File definition" on page 99). This file provides the information the user agent needs to locate stream event messages (if not the default) for the event name bindings, and determines which media event names to subscribe to. If not present, the default event factory file is assumed (See 8.7.2.4, "Default Event Factory File" on page 102). It can also determine which parts of the media event payload become properties of the resulting DOM event. Factory files are associated with resources of the DVB-HTML application using a "linkage file" (See 8.7.3, "Binding the event factory file to the application" on page 104)

On receipt of the stimulus associated with an event ID (e.g. the correct NPT time arrives) the user agent is able to "fire" the DOM event into the DVB-HTML application to be handled.

The entire process is summarised by the following data flow diagram:



**Figure 11 : Overview of the authored event mechanism**

The following text provides an informative description of the different steps involved when a DVB-HTML document subscribes to a trigger event delivered by DSM-CC stream events using a linkage file and factory file, an implementation may choose to perform some steps differently, however the overall result shall be equivalent:

On starting the application the user agent locates the linkage file. If no linkage file exists, then the default processing shall apply to this application (see 8.7.4, "Default Trigger Mechanism" on page 106).

On loading a document, the user agent locates any event factory files that apply to the document. If no factory files apply to this page, the default event factory file shall be applied (see 8.7.2.4, "Default Event Factory File" on page 102), the user agent collates all of the `trigger-event` elements in the event factory files.

If the DVB-HTML document, through an embedded Xlet or any attached script, implements an `EventListener` interface and subscribes to a trigger event of a type mentioned in any `trigger-event` element in the collated set, through a call to the `DOM addEventListener()` method on the element node of the document `DOM`. The user agent locates the DSMCC Stream Event message by following the URI specified by the `stream` attribute in the event element. The DSMCC Stream Event message provides the mapping between the event name in the `trigger-event` element and the event id and references the source of the stream event descriptors that the user agent needs to monitor. If the collated `trigger-event` elements do not mention a matching type then the default element shall be assumed (see 8.7.4, "Default Trigger Mechanism" on page 106).

On receipt of the stream event descriptor that provides the mapping between the event id and both the `eventNPT` and the associated payload, the user agent begins the synthesis of the `DOM` event, as defined by the event factory element. When the `NPT` of the referenced stream is equal to the `eventNPT` of the stream event descriptor plus any offset, or as soon as the stream event descriptor is received in case of 'do it now' events (see B.2.4.3, "DSM-CC Sections carrying Stream Descriptors" on page 473), the `DOM` event is injected in the `DOM` implementation at the node whose id matches the `target` attribute of the `trigger-event` element.

Payload of the stream event is parsed by the expression and placed in the synthesised `DOM` event using appropriate attribute names.

If following the `DOM` event propagation rules this event reaches the handler placed by the Xlet or script, the handler is activated and receives the synthesised `DOM` event.

## 8.7.2.2 Event Factory File definition

### 8.7.2.2.1 Syntax

The event factory file is an XML file with syntax defined by the following DTD.

```
<!-- ..... -->
<!--          DVB HTML Event Factory File DTD -->
<!-- ..... -->
<!-- file: htmleventfactoryfile-1-0.dtd-->
<!-- ..... -->

<!--
The following formal public identifier shall be used to identify this file:

    "-//DVB//DTD DVB HTML Event Factory 1.0//EN"

The following URL may be used to reference this file:

    http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/htmleventfactoryfile-1-0.dtd
-->

<!ELEMENT htmleventfactoryfile (trigger-event|system-event|time-event)*>

<!ELEMENT trigger-event (event-attribute)*>
<!ATTLIST trigger-event
    stream          CDATA          #IMPLIED
    event           CDATA          #REQUIRED
    type            CDATA          #IMPLIED
    target          CDATA          #IMPLIED
    time            CDATA          "+0"
    bubbles         %Boolean;     "true"
    cancelable      %Boolean;     "true"
>

<!ELEMENT system-event (event-attribute)*>
<!ATTLIST system-event
    stream          CDATA          #IMPLIED
    event           CDATA          #REQUIRED
```

```

    system-event-type          CDATA          #REQUIRED
>
<!ELEMENT time-event (event-attribute)*>
<!ATTLIST time-event
  type          CDATA          #IMPLIED
  target        CDATA          #IMPLIED
  time          CDATA          "+12"
  bubbles       %Boolean;     "true"
  cancelable    %Boolean;     "true"
>

<!ELEMENT event-attribute EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST event-attribute
  attribute-name CDATA          #REQUIRED
  attribute-pattern CDATA       #REQUIRED
>

```

### 8.7.2.2.2 Element semantics

The elements of the event factory file have the following semantics:

**htmleventfactoryfile:** This element serves as the root element for an event factory file.

**trigger-event:** This element specifies a relationship between:

- a media stream event
- the DOM event interface to which it maps
- the DOM event destination.

**system-event:** This element specifies a relationship between a media stream event and the system event to be generated. See 8.7.2.6, "System events" on page 103.

**time-event:** This element specifies a relationship between an absolute time and

- the DOM event interface to which it maps
- the DOM event destination.

**event-attribute:** This element specifies the mapping of media event payloads into attributes of the trigger or system event.

The **trigger-event** and **time-event** element can contain zero or more **event-attribute** elements. These describe the construction of a derived interface from the DOM `Event` interface, which adds attributes.

The **system-event** element can contain zero or more **event-attribute** elements. These provide parameters to the system event.

#### 8.7.2.2.2.1 Duplicate elements

Each **trigger-event**, **time-event** or **system-event** generates an event regardless of whether any are effectively duplicates.

#### 8.7.2.2.3 Attributes semantics

The attributes of the event factory file have the following semantics:

**stream:** Names the stream event message, this shall be a "dvb:" URI and must resolve to a DSM-CC StreamEvent message. It may be relative to the application files or provide a full reference to the file system that carries the StreamEvent message. So, regardless of what file system carries the DVB-HTML application the implementation can locate the source of the events. If missing the default location is assumed.

**event:** The name of the media event in the stream event message which provides the stimulus for this event. Note that multiple broadcast-event records may reference the same media event, possibly with time offsets. This provides the names that the user agent must subscribe to.

**type:** The type of event which will be exposed to the DOM on triggering this event. If missing, the type will be the same as event.

**system-event-type:** The type of the system event which will be received by the user agent.

**target:** If this attribute is provided it specifies the ID of the target node in the HTML page. If the attribute is not provided then the target is the root of the DOM tree, also referred to as the document node. Any listeners on those event types should then be positioned on the document root node to be able to receive the event, or be positioned on the document node.

Example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML 1.0//EN"
  "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-1-0.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
  xmlns:dvbhtml="http://www.dvb.org/mhp">
  <head>
    <script type="text/ecmascript">
      // event listener declaration
      function handleEvent(evt) { /* Handle the event */ }

      // the listener is positioned on the document root node,
      // i.e. the html node
      function setupEventListeners () {
        var htmlNode = document.documentElement;
        htmlNode.addEventListener("myTriggerEvent", handleEvent, true);
      }
    </script>
  </head>
  <body dvbhtml:onload="setupEventListeners()">
  </body>
</html>
```

**offset:** An optional offset time (in ms) which can be added to the NPT time of the stimulus to delay the firing of the event, this time is used to calculate a new NPT time for the delivery of the event.

**time:** The value of this parameter is detailed in 8.16.2, "Clock values" on page 184. Both Absolute and Offset times are allowed. If an offset form is given (A full, partial or timecode value with an initial '+' or '-' sign) then the event time is measured as an offset with respect to the UTC of the midday of the date attribute. Otherwise the value must lie in the range 0:0:0.0 to 23:59:59.99 (a value within one clock resolution of midnight), and specifies a clock time (in 24 hour format) on the day of the date attribute.

For example:

```
02:30:03 = 2 hours, 30 minutes and 3 seconds past midnight
+30:00:10.25 = 30 hours, 10 seconds and 250 milliseconds after the current midday
```

The MHP shall support offset referencing of at least +/- 12 hours.

**date:** The value of this parameter is detailed in 8.16.1, "Date Values" on page 184. It gives the date which on which the midday reference for the time attribute occurs. If not specified the value will be the date on which the application began executing.

**bubbles:** This attribute sets the DOM event attribute "bubbles" as defined in 98 "Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Events Specification".

**cancelable:** This attribute sets the DOM event attribute "cancelable" as defined in 98 "Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Events Specification".

**attribute-name:** The name which will be used for the DOM event attribute.

**attribute-pattern:** A regular expression which describes how to parse the data from the trigger payload in order to initialise the DOM event attribute. The attribute-pattern is of the form:

```
/pattern/flags:replacement
```

where pattern follows the grammar in 15.10.1 of [95], and flags are at most one each of ("g", "i" or "m"). The replacement text is arbitrary text, but may contain '\$' values which are substituted by elements collected by the pattern following the rules in 15.5.4.10 of [95]

For example `" / (\\d+) /g: $1$2$3 "` would be a legal attribute-data value. And applied to the trigger payload:

```
"box 12 in 34 by 567 for 248"
```

would deliver the data:

```
"1234567"
```

### 8.7.2.3 Default Event Factory Element

Media events that are not defined in any event factory files associated with a DVB-HTML document and whose name "event-name" does not start with "dvb." are treated as if associated with a default event factory element which is defined with the following piece of syntax:

```
<trigger-event event = "event-name"
  type = "event-name"
  time = "0"
  bubbles = "true"
  cancelable = "true">
  <event-attribute
    attribute-name = "payload"
    attribute-pattern = "/*:$1"/>
</trigger-event>
```

**NOTE:** The event type and the media event name are identical in this case. It is indeed assumed here that every trigger event corresponds to a stream event with name value equals to the type of this trigger event. Since, the stream attribute is not present, the default location of the DSMCC StreamEvent messages is assumed. Also, since the target attribute is not present in this default event factory file, the target is the document root element (i.e. the html node).

Any listeners on those event types should then be positioned on the document root node to be able to receive the event, or to be positioned on the document node (see target attribute definition in 8.7.2.2, "Event Factory File definition" on page 99).

If the media event name value "event-name" starts with "dvb." then the media event is considered as being a system event, the default location of the DSMCC Stream Event message is assumed and the semantics of 8.7.2.6, "System events" on page 103 apply.

### 8.7.2.4 Default Event Factory File

In the absence of an event factory file associated with a DVB-HTML document, a default one is assumed. The default event factory file associated with a DVB-HTML document contains the definition of all the trigger events the document registers with. The aggregation of the default event factory elements constitutes the default event factory file for a DVB-HTML document.

### 8.7.2.5 Worked example

An applications event factory file contains the following text:

```
<trigger-event
  stream="dvb://233a..1234/goals"
  event="goal"
  type="score"
  cancelable="false">
```

```
<event-attribute
  attribute-name="score"
  attribute-data="\[s(core)?:(\d+)-(\d+)/$1-$2" />
</trigger-event>
```

This defines that the stream event message for this event is in the carousel location "dvb://233a..1234/goals" within this file will be a loop of event names, one of which should be "goal" this is the event that the user agent must subscribe to. The generated DOM event will be of type "score" to suit the naming convention of the author, and will not be cancelable. The media event will carry some payload data, and this should be placed in a DOM attribute called "score" in the resulting DOM event.

This will result in DOM events being delivered to the DVB-HTML application that have the following interface:

```
interface score : trigger-event {
  readonly attribute DOMString score;
  void               initScoreEvent(
    in DOMString typeArg,
    in boolean canBubbleArg,
    in boolean cancelableArg,
    in DOMString scoreArg );
};
```

Assume a stream event descriptor with the following payload bytes is received:

```
<http://xxx.yyy.com/fun.html>[score:1-2]
```

Then the resultant DOM event would be constructed using the following initialisation

```
initScoreEvent(
  "score", true, false, "1-2"
)
```

The following DOM event properties will be filled in the base class as follows:

- DOMTimeStamp timeStamp - this will contain the ms count since the 1 Jan 1970.

### 8.7.2.6 System events

System events use the same transport and binding mechanisms as [trigger-events](#), but instead of being converted into DOM events and being delivered to the DVB-HTML application they are entirely handled by the user agent. The mapping process from media event names to system event names is identical to that for [trigger-events](#), that is the [system-event](#) element defines the [stream](#) (optionally) and [event](#) name to subscribe to. However, in this case the [type](#) attribute defines the kind of system event. The following values for [type](#) are defined:

- "dvb.start"
- "dvb.page"

Note: All event names that start with "dvb." are reserved for use by DVB to avoid name clashes with possible other name definers.

The attributes associated with system events are fixed, but use the same mechanism to pull the information from the payload bytes.

#### 8.7.2.6.1 dvb.start event

- The dvb.start event causes a DVB-HTML application in the ACTIVE state to receive the AppStarting (see [8.11.2.2, "Lifecycle events" on page 134](#)) event. No payload data is defined for the start event: any [event-attribute](#) elements associated with this shall be ignored.
- The dvb.start events are only defined in the context of the DVB-HTML application entry point document (identified by the application location descriptor): if the start event element is present in the event factory file of any other DVB-HTML document it shall be ignored.
- More than one dvb.start binding can be defined but only the first to fire shall cause an AppStarting event.

The resultant event time of the start event specifies the time at which the application entry point document is intended to be displayed to the user. Ideally the implementation should begin fetching data and formatting the new page off-screen, and then display it at the time specified. It is not possible in general to predict how long any page might take to render, so that no matter how long in advance of the desired display time the page message is delivered there is no fixed guarantee an MHP will have completed the rendering.

### 8.7.2.6.2 dvb.page event

The **event-attribute** element associated with the dvb.page **system-event** allows the broadcaster to direct the application at a specific page during execution. Referencing pages that are not reachable due to security or other restrictions (see 8.16.3, "Unrealisable locators" on page 185) shall cause the event to be ignored. After processing of the event completes the application shall have a single window containing the referenced document. Even if the referenced document is currently being displayed it shall still be reloaded and redisplayed.

In order for an application author to guarantee that page events operate globally in an application they will have to use the broadest possible regular expression ("\*") in the linkage file to ensure that the event factory file that specifies the dvb.page event is bound to all DVB-HTML documents.

The following values for **attribute-name** are defined:

**Table 19 :**

| <b>attribute-name</b> | <b>number of occurrences</b> |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| actuate               | zero or one                  |
| href                  | one                          |
| title                 | zero or one                  |

**actuate:** The results of the evaluation of the **attribute-pattern** should be one of the following:

- "onLoad"
- "onRequest"

the semantics of other values are not defined and shall be ignored. If this attribute is not present it is treated as if "onRequest".

If the result is "onLoad" then the user agent loads the page (as described above) given in the href attribute (as described below).

If the result is "onRequest", the user is informed that the document is available and chooses whether to switch to it. If the user accepts the behaviour is as if "onLoad". If the user declines the offer then the user presentation remains unchanged.

**href:** The results of the evaluation of the **attribute-pattern** yield a URI. The URI which the user agent should load.

**title:** The results of the evaluation of the **attribute-pattern** yields text that is intended to describe the target to the user in the "onRequest" interaction. The text encoding shall be compatible with 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70.

## 8.7.3 Binding the event factory file to the application

A DVB-HTML application is usually constructed of multiple DVB-HTML documents, each such file can have a different trigger event set to which it subscribes. Each file can be associated with zero or more event factory files. If no event factory file is associated with a DVB-HTML document then the default event factory file is assumed (See 8.7.2.4, "Default Event Factory File" on page 102). If no event element is associated with an event type in all the event factory files associated with a DVB-HTML document, then the default event factory element is assumed for this event (See 8.7.2.3, "Default Event Factory Element" on page 102).

If more than one event factory file is associated with a document then the behaviour is as if all of the elements were contained in a single file. The order of the files is not significant.



In order to define the mapping between DVB-HTML files and event factory files, each application is associated with zero or one "event linkage" file, this event linkage file defines the association between specific event factory files and the documents to which they relate. If there is no event linkage file then the default trigger mechanism is assumed (See 8.7.4, "Default Trigger Mechanism" on page 106).

### 8.7.3.1 Syntax of event linkage file

This file provides a list of zero or more event factory attribute files for each document in the application. The event linkage file is an XML file using the following DTD.

```
<!-- ..... -->
<!--          DVB HTML Event Linkage File DTD -->
<!-- ..... -->
<!-- file: htmleventlinkagefile-1-0.dtd-->
<!-- ..... -->

<!--
The following formal public identifier shall be used to identify this file:

    "-//DVB//DTD DVB HTML Event Linkage 1.0//EN"

The following URL may be used to reference this file:

    http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/htmleventlinkagefile-1-0.dtd

-->

<!ELEMENT htmleventlinkagefile (linkage)*>

<!ELEMENT linkage (location)+>
<!ATTLIST linkage
  boundary          CDATA          #REQUIRED
>

<!ELEMENT location EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST location
  URI               CDATA          #REQUIRED
  language          CDATA          #IMPLIED
>
```

### 8.7.3.2 Semantics of event linkage file

**htmleventlinkagefile:** This element serves as the root element for an event linkage file.

**linkage:** This element specifies a set of DVB-HTML documents with which the event factory files identified by the location element are to be associated.

**boundary:** This is a regular expression identifying the set of documents. The encoding is identical to that used in the application boundary descriptor (see 10.10.3, "DVB-HTML application boundary descriptor" on page 239).

**location:** This element specifies the location of an associated event factory file using the URI.

**URI:** The URI.

**language:** This optional attribute identifies the user preference language required before the event factory file is interpreted. If this attribute is empty then event factory file applies regardless of user preference. If the user preference language does not match then the referenced event factory file does not apply. This matching is implementation defined.

The encoding of this attribute shall be ISO 639.2 [19].

### 8.7.3.3 Example

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE linkage "-//DVB//DTD DVB HTML Event Linkage 1.0//EN"
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/html-event-linkagefile-1-0.dtd">

<linkage boundary = "*" >
  <location URI = "./events/app_events.evt" />
</linkage>
<linkage boundary = "foo.htm" >
  <location URI = "http://www.xx.com/app/ev1.evt" />
  <location URI = "http://www.xx.com/app/ev2.evt" />
</linkage>
<linkage boundary = "bar.htm" >
  <location URI = "http://www.xx.com/app/ev1.evt" />
  <location URI = "lid://www.xx.com/app/ev3.evt" />
</linkage>
```

Where "http://www.xx.com/app/ev1.evt" etc. are the URIs of the behaviour files.

### 8.7.3.4 Name and location of linkage file

The event linkage file is located in the same directory as the application entry point document.

The file name of the linkage file is formed by replacing any file name extension with the string "lnk". So, for the application entry point document:

```
foo.html
```

the linkage file would be named:

```
foo.lnk
```

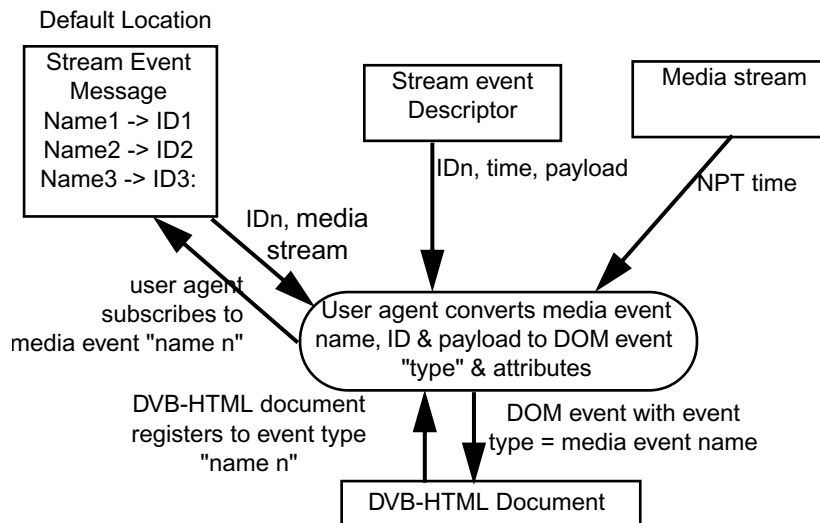
## 8.7.4 Default Trigger Mechanism

The default trigger mechanism is assumed when there is no linkage file associated with a DVB-HTML application. This default mode provides a simple event mechanism in the case where a DVB-HTML application is associated with system events or with trigger events with simple data payload. An overview is provided in figure 12, "[Overview of the default trigger mechanism](#)" on page 107.

In that case, any document of the DVB-HTML application that registers for trigger-events is associated with the default event factory file as defined in 8.7.2.4, "[Default Event Factory File](#)" on page 102. All stream events used in the context of the DVB-HTML application are defined in DSMCC Stream Event messages available in the default location (see 8.7.1.3, "[Binding to DSM-CC Stream events](#)" on page 97). It is assumed that the name values of the stream events are identical to the trigger event types. Stream events with name values different from trigger event types registered by a document or different from system event names shall be ignored.

In the default mode, all DSMCC Stream Event messages present in the default location will be bound to the application. An application that has registered on a given event name will thus receive several events if they are referenced in different DSMCC Stream Events with this exact value of event name. This may not reflect the original intent of the application author. It is thus recommended that application authors carefully choose the values of event type in their DVB-HTML application when they register on stream events that are originating from different media sources (e.g. by using prefixed names).

Event registration by a DVB-HTML document is performed as described in 8.7.1.2, "Application registration and reception" on page 97 except that the listeners need to be positioned on the root element node of the DOM tree, since the target of the event will be this node. An example is provided in 8.7.2.3, "Default Event Factory Element" on page 102.



**Figure 12 : Overview of the default trigger mechanism**

The following text provides an informative description of the different steps involved when a DVB-HTML document subscribes to a trigger event in the default mode:

1. The DVB-HTML document, through an embedded Xlet or any attached script, implements an EventListener interface and subscribes to the trigger event through a call to the DOM addEventListener() method on the root element node of the DOM tree with an appropriate event type.
2. The user agent locates the DSMCC Stream Event message in the default location that contains an event name equal to the registered event type.
3. The DSMCC Stream Event message provides the mapping between the event name and the event id and references the source of the stream event descriptors that the user agent needs to monitor.
4. On receipt of the stream event descriptor that provides the mapping between the event id and both the eventNPT and the associated payload, the user agent begins the synthesis of the DOM event, as corresponding to the default event factory element. When the NPT of the referenced stream is equal to the eventNPT of the stream event descriptor or as soon as the stream event descriptor is received in case of 'do-it-now' events, the DOM event is injected in the DOM implementation.
5. Payload of the stream event can be fully extracted from the synthesised DOM event through the default 'payload' attribute.

## 8.8 CSS

Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) are a method to attach a look to HTML or XML content.

### 8.8.1 Summary of CSS profiling for MHP

DVB-HTML shall support CSS2 as defined in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#) but amended by the following profile statements:

- "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108
- "MHP profile of CSS @ rules" on page 108
- "MHP profile of CSS media types" on page 109
- "Graphics and video integration" on page 110
- "Font selection" on page 122
- "Font specification" on page 123

An MHP terminal must therefore observe the conformance clauses specified in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#).

### 8.8.2 MHP profile of CSS data types

The implementations shall support all of the data types defined in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#) except as amended by table 20 "MHP profile of CSS data types".

**Table 20 : MHP profile of CSS data types**

| Data type    | Profile  |
|--------------|--|
| <alphavalue> | See 8.8.4.2.1.1, "opacity" on page 109<br>The results of opacity blending may be implementation specific, see 13.6.1, "Approximations in composition" on page 370.   |
| <angle>      | Not required (support for aural style sheets is not required).   |
| <color>      | Application authors should not make any assumption on the expected results when using system colours defined in <a href="#">CSS 2 [101]</a> . In particular there is no guarantee that any two system colour names will have distinct appearances. |
| <frequency>  | Not required (support for aural style sheets is not required).   |
| <length>     | See 8.8.5.2, "Coordinate spaces" on page 111   |
| <shape>      | In this specification the only valid <shape> value is:<br><br><pre>rect (&lt;top&gt; &lt;right&gt; &lt;bottom&gt; &lt;left&gt;)</pre> The parameters <top>, <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify offsets from the top and left of the box.         |
| <time>       | Not required (support for aural style sheets is not required).   |

### 8.8.3 MHP profile of CSS @ rules

The implementations shall support all of the @ rules defined in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#) except as amended by table 21 "MHP profile of CSS @ rules".

**Table 21 : MHP profile of CSS @ rules**

| Rule     | Profile  |
|----------|--|
| page     | Not required.  |
| viewport | Required, See 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. |

## 8.8.4 MHP profile of CSS media types

A DVB-HTML user agent is required to support the media types in this section, support for other media types is optional.

### 8.8.4.1 "screen" media type

A DVB-HTML user agent shall support the `screen` media type

### 8.8.4.2 'dvb-tv' media type

A DVB-HTML user agent shall support the `dvb-tv` media type.

The `dvb-tv` media type is a new media type introduced to enable content authors to differentiate an MHP terminal with a predominantly TV like environment (low resolution, possible interlace, specific gamut color, limited-scrollability, small screens, sound available) from an MHP terminal with a more computer desktop like environment. The `dvb-tv` media type is a superset of properties as the `screen` media type as defined in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#). `dvb-tv` is a member of the following media groups.

**Table 22 : Relationship between media groups and media types**

| MediaTypes | Media Groups     |                      |             |                    |
|------------|------------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------------|
|            | continuous/paged | visual/aural/tactile | grid/bitmap | interactive/static |
| dvb-tv     | continuous       | visual               | bitmap      | both               |

#### 8.8.4.2.1 Additional Properties of "dvb-tv" media type

##### 8.8.4.2.1.1 opacity

**opacity:** Objects may be rendered in a semi-transparent fashion in DVB-HTML using the `opacity` property defined in [SVG \[105\]](#). Opacity can be thought of as a postprocessing operation. Conceptually, after an object or group of objects is rendered into an RGBA off-screen image, the `opacity` setting specifies how to blend the off-screen image into the graphics device.

Value: <alphavalue> | inherit

Initial: 1.0

Applies to: all elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

**<alphavalue>:** The uniform opacity setting to be applied across an entire object. Any values outside the range 0,0 (fully transparent) to 1,0 (fully opaque) will be clamped to this range. If the object is a container element such as a <div>, then the effect is as if the contents of the <div> element were blended against the current background using a mask where the value of each pixel of the mask is <alphavalue>.

See alpha compositing in [13.3.4, "Composition" on page 362](#).

The CSS boxes are composed following the normal CSS model, however overlapping boxes that have semi opaque colours are composed using the Porter-Duff rules (see [Porter-Duff \[D\]](#)). We define a new property:

##### 8.8.4.2.1.2 dvb-compose-rule

**dvb-compose-rule:** The default rule used is the `src-over` rule.

CSS allows for a fully transparent background, and with the addition of the `compose` rule and semi opaque colours semi transparent effects can be achieved. The various approximations defined for compositing in [13.3.5, "Composition Rules" on page 363](#) also apply to the CSS compositing.

Value: clear | dst-in | dst-out | dst-over | src | src-in | src-out | src-over

Initial: src-over

Applies to: all elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

#### 8.8.4.2.1.3           dvb-clip-video

See [8.8.5.8.1.1, "dvb-clip-video" on page 121](#).

#### 8.8.4.2.1.4           focus traversal

See [8.8.5.10, "Focus traversal and short-cuts" on page 121](#)

#### 8.8.4.2.1.5           viewports

See [8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112](#)

### 8.8.4.2.2           Policy rules

When several media types are present in a DVB-HTML document, user agents shall apply the properties settings that are included in the most appropriate `@media` rule. In this case, the user agent shall ignore properties settings that are included in the other `@media` rules targeting other media types. An MHP terminal shall ignore all properties belonging to media types that it does not support or are not selected.

### 8.8.4.3           Clarifications on support of paged properties

The CSS2 specification[101] appendix F lists properties associated with the paged media group as being also associated with the visual media group, which creates a possible ambiguity with the definition of the `screen` and `dvb-tv` media types which do not support the paged media group. For clarification, DVB-MHP does not require the support of the properties where the "media group" column contains "visual, paged".

## 8.8.5           Graphics and video integration

### 8.8.5.1           General recap of the MHP graphics

The MHP defines three sets of planes, background, background video, and application. The DVB applications draw into the application layer, but may be transparent or translucent to the video planes beneath. Video objects can be placed in the application layer too, and these act as components (e.g. being clipped to the viewport).

MHP defines the following coordinate spaces which can be used in these planes,

#### 8.8.5.1.1           Input video space

This considers post upsampling MPEG pixels.

#### 8.8.5.1.2           Device space

Logical pixels in the various display devices. There may be different device spaces for the various device types (e.g. video and graphics).

#### 8.8.5.1.3           Normalised space

Normalised coordinates relative to the screen.

#### 8.8.5.1.4           Colour

MHP defines a 4 dimensional colour space coordinate system, which covers the sRGB gamut with semi opaque colours.

In DVB-HTML points in the three chroma dimensions are specified using the CSS `rgb()` or `#rgb` syntax, the `opacity` property is used to specify the fourth translucency component (see 8.8.4.2.1.1, "opacity" on page 109). Any translucency information in referenced images shall also be respected.

## 8.8.5.2 Coordinate spaces

DVB-HTML applications do not have to fill the entire graphic space, but can specify a rectangle in the screen space, to locate the initial viewport for the application. It can also specify and use a local pixel coordinate space in that viewport for placement of elements within the application.

DVB-HTML applications can also make use of locations in the video space so that elements can be positioned relative to them (e.g. placing captions in black bars).

The definition of `em` and `ex` shall be computed using the rules in annex D.3.4.2, "Horizontal resolution" on page 493, not based on the subtended angle at the eye as in CSS 2.

### 8.8.5.2.1 Screen coordinates

The screen space coordinates are normalised, and can therefore be expressed in CSS % units where it is defined for MHP that this means percent of screen real estate.

i.e. full screen is `top:0% left:0% width:100% height:100%`.

### 8.8.5.2.2 Pixel coordinates

Pixel coordinates use CSS `px` units, these describe logical pixels in the viewport (which in the same way as `HGraphicsDevice`, may not actually map to physical device pixels), and define the coordinate space of the viewport.

### 8.8.5.2.3 Video coordinates

To address positions based on the video coordinate space the `pel` numeric type is defined.

e.g. the style

```
#captions { position: fixed; top: 23pel; left: 43pel; width: 100pel; height: 60pel }
```

establishes a fixed box in the viewport, the rectangle of which is based on (43, 23, 100, 60) in the source video (see "Definition of pel areas in the video" on page 120 for how this is computed into an actual box).

### 8.8.5.3 How to define the initial containing block

#### 8.8.5.3.1 Problem

The rectangle on screen that is the logical equivalent of the `HScene` in DVB-J, is called the *viewport* in CSS. Since this does not have to fill the screen, it is required to be able to establish the coordinate space that this viewport has (if this is not specified by the application then the user agent can use the natural pixel resolution for the device). Within the viewport the user agent needs to establish the root containing block for the document to be laid out in - following the normal CSS rules, this is defined in the viewport pixel coordinate space and may not extend to the full size of the viewport.

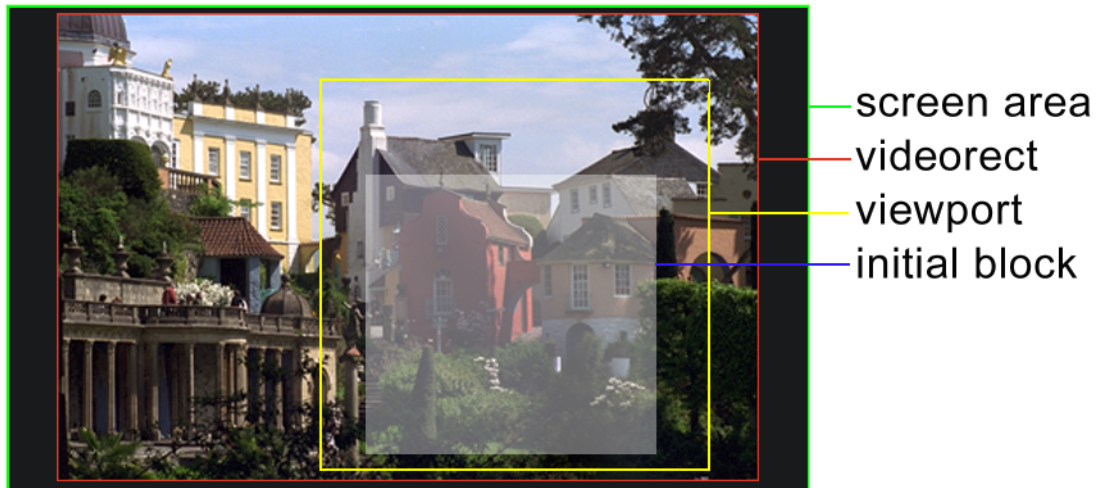


Figure 13 : CSS Boxes

#### 8.8.5.3.2 The @dvb-viewport rule

**Viewport context:** The `@dvb-viewport` rule is used to define the viewport for the application. This is roughly equivalent to the `@page` rule for printed output. The declarations that it contains are defined to be in the **viewport context**.

Only one viewport can be in effect at a time, and this is defined by the cascade referenced by the stylesheet of the root containing document (see 8.8.5.4, "Cascading" on page 118 and also 8.8.5.3.4, "Pseudo classes" on page 117) for example:

```
@dvb-viewport {
  scene: (25%, 25%, 50%, 50%);
  hres: 288px;
  vres: 360px;
  initial: (94px,130px,100px,100px)
}
```

Specifies that:

- the viewport's scene is 1/4 screen and centred,
- that the desired coordinate resolution of the viewport is 288x360,
- and the initial containing block is a 100x100 square approximately centred within the viewport.



### 8.8.5.3.3 Establishing a viewport

#### 8.8.5.3.3.1 Viewport properties

The following properties may be used inside a `@dvb-viewport` rule. DOM access to these properties is provided by 8.8.5.9, "DOM Access to CSS" on page 121. Implementations are not required to respect property requests in the `@dvb-viewport` rule that would require the implementation to exceed the minimum requirements defined in G.3, "Video" on page 518. By giving DOM write access to these properties the application can dynamically change the backgrounds. By giving DOM read access the actual values can be discovered to adapt to the current local conditions.

**scene:** The `scene` property specifies where the CSS viewport lies in terms of percentage of the area allocated to the application (this area is by default based on the video rectangle but may be changed, see 8.8.5.5.1, "The area property" on page 118).

Value: `<shape>`

Initial: `rect(0%, 100%, 100%, 0%)`

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: area

Media: visual

**<shape>**: See table 20, "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108. In this context `<top>`, `<bottom>`, `<right>`, and `<left>` specify `<percentage>`.

**<percentage>**: The offset is a percentage of the width (for `left` or `right`) or height (for `top` and `bottom`) of the area (see 8.8.5.5.1, "The area property" on page 118).

**horizontal-resolution:** Determines the number of logical pixels horizontally in the viewport and defines the grid to which `px` units in the stylesheet apply. NB the logical pixels do not have to match with the actual device pixels.

Value: `<length>`

Initial: 720px

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

**vertical-resolution:** Determine the number of logical pixels vertically in the viewport and defines the grid to which `px` units in the stylesheet apply. NB the logical pixels do not have to match with the actual device pixels.

Value: `<length>`

Initial: 576px

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

**initial:** This establishes the box for the root element of the layout. CSS allows that the initial containing block be larger than the viewport, and in this case it states the user agent should offer a mechanism for scrolling, since this may not be appropriate on an MHP it is advised that authors do not use initial blocks larger than the viewport. If they do then the user agent shall clip to the viewport, and may provide mechanisms to view the clipped regions.

Value: <shape>

Initial: rect(0%, 100%, 100%, 0%)

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: Scene

Media: visual

**<shape>**: See table 20, "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108. In this context <top> , <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify <length> or <percentage>.

**<length>**: The offset is a fixed distance from the reference edge (top or left) in the logical pixels of the scene.

**<percentage>**: The offset is a percentage of the width (for left or right) or height (for top and bottom) of the viewport established by the scene property.

#### 8.8.5.3.3.2 Other viewport properties

These properties will mostly be useful for interrogation of the video processing being performed so that a presentation can be tailored to fit, but they also allow the manipulation of the background devices.

These are used after the viewport is selected (see "Pseudo classes" on page 117), and allow the application to override the presentation of the background properties.

**type**: The type defines whether the viewport should attempt to preserve graphic fidelity or video fidelity. It can also require that the pixel coordinate space be aligned with the video coordinate space.

Value: video | graphics | aligned | none

Initial: none

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

**background-image-rectangle**: This property of the viewport defines the shape of the image placed on the background device.

Value: <shape>

Initial: rect(0%, 100%, 100%, 0%)

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: screen

Media: visual

**<shape>**: See table 20, "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108. In this context <top> , <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify <percentage>.

**<percentage>**: The offset is a percentage of the screen width (for left or right) or height (for top and bottom).

**background**: This property of the viewport defines the image or colour to be used in the background plane when the application has the focus.

Value: <uri> [, <colour>] | <colour>

Initial: black

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

If a <uri> is specified it should point to an image in an MHP supported format, other formats may be supported. If the resource is not found then the optional fallback colour or the initial value will be used

**background-video-rectangle-n:** This property of the viewport defines the output rectangle (in percent of the screen) of the background video device (see 8.8.5.3.3.3, "n planes" on page 117 for explanation of the "-n" notation). The default is full screen. The pel aspect ratio of this rectangle is the same as that of the screen. the resolution however is a subset of the screen resolution.

Value: <shape>

Initial: rect(0%, 100%, 100%, 0%)

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: screen

Media: visual

**<shape>:** See table 20, "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108. In this context <top> , <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify <percentage>.

**<percentage>:** The offset is a percentage of the screen width (for left or right) or height (for top and bottom).

#### **background-video-clip-n:**

This property of the viewport defines the input (clipping) rectangle of the background video source (see 8.8.5.3.3.3, "n planes" on page 117 for explanation of the "-n" notation). The clipping maintains the pel aspect ratio of the screen. This clipping rectangle then induces a video transform, which should not be specified. The transform in this case may not be limited to one of the given constants (see "background-video-transform-n:" on page 116), but will usually be "DFC\_PROCESSING\_CCO" on page 116

Value: <shape>

Initial: rect(0%, 100%, 100%, 0%)

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: input video

Media: visual

**<shape>:** See table 20, "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108. In this context <top>, <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify <pels> or <percentage>.

**<pels>:** The offset is specified in the pels of the input video.

**<percentage>:** The offset is a percentage of the input video width (for "left" or "right") or height (for "top" and "bottom").

**background-video-preserve-aspect-n:** This property of the viewport defines how the input video source rectangle is transformed onto the display output rectangle (see 8.8.5.3.3.3, "n planes" on page 117 for explanation of the "-n" notation). If the value is false the video is transformed with no regard for the aspect ratio of the source or destination but simply scales the input grid to the output grid, if true (the default) the aspect ratio of the source is preserved onto the aspect ratio of the destination and scaled as much as possible (some of the output rectangle may be filled with black letterbox bars).

Value: true | false

Initial: true

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

**background-video-n:** This property of the viewport defines the locator of the video source or service (See 8.6.18, "DVB Service styling" on page 96) to be used in the background video plane when the application has the focus (see 8.8.5.3.3.3, "n planes" on page 117 for explanation of the "-n" notation). If not specified the MHP uses the media components of the currently playing service.

Value: <uri> (, <uri>)\* | <color>

Initial: dvb.current

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

If a <uri> is specified it should point to a video component or service. If the resource is not found then the optional fallback <uri>s may be tried in order, if no resource is found the MHP uses the media components of the currently playing service.

**background-video-transform-n:** This property of the viewport defines the transform of the video to the output rectangle (see 8.8.5.3.3.3, "n planes" on page 117 for explanation of the "-n" notation). It has one of the symbolic constant values:

Value: <process>

Initial: DFC\_PROCESSING\_DEFAULT

Applies to: [Viewport context](#)

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

**<process>:** One of the following constant values:

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_CCO:** A central rectangle is cut out of the video input frame and transferred into the output video rectangle defined by the corresponding background-video-rect

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_FULL:** The full video input frame is transferred, part of the output may be black if the video input aspect is not the same as the output frame aspect.

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_14\_9:** The video input frame is transferred into a 14:9 letterbox in the output frame defined by the corresponding background-video-rect.

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_16\_9:** The video input frame is transferred into a 16:9 letterbox in the output frame defined by the corresponding background-video-rect.

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1:** The video input frame is transferred into a 2,21:1 letterbox in the output frame defined by the corresponding background-video-rect.

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_DEFAULT:** The default decoder format conversion is active.

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_PAN\_SCAN:** An mxn part out of the video input frame is transferred into the output frame defined by the corresponding background-video-rect. The position of this part is determined by pan & scan vectors from the MPEG video stream.

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_UNKNOWN:** Constant representing an unknown format conversion being performed by the decoder. (e.g. if a manual transform is defined). This value cannot be set

#### 8.8.5.3.3 n planes

The "n" is to be replaced by an integer number greater than or equal to zero defining the plane in the video layers, where 0 is the furthest plane from the viewer. The "-n" is optional with background-video-rect equivalent to background-video-rect-0.

#### 8.8.5.3.4 Pseudo classes

Viewports can be labelled with pseudo-classes which allow the application to adapt to the physical structure of the MHP display or output system. For example:

```
@dvb-viewport :16x9 { ... }
@dvb-viewport :4x3 { ... }
```

The pseudo-class syntax is as follows:

```
display-pseudo-class = ":" [ aspect-ratio ] [ resolution ] [ scan ]
aspect-ratio = integer "x" integer
resolution = "R" integer "x" integer
scan = "P" | "I"
```

integer is an <integer> as defined in the CSS 2 specification

where the components of the pseudo-class have the following meanings:

**aspect-ratio:** specifies the physical display pixel aspect ratio

**resolution:** specifies the physical display pixel resolution

**scan:** specifies whether the display is progressive scan ("P") or interlaced ("I")

This allows most of the common formats to be defined.

A pseudo-class matches a display if each component of the pseudo-class either exactly matches the display or is not present.

EXAMPLE 1: 16x9R720x576P

Matches a progressive scan 16x9 display with 720x576 pixels.

EXAMPLE 2: 4x3R1024x768

Matches a 1024x768 display with 4x3 pixel aspect ratio, either interlaced or progressive scan.

If the pseudo-class for more than one @dvb-viewport rule matches a display, one rule is chosen by applying the CSS 2 cascade algorithm ([101] section 6.4 "The cascade"). In addition to the description of specificity there, the relative specificities of several display pseudo-classes is determined by summing the number of components which are specified; for example, "P" has a specificity of 1, "16x9R720x576P" has a specificity of 3.

### 8.8.5.4 Cascading

The `@dvb-viewport` properties cascade in the normal manner. However, only those viewport properties that are defined in the context of the document of the DVB-HTML application displayed in a root window shall be used to determine the application's viewport. Any `@dvb-viewport` properties defined in the context of a document that is not displayed in the root window shall be ignored.

NOTE: Therefore applications running in sub frames cannot control the viewport or background video.

### 8.8.5.5 How to discover where the video is

In order to have good visual synchronization with video in the background plane, a DVB-HTML application will need to be able to determine the intersection of the viewport and the background video areas, both the active video and any additional "bar" areas caused by letterboxing.

#### 8.8.5.5.1 The area property

DVB-HTML defines an `@dvb-viewport` property *area* which defines the rectangle of which the viewport is a sub rectangle. This has the following logical values, which can be combined together.

**screen:** uses the screen as reference, not the background video, this cannot be combined with other values.

**total-video-area-on-screen:** defines the box on screen where the video is including any bars the MHP knows about

**active-video-area-on-screen:** defines the box on screen where the video is excluding bars

**LV-bar:** limits the area to the left hand vertical letterbox bar.

**RV-bar:** limits the area to the right hand vertical letterbox bar.

**TH-bar:** limits the area to the top horizontal letterbox bar.

**BH-bar:** limits the area to the bottom horizontal letterbox bar.

**EXAMPLE 1:** `area: totalVideoAreaOnScreen`

is the default, and would limit the viewport to exactly where the video is being placed (including letterbox bars)

Combinations must add up to a single rectangle.

**EXAMPLE 2:** `area: activeVideoAreaOnScreen & BHBar`

would be legal and would allow the use of the area in the lower letterbox bar but not the top bar

**EXAMPLE 3:** `area: LVBar & THBar`

would be illegal

**EXAMPLE 4:** `area: THBar & BHBar`

would be illegal

**EXAMPLE 5:** `area: THBar & BHBar & activeVideoAreaOnScreen`

would be legal and would allow the use of the area in the upper and lower letterbox bar and the active video area

The order of property evaluation is as follows:

- first the background video rectangle is established (see "[background-video-rectangle-n](#)" on page 115, the default is full screen). The viewport is established with respect to the furthest video plane from the viewer.
- then the area is determined, (the default is the total active video area). and finally the viewport and initial box are determined. These would all have to be recalculated if the background video rectangle were to change (either by the terminal or by DOM control)

### 8.8.5.6 Placing content in relation to video

The terminal defined starting cascade style sheet implicitly defines (see "[Definition of boxes](#)" on page 120) the following regions when the viewport contains them.

```
.active-video-area-on-screen
.total-video-area-on-screen
.IV-bar
.RV-bar
.TH-bar
.BH-bar
```

so that for example the document

```
<!DOCTYPE
  html PUBLIC "-//DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML 1.0//EN"
  "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-1-0.dtd"
>
<html>
<head>
  <title>css demo</title>
  <style type="text/css">
  <!--
  @dvh-viewport 16x9I{
    area: active-video-area-on-screen & BH-bar
  }
  -->
</style>
</head>
  </body>
    <div class="active-video-area-on-screen"> </div>
    <div class="BH-bar"> </div>
  </body>
</html>
```

Would use allow the placement of material in the lower black bar and over the video area.

### 8.8.5.6.1 Definition of boxes

The named regions are defined as the intersection of the viewport (shown in the illustration as the yellow rectangle) with the relevant area, therefore the regions could potentially be empty, in this case no content is displayed for that region. For example the `#TH-bar` shown in blue in the illustration below does not cover the whole of the letterbox bar, but only that which intersects the viewport. Similarly the `active-video-area-on-screen` region shown by the purple rectangle does not cover all the live video, but only that which intersects the viewport.



**Figure 14 : Example of named screen regions**

### 8.8.5.6.2 Definition of pel areas in the video

Positions defined by using the pel type are defined to be the pixel location in the viewport where the corresponding video pel is translated to. In the case that the transformed pel covers more than one pixel, the top most left most pixel is used. This allows the placement of content in relation to elements within the video.

Note: the pixel may not be within the viewport, and so may get clipped. it could also change with pan and scan.

The video plane used to define the pel coordinate system shall be the backmost active video plane. If no video plane is active then the pel type is defined as equal to the px type.

### 8.8.5.7 Placing video within the presentation

#### 8.8.5.8 Box Layout

##### 8.8.5.8.1 Video Boxes

Video content may be placed in an `<object>` or `<img>` element. Using style rules the box for this can be positioned following the normal CSS rules anywhere within the viewport. This acts like a video component in DVB-J, and is entirely separate from video in the background plane.

When placing video inside an element, the video inside that element is positioned and scaled by any positioning and resizing of the element due to style. If the implementation does not support arbitrary scaling of video, then the resource shall be treated as not available and the fallback elements (if any) applied, otherwise the video shall be scaled as required. The video is always scaled to the full size of the element.

NOTE: Since the video is scaled to exactly fit the elements box, the `overflow` and `clip` attributes have no meaning for such elements.

Video element objects are treated as defined by the styling of the element. However, it is not required to support `opacity` style on such elements.



### 8.8.5.8.1.1 dvb-clip-video

The mapping to the source video is provided by the `dvb-clip-video` property which allows an arbitrary portion of the video to be placed within the element.

**dvb-clip-video:** The `dvb-clip-video` property defines the bounding box of the source rectangle in the source video allowing an arbitrary portion of the video to be placed within the element (as in figure 38, "Introducing video into the AWT component stack" on page 368). The coordinate space used to express the region is that of the decoded video after possible ETSI TR 101 154 [9] up-sampling. This rectangular segment of the video is then used to fill the element to which the style property is applied

For example:

```
<object src="dvb://current" style="dvb-clip-video:rect (10pels, 50pels, 70pels, 90pels)"/>.
```

Value: <shape>

Initial: full video rectangle

Applies to: object, image

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

Media: visual

**<shape>**: See table 20, "MHP profile of CSS data types" on page 108. In this context <top>, <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify <pels>

**<pels>**: The offset is specified in the pels of the input video and indicates an offsets from the left or top edge of the video as appropriate.

### 8.8.5.9 DOM Access to CSS

In order to gain programmatic access to the `@dvb-viewport` rule the language specific binding for the DOM interface specified in 8.11.8.1.3, "DVBCSSViewportRule" on page 163 may be used.

### 8.8.5.10 Focus traversal and short-cuts

In MHP it is possible to determine the order of traversal of elements using the navigation keys, and to specify certain keys as short cuts.

The `dvb-tv` media type includes the following additional style properties:

**Table 23 : Navigation properties**

| Property  | Meaning   |
|-----------|---|
| nav-up    | References the visual element to receive focus on receipt of the VK_UP event          |
| nav-down  | References the visual element to receive focus on receipt of the VK_DOWN event        |
| nav-left  | References the visual element to receive focus on receipt of the VK_LEFT event        |
| nav-right | References the visual element to receive focus on receipt of the VK_RIGHT event       |
| nav-index | Provides a navigation number for the element. This number must be unique on the page. |
| nav-first | An element with this style will be given focus on first presentation of the page.     |

The values of `nav-up`, `nav-down`, `nav-left`, and `nav-right` may be `<integer>`, in which case the referenced element is the element with the corresponding `nav-index` style, or they may be `<string>`. The `<string>` has the following syntax:

```
value:      '[outer]' | [frame-ref] '#' [elem-ref]
frame-ref: frameid |
elem-ref:   '$'integer | elemid
```

where:

**frameid:** is the id of the frame containing the referenced item (the current frame is the default). The same rules shall apply as for the target attribute in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#), except that steps 3 and 4 of Annex B.8 therein shall not apply as DVB-HTML does not open new windows.

**elemid:** is the id of the referenced item. At least one of the `frame-ref` or `elem-ref` optional elements must be present if value is not `[outer]`.

**integer:** is a positive integer, and represents the element with the corresponding `nav-index` style (the default is the element with the `nav-first` style).

e.g.

```
<style type="text/css">
  #foo nav-right:"frame1#bar"
</style>
```

Would indicate the style for the element with the id `foo`, would navigate the focus to the element with the id `"bar"` in the frame `"frame1"`.

The following string is reserved and has special meaning:

**[outer]:** This string refers to the external application context in the case that the DVB-HTML application is an inner application. If this name is used in the case where the application is not an inner application it shall be ignored.

If the element to receive the navigation focus cannot be determined by these rules, then the user agents default focus processing should be applied.

NOTE: The navigation hints should be used with some care, as the user agent may have applied defaults based on the current layout. If an author overrides these defaults, then the layout may produce non intuitive results for the viewer.

## 8.8.6 Font selection

There are four possible font selection actions defined in CSS2: name matching, intelligent matching, synthesis, and download. A user agent shall support the font matching algorithm as defined in section 15.5 in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#). The user agent is not required to support intelligent font matching algorithm and font synthesis or their associated descriptors as described in ["Descriptor support in MHP" on page 122](#). The user agent shall support the CSS2 `@font-face` rule and shall ignore any font index file co-located with a DVB-HTML application.

**Table 24 : Descriptor support in MHP (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Descriptor     | Required |
|----------------|----------|
| ascent         |          |
| baseline       |          |
| bbox           |          |
| cap-height     |          |
| centerline     |          |
| definition-src |          |
| descent        |          |
| font-family    | Yes      |

**Table 24 : Descriptor support in MHP (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Descriptor    | Required |
|---------------|----------|
| font-size     | Yes      |
| font-stretch  | Yes      |
| font-style    | Yes      |
| font-variant  | Yes      |
| font-weight   | Yes      |
| mathline      |          |
| panose-1      |          |
| slope         |          |
| src           | Yes      |
| stemh         |          |
| stemv         |          |
| topline       |          |
| unicode-range | Yes      |
| units-per-em  | Yes      |
| widths        |          |
| x-height      |          |

### 8.8.6.1 Restrictions on "src" descriptor

The user agent shall fully support the descriptor for Referencing: `src` with the following restrictions:

- The only format type required to be supported for the font `src` descriptor is "truedoc-pfr".
- The only string required to be supported for the <font-face-name> value for access to local fonts is "Tiresias", see G.4.1, "The built-in font" on page 518.

### 8.8.7 Font specification

The user agent is required to support the following set of properties for selecting a font:

- `font-family`
- `font-style`
- `font-variant`
- `font-weight`
- `font-stretch`
- `font-size`
- `font-size-adjust`
- `font`

Setting `font-stretch` and `font-size-adjust` is not required to have any visual effect in a constrained graphics environment.

The text rendering model used by the user agent shall respect the text rendering model defined in D.3.4, D.3.5, D.3.6.1 and D.3.6.2.

### 8.8.8 Default behaviour

In the absence of any other styling information for a page, the user agent shall render using the default stylesheet in Annexe AB, "(normative): DVB HTML StyleSheet" on page 921

### 8.8.8.1 Default style sheet font rules

For DVB HTML user agents the style sheet referred to by CSS 2 (see UA default stylesheet in [CSS 2 \[101\]](#)) will consist of the stylesheet in appendix [AB on page 921](#). This stylesheet is not directly accessible to DVB HTML applications.

In addition to the style entries listed in the appendix, this stylesheet shall also provide `@font-face` rules for all installed fonts, which shall at least cover the minimum installed set of fonts (see [G.4, "Resident fonts and text rendering" on page 518](#)) and have rules for the CSS 2 generic families, `serif`, `sans-serif`, `cursive`, `fantasy` and `monospace`.

The minimum requirement of the additional font rules are:

- The implementation-specific stylesheet shall provide a font description with name "Tiresias".
- The implementation-specific stylesheet shall provide the normal weight.
- The implementation-specific stylesheet shall provide the normal stretch.
- The implementation-specific stylesheet shall provide at least the point sizes required (see table [G.2, "Minimum set of sizes" on page 518](#)).
- The implementation-specific stylesheet shall provide a `src`: to locate the font data.
- The implementation-specific stylesheet shall not provide `font-style` or `font-variant` declarations unless the implementation also provides font data that would visually distinguish the rendered text.

For example a minimal implementation might use the following rule:

```
@font-face {
  font-family: "Tiresias", serif, sans-serif, cursive, fantasy, monospace;
  font-weight: normal;
  font-stretch: normal;
  font-size: 36pt, 31pt, 26pt, 24pt;
}
```

#### 8.8.8.1.1 Extending the simple rule

An implementation may additionally include `unicode-range`: data for the installed fonts, and other "Descriptors for Matching" ([CSS 2 \[101\]](#) spec Section 15.3.6), which might be used, e.g. for `font-size-adjust`.

#### 8.8.8.1.2 Fallback for italic, small caps and font stretch

The rules above imply that the available fonts cover all variations of `italic`, `small-caps` and `font-stretch`. An implementation that only had the minimum installed fonts should present the same (plain) style glyphs for any combination of the styles required by CSS 2.

NOTE: This allows an author to use `font-style: italic`, `font-weight: bold` etc. in stylesheets without having text so styled appear as missing character glyphs when using Tiresias, but they should be aware that no extra styling information may be displayed.

## 8.9 Xlet integration

DVB-HTML defines an `<object>` element that may be used for embedded Xlets. For `<object>` elements used for embedded Xlets the type should be set to "application/dvbj", the `<object>` element may contain `<param>` elements containing run time arguments for the Xlet defined by the `<object>` element. The sequence of these arguments is mapped to `XletContext.ARGs` and shall be available to the Xlet, in the form of an array of Strings, by calling:

```
javax.tv.xlet.XletContext.getXletProperty(XletContext.ARGs)
```

If no valid arguments are defined, this method shall return an array of strings with zero elements.

By default the application identifier of Xlets contained in DVB-HTML are the same as that of the enclosing application.

Using the `AppID` attribute the embedding HTML context can supply a different `AppID` for the Xlet, thus giving it a different context (e.g for persistent file locations). The value given for the `AppID` attribute must be one of those given in the [DVB-HTML application descriptor](#) (see 10.10.1 on page 237). An Xlet with an `AppID` assigned by the HTML application is still considered part of the single DVB HTML application, e.g. for inter application communication.

If an Xlet and an embedded Xlet have the same application identifier it is only possible for one to be running at any time. So, if the Xlet has already started then a DVB-HTML application shall not be able to start an embedded Xlet with the same application identifier. Conversely, if the embedded Xlet has already started the Xlet shall not start. Any lifecycle signalling associated with an Xlet with the same application identifier as an embedded Xlet shall not apply to the embedded Xlet. If DVB-HTML application attempts to start an embedded Xlet that has a an application identifier that conflicts with an already running application:

- the embedded Xlet shall not be started
- the already running application is not considered apart of the DVB-HTML application

### 8.9.1 Object element

When used to include an Xlet inner application the following object element attributes semantics shall apply:

**declare:** when present, makes the current object definition a declaration only. The object must be instantiated by a subsequent object definition referring to this declaration.

**classid:** specifies the location of the class that implements the interface `javax.tv.xlet.Xlet`. Exactly one instance of this Xlet class shall be created. The URI shall be evaluated as relative to the `codebase` attribute.

**codebase:** specifies the base URI for the Xlet. Xlet classes are loaded relative to the "directory" specified by this locator. If this attribute is not specified, then it defaults to the same base URI as for the DVB-HTML document carrying the object element. If the URI is not within the application containing the Xlet then the Xlet shall not be loaded.

**codetype:** specifies the content type of the data referenced by the `classid` and `codebase` attributes. In the case of Xlets it will be set to the MIME type for Xlets (`application/javatv-xlet`).

**archive:** This is ignored for embedded Xlets.

**standby:** specifies a message that a user agent may render while loading the objects implementation and data.

**height, width:** these attributes specify the size of the Xlet's visible representation. If either height or width is zero or negative, then the method `javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer.getRootContainer()` shall return null.

## 8.9.2 Param element

The param element is defined for embedding inner application Xlets as follows:

```
<!ELEMENT param EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST param
  id          ID          #IMPLIED
  name       CDATA      #REQUIRED
  value      CDATA      #IMPLIED
  valuetype (data|ref|object) "data"
  type      CDATA      #IMPLIED
>
```

where the specified attributes are defined as follows:

**id:** is a unique identifier for the param element. The scope of uniqueness is the document carrying the param element.

**name:** should be set to either `arg_n` (case-insensitive), where `n` is a non negative integer, or, `appid`.

- Where the name is of the form `arg_n` this specifies that the value argument contains the value of run time argument number `n` for the Xlet. If the largest value for `n` among the param tags is `x`, then the ARGV array shall contain `x+1` elements. If two param elements with the same name are given for an Xlet, the corresponding array element shall contain the value of one of them. Which one is chosen is not specified.

These arguments are available to an Xlet through `XletContext.getXletProperty( XletContext.ARGV )` as defined in [Java TV \[51\]](#).

- The `appid` shall carry a 16 bit bit string (left bit first) encoded as follows:

```
appid = "0x" 4*hex
hex   = digit | "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F" | "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f"
digit = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9"
```

If more than one parameter tag with the name `appid` is provided or the value does not correspond to that of one of the application ids listed in the [DVB-HTML application descriptor](#) (see [10.10.1 on page 237](#)) the Xlet shall not be started.

**value:** is the string value of this run time argument.

**valuetype:** ignored. Xlet arguments can only be strings, so it doesn't make sense to provide values of any other type.

**type:** ignored. This follows from the treatment of `valuetype`.

## 8.9.3 Example

The following is an example of using object and param elements in order to include an Xlet inner application in a DVB-HTML document:

```
<object
  id = "slideShow"
  codetype = "application/dvbj"
  classid = "slideShow.class"
  codebase = "first_xlet/"
  height = "180"
  width = "320">
  <param name = "arg_0" value = "Everest"/>
  <param name = "arg_1" value = "Kilimanjaro"/>
  <param name = "appid" value = "0xbded"/>
</object>
```

## 8.10 Scripting

ECMAScript is a simple lightweight object-oriented scripting language for manipulating computational objects within a host environment. This specification requires ECMAScript as defined in [ECMAScript \[95\]](#).

### 8.10.1 DOM 2 binding

This specification requires the DOM 2 binding libraries for the interfaces required in ["Document Object Model \(DOM\)" on page 133](#) as defined in the respective references.

### 8.10.2 Interface between ECMAScript and DVB-J

By allowing DVB-J to expose APIs to ECMAScript, applications may be created which are a hybrid of DVB-J and DVB-HTML/ECMAScript. For example, the core engine for a particular application could be implemented in DVB-J and the user interface and graphical content implemented in DVB-HTML/ECMAScript.

#### 8.10.2.1 ECMAScript APIs for accessing DVB-J

Public DVB-J: packages, classes, methods and fields shall be visible in ECMAScript using a property of the global object called Packages. For example, RMI's Naming class would be accessed using Packages.java.rmi.Naming. The java.lang package is accessed using Packages.java.lang. In addition to DVB-J classes, class files located in the codebase as specified by the meta tag described below are also accessible.

Xlets may be accessed via the DOM or accessed via the inter application communication API, see [11.7.3, "Inter-Application and Inter-Xlet communication API" on page 277](#).

When ECMAScript uses the Packages object to reference a Java class that is not loaded, the codebase is searched for the class file. The codebase is specified using a meta element with a name "codebase" and the "content" specifying the classpath as a base URL, e.g.

```
<meta name="codebase" content="http://example.com/sports/">
```

If multiple codebase meta elements are present in the root document, each specified codebase is searched in its order of appearance. If the class is not found, a java.lang.ClassNotFoundException is thrown. Only meta elements on the root document of the DVB-HTML application may specify the codebase; others have no effect.

ECMAScript contexts within an application share a single classloader. This classloader is separate from that of any Xlets that are part of the DVB HTML application.

#### 8.10.2.2 Inter-Xlet and Xlet-ECMAScript Communication via org.dvb.ixc

In MHP, Xlets are allowed to communicate with each other by exporting objects via the org.dvb.io.ixc APIs described in [11.7.3, "Inter-Application and Inter-Xlet communication API" on page 277](#) and annex Y, ["\(normative\): Inter-application and Inter-Xlet communication API" on page 902](#). When an Xlet wishes to export an object so that it is visible to other applications, it is exported under a name formed from a string that contains a unique application identifier, possibly with an arbitrary name appended.

With Xlets embedded in a DVB-HTML document, there is the possibility that there will be multiple active Xlets that are part of the same application. Each such Xlet will have its own classloader (see [8.10.2.1 "ECMAScript APIs for accessing DVB-J"](#)), and will not be able to directly share instances with other Xlets. The Xlets will be able to communicate with each other, using the inter-xlet communication mechanism, accessed through the org.dvb.io.ixc APIs.

The MHP naming convention for exported objects are preserved. The APIs provide two options for exporting objects: Exporting them so that they are only visible within the same application, or exporting them so that they are visible to other applications. In either case, it is possible for two Xlets to export an object under the same name. If this happens, the last object exported shall be the one that is visible; an export from one Xlet might therefore overwrite an export from another that occurred earlier in time. Note that Xlets that are in the same DVB-HTML document (and part of the same application) are expected to be authored to work together, so it is the application author's responsibility to ensure that no harmful overwriting occurs.

### 8.10.2.3 Security

The DVB-J security model applies to the application as a whole, hence an Xlet embedded in an DVB-HTML document has the privileges of the overall DVB-HTML application. ECMAScript may directly invoke DVB-J with the same permissions as the overall application.

See also 8.14, "Security of DVB-HTML applications" on page 169.

NOTE: ECMAScript can pass both internal and external strings across the bridge to Java, but Java has no way to distinguish between them. Hence, Java code written for use across the bridge should treat such strings as it would any other strings from untrusted sources.

### 8.10.2.4 Implicit Method Selection

When more than one method signature matches the set of arguments, argument preference is compared for each argument starting with the first, until one signature has a preferred match. Preference is determined from the argument conversion tables in the following section. In those tables, type conversions are listed in decreasing order of preference.

### 8.10.2.5 Explicit Method Selection

Methods may be selected explicitly by referring to a method as if it were an element of an ECMAScript associative array indexed by the signature, e.g.

```
new Packages["java.lang.String"][ "(char[])" ](c);
```

### 8.10.2.6 Static Method Invocation

Static methods of a Java class shall be invocable from ECMAScript either on the JavaClass object or on an instance of the class.

### 8.10.2.7 Method Signature Matching

Typically, methods invoked from ECMAScript are designed for that purpose and unambiguous. In most cases, it is probably sufficient to leave method selection up to the implementation, however the tables below define both the preferred order used for selecting signatures and the type conversion invoked when an argument is passed.

Method selection is performed similarly to DVB-J. The DVB-J method must:

- be public
- be static or non-static depending on whether the ECMAScript invocation is on the class or on an object, respectively.
- have the same number of arguments
- have arguments with types to which the ECMAScript arguments can be converted according to the tables below.

If these conditions are not met, the [DVBException](#) with the error code [CONVERSION\\_TYPE\\_ERR](#) is raised.

If there is only one DVB-J method matching these criteria, that method is invoked.

If more than one DVB-J method matches, then a method is preferred over another for invocation when the conversion of at least one of its arguments is preferred and the conversion of all other arguments is equivalent or preferred. In cases where no method is preferred over all others, results may be implementation dependent.



### 8.10.2.8 New ECMAScript Object Types

ECMAScript is a loosely typed language with few fundamental types (mainly: Number, Boolean, String, Object, Null and Undefined). In order to access DVB-J's richer type structure, three new ECMAScript object types are introduced to support values returned from calls to DVB-J.

**Table 25 : New ECMAScript Object Types**

| ECMAScript Object Type | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| JavaArray              | Wrapper for a DVB-J array. Behaves like an ECMAScript array including being indexed by an integer and having a length property   |
| JavaObject             | Wrapper for a DVB-J Object. Converting this wrapper to a string, calls the toString() method. Converting to a number calls the doubleValue() method. Converting to a boolean results in true, unless the object is null. |
| JavaClass              | Wrapper for a DVB-J class  |

### 8.10.2.9 Type Conversion (ECMAScript to DVB-J)

In the following tables conversions are listed in decreasing order of preference (from top to bottom within the table and from left to right within each table row). Conversions that are not listed are not allowed.

When the ECMAScript parameter is a boolean, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 26 : Conversion from ECMAScript boolean**

| DVB-J Parameter Type                        | Conversion from ECMAScript boolean |
|---|------------------------------------|
| boolean                                     | Direct conversion.                 |
| java.lang.Boolean<br>java.lang.Object       | Object of type java.lang.Boolean.  |
| java.lang.String                            | Converted to "true" or "false".    |
| double, float, long, int, short, char, byte | 1, if true. 0, if false.           |

When the ECMAScript parameter is a number, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 27 : Conversion from ECMAScript number**

| DVB-J Parameter Type         | Conversion from ECMAScript Number   |
|------------------------------|---|
| double                       | Direct conversion with full precision.  |
| java.lang.Double             | java.lang.Double created with full precision.   |
| Float                        | Rounded to float precision.<br>Values out of float range become +infinity or -infinity.   |
| long, int, short, char, byte | Rounded to appropriate precision.<br>Values out of range causes the <i>DVBException</i> with the error code <i>CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</i> to be raised.<br>Passing NaN causes the <i>DVBException</i> with the error code <i>CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</i> to be raised. |
| java.lang.String             | Conversion to a string using the ECMAScript toString function.  |
| boolean                      | Passing NaN causes the <i>DVBException</i> with the error code <i>CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</i> to be raised.<br>0 is false.<br>Non-zero is true.   |
| java.lang.Object             | java.lang.Double created with full precision  |

When the ECMAScript parameter is a string, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 28 : Conversion from ECMAScript string**

| DVB-J Parameter Type                 | Conversion from ECMAScript string   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| java.lang.String<br>java.lang.Object | Object of type java.lang.String.  |
| char                                 | If string is a single character, conversion via the ECMAScript charCodeAt() function; otherwise the <a href="#">DVBException</a> with the error code <a href="#">CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</a> is raised. |

When the ECMAScript parameter is undefined, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 29 : Conversion from ECMAScript undefined**

| DVB-J Parameter Type                 | Conversion from ECMAScript undefined                         |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| java.lang.String<br>java.lang.Object | Object of type java.lang.String with a value of "undefined". |
| boolean                              | False  |
| long, int, short, byte, char         | Zero   |
| double, float                        | Nan  |

When the ECMAScript parameter is null, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 30 : Conversion from ECMAScript null**

| DVB-J Parameter Type                        | Conversion from ECMAScript null |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Any object                                  | Null                            |
| boolean                                     | False                           |
| double, float, long, int, short, byte, char | Zero                            |

When the ECMAScript parameter is JSONArray, JSONObject or JavaClass, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 31 : Conversion from ECMAScript DVB-J objects**

| DVB-J Parameter Type                        | Conversion from ECMAScript DVB-J Objects   |
|---|--|
| Most specific assignment compatible class.  | Unwrap ECMAScript JSONObject to original DVB-J Object. ECMAScript JSONObject is of an incompatible class to the required class the <a href="#">DVBException</a> with the error code <a href="#">CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</a> shall be raised        |
| java.lang.String                            | Result of toString().  |
| double, float, long, int, short, char, byte | Result of doubleValue() is taken and converted as a Number to the DVB-J type as above.<br>If no doubleValue() method is defined, causes the <a href="#">DVBException</a> with the error code <a href="#">CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</a> to be raised. |

When the ECMAScript parameter is an ECMAScript Object, conversion is performed as follows:

**Table 32 : Conversion from ECMAScript Object**

| DVB-J Parameter Type                                 | Conversion from ECMAScript Object   |
|--|---|
| java.lang.Object (including subclasses) or interface | If ECMAScript object has all public fields and methods of the DVB-J parameter type, and has been generated as specified in <a href="#">Subclassing and Interface Instance Creation</a> , then the generated DVB-J class is used. Otherwise the <a href="#">DVBException</a> with the error code <a href="#">CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR</a> shall be raised |

ECMAScript Arrays are passed as parameters only to Java methods accepting an array as its corresponding argument. An ECMAScript array containing a single element type matches a Java array parameter based on the matching preference of the array element types. An ECMAScript array containing different element types is not convertible to and does not match any Java parameter type.

### 8.10.2.10 Subclassing and Interface Instance Creation

Instances of an instantiable Java class can be created by using the "new" operator on the Java class, e.g.

```
new Packages.java.lang.String("astring");
```

The parameters are passed to the constructor using the type conversion rules above. This mechanism is extended to allow the creation of instances of classes that must be subclassed to produce an instantiable class. The SubType object is defined and used with a constructor function to allow ECMAScript to construct an instance of a subclass. The Subtype constructor takes a string naming the Java class to be subclassed as its argument, e.g. "java.awt.ActionListener" and an ECMAScript function which acts as a constructor to initialize any abstract elements. Invoking the Subtype constructor on a final Java class shall cause the [DVBException](#) with the error code [SUBCLASS\\_NOT\\_ALLOWED\\_ERR](#) to be raised. The object returned by the Subtype constructor is a function used to create instances. When this function is used as a constructor, its arguments are passed to the function specified in the Subtype constructor. The function is invoked with the current object being an ECMAScript handle to the JavaObject being instantiated.

Example:

```
function actDone(event) {
  /* My event handling method */
}

function MyListenerConstructor(arg1, arg2) {
  /* if ActionListener had a constructor it could be called here
  * e.g. this.ActionListener(arg2);
  */
  this.ActionPerformed = arg1;
}

MyListenerType = new Subtype("java.awt.ActionListener", MyListenerConstructor);
MyListener = new MyListenerType(actDone, 0);
```

NOTE: This mechanism may be used to create listeners from ECMAScript.

An example of constructing and setting a listener:

```
<script>
  function receiveEvent(x) {
    window.open("http://chat.tv.com/chatLogin?user="+x, _chatFrame);
  }
  function chatConstructor() {
    this.receiveUserPreferenceChangeEvent = receiveEvent;
  }
  chatListenerType = new Subtype("org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeEvent", chatConstructor);
  chatListener = new chatListenerType();

  Packages.org.dvb.user.UserPreferences.addUserPreferenceChangeListener(chatListener);
</script>
```

### 8.10.2.11 Type Conversion (DVB-J to ECMAScript)

Type conversion of return values occurs as follows:

**Table 33 : Conversion from DVB-J types**

| DVB-J Return Value Type                     | Conversion to ECMAScript type  |
|---|--------------------------------|
| double, float, long, short, int, byte, char | Direct conversion to number    |
| boolean                                     | Direct conversion to boolean   |
| array                                       | JavaArray                      |
| java.lang.Class                             | JavaClass                      |
| Object wrapped around ECMAScript Object     | Direct conversion (unwrapping) |

**Table 33 : Conversion from DVB-J types**

| DVB-J Return Value Type   | Conversion to ECMAScript type  |
|---|--|
| Other objects (including java.lang.Double, java.lang.Integer and java.lang.String (note 1), java.lang.Exception)  | JavaScript (an ECMAScript wrapper around the DVB-J Object providing the same methods and |
| NOTE 1: The explicit or implicit invocation of the ECMAScript toString() function on the ECMAScript handle to a java.lang.String shall return an external string. |  |

### 8.10.2.12 Catching DVB-J Exceptions in ECMAScript

DVB-J exceptions are thrown back into ECMAScript when the underlying DVB-J method throws an exception, or an exception is generated as part of the attempted type conversion from ECMAScript to DVB-J (see type conversions above). For example, the following ECMAScript:

```
try {
    Packages.java.lang.Class.forName("someClass");
} catch (e) {
    print("Exception: " + e);
}
```

would print out something like the following, if someClass does not exist.

Exception: java.lang.ClassNotFoundException: someClass.

## 8.11 Document Object Model (DOM)

DOM is a platform and language neutral interface that provides programmatic access to the content, structure and style of documents. Support for language bindings for the DOM for both Java language and ECMAScript is required.

**Table 34 : Supported DOM modules**

| DOM Module              |                | Where specified  | Required |
|-------------------------|----------------|--|----------|
| Package                 | Feature String |  |          |
| Level 2 Core            | Core           | Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Core Specification [96]    | Yes      |
|                         | XML            |  | No       |
| Level 2 Views           | Views          | Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Views Specification [100]  | Yes      |
| Level 2 Stylesheets     | StyleSheets    | Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Style Specification [99].  | No       |
| Level 2 CSS stylesheets | CSS            | Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Style Specification [99].  | No       |
|                         | CSS2           |  | Yes      |
| Level 2 Events          | Events         | Document Object Model (DOM) Level 2 Events Specification [98]. | Yes      |
|                         | UIEvents       |  | Yes      |
|                         | MutationEvents |  | Yes      |
| DVB-HTML                | DVBHTML        | See 8.11.4, "DVB-HTML DOM module" on page 140                  | Yes      |
| DVB Events              | DVBEvents      | See 8.11.2, "DVB Events DOM module" on page 134                | Yes      |
| DVB Key Events          | DVBKeyEvents   | See 8.11.3, "DVB Key events DOM module" on page 138            | Yes      |
| DVB CSS                 | DVBCSS         | See 8.11.8.1, "DVB CSS DOM module" on page 162                 | Yes      |
| DVB Environment         | DVBEnvironment | See 8.11.7, "DVB Environment object module" on page 158        | Yes      |

### 8.11.1 DOM Level 2 Events

#### 8.11.1.1 Fundamental interfaces

DVB-HTML shall support the events module as defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Events Specification \[98\]](#) (which includes the following interfaces: `EventTarget`, `EventListener`, `DocumentEvent`, `Event` and `EventException`).

#### 8.11.1.2 Event interfaces

The following event sets from [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Events Specification \[98\]](#) shall be supported:

- `UIEvent`
- `MutationEvent`

It is not required to support the following event sets:

- HTML events

NOTE: Equivalents to the Load and Unload events are provided, see 9.4, "Application activity events" on page 205.

- `MouseEvent`

It is recommended that implementations providing support for mouse like devices provide the `MouseEvent` event set.

## 8.11.2 DVB Events DOM module

A DOM application can use the `hasFeature` method of the DOM implementation interface to determine that this module is supported. The feature string for all interfaces listed in this module is "DVBEvents" and the version "2.0".

### 8.11.2.1 Key events

DVB-HTML will provide the W3C event bindings for keyboard and remote control events in a later release of this specification when the W3C Dom level 3 events specification is finalised. Until such time, scripting will have access to key events as specified in an additional DVB DOM module specified in 8.11.3, "[DVB Key events DOM module](#)" on [page 138](#).

in the following DVB-HTML specific manner:

### 8.11.2.2 Lifecycle events

This section provides the mapping of DVB-HTML life cycle events to the DOM event model.

#### 8.11.2.2.1 Interface DVBLifecycleEvent

The DVBLifecycleEvent interface provides specific contextual information to a DVB-HTML application associated with its lifecycle.

All lifecycle events are delivered to the root element of the document in the root frame of an application and follow the normal event delivery rules in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Events Specification \[98\]](#). For clarification, sub-frames which contain the root of separate applications (as described in [8.14.3, "Inter application security" on page 177](#)) also have DVB lifecycle events delivered to the corresponding document root. The different types of such events that can occur are detailed under [8.11.2.2.2, "Event definitions" on page 135](#).

##### 8.11.2.2.1.1 IDL Definition

```
// Introduced in DVB-HTML:
interface DVBLifecycleEvent : Event {
    readonly attribute DOMString eventinfo;
    void initDVBLifecycleEvent(in DOMString typeArg,
        in boolean canBubbleArg,
        in boolean cancelableArg,
        in long detailArg);
};
```

##### 8.11.2.2.1.2 Attributes

**eventinfo:** This attribute specifies additional information about the event the meaning of which depends on the type of the event.

## 8.11.2.2.1.3 Methods

Table 35 : DVB Lifecycle Event Method

| Method           | Name                  | Description  |           |   |
|------------------|-----------------------|--|-----------|---|
|                  | initDVBLifecycleEvent | This method is used to initialize the value of a lifecycle event created through the DocumentEvent interface. This method may only be called before the lifecycle event has been dispatched via the <code>dispatchEvent</code> method, though it may be called multiple times during that phase if necessary. If called multiple times, the final invocation takes precedence. |           |   |
| Parameters       | Name                  | Type   | Qualifier | Description   |
|                  | typeArg               | DOMString  |           | Specifies the event type. The string is identical to the name of the event (e.g. the AppStarting event is specified with the string "AppStarting"). |
|                  | canBubbleArg          | Boolean  |           | Specifies whether or not the event can bubble.  |
|                  | cancelableArg         |  |           | Specifies whether or not the event's default action can be prevented.   |
|                  | detailArg             | Number   |           | Specifies the Event's detail.   |
| Return value     | Type                  | Description  |           |   |
| No Return Value. |                       |  |           |   |
| Exceptions       |                       |  |           |   |
| No Exceptions.   |                       |  |           |   |

## 8.11.2.2.2 Event definitions

## 8.11.2.2.2.1 AppStarting

This event is given to the DVB-HTML application whilst in the Active state if and only if it is signalled as PREFETCH. The user agent sends this event when it receives the [dvb.start event](#). After receiving the [dvb.start event](#) and prior to sending this event the user agent begins displaying the DVB-HTML application.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

## 8.11.2.2.2.2 AppActive

This event is given to the DVB-HTML application on transitioning from the Loading state to the Active state.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: [eventinfo](#)

The values of `eventinfo` are those defined in table 81, "DVB-HTML application control code values" on page 223 with the following semantics:

- PREFETCH means that the DVB-HTML application will not be presented by the user agent until the user agent has sent an `AppStarting` event.
- All other values imply that the DVB-HTML application will not receive an `AppStarting` event and can assume that presentation has begun.

#### 8.11.2.2.2.3 AppPause

This event is given to the DVB-HTML application on transitioning to the Paused state.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

#### 8.11.2.2.2.4 AppResume

This event is given to the DVB-HTML application on transitioning out of the Paused state to the Active state.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

#### 8.11.2.2.2.5 AppDestroyed

This event is given to the DVB-HTML application on transitioning to the Destroyed state.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

#### 8.11.2.2.2.6 AppKilled

This event is given to the DVB-HTML application on transitioning to the Killed state.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

#### 8.11.2.2.2.7 AppTerminating

This event is given to a DVB-HTML application when an application within a subframe terminates.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: `eventinfo`

The value of `eventinfo` is the name of the frame where the terminating application was hosted:



### 8.11.2.2.3 State transition summary

The following table summarizes the allowed transitions in the lifecycle model (see 9.3.3, "The State Model" on page 201).

| State transition    | Loading | Active           | Paused           | Destroyed        | Killed            |
|---------------------|---------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| <b>Loading to</b>   | no      | yes <sup>1</sup> | no               | yes <sup>2</sup> | yes <sup>3</sup>  |
| <b>Active to</b>    | no      | no               | yes <sup>4</sup> | yes <sup>5</sup> | yes <sup>6</sup>  |
| <b>Paused to</b>    | no      | yes <sup>7</sup> | no               | yes <sup>8</sup> | yes <sup>9</sup>  |
| <b>Destroyed to</b> | no      | no               | no               | no               | yes <sup>10</sup> |
| <b>Killed to</b>    | no      | no               | no               | no               | no                |

The following table describes the events delivered to the application following these transitions.

NOTE: In <sup>8</sup> and <sup>9</sup> no AppResume event be received.

| cross reference | transition           | event delivered                                |
|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| <b>1</b>        | Loading to Active    | event AppActive on entry to Active state       |
| <b>2</b>        | Loading to Destroyed | event AppDestroyed on entry to Destroyed state |
| <b>3</b>        | Loading to Killed    | event AppKilled on entry to Killed state       |
| <b>4</b>        | Active to Paused     | event AppPause on exit from Active state       |
| <b>5</b>        | Active to Destroyed  | event AppDestroyed on entry to Destroyed state |
| <b>6</b>        | Active to Killed     | event AppKilled on entry to Killed state       |
| <b>7</b>        | Paused to Active     | event AppResume on entry to Active state       |
| <b>8</b>        | Paused to Destroyed  | event AppDestroyed on entry to Destroyed state |
| <b>9</b>        | Paused to Killed     | event AppKilled on entry to Killed state       |
| <b>10</b>       | Destroyed to Killed  | event AppKilled on entry to Killed state       |

### 8.11.2.3 Additional DVB Events

#### 8.11.2.3.1 Trigger events

See 8.7, "Synchronization" on page 97.

#### 8.11.2.3.2 DVBDOMStable event

This event signals the completion of the current document DOM construction. After the receipt of this event the DOM structure of the document will be complete, however the DOM structure in sub-frames or in-line frames may not be complete and resources such as the contents of images may not have finished loading. Prior to the generating the event implementations are free to have an incomplete DOM structure referenced by the document variable.

This event uses the base Event interface to pass contextual information. The following type is allowed:

**DVBDOMStable:** This event occurs when the DOM implementation is fully constructed, but is not required to wait until all of the associated frames in a <frameset>, content in <image> or <object> elements loads. This event is valid for <body> and <frame> elements.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

### 8.11.2.3.3 DVB-HTML events

These events use the base Event interface to pass contextual information. The following types are allowed:

**load:** The load event occurs when the DOM implementation finishes loading all content within a document, all frames within a <frame>, or an <object> element.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

**unload:** The unload event occurs when the DOM implementation removes a document from a window or frame. This event is valid for <body> and <frame> elements.

- Bubbles: No
- Cancelable: No
- Context Info: None

## 8.11.3 DVB Key events DOM module

A DOM application may use the `hasFeature( feature, version )` method of the `DOMImplementation` interface with parameter values "DVBKeyEvents" and "2.0" (respectively) to determine whether or not the event module is supported by the implementation. The feature string is also used with the `createEvent` method. It is implementation dependent how a MHP gets the set of supported keys.

Key events generated by a real or virtual keyboard or from a remote control device shall be generated by the user agent and can be registered for by applications through the DOM. Registering for events using the type string "HKeyEvent" or "HRcEvent" can place a listener that shall receive an object that implements the `DVBKeyEvent` interface. All Key events are initially targeted at the element with focus, or the body element if no element has focus

e.g.

```
function myListener(evt) { ... }
node.addEventListener("HRcEvent", myListener, false )
```

### 8.11.3.1 Interface DVBKeyEvent

The `DVBKeyEvent` interface provides specific contextual information associated with Remote Control and Keyboard Events. The interface is able to describe the representation of a key event as a string, color or symbol (such as a triangle, ">", for "play"). This allows an application to describe a button on an input device correctly for a given platform.

The `keyChar` attribute describes the representation of a key event as a string. All available events shall have a text representation. Other representations may be available

**NOTE:** The `DVBKeyEvent` interface is designed to be compatible with the W3C level 3 DOM key events albeit with some redundancy, and in future versions of the specification it is envisaged that objects will also support the W3C defined interface.

### 8.11.3.1.1 IDL Definition

// Introduced in MHP 1.1:

```
interface DVBKeyEvent : UIEvent {
  readonly attribute unsigned long when;
  readonly attribute unsigned long modifiers;
  readonly attribute unsigned long keyCode;
  readonly attribute DOMString keyChar;
  readonly attribute DOMString color;
  readonly attribute DOMString symbol;
  void initDVBKeyEvent(in DOMString type,
    in boolean canBubbleArg,
    in boolean cancelableArg,
    in unsigned long modifiers,
    in unsigned long keycode,
  );
};
```

## 8.11.3.1.2 Attributes

Table 36 : Key event attributes

| Name      | Readonly | Type          | Description   |
|-----------|----------|---------------|---|
| when      | yes      | unsigned long | The timestamp for the event   |
| modifiers | yes      | unsigned long | Indication of any modification keys active for the event  |
| keyCode   | yes      | unsigned long | The key code of the key associates with this event.   |
| keyChar   | yes      | unsigned long | The character representation of the key associated with this event  |
| color     | yes      | DOMString     | The six coloured key events (VK_COLORED_KEY_0, ..., VK_COLORED_KEY_5), if implemented, must also be represented by a color. For all other key events this value should be null. The format of the color is specified in <a href="#">CSS 2 [101]</a> section 4.3.6 Colors. |
| symbol    | yes      | DOMString     | The URL to an image provided by a MHP to describe the symbol associated with a certain key. The recommended symbols for some Key events are described in <a href="#">HAVi [50]</a> . The value of this attribute can be NULL.   |

## 8.11.3.1.3 Methods

Table 37 : Key Event Method

| Method       | Name            | Description   |           |  |
|--------------|-----------------|---|-----------|--|
|              | initDVBKeyEvent | This method is used to initialize the value of a keyboard event. This method may only be called before the key event has been dispatched via the <code>dispatchEvent</code> method, though it may be called multiple times during that phase if necessary. If called multiple times, the final invocation takes precedence. |           |  |
| Parameters   | Name            | Type  | Qualifier | Description  |
|              | type            | DOMString   | -         | Either "HRCEvent" or "HKeyEvent"                                     |
|              | canBubbleArg    | boolean   |           | Specifies whether or not the event can bubble.                       |
|              | cancelableArg   | boolean   |           | Specifies whether or not the event's default action can be prevented |
|              | modifiers       | unsigned long   |           | The modifiers to be applied to the event                             |
|              | keycode         | unsigned long   | -         | The Keycode of the event to be generated                             |
| Return value | Type            | Description   |           |  |
|              | -               | Initialises the event, all of the attributes shall be set as if this event were generated by the system.  |           |  |

## 8.11.4 DVB-HTML DOM module

## 8.11.4.1 Conformance

A DVB-HTML user agent shall be considered as being an HTML-only DOM implementation as defined in the [W3C Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Core Specification \[96\]](#), so that conformance statements in DOM Level 2

applying to those kinds of implementation will apply also to a DVB-HTML user agent. E.g. a DVB-HTML DOM implementation is not required to implement the `createDocument()` method in the `DOMImplementation` interface from the DOM Level 2 Core.

#### 8.11.4.2 Differences from W3C DOM Level 1 HTML interfaces

The W3C DOM 1 HTML interfaces were designed in order to provide convenience functions to manipulate HTML 4.0 documents and also to create documents from scratch. The DOM DVB-HTML module has been defined with the objective to manipulate DVB-HTML documents without any intention to create them. In general, the DOM DVB-HTML module follows the design of the W3C DOM1 HTML interfaces, however the following differences can be observed:

- Some attributes have been made immutable in the DOM DVB-HTML module. These modifications have been indicated in this document.
- Some attributes and interfaces have not been included in the DOM DVB-HTML module.
- For the length attribute in all interfaces, the type has been homogenised to unsigned long.
- Some semantics have been added to clarify user agent behaviour (e.g. on modification of the disabled attribute)
- Some semantics have been altered to take into account the DVB-HTML DTD (e.g. since the name attribute is not supported for identification purposes some attribute semantics had to be modified accordingly).

#### 8.11.4.3 Extensions

##### 8.11.4.3.1 Enumerations

In DVB-HTML, some element attributes can be set to a limited number of values. In order to be as much as possible in line with the IDL defined in the W3C DOM 1 HTML, this specification does not use the IDL `enum`. For attributes that take a limited set of values (i.e. an enumeration) the following semantics shall apply:

- If a mutable attribute is set with a value outside of the possible values the `DOMException` with the error code `SYNTAX_ERR` is raised and the original value shall be kept.

The bindings reflect this choice, see annex AC, "(normative): ECMAScript Binding" on page 924 and annex AD, "(normative): Support for DVB-HTML" on page 937.

##### 8.11.4.3.2 Initial and current values of form controls

Form controls that accept a user input, e.g. text area, option, text, password, checkbox, radio button, have both an initial value and a current value. The names and the types of these values depend on the type of the control. When a control is created, the means by which the initial value is set depends on the control. See the corresponding interface definition 8.11.4.6.6, "DVBHTMLFormElement Interface" on page 148.

When a control is created, the current value is set to the initial value.

The initial value can only be modified by a script. The current value can be modified either by a user interaction or a scripting instruction. If the current value is modified, the display shall be updated to reflect the value changed.

When a form is reset, either by user interaction or by scripting instruction, for each of the controls accepting user input and contained in the form, the current value shall be set to the initial value. The initial value may have been modified between the creation of the control and the reset of the form. As such, the initial value used shall be the value at the time of the reset.

Form controls that do not accept user input, e.g. hidden controls, submit buttons, reset buttons, buttons, submit images, have only one value, a current value. When a control is created, the means by which the current value is set depends on the control. See 8.11.4.6.6, "DVBHTMLFormElement Interface" on page 148. The current value can only be modified by a scripting instruction. In such a case, it is not required to affect the display.

The file input control has a different behaviour from those described above. It accepts a user input but only has a current value. The semantics of the current value of form controls that do not accept user input applies.

## 8.11.4.4 System aspects

### 8.11.4.4.1 Access to the document

#### 8.11.4.4.1.1 Java

The DVB DOM Implementation shall implement the `org.dvb.dom` API as defined in 11.13.1, "Document object model APIs" on page 297. This will provide applications a handle to the DVB-HTML document object model.

#### 8.11.4.4.1.2 ECMAScript

The DVB DOM implementation shall provide to applications a `document` object that represents the current DVB-HTML document.

### 8.11.4.4.2 DOM DVB-HTML module

A DOM application can use the `hasFeature` method of the `DOMImplementation` interface to determine whether this module is supported or not. The feature string for all the interfaces listed in this module is "DVBHTML" and the version is ".0".

#### 8.11.4.4.3 DOM modification

##### 8.11.4.4.3.1 DOM access

Any DOM call from the DOM DVB-HTML module shall be synchronous. As such, any subsequent calls can assume that they can operate on a DOM structure updated accordingly to the previous call.

##### 8.11.4.4.3.2 Synchronisation with renderer actions.

Wherever applicable, any required impact on the visual rendering following a DOM call has been described. However, this specification is voluntarily silent on the nature of the relationships between a DOM modification and the renderer, in particular on the synchronisation aspects.

##### 8.11.4.4.3.3 Modifications from the DOM Core

A `NO_MODIFICATION_ALLOWED_ERR` exception shall be raised when attempting to modify an attribute from the DOM Core which equivalent attribute in the DOM DVB-HTML module is defined to be `readonly`, e.g. this exception shall be raised when modifying the `type` attribute in the `button` element through the DOM Core.

## 8.11.4.5 Miscellaneous interfaces

This section describes various utility interfaces of the DOM DVB-HTML module.

### 8.11.4.5.1 DVB-HTMLCollection Interface

A `DVBHTMLCollection` is a list of DVB-HTML elements. An individual element may be accessed by either ordinal index or the element's `id` attribute.

NOTE: Collections in the DVB-HTML DOM are assumed to be dynamic meaning that they are automatically updated when the underlying document is modified.

#### 8.11.4.5.1.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLCollection {
    readonly attribute unsigned long length;
    Node namedItem(in DOMString name);
    Node item(in unsigned long index);
};
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLCollection` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#).

### 8.11.4.5.2 DVBHTMLDocument Interface

A `DVBHTMLDocument` is the root of the DVB-HTML document hierarchy and holds the entire content. Besides providing access to the hierarchy, it also provides some convenience methods for accessing certain sets of information from the document.

#### 8.11.4.5.2.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLDocument : Document {
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection anchors; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    attribute DVBHTMLCollection body; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    attribute DOMString cookie;
    readonly attribute DOMString domain;
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection forms; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection images; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection links; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    readonly attribute DOMString referrer;
    attribute DOMString title;
    readonly attribute DOMString URL;

    void open();
    void close();
    void write(in DOMString text);
    void writeln(in DOMString text);
};
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLDocument` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

## 8.11.4.5.2.2

## Attributes

**Table 38 : DVBHTMLDocument attributes**

| Name    | Readonly | Type              | Description   |
|---------|----------|-------------------|---|
| anchors | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs   |
| body    | no       | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs   |
| domain  | yes      | DOMString         | See domain in 8.16.6, "Domain" on page 187.   |
| forms   | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs   |
| images  | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs   |
| links   | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs   |
| title   | no       | DOMString         | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . In addition, if the user agent makes this visible, then it shall update the rendering upon modification. This attribute is linked to the <title> element changes to one shall be reflected in the other. |

## 8.11.4.5.2.3

## Methods

**Table 39 : DVBHTMLDocument open method**

| Method  | Name   | Description  |           |             |
|---|--------|--|-----------|-------------|
|   | open() | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> opens the document for writing. This creates a new empty document in the target to which subsequent writes are made. The transition and the rendering of the new document shall not be performed until a call to the close() method. The ECMAScript context which opened the new document cannot be destroyed until it calls document.close(). (note 1) |           |             |
| Parameters  | Name   | Type   | Qualifier | Description |
|   |        |  |           |             |
| Return value  | Type   | Description  |           |             |
|   | -      | This method does not return a value.   |           |             |
| NOTE 1: document.open() shall not change the URL of the document. |        |  |           |             |

**Table 40 : DVBHTMLDocument close method**

| Method       | Name    | Description  |           |             |
|--------------|---------|--|-----------|-------------|
|              | close() | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Rendering of the document is performed as if a link had been followed with that document as a target. |           |             |
| Parameters   | Name    | Type   | Qualifier | Description |
|              |         |  |           |             |
| Return value | Type    | Description  |           |             |
|              | -       | This method does not return a value.   |           |             |



Table 41 : DVBHTMLDocument write method

| Method       | Name    | Description   |           |             |
|--------------|---------|---|-----------|-------------|
|              | write() | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . An inline non-deferred script performing document.write() feeds additional strings to the parser. The text is parsed into the document's structure model. These strings are sent to the parser sequenced immediately after the closing script tag of the inline script. See also (" <a href="#">Implicit document.open()</a> " on page 145). |           |             |
| Parameters   | Name    | Type  | Qualifier | Description |
|              |         |   |           |             |
| Return value | Type    | Description   |           |             |
|              | -       | This method does not return a value.  |           |             |

Table 42 : DVBHTMLDocument writeln method

| Method       | Name      | Description   |           |             |
|--------------|-----------|---|-----------|-------------|
|              | writeln() | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . An inline non-deferred script performing document.writeln() feeds additional strings to the parser. The text is parsed into the document's structure model. These strings are sent to the parser sequenced immediately after the closing script tag of the inline script. See also (" <a href="#">Implicit document.open()</a> " on page 145). |           |             |
| Parameters   | Name      | Type  | Qualifier | Description |
|              |           |   |           |             |
| Return value | Type      | Description   |           |             |
|              | -         | This method does not return a value.  |           |             |

**Implicit document.open()**

If document.write() is called from a deferred script context and the document has not been explicitly opened for writing, the first write() performs an implicit open of the containing document.

**Implicit document.close()**

If the deferred inline script context which performed an open (explicit or implicit) exits without calling close on the document, the document is closed implicitly.

When a document is trying to access the value of the forms, anchors, links or images attributes before the parsing of the document is complete, the returned value shall be the collection of matching elements at the time of the call.

## 8.11.4.6 DVB-HTML element related interfaces

### 8.11.4.6.1 DVBHTMLElement Interface

All DVB-HTML element interfaces derive from this class.

#### 8.11.4.6.1.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLElement : Element {
    attribute DOMString className;
    attribute DOMString dir;
    attribute DOMString id;
    attribute DOMString lang;
    attribute DOMString title;
};
```

#### 8.11.4.6.1.2 Attributes

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLInputElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsection.

**Table 43 :**

| Name | ReadOnly | Type      | Description  |
|------|----------|-----------|--|
| dir  | no       | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Trying to set this attribute to a value other than the values allowed in <a href="#">HTML 4 [104]</a> shall cause the <code>DOMException</code> with the error code <code>SYNTAX_ERR</code> to be raised. |
| lang | no       | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Trying to set this attribute to a value other than the values allowed in <a href="#">HTML 4 [104]</a> shall cause the <code>DOMException</code> with the error code <code>SYNTAX_ERR</code> to be raised. |

#### 8.11.4.6.2 DVBHTMLAnchorElement Interface

This interface models the anchor element, corresponding to the DVB-HTML `<a>` tag. It represents a source anchor, the `<A>` tag with the `href` attribute, or a destination anchor, the `<a>` tag with the `id` attribute.

##### 8.11.4.6.2.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLAnchorElement : DVBHTMLInputElement {
    attribute DOMString accessKey;
    attribute DOMString charset;
    attribute DOMString href;
    attribute DOMString hreflang;
    attribute DOMString target; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString type;

    void blur();
    void focus();
};
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLAnchorElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

##### 8.11.4.6.2.2 Attributes

**Table 44 :**

| Name   | ReadOnly | Type      | Description  |
|--------|----------|-----------|--|
| target | no       | DOMString | The id of the frame to render the resource designated by the URI in. The semantics of the <code>target</code> attribute in <a href="#">HTML 4 [104]</a> apply with the following modification: all references to the <code>name</code> attribute shall be seen as being references to the <code>id</code> attribute. |

#### 8.11.4.6.3 DVBHTMLMapElement Interface

This interface models a client-side image map. See the `MAP` element definition in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

##### 8.11.4.6.3.1 IDL definition

```
interface DVBHTMLMapElement : DVBHTMLInputElement {
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection areas; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLMapElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

#### 8.11.4.6.3.2 Attributes

**Table 45 :**

| Name  | ReadOnly | Type              | Description  |
|-------|----------|-------------------|--|
| areas | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Its type has been changed to DVBHTMLCollection. |

NOTE: The name attribute in the map element is deprecated in DVB-HTML. As such, the map is identified only through the `id` attribute.

When a document is trying to access the value of the `areas` attribute before the parsing of the contents of the map element is complete, the returned value shall be the collection of matching elements at the time of the call.

#### 8.11.4.6.4 DVBHTMLAreaElement Interface

This interface models an image map area which can triggers an action when the user clicks on it.

##### 8.11.4.6.4.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLAreaElement : DVBHTMLElement {
    attribute DOMString accessKey;
    attribute DOMString alt;
    attribute DOMString href;
    attribute boolean nohref;
    attribute DOMString target; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLAreaElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

#### 8.11.4.6.4.2 Attributes

**Table 46 :**

| Name   | ReadOnly | Type      | Description  |
|--------|----------|-----------|--|
| target | no       | DOMString | The id of the frame to render the resource designated by the URI in. The semantics of the target attribute in <a href="#">HTML 4 [104]</a> apply with the following modification : all references to the name attribute shall be seen as being references to the id attribute. |

#### 8.11.4.6.5 DVBHTMLButtonElement Interface

`DVBHTMLButtonElement` represents the DVB-HTML `<button>` tag.

##### 8.11.4.6.5.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLButtonElement : DVBHTMLElement {
    attribute DOMString accessKey;
    attribute boolean disabled;
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLFormElement form; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    attribute DOMString name;
    readonly attribute DOMString type;
    attribute DOMString value;

    void blur(); // Introduced in DVB-HTML DOM
    void focus(); // Introduced in DVB-HTML DOM
};
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLButtonElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

#### 8.11.4.6.5.2 Attributes

**Table 47 :**

| Name  | Readonly | Type               | Description  |
|-------|----------|--------------------|--|
| form  | yes      | DVBHTMLFormElement | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs.   |
| value | no       | DOMString          | The button's current value. It corresponds to the value attribute of the DVB-HTML <code>&lt;button&gt;</code> tag but shall be interpreted as a current value (as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141). |

#### 8.11.4.6.5.3 Methods

**Table 48 :**

| Method       | Name | Description                      |           |             |
|--------------|------|----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|
|              | blur | Removes focus from this element. |           |             |
| Parameters   | Name | Type                             | Qualifier | Description |
|              | -    | -                                | -         | -           |
| Return value | Type | Description                      |           |             |
|              | -    | -                                |           |             |

**Table 49 :**

| Method       | Name  | Description                  |           |             |
|--------------|-------|------------------------------|-----------|-------------|
|              | focus | Gives focus to this element. |           |             |
| Parameters   | Name  | Type                         | Qualifier | Description |
|              | -     | -                            | -         | -           |
| Return value | Type  | Description                  |           |             |
|              | -     | -                            |           |             |

#### 8.11.4.6.6 DVBHTMLFormElement Interface

The `DVBHTMLFormElement` encompasses behaviour similar to a collection and an element. It provides direct access to the contained input elements as well as the attributes of the form element. See the `FormElement` definition in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

##### 8.11.4.6.6.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLFormElement : DVBHTMLFormElement {
    attribute DOMString action;
    attribute DOMString acceptCharset;
    attribute DOMString enctype;
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection elements; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    readonly attribute unsigned long length; // Lengths type coherence
    attribute DOMString method;
    attribute DOMString target; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML

    void reset();
    void submit();
}
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLFormElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

#### 8.11.4.6.6.2 Attributes

**Table 50 :**

| Name     | Readonly | Type              | Description  |
|----------|----------|-------------------|--|
| elements | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the type differs   |
| length   | yes      | unsigned long     | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the type differs   |
| method   | no       | DOMString         | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Trying to set this attribute to a value other than the values allowed in <a href="#">HTML 4 [104]</a> shall cause the <code>DOMException</code> with the error code <code>SYNTAX_ERR</code> to be raised. |
| target   | no       | DOMString         | The id of the frame to render the resource designated by the URI in. The semantics of the target attribute in HTML 4.01 apply with the following modification: all references to the name attribute shall be seen as being references to the id attribute.                                       |

When a document is trying to access the value of the `elements` attribute before the parsing of the contents of the form element is complete, the returned value shall be the collection of matching elements at the time of the call.

#### 8.11.4.6.7 DVBHTMLFrameElement Interface

##### 8.11.4.6.7.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLFrameElement : DVBHTMLElement {
    readonly attribute Document contentDocument;
    readonly attribute DOMString frameBorder; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString longDesc;
    readonly attribute DOMString marginHeight // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute DOMString marginWidth; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute DOMString scrolling; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString src;
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLFrameElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

#### 8.11.4.6.7.2 Attributes

**Table 51 :**

| Name         | Readonly | Type      | Description   |
|--------------|----------|-----------|---|
| frameBorder  | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. |
| marginHeight | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. |
| marginWidth  | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. |
| scrolling    | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. |

## 8.11.4.6.8 DVBHTMLFrameSetElement Interface

### 8.11.4.6.8.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLFrameSetElement : DVBHTMLElement {
    readonly attribute DOMString cols; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute DOMString rows; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLFrameSetElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

### 8.11.4.6.8.2 Attributes

**Table 52 :**

| Name | Readonly | Type      | Description   |
|------|----------|-----------|---|
| cols | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. |
| rows | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. |

## 8.11.4.6.9 DVBHTMLIFrameElement Interface

### 8.11.4.6.9.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLIFrameElement : DVBHTMLElement {
    attribute DOMString frameBorder;
    attribute DOMString longDesc;
    attribute DOMString scrolling;
    attribute DOMString src;
    attribute DVBHTMLDocument contentDocument;
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLIFrameElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#) Attributes

**Table 53 : IFrame element attributes**

| Name            | Readonly | Type            | Description  |
|-----------------|----------|-----------------|--|
| contentDocument | no       | DVBHTMLDocument | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the type differs |

## 8.11.4.6.10 DVBHTMLImageElement Interface

### 8.11.4.6.10.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLImageElement : DVBHTMLElement {
    attribute DOMString alt;
    attribute DOMString height; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString longDesc;
    attribute DOMString lowSrc;
    attribute DOMString src;
    readonly attribute DOMString useMap; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString width;
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLImageElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

## 8.11.4.6.10.2 Attributes

Table 54 :

| Name     | Readonly | Type      | Description   |
|----------|----------|-----------|---|
| longdesc | no       | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> , A DVB-HTML User Agent may optionally make use of this resource in device specific ways (e.g for accessibility). The externally referenced resource will not form part of the document model.                         |
| useMap   | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. The attribute value shall be the id value and not the name value of the associated map element (since the name attribute in the map element is not supported in DVB-HTML) |

## 8.11.4.6.11 DVBHTMLObjectElement Interface

## 8.11.4.6.11.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLObjectElement : DVBHTMLElement {
attribute DOMString archive;
attribute DOMString code;
attribute DOMString codeBase;
attribute DOMString codeType;
readonly attribute DVBHTMLDocument contentDocument; // Introduced in DVB-HTML:
attribute DOMString data;
attribute boolean declare;
readonly attribute DVBHTMLFormElement form;
attribute DOMString height;
attribute DOMString name;
attribute DOMString standby;
attribute DOMString type;
readonly attribute DOMString useMap;
attribute DOMString width;
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the HTMLObjectElement interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the addition of the contentDocument attribute defined in the following subsection.

## 8.11.4.6.11.2 Attributes

Table 55 :

| Name            | Readonly | Type      | Description  |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|--|
| contentDocument | yes      | DOMString | The document this object contains, if there is any and it is available, or null otherwise. |

## 8.11.4.6.12 DVBHTMLInputElement Interface

### 8.11.4.6.12.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLInputElement : DVBHTMLInputElement {  
  
    attribute DOMString accept;  
    attribute DOMString accessKey;  
    attribute DOMString alt;  
    attribute boolean checked; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML  
    attribute DOMString defaultValue; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML  
    attribute boolean defaultChecked; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML  
    attribute boolean disabled; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML  
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLFormElement form; // DVB-HTML Type coherence  
    attribute long maxLength;  
    attribute DOMString name;  
    attribute boolean readOnly; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML  
    attribute DOMString size;  
    attribute DOMString src;  
    readonly attribute DOMString type; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML  
    readonly attribute DOMString useMap; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML  
    attribute DOMString value; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML  
  
    void blur();  
    void click();  
    void focus();  
    void select();  
};
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLInputElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.



## 8.11.4.6.12.2 Attributes

Table 56 : (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Name           | Readonly | Type               | Description  |
|----------------|----------|--------------------|--|
| checked        | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> ; this attribute corresponds to the current value of controls (as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141) with attribute type equals to checkbox or radio. It shall be ignored for the other types of control.  |
| defaultChecked | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> ; this attribute corresponds to the initial value of controls (as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141) with attribute type equals to checkbox or radio. It is initialised by the checked attribute of the <input> tag. It shall be ignored for the other types of control.   |
| defaultValue   | no       | DOMString          | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> ; this attribute corresponds to the initial value of controls (as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141) with attribute type equals to text or password. It is initialised by the value attribute of the <input> element.  |
| disabled       | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . If set to true, the effects are the following :<br>Input does not receive the focus.<br>Input is not included in the tabbing navigation.<br>Input is not successful.<br>Since the readOnly state is less restrictive than the disabled state, if the disabled attribute is set to true, the control evolves to the disabled state, independently of the readOnly attribute value. If the disabled attribute is set to false, the control will evolve to the readOnly state depending on the value of the readOnly attribute.<br>By default, the attribute value is FALSE. |
| form           | yes      | DVBHTMLFormElement | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> , only the return type differs.   |
| readOnly       | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . When set to true and textarea is not in the disabled state, the effects are the following :<br>Input receives the focus but cannot be modified by the user.<br>Input is included in the tabbing navigation.<br>Input is successful.<br>Since the readOnly state is less restrictive than the disabled state, if the readOnly attribute is set to true when the disabled attribute is equal to true, the control remains in the disabled state.<br>By default, the attribute value is FALSE.   |
| type           | yes      | DOMString          | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly.  |

Table 56 : (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Name   | ReadOnly | Type      | Description   |
|--------|----------|-----------|---|
| useMap | yes      | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly. The attribute value shall be the id value and not the name value of the associated map element (since the name attribute in the map element is not supported in DVB-HTML)   |
| value  | no       | DOMString | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute corresponds to the current value of controls (as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141 with attribute type equals to text, password, hidden, submit, reset, button, image, or file.<br>For all the controls, it represents the value of the name/value pair sent to the server when the form containing this control is submitted.<br>This attribute is initialised by the value attribute of the <input> tag. |

#### 8.11.4.6.13 DVBHTMLOptionElement Interface

This interface models the <option> element.

##### 8.11.4.6.13.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLOptionElement : DVBHTMLInputElement {
    attribute boolean defaultSelected; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    attribute boolean disabled;
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLFormElement form; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    readonly attribute long index;
    attribute DOMString label;
    attribute boolean selected; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute DOMString text;
    attribute DOMString value;
};
```

The semantics of the attributes associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the HTMLOptionElement interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

## 8.11.4.6.13.2 Attributes

Table 57 :

| Name            | ReadOnly | Type               | Description  |
|-----------------|----------|--------------------|--|
| defaultSelected | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . The initial value is as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141.<br>If the option is included in a single choice select, it is initialised to true if the attribute checked is present in the option tag and if this option is the latest option between those contained in the select with the attribute checked set. Its value is false otherwise.<br>If the option is included in a multiple choice select, it is initialised to true if the attribute checked is present in the option tag, false otherwise. |
| form            | yes      | DVBHTMLFormElement | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs  |
| selected        | yes      | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . The current value is as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141.   |

## 8.11.4.6.14 DVBHTMLSelectElement Interface

This interface represents the <select> control which allows the selection of one or multiple options among a list. Some graphical user agents represent single and multiple selection with different types of widgets. Options can be grouped inside an option group, for presentational reasons, or directly inserted in the selection. Option groups can't be nested.

## 8.11.4.6.14.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLSelectElement : DVBHTMLFormElement {
    attribute boolean disabled;
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLFormElement form; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    readonly attribute unsigned long length; // Lengths type coherence
    readonly attribute boolean multiple; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString name;
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection options; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    attribute long selectedIndex;
        // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    attribute unsigned long size; // Size type coherence
    readonly attribute DOMString type;
    attribute DOMString value;

    void add(in DVBHTMLFormElement element, in DVBHTMLFormElement before) raises(DOMException);
    void blur();
    void focus();
    void remove(in long index);
};
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the HTMLSelectElement interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

## 8.11.4.6.14.2 Attributes

Table 58 :

| Name          | ReadOnly | Type               | Description  |
|---------------|----------|--------------------|--|
| form          | yes      | DVBHTMLFormElement | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs  |
| length        | yes      | unsigned long      | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs  |
| multiple      | yes      | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . This attribute has been moved to readonly.  |
| options       | yes      | DVBHTMLCollection  | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs.   |
| selectedIndex | no       | long               | The ordinal index of the selected option, starting from 0. The value -1 is returned if no element is selected. If multiple options are selected, the index of the first selected option is returned. Upon modification, the display shall be affected. |
| size          | no       | unsigned long      | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs.   |

When a document is trying to access the value of the `options` attribute before the parsing of the contents of the `select` element is complete, the returned value shall be the collection of matching elements at the time of the call.

## 8.11.4.6.15 DVBHTMLTextAreaElement Interface

This interface represents a multiline text area. It refers to the `<textarea>` DVB-HTML tag.

## 8.11.4.6.15.1 IDL Definition

```
interface DVBHTMLTextArea : DVBHTMLFormElement {
    attribute DOMString accessKey;
    readonly attribute unsigned long cols; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    attribute DOMString defaultValue;
        // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    attribute boolean disabled; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute DVBHTMLFormElement form; // DVB-HTML Type coherence
    attribute DOMString name;
    attribute boolean readOnly // Extension to W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute unsigned long rows; // Diverge from W3C DOM HTML
    readonly attribute DOMString type;
    attribute DOMString value; // Extension to W3C DOM HTML

    void blur();
    void focus();
    void select();
}
```

The semantics of the attributes and methods associated with this interface are the same as the semantics associated with the `HTMLTextAreaElement` interface defined in [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 1 Specification \[97\]](#), with the extensions, restrictions or amendments defined in the following subsections.

## 8.11.4.6.15.2

## Attributes

Table 59 :

| Name         | ReadOnly | Type               | Description  |
|--------------|----------|--------------------|--|
| cols         | yes      | unsigned long      | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs and it has been moved to readonly.   |
| defaultValue | no       | DOMString          | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . The initial value (as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141) is initialised by the text inserted between the start and end tags of the element.  |
| disabled     | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . If set to true, the effects are the following :<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Textarea does not receive the focus.</li> <li>- Textarea is not included in the tabbing navigation.</li> <li>- Textarea is not successful.</li> </ul> Since the readOnly state is less restrictive than the disabled state, if the disabled attribute is set to true, the control evolves to the disabled state, independently of the readOnly attribute value. If the disabled attribute is set to false, the control will evolve to the readOnly state depending on the value of the readOnly attribute.<br>By default, the attribute value is FALSE. |
| form         | yes      | DVBHTMLFormElement | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs.   |
| readOnly     | no       | boolean            | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . If set to true and textarea is not in the disabled state, the effects are the following :<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Textarea receives the focus but cannot be modified by the user.</li> <li>- Textarea is included in the tabbing navigation.</li> <li>- Textarea is successful.</li> </ul> Since the readOnly state is less restrictive than the disabled state, if the readOnly attribute is set to true when the disabled attribute is equal to true, the control remains in the disabled state.<br>By default, the attribute value is FALSE.   |
| rows         | yes      | unsigned long      | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . Only the return type differs and it has been moved to readonly.   |
| value        | no       | DOMString          | As defined in <a href="#">Document Object Model (DOM) Level 1 Specification [97]</a> . The current value is as defined in section 8.11.4.3.2, "Initial and current values of form controls" on page 141.   |

## 8.11.5 DVB Exceptions

DOM operations may raise exceptions in "exceptional" circumstances. In general, DVB-HTML will raise exceptions defined by [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Core Specification \[96\]](#), however certain methods in DVB-HTML raise other exceptions under other circumstances.

In DVB-HTML the `DVBException` is defined, this is in addition to the `DOMException` of DOM 2 and defines additional error codes.

NOTE: The error codes defined for `DVBException` are defined so as not to clash with those defined for `DOMException`, however the W3C retains the right to define additional codes for `DOMException` which may conflict with `DVBException` in the future. To avoid conflicts the programmer may use typeof: the `DVBException`, as a host object, has a defined type different to that of `DOMException`.

### 8.11.5.1 DVBException

The value returned by the **typeof** operator for DVBException shall be "**dvbexception**".

#### 8.11.5.1.1 IDL Definition

```
exception DVBException {
  unsigned short code;
};

// ExceptionCode
// Introduced in DVB-HTML:
const unsigned short NON_CONFORMANT_ERR = 601;
const unsigned short SECURITY_VIOLATION_ERR = 602;
const unsigned short WINDOW_NOT_FOUND_ERR = 603;
const unsigned short SUBCLASS_NOT_ALLOWED_ERR = 604;
const unsigned short CONVERSION_TYPE_ERR = 605;
```

**ExceptionCode:** An integer indicating the type of error generated.

Other numeric codes are reserved by DVB for possible future use.

#### 8.11.5.1.2 Defined Constants

**NON\_CONFORMANT\_ERR:** An operation attempted to alter the DOM in such a way as would make the document non conformant.

**SECURITY\_VIOLATION\_ERR:** An operation failed because the application did not have sufficient permission to perform it.

**WINDOW\_NOT\_FOUND\_ERR:** The application attempted to open a window which was not part of the application.

**SUBCLASS\_NOT\_ALLOWED\_ERR:** The application attempted to subclass a final class.

**CONVERSION\_TYPE\_ERR:** The application attempted to subclass a final class.

## 8.11.6 Language bindings

### 8.11.6.1 ECMAScript Binding

See annex [AC](#), "(normative): ECMAScript Binding" on page 924.

### 8.11.6.2 Java Binding

See annex [AD](#), "(normative): Support for DVB-HTML" on page 937.

## 8.11.7 DVB Environment object module

A DOM application can use the `hasFeature` method of the DOM implementation interface to determine that this module is supported. The feature string for all interfaces listed in this module is "DVBEnvironment" and the version "2.0".

### 8.11.7.1 Free variables

DVB-HTML shall support ECMAScript access to certain APIs is through a number of variables, which get bound in each page context:

- `document`
- `navigator`
- `window`

Each DVB-HTML application shall see different Navigator, Document and Window objects, Only one Navigator object is created per application lifetime (therefore properties may be set on the Navigator object which persist for the lifetime of the application). The navigator variable is bound to this object in each page context.

Windows and Document are initialized on an as needed basis, Document is valid during and after parsing of the document and is bound to the variable document.

Each window is associated with a single document, there may be more than one extant window object per DVB-HTML application, however multiple window support is included only for frames. There shall be at most one top level window per DVB-HTML application (see [CSS 2 \[101\]](#)).

The window variable is initialized to the immediately containing window for a document.

## 8.11.7.2 Environmental host objects

### 8.11.7.2.1 Navigator Object

Represents the browser itself, the navigator free variable is of this type. This is supported in DVB-HTML with the following attributes and methods.

#### 8.11.7.2.1.1 IDL Definition

```
interface Navigator {
  readonly attribute String appCodeName;
  readonly attribute String appName;
  readonly attribute String appVersion;
  readonly attribute String userAgent;
};
```

#### 8.11.7.2.1.2 Attributes

**Table 60 : Navigator Object Attributes**

|             |          |   |
|-------------|----------|---|
| appCodeName | Readonly | Specifies the code name of the browser with the value specified in the BNF in <a href="#">8.13.1, "User agent strings" on page 168</a>          |
| appName     | Readonly | Specifies the name of the browser, the value shall be "DVB-HTML".   |
| appVersion  | Readonly | Specifies version information for the Navigator with the value specified in the BNF in <a href="#">8.13.1, "User agent strings" on page 168</a> |
| userAgent   | Readonly | Specifies the user agent header See <a href="#">8.13.1, "User agent strings" on page 168</a>  |

#### 8.11.7.2.2 Window object

Represents a top-level browser window or a frame. There is only one top-level window per DVB-HTML application, (i.e. whose parent is NULL). Other window objects in an application represent frames in a frameset.

The top level Window object of an application is created in the CSS initial containing block for the application. The viewport and containing block of the application are controlled by the stylesheet associated with the current document held by the top level Window object. Other Window objects are shaped by the frameset rules.

Window is supported in DVB-HTML with the following attributes and methods.

## 8.11.7.2.2.1 IDL Definition

```

interface Window {
  readonly attribute DVBHTMLDocument document;
  readonly attribute DOMImplementation implementation;
  readonly attribute DVBHTMLCollection frames;
  readonly attribute unsigned long length;
  attribute Location location;
  readonly attribute String name;
  readonly attribute Navigator navigator;
  readonly attribute Window parent;
  readonly attribute Window window;
  readonly attribute Window self;
  attribute String status;
  attribute String defaultStatus;
  readonly attribute Window top;
  void clearTimeout(in unsigned long timerId);
  Window open(in String url, in String name, in String features);
  unsigned long setTimeout(in String statement, in unsigned long delay);
}

```

## 8.11.7.2.2.2 Attributes

The following attributes are supported:

**Table 61 : Window Object Attributes (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Attribute      | Modifier  | Semantics  |
|----------------|-----------|--|
| closed         | Readonly  | Specifies whether a window has been closed.  |
| document       | Readonly  | Contains information on the current document. Returns an object of type DVBHTMLDocument.   |
| implementation | Readonly  | Supplies the method to bootstrap into the DOM interfaces.  |
| frames         | Readonly  | An array reflecting all the frames in a window containing documents from the current application. Frames that belong to another application shall not appear in the collection.  |
| location       | Readwrite | Contains information on the URL used to request the current document. Setting the value of window.location sets the href value of the window's associated location object, and causes the window to navigate to the URL. Note that the <b>requested</b> URL is stored in window.location and this may be different than the <b>actual</b> URL of the delivered document, which is stored in document.URL. If a string is used to set the location field, then it is converted to a Location. If the string is not a well formed URL, or the user agent is unable to navigate to it the location is unchanged. Setting this string to the "exit:" locator (see 8.16.5.2, "Exit locator" on page 187) shall cause termination as defined in 9.3.3.5, "Killed" on page 204. |
| name           | Readwrite | A unique name used to refer to this window.  |
| length         | Readonly  | the length of the frames collection  |
| parent         | Readonly  | Returns the Window whose frameset contains the current frame or NULL if the window is the outer most window. A frame may return NULL for this attribute for security reasons (see 8.14.3, "Inter application security" on page 177)  |
| status         | Readwrite | Specifies a priority or transient message in the window's status bar. (note it is not required this actually be displayed anywhere – but calling it must cause no harm)  |
| defaultStatus  | Readwrite | The default message for the status bar (note it is not required this actually be displayed anywhere – but calling it must cause no harm).  |



**Table 61 : Window Object Attributes (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Attribute | Modifier | Semantics  |
|-----------|----------|--|
| top       | Readonly | A synonym for the topmost browser window. The value of this attribute shall be NULL if the referenced frame is not available for security.   |
| self      | Readonly | Returns the current Window   |
| document  | Readonly | Returns the document instance the window is displaying. If the document is inaccessible due to security reasons (see 8.14.3, "Inter application security" on page 177) then shall return NULL. |
| navigator | Readonly | Returns the Navigator object for the application   |

## 8.11.7.2.2.3 Methods

The following methods are supported:

**Table 62 : Window open method**

| Method       | Name     | Description  |           |   |
|--------------|----------|--|-----------|---|
|              | open     | Sets the document of the specified window to a new resource                  |           |   |
| Parameters   | Name     | Type   | Qualifier | Description   |
|              | url      | String   | in        | The location of the document to display in the new window.    |
|              | name     | String   | in        | The target frame within the frameset or the top level window. |
|              | features | String   | in        | unused  |
| Return value | Type     | Description  |           |   |
|              | Window   | This method returns the Window object in which the document has been opened. |           |   |

:

**Table 63 : Window setTimeout method**

| Method       | Name          | Description   |           |  |
|--------------|---------------|---|-----------|--|
|              | setTimeout    | Evaluates an expression or calls a function once after a specified number of milliseconds has elapsed. When the document is replaced then all timeouts on the window are cleared. |           |  |
| Parameters   | Name          | Type  | Qualifier | Description  |
|              | statement     | String  | in        | The piece of ECMAScript to be evaluated.                                   |
|              | delay         | unsigned long   | in        | The length of time to wait before executing the statement in milliseconds. |
| Return value | Type          | Description   |           |  |
|              | unsigned long | This method returns a timerId that uniquely identifies the timer.   |           |  |

**Table 64 : Window clearTimeout method**

| Method       | Name         | Description  |           |   |
|--------------|--------------|--|-----------|---|
|              | clearTimeout | Cancels a timeout that was set with the setTimeout method. When the document is replaced then all timeouts on the window are cleared |           |   |
| Parameters   | Name         | Type   | Qualifier | Description   |
|              | timerId      | unsigned long  | in        | The id of the timer to clear as returned by setTimeout. |
| Return value | Type         | Description  |           |   |
|              | none         | This method does not return a value.   |           |   |

### 8.11.7.2.3 Location object.

A convenience element that parses URIs. Is used in the location field of the window object.

#### 8.11.7.2.3.1 IDL Definition

```
interface Location {
  attribute DOMString hash;
  attribute DOMString host;
  attribute DOMString hostname;
  attribute DOMString href;
  attribute DOMString pathname;
  attribute DOMString port;
  attribute DOMString protocol;
  attribute DOMString search;
};
```

#### 8.11.7.2.3.2 Attributes

**Table 65 : Location Object Attributes**

| Attribute | Modifier  | Semantics  |
|-----------|-----------|--|
| hash      | Readwrite | The portion of the URI after and including the '#' symbol                                  |
| host      | Readwrite | The hostname and port of the URI   |
| hostname  | Readwrite | The hostname (without the port) of the URI.  |
| href      | Readwrite | The complete URI.  |
| pathname  | Readwrite | The pathname portion of the URI.   |
| port      | Readwrite | The port of the URI.   |
| protocol  | Readwrite | The protocol portion of the URI.   |
| search    | Readwrite | The portion of the URI after and including the '?' symbol, not including the hash portion. |

## 8.11.8 CSS Support

### 8.11.8.1 DVB CSS DOM module

DVB-HTML does not require support for the DOM-2 CSS modules, however it does require support of the this simpler CSS module. A DOM application can use the hasFeature method of the DOM implementation interface to determine that this module is supported. The feature string for all interfaces listed in this module is "DVBCSS" and the version "2.0".

#### 8.11.8.1.1 DVBCSSInlineStyle

**DVBInlineStyle:** This interface shall be implemented by objects that implement the Element interface (see [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Core Specification \[96\]](#)), and which represent elements that support the style attribute.

A DVB-HTML user agent may support the DOM-2 CSS module, in which case this interface shall be replaced by `ElementCSSInlineStyle`, however in such a case the `CSS2Properties` interface shall also be implemented, and the object returned by the `style` attribute on `ElementCSSInlineStyle` shall also implement the `CSS2Properties` interface

#### 8.11.8.1.1.1 IDL Definition

```
// Introduced in MHP1.1:
interface DVBCSSInlineStyle {
  readonly attribute CSS2Properties style;
};
```

#### 8.11.8.1.1.2 Attributes

Style of type `CSS2Properties` as defined in section 2.3 of [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Style Specification \[99\]](#).

#### 8.11.8.1.2 DVBCSSStyle

**DVBCSSStyle:** This interface shall be implemented by objects that implement the `Element` interface (see [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Core Specification \[96\]](#)), that represent the root element of a document.

#### 8.11.8.1.2.1 IDL Definition

```
// Introduced in MHP1.1:
interface DVBCSSStyle {
  readonly attribute DVBCSSViewportRule viewport;
};
```

#### 8.11.8.1.2.2 Attributes

`viewport` of type `DVBCSSViewportRule`, If the document containing the element is not in a root window this attribute shall be `NULL`, if it is in the root window then this attribute shall return an object that implements the `DVBCSSViewportRule` interface.

#### 8.11.8.1.3 DVBCSSViewportRule

**DVBCSSViewportRule:** The `DVBCSSviewportRule` interface represents a `@viewport` rule within a CSS style sheet. The `@viewport` rule is used to specify the on screen regions and relationship to video of an DVB-HTML application.

#### 8.11.8.1.3.1 IDL Definition

```
// Introduced in MHP 1.1:
interface DVBCSSViewportRule : CSSRule {
  readonly attribute DVBCSSViewportProperties style;
};
```

#### 8.11.8.1.3.2 Attributes

**style:** of type `DVBCSSViewportProperties`, `readonly`. An object that represents all the properties of the active viewport.

#### 8.11.8.1.4 DVBCSSViewportProperties

**DVBCSSViewportProperties:** The `DVBCSSViewportProperties` interface represents a mechanism for retrieving and setting properties within a viewport. The attributes of this interface correspond to all the properties specified in [8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112](#).

#### 8.11.8.1.4.1 IDL Definition

```
// Introduced in MHP1.1:
interface DVBCSSViewportRule {
readonly attribute DOMString pseudoClass;
attribute DOMString area;
attribute DOMString[] backgroundVideoTransform;
attribute DOMString[] backgroundVideo;
attribute DOMString[] backgroundVideoPreserveAspect;
attribute DOMString[] backgroundVideoClip;
attribute DOMString[] backgroundVideoRectangle;
attribute DOMString background;
attribute DOMString backgroundImageRectangle;
attribute DOMString initial;
attribute Number verticalResolution;
attribute Number horizontalResolution;
attribute DOMString scene;
};
```

## 8.11.8.1.4.2

## Attributes

Table 66 : Location Object Attributes

| Attribute                     | Modifier  | Semantics  |
|-------------------------------|-----------|--|
| pseudoClass                   | Readonly  | See the pseudoClass property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: NO_MODIFICATION_ALLOWED_ERR: Raised on any attempt to set this property.                              |
| area                          | Readwrite | See the area property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable.                                   |
| backgroundVideoTransform      | Readwrite | See the backgroundVideoTransform property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1)      |
| backgroundVideo               | Readwrite | See the backgroundVideo property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1)               |
| backgroundVideoPreserveAspect | Readwrite | See the backgroundVideoPreserveAspect property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1) |
| backgroundVideoClip           | Readwrite | See the backgroundVideoClip property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1)           |
| backgroundVideoRectangle      | Readwrite | See the backgroundVideoRectangle property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1)      |
| background                    | Readwrite | See the background property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1)                    |
| backgroundImageRectangle      | Readwrite | See the backgroundImageRectangle property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable. (note 1)      |
| initial                       | Readwrite | See the initial property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable.                                |
| verticalResolution            | Readwrite | See the verticalResolution property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable.                     |
| horizontalResolution          | Readwrite | See the horizontalResolution property definition in 8.8.5.3.2, "The @dvb-viewport rule" on page 112. Exception: SYNTAX_ERR: Raised if the new value has a syntax error and is unparseable.                   |

NOTE 1: Note this attribute is an array of values, one for each defined background plane

## 8.12 Cookie support

### 8.12.1 DOM Cookie Interface

The cookie attribute of the document (see section 8.11.4.5.2, "DVBHTMLDocument Interface" on page 143) provides an interface to the set of attribute-value pairs described in IETF RFC 2109 [110].

The cookie attribute of document is a read/write string with the following behaviour:

- a) The attribute may be assigned a string value `set-cookie` obeying the following BNF, where ALPHA and DIGIT are as specified in IETF RFC 2616 [40]:

```
set-cookie= cookie
cookie= av-pair
      ["; expires=" [ rfc1123-date ] ]
      ["; path=" [ path ] ]
      ["; domain=" [ domain ] ]
      ["; secure" ]
      ["; dvb-scope=" [ dvb-scope ] ]
av-pair= attr [ "=" value ]
attr = 1*(ALPHA | DIGIT | aspecials)
aspecials= ( "!" | "#" | "$" | "&" | "'" | "*" | "+" | "-"
            | "." | "_" | "`" | "|" | "~" | "%" )

value = 1*(ALPHA | DIGIT | special | vspecials)
vspecials = "(" | ")" | "<" | ">" | "@" | "," | ":" | "\" | "<" | "/"
           | "[" | "]" | "?" | "=" | "{" | "}" | SP | HT

path = 1*(ALPHA | DIGIT | aspecials)
domain = 1*(ALPHA | DIGIT | aspecials)
dvb-scope = "App" | "Org" | "All"
```

- rfc1123-date is the subset of the IETF RFC 1123 [111] date format as specified in IETF RFC 2616 [40] (HTTP 1.1).

```
rfc1123-date = wkday " ", " SP date1 SP time " GMT"
wkday       = "Mon" | "Tue" | "Wed" | "Thu" | "Fri" | "Sat" | "Sun"
date1      = 2DIGIT SP month SP 4DIGIT
time       = 2DIGIT ":" 2DIGIT ":" 2DIGIT
month      = "Jan" | "Feb" | "Mar" | "Apr" | "May" | "Jun"
           | "Jul" | "Aug" | "Sep" | "Oct" | "Nov" | "Dec"
```

- b) If an expiration is not specified, the lifetime of the cookie is that of the DVB-HTML application.
- c) When read the attribute returns a string `get-cookie` consisting of the av-pairs for all cookies that have not expired and are within the scope of the current document.

```
get-cookie = av-pair *("; av-pair)
```

Note: If the same attribute is specified for multiple paths that apply to the current document, the attribute appears in multiple av-pairs.

Note: "%" is a legal character in values. As defined in IETF RFC 2109 [110] characters not allowed in values may be escaped using "% HEX HEX", there is no special handling of this escaping by the ECMAScript API.

### 8.12.2 Cookie Storage and Lifetime

#### 8.12.2.1 Cookie Storage Limits

An implementation should attempt to meet the minimum implementation limits of IETF RFC 2109 [110] including (although not necessarily simultaneously) at least 20 cookies of 4096 bytes. The size is the total required for the cookies and all attributes stored as strings.

### 8.12.2.2 Cookie Persistence

If the application requests permission for access to persistent storage, this is granted and persistent storage is available, an implementation should attempt to store cookies until they expire. If the application does not have permission for persistent storage or the storage is not available then cookies shall persist only for the lifetime of the DVB-HTML application.

### 8.12.2.3 Privacy Considerations

Notwithstanding any other requirements in this section, an implementation may provide mechanisms for controlling the extent of cookie support, including which, if any, cookies are stored, temporarily or persistently.

## 8.12.3 Cookie Scoping

### 8.12.3.1 General Rules

All cookies are scoped by dvb-scope. The dvb-scope limits cookies to being accessible by pages in applications of a particular organization (dvb-scope=Org), by pages with a particular Application Identifier (dvb-scope=App) or by pages within all applications (dvb-scope=All). When not specified, the dvb-scope defaults to App. Cookies of unsigned applications are always scoped to App. Cookies with different scoping are stored separately and reported separately both through the DOM and when transmitted to a server. Setting a cookie with the same scoping as an existing one causes the replacement of the existing one.

### 8.12.3.2 Documents delivered via DSM-CC Object Carousel

Cookies set via the DOM on pages delivered by DSM-CC carousel transport are never sent back to a server, even when http: URLs are within the application boundary. The domain, path and secure attributes are ignored for such cookies.

### 8.12.3.3 Documents delivered via HTTP transport

Cookies associated with pages delivered by http: shall be scoped by domain and path in addition to scoping by their dvb-scope. If the domain is specified, the cookie is only accessible to pages delivered from hosts within that domain. The default domain is the host name of the http server which delivered the page.

If the path is specified, the associated cookie is only accessible to pages in directories under that path.

Domain and path matching are performed per [IETF RFC 2109 \[110\]](#) with the exception that a host match is generated if either the domain string or the domain string with a period prepended to it would generate a match with the basic algorithm.

NOTE: the modified matching algorithm provides both domain compatibility with cookies whose domain is set from the DOM or from HTTP 1.0 or 1.1 servers that only support the protocol in [8.12.1, "DOM Cookie Interface" on page 166](#). In both cases, leading dots are frequently left off.

Setting a cookie with a domain or path for which the current page is out of scope has no effect and the cookie is discarded.

Cookies with the secure attribute specified shall only be sent over secure, HTTPS connections.

## 8.12.4 HTTP Cookie Support

### 8.12.4.1 Background

The [MHP profile of HTTP 1.0](#) profile allows both HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1 transport (see [6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62](#)). In order for cookie transport to work with existing HTTP 1.0 servers, support for "Netscape" cookie receipt is required. Cookie transmission can always be done with [IETF RFC 2109 \[110\]](#) format since most servers will consider the \$Version and \$Path attributes as unknown cookies and ignore them.

### 8.12.4.2 Sending Cookies

The client shall send cookies per [IETF RFC 2109 \[110\]](#) and for compatibility with older servers, DVB-HTML implementations should use semi-colons to separate cookies rather than commas (both are allowed by [IETF RFC 2109 \[110\]](#)). Only cookies in the scope of the document, including any dvb-scope restrictions, are sent.

The client shall accept cookies via a Set-Cookie header in the HTTP response. The format of the contents of that header may be either in [IETF RFC 2109 \[110\]](#) format or in that specified by the set-cookie BNF from the DOM description above ([8.12.1, "DOM Cookie Interface" on page 166](#)).

### 8.12.4.3 Receiving Cookies

The client shall accept cookies via a Set-Cookie header in the HTTP response. The format of the contents of that header may be either in [IETF RFC 2109 \[110\]](#) format or in "Netscape" cookie format, where Netscape format is that specified by the set-cookie BNF from the DOM description above.

## 8.13 HTTP User Agent String Support

Requests from the DVB-HTML user agent shall include an HTTP header of the form:

User-Agent: <user-agent>

where <user-agent> is the DVB-HTML user agent string.

### 8.13.1 User agent strings

#### 8.13.1.1 Current user agent-related strings

Current examples (from the internet) of the user agent string are shown in the following table.

**Table 67 : Internet user agent string examples**

| Field       | Netscape Navigator          | Internet Explorer on Win2K                          |
|-------------|-----------------------------|---|
| userAgent   | Mozilla/4.7 [en] (WinNT; U) | Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 5.01; Windows NT 5.0) |
| appCodeName | Mozilla                     | Mozilla   |
| appVersion  | 4.7 [en] (WinNT; U)         | 4.0 (compatible; MSIE 5.01; Windows NT)             |
| appName     | Netscape                    | Internet Explorer                                   |

The last three of these appear as properties on the navigator object. The properties `appCodeName` and `appVersion` are derived from the user agent string as reflected in the BNF. The user agent string generally has the BNF format. The `appName` is independent of the user agent string and its value shall always be "DVB-HTML" (see [8.11.7.2.1, "Navigator Object" on page 159](#)).

#### 8.13.1.2 User agent string BNF

Adopting "Mozilla" as the `appCodeName` provides no interoperability benefit, and in fact would be incorrect as the DVB HTML user agent is not required to be Mozilla compliant. In general, the user agent string is best kept short, since it is sent with every HTTP request, hence it is reasonable to use abbreviations where appropriate.

The following BNF illustrates the user agent string that should be used:

```

userAgent ::= appCodeName "/" appVersion
appCodeName ::= "DVB-HTML"
appVersion ::= appVersionNumber " (" identifiers ")"
appVersionNumber ::= major "." minor "." micro
major ::= [0-9]+
minor ::= [0-9]+
micro ::= [0-9]+
identifiers ::= [ profileIdentifier ]+ [ ";" " mhpIdentifier ]*
profileIdentifier ::= profileName " " major "." minor "." micro
profileName ::= "eb" | "ib" | "ia"
mhpIdentifier ::= [^;()]+

```



The syntax for the `major`, `minor` and `micro` elements are equal to the properties with the same names defined in 11.9.3, "Profile and version properties" on page 284. The values for these properties are specified in 16.1, "System constants" on page 387. `mhpIdentifiers` may be used to indicate optional features in the MHP implementation.

For example:

```
DVB-HTML/1.1.0 (eb 1.1.0; ipm)
```

Indicates an enhanced broadcast profile, with optional ip multicast support.

## 8.14 Security of DVB-HTML applications

### 8.14.1 Authentication of DVB-HTML files

DVB-HTML is subject to the same security model as DVB-J applications, that is a permissions file is associated with authenticated applications; unauthenticated applications operate within a sandbox environment, which means certain forms of locators will not operate, and certain APIs will not be available to ECMAScript.

Authenticated applications may be granted permission to use the restricted locators and APIs.

User Agents shall interpreting signed applications shall only make available the following file types to that application if they are signed by the same leaf certificate:

- DVB-HTML
- ECMAScript
- CSS
- Inner application files (for DVB-J class files see 11.2.3, "Class Loading" on page 249)

Locators that are disabled due to security restrictions will behave as if the resource pointed to is unavailable.

ECMAScript API calls that fail due to security restrictions will generate the `DVBException` with the error code `SECURITY_VIOLATION_ERR`.

### 8.14.2 Runtime code extension

#### 8.14.2.1 Security principles

In order to address the security issues that arise with runtime code extension:

- a) ECMAScript platforms shall permit the use of any of the ECMAScript runtime code extension techniques listed below for unauthenticated applications or authenticated applications running in the sandbox
- b) ECMAScript platforms shall permit the restricted use of runtime code extension techniques for authenticated applications running outside of the sandbox, where by restricted use is meant that the input to runtime code extension derives only from an appropriately authenticated source (see "Extensions to ECMAScript for trusted executable code" on page 170)
- c) ECMAScript platforms shall not permit the removal of pre-defined properties of host objects;
- d) ECMAScript platforms shall not permit the replacement of a pre-defined function property of a host object.

##### 8.14.2.1.1 Uses of runtime code extension in ECMAScript

The ECMAScript language supports runtime code extension by means of the following separate mechanisms:

- the `eval()` function property of the global object;
- the `Function` object.

In addition, the following mechanisms support runtime code extension through the following host object (platform) facilities:

- the `write()` function property of the DVB-HTML Document host object.
- the `setTimeout(in String statement, in unsigned long delay)` function property of the Window object.

The rules covering runtime code extension are detailed in [8.14.2.4, "Use of strings in RCEs" on page 176](#)

### 8.14.2.2 Extensions to ECMAScript for trusted executable code

This section details DVB specific mechanisms to allow Runtime Code Extension (RCE) features specified by the ECMAScript language specification and the allowed DOM APIs to be used without compromising security. In DVB-HTML additional mechanisms that keep track of the origin of strings in the system and disallow the potentially dangerous use in RCEs by privileged applications of strings from unverified external sources.

#### 8.14.2.2.1 Propagation of Internal (safe) vs. External (unsafe) strings

This approach to providing security for the use of ECMAScript maintains application compatibility by distinguishing between value of an internal string type, a string value coming from within the ECMAScript language or literal strings within the application, and an external string type, a string value coming from (suspect) host-based objects. Both string values appear to content as ordinary ECMAScript string values to improve compatibility with the behaviour of DVB-HTML content in standard Internet browsers. This is accomplished by modifying the ECMAScript language specification to split the string type into two internal subtypes: *internal-string* and *external-string*. The difference between these subtypes is not visible to the application programmer, except in so far as a security exception may be thrown as a result of the use of some strings in an RCE.

This approach has the advantage of maintaining content compatibility with ECMAScript content written for existing browsers and to the W3C and ECMA specifications. In particular,

- a) It allows DVB-HTML to conform to the W3C specified DOM APIs by allowing them to return values of type String rather than of type String Object.
- b) It minimizes any increase in the runtime data footprint of ECMAScript applications by allowing the continued use of the much more compact String type, rather than String Object.
- c) It minimizes any implementation change for DOM bindings between a W3C-complaint version and a DVB-HTML compliant version, since both can return String types.
- d) It eliminates compatibility problems that would otherwise require changing core ECMAScript behaviour if String Objects were used (e.g. that two different instances of an object never test true for equality).
- e) It allows finer-grained propagation of unsafe typing, since every string entity in the ECMAScript runtime would be tagged as safe (internal) or unsafe (external).

#### 8.14.2.2.2 Modifying ECMA-262 to support Internal and External strings

This section normatively specifies modifications to [ECMAScript \[95\]](#) to differentiate the two kinds of string values.

This document uses the editing convention that additions to [ECMAScript \[95\]](#) are given in *italics*. Text that is removed is presented as ~~strike-out~~. When a change is made, the old text is given as ~~strike-out~~ and the new version in *italics*. The bold and bold-italics font faces are preserved from the ECMAScript standard document.

Change the last sentence of the second paragraph of section 4.2 to read:

A primitive value is a member of one of the following built-in types: **Undefined, Null, Boolean, Number, and String** *Internal-String, and External-String*; an object is a member of the remaining built-in type **Object**; and a method is a function associated with an object via a property. *The term String type is used when either of the types Internal-String or External-String is acceptable. The term String value is used when a value of either of the types Internal-String or External-String is acceptable.*

Change the first sentence of the first paragraph of section 4.3.2 to read:

A *primitive value* is a member of one of the types **Undefined**, **Null**, **Boolean**, **Number**, and **String**, *Internal-String*, and *External-String*.

Change sections 4.3.16 through 4.3.18 to read:

#### **4.3.16 String Value** *String, Internal-String, and External-String Values*

##### *4.3.16.1 String Value*

A *string value* is a member of the type **String** and either a member of the type *Internal-String* or a member of the type *External-String*. It is a finite ordered sequence of zero or more 16-bit unsigned integer values.

NOTE: Although each value usually represents a single 16-bit unit of UTF-16 text, the language does not place any restrictions or requirements on the values other than that they be 16-bit unsigned integers.

##### *4.3.16.2 Internal-String Value*

An internal-string value is a member of the type *Internal-String*. See section 4.3.16.1 for details.

##### *4.3.16.3 External-String Value*

An external-string value is a member of the type *External-String*. See section 4.3.16.1 for details.

#### **4.3.17 String Type** *String, Internal-String, and External-String Types*

##### *4.3.17.1 String Type*

The type **String** is the set of all string values.

##### *4.3.17.2 Internal-String Type*

The type *Internal-String* is the set of all internal-string values.

##### *4.3.17.3 External-String Type*

The type *External-String* is the set of all external-string values.

In section 4.8.4, change the second paragraph after the BNF to read:

A string literal stands for a value of the *String Internal-String* type. The *string internal-string* value (SV) of the literal is described in terms of the character values (CV) contributed by the various parts of the string literal. As part of this process, some characters within the string literal are interpreted as having a mathematical value (MV), as described below or in section 7.8.3.

Change the first line of Section 8.4 to read:

#### **8.4 The String Type** *Internal-String and External-String Types*

Insert the following immediately before section 8.5:

##### *8.4.1 The Internal-String Type*

The *Internal-String* type is used for strings that originate purely from string literals within an ECMAScript program, from conversions of non-external-string types to a string type, and from the methods of built-in objects other than *String* object. The methods of the *String* object will return either *Internal-String* or *External-String* values, depending on the type of the string used to initialize the *String* object.

##### *8.4.2 The External-String Type*

The *External-String* type is used for strings that are returned from host objects.

In section 9.1, change the table row for Input Type String into the following two table rows:

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <del>String</del> Internal-String | The result equals the input argument (no conversion) |
| External-String                   | The result equals the input argument (no conversion) |

In section 9.2, change the table row for Input Type String into the following two table rows:

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <del>String</del> Internal-String | The result is <b>false</b> if the argument is the empty string (its length is zero); otherwise the result is <b>true</b> . |
| External-String                   | The result is false if the argument is the empty string (its length is zero); otherwise the result is true.                |

In section 9.3, change the table row for Input Type String into the following two table rows:

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <del>String</del> Internal-String | See grammar and note below. |
| External-String                   | See grammar and note below. |

Change the first line of section 9.3.1 to read:

### 9.3.1 ToNumber Applied to the ~~String-Type~~ Internal-String and External-String Types

In section 9.8, change the table to read:

| Input Type                        | Result   |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Undefined                         | <i>the Internal-String value "undefined"</i>   |
| Null                              | <i>The Internal-String value "null"</i>  |
| Boolean                           | If the argument is <b>true</b> , then the result is <i>the Internal-String value "true"</i> .<br><br>If the argument is <b>false</b> , then the result is <i>the Internal-String value "false"</i> |
| Number                            | See note below   |
| <del>String</del> Internal-String | Return the input argument (no conversion)  |
| External-String                   | Return the input argument (no conversion)  |
| Object                            | Apply the following steps:<br><br>Call ToPrimitive(input argument, hint String).<br>Call ToString(Result(1)).<br>Return Result(2).   |

Change the first paragraph under section 9.8.1 to read:

The operator ToString converts a number m to ~~string-format~~ *an internal-string value* as follows:

Immediately before section 10, insert:

#### 9.10 ToInternalString

The operator ToInternalString converts its argument to a value of type Internal-String according to the following table:

| Input Type | Result                                |
|------------|---------------------------------------|
| Undefined  | the Internal-String value "undefined" |
| Null       | The Internal-String value "null"      |

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| Boolean         | If the argument is true, then the result is the Internal-String value "true".<br><br>If the argument is false, then the result is the Internal-String value "false"  |
| Number          | See note in section 9.8  |
| Internal-String | Return the input argument (no conversion)  |
| External-String | if CanConvertToInternal(argument) returns true, then the result is an internal string with the same sequence of (16-bit) character values.<br><br>Otherwise, throw SecurityError.                                      |
| Object          | Apply the following steps:<br><br>Call ToPrimitive(input argument, hint String).<br>Call ToString(Result(1)).<br>If CanConvertToInternal(Result(2)) returns true, return Result(2).<br>Otherwise, throw SecurityError. |

The operator CanConvertToInternal is implemented so as to return false if the ECMAScript is being executed in a trusted context and no permissions have been granted to the context to convert external strings to internal strings. In all other cases, the operator CanConvertToInternal will return true.

Change section 10.1.2 to read:

There are three types of ECMAScript executable code:

- Global code is source text that is treated as an ECMAScript Program. The global code of a particular Program does not include any source text that is parsed as part of a FunctionBody.
- Eval code is the source text supplied to the built-in **eval** function. More precisely, if the parameter to the built-in **eval** function is ~~a string~~ *an internal-string*, it is treated as an ECMAScript Program. The eval code for a particular invocation of **eval** is the global code portion of the ~~string~~ *internal-string* parameter.
- Function code is source text that is parsed as part of a FunctionBody. The function code of a particular FunctionBody does not include any source text that is parsed as part of a nested FunctionBody. Function code also denotes the source text supplied when using the built-in **Function** object as a constructor. More precisely, the last parameter provided to the **Function** constructor is converted to ~~a string~~ *an internal-string* and treated as the FunctionBody. If more than one parameter is provided to the **Function** constructor, all parameters except the last one are converted to strings and concatenated together, separated by commas. The resulting string is interpreted as the FormalParameterList for the FunctionBody defined by the last parameter. The function code for a particular instantiation of a **Function** does not include any source text that is parsed as part of a nested FunctionBody.

In section 11.4.3, change the single table row for Type String into the following two table rows:

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| <del>String</del> <i>Internal-String</i> | "string" |
| External-String                          | "string" |

In section 11.6.1, change steps 14 and 15 to read:

~~14. Concatenate Result(12) followed by Result(13).~~

~~15. Result Result(14)~~

14. If Result(12) is of type *internal-string* and Result(13) is of type *external-string*, use a string value with the same sequence of characters as Result(12) but of type *external-string*. Otherwise use Result(12).

15. If Result(12) is of type *external-string* and Result(13) is of type *internal-string*, use a string value with the same sequence of characters as Result(13) but of type *external-string*. Otherwise use Result(13).

16. Concatenate Result(14) followed by Result(15). The string type is the same as that of Result(14).

17. Return Result(16).

Append the following paragraph at the end of Section 12.6.4:

Property names are maintained as internal-strings or external-strings depending on the source of the property name. Property names are returned as internal-strings unless the property name was set from an external string, in which case it is returned as an external string.

Change step 1 under section 15.1.2.1 to read:

1. If x is not a string value, return x. *If x is an external-string value and CanConvertToInternal(x) returns false, throw the exception SecurityError.*

In section 15.1.3, change step 4 in the procedure for the hidden function Encode to read:

4. If k equals Result(1), return ~~R~~ *a string with the same sequences of characters as R and the same (internal-string vs external-string) type as the input string.*

In section 15.1.3, change step 4 in the procedure for the hidden function Decode to read:

4. If k equals Result(1), return ~~R~~ *a string with the same sequences of characters as R and the same (internal-string vs external-string) type as the input string.*

In section 15.2.4.2, change step 2 to read:

2. Compute ~~a string~~ *an internal-string* value by concatenating the three strings "**object**", Result(1), and "]"

In section 15.3.2.1, change step 13 to read:

13. Call ~~ToString~~ *ToInternalString*(body)

In section 15.4.4.3, change step 14 to read:

Let R be a string value produced by concatenating S and Result(13). *The type of R is external-string if the type of either S or Result(13) is external-string. Otherwise, the type of R is internal-string.*

In section 15.4.4.5, change step 11 to read:

Let S be a string value produced by concatenating R and Result(4). *The type of S is external-string if the type of either R or Result(4) is external-string. Otherwise, the type of S is internal-string.*

In section 15.4.4.5, change step 14 to read:

Let R be a string value produced by concatenating S and Result(13). *The type of R is external-string if the type of either S or Result(13) is external-string. Otherwise, the type of R is internal-string.*

Change the first sentence of section 15.5.3.2 to read:

Return ~~a string~~ *an external-string* value containing as many characters as the number of arguments.

Add the following sentence to the end of the first paragraph in section 15.5.4.2 and to the first paragraph in section 15.5.4.3:

*Return the value as an external-string if the String object was constructed with a value that converted to an external-string. Return the value as an internal-string if the String object was constructed with a value that converted to an internal-string.*

Add the following sentence after the first paragraph of section 15.5.4.4 to read:

*Returns an external-string, if the type of the result of ToString is external-string. Otherwise, the returned string is an internal-string.*

Change step 5 in section 15.5.4.6 to read:

Let R be the string value consisting of the characters in the previous value of R followed by the characters Result(4). *If either the previous value of R or Result(4) is of type external-string, give R type external-string. Otherwise give R type internal-string.*

Insert the following paragraph just before the NOTE in section 15.5.4.1:

*If either the result of converting this to a string is of type external-string or the replaceValue converted to a string is of type external-string or the function replaceValue returns a value of type external-string, then the newstring has type external-string. In all other cases, the newstring has type internal-string.*

In section 15.5.4.13 to read, change step 8 to read:

8. Return a string containing Result(7) consecutive characters from Result(1) beginning with the character at position Result(5). *The type of the returned string is external-string if the type of Result(1) is external-string. The type of the returned string is internal-string if the type of Result(1) is internal-string.*

In section 15.5.4.14, change step 16 to read:

16. Let T be a string value equal to the substring of S consisting of the characters at positions p (inclusive) through q (exclusive). *Let the type of T (internal-string versus external-string) be the same as the type of S.*

In section 15.5.4.14, change step 28 to read:

28. Let T be a string value equal to the substring of S consisting of the characters at positions p (inclusive) through q (exclusive). *Let the type of T (internal-string versus external-string) be the same as the type of S.*

In section 15.5.4.15, append the following to the end of step 9:

*Let the type of the returned string (internal-string versus external-string) be the same as that of Result(1).*

In section 15.5.4.16, insert the following paragraph before NOTE1:

The result string's type (internal-string vs external-string) is the same as that of the string computed by converting the object to a string.

In sections 15.9.5.2 through 15.9.5.7, change the first sentence of the first paragraph in each section to read:

This function returns ~~a string~~ *an internal-string* value.

In section 15.10.6.2, append the following at the end section::

*The type of the resulting string (internal-string vs external-string) is the same as that of the string argument.*

In section 15.10.6.4, append the following at the end of the second paragraph:

The returned string is of type internal-string if source is an internal-string. The returned string is of type external-string if source is an external-string.

Insert the following immediately after Section 15.1.6.6:

#### 15.1.6.7 SecurityError

Indicates that an authorized attempt was made to convert an external-string into an internal-string within the context of trusted ECMAScript.

### 8.14.2.3 Sources of Unsafe (external) strings

#### 8.14.2.3.1 Sources within ECMAScript

As specified in the previous section the following sources of unsafe strings within the language itself shall be typed as external strings:

- a) Strings resulting from operations on external-strings
- b) `String.fromCharCode`, which converts a character code into a string.

#### 8.14.2.3.2 Sources from Host Objects

All strings returned by Host Object APIs defined as part of this specification shall be typed as external strings.

All strings returned by the Bridge shall be typed as external strings.

Any Host Object APIs provided by a platform beyond those required in this specification should return external strings unless the result is known to be secure.

### 8.14.2.4 Use of strings in RCEs

An attempt to use an external string or a String Object containing an external string in a runtime code extension shall cause the `DVBException` with the error code `SECURITY_VIOLATION_ERR` to be raised.

An attempt to use an internal string or a String Object containing an internal string in a runtime code extension shall not cause the `DVBException` with the error code `SECURITY_VIOLATION_ERR` to be raised.

If the permission request file requests the permission to do privileged runtime code extension and this is granted for external strings then use of an external string or a String Object containing an external string in a runtime code extension shall be considered use of an internal string or a String Object containing an internal string.

If no permission to do privileged runtime code extension is granted then any attempt to use an internal or external string or a String Object containing an internal or external string in a runtime code extension shall be considered use of an external string.

If the permission request file requests the permission to do privileged runtime code extension and this is granted for internal strings only then use of external and internal strings retain their type.

The following uses of a string shall be considered runtime code extensions:

A string:

- a) passed to `eval()`
- b) passed to the constructor of a `Function()` object
- c) passed to `document.write()`
- d) used to set an event handler.

The exception occurs when an external-string is associated with the event handler either by setting a handler attribute of an element in the document or by parenting

- e) used as the code in a script element.

The setting of a `<script>` element text or `src` attribute in a displayed document shall not cause the new text to be incorporated into the ECMAScript context for the document. Therefore this is not strictly runtime code exception. However modification of script nodes is disallowed in this specification. The exception occurs when the external-string is associated with the script element either by parenting to a script element a node containing an external-string (e.g. by `Node::insertBefore()`, `Node::appendChild()`, `Node::replaceChild()`) or by setting the `nodeValue` of a `TextNode` or a `CDATASection` child of a script element to an external string.

- f) used in `window.setTimeout()`



### 8.14.2.5 Mutation of Host Objects

Any attempt to remove or replace the pre-defined properties of a host object shall cause the [DVBException](#) with the error code [SECURITY\\_VIOLATION\\_ERR](#) to be raised.

Any attempt to remove or replace the pre-defined function property of a host object shall cause the [DVBException](#) with the error code [SECURITY\\_VIOLATION\\_ERR](#) to be raised.

## 8.14.3 Inter application security

### 8.14.3.1 Restrictions on DOM elements introduced for security

No access is provided to documents from other applications.

The property accessor on the window and document host objects shall restrict access to properties and functions of those objects when the document context in which the access is executed is from a different DVB-HTML application or from a different domain than the document in the window:

- For such contexts, the window accessor shall only allow the assignment of a string to the location property: setting any other window property or getting any window property shall throw an exception.
- For such contexts, the document accessor shall not allow any access: setting or getting any document property shall throw an exception.

The exception that is thrown shall be the appropriate exception as if an attempt to access a resource for which the caller did not have permission were made:

- in the Java binding (see annex [AD.1](#), "[Java bindings to DVB extensions](#)" on page 937) a [SecurityException](#) shall be thrown
- in the ECMAScript binding (see annex [AC](#), "[\(normative\): ECMAScript Binding](#)" on page 924) when a security exception is raised, the [DVBException](#) with the error code [SECURITY\\_VIOLATION\\_ERR](#) is raised.

If a new application is started in a frame, then a new Window object is created to represent the frame. The parent of this window is the window that represents the frame from the calling applications perspective. This parent property however is not visible to the application within the frame. Therefore both applications have a window object that controls the frame, but no communication is possible between them. Access to properties, methods, and variables involving Window objects are restricted to windows that are displaying documents from the same application and from the same domain (see [8.16.6](#), "[Domain](#)" on page 187).

Where an application within a frame terminates prior to the application which contains the frameset that hosts the frame for that application, then the latter application shall receive the DVB lifecycle event "[AppTerminating](#)" (see "[Lifecycle events](#)" on page 134).

The user agent shall set the content of the frame that contained the terminating application to a blank document. and the URL and Location property shall be set to the null string prior to sending the "[AppTerminating](#)" event.

Where an outer application terminates with a frameset which contains one or more embedded applications in frames, then the applications in those frames shall also be terminated. This shall apply even in the case where the application within the sub frame would survive service selection but the outer application will not.

## 8.15 DVB-HTML permissions

This section explains how the permissions that define the sandbox and are available to unsigned applications and the permissions that can be requested in the permission request file are mapped to the DVB-HTML application model. ADVB-HTML application has the following ways of accessing beyond the sandbox.

- Following embedded links in the page can cause the loading of new resources.
- Script may access APIs over the Java Bridge.

c) Properties in the host objects available to script may access resources.

The location attribute of the Window object.

The open() Function attribute of the Window object.

d) url() references in CSS attributes

In case c) setting of attributes via the DOM interfaces is handled only when the attribute is used, and in this case the restrictions of case a) are applied.

In some cases a permission is only relevant to APIs reached via the Java Bridge

## 8.15.1 Permissions for unsigned applications

The MHP security policy includes a set of resources that are always guaranteed to be granted to applications, if the application is executed. Unsigned applications have access to only these resources.

This section defines the mapping of those resources to DVB-HTML applications. DVB-HTML applications shall always be granted the necessary Permission.

### 8.15.1.1 java.awt.AWTPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.1.1, "java.awt.AWTPermission" on page 287](#).

### 8.15.1.2 java.net.SocketPermission:

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.1.2, "java.net.SocketPermission:" on page 287](#).

### 8.15.1.3 java.util.PropertyPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.1.3, "java.util.PropertyPermission" on page 287](#).

### 8.15.1.4 java.lang.RuntimePermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.1.4, "java.lang.RuntimePermission" on page 287](#).

### 8.15.1.5 java.io.SerializablePermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.1.5, "java.io.SerializablePermission" on page 287](#).

### 8.15.1.6 java.io.FilePermission

Permission to read resources for the sub-tree under which the implementation mounts the object carousels shall be granted. For APIs accessed via the, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.1.6, "java.io.FilePermission" on page 287](#).

The location attribute of the Window object may be set to a resource in the sub-tree under which the implementation mounts the object carousels using a URL with the "dvb:" protocol.

The open() Function attribute of the Window object may be called with reference to a resource in the sub-tree under which the implementation mounts the object carousels using a URL with the "dvb:" protocol.

DVB HTML can read resources for the sub-tree under which the implementation mounts the object carousels using the dvb: protocol in a URL in the following element attributes:

- a.href
- area.href
- base.href
- blockquote.cite
- frame.longdesc
- frame.src
- iframe.longdesc
- iframe.src
- img.src
- img.longdesc
- img.usemap
- input.src
- input.usemap
- link.href
- object.archive
- object.classid
- object.codebase
- object.data
- object.usemap
- q.cite
- script.src
- Using the CSS url() value

Using a "dvb:" locator that references a resource in the Carousel on other element attributes is undefined.

#### 8.15.1.7 javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.1.7, "[javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission](#)" on page 287.

#### 8.15.1.8 javax.tv.service.ReadPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.1.8, "[javax.tv.service.ReadPermission](#)" on page 287.

#### 8.15.1.9 javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.1.9, "[javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission](#)" on page 287.

### 8.15.1.10 java.util.Locale.setDefault

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.1.10, "java.util.Locale.setDefault" on page 288.

### 8.15.1.11 org.dvb.security.PrivilegedRCEPermission

Unsigned applications are granted PrivilegedRCEPermission("external"), see "Use of strings in RCEs".

## 8.15.2 Additional Permissions for signed applications

Signed applications can additionally request to get more permissions. These permissions are requested using the permission request file (12.6, "Security policy for applications" on page 314). This section defines the mapping from the items in the permission request file to the permissions that may be granted by the MHP terminal in response to the request. And how this affects the DVB-HTML application

In the case of org.dvb.security.PrivilegedRCEPermission only, signed applications with a permission request file can request permission that is more restrictive than that granted to applications without a permission request file.

### 8.15.2.1 java.util.PropertyPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.1, "java.util.PropertyPermission" on page 288.

### 8.15.2.2 java.io.FilePermission

A signed application has the rights of an unsigned application, in addition when the permission request file requests the permission to access persistent storage and this is granted, read and write access to the persistent storage directory subtree is allowed.

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.2, "java.io.FilePermission" on page 288.

If the permission is granted, the location attribute of the Window object may be set to a resource in the persistent file store using a URL with the "file:" protocol. If the permission is not granted then attempting to set this attribute with such a locator will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

If the permission is granted, the open() Function attribute of the Window object may be called with reference to a resource in the persistent file store using a URL with the "file:" protocol. If the permission is not granted then calling open() with such a locator will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

DVB HTML can read the persistent file store using the file: protocol in a URL in the following element attributes:

- a.href
- area.href
- base.href
- blockquote.cite
- frame.longdesc
- frame.src
- iframe.longdesc
- iframe.src
- img.src
- img.longdesc
- img.usemap
- input.src
- input.usemap
- link.href
- object.archive
- object.classid
- object.codebase
- object.data
- object.usemap
- q.cite
- script.src
- Using the CSS url() value

If the file permission is not granted, all "file:" references shall fail as if the referenced resource was not available.

Using a "file:" locator that references a resource in the persistent store on other element attributes is undefined.

When there is a persistent file credential in the permission request file and this is granted, other files are made available as follows:

- file path = root directory of the persistent storage + filename from the credential
- action = string containing "read" and/or "write" as indicated in the credential

### 8.15.2.3 org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.3, "[org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission](#)" on page 288.

### 8.15.2.4 org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.4, "[org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission](#)" on page 288.

If the permission is granted, the location attribute of the Window object may be set to launch a DVB-HTML application in a sub-window by using a locator which references another DVB-HTML application. If the permission is not granted or the locator points to an application of a type which is not embeddable in a frame then attempting to set this attribute with such a locator will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

If the permission is granted, the open() Function attribute of the Window object may be called with reference to a resource that launches a DVB-HTML application in a sub-window by using a locator which references another DVB-HTML application. If the permission is not granted or the locator points to an application of a type which is not embeddable in a frame then calling the open() with such a locator will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

DVB-HTML applications can, if granted this permission, launch applications using locators that reference other applications (see 9.3.1.4, "Application boundary" on page 199 and 9.2.1, "Starting DVB-J Applications" on page 192) using the attributes on elements below:

- a.href
- area.href

If the application is not granted the permission then these links will fail as if the resource was not available.

Using a locator that references an application on other element attributes is not required to be supported.

#### 8.15.2.5 org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.5, "org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission" on page 289.

If the permission is granted for the default ISP, setting the location attribute of the Window object using locators that would require creating a return channel link may establish the link required to access the resource. If the permission is not granted then attempting to set this attribute with such a locator will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

If the permission is granted for the default ISP, using the open() Function attribute of the Window object using locators that would require creating a return channel link may establish the link required to access the resource. If the permission is not granted then calling open() with such a locator will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

DVB-HTML applications can, if granted this permission for the default ISP establish the link required to reference resources in any element attribute that allows references when using locators that would require creating a return channel link.

If the permission is not granted, the link will not be established and the link will fail as if the resource did not exist.

#### 8.15.2.6 org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.6, "org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission" on page 289.

Setting the location attribute of the Window object using locators that reference an audio or video stream will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

Calling the open() Function attribute of the Window object using locators that reference an audio or video stream will cause a SecurityException to be thrown.

DVB-HTML applications can, if granted this permission, reference audio and video resources that require tuning using dvb: locators on the following element attributes:

- img.src
- input.src
- object.data
- Using the CSS url() value

If the permission is not granted, no tuning will occur and the link will fail as if the resource did not exist.

Using a "dvb:" locator that references an audio or video resources on other element attributes is not required to be supported.

#### 8.15.2.7 `javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission`

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.2.7, "javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission" on page 289](#).

Setting the location attribute of the Window object using locators that references a DVB service will cause a `SecurityException` to be thrown.

Calling the `open()` Function attribute of the Window object using locators that references a DVB service will cause a `SecurityException` to be thrown.

Applications can, if granted this permission, select away from the current service to a new service using `dvb:` locators that reference a DVB service on the following element attributes:

- `a.href`
- `area.href`

If the permission is not granted, no service selection will occur and the link will fail as if the resource did not exist.

Using a "dvb:" locator that references a DVB service on other element attributes is not required to be supported.

#### 8.15.2.8 `org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission`

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.2.8, "org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission" on page 289](#).

#### 8.15.2.9 `java.net.SocketPermission`

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.2.9, "java.net.SocketPermission" on page 289](#).

If the permission is granted (and if necessary the `rc` permission), the location attribute of the Window object may be set to a locator that references a resource on the host named in the permission file. If the permission is not granted then attempting to set this attribute with such a locator will cause a `SecurityException` to be thrown.

If the permission is granted (and if necessary the `rc` permission), the `open()` Function attribute of the Window object may be called with locator that references a resource on the host named in the permission file. If the permission is not granted then calling `open()` with such a locator will cause a `SecurityException` to be thrown.

DVB-HTML applications can, if granted this permission (and if necessary the `rc` permission), reference resources in any element attribute that allows such references using locators to resources on the host named in the permission file.

If the permission is not granted the link will fail as if the resource did not exist.

#### 8.15.2.10 `org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission`

This Permission is relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see [11.10.2.10, "org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission" on page 289](#).

Setting the location attribute of the Window object using locators that reference a dripfeed resource will cause a `SecurityException` to be thrown.

Calling the `open()` Function attribute of the Window object using locators that reference dripfeed resources will cause a `SecurityException` to be thrown.

DVB-HTML applications can, if granted this permission, reference dripfeed resources using dripfeed: locators on the following element attributes:

- img.src
- input.src
- object.data
- Using the CSS url() value

If the permission is not granted, the link will fail as if the resource did not exist.

Using a "dripfeed:" locator on other element attributes is not required to be supported.

### 8.15.2.11 org.dvb.security.PrivilegedRCEPermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to do privileged runtime code extension on internal strings and this is granted, a PrivilegedRCEPermission with the name "internal" is created.

When the permission request file requests the permission to do privileged runtime code extension on external strings, but it is granted only for internal strings, a PrivilegedRCEPermission with the name "internal" is created.

When the permission request file requests the permission to do privileged runtime code extension on external strings and this is granted, a PrivilegedRCEPermission with the name "external" is created.

For behaviour, see "Use of strings in RCEs".

See 11.10.2.12, "[org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission](#)" on page 289

### 8.15.2.12 org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.11, "[org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission](#)" on page 289.

### 8.15.2.13 org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission

This Permission is only relevant to API use over the bridge, the same rights are granted as for DVB-J applications, see 11.10.2.12, "[org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission](#)" on page 289.

## 8.16 Miscellaneous

### 8.16.1 Date Values

#### 8.16.1.1 Syntax

Absolute Date values have the following syntax:

### 8.16.2 Clock values

#### 8.16.2.1 Syntax

Absolute Clock values have the following syntax:

```

Clock-val          ::= ( Full-clock-val | Partial-clock-val | Timecount-val )
Full-clock-val     ::= Hours ":" Minutes ":" Seconds ( "." Fraction )?
Partial-clock-val  ::= Minutes ":" Seconds ( "." Fraction )?
Timecount-val      ::= Timecount ( "." Fraction )? ( Metric )?
Metric             ::= "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms"
Hours              ::= DIGIT+; any positive number
Minutes           ::= 2DIGIT; range from 00 to 59
Seconds           ::= 2DIGIT; range from 00 to 59
Fraction          ::= DIGIT+
Timecount         ::= DIGIT+
2DIGIT            ::= DIGIT DIGIT

```



DIGIT ::= [0-9]

The default metric suffix is "s" (for seconds). No embedded white space is allowed in clock values, although leading and trailing white space characters will be ignored.

The following are examples of legal clock values:

Full clock values:

02:30:03 = 2 hours, 30 minutes and 3 seconds  
50:00:10.25 = 50 hours, 10 seconds and 250 milliseconds

Partial clock value:

02:33 = 2 minutes and 33 seconds  
00:10.5 = 10.5 seconds = 10 seconds and 500 milliseconds

Timecount values:

3.2h = 3.2 hours = 3 hours and 12 minutes  
45min = 45 minutes  
30s = 30 seconds  
5ms = 5 milliseconds  
12.467 = 12 seconds and 467 milliseconds

Fractional values are just (base 10) floating point definitions of seconds. The number of digits allowed is unlimited (although actual precision may vary among implementations).

For example:

00.5s = 500 milliseconds  
00:00.005 = 5 milliseconds

### 8.16.2.2 Offset values

Offset values are used to specify when an element should begin or end relative to another time.

An offset value has the following syntax:

offset-value ::= "+" ( Clock-value )

An offset value includes a sign on a clock value, and is used to indicate a positive offset. The offset is measured from the implicit start time:

### 8.16.3 Unrealisable locators

Locators may not be realisable for several reasons:

- The locator requires tuning for which permission or resources are not available
- The locator requires network or interaction channel access for which permission is not available
- The locator requires access to data that is denied by Conditional Access mechanisms
- The locator requires access to a authenticated file for which authentication fails
- The locator requires mounting a file system that cannot be mounted at the same time as the currently mounted file systems

#### 8.16.3.0.1 Presentation of Locators in DVB HTML.

It is implementation specific how the user agent indicates the presence of links to resources when rendering DVB-HTML. Where the user agent can determine a priori that a given link will fail, it is implementation dependent whether the user agent renders this as a link. It is also implementation dependent if and how a user agent presents failure to locate a resource due to insufficient permission being granted.

NOTE: [HTML 4 \[104\]](#) section 12.2.4 recommends that the user agent alerts the user when a referenced file is not available. To avoid computer-like dialogs and accessibility issues it is recommended that authors follow the guidelines in [Accessibility \[L\]](#) e.g. providing text equivalents using the `alt` attribute.

## 8.16.4 Relation to HTTP and HTTPS

The user agent string (see 8.13.1, "User agent strings" on page 168) is sent in a header as part of all HTTP and HTTPS requests (see 6.3.7, "Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)" on page 62).

## 8.16.5 DVB-HTML specific locators

DVB-HTML has two specific formats of locators which have defined semantics only in the context of DVB-HTML:

- The extended form of the DVB locator (see 8.16.5.1, "Extended DVB locator" on page 186)
- The exit locator used for application self termination (see 8.16.5.2, "Exit locator" on page 187)

### 8.16.5.1 Extended DVB locator

#### 8.16.5.1.1 Extended DVB locator syntax

The formal specification of the URL form expressed in BNF is given in the following extension to the `dvb:` locators defined in table 135, "DVB URL syntax" on page 373.

**Table 68 : Extended DVB URL syntax**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <code>dvbhtml_url</code>                      | = <code>dvb_url</code>   <code>dvb_scheme</code> ":" <code>dvbhtml_hierpart</code>  |
| <code>dvbhtml_hierpart</code>                 | = <code>dvbhtml_net_path</code>   |
| <code>dvbhtml_net_path</code>                 | = <code>"/"</code> <code>dvbhtml_entity</code>  |
| <code>dvbhtml_entity</code>                   | = <code>dvb_service_contextual</code>   <code>dvb_service_component_contextual</code>   <code>ait_specifier</code>              |
| <code>dvb_service_contextual</code>           | = <code>"current"</code>   <code>"original"</code>  |
| <code>dvb_service_component_contextual</code> | = <code>"current.audio"</code>   <code>"current.video"</code>   <code>"current.av"</code>                                       |
| <code>ait_specifier</code>                    | = <code>ait_filter</code> "." <code>"ait"</code> <code>ait_abs_path</code>  |
| <code>ait_filter</code>                       | = <code>"current"</code>  |
| <code>ait_abs_path</code>                     | = <code>"/"</code> <code>ait_entity</code>  |
| <code>ait_entity</code>                       | = <code>ait_root_directory</code>   <code>ait_application</code>  |
| <code>ait_root_directory</code>               | = <code>"app_root"</code>   |
| <code>ait_application</code>                  | = <code>org_id_part</code> "." <code>app_id_part</code> [ <code>"?"</code> <code>ait_params</code> ]                            |
| <code>ait_params</code>                       | = <code>"arg_"</code> <code>1*digit</code> <code>"="</code> <code>*uric</code> [ <code>"&amp;"</code> <code>ait_params</code> ] |

(for `digit` & `uric` see [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#))

(for `org_id_part` and `app_id_part` see 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377)

The semantics of launching applications via such a locator are specified in 8.5.3.1.3, "Hypertext" on page 83.

#### 8.16.5.1.2 TV locators

A locator for a DVB service or service component can be a full `dvb:` locator, as defined in 14.1, "Namespace mapping (DVB Locator)" on page 373, or one of the following specific forms.

**Table 69 : (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Locator                          | Meaning   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <code>dvb://current</code>       | The service currently selected by the application.                              |
| <code>dvb://current.av</code>    | The Audio and Video being presented on the background video device (see 11.6.2) |
| <code>dvb://current.audio</code> | The Audio being presented in association with the background video device       |
| <code>dvb://current.video</code> | The Video being presented on the background video device                        |

**Table 69 : (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Locator   | Meaning   |
|---|---|
| dvb://original  | Originating service for this application (place of birth) |
| NOTE 1: Content authors who, in other systems, use the "tv:" locator, as defined in <a href="#">RFC 2838 [K]</a> , may use the equivalent "dvb://current.av" locator to reference the default audio and video component within the service. |   |

#### 8.16.5.1.3 Application locator

A locator for an application in the current service can be identified by the following specific forms Only applications that are visible in the application database using the current service filter can be found by this locator.

Selecting this locator will launch the application, with the associated parameters.

**Table 70 :**

| Locator                                  | Meaning  |
|--|--|
| dvb://current.ait/Orgid.Appid?param=val& | An application in the service currently selected by the application. |

#### 8.16.5.1.4 AIT locators

Locators for the root directory or the icon representation of the current application can be identified by the following specific forms.

**Table 71 :**

| Locator  | Meaning  |
|--|--|
| dvb://current.ait/app_root   | The root directory path as found in the dvb html application location descriptor for the application. (note 1) |
| dvb://current.ait/app_icon   | The Icon found in the application icons descriptor for the application. (note 1)                               |
| NOTE 1: Shall mount file systems if referenced objects are in unmounted file systems and the link is followed. |  |

#### 8.16.5.2 Exit locator

In the context of a DVB-HTML application, actioning a link in the defined element, attribute context (see table 16, "MIME media type usage" on page 90) with the following form of locator shall cause an application to terminate.

exit:

The formal specification of the URL is given in the following BNF.

**Table 72 : Exit URL syntax**

|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| exit_url    | = exit_scheme ":" *uric |
| exit_scheme | = "exit"                |

Activating such a link shall request that the application manager move the current application into the **Killed** state. Any possible characters following the ":" shall be ignored in this version of the specification (see [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#)).

### 8.16.6 Domain

One of:

- The domain name of the server that served the document if it can be identified.
- An empty string ("" ) for a page with a dvb: locator.

NOTE: Such pages cannot therefore be in the same domain as any page delivered via http.

- Null otherwise.

## 9 Application model

### 9.1 Broadcast MHP applications

#### 9.1.1 Basic lifecycle control

The basic control of the lifecycle of broadcast MHP applications is through the selection of broadcast services. Selection of a broadcast service can be initiated by the user of the MHP terminal using the Navigator as well as by MHP applications offering EPG functionality. Host Control tune requests from a CI module cause service selections. Host Control replace / clear\_replace has an equivalent effect to using `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl`.

The unit for the presentation and execution of content in the MHP specification is the service. A service in MHP represents a group of pieces of content which are intended to be presented together to the end-user. A service may consist of the contents of a broadcast DVB service, including audio/video streams, data streams and all the service information, applications and application signalling that is being broadcast. Other forms of service are possible, such as a stored service (see 9.7.2, "Stored services" on page 209).

Every service that gets presented by an MHP platform is presented within a service context. These form one of the foundations for the runtime environment and the execution model. A service context is an "environment" in which a service gets presented. It defines the boundaries of the service (letting the platform and applications identify which of the pieces of content that are being presented make up a given service). It also enables that service to be addressed and controlled as a single entity.

- In a DVB-J application, a service context is represented by an instance of the `ServiceContext` class. Where multiple DVB-J applications are being presented in the same service context, the number of `ServiceContext` objects representing a service context is implementation dependant, but each application sees only one such instance. Changes made by one application to the `ServiceContext` object that it has are visible to the `ServiceContext` objects representing the same service context in other applications. DVB-J applications may obtain a reference to the service context within which they are executing through using the method `getServiceContext(XletContext)` on the `ServiceContextFactory` class.
- In a DVB-HTML application, a service context is represented by a `JavaObject` object returned by the Bridge API, having the methods and attributes corresponding to the `ServiceContext` class. Where multiple DVB-HTML applications are being presented in the same service context, the number of `JavaObject` objects representing a service context is implementation dependant, but each application sees only one such instance. Changes made by one application to the `JavaObject` object that it has are visible to `JavaObject` objects representing the same service context in other applications. DVB-HTML applications may obtain a reference to the service context within which they are executing through the Bridge API to access the `getServiceContext(XletContext)` on the `ServiceContextFactory` class.

The means by which the navigator of an MHP terminal supports selection of services is implementation dependent. However, where an MHP application is using the numeric keys of the remote control, the navigator shall not respond to the user pressing these keys by causing service selection. Hence the user pressing the numeric keys to enter his pincode does not cause service selection.

A service context can present only one service at any one time. Selecting a service to be presented in a service context causes any previous service being presented in that service context to stop being presented. Any content part of the previous service which is not part of the new service shall stop being presented. MHP terminals may limit on the number of broadcast service contexts which can be presented simultaneously.

- In a DVB-J application, selecting a service corresponds to calling the `select()` method on such an instance.
- In an internet access application, selecting a service corresponds to activating a link to a `dvb: locator` representing a service.
- In a DVB-HTML, selecting a service either corresponds to activating a link to a `dvb: locator` representing a service, or by calling the `select()` method on a the `JavaObject` representing a service context.

## 9.1.2 Starting applications

When a broadcast service is selected, applications which are listed in the AIT of the service and identified as auto-start shall be launched as described in section 10.6, "Control of application life cycle" on page 221 without explicit intervention of the user. Applications which are started after the selection of a service will be controlled by signalling associated with that service. The MHP terminal shall monitor that signalling for changes made by the broadcaster. These changes may include the termination of particular applications as well as the addition of new auto-start applications.

Applications which are not identified as auto-start in the AIT shall not be automatically launched by the MHP terminal, but require explicit launching. This explicit launching can be done by the resident Navigator on the MHP terminal or by an MHP application. For example, the user can launch such applications after they have been offered a choice of applications through some user interface. Since the resident navigator is not required to provide a mechanism for this explicit launching, broadcast services wishing to have applications started must provide an application which is identified as auto-start.

Where the currently selected service in a service context includes multiple MHP applications, any running applications may be able to launch other applications from that set. The launched applications shall be presented inside that same service context.

- A DVB-J application is able to achieve this using the application listing and launching API.
- A DVB-HTML application is able to achieve this either by activating a link using a locator referencing an application, or by using the Bridge APIs.

## 9.1.3 Support for execution of multiple simultaneous applications

The set of applications that are signalled within a service can be presented and executed concurrently.

MHP terminals shall be able to support applications from that set (using the same screen) at least as defined in the minimum platform capabilities section of this specification. MHP terminals are required to support execution of the set of such applications for each broadcast service which they permit to be presented simultaneously.

Broadcasters should ensure that simultaneous running of the set of applications for a service is comprehensible to the user and does not yield perceptible interference problems.

## 9.1.4 Stopping applications

MHP applications may stop themselves voluntarily using the MHP APIs or may be stopped by the MHP terminal in a number of situations. Examples of situations where this shall be allowed include:

### 9.1.4.1 A new service being selected replacing a previously selected one

When a new service is selected and replaces a previously selected one, applications from the former service shall only continue to execute where they are signalled in the new service. If an application is not signalled in that signalling then it will be stopped by the MHP terminal. Where an application is known to be bound to a single service, the broadcaster can identify that application as service bound using the `service_bound_flag` in the application descriptor. Such applications shall be stopped as soon as possible by the MHP terminal and without needing the AIT for the new service to be available. This allows the autostart application(s) of the new service to be started earlier than would otherwise be the case.

### 9.1.4.2 The stopping of an application by another application

Subject to the security policy of an MHP terminal, one application may request to stop another application. In such a case, the resident Application Manager, after a successful security check, kills the application otherwise that application shall continue running, without interruption.

### 9.1.4.3 Changes in the application signalling to request a particular application be stopped

The broadcaster may request an MHP terminal to stop an application using the control codes in the AIT. The precise semantics of these are dependent on the application format.

#### 9.1.4.4 Stopping by the MHP terminal due to a shortage of resources

Where an MHP terminal has insufficient resources (e.g. memory, CPU and resources managed by the resource management API) to continue the execution of one of the running applications, the MHP terminal is allowed to decide to stop an MHP application without user intervention.

NOTE: The precise resources of an MHP terminal are implementation dependant.

#### 9.1.5 Persistence of Applications Across Service Boundaries

Where a running application is signalled in both the new service and the former service, and is not signalled as service bound in the former service, it shall continue to run and shall not be restarted. In this case, the running application shall become controlled by the application signalling of the new service where it is signalled and not the signalling of the former service. Hence the MHP terminal shall monitor the AIT of the new service and shall stop responding to the AIT of the former service.

If the application is signalled as service bound in the former service then it is terminated in the normal way as the new service is selected. If it is signalled as auto-start in the new service it will restart with no volatile context from the previous instantiation.

If an application survives a service selection operation, it will not automatically gain access to any new broadcast file system on the new service. It remains logically attached to any broadcast file systems it has already attached to, although it may be temporarily disconnected from the broadcast carousels feeding those file systems. The behaviour of the broadcast file system under these circumstances is defined in 6.2.5.3, "Loss of Carousel Behaviour" on page 60.

If temporarily disconnected, the broadcast carousel shall be reconnected upon selection of a service where the carousel is available. This includes, but is not exclusively, the original service the application ran in. To determine carousel availability, the MHP shall use the PMT information obtained for the "home" service of the carousel at the time of mounting, and the PMT of the currently selected service.

#### 9.1.6 Management of autostarting

The receiver shall launch autostart applications under the following conditions:

- the signalling indicates that the application can be supported by the receiver, as defined by the application profile & versioning information contained in the application descriptor,
- only a single application with a given [Application identification](#) is allowed to run at any time,
- the application is a newly introduced autostart application or has newly been given autostart status.

So:

- when a service is selected the receiver shall launch at most one instance of each autostart application that it can support,
- if after service selection an autostart application that the receiver can support is introduced or a previously listed supportable application gains autostart status then the application shall be launched subject to normal resource limitations, etc.

However, if an autostart application terminates itself, it shall not be restarted unless it again becomes a new autostart application. An application becomes a new autostart application in the following cases:

- The receiver navigates away from the service and then selects a service where the application is autostart.
- The application is removed from the AIT and then is re-introduced.
- The autostart status of the application is reset then set again.

NOTE 1: In summary the autostart status of an application is in effect an edge trigger rather than level trigger signal.

NOTE 2: These semantics for the autostart behaviour address "de-bouncing" the case where an autostart application terminates voluntarily. They do not address the case where the receiver terminates the application.

In this case the platform may attempt to re-start the application however this is implementation dependent.

NOTE 3: This specification does not describe in detail the timing required for the broadcast signalling to renew the autostart status of an application.

### 9.1.7 When tuning is not service selection!

MHP applications may cause tuning to another transport stream by mechanisms other than service selection. Usage of these mechanisms does not constitute service selection and therefore no applications from the target transport stream or service shall be started either by the MHP terminal or by MHP applications. The MHP terminal shall continue monitoring the AIT of the logically selected service where this is available on the target transport stream. Where the AIT of the selected service is not available, the application shall continue executing as described in 10.4.4, "Visibility of AIT" on page 217. The service being presented in the service context shall not be changed by an application using these mechanisms:

- DVB-J tuning APIs
- DVB-HTML accessing a media or service reference (e.g in an <object> or <img> element), or by accessing the tuning API through the Bridge

### 9.1.8 MHP Applications and Service Selection

MHP applications may select services using the service selection API. The service selection API includes a class `ServiceContext` to represent environments in which services may be presented. Calling the `select` method on a `ServiceContext` causes a new service to be presented in that context and any former service being presented in that context will be stopped.

Where one MHP application uses the application listing and launching API to successfully start a second MHP application, the second MHP application shall be considered as executing inside the service context of the first MHP application. The number of `ServiceContext` objects representing a service context is implementation dependant, but each application sees only one such instance. Changes made by one application to the `ServiceContext` object that it has are visible to the `ServiceContext` objects representing the same service context in other applications.

MHP applications started in response to a service selection operation are considered to be executing "inside" a service context. They may obtain a reference to the service context within which they are executing through using the method `getServiceContext(XletContext)` on `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextFactory`.

### 9.1.9 Broadcast service related stored applications

These are applications designed to operate in the context of one or more broadcast services. As a consequence even when stored at the receiver they are not able to run unless suitably signalled in the AIT of a currently selected broadcast service. This includes all applications listed in the AIT whether launchable or externally authorised. These applications include the following:

- applications which have been proactively cached by the MHP terminal implementation
- applications which have been explicitly stored as part of the current selected broadcast service
- applications which have been explicitly stored and form part of a stored service and which happen to also be present in the signalling of the currently selected broadcast service

This class of application may have technical dependencies which mean that they cannot be operate correctly unless the MHP terminal is also decoding one of the required broadcast services. For example, an EPG application might be stored to enable it to load more quickly once selected but requires access to the broadcast stream to provide it with data to present.

Stored broadcast related applications shall take the lifecycle model of broadcast applications. E.g.

- following a service change the application behaviour will depend on the AIT signalling in the newly selected broadcast service.
- the application can only be started when it is listed in the AIT of the currently selected service.

In summary, the behaviour is that of a broadcast application, except that the loading is possibly accelerated due to the file system cache provided by the storage.

When one of these applications executes, it shall see the same filesystem as if it was being run directly from broadcast. The set of files stored in response to being listed in the application description file (see 9.7.1, "[Applications loaded from the interaction channel](#)" on page 209) shall always over-ride the same files from the broadcast.

NOTE: The application provider is responsible for managing any dependencies between those files which can be stored and those files which are not required to be stored.

### 9.1.9.1 Version management

If the cached/stored and currently signalled version numbers do not match, the MHP terminal shall start the broadcast version. If the application has `not_launchable_from_broadcast` set to '1' then it shall not be launched at all.

If the version number of a broadcast application is newer than that of the corresponding stored application it is the responsibility of the newer broadcast application to manage the update. Storing the newer version will naturally overwrite the previously stored version. If `not_launchable_from_broadcast` is set to '1' then a launchable application must be provided to manage the update (although an MHP terminal may perform the update autonomously).

NOTE: MHP terminals may refuse to update, or keep stored, applications where the version numbers change too frequently. Broadcasters should ensure that frequently changing files are not listed in the "[Application description file](#)".

## 9.2 DVB-J Model

### 9.2.1 Starting DVB-J Applications

DVB-J applications may be started by any of the means defined for general MHP applications. The application listing and launching API defined in annex S, "[\(normative\): Application Listing and Launching](#)" on page 802 allows one MHP application to start another MHP application subject to security policy. The `start()` method of the `AppProxy` interface will then cause the Application Manager to start the new MHP application subject to normal resource limitations.

The Xlet interface is defined in the `javax.tv.xlet.Xlet` interface [Java TV \[51\]](#). DVB-J applications provide a class implementing this interface and reference that class in the DVB-J application location descriptor. In order to start a DVB-J application, the application manager shall call the constructor of this class, the `initXlet()` and the `startXlet()` methods of this interface.

### 9.2.2 Stopping a DVB-J Application

DVB-J applications may stop for any of the reasons listed for general MHP applications. An application shall be able to notify that it is stopped by finishing its execution and informing the Application Manager through the `notifyDestroyed()` method on the `javax.tv.xlet.XletContext` interface. This interface also includes other methods to allow a DVB-J application to request or notify changes in its state.

The application listing and launching API allows an application to indirectly control the lifecycle of another application subject to security policy. This control is indirect because an application cannot invoke an Xlet state method directly, but goes through this API. This ensures that the resident Application Manager can always keep track of all the application that are running.



When a DVB-J application is stopped by an MHP terminal, the `destroyXlet` method of the signalled Java class implementing the Xlet interface, i.e. the initial class of the application, shall be called by the application manager. In the case of the application being stopped due to a service selection operation, the stopping of the application shall be unconditional. This method call gives applications their last opportunity to save state before their execution stops. Applications which wish to survive the user of the MHP terminal zapping away from their service (e.g. during an advertising break) must save their state and reload that state when they are re-started if the user returns to that service later.

## 9.2.3 DVB-J Application Lifecycle

### 9.2.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the Xlet lifecycle model for the DVB-J API. This describes the capabilities of the Xlet in each state and the methods by which the application manager influences the life cycle state. This section is not directly related to other aspects of a system, such as graphics or shared resource allocation/management.

**NOTE:** The traditional Java platforms define a number of application models that have their own lifecycles associated with them. In general, they are designed to address specific issues on that platform. For instance, the Applet was designed to provide support for executable content in web pages. However, none of the existing application technology fully addresses the specific requirements of television receivers. The application lifecycle defined in this section is meant to be compatible with existing Java platforms and virtual machine technology.

This section defines the lifecycle of an instance of a DVB-J application. The lifecycle of a DVB-J application and of a application instance are the same except that when an application instance is destroyed, the application is only transiently destroyed and then becomes not loaded. See `org.dvb.application.AppProxy.NOT_LOADED` in annex S, "(normative): Application Listing and Launching" on page 802.

### 9.2.3.2 Lifecycle state machine for DVB-J application instances

The Xlet state machine ensures that the behaviour of an Xlet is close to the behaviour that television viewers expect, specifically:

- The perceived start-up latency of an Xlet can be very short.
- It is possible to put an Xlet into a state where it is not providing its service.
- It is possible to destroy an Xlet at any time.

The figure 15 shows the state machine model for Xlets. The Xlet states are defined in more detail in table 73.

The different influences that can cause an Xlet to change state include:

- The application manager uses the [Xlet API](#) to signal these changes to the Xlet.

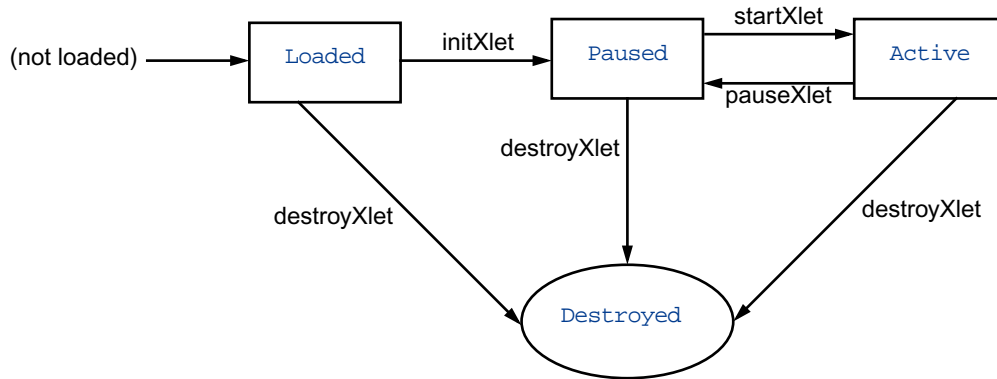
Various factors may stimulate the application manager to act in this way, for example:

- Broadcast signalling (e.g. a change in the state of the [application\\_control\\_code](#) parameter carried by the AIT (see 10.4, "Application Information Table" on page 216)).
- User selection of an application in a host provided UI

- The Xlet itself "decides" to change state

The application uses the `XletContext` Object to communicate or request such changes to the application manager.

- Another Xlet acts via the application launching API (see 11.7.2, "Application discovery and launching APIs" on page 276).



**Figure 15 : Xlet lifecycle state machine diagram**

Table 73 : Valid lifecycle states of DVB-J application instances (Sheet 1 of 2)

| State Name | Description  |
|------------|--|
| Loaded     | <p>The DVB-J application instance has been loaded and has not been initialized.</p> <p>The signalled Java class used to initiate a DVB-J application instance must implement the <code>javax.tv.xlet.Xlet</code> interface. Otherwise, the class (and hence the application instance) may be ignored. An instance of the signalled Java class is created by the application manager e.g. using the <code>Class.newInstance</code> method. Therefore a DVB-J application instance must have a public "default constructor". Otherwise, the class (and hence the application instance) shall immediately enter the <code>Destroyed</code> state. If the default constructor returns without throwing an uncaught exception, then the application instance is considered to be "Loaded", otherwise the application instance immediately enters the <code>Destroyed</code> state and is discarded. Once the application instance has been successfully loaded and instantiated, the application manager can transition the application instance to the <code>Paused</code> state by invoking the <code>initXlet</code> method on the signalled class (implementing the <code>Xlet</code> interface).</p> <p>If the <code>initXlet()</code> method throws an <code>XletStateChangeException</code> then the application instance shall remain in the Loaded state. The only possible state transition for such an application instance is into the destroyed state. The application instance can request this itself or wait for the application manager to cause this transition.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Application initialisation is intended to occur in the <code>initXlet</code> method, rather than in the default constructor.</li> <li>• This state is entered only once per instance of an DVB-J application.</li> </ul> |
| Paused     | <p>A <code>Paused</code> DVB-J application instance should minimize its usage of resources if it wants to maximize its probability of survival. This does not imply that it cannot be holding any resources, but in such a case, it would have a lower priority as concerns access to resources than it had when it was in the <code>Active</code> state.</p> <p>This state is entered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the <code>Loaded</code> state after the <code>Xlet.initXlet()</code> method returns successfully when invoked by the application manager (the first time). Other invocations of this method do not cause the change of state.</li> </ul> <p>Note that the application manager shall only call <code>initXlet()</code> once per instance of a DVB-J application.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• From the <code>Active</code> state after the <code>Xlet.pauseXlet()</code> method returns successfully when invoked by the application manager. Other invocations of this method do not cause the change of state.</li> <li>• From the <code>Active</code> state upon entering the <code>XletContext.notifyPaused()</code> method.</li> </ul>   |

**Table 73 : Valid lifecycle states of DVB-J application instances (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| State Name | Description  |
|------------|--|
| Active     | <p>The DVB-J application instance is functioning normally and providing service.</p> <p>This state is entered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the <a href="#">Paused</a> state after the <code>Xlet.startXlet()</code> method returns successfully.</li> </ul>  |
| Destroyed  | <p>The DVB-J application instance has released all of its resources and terminated.</p> <p>This state is entered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the Xlet's <code>destroyXlet()</code> method returns successfully. The <code>destroyXlet()</code> method shall release all resources held and perform any necessary clean up so the Xlet may be garbage collected.</li> <li>Upon entering the <code>XletContext.notifyDestroyed()</code> method. The Xlet performs its clean up actions before calling the <code>notifyDestroyed()</code> method.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: This state is entered only once per instance of an DVB-J application instance.</p> |

Every time a DVB-J application instance is started (i.e. the constructor of the object implementing Xlet is called), it shall logically run in its own new virtual machine instance. See [11.2.1, "Basic Considerations" on page 248](#).

Only the DVB-J application can determine if it is able to provide the service for which it was designed. As such, in some respects an application manager cannot guarantee whether an DVB-J application can, or is, providing its service; and application manager can only indicate that the DVB-J application is able to do so. A typical sequence of DVB-J application execution is:

**Table 74 : Typical DVB-J application lifetime walk through**

| Application Manager   | DVB-J application  |
|---|--|
| The application manager creates a new instance of an Xlet.  | The Xlet's default (no argument) constructor is called, it is in the <a href="#">Loaded</a> state.                 |
| The application manager creates the necessary context object for the DVB-J application to run, and initializes the Xlet.  | The DVB-J application uses the context object to initialize itself. It is now in the <a href="#">Paused</a> state. |
| The application manager has decided that it is an appropriate time for the DVB-J application to perform its service, so it signals it to enter the <a href="#">Active</a> state.  | The DVB-J application acquires any resources it needs and begins to perform its service.                           |
| The application manager no longer needs the DVB-J application to perform its service, so it signals the DVB-J application to stop performing its service.   | The DVB-J application stops performing its service and might choose to release some resources it currently holds.  |
| The application manager has determined that the DVB-J application is no longer needed, or perhaps needs to make room for a higher priority application in memory, so it signals the DVB-J application that it is a candidate to be destroyed. | If it has been designed to do so, the DVB-J application saves state or user preferences and performs clean up.     |

## 9.2.4 Xlet API

The Xlet API provides MHP application developers with an API that provides life cycle signalling. The Xlet API uses the callback approach to signal state changes.

This API is specified in section [11.7.1, "APIs to support DVB-J application lifecycle" on page 275](#).

### 9.2.4.1 Xlet State Change Semantics

An Xlet's state can change either by having one of the methods on its Xlet Interface called, or by making an internal state transition and notifying the application manager via the `XletContext` Object. The semantics of when that state change actually happens are important:

- Calls to `Xlet`: this interface indicates a successful state change only when the call successfully returns.
- Calls to `XletContext`: the `notifyDestroyed()` and `notifyPaused()` methods indicate a state change on entry. The `resumeRequest()` method indicates no state change, instead only a request to change state.

If a method on the Xlet interface throws an `XletStateChangeException`, the Xlet shall remain in the state it was in immediately prior to the call of the method throwing the exception unless otherwise specified. In this specification, the only exception to this rule is the `destroyXlet` method when the `unconditional` flag is `true` where throwing the `XletStateChangeException` is specified to have no effect. For the case of `initXlet` which may only be called once, the application manager may choose to transition the Xlet to the destroyed state (without calling `destroyXlet`) some implementation specific time later.

### 9.2.4.2 Xlet state change requests

The following table defines the previous states in which calls to the methods on `XletContext` relating to state management are valid;

NOTE: These methods are called after the Xlet has changed its state.

**Table 75 : States for valid state management calls**

| Call                         | State       |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| <code>notifyDestroyed</code> | all states  |
| <code>notifyPaused</code>    | active only |
| <code>resumeRequest</code>   | paused only |

Calls to these methods when an Xlet is in any other state shall have no effect.

## 9.2.5 Multiple application environment support

The DVB-J platform allows for the simultaneous execution of several DVB-J applications.

Allowing several DVB-J applications to run simultaneously implies that some rules be defined for these DVB-J applications to share the resources of the MHP, and in particular for them to share the Input Focus and the Output Focus.

### 9.2.5.1 Control of DVB-J applications by other DVB-J applications

The MHP provides support for control of the lifetime of a DVB-J application by another DVB-J application. This feature enables broadcasters to write their own "Launcher applications" that take care of the presentation to the user of the availability of DVB-J applications, and that enables eventually the user to launch DVB-J applications. Note that the actual control of the lifetime of an DVB-J applications is done by the Application Manager only. The MHP only provides APIs that enable DVB-J applications to ask the Application Manager to start, stop, pause and resume DVB-J applications.

See [11.7.2, "Application discovery and launching APIs" on page 276](#).

### 9.2.5.2 Input Focus management

The input focus is defined as follows:

- the application that has input focus is in principle able to receive user-input events.
- other applications not having the input focus can request to receive a subset of user-input events via a dedicated API. See ["org.dvb.event" on page 255](#).

### 9.2.5.3 Other resources management

The APIs defined in this specification provide support for resource allocation/revocation and resource revocation notification. The semantics of the APIs, however does not define under which circumstances an access to a resource is granted or revoked. While it is well understood that in most cases, it is up to the MHP implementation to define its own policy in terms of resource management, this section defines the basic rules that an MHP implementation has to follow.

The MHP specification describes a multi-application environment. Hence several applications may be competing for access to the same atomic resource. The resource notification API described in section 11.7.5 on page 280 provides a common way for applications to negotiate access to scarce atomic resources when such competition happens. This API allows for the MHP terminal to inform the application that currently holds the resource that another application wants to access this resource. It also provides a means for the owner of the resource and to the requester of the resource to communicate by private means. This private communication is reflected by the request\_data object that the requester may pass to the owner. The semantics of this object is private and has to be known by both applications.

Some existing and general purposes java APIs that were developed before the MHP work was started do not use this general resource sharing mechanism. Hence access to resources addressed by these APIs are not subject to negotiation. For example, when an application holds a JMF player, if another application was to create a JMF player for the same content-type, the MHP has to decide by itself whether it withdraws the resource underlying the JMF player from the current owner and grants it to the requester.

It is also possible for applications to use the inter-application communication API to establish private communication channels enabling them to negotiate access to resources.

### 9.2.5.4 VM implementation

Where there are multiple DVB-J applications being executed as part of the same service, MHP terminals are allowed implement these in a single actual virtual machine instance. Regardless this shall conform to 11.2.1, "Basic Considerations" on page 248.

## 9.3 DVB-HTML Model

### 9.3.1 The DVB-HTML Application

#### 9.3.1.1 DVB-HTML Application

A DVB-HTML application is defined as a set of documents selected from the DVB-HTML family of elements and content formats as defined in the specification. The extent of the set is described by the application boundary.

#### 9.3.1.2 User agent

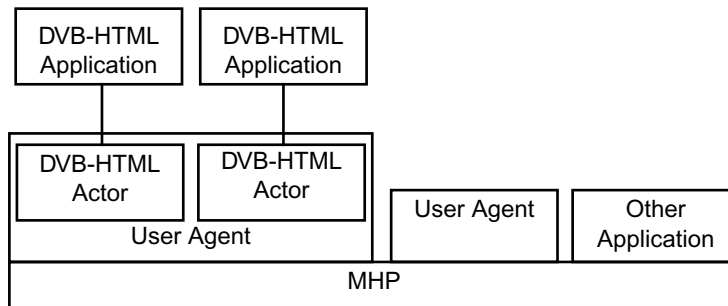
A user agent is an application that interprets a content format (in this case DVB-HTML documents).

Note This could be implemented as a plug-in.

#### 9.3.1.3 DVB-HTML Actor

A DVB-HTML actor is defined as the locus of activity or process involved in running the specific set of DVB-HTML documents for some DVB-HTML application, plus any instantiated context for that data. The actor runs inside a user agent (native, plug-in or downloaded). The nature of the process is not defined explicitly as it depends on the nature of the user agent itself. More than one such locus of activity may be present in any given user agent.

There is a single DVB-HTML Actor for each running DVB-HTML Application, each DVB-HTML Application can consist of multiple documents several of which could be simultaneously displayed.



**Figure 16 : Relationships between actors and applications**

#### 9.3.1.4 Application boundary

The application boundary defines the extent of a DVB-HTML Application. Any content documents outside of the application boundary are considered to not be part of the DVB-HTML Application and shall be unavailable to the referencing DVB-HTML application. An MHP terminal may contain an implementation specific mechanism to allow the end-user to decide to explicitly access the resource outside the boundary but this shall not be in the context of the original DVB-HTML application. This namespace can be used by a broadcaster to easily control the perimeter of user navigation and by an MHP implementation to more efficiently pre-fetch applications.

The logical extent of a DVB-HTML application could potentially be quite large, and for various reasons might not all be on the MHP terminal at one time. Part of it might be broadcast, part of it might be on local storage, part of it might be on the world wide web - some of it may even be generated on demand. For this reason the compact format of the regular expression is used to define the extent. The set of DVB-HTML documents making up a DVB-HTML application is defined by a regular expression over the locator language, broadly a locator consists of a text string in the following form from [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#) and acts as the glue which holds the application together.

```
scheme://host/dir1/dirn/file#subref
```

A regular expression is the definition of a set by a pattern which can test whether a given string is or is not a member of the set, for example the regular expression:

```
https?://www\.(dvb|etsi)\.org/[a-z0-9/]+\\.html?
```

Matches the logical locator of any file on both [www.dvb.org](http://www.dvb.org) or [www.etsi.org](http://www.etsi.org), either reached by http or https, if and only if it is a DVB-HTML file (its name ends in ".htm" or ".html"), and its pathname contains only alphanumeric characters. Quite terse definitions can match a large set of files [see for example [Compilers \[C\]](#)].

##### 9.3.1.4.1 Regular Expression Syntax

A regular expression (RE) specifies a set of character strings to match against. A member of this set of strings is said to be matched by the regular expression.

In order for a locator to match a boundary regular expression the whole locator must be matched by the whole regular expression; any parameters (characters including and after the first "?" or "#" in the locator) are not considered as part of the locator for purposes of boundary matching.

The form of regular expression used for defining application boundaries is defined as a POSIX Extended Regular Expression from [POSIX \[59\]](#) section 2.8.4.:

Relative locators in the DVB-HTML application are expanded to a full URI as defined in [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#), (the default base URI being that carried in the application location descriptor) before being matched.

A pattern may be broken into sub patterns in a set of application boundary descriptors (see signalling). The full pattern is formed from the OR of all the sub patterns. Each application boundary descriptor may be associated with a label (see [10.10.3, "DVB-HTML application boundary descriptor" on page 239](#)). This label can be used for pre fetching in a transport specific manner, for example in an object carousel it defines that all modules matching the label should be preloaded.

For example: an application consists of an entry web page /phase0/index.html, and is factored into three sub sections, each of which has an associated stylesheet and image directory.

```
labelA: (/phase0/.\.html | /phase0/images1/.\.png | /phase0/scripts1/.\.js)
labelB: (/phase1/.\.html | /phase1/images/.\.png | /phase1/scripts/.\.js)
labelC: (/phase2/.\.html | /phase2/images/.\.png | /phase2/scripts/.\.js)
```

The entry point locator signalled for this application matches the first regular expression, this allows the pre-fetch mechanism to load the modules labelled with labelA (which the broadcaster arranges to contain the contents of directory phase0), Once the user agent is running, it can use this information to detect which if any links from the current page might transition to a new phase and therefore require more pre-fetching.

## 9.3.2 DVB-HTML Application Lifecycle

### 9.3.2.1 Introduction

There are three key parts of the DVB-HTML application lifecycle model:

- a) How applications are signalled as available to the MHP, and for auto start and prefetch applications how the start time is synchronized with any associated media stream.
- b) How and when the application manager or other launcher application makes the presence of an non auto-start application known to the user and provides it with a trigger. This is covered by the application discovery and launching mechanisms.
- c) How a broadcaster controls an actor after it has started.

### 9.3.2.2 Signalling

The DVB-HTML Application is signalled as described in chapter 10, "[Application Signalling](#)" on page 214.

The application manager can be requested to start a DVB-HTML application either because it is signalled as auto start, or through the application launching API.

On receiving the request that a DVB-HTML application is to be started (i.e. an [AUTOSTART](#) or [PREFETCH](#) appears in the AIT or it is user instantiated), and there is no application with the same applicationID already instantiated, the application manager should attempt to find a suitable user agent. It can also at this point begin pre-fetching material.

If the application manager is unable to instantiate a user agent either through lack of resources, or no suitable user agent being available then any pre-fetching can be aborted, and any trigger signal can be ignored.

It is platform dependant at what time a DVB-HTML autostart application starts. For a pre-fetched DVB-HTML application a trigger is required which carries the time at which the application should start providing service.

The DVB-HTML actor can be in one of 5 DVB-HTML Application states.

- [Loading](#)
- [Active](#)
- [Paused](#)
- [Destroyed](#)
- [Killed](#)

Each of these states has a precise meaning outlined in the following sections. The transitions between states are made as a result of, for example:

- A trigger, such as a request to go to a new document,
- A trigger such as the DVB-HTML application making an explicit request to change state,
- A change in the external environment i.e. the application\_control\_code in the AIT changes.



Since a user agent may be performing as several actors, it can be in several of these states at one time, each actor however will be labelled with a unique application ID.

A DVB-HTML application proceeds by moving between documents, while the documents remain within the DVB-HTML application boundary the DVB-HTML application continues to run normally.

Links within an DVB-HTML application normally replace the existing document, but attributes may be present on a link which cause both the new and old document to be visible at the same time.

### 9.3.2.3 Lifecycle control

The state model for the DVB-HTML application lifecycle control model described in this section reflects the signalling (see 10.6, "Control of application life cycle" on page 221) and is an abstract view of how a DVB-HTML application operates, and considers the kinds of resources that a user agent would need in order to function properly: resources concerned with output (rendering), input (event catching) and connection (the availability of the content).

The abstract model however is mostly illustrative and does not imply any resource management strategy nor is it intended to overly constrain the implementation of a user agent;

#### 9.3.2.3.1 State diagram

The following transition diagram summarizes the states and the transitions between them.

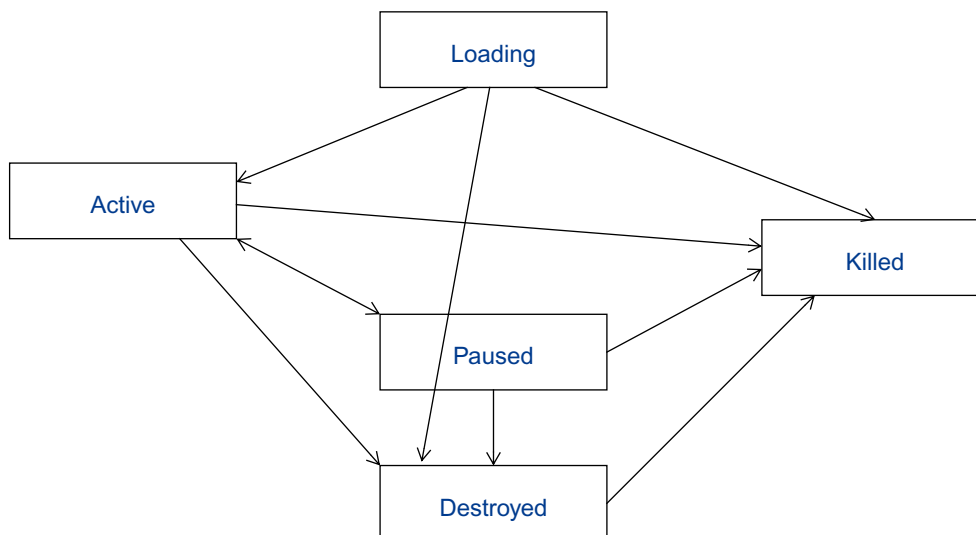


Figure 17 : DVB-HTML application life cycle state diagram

### 9.3.3 The State Model

The entry state of the state machine, Loading, is characterized by access to the content resources and signalling resources but does not have or require input and output resources. This implies the actor can prefetch content and receive triggering events for transition to the Active state, but will not be presented to the viewer.

On entry into the Active state the actor would be assumed to have full access to the content of the current document and all resources of the MHP, subject to resource management and security issues.

The paused state is a reduced operational state. If the application manager or the user agent needs resources for other purposes, an actor may be moved to the paused state, when in this state it may no longer have full (or even any) access to resources. When the actor is reactivated it returns to its previous state.

The destroyed state can be characterized as loss of the content resource. The actor may still be able to run the DVB-HTML application due to caching or other mechanisms but must be prepared for loading of some or all of the documents from within the DVB-HTML application to fail. It is implementation dependent how such failure is handled. This is a way for the broadcaster to signal to the MHP that it is on it's own.

The killed state is characterized by the loss of all resources, and is the signal for actions concerned with cleanup of the actor. The MHP reclaims whatever resources it deems necessary. It is implementation dependent whether cached material is disposed of.

If the AIT signal is **KILL**, an actor is forcibly terminated (and all resources associated with it reclaimed) regardless of state.

An actor shall not stop running itself or a DVB-HTML application without transitioning the DVB-HTML application into the killed state

### 9.3.3.1 Loading

#### 9.3.3.1.1 Name

Loading

#### 9.3.3.1.2 Entry actions

Instantiation of an actor.

#### 9.3.3.1.3 Activities

Waiting for documents to be available and loading documents without rendering them.

#### 9.3.3.1.4 Resources

Content, signalling, Output

#### 9.3.3.1.5 Transitions

Active. preconditions:

- enough data is available to present something sensible.

Killed. preconditions:

- If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as **KILL**,

Destroyed. preconditions:

- If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as **DESTROY**,

#### 9.3.3.1.6 Comment

This is the entry state of the state machine This state is entered only once in the lifetime of the DVB-HTML actor. Any start-up phase of a user agent can also be considered as part of this state. When an actor is in this state it is not rendering anything. This state should not be confused with any prefetching of modules which may be carried out by the MHP prior to application launch.

### 9.3.3.2 Active

#### 9.3.3.2.1 Name

Active

#### 9.3.3.2.2 Activities

Gathering and parsing current document and related resources., rendering document, Maintaining rendered documents. receptive to events, waiting for triggering event to show loaded documents.

#### 9.3.3.2.3 Entry actions

If application is signalled as pre-fetch wait for trigger before displaying anything.

#### 9.3.3.2.4 Resources

Content, signalling, output, input.

#### 9.3.3.2.5 Transitions

Pause.

- If the user agent or application manager puts the DVB-HTML application in PAUSE.

Destroyed.

- If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as DESTROY.

Killed.

- If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as KILL

#### 9.3.3.2.6 Comment

This state is the steady state,

In this state it is user agent specific as to whether a partially loaded document is displayed, or deals with input triggers.

If a transition is made to a new document within the application, the actor remains in this state.

If a related resource document of the main document changes, then the resource may be reloaded, causing the DVB-HTML actor to receive appropriate DOM events, however the DVB-HTML actor is not considered to change state. Similarly the DVB-HTML actor may gain and lose the focus while in this state, receiving the appropriate DOM events – it may receive fewer input events when it does not have the focus.

If the AIT no longer refers to the DVB-HTML application no special action is taken for DVB-HTML actors that are in the Active state.

### 9.3.3.3 Paused

#### 9.3.3.3.1 Name

Paused

#### 9.3.3.3.2 Activities

DVB-HTML actor should minimise its use of resources.

#### 9.3.3.3.3 Resources

Application specific.

#### 9.3.3.3.4 Transitions

Active.

- If the DVB-HTML application is resumed.

Destroyed.

- If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as DESTROY.

Killed.

- If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as KILL

### 9.3.3.3.5 Comment

The semantics of this state are both user agent and DVB-HTML application specific. When the DVB-HTML application returns from the "Pause" state, the environment might have changed (loss of resources or network connections) and some events may not have been reported.

### 9.3.3.4 Destroyed

#### 9.3.3.4.1 Name

Destroyed

#### 9.3.3.4.2 Activities

Loading documents. Rendering documents. Consuming events. Interact with the user.

#### 9.3.3.4.3 Resources

input and output.

#### 9.3.3.4.4 Transitions:

Killed.

- {If the DVB-HTML application is signalled as KILL} OR {local event forces the actor to terminate, possibly through application manager}

#### 9.3.3.4.5 Comment

This state indicates the MHP may no longer be able to access the content resources required to run the DVB-HTML application. It is DVB-HTML application and user agent specific as to whether the actor continues to run, and if it does how the user should be informed if any link is no longer available because the content it refers to is no longer available, or a cached copy has expired. The DVB-HTML actor may continue to execute in the destroyed state until the user actively dismisses it.

### 9.3.3.5 Killed

#### 9.3.3.5.1 Name

Killed

#### 9.3.3.5.2 Entry actions

Release of resources.

#### 9.3.3.5.3 Activities

Termination of the DVB-HTML application.

#### 9.3.3.5.4 Resources

none.

#### 9.3.3.5.5 Transitions

none

#### 9.3.3.5.6 Comment

After the activities in this state are finished, the application is no longer running. This state is the exit state of the state machine.

## 9.4 Application activity events

Each page within an application shall receive load and unload events with the following constraints:

- The DVB lifecycle `AppActive` event precedes the first DVB-HTML `load` event.
- There is no guarantee on the relative ordering of the first DVB-HTML `load` event and the DVB lifecycle `AppStarting` event.
- When a document is unloaded because of a transition to a new page the current document will receive an `unload` event and all event handlers will be allowed to complete before the new page begins its lifecycle.
- When an application transitions to the Killed state (i.e., the DVB-HTML actor ceases to execute), there is no guarantee that the current document will receive any `unload` event.
- When an application transitions to the Destroyed state the application may continue to execute in the Destroyed state, in which case `unload` events and new `load` events may be received if assets are available
- The document `load` event is received after all parts that can receive `load` events have received them. Specify when the `load` event is fired for each media type (e.g. streamed, multipart replace)
- No non-lifecycle events are delivered to a page until after the `DVBDOMStable` event is delivered
- Events that occurred when the application is in the from the Loading state and may be delivered when in the Active state

**NOTE** The first two constraints will not be visible to documents in frames which share an application boundary with their parent, as they do not receive DVB lifecycle events.

The following state diagram illustrates these interactions.

- DVB-HTML lifecycle states and transitions are in This Style.
- DOM events are in **This style**.
- States and transitions which are only part of this model are in *this style*
- The *request* transition indicates a request (from user inputs, trigger events etc.) to navigate to a new page.
- The *(no event)* transition may happen immediately, with no other input.
- The *loading page* state covers loading content for a new page and may cover full or incremental rendering of the page (although the page may not be presented to the user, if the application is signalled as PREFETCH and the AppStarting event has not been received).
- The *loading content* state covers the referenced content for a new page after the initial content is parsed and may cover full or incremental rendering of the page (although the page may not be presented to the user, if the application is signalled as PREFETCH and the AppStarting event has not been received).
- In the *loaded page* state, the page has been loaded. Unless the application is signalled as PREFETCH and no AppStarting event has occurred, it will also have begun to be presented to the user.
- In the *unloading page* state, content loading for the new page may begin.
- The AppStarting, AppPause, AppResume and AppDestroyed DVB-HTML lifecycle events are not shown in this diagram, because the only constraints on them are in relation to the standard MHP lifecycle states and events, not in relation to the DOM load and unload events.

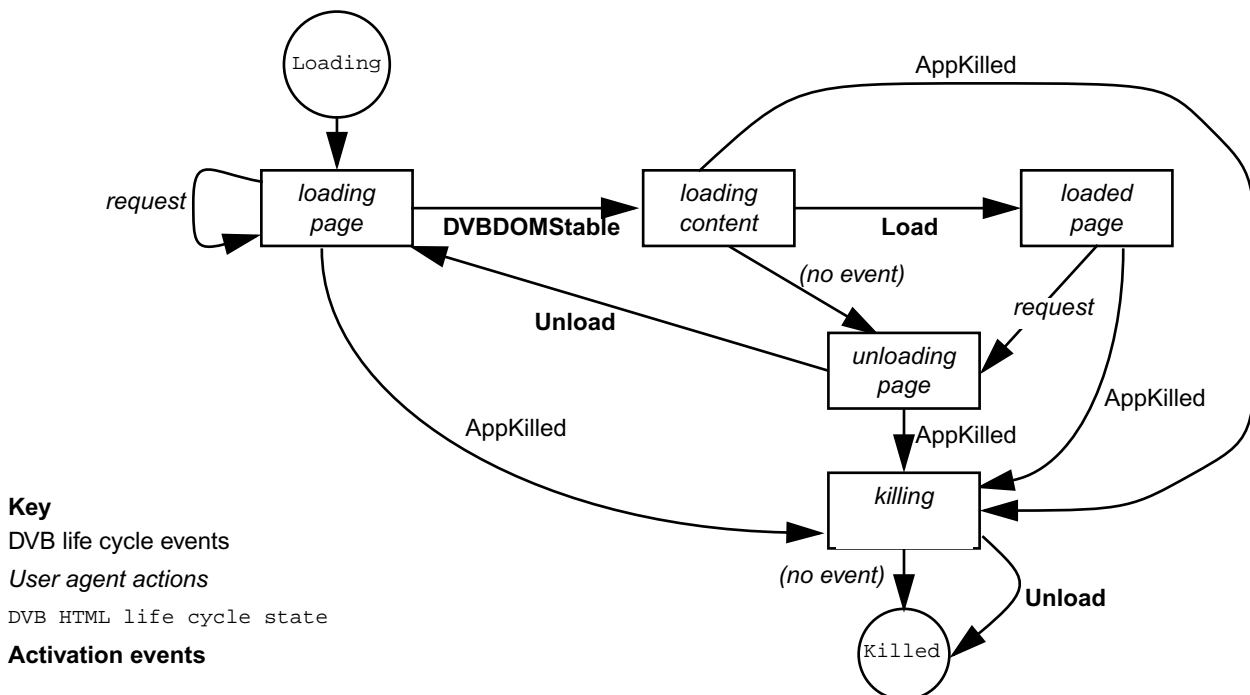


Figure 18 : Activation event state model

### 9.4.1 Event queue handling

The HTML and DOM standards say little about how events are inserted by the User Agent or how they are queued. DVB-HTML User Agents shall observe the following list of clarifications.

- After the `unload` event is sent, no other events shall be sent to the document, so all trigger event listeners may be discarded. (For clarification: `AppDestroyed` and `AppKilled` happen before this.)
- When navigating to a new page in a given window or frame, the user agent may load some or all of the new page and its associated files, before sending an `unload` to the current document. It shall not begin to render the new page, or deliver DOM events to it, until event handling of the `unload` event for the old page is complete.
- In loading resources for a new page, the user agent may register for, receive and queue DSM-CC events; however it shall not deliver them to the DOM until after it has delivered the `DVBDOMstable` event.
- The ECMAScript "document" variable shall be bound to the relevant document in all event handlers.

NOTE Together the above imply that trigger events (as is theoretically the case with user input events) may be lost during page transitions or even during presentation of a page. Authors should be aware of this possibility and code accordingly.

## 9.5 Inter application resource management

This is implementation dependent except as detailed below. Where there is a resource conflict between two applications signalled as part of the same service and running in the same service context, this shall be resolved using the priority signalled in the `application_priority` field in the application descriptor for each application. When comparing two applications, the one with the higher `application_priority` value shall be considered the more important to preserve.

- Where there is a resource conflict between two applications signalled as part of the same service and running in the same service context, this shall be resolved using the priority signalled in the `application_priority` field in the application descriptor for each application or the external application authorisation descriptor depending on which descriptor the application is currently signalled by.
- Unless stated otherwise, only the application which owns a resource has the right to modify the state / settings / configuration of that resource. If a resident application (e.g. the MHP navigator) makes changes to the state / settings / configuration of a resource, the MHP terminal shall inform the MHP application which formerly owned the resource that the MHP application has lost ownership of the resource.

NOTE: The only exception to this rule is where all applications running inside a service context together own the service component handlers of that service context and not any single one of them. See [11.6.2, "Service Selection API" on page 272](#).

## 9.6 Life cycle of Xlets embedded in DVB-HTML

The state of an Xlet is influenced by the state of the page that contains it, in addition to being influenced by the state of the containing application. The Xlet's lifecycle is bound by the lifecycle of the HTML application and page, but the Xlet may, through its own actions, be in a less active state than the containing HTML page. For example, an Xlet may destroy itself even if the page in which it is contained is active.

### 9.6.1 Starting embedded Xlets

For each Xlet specified with an object tag, a new classloader shall be created to load its classes. The standard MHP semantics surrounding Xlet classloaders apply. For example, classloaders shall not be shared with other Xlets.

When an HTML page is being loaded, any Xlets embedded within that page shall be requested to enter the loaded state, as defined for the `java.xlet.Xlet` interface.

Sometime before the page becomes visible, the platform shall request all embedded Xlets in that page to enter the paused state.

During the process of making a page visible, the platform shall request all paused Xlets (i.e. those that did not fail or voluntarily terminate before reaching this state) to enter the active state. The exact point during this process at which this happens is implementation dependent, but shall not be before any load event for the page.

When the containing DVB-HTML application transitions from the paused state to the active state, all paused Xlets that are on the current page shall be requested to enter the active state.

### 9.6.2 Termination

When a page becomes invisible due to navigation away from that page or when the containing DVB-HTML application becomes paused, all embedded Xlets that are in the active state shall be requested to enter the paused state.

It is implementation dependent when an Xlet that was paused due to navigation is transitioned from the paused state to the destroyed state, but this shall be after any unload event for the page in which it was embedded.

When the HTML application enters the killed state, all embedded Xlets must be put into the destroyed state by the platform.

When the DVB-HTML application enters the HTML destroyed state, it has no effect on the state of any embedded Xlets. Those embedded Xlets may choose to change their state as resources are withdrawn during such a transition, however they are only forced to change state when the DVB-HTML application enters the killed state.

The standard MHP rules concerning the destruction of an Xlet apply. Notably, an Xlet that fails to respond to a lifecycle notification is eligible for destruction, even if the containing page is still visible. Similarly, an Xlet can request that it be destroyed. This will cause the Xlet to be destroyed, but it will have no effect on the lifecycle of the page in which the Xlet is contained nor shall it cause the page to be reflowed. Similarly, an Xlet that puts itself in the paused state will have no effect on the state of the enclosing HTML page or application.

Of course, an Xlet might initiate an action that causes the application containing it to be terminated. For example, if the Xlet does a service selection, the application might not be signalled in the new service. Here, the existing MHP semantics concerning application lifecycle apply.

### 9.6.3 General issues

Multiple Xlets per XHTML document are allowed to the same extent as multiple Xlets are allowed in the same DVB service.

Instances of embedded Xlets:

- shall not be listed in the AIT
- shall not be exposed in the application listing an launching API when launched through a DVB HTML application
- inherit the transport protocols of the containing HTML application



When an embedded Xlet is in its active state, it shall have DOM access. It is implementation dependent if it will have DOM access in other states.

## 9.7 Services and applications not related to conventional DVB services

Section 9.1 of this specification describes MHP applications whose lifecycle is controlled through broadcast services. This specification additionally supports applications whose lifecycle is not bound to that of broadcast services. These include:

- Applications signalled through the interaction channel (see 9.7.1, "[Applications loaded from the interaction channel](#)" on page 209).
- Applications running from storage in the MHP terminal (see 9.7.2, "[Stored services](#)" on page 209).

### 9.7.1 Applications loaded from the interaction channel

In this scenario the application signalling comes from the interaction channel rather than the broadcast channel. In overview:

- Data equivalent to the broadcast AIT is provided from the interaction channel in the "[AIT file](#)". The connection to the server that provides the data is analogous to a connection to broadcast service.
- A locator specifying the location of the "[AIT file](#)" is analogous to the locator specifying a broadcast service.
- Navigation to this locator is analogous to selection of a broadcast service. The service selection could either be from the MHP terminal's intrinsic navigator or via an application using the service selection API.
- As with navigation between broadcast services when an interaction channel locator is selected as the current service the MHP terminal retrieves and decodes the "[AIT file](#)". Decisions about which currently running applications are allowed to remain running and which new applications are launched are based on the information in the "[AIT file](#)" just as they would be when navigating between broadcast services.
- When a locator specifying an AIT file is successfully used in a service selection operation, the applications database shall be populated with the information from that AIT file.

### 9.7.2 Stored services

Stored services are an encapsulation of one or more applications. The lifecycle of a stored service shall obey the same rules as defined for a broadcast service in 9.1.1, "[Basic lifecycle control](#)" on page 188. So, for example, currently running applications will be stopped if they are not listed to be runnable in the stored service's AIT information.

Hence there is no requirement to execute a stored services simultaneously with a broadcast service or application.

Stored applications running as part of a stored service shall:

- Execute with the [Application identification](#) that was stored with them when they were stored.
- Be able to access a file system using MHP APIs where:
  - any file that is present shall have the same name, relative path as it did in the broadcast file system.
  - any API providing byte level access to the data of a file shall return the same data as was broadcast.
  - the set stored may be a superset of the files listed in the [Application description file](#).

NOTE: This does not preclude the implementation also storing an optimised representation of files that would be presented to certain APIs. For example, this allows class files to be precompiled for subsequent presentation a the class loader.

The results of an application attempting to access files or directories above the directory that originally contained the [Application description file](#) are implementation dependant but shall either succeed or fail using the failure modes specified for the mechanism used.

When a stored service is started, any previously running streamed media decoders shall continue to run. It is the responsibility of applications to stop them if so required. Any resources used by such streamed media decoders shall have the lowest possible priority in any resource conflicts.

A stored service has the same lifecycle semantics as other services types (such as broadcast). So, when a stored service is selected the stored AIT information is inspected to determine which (if any) applications should auto start and which (if any) currently running applications are allowed to continue running by virtue of being included in the stored service.

NOTE: Currently, no API has been defined that would allow the addition of externally authorised applications to a stored service.

A stored service is built up by identifying applications from a broadcast service. It is not a copy of a broadcast service.

When an application is added to a stored service, the following information shall be stored:

- The [storage\\_property](#) and [version](#) information from the [Application storage descriptor](#) (see 10.14.2 on page 244).
- Sufficient information to be able to reconstruct the `application_descriptors_loop` (e.g. so that it can be returned by the `org.dvb.application.AppAttributes.getProperty()` method).
- The application type.
- The [Application identification](#).
- At least all those files listed in the [Application description file](#) with [priority](#) of "critical".
- If the [Application description file](#) lists any MHP security file (such as a signature file or a CRL) then these files shall be stored in the normal way (with due regard to the [priority](#) etc.). However, it is not necessary to list the security files in order to retain the security information as the method of retention of this information is an implementation detail.
- Implementations may store files in addition to those listed in the [Application description file](#).
- Sufficient information about the certificate chain that authenticated the application to be able to determine if any of those certificates have been revoked when it comes to run the application.
- Sufficient information to be able to construct the set of permissions to be granted to the application (this behaviour is equivalent to evaluating the permission request file at the time of launching the application).
- Sufficient information to fully implement the method `DSMCCObject.getSigners` for all signed files which are stored.

Implications of the above are:

- If any non-critical files are needed for the application functionality then the application is responsible for obtaining them in the event that they are not stored.
- No information from AIT common loop descriptors is required to be stored.
- Information from the transport protocol descriptors is only relevant during the storing of the application. When the application is executing from storage it is responsible for creating the transport connections it requires.
- It is not required to store file MIME type as carried by the optional [Content type descriptor](#). The application developer is responsible for ensuring that stored files can be correctly interpreted without relying on this information.
- It is not required to store cache priority information from the [Caching priority descriptor](#). The application developer is responsible for ensuring that dynamic data is not listed in the [Application description file](#).

If applications within a stored service are also listed in a currently selected broadcast service they are runnable with the same constraints as other broadcast applications in the context of that broadcast service. So, as with "[Broadcast service related stored applications](#)", the consequence of storage is to allow better performance.

### 9.7.3 DVB-J Model

For DVB-J applications, APIs required to include some support for these applications include the following.

- "Service Selection API" (see 11.6.2 on page 272)
- "Content Referencing" (see 11.7.6 on page 280) as described in 11.11.12, "Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J" on page 295
- "Protocol Independent SI API" (see 11.6.5 on page 274) as described in 11.11.12, "Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J" on page 295

When a stored service is successfully created using the method `StoredServiceCreator.createStoredApplicationService`, this service shall appear in the list of services maintained by the `SIManager`. It shall be returned by `filterServices` both when passed an instance of `ServiceTypeFilter` constructed with the type `StoredApplicationService.STORED_APPLICATION_SERVICE` and when passed null to list all known services. The method `ServiceContext.select` shall support selecting stored services as identified by instances of `StoredApplicationService` created or returned using all these mechanisms. This is described in more detail in 11.12.2.2, "Modified behaviour of MHP 1.0 APIs" on page 296.

In profiles where application signalling over the interaction channel is supported, the method `SIManager.getService` shall accept instances of `javax.tv.locator.Locator` whose external form is valid "http" and "https" URLs and return a `Service` object. The method `ServiceContext.select` shall support selecting services identified by such service objects. This is described in more detail in 11.11.12, "Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J" on page 295.

### 9.7.4 Common behaviour

The environment in which stand-alone MHP applications are presented or executed shall be the same as for applications related to a conventional DVB service except as detailed below.

- Any existing video & audio running from before the application was started shall continue running. Applications shall not have a mechanism for attaining the identity of any such existing video or audio. Applications wishing to hide any such existing video may cover the full screen area with graphics. Applications have no ability to hide any such existing audio. MHP terminals shall assign the lowest possible resource priority to the presentation of any such existing video and audio.

## 9.8 Lifecycle of internet access applications

### 9.8.1 General issues

MHP terminals supporting the internet access profile shall support at least the execution of one internet access application at one time. There is no requirement to support the execution of more than one internet access application at one time. There is no requirement to support the execution of internet access applications and MHP applications at the same time. MHP terminals where internet access applications and MHP applications can be in memory and executing code at the same time but cannot share access to the screen are allowed. Such MHP terminals shall be considered as supporting internet access applications and MHP applications at the same time in the rest of this document. In these MHP terminals, any MHP applications in the active state may be put in the paused state when they loose access to the screen to an internet access application. This specification is intentionally silent about priorities for access to resources like memory in the event of a conflict between MHP applications and internet access applications.

NOTE: This means that when running internet access applications and MHP applications simultaneously, if memory in the MHP receiver runs low, some implementations may choose to terminate the MHP applications and others may choose to terminate the internet access applications.

### 9.8.2 Starting internet access applications from MHP applications

Where MHP terminals support simultaneous execution of internet access applications and MHP applications at the same time, then the internet access application shall start when requested. The internet access application shall be considered to be a peer of the MHP application and not a child of it. The lifecycle of the internet access application is not constrained by the lifecycle of the MHP application which started it.

Where MHP terminals do not support this simultaneous execution then the MHP application shall be destroyed / killed as part of the starting of the internet access application. In this case, when the end user of the MHP terminal exits the internet access application for reasons other than selecting a "dvb:" link to a service, the MHP terminal shall return to presenting the DVB service (if any) which it was presenting before the internet access application was started. Any MHP applications in this service will be re-started without any previous state using the normal mechanisms defined in version 1.0 of the MHP specification.

The APIs to enable DVB-J applications to manipulate internet access applications are defined in Annex AH, "(normative): Internet client APIs" on page 1007.

### 9.8.3 Selecting DVB services from internet access applications

In MHP, internet access applications shall support end user starting of DVB services (i.e. using the 'dvb:' URL) and MHP applications signalled over the interaction channel (i.e. using an AIT file referenced by an HTTP URL). This shall be handled by the normal service selection mechanism used elsewhere in the MHP specification (e.g. in the implementation of the service selection API).

On MHP terminals which support running internet access applications and MHP services at the same time, the new MHP service shall start running if and only if the service context in which the internet access application is running can support the running of MHP services. If the service context in which the internet access application is running cannot support the running of MHP services then the service selection operation shall fail and this will be reported to any MHP applications listening for service selection events on that service context. If the internet access application was started by an MHP application using the `org.dvb.internet` API, that MHP application is still running and that MHP application has registered for `InternetClientEvents` then if the service selection fails, that application will also receive an `InternetClientFailureEvent` including the locator of the DVB service which failed to be selected.

NOTE: It is up to the MHP application receiving an `InternetClientFailureEvent` to extract the locator for the DVB service which failed to be selected and if it so desires, select it in its own service context. If it doesn't do this then the end-user's starting of the DVB service fails.

If the internet access application was started directly from the navigator and not by an MHP application, the service context used to present any DVB service selected is implementation dependent but shall be one which can support the selection of DVB services.

On MHP terminals which do not support running internet access applications and MHP applications at the same time, the internet access application shall behave as if the end user of the MHP terminal had asked to exit that application. This may result in a platform specific dialogue with the end user, e.g. to ask about saving partly composed email messages as a draft. Depending on the nature of any such dialogue, the selection of the DVB service may fail if the end user of the MHP terminal does not wish to exit the internet access application concerned.

There is no requirement to remember the internet access application which selected a DVB service or to return to that internet access application when leaving the DVB service which it selected. This is the opposite of starting internet access applications from MHP applications.

## 9.9 Plug-ins

Section 5.4 of this specification defines the concept of plug-ins for use in migration situations, for the support of applications in existing content formats. Services and networks using such an approach to migration have a number of choices defined by this specification. Where a service carries one or more applications in an existing content format (referred to as delegated applications), those applications may be signalled either using the native signalling defined for that existing content format or using the AIT based signalling defined in this specification or both. Two types of plug-ins are defined: inter-operable plug-ins and implementation specific-plug-ins. This specification is intentionally silent about the operation and signalling of implementation specific plug-ins. Signalling of inter-operable plug-ins shall be done as defined in 10.13.2, "MHP signalling scenario" on page 242.

The lifecycle of inter-operable plug-ins shall obey the semantics of DVB-J applications concerning service selection operations as defined under the heading "A new service being selected replacing a previously selected one" in section 9.1.4.1 of this specification.

Where the AIT is used to signal delegated applications, the maintainer of the specification for that format shall register with the DVB project to obtain a value for the "application type" field of the AIT (see table 77, "[Application types](#)" on [page 218](#)). Having done this, the maintainer of the specification for the existing content format is responsible for defining any additional descriptors for the AIT which are required for the support of their content format.

# 10 Application Signalling

## 10.1 Introduction

This section covers the following topics:

- how the receiver identifies the applications associated with a service and finds the locations from which to retrieve them
- the signalling that enables the broadcast to manage the lifecycles of applications
- how the receiver can identify the sources of broadcast data required by the applications of a service

Much of the signalling is generic. For example, the [Application descriptor](#) is independent of the application representation. Other signalling is specific to the application representation or transport protocol (such as the [DVB-J application descriptor](#) and the [IP signalling descriptor](#)).

### 10.1.1 Summary of common signalling

The minimum signalling requirements for any MHP applications are summarised as follows:

- PMT with [Application Signalling Descriptor](#) to identify the service component carrying the [Application Information Table](#).
- [Application Information Table](#) with the following information in its common descriptor loop:
  - [Transport protocol descriptor](#) (all applications descriptions shall be within the scope of at least one [Transport protocol descriptor](#). These can be placed in either or both of the descriptor loops)
- [Application Information Table](#) with the following information in its application information descriptor loop:
  - [Application descriptor](#)
  - [Application name descriptor](#)

### 10.1.2 Summary of additional signalling for DVB-J applications

The minimum additional signalling required for DVB-J applications are summarised as follows:

- [Application Information Table](#) with the following information in its application information descriptor loop:
  - [DVB-J application descriptor](#)
  - [DVB-J application location descriptor](#)

### 10.1.3 Summary of additional signalling for DVB-HTML applications

The minimum additional signalling required for DVB-HTML applications are summarised as follows:

- [Application Information Table](#) with the following information in its application information descriptor loop:
  - [DVB-HTML application descriptor](#)
  - [DVB-HTML application location descriptor](#)

### 10.1.4 Summary of additional signalling for applications carried via OC

In either the "common" (first) descriptor loop or the "application" (inner) descriptors loop:

- [Transport protocol descriptor](#), with the selector bytes containing the OC specific information as defined in table 95

### 10.1.5 Summary of additional signalling for applications carried via IP

[Application Information Table](#) with the following information in its common descriptor loop:

- [IP signalling descriptor](#)

In either the "common" (first) descriptor loop or the "application" (inner) descriptors loop:

- [Transport protocol descriptor](#), with the selector bytes containing the IP specific information as defined in table 96.

### 10.1.6 How to add a new scheme (informative)

The signalling scheme is intended to be extensible with regard to the application representations and transport protocols that are supported. The areas that need to be addressed when doing this are summarised below.

To add further transport protocols:

- Extend table 94, "[Semantic of selector bytes](#)" on page 230
- Possibly define further specialist descriptors such as the [IP signalling descriptor](#)

To add further application representations:

- Define further specialist descriptors such as the 10.9, "[DVB-J specific descriptors](#)" on page 235
- Define the application type specific life cycle control codes in 10.6, "[Control of application life cycle](#)" on page 221.

Where constant values are registered by this specification extend the table 107, "[Registry of constant values](#)" on page 240.

### 10.1.7 Service information

See 10.12, "[Service Information](#)" on page 241.

## 10.2 Program Specific Information

The elementary stream (inner) loop of the PMT for a DVB service supporting one or more MHP applications must reference streams for the following:

- location of the stream transporting the [Application Information Table](#)
- location of the stream(s) transporting the application code and data

### 10.2.1 Application signalling stream

The elementary stream information for the PMT entry describing the elementary stream carrying the [Application Information Table](#) has the following characteristics:

- The stream\_type is set to 0x05 (ITU-T Rec. H.222.0 | ISO/IEC 13818-1 private sections).
- An [Application Signalling Descriptor](#)

There may be more than one elementary stream carrying application signalling information for a service.

### 10.2.2 Data broadcast streams

The minimum signalling in the PMT associated with data broadcast components is the value of the PMT stream\_type field required by the DVB data broadcasting specification ([ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#)) for the transport protocol. The full details of the data broadcast protocol, the location of its "principal" component etc. are provided in the AIT (see 10.4, "[Application Information Table](#)" on page 216).

Optionally the PMT may include [Data broadcast id descriptors](#).

NOTE: Inclusion of [Data broadcast id descriptors](#) enables receivers to start mounting the file system that delivers applications concurrently with acquiring the AIT that identifies which applications are of interest. Enabling this concurrent operation may allow receivers to accelerate their activation of an interactive application. See [B.2.10, "Mounting an Object Carousel" on page 478](#).

The [Data broadcast id descriptor](#) identifies the "principal" component of the data broadcast. The detailed semantics of this optional signalling reflects the transport protocol. For example, in the case of a DVB Object Carousel it identifies the component carrying the DSI.

There may also be certain protocol specific descriptors in the PMT. For example, the Object Carousel requires the inclusion of the [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#) (see [B.2.10, "Mounting an Object Carousel" on page 478](#)).

In its minimum form (with no selector information) a [Data broadcast id descriptor](#) just identifies the "principal" component. This optionally may be extended with selector information that identifies the application types of the autostart applications delivered by that data broadcast. See [10.7.2, "Data broadcast id descriptor" on page 224](#).

## 10.3 Notation

### 10.3.1 reserved

The term "reserved" when used in the clause defining the coded bit stream, indicates that the value may be used in the future for ISO defined extensions. Unless otherwise specified within the present chapter all "reserved" bits shall be set to "1".

### 10.3.2 reserved\_future\_use

The term "reserved\_future\_use", when used in the clause defining the coded bit stream, indicates that the value may be used in the future for ETSI defined extensions. Unless otherwise specified within the present chapter all "reserved\_future\_use" bits shall be set to "1".

## 10.4 Application Information Table

The [Application Information Table](#) (AIT) provides full information on the data broadcast, the required activation state of applications carried by it etc.

Data in the AIT allows the broadcaster to request that the receiver change the activation state of an application.

### 10.4.1 Data errors

AITs which contain errors shall be processed as follows:-

- An error in a descriptor shall result in that descriptor being silently discarded. Processing of that descriptor loop shall continue with the next descriptor (if any). The scope of error detection of a descriptor should be limited to the application information section in which it is carried.
- An error in an application loop outside a descriptor shall result in that entry in the application loop being silently discarded. Processing of that application loop shall continue with the next entry (if any).

NOTE: The consequence of the above is that an error in a mandatory descriptor which results in that descriptor being silently ignored may then result in a application loop which is missing such a mandatory descriptor. Hence that application loop shall also be silently ignored.

- An error in an application information section outside of an application loop shall result in that entire application information section being silently discarded. Processing of the AIT shall continue with the next application information section (if any).

### 10.4.2 AIT transmission and monitoring

MHP terminals shall monitor the PMT for changes in the number of AIT elementary streams present. Changes shall be detected within 1 second.



The minimum repetition rate for each AIT subtable is 10 seconds. The AIT shall be carried in an elementary stream which is not scrambled.

Provided that AITs for the selected service are delivered on 3 or fewer elementary streams then the maximum time interval between the moment the AIT is updated and the moment the new version is detected by the MHP shall be no more than 30 seconds.

Note If broadcasts use more than 3 elementary streams to deliver AITs then receiver response time may degrade in an unpredictable way.

The MHP terminal is only required to monitor AIT sections for application types that it can decode. The application types a terminal can decode include those types for which the terminal has available interoperable plug-ins (see figure 7, "Illustrative plug-in implementation options" on page 57). Available inter-operable plug-ins shall include those MHP applications of application types it can already decode which are signalled with plug-in descriptors (see 10.13.4, "Plug-in descriptor" on page 243).

The set of application types listed in the application database reflects the set of AIT sections being monitored. So, this may be a subset of the application types being broadcast in the case that the broadcast carries a superset of the terminal's capabilities.

### 10.4.3 Optimised AIT signalling

The optional `AIT_version_number` carried by the `Application Signalling Descriptor` allows a possible optimisation of receiver burden as it allows receivers to acquire the AIT only after they see changes in the AIT version advertised in the PMT.

See 10.7.1, "Application Signalling Descriptor" on page 223.

### 10.4.4 Visibility of AIT

If an application tunes away from a transport stream where its signalling is carried without selecting a new service, it will continue running although the AIT is not visible.

In MHP terminals with multiple network interfaces, if the AIT of the selected service is visible via any of them, then the AIT signalling is used as normal.

### 10.4.5 Definition of sub-table for the AIT

All sections on the same PID with the AIT `table_id` and the same value of `application_type` are members of the same sub-table.

### 10.4.6 Syntax of the AIT

The Application Information Section describes applications and their associated information. Each Application Information Section includes one "common" descriptor loop at the top level for descriptors that are shared between applications of that sub table and a loop of applications. Each application in the application loop has an "application" descriptor loop containing the descriptors associated with that application.

Like DVB SI tables, the scope of common loop descriptors is the sub-table. So, any descriptors present in the common descriptor loop apply to all sections of the sub-table. Typically, common descriptors would normally only be present in section 0 of a sub-table, unless there was not enough space.

Like other DVB SI tables, any strings contained in these tables shall not have null terminations.

**Table 76 : Application Information Section syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)**

|  | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|--|------------|------------|
| <code>application_information_section() {</code> |            |            |
| <code>table_id</code>                            | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>section_syntax_indicator</code>            | 1          | bslbf      |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>                 | 1          | bslbf      |
| <code>reserved</code>                            | 2          | bslbf      |

**Table 76 : Application Information Section syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|---|------------|------------|
| <code>section_length</code>   | 12         | uimsbf     |
| <code>test_application_flag</code>  | 1          | bslbf      |
| <code>application_type</code>   | 15         | uimsbf     |
| <code>reserved</code>   | 2          | bslbf      |
| <code>version_number</code>   | 5          | uimsbf     |
| <code>current_next_indicator</code>   | 1          | bslbf      |
| <code>section_number</code>   | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>last_section_number</code>  | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>  | 4          | bslbf      |
| <code>common_descriptors_length</code>  | 12         | uimsbf     |
| <code>for(i=0;i&lt;N;i++){</code><br><code>descriptor()</code><br><code>}</code>                                    |            |            |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>  | 4          | bslbf      |
| <code>application_loop_length</code>  | 12         | uimsbf     |
| <code>for(i=0;i&lt;N;i++){</code><br><code>application_identifier()</code><br><code>application_control_code</code> | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>  | 4          | bslbf      |
| <code>application_descriptors_loop_length</code>  | 12         | uimsbf     |
| <code>for(j=0;j&lt;N;j++){</code><br><code>descriptor()</code><br><code>}</code><br><code>}</code>                  |            |            |
| <code>CRC_32</code>   | 32         | rpchof     |
| <code>}</code>  |            |            |

**table\_id:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x74` identifies this table.

**section\_syntax\_indicator:** The `section_syntax_indicator` is a 1-bit field which shall be set to "1".

**section\_length:** This is a 12-bit field, the first two bits of which shall be '00'. The remaining 10 bits specify the number of bytes of the section starting immediately following the `section_length` field, and including the `CRC_32`. The value in this field shall not exceed 1021 (0x3FD).

**test\_application\_flag:** This 1-bit field when set indicates an application which is transmitted for the purposes of receiver testing and which shall not be started or listed in any API or displayed in any user interface by MHP receivers under normal operational conditions. The means (if any) by which an MHP receiver is put into a mode where applications signalled with this bit set are treated as if this field is set to zero is implementation dependent but should not be one which typical end-users might discover on their own.

**application\_type:** This is a 15-bit field which identifies the type of the applications described in this AIT sub\_table. See table 77.

**Table 77 : Application types**

| application_type | description                      |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| 0x0000           | <code>reserved_future_use</code> |
| 0x0001           | DVB-J application                |
| 0x0002           | DVB-HTML application             |
| 0x0003...0x7FFF  | subject to registration with DVB |

**version\_number:** This 5-bit field is the version number of the sub\_table. The version\_number shall be incremented by 1 when a change in the information carried within the sub\_table occurs. When it reaches value "31", it wraps around to "0".

**current\_next\_indicator:** This 1-bit indicator shall be set to "1".

**section\_number:** This 8-bit field gives the number of the section. The section\_number of the first section in the sub\_table shall be "0x00". The section\_number shall be incremented by 1 with each additional section with the same table\_id, and application\_type.

**last\_section\_number:** This 8-bit field specifies the number of the last section (that is, the section with the highest section\_number) of the sub\_table of which this section is part.

**common\_descriptors\_length:** This 12-bit field gives the total length in bytes of the following descriptors. The descriptors in this descriptor loop apply for all of the applications contained in this AIT sub\_table.

**application\_control\_code:** This 8-bit field controls the state of the application. The semantics of this field is application type dependant. See 10.6, "Control of application life cycle" on page 221.

**application\_loop\_length:** This 12-bit field gives the total length in bytes of the following loop containing application information.

**application\_identifier():** This 48 bit field identifies the application. The structure of this field is defined in 10.5, "Application identification" on page 220.

**application\_descriptors\_loop\_length:** This 12-bit field gives the total length in bytes of the following descriptors. The descriptors in this loop apply to the specific application.

**CRC\_32:** This is a 32-bit field that contains the CRC value that gives a zero output of the registers in the decoder defined in annex B of EN 300 468 after processing the entire section.

### 10.4.7 Use of private descriptors in the AIT

Private descriptors may be included in the AIT provided that they are in the scope of a DVB-SI [4] private data specifier descriptor. The scope rules for the private data specifier descriptor are as follows:

- If this descriptor is located within any descriptor loop of the AIT, then any specifier identified within this descriptor loop applies to all following descriptors and user-defined values in the particular descriptor loop until the end of the descriptor loop, or until another occurrence of a private\_data\_specifier\_descriptor.
- The use of the descriptor in the common (first) descriptor loop does not apply to descriptors or user-defined values in the application (second) descriptor loop.

### 10.4.8 Text encoding in AIT

Unless otherwise specified, all fields interpreted as text strings in the AIT shall be encoded as UTF8 (see 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70). See also 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377.

### 10.4.9 AIT file

#### 10.4.9.1 Syntax

The interaction channel encoding of the AIT into the AIT file is as follows:

- A single file shall contain all of the data
- The file shall contain a concatenation of Application Information Sections (specified in MHP 1.0)

- The possibly multiple sections shall be ordered as follows:
  - ascending order of `application_type`
  - within a single value of `application_type` in ascending order of `section_number`
- All sections shall have `current_next_indicator` set to '1'

## 10.4.9.2 Syntactic restrictions

### 10.4.9.2.1 Transport protocols

The only allowed transport protocol type has id value `0x0003`. See table 93, "Protocol\_id" on page 230.

### 10.4.9.3 Semantics

The AIT file shall be loaded once during service selection. There is no requirement to monitor or poll the AIT file for any subsequent changes except as part of a subsequent service selection operation referring to the same AIT file.

Consequences of this are:

- Only the AUTOSTART and PRESENT application control codes (of those defined in MHP 1.0) are appropriate.
- No standard mechanism for dynamic lifecycle control is provided.

NOTE: If dynamic lifecycle control is required application private mechanisms could be used. For example, a TCP connection over the interaction channel to a controlling server.

- Changes made to the AIT file after service selection shall not be detected or reported.

### 10.4.9.4 MIME type

The MIME type for an AIT file shall be "application/dvb.ait". The file extension shall be ".ait".

## 10.5 Application identification

### 10.5.1 Encoding

Each application is associated with an application identifier. This is a 6 byte string with the following structure:

**Table 78 : Application identifier syntax**

|                                       | No. of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|------------|-------|
| <code>application_identifier {</code> |             |            |       |
| <code>organisation_id</code>          | 32          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>application_id</code>           | 16          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>}</code>                        |             |            |       |

**organisation\_id:** This 32 bit field is a globally unique value identifying the organisation that is responsible for the application. These values are registered in ETSI TR 101 162 [10]. Values of zero shall not be encoded.

This field is reproduced in the `organisationName` field of the subject name in the "leaf" certificate of an authenticated application (see 12.5.6, "subject" on page 312).

Note The inclusion of this field in the leaf certificate provides authentication of the value.

**application\_id:** This 16 bit field uniquely identifies the application function. This is allocated by the organisation registered with the `organisation_id` who decides the policy for allocation within the organisation. Values of zero shall not be encoded.

The application id values are divided into two ranges: one for unsigned applications and one for signed applications. This is for security reasons (see 12.1.1, "Overview of the security framework for applications" on page 301). Applications transmitted as unsigned shall use an application id from the unsigned applications range and applications transmitted as signed shall use an application id from the signed applications range.

**Table 79 : Value ranges for application\_id**

| application_id values | Use   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 0x0000...0x3fff       | Application_ids for unsigned applications                         |
| 0x4000...0x7fff       | Application_ids for signed applications                           |
| 0x8000...0xffffd      | Reserved for future use by DVB                                    |
| 0xffffe               | Special wildcard value for signed applications of an organisation |
| 0xffff                | Special wildcard value for all application of an organisation     |

Application id values 0xffff and 0xffffe are wild cards. They shall not be used to identify an application but, for example, are allowed for use in the [External application authorisation descriptor](#) see 10.7.5 on page 229. The value 0xffff matches all applications with the same [organisation\\_id](#). The value 0xffffe matches all signed applications with the same [organisation\\_id](#).

The same application identifier may be used in different application types for applications performing essentially the same function.

The same `application_identifier()` shall appear only once within the set of AIT subtables of the same `application_type` inside a service.

## 10.5.2 Effects on life cycle

The main concepts here are:

- On service change, currently running, previously broadcast, applications whose `service_bound_flag` is set to "0" shall (subject to resource restrictions) continue running if their application identifier is listed in the [Application Information Table](#) of the newly selected service.
- On service change, currently running, previously broadcast, applications whose `service_bound_flag` is set to "0" shall (subject to resource restrictions) continue running if their application identifier is suitably listed in the [External application authorisation descriptor](#) even if they are not part of the current service.
- Only a single instance of an application with a particular application identifier is allowed to execute at any time. So, if an application is already running then another instance of the same application shall not be launched. This affects the behaviour with respect to the application launching API and autostart applications after service selection.
- If the application signalling for an application has the "`service_bound_flag`" is set to "1", then the application is killed upon service selection.

See also S, "(normative): [Application Listing and Launching](#)" on page 802.

## 10.5.3 Authentication of application identification

See 12.5.6, "subject" on page 312.

## 10.6 Control of application life cycle

The broadcast signalling provides a mechanism for broadcasters to control the life cycle of standard application types. See also 9.1, "[Broadcast MHP applications](#)" on page 188.

## 10.6.1 Entering and leaving the domain of an application

The domain of an application is defined as the set of services where the application is listed in the AIT. This can be either as applications listed in the application (inner) loop of the AIT or as applications listed in the [External application authorisation descriptor](#). Services where the application is not listed in either of these two ways are outside of the domain of the application.

## 10.6.2 Dynamic control of the application life cycle

The dynamic control of the application life cycle is signalled through the [application\\_control\\_code](#) for the application in the AIT.

This control code allows the broadcaster to signal to the receiver what to do with the application with regard to its lifecycle. The set of codes have some differences between application types and so are defined on an application type specific basis.

If the receiver receives a code that it does not recognise the application shall continue in its current state.

When a change in these control codes causes a state change of a running MHP application, an `AppStateChangeEvent` shall be generated to all DVB-J applications which have registered to receive such events for the application concerned.

### 10.6.2.1 DVB-J

The application control codes for DVB-J applications are listed in [80](#).

**Table 80 : DVB-J application control code values**

| code        | identifier | semantics  |
|-------------|------------|--|
| 0x00        |            | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>  |
| 0x01        | AUTOSTART  | The file system element(s) (e.g. an Object Carousel module) containing the class implementing the Xlet interface is loaded, The class implementing the Xlet is loaded into the VM and an Xlet object is instantiated, and the application is started subject to usual restrictions, etc. |
| 0x02        | PRESENT    | Indicates that the application is present in the service, but is not autostarted.  |
| 0x03        | DESTROY    | When the control code changes from AUTOSTART or PRESENT to DESTROY, the destroy method of the Xlet is called (with the <code>unconditional</code> parameter set to <code>false</code> ) by the application manager and the application is allowed to destroy itself gracefully.          |
| 0x04        | KILL       | When the control code changes from AUTOSTART or PRESENT to KILL, the destroy method of the Xlet is called (with the <code>unconditional</code> parameter set to <code>true</code> ) by the application manager.  |
| 0x05        |            | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>  |
| 0x06        | REMOTE     | This identifies a remote application that is only launchable after service selection.  |
| 0x07...0xFF |            | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>  |

See [9.2.3, "DVB-J Application Lifecycle"](#) on page 193.

## 10.6.2.2 DVB-HTML

The application control codes for DVB-HTML applications are listed in 81.

**Table 81 : DVB-HTML application control code values**

| code        | identifier | semantics   |
|-------------|------------|---|
| 0x00        |            | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>   |
| 0x01        | AUTOSTART  | The <a href="#">Application Entry Point</a> of the DVB-HTML application is loaded. This is loaded into the user agent, and the DVB-HTML actor is created (in the <a href="#">Loading</a> state) and the DVB-HTML application is started. When these steps are complete the DVB-HTML actor is in the <a href="#">Active</a> state. |
| 0x02        | PRESENT    | Indicates that the DVB-HTML application is present in the service, but is not autostarted.  |
| 0x03        | DESTROY    | When the control code changes from AUTOSTART or PRESENT to DESTROY, the DVB-HTML actor goes to the <a href="#">Destroyed</a> state.   |
| 0x04        | KILL       | When the control code changes from AUTOSTART or PRESENT or DESTROY to KILL the DVB-HTML actor goes to the <a href="#">Killed</a> state.   |
| 0x05        | PREFETCH   | As for AUTOSTART except that the DVB-HTML actor holds on entry to the <a href="#">Active</a> state and waits for a trigger before completely transitioning to the <a href="#">Active</a> state.   |
| 0x06        | REMOTE     | This identifies a remote application that is only launchable after service selection.   |
| 0x07...0xFF |            | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>   |

See 9.3.2, "[DVB-HTML Application Lifecycle](#)" on page 200.

## 10.7 Generic descriptors

### 10.7.1 Application Signalling Descriptor

The application signalling descriptor is defined for use in the elementary stream loop of the PMT where the `stream_type` of the elementary stream is 0x05. It identifies that the elementary stream carries an [Application Information Table](#).

The application signalling descriptor optionally carries a loop of [application\\_type](#) and [version\\_number](#) pairs. These allow the descriptor to optionally reproduce the current version number state of the associated [Application Information Table](#). This allows the receiver to be informed of the version of the AIT as a side effect of monitoring the PMT (which is expected to be monitored closely, under normal conditions). See 10.4.3, "[Optimised AIT signalling](#)" on page 217.

When the MHP detects a change of the content of the application signalling descriptor, it shall acquire the new version of the AIT and respond accordingly.

The presence of the `application_type` and `AIT_version` subfields is optional. If not present then the [AIT transmission and monitoring](#) applies, see 10.4.2, "AIT transmission and monitoring" on page 216.

**Table 82 : application signalling descriptor syntax**

|  | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|--|------------|------------|
| <code>application_signalling_descriptor() {</code> |            |            |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                        | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                     | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>for( i=0; i&lt;N; i++ ){</code>              |            |            |
| <code>application_type</code>                      | 16         | uimsbf     |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>                   | 3          | bslbf      |
| <code>AIT_version_number</code>                    | 5          | uimsbf     |
| <code>}</code>                                     |            |            |
| <code>}</code>                                     |            |            |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x6F` identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8 bit field indicates the number of bytes following the descriptor length field.

**application\_type:** This 16 bit field identifies the application type of an [Application Information Table](#) sub-table that is on this elementary stream.

**AIT\_version\_number:** This 5 bit field provides the "current" version number of the [Application Information Table](#) sub-table identified by the application type field.

## 10.7.2 Data broadcast id descriptor

The data broadcast id descriptor is defined for use in the elementary stream information of the PMT. The descriptor identifies:

- the transport format of the data broadcast whose "principal component" is on this elementary stream.

The semantics of "principal component" is transport protocol specific.

- the set of application types for any autostart applications delivered by the data broadcast.

For a single elementary stream more than one data broadcast id descriptor may be used to list additional applications types, however, each descriptor shall indicate the same data broadcast id.

More than one elementary stream may have a data broadcast id descriptor indicating that auto start applications are carried by more than one delivery mechanism (for example a single service may have more than one object carousel delivering auto start applications).

### 10.7.2.1 Generic descriptor

The data broadcast id descriptor is defined in a generic form by the DVB SI-DAT specification (illustrated in table 83). Where no "id specific data" is provided the descriptor just identifies the "principal" component of a data broadcast.

**Table 83 : generic data broadcast id descriptor syntax**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---|------------|------------|-------|
| <code>data_broadcast_id_descriptor() {</code> |            |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                   | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>data_broadcast_id</code>                | 16         | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for (i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>         |            |            |       |
| <code>id specific data</code>                 | 8          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>}</code>                                |            |            |       |
| <code>}</code>                                |            |            |       |



### 10.7.2.2 MHP data broadcast id descriptor

When the data broadcast id is one of those defined by this specification (see table 107) the syntax of the data broadcast id descriptor is as shown in table 84. This extends the generic descriptor with an optional list of application types for which autostart applications may exist within the data broadcast. This list provides a hint to allow the MHP terminal to prioritise connection to a data broadcast when several are provided by the service. If no list is provided then the data broadcast id descriptor is silent on the types of autostart applications that may be carried by the data broadcast. If the application list is not empty, then the data broadcast shall not include autostart applications of application types other than those in the list. It is not required that the data broadcast always include autostart applications of all types in the list.

**Table 84 : MHP data broadcast id descriptor syntax**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---|------------|------------|-------|
| <code>data_broadcast_id_descriptor() {</code> |            |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                   | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>data_broadcast_id</code>                | 16         | uimsbf     |       |
| for (i=0; i<N; i++) {                         |            |            |       |
| <code>application_type</code>                 | 16         | uimsbf     |       |
| }   |            |            |       |
| }   |            |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value 0x66 identifies this descriptor.

**data\_broadcast\_id:** This 16 bit field indicates the format of the data broadcast transport protocol. These values are registered in ETR 162.

**application\_type:** This 16 bit field indicates the type of the application (i.e. the engine or plug-in on which the application can be executed). See table 77 on page 218.

### 10.7.3 Application descriptor

Exactly one instance of the application descriptor shall be contained in every "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT.

**Table 85 : application descriptor syntax**

|  | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|--|------------|------------|-------|
| <code>application_descriptor() {</code>  |            |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>              | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>           | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>application_profiles_length</code> | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| for( i=0; i<N; i++ ) {                   |            |            |       |
| <code>application_profile</code>         | 16         | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>version.major</code>               | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>version.minor</code>               | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>version.micro</code>               | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| }  |            |            |       |
| <code>service_bound_flag</code>          | 1          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>visibility</code>                  | 2          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>         | 5          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>application_priority</code>        | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| for( i=0; i<N; i++ ) {                   |            |            |       |
| <code>transport_protocol_label</code>    | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| }  |            |            |       |
| }  |            |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value 0x00 identifies this descriptor.

**application\_profiles\_length:** This 8-bit field indicates the length of the application\_profile loop in bytes.

**application\_profile:** This 16 bit field is an integer value which represents the application type specific profile. This indicates that a receiver implementing one of the profiles listed in this loop is capable of executing the application.

**version.major:** This 8 bit field carries the numeric value of the major sub-field of the profile version number.

**version.minor:** This 8 bit field carries the numeric value of the minor sub-field of the profile version number.

**version.micro:** This 8 bit field carries the numeric value of the micro sub-field of the profile version number.

The four above fields indicate the minimum profile on which an application will run. Applications may test for features found in higher (backwards compatible) profiles and exploit them. The MHP terminal shall only launch applications if the following expression is true for at least one of the signalled profiles:

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{application\_profile} \in \text{terminal\_profiles\_set}) \\ & \wedge \{ (\text{application\_version.major} < \text{terminal\_version.major}(\text{application\_profile})) \\ & \vee [ (\text{application\_version.major} = \text{terminal\_version.major}(\text{application\_profile})) \\ & \wedge ( \{ \text{application\_version.minor} < \text{terminal\_version.minor}(\text{application\_profile}) \} \\ & \vee \{ [\text{application\_version.minor} = \text{terminal\_version.minor}(\text{application\_profile})] \\ & \wedge [\text{application\_version.micro} \leq \text{terminal\_version.micro}(\text{application\_profile})] \} ) ] \} \} \end{aligned}$$

Where:

$\in$  represents "belongs to the set of"  
 $\wedge$  represents "logical AND"  
 $\vee$  represents "logical OR"

See table 141, "Profile encoding" on page 387 for the encoding of these values.

**service\_bound\_flag:** If this field is set to "1", the application is only associated with the current service and so the process of killing the application shall start at the beginning of the service change regardless of the contents of the destination AIT.

**visibility:** This 2 bit field specifies whether the application is suitable to be offered to the end-user for them to decide if the application should be launched. Table 86 lists the allowed values of this field.

NOTE: This applies equally to any generic launching menu application provided in the MHP service and to any application launching user interface provided in the MHP navigator.

**Table 86 : Definition of visibility states for applications**

| visibility | description   |
|------------|---|
| 00         | This application shall not be visible either to applications via an application listing API or to users via the navigator with the exception of any error reporting or logging facility, etc. |
| 01         | This application shall not be visible to users but shall be visible to applications via an application listing API.   |
| 10         | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>   |
| 11         | This application can be visible to users and shall be visible to applications via the application listing API.  |

NOTE: For example, in a service offering a number of games to the end-user, these values would be used as follows:

00 - the autostart generic launcher application offering the end user the choice of which game to launch

11 - the games which the end-user can chose between

01 - the common server application which all the games use to communicate with a server over the interaction channel.

**application\_priority:** This field identifies a relative priority between the applications signalled in this service.

- Where there is more than one application with the same [Application identification](#) this priority shall be used to determine which application is started.
- Where there are insufficient resources to continue running a set of applications, this priority shall be used to determine which applications to stop or pause.
- A larger integer value indicates higher priority.
- If two applications have the same application identification and the same priority, the MHP may make an implementation-dependent choice on which to start.

**transport\_protocol\_label:** This 8-bit field identifies a transport protocol that delivers the application. See [transport\\_protocol\\_label](#) in [Transport protocol descriptor](#).

If more than one protocol is signalled then each protocol is an alternative delivery mechanism. The ordering indicates the broadcaster's view of which transport connection will provide the best user experience (first is best). This may be used as a hint by MHP terminal implementations. It shall be evaluated only once during the life time of the application.

The protocol selection by the MHP terminal may depend on a variety of factors including user preferences and the performance of the transport connections to the terminal.

## 10.7.4 User information descriptors

The user information descriptors complement the "[Application descriptor](#)" by providing information suitable for presentation to the user (where the "[Application descriptor](#)" provides technical information for automatic use by the receiver).

These descriptors are defined for use in the application loop of the AIT.

### 10.7.4.1 Application name descriptor

Exactly one instance of this descriptor shall be included in the application information of an application. The application name shall distinguish the application and shall be informative to the user.

**Table 87 : application name descriptor syntax**

|  | No. of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|--|-------------|------------|-------|
| <code>application_name_descriptor() {</code> |             |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                  | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>               | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for (i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>        |             |            |       |
| <code>ISO_639_language_code</code>           | 24          | bslbf      |       |
| <code>application_name_length</code>         | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for (i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>        |             |            |       |
| <code>application_name_char</code>           | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>}</code>                               |             |            |       |
| <code>}</code>                               |             |            |       |
| <code>}</code>                               |             |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x01` identifies this descriptor.

**ISO\_639\_language\_code:** This 24-bit field contains the [ISO 639.2 \[19\]](#) three character language code of the language of the following bouquet name. Both [ISO 639.2/B](#) and [ISO 639.2/T](#) may be used.

Each character is coded into 8 bits according to [ISO 8859-1 \[20\]](#) and inserted in order into the 24-bit field.

**application\_name\_length:** This 8 bit unsigned integer specifies the number of bytes in the application name.

**application\_name\_char:** This field carries a string (not null terminated) of characters encoded in accordance with annex A of ETS 300 468. The string names the application in a manner intended to be informative to the user.

#### 10.7.4.2 Application icons descriptor

Zero or one instance of this descriptor shall be included in the application information of an application. It allows icons to be associated with the application. The content format for these possible icons shall be restricted PNG as specified in section 15.1, "PNG - restrictions" on page 385.

**Table 88 : application icons descriptor syntax**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---|------------|------------|-------|
| <code>application_icons_descriptor() {</code> |            |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                   | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>icon_locator_length</code>              | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| for (i=0; i<N; i++) {                         |            |            |       |
| <code>icon_locator_byte</code>                | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| }   |            |            |       |
| <code>icon_flags</code>                       | 16         | bslbf      |       |
| for (i=0; i<N; i++) {                         |            |            |       |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>              | 8          | bslbf      |       |
| }   |            |            |       |
| }   |            |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x0B` identifies this descriptor.

**icon\_locator\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the number of characters in the string that prefixes standard icon file name.

**icon\_locator\_byte:** This 8 bit value is one byte of the icon locator string.

The icon locator is the first part of the string that specifies the location of the icon files. This is application type dependant. See table 89. The `icon_locator` shall not end with a "/" slash character.

**Table 89 : Icon locator semantics**

| application_type | description   |
|------------------|---|
| 0x0000           | <code>reserved_future_use</code>  |
| 0x0001           | For DVB-J this is a path relative to the base directory of the application as defined in 10.9.2, "DVB-J application location descriptor" on page 236.       |
| 0x0002           | For DVB-HTML this is a path relative to the physical root of the application as defined in 10.10.2, "DVB-HTML application location descriptor" on page 237. |
| 0x0003...0xFFFF  | <code>reserved_future_use</code>  |

**icon\_flags:** This 16 bit field carries a value which is the bitwise OR of the flag bits that identify the icons that are provided for the application. The flag bits are defined in table 90.

**Table 90 : Definition of different icon flags (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Icon flag bits      | Description of icon size and pixel aspect ratio      |
|---------------------|--|
| 0000 0000 0000 0001 | 32 x 32 for square pixel display                     |
| 0000 0000 0000 0010 | 32 x 32 for broadcast pixels on 4:3 display (note 1) |
| 0000 0000 0000 0100 | 24 x 32 for broadcast pixels on 16:9 display         |
| 0000 0000 0000 1000 | 64 x 64 for square pixel display                     |
| 0000 0000 0001 0000 | 64 x 64 for broadcast pixels on 4:3 display          |

**Table 90 : Definition of different icon flags (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Icon flag bits   | Description of icon size and pixel aspect ratio |
|--|---|
| 0000 0000 0010 0000                                      | 48 x 64 for broadcast pixels on 16:9 display    |
| 0000 0000 0100 0000                                      | 128 x 128 for square pixel display              |
| 0000 0000 1000 0000                                      | 128 x 128 for broadcast pixels on 4:3 display   |
| 0000 0001 0000 0000                                      | 96 x 128 for broadcast pixels on 16:9 display   |
| xxxx xxx0 0000 0000                                      | reserved_future_use                             |
| NOTE 1: approx. 15/16 pixel aspect ratio on 50 Hz system |   |

The file names for the icon files are encoded in a standard way:

```
filename      = icon_locator "/"dvb.icon." hex_string
hex_string    = 4*4hex
hex           = digit | "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F" | "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f"
digit        = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9"
```

An icon file shall contain exactly one icon. The icon contained in the icon file shall have the format specified by the 4 hexadecimal digit postscript of its file name.

NOTE: This means that if the `icon_flags` field of the `application_icons_descriptor` were to have a value indicating the presence of multiple icons, each of the indicated icons would have its own icon file. For example, if `icon_flags` has a value of 0x0005, the directory specified by `icon_locator` would contain two files named `dvb.icon.0004` (for 64x64 square pixel rendering) and `dvb.icon.0001` (for 32x32 square pixel rendering).

## 10.7.5 External application authorisation descriptor

The "common" (first) descriptor loop of the [Application Information Table](#) may contain zero or more external `application_authorisation_descriptors`. Each descriptor contains information about external applications that are allowed to continue to run with the applications listed in this [Application Information Table](#) sub-table but cannot be launched from this service. The external authorization applies to applications with the identified `application_identifier()` that are of the `application_type` identified by the AIT subtable where this descriptor is contained.

**Table 91 : external application authorisation descriptor syntax**

|  | No. of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|--|-------------|------------|-------|
| <code>external_application_authorisation_descriptor() {</code> |             |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                                    | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                                 | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>                           |             |            |       |
| <code>application_identifier()</code>                          |             |            |       |
| <code>application_priority</code>                              | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>}</code>   |             |            |       |
| <code>}</code>   |             |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8-bit integer with value 0x05 identifies this descriptor.

**application\_identifier():** This 48-bit field identifies an application. The structure of this field is defined in 10.5, "Application identification" on page 220.

**application\_priority:** This 8-bit integer specifies the priority that this application assumes in the context of the current service.

If the 0xffff or 0xfffe wildcard is used for the `application_id` within the `application_identifier()` and there are some applications from the same `organisation_id` explicitly signalled in the application loop of the AIT, the priority for those applications shall be the one signalled in the `application_descriptor` (see 10.7.3 on page 225).

See `application_priority` under 10.7.3, "Application descriptor" on page 225.

## 10.8 Transport protocol descriptors

### 10.8.1 Transport protocol descriptor

The transport protocol descriptor identifies the transport protocol associated with a service component and possibly provides protocol dependent information.

The descriptor may be used in either the "common" (first) descriptor loop or the "application" (inner) descriptors loop. When in the "common" loop it applies to all of the applications in that sub-table. Any such descriptors in the "application" loop describe additional transport protocols available to a specific application.

Each application described in this section shall be in the scope of at least one transport protocol descriptor.

**Table 92 : transport protocol descriptor syntax**

|  | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|--|------------|------------|-------|
| <code>transport_protocol_descriptor() {</code> |            |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                    | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                 | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>protocol_id</code>                       | 16         | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>transport_protocol_label</code>          | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>           |            |            |       |
| <code>selector_byte</code>                     | 8          | uimsbf     | N1    |
| <code>}</code>                                 |            |            |       |
| <code>}</code>                                 |            |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value [0x02](#) identifies this descriptor.

**protocol\_id:** An identifier of the protocol used for carrying the applications. The values of the `protocol_id` are be registered here and in ETR162.

**Table 93 : Protocol\_id**

| protocol_id     | description  |
|-----------------|--|
| 0x0000          | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>  |
| 0x0001          | MHP Object Carousel as defined in annex B, "(normative): <a href="#">Object carousel</a> " on page 453.                                    |
| 0x0002          | IP via DVB multiprotocol encapsulation as defined in <a href="#">ETSI EN 301 192 [5]</a> , <a href="#">ETSI TR 101 202 [49]</a>            |
| 0x0003          | Transport via HTTP over the interaction channel as described in <a href="#">10.8.1.3, "Transport via interaction channel"</a> on page 232. |
| 0x0004...0x00FF | Reserved for use by DVB  |
| 0x0100...0xFFFF | Subject to registration in <a href="#">ETSI TR 101 162 [10]</a>  |

**transport\_protocol\_label:** This 8 bit field uniquely identifies a transport protocol within this AIT section. The [Application descriptor](#) refers to this value to identify a transport connection that carries the application.

**selector\_byte:** Additional protocol specific information.

**Table 94 : Semantic of selector bytes**

| protocol_id     | selector byte data   |
|-----------------|--|
| 0x0000          | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>                                |
| 0x0001          | See <a href="#">10.8.1.1 "Transport via OC"</a> .                  |
| 0x0002          | See <a href="#">10.8.1.2 "Transport via IP"</a> .                  |
| 0x0003          | See <a href="#">10.8.1.3 "Transport via interaction channel"</a> . |
| 0x0004...0xFFFF | TBD  |

### 10.8.1.1 Transport via OC

When the protocol ID is 0x0001 the selector bytes in the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) shall be as shown in table 95.

**Table 95 : Syntax of selector bytes for OC transport**

| Syntax  | Bits | Mnemonic |
|---|------|----------|
| <code>remote_connection</code>                | 1    | bslbf    |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>              | 7    | bslbf    |
| <code>if( remote_connection == "1" ) {</code> |      |          |
| <code>original_network_id</code>              | 16   | uimsbf   |
| <code>transport_stream_id</code>              | 16   | uimsbf   |
| <code>service_id</code>                       | 16   | uimsbf   |
| <code>}</code>                                |      |          |
| <code>component_tag</code>                    | 8    | uimsbf   |

**component\_tag:** Identifies the "principal" service component that delivers the application. The identified component is the elementary stream that carries the DSI of the object carousel.

**remote\_connection:** This single bit flag if set to "1" indicates that the transport connection is provided by a service that is different to the one carrying the AIT. Such applications shall not be autostarted by receivers but are visible (subject to the visibility field of the application descriptor) via an application listing API for possible launching by service selection (but not via an application launching API). When this bit is set, the following 3 fields ([original\\_network\\_id](#), [transport\\_stream\\_id](#) and [service\\_id](#)) are included in the selector bytes. This flag shall be set to "0" when the transport connection is provided by the current service.

Applications with this flag set shall have their application control code set to REMOTE (see table 80 on page 222 and 81 on page 223).

See 11.7.2, "Application discovery and launching APIs" on page 276.

**original\_network\_id:** This 16 bit field identifies the DVB-SI original network id of the transport stream that provides the transport connection.

**transport\_stream\_id:** This 16 bit field identifies the MPEG transport stream id of the transport stream that provides the transport connection.

**service\_id:** This 16 bit field identifies the DVB-SI service id of the service that provides the transport connection.

### 10.8.1.2 Transport via IP

When the protocol ID is 0x0002 the selector bytes in the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) shall be as shown in table 96.

This structure includes two important components of the `data_broadcast_descriptor` defined in [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#). It provides all the information necessary for the MHP to acquire applications and application data components delivered by IP protocols. The profiles where this is an optional or mandatory feature are listed in 15, "Detailed platform profile definitions" on page 383.

**Table 96 : Syntax of selector bytes for IP transport (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Syntax  | Bits | Mnemonic |
|---|------|----------|
| <code>remote_connection</code>                | 1    | bslbf    |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>              | 7    | bslbf    |
| <code>if( remote_connection == "1" ) {</code> |      |          |
| <code>original_network_id</code>              | 16   | uimsbf   |
| <code>transport_stream_id</code>              | 16   | uimsbf   |
| <code>service_id</code>                       | 16   | uimsbf   |
| <code>}</code>                                |      |          |
| <code>alignment_indicator</code>              | 1    | bslbf    |
| <code>reserved_future_use</code>              | 7    | bslbf    |

**Table 96 : Syntax of selector bytes for IP transport (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Syntax                                   | Bits | Mnemonic |
|--|------|----------|
| for( i=0; i<N; i++){<br>URL_length       | 8    | uimsbf   |
| for(j=0; j<URL_length; j++){<br>URL_byte | 8    | uimsbf   |
| }<br>}                                   |      |          |

**remote\_connection:** This and the associated 3 fields ([original\\_network\\_id](#), [transport\\_stream\\_id](#) and [service\\_id](#)) have identical syntax and semantics to the fields with the same names under 10.8.1.1, "Transport via OC" on page 231.

**alignment\_indicator:** This 1-bit field indicates the alignment that exists between the bytes of the datagram\_section and the Transport Stream bytes (equivalent to the field with this name defined in the [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#) MPE data\_broadcast\_descriptor).

**URL\_length:** This 8-bit field indicates the number of bytes in the URL.

**URL\_byte:** These bytes form a URL conforming to [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#).

For URL using the "server" field including the host:port notation as defined in [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#), only numeric IP addresses shall be used for identifying IP transmissions carried in the broadcast channel as there is no Domain Name Service in the broadcast-only scenario to be used for resolving names.

IP to MAC mapping shall be done as described in [IETF RFC 1112 \[45\]](#).

NOTE: This specification intentionally does not define or require any URL format to be supported in this descriptor. Hence it cannot be used in an inter-operable way.

### 10.8.1.3 Transport via interaction channel

When the protocol ID is 0x0003 the selector bytes in the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) shall be as shown in table 96, "Syntax of selector bytes for IP transport" on page 231. This allows encoding of a number of URLs. For efficiency when encoding possibly many similar URLs the encoding divides the URL into a shared base part and a set of URL extensions. The set of URLs can identify ZIP ([ZIP \[91\]](#)) files, or base URLs ending in the "/" character, that encapsulate portions of the file system. See 6.4.1.1, "File system logical structure" on page 64 for a description of this file system.

Multiple transport protocol descriptors with the protocol ID value 0x0003 and the same transport protocol label may be provided to define a larger set of URLs to describe the file system.

**Table 97 : Syntax of selector bytes for interaction transport**

| Syntax                                   | Bits | Mnemonic |
|--|------|----------|
| for( i=0; i<N; i++){<br>URL_base_length  | 8    | uimsbf   |
| for( j=0; j<N; j++){<br>URL_base_byte    | 8    | uimsbf   |
| }<br>for( j=0; j<N; j++){<br>URL_length  | 8    | uimsbf   |
| for(k=0; k<URL_length; k++){<br>URL_byte | 8    | uimsbf   |
| }<br>}<br>}                              |      |          |

**URL\_base\_length:** This 8-bit field provides the number of bytes in the base part of the URL.



**URL\_base\_byte:** These bytes form the first part of a HTTP URL conforming to HTTP 1.0 (see [IETF RFC 1945 \[92\]](#)), or the first part of an HTTPS URL conforming to HTTPS (see [IETF RFC 2818 \[112\]](#)). Where an HTTP URL is found, http shall be used as in 6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62. Where an HTTPS URL is found, https shall be used as in 6.3.7.3, "HTTPS" on page 63.

**URL\_extension\_length:** This 8-bit field indicates the number of bytes in the extension part of the URL.

**URL\_extension\_byte:** These bytes form the later part of an HTTP URL conforming to HTTP 1.0 (see [IETF RFC 1945 \[92\]](#)), or the later part of an HTTPS URL conforming to HTTPS 6.3.7.3, "HTTPS" on page 63.

URLs are formed by concatenating the URL extension with the preceding URL base. The URL so formed either identifies a file system directory or a specific ZIP file. See 6.4.1.1, "File system logical structure" on page 64.

## 10.8.2 IP signalling descriptor

The IP signalling descriptor is defined for use either in the "common" or in the "application" loop of the AIT. This descriptor indicates the identification of the organisation providing the IP multicast streams used by all applications (when present in the "common" loop) or by the particular signalled application (when present in the "application" loop). See [ETSI EN 301 192 \[5\]](#) for the definition of the INT.

This descriptor and the INT with action\_type 0x01 shall be used for applications relying on the presence of IP Multicast streams on the broadcast link. The knowledge of the identification present in the descriptor enables to recover the appropriate IP Notification Table (INT) with action\_type 0x01 that contains the correspondence between the multicast IP address and port and the stream localisation.

**Table 98 : Syntax of the IP signalling descriptor**

| Syntax                         | Bits | Mnemonic |
|--------------------------------|------|----------|
| ip_signalling_descriptor ( ) { |      |          |
| descriptor_tag                 | 8    | uimbsf   |
| descriptor_length              | 8    | uimbsf   |
| platform_id                    | 24   | uimbsf   |
| }                              |      |          |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8-bit field with value 0x11 identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8-bit field identifies the number of bytes following the length field.

**platform\_id:** This is a 24 bit field containing a platform\_id of the organisation providing IP/MAC streams on DVB transport streams/services.

Allocations of the value of platform\_id are found in the [ETSI TR 101 162 \[10\]](#).

## 10.8.3 Pre-fetch signalling

### 10.8.3.1 Introduction

This signalling is defined to enable implementations to start fetching files that will be required during the early part of an application's life. Later in an applications' life it can actively request file pre-fetching using API mechanisms. Descriptors in this section do not have a relation to the API-based pre-fetching for this version of this specification.

For one application, the pre-fetch descriptor(s) and possible DII location descriptor present in the AIT shall point to the same transport connection. If the [transport\\_protocol\\_labels](#) present in these descriptors are different, the referenced transport protocol descriptor shall point to the same transport connection (carousel).

This signalling is optional to broadcast and optional for implementations to consider.

### 10.8.3.2 Pre-fetch descriptor

Zero or one pre-fetch descriptors can be included in the "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT. It is defined for use where the `protocol_id` of the transport is `0x0001` (MHP Object Carousel). Each descriptor is associated with a specific [Transport protocol descriptor](#) via the `transport_protocol_label`.

MHP terminals may use this descriptor to improve application start-up time by pre-fetching modules that have the indicated labels (see "[Label descriptor](#)" on page 456).

**Table 99 : Syntax of the pre-fetch descriptor**

| Syntax   | Bits | Mnemonic |
|--|------|----------|
| <code>prefetch_descriptor ( ) {</code>           |      |          |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                      | 8    | uimsbf   |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                   | 8    | uimsbf   |
| <code>transport_protocol_label</code>            | 8    | uimsbf   |
| <code>for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++ ) {</code>            |      |          |
| <code>label_length</code>                        |      |          |
| <code>for(j=0; j&lt;label_length; j++ ) {</code> |      |          |
| <code>label_char</code>                          | 8    | uimsbf   |
| <code>}</code>                                   |      |          |
| <code>prefetch_priority</code>                   | 8    | uimsbf   |
| <code>}</code>                                   |      |          |
| <code>}</code>                                   |      |          |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8-bit field with value `0x0C` identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8-bit field identifies the number of bytes following the descriptor length field.

**transport\_protocol\_label:** This 8-bit field identifies the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) that specifies the object carousel that delivers the modules to which this prefetch descriptor refers. See "[transport\\_protocol\\_label](#)" on page 227.

**label\_length:** This 8-bit field identifies the number of bytes in the module label.

**label\_char:** These 8-bit fields carry an array of bytes that are a module label. This label matches a label on one or more module carried by [Label descriptors](#) in the `userInfo` fields of the `moduleInfo` structure of DIIs (see "[Label descriptor](#)" on page 456).

The same module label may be attached to several modules.

**prefetch\_priority:** A value between 1 and 100 (both inclusive). It expresses a pre-fetching hint of the modules with the corresponding label using the specified priority (100 highest, 1 lowest).

### 10.8.3.3 DII location descriptor

For each application zero or one DII location descriptors can be provided. It can be located in either the "common" (first) or "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT. It is defined for use where the `protocol_id` of the transport is `0x0001` (MHP Object Carousel). Each descriptor is associated with a specific [Transport protocol descriptor](#) via the `transport_protocol_label`.

The modules that are part of a DSM-CC object carousel are signalled in `DownloadInfoIndication` (DII) messages. The object carousel does not list all the existing DII messages in a single place.

In order to find all of the modules that match a particular pre-fetch label (see 10.8.3.2, "[Pre-fetch descriptor](#)" on page 234), it is necessary that all the relevant DII messages can be found. The DII location descriptor lists the locations of these DII.

If DII location descriptor is not included, then only the DII that signals the module that contains the `ServiceGateway` shall be taken into account when looking for modules matching a particular label.

The DII identifications in the loop should be sorted on importance. The DII that contains the label(s) with the highest pre-fetch priority should be listed first. Receivers that implement module-based pre-fetching should examine the DIIs for labels in the order in which they are listed in the DII location descriptor.

**Table 100 : Syntax of the DII location descriptor**

| Syntax  | Bits  | Mnemonic   |
|---|---|--|
| <pre>DII_location_descriptor () {     descriptor_tag     descriptor_length     transport_protocol_label     for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++ ) {         reserved_future_use         DII_identification         association_tag     } }</pre> | <p>8</p> <p>8</p> <p>8</p> <p>1</p> <p>15</p> <p>16</p> | <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>bslbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8-bit field with value `0x0D` identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8-bit field identifies the number of bytes following the descriptor length field.

**transport\_protocol\_label:** This 8-bit field identifies the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) that specifies the object carousel that delivers the modules to which this prefetch descriptor refers. See "[transport\\_protocol\\_label](#)" on page 227.

**DII\_identification:** This 15-bit field identifies the DII message. It corresponds to the identification portion of the transactionId. See [B.32, "Sub-fields of the transactionId"](#) on page 476.

**association\_tag:** This 16-bit field identifies the connection (i.e. elementary stream) on which the DII message is broadcast.

## 10.9 DVB-J specific descriptors

### 10.9.1 DVB-J application descriptor

One instance of this descriptor shall be contained in the "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT for each DVB-J application. It provides start-up parameter information.

**Table 101 : DVB-J application descriptor syntax**

|  | No. of Bits                         | Identifier  | Value |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|-------|
| <pre>dvb_j_application_descriptor(){     descriptor_tag     descriptor_length     for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {         parameter_length         for(j=0; j&lt;parameter_length; j++) {             parameter_byte         }     } }</pre> | <p>8</p> <p>8</p> <p>8</p> <p>8</p> | <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> <p>uimsbf</p> |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x03` identifies this descriptor.

**parameter\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the number of bytes in the [parameter\\_byte](#) string.

**parameter\_byte:** The parameter bytes contain an array of strings that are passed to the application as parameters.

## 10.9.2 DVB-J application location descriptor

One instance of this descriptor shall be contained in the "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT for each DVB-J application. It provides various items of path information to allow the DVB-J application to be found and then operated.

**Table 102 : DVB-J application location descriptor syntax**

|  | No. of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|--|-------------|------------|-------|
| <code>dvb_j_application_location_descriptor {</code> |             |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                          | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                       | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>base_directory_length</code>                   | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>                 |             |            |       |
| <code>base_directory_byte</code>                     | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>}</code>                                       |             |            |       |
| <code>classpath_extension_length</code>              | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>                 |             |            |       |
| <code>classpath_extension_byte</code>                | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>}</code>                                       |             |            |       |
| <code>for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {</code>                 |             |            |       |
| <code>initial_class_byte</code>                      | 8           | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>}</code>                                       |             |            |       |
| <code>}</code>                                       |             |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x04` identifies this descriptor.

**base\_directory\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the number of bytes in the `base_directory_byte` string.

The value of this field shall be at least one.

**base\_directory\_byte:** These bytes contain a string specifying a directory name starting from the root of the file system with directories delimited by the slash character "/" (0x2F). This directory is used as a base directory for relative path names. This base directory is automatically considered to form the first directory in the class path (after the path to the system's classes).

If the base directory is the root the string shall be "/".

**classpath\_extension\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the number of bytes in the `classpath_extension_byte` string.

**classpath\_extension\_byte:** These bytes contain a string specifying a further extension for the DVB-J class path where the classes of the application are searched in addition to the base directory. The class path extension string contains path names where the elements in the path are delimited by the semicolon character ";" (0x3B). The elements of the path may be either absolute paths starting from the root of the file system or they can be relative to the base directory. The directories are delimited by the slash character "/" (0x2F) and absolute path names begin with the slash character "/" (0x2F).

**initial\_class\_byte:** These bytes contain a string specifying the name of the object in the file system that is the class implementing the Xlet interface.

This string is a DVB-J class name that is found in the class path (e.g. "com.broadcaster.appA.MainClass"). The length of this string must be at least one.

## 10.10 DVB-HTML Specific descriptors

### 10.10.1 DVB-HTML application descriptor

One instance of this descriptor shall be contained in the "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT for each DVB-HTML application. It indicates the value of the application parameters and signals the control applied by the broadcaster on the state of the application.

**Table 103 : DVB-HTML application descriptor syntax**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---|------------|------------|-------|
| <pre> dvb_html_application_descriptor(){   descriptor_tag   descriptor_length   appid_set_length   for(i=0; i&lt;N1; i++) {     application_id   }   for(j=0; j&lt;N; j++) {     parameter_bytes   } } </pre> | 8          | uimsbf     | N1    |
| 8   | uimsbf     |            |       |
| 8   | uimsbf     |            |       |
| 16  | bslbf      |            |       |
| 8   | uimsbf     |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value [0x08](#) identifies this descriptor.

**appid\_set\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the length of the list of [application\\_ids](#).

**application\_id:** The values of these 16 bit fields form a set of application ids (see [10.5, "Application identification" on page 220](#)). This set is the set of application ids that are allowed to be associated with [inner applications](#) of a DVB-HTML application, see [8.9, "Xlet integration" on page 125](#).

**parameter\_bytes:** The parameter bytes contain the string that is appended to the application initial path as parameters.

The parameter bytes are joined using simple concatenation, it is the authors responsibility to ensure it is prefixed by a legal joining character (such as ? or #) to form a syntactically correct URL.

### 10.10.2 DVB-HTML application location descriptor

One instance of this descriptor shall be contained in the "application" (inner) descriptor loop of the AIT for each DVB-HTML application.

**Table 104 : DVB-HTML application location descriptor syntax**

|  | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|--|------------|------------|-------|
| <pre> dvb_html_application_location_descriptor () {   descriptor_tag   descriptor_length   physical_root_length   for(i=0; i&lt;N1; i++) {     physical_root_bytes   }   for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {     initial_path_bytes   } } </pre> | 8          | uimsbf     | N1    |
| 8  | uimsbf     |            |       |
| 8  | uimsbf     |            |       |
| 8  | uimsbf     |            |       |
| 8  | uimsbf     |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value [0x09](#) identifies this descriptor.

**physical\_root\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the length of the `physical_root_byte` string.

**physical\_root\_bytes:** These bytes contain a string specifying the physical root of the application entry point. The semantic of this string is transport protocol specific as shown in table 105 "Transport specific semantic of physical root bytes".

**Table 105 : Transport specific semantic of physical root bytes**

| protocol_id     | semantic  |
|-----------------|---|
| 0x0000          | <a href="#">reserved_future_use</a>   |
| 0x0001          | A directory specification   |
| 0x0002          | One of the base URLs defined in the <a href="#">Transport protocol descriptor</a> signalled for the application (see 10.8.1.2, "Transport via IP" on page 231). |
| 0x0003...0xFFFF | TBD   |

**initial\_path\_bytes:** These bytes contain a string specifying the URL path component to the entry point document. This path is relative to the root defined in the `physical_root_bytes` field.

### 10.10.2.1 Example

The following example describes the usage of the DVB-HTML application location descriptor.

An application author designs an HTML application in the following manner:

- The application data is distributed among several directories, let say an "image" directory and a "main" directory.
- The application entry point is an HTML document called "index.htm" and stored in the "main" directory.

### 10.10.2.2 Application Entry Point

From the application author's point of view, the application entry point is specified by the path "main/index.htm". This path is stored in the `initial_path_bytes` string of the location descriptor.

If the broadcaster inserts this application in a file system sub-directory called "application", the `physical_root_bytes` content of the location descriptor will be the string "application/".

If the broadcaster uses a transport via IP for this application, they shall signal the used protocol and IP address in the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) associated with this application and the `physical_root_bytes` field shall contain the corresponding URL string.

### 10.10.3 DVB-HTML application boundary descriptor

This descriptor is defined for use in the application loop of the AIT. It provides a regular expression that describes the data elements that form the application.

This descriptor is optional. When absent, the application boundary defaults to the complete set of all content coming from the transport signalled in the [Transport protocol descriptor](#) associated with the application.

Multiple boundary descriptors can be used for the same application. In this case, the equivalent global regular expression is the OR combination (union) of the individual regular expressions.

**Table 106 : DVB-HTML application boundary descriptor syntax**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---|------------|------------|-------|
| <pre> dvb_html_application_boundary_descriptor {   descriptor_tag   descriptor_length   label_length   for(i=0; i&lt;N1; i++) {     label_bytes   }   for(i=0; i&lt;N; i++) {     regular_expression_bytes   } } </pre> | 8          | uimsbf     | N1    |
| descriptor_tag  | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| descriptor_length   | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| label_length  | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| regular_expression_bytes  | 8          | uimsbf     |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x0A` identifies this descriptor.

**label\_length:** This 8 bit integer specifies the length of the `label_bytes` string.

**label\_bytes:** These bytes contain a string specifying the label that is associated with the set of data identified by the regular expression. This label can be used for pre-fetching in a transport specific manner.

**regular\_expression\_bytes:** These bytes contain a string specifying the regular expression that can generate all URLs that are in the domain of the application.

See 9.3.1.4.1, "Regular Expression Syntax" on page 199.

## 10.11 Constant values

Table 107 : Registry of constant values (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Where used                                       | Type                   | Value           | Where Defined               | Scope  |
|--|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|--------|
| private data specifier descriptor                | descriptor tag         | 0x5F            | PSI & SI tables             | SI     |
| Data broadcast id descriptor                     |                        | 0x66            | PMT                         |        |
| Application Signalling Descriptor                |                        | 0x6F            | PMT                         |        |
| Service identifier descriptor                    |                        | 0x71            | SDT                         |        |
| Label descriptor                                 | descriptor tag         | 0x70            | DII moduleInfo<br>userInfo  | SI-DAT |
| Caching priority descriptor                      |                        | 0x71            |                             |        |
| Content type descriptor                          |                        | 0x72            | BIOP objectInfo<br>(note 1) |        |
| reserved to MHP for future OC descriptors        |                        | 0x73-0x7F       | OC                          |        |
| reserved to MHP for future use                   | table ID on AIT<br>PID | 0x00-0x73       |                             | MHP    |
| Application Information Table                    |                        | 0x74            |                             |        |
| reserved to MHP for future use                   |                        | 0x75-0x7F       |                             |        |
| reserved for private use                         |                        | 0x80-0xFF       |                             |        |
| Application descriptor                           | descriptor tag         | 0x00            | AIT                         | MHP    |
| Application name descriptor                      |                        | 0x01            |                             |        |
| Transport protocol descriptor                    |                        | 0x02            |                             |        |
| DVB-J application descriptor                     |                        | 0x03            |                             |        |
| DVB-J application location descriptor            |                        | 0x04            |                             |        |
| External application authorisation<br>descriptor |                        | 0x05            |                             |        |
| reserved to MHP for future use                   |                        | 0x06, 0x07      |                             |        |
| DVB-HTML application descriptor                  |                        | 0x08            |                             |        |
| DVB-HTML application location descriptor         |                        | 0x09            |                             |        |
| DVB-HTML application boundary<br>descriptor      |                        | 0x0A            |                             |        |
| Application icons descriptor                     |                        | 0x0B            |                             |        |
| Pre-fetch descriptor                             |                        | 0x0C            |                             |        |
| DII location descriptor                          |                        | 0x0D            |                             |        |
| IP signalling descriptor                         |                        | 0x11            |                             |        |
| delegated application descriptor                 |                        | 0x0E            |                             |        |
| Plug-in descriptor                               |                        | 0x0F            |                             |        |
| Application storage descriptor                   |                        | 0x10            |                             |        |
| reserved to MHP for future use                   |                        | 0x12-0x5E       |                             |        |
| private data specifier descriptor (note 2)       |                        | 0x5F            |                             |        |
| reserved to MHP for future use                   |                        | 0x60-0x7F       |                             |        |
| User defined (note 3)                            | 0x80-0xFE              |                 |                             |        |
| MHP Object Carousel                              | data broadcast id      | 0x00F0          | PMT, AIT                    | SI     |
| reserved for MHP Multi Protocol<br>Encapsulation |                        | 0x00F1          |                             |        |
| reserved to MHP for future use                   |                        | 0x00F0 - 0x00FE | PMT, AIT                    | SI     |



**Table 107 : Registry of constant values (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Where used  | Type         | Value | Where Defined | Scope |
|---|--------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| MHP Application Service (see <a href="#">10.11.1 on page 241</a> )  | service type | 0x10  | SDT           | SI    |
| NOTE 1: Strictly MessageSubHeader::ObjectInfo in the file message and the bound object info in a file binding of a directory or service gateway message.                                  |              |       |               |       |
| NOTE 2: The DVB SI private data specifier descriptor is defined for use in the <a href="#">Application Information Table</a> to introduce private descriptors.                            |              |       |               |       |
| NOTE 3: All user defined descriptors shall be within the scope of a private data specifier descriptor (see <a href="#">10.4.7, "Use of private descriptors in the AIT" on page 219</a> ). |              |       |               |       |

### 10.11.1 MHP Application Service

This service type should be used for services which contain at least one auto-start MHP application where this application is the main component of the service. If a service signalled with this type contains any broadcast audio or video, the navigator shall not start presenting them but leave this to the auto-start application.

## 10.12 Service Information

### 10.12.1 Service identifier descriptor

Zero or more service identifier descriptors may be included in the SDT description of a service. Each such descriptor defines a single textual identifier for the service. The syntax of this identifier is specified in [14.9.1, "Syntax of the textual service identifier" on page 381](#).

A single service identifier can be assigned to services in different physical networks even if they have different `original_network_id` and `service_id`. A given service identifier shall only be associated with services that are considered to be the same service.

NOTE: It is up to the service provider to decide which services are "same" and which are not. For example, two services in two different networks where the service have the same programme content but different regional adverts could be generally considered to be the "same" service. However, this decision is entirely up to the service provider.

More than one service identifier may be allocated to a service instance.

**Table 108 : Service identifier descriptor**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier | Value |
|---|------------|------------|-------|
| <code>service_identifier_descriptor () {</code> |            |            |       |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                     | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                  | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| for (i = 0; i < descriptor_length; i++) {       |            |            |       |
| <code>textual_service_identifier_bytes</code>   | 8          | uimsbf     |       |
| }   |            |            |       |
| }   |            |            |       |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value [0x71](#) identifies this descriptor.

**textual\_service\_identifier\_bytes:** These bytes contain the unique identifier for a service encoded using the normal encoding for text strings in DVB SI.

## 10.13 Plug-in signalling

Two signalling scenarios are defined for delegated applications and plug-ins:

- [Native signalling scenario](#)
- [MHP signalling scenario](#)

### 10.13.1 Native signalling scenario

In this scenario it is sufficient for the plug-in to be signalled as a normal MHP application. Optionally it could also be signalled as a plug-in using the [Plug-in descriptor](#) (see [10.13.4 on page 243](#)).

### 10.13.2 MHP signalling scenario

In this scenario MHP plug-in signalling can replace some or all of the native signalling of the delegated application. The MHP signalling allows the MHP terminal to:

- identify that one (or more) delegated applications are available
- the plug-in that is required
- how to start the plug-in
- how to introduce the delegated application to the plug-in

The plug-in may use native signalling defined for the delegated application to locate, load and execute it. This is outside the scope of this specification.

Each delegated application is associated with an application descriptor (see [10.7.3, "Application descriptor" on page 225](#)). The semantics of this descriptor are maintained with the following comments:

- the profile and version information is specific to the application format and are not registered by the MHP. However, the MHP rules for comparing profile and version values are maintained. So, the values in these fields are an encoding of the application's own profile and version numbering scheme to ensure that they are compatible with the MHP rules.
- the transport protocol label field which is allowed to be empty if the delegated application is not transported by an MHP supported transport protocol.

The additional MHP signalling provided to support plug-ins is:

- ["delegated application descriptor"](#) (see [10.13.3 on page 242](#))

An optional descriptor for delegated applications.

- ["Plug-in descriptor"](#) (see [10.13.4 on page 243](#))

A mandatory descriptor for plug-in using MHP signalling.

### 10.13.3 delegated application descriptor

Zero or one instance of this descriptor can be placed in either the common or application loops of the AIT of the delegated application.

This optional descriptor allows one or more specific plug-ins to be identified for this delegated application. This overrides the default identification of the plug-in based on the application type signalled in the AIT for the delegated application. If this descriptor is absent then no specific plug-in is identified.

Where more than one application is identified they are listed in order from most preferred to least preferred. If none of the preferred applications is available to the MHP terminal then it shall use its default mechanism to identify the plug-in for this delegated application.

**Table 109 : Plug-in reference descriptor**

|                                      | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|--------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| delegated_application_descriptor() { |            |            |
| descriptor_tag                       | 8          | uimsbf     |
| descriptor_length                    | 8          | uimsbf     |
| for( i=0; i<N; i++ ){                |            |            |
| application_identifier               | 48         | uimsbf     |
| }                                    |            |            |
| }                                    |            |            |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value [0x0E](#) identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8 bit field indicates the number of bytes following the descriptor length field.

**application\_identifier:** This 48 bit field identifies a specific application that can consume this application.

### 10.13.4 Plug-in descriptor

One or more plug-in application descriptors shall be placed in the application loop of each plug-in.

This descriptor defines for an application that implements a plug-in the set of delegated application formats that it supports. The descriptor identifies both the type of delegated application supported and the set of profiles and versions supported. The normal MHP rules for matching an application to a compatible platform apply to when matching an delegated application with a suitable plug-in.

DVB-J applications signalled with this descriptor shall implement the API defined in [11.7.8, "Plug-in APIs" on page 281](#).

The plug-in shall be considered suitable for running content if the application\_type matches, and the version numbers are compatible according to the algorithm specified in [10.7.3, "Application descriptor" on page 225](#).

**Table 110 : Plug-in application descriptor**

|                                   | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|-----------------------------------|------------|------------|
| plugin_application_descriptor() { |            |            |
| descriptor_tag                    | 8          | uimsbf     |
| descriptor_length                 | 8          | uimsbf     |
| application_type                  | 16         | uimsbf     |
| for( i=0; i<N; i++ ){             |            |            |
| application_profile               | 16         | uimsbf     |
| version.major                     | 8          | uimsbf     |
| version.minor                     | 8          | uimsbf     |
| version.micro                     | 8          | uimsbf     |
| }                                 |            |            |
| }                                 |            |            |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value [0x0F](#) identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8 bit field indicates the number of bytes following the descriptor length field.

**application\_type:** This 16 bit field identifies an delegated application type that this application can consume.

**application\_profile:** This 16 bit field is an integer value which represents the application type specific profile.

**version.major:** This 8 bit field carries the numeric value of the major sub-field of the profile version number.

**version.minor:** This 8 bit field carries the numeric value of the minor sub-field of the profile version number.

**version.micro:** This 8 bit field carries the numeric value of the micro sub-field of the profile version number.

## 10.14 Stored applications

### 10.14.1 Use of signalling defined in MHP 1.0

Storable applications follow the standard MHP 1.0 application signalling. An MHP terminal that doesn't provide storage or doesn't recognise these extensions will perceive storable applications as viable applications that potentially can be run from the broadcast connection.

So, the signalling described here augments the signalling described in MHP 1.0.

#### 10.14.1.1 Stored broadcast service related applications

For stored broadcast service related applications the broadcast AIT information shall be used when launching the stored application. So, little information from the AIT needs to be stored with the application.

#### 10.14.1.2 Stored stand-alone applications

For stored stand-alone applications, the AIT information used when launching the application shall come from a stored representation of the AIT. While a stored service is being presented in a service context, the following apply:

- The applications database shall be populated with information from this stored representation of the AIT for the applications forming part of that stored service
- The implementation shall report any changes in the stored representation of the AIT in the same way as it would report changes in a broadcast AIT

### 10.14.2 Application storage descriptor

This application storage descriptor advertises that an application can be stored and provides some indications of its properties. The presence of this application storage descriptor indicates that an "[Application description file](#)" is provided for the application (see [10.14.3 on page 245](#)). For a storable application a single application storage descriptor shall be placed in either the common descriptor loop or application descriptor loop of the AIT.

This descriptor, and the implied "[Application description file](#)", also supports receivers that implement speculative caching.

**Table 111 : Syntax of application storage descriptor**

|   | No.of Bits | Identifier |
|---|------------|------------|
| <code>application_storage_descriptor() {</code> |            |            |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                     | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                  | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>storage_property</code>                   | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>not_launchable_from_broadcast</code>      | 1          | bslbf      |
| <code>reserved</code>                           | 7          | bslbf      |
| <code>version</code>                            | 32         | uimsbf     |
| <code>priority</code>                           | 8          | uimsbf     |
| <code>}</code>                                  |            |            |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer with value `0x10` identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8 bit field indicates the number of bytes following the descriptor length field.

**storage\_property:** This 8 bit field indicates the characteristics of the application w.r.t storage.

**Table 112 : Semantics of storage property values**

| storage_property | property          |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 0                | broadcast related |
| 1                | stand alone       |
| 2 to 255         | reserved          |

If the storage property is "broadcast related" then the application's life cycle is controlled by the broadcast service. Such applications are suitable for caching but not for running as a stand alone application.

If the storage property is "stand alone" then the application can usefully be launched by the user independently of a broadcast service. Applications with this property may also be launched as if broadcast related if the currently selected service lists them in its AIT.

**not\_launchable\_from\_broadcast:** This 1 bit field is a flag. When set to "1" this indicates that the delivery characteristics of this application are such that it is not useful to launch the application unless it has been completely cached/stored. If set to '0' then caching provides some benefit but is not essential.

Applications in stored services and applications where the **not\_launchable\_from\_broadcast** bit is set to "1" shall only be launched where the MHP terminal has stored the complete set of files which are listed in the "[Application description file](#)" as being critical.

**version:** This 32 bit field provides the version number of the application. This number starts at zero and increments by one each time any of the files listed in the "[Application description file](#)" change or the contents of the "[Application description file](#)" itself changes. Used values shall never reused, in the event that the number range is exhausted a new application id shall be used.

**priority:** This field indicates the priority of this application for storage relative to the other applications signalled in this service.

It is only meaningful for applications which have been proactively cached by the MHP terminal implementation and shall be ignored otherwise.

Higher values indicate more important applications to store. The behaviour when applications have the same priority is implementation dependent.

## 10.14.3 Application description file

### 10.14.3.1 Description

The "[Application description file](#)" provides the list of files that need to be installed as well as other related necessary information. The notation uses an XML-based syntax.

For those applications that can be stored, an "[Application description file](#)" file shall be placed in the same carousel as the application.

It should be noted that the application description file does not duplicate all the information needed to run the application, the MHP terminal needs to use also the information in the AIT when installing the application.

Receivers that don't have the complete set of files listed by the "[Application description file](#)" cached/stored should not attempt to launch this application.

Where a file is listed in the "[Application description file](#)" of more than one application and is stored, the MHP terminal shall ensure that each application sees the correct version of the file for that application. The version of the file visible to one application shall not be changed by any changes in the version of the file visible to any other application which may share that same file.

### 10.14.3.2 Application description file name and location

The application description file shall be located in the base directory of a DVB-J application (as signalled in the dvb-j application location descriptor) or the physical root of a DVB-HTML application (as signalled in the DVB-HTML application location descriptor). By convention, the name of a ADF is:

```
'dvb.storage.oooooooo.aaaa'
```

where:

oooooooo is the organisation id of the application as a 8 character hexadecimal string

aaaa is the application id as a 4 character hexadecimal string

See also 10.14.2, "Application storage descriptor" on page 244.

### 10.14.3.3 Syntax

The syntax of the "Application description file" is defined by the following XML DTD.

The `PublicLiteral` to be used for specifying this DTD in document type declarations of the XML files is:

```
"-//DVB//DTD Application Description File 1.0//EN"
```

and the URL for the `SystemLiteral` is:

```
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/applicationdescriptionfile-1-0.dtd"
```

```
<!-- the main element for the application description -->
<!ELEMENT applicationdescription (object+)>

<!ENTITY % object "(dir|file)">

<!ELEMENT dir (%object;)*>
<!ATTLIST dir
  name CDATA #REQUIRED
  priority NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
>

<!ELEMENT file EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST file
  name CDATA #REQUIRED
  priority NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
  size NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
>
```

### 10.14.3.4 Semantics

**name:** This attribute provides the name of a file system object (directory or file) that is storable. This is the name of the object within its enclosing directory and hence does not include any directory path information.

NOTE 1: No elements are provided for naming object types such as Stream or StreamEvent therefore there is no mechanism to specify that Stream and StreamEvent objects are required to be stored.

NOTE 2: Listing a directory object in the file does not imply anything about those contents of the directory which are not themselves listed in the file.

**priority:** This attribute describes how important it is to store this object. The value zero indicates that it is critical to store the object (i.e. there is no benefit in storing any objects unless this part is stored). Higher values indicate lower storage priority.

The default value for the priority attribute is zero (i.e. critical).

The `priority` for an object inherits from the immediately enclosing directory.

**size:** This attribute defines the size in bytes of the file.

---

# 11 DVB-J Platform

## 11.1 The Virtual Machine

The DVB-J virtual machine is defined in [Java VM \[34\]](#), as amended by [JVM Errata \[68\]](#) plus the Inner Classes specification in [Inner Classes \[69\]](#).

The Java Virtual Machine shall support Java class files whose version number is in the range 45.3 through 45.65535.

## 11.2 General issues

### 11.2.1 Basic Considerations

Unless otherwise specified in this specification, MHP implementations are not required to include any classes or methods marked as deprecated in those API specifications which are either referenced by or included in this specification. Where a class is defined by this specification as implementing a specific interface, and that interface requires the class to provide an otherwise deprecated method. Then the interface overrides the deprecated mark and the method is required by this specification.

Each DVB-J application instance is considered to logically run in its own virtual machine instance. For this reason, it cannot rely on finalizers that are defined in application classes being run when the application terminates. When the application manager terminates the entity that represents the virtual machine in which the application is run, a conformant implementation is permitted to not run application finalizers, as spelled out in section 2.17.9 of the [Java VM \[34\]](#).

DVB-J applications shall not synchronize on system classes or other exposed system static objects else undefined behaviour may occur.

SecurityExceptions shall only be thrown either where they are declared as part of the description of the method concerned or where identified in this specification for those referenced packages which do not include any SecurityExceptions.

It is an allowable implementation choice to not override methods as long as the defined semantics are respected. The implication of this is that such differences between implementations will be visible when using the `java.lang.reflection` package.

The inclusion of java packages shall not imply the inclusion of other sub packages e.g. the inclusion of the `javax.tv.media` package does not automatically imply the inclusion of the `javax.tv.media.protocol` sub package. Inclusion of sub packages shall be explicitly listed in this specification.

DVB-J applications shall not use additional public or protected methods or fields in the `org.dvb` namespace which are not listed in this specification. Applications which scale to run on multiple revisions of this specification shall only use `org.dvb` methods etc. appropriate to the version of the platform on which they are running.

Applications shall not define classes or interfaces in any package namespace defined in this specification. MHP terminals shall enforce this using the `SecurityManager.checkPackageDefinition` mechanism.

DVB-J applications that have been written to be scalable across multiple MHP profiles and/or versions of profiles and/or optional features may include references to API classes that are only present if the MHP terminal implements the profile or version of a profile or an optional feature that these API classes represent. MHP terminals shall ensure that any error conditions due to inability to link classes in DVB-J applications are thrown only if the execution of the application reaches a bytecode where these classes are referenced from the application. The presence of the reference in the class file to a non-existing class shall not lead to an error being thrown when loading the referencing class.

NOTE: As long as the application properly tests for the presence of these API features prior to calling them in a conditional branch, the application shall be able to execute on MHP terminals that do not have these API features.



## 11.2.2 Approach to Subsetting

Where a class included in this specification has methods, fields or constructors with signature dependencies on classes not included in the implemented profile, these methods are not required to be present in an implementation. A compliant implementation choice may require these methods and classes to be present.

Where this specification subsets a package, inclusion of the complete package is allowed but clearly not required. The behaviour of the additional features is not specified for broadcast applications.

## 11.2.3 Class Loading

The DVB-J application environment shall be written such that each application appears to run within its own classloader or classloader hierarchy for all classes that are not a part of the platform. As a consequence, two applications will never be able to access the same copy of any application-defined static variable.

In a signed application, all classes or files to be loaded through the classpath shall be signed by at least the set of certificates used to sign the initial xlet class of the application. This applies, for example, to class files comprising the application, and images and other data loaded via the `java.lang.Class.getResource()` mechanism. When authenticating a signed application, an MHP terminal can select any one of these certificates to use to authenticate all subsequent classes or files loaded. The mechanism used to make this selection is implementation dependent.

NOTE: Where an MHP terminal trusts more than one of the certificates used to sign the initial xlet, it should attempt to select the most trusted of these.

See [12, "Security" on page 301](#).

Inappropriate, meaningless or illegal locators are silently skipped and searching continues.

## 11.2.4 Unloading

Class unloading as defined by section 12.8 of [Java Language Spec \[32\]](#) and section 2.16.8 of [Java VM \[34\]](#) will be supported.

## 11.2.5 Event listeners

In `org.dvb` and `org.davic` all methods to remove event listeners shall have no effect if the listener is not registered.

NOTE: The number of threads used to send events to event listeners is intentionally implementation dependent. Applications should not block in event listeners as this may prevent other events being delivered.

## 11.2.6 Event model in DAVIC APIs

Events defined in DAVIC APIs [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) which currently directly extend `java.lang.Object` shall extend `java.util.EventObject`. Event listeners defined in [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) shall extend `java.util.EventListener`.

## 11.2.7 Event model in DAVIC & DVB APIs

Each class in `org.dvb` and `org.davic` inheriting from `java.util.EventObject` is just a container for these fields and no validity checks are done for the parameters by this constructor. Instances of these classes are intended to be constructed by the platform implementation and not by applications. The platform implementation will only construct these events with the appropriate information passed in.

In `org.dvb` and `org.davic`, unless explicitly specified otherwise, all methods to add event listeners add each listener only once if the add method is called with the same parameters multiple times. This means that the same event is delivered only once to each listener even if it has been added twice.

## 11.2.8 Tuning as a side-effect

No MHP API shall cause tuning unless explicitly specified as such. For example, if a locator that requires tuning is received by the `DVBClassLoader` it shall behave as if the specified file is not available.

## 11.2.9 Intra application media resource management

Where an application makes conflicting requests for limited media decoding resources, the media decoding resources that are requested most recently are presumed to be the ones that are most wanted. This applies between MPEG-2 I-Frames, MPEG-2 Video "drips" and streaming video. Similarly, this applies between streaming audio and audio from memory.

When a non broadcast media presentation (audio or video from memory or still image) is interrupted by a resource loss within the same application, the first presentation is cancelled and will not be restored.

If a broadcast media presentation is interrupted by a resource loss within the same application, the broadcast presentation is restored when the interrupting presentation ends.

## 11.2.10 Application thread priority

The `ThreadGroup` of application threads shall have a `MaxPriority` of `java.lang.Thread.NORM_PRIORITY`.

NOTE: As a consequence applications will not be able to create threads at priorities greater than `java.lang.Thread.NORM_PRIORITY` since they don't have `java.lang.RuntimePermission("modifyThread")`. Applications may perform compute intensive tasks within application created threads without being considered unresponsive.

## 11.2.11 Text Encodings

Where the specification of the Java APIs refers to the default character encoding of the platform, the default for MHP shall be "UTF8" as defined in 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70. The encoding "latin1" shall also be supported as defined in ISO 8859-1 [20].

When present in a Java `String`, the mark-up codes defined in table D.7, "Codes defined for use in marked-up text files" on page 505 shall be encoded in Java chars whose most significant byte is zero and whose least significant byte is the value from table D.7 on page 505. The encoding "DVBMarkupUTF8" shall be supported and is defined to be the same as UTF8 except as follows:

- In byte to char translations, the mark-up sequences in table D.7 on page 505 shall be translated into chars as defined above.
- In char to byte translations, sequences of characters matching the encodings above shall be translated into the corresponding mark-up code sequences in table D.7 on page 505.

### 11.2.11.1 Text encoding in Service Information

Where methods of the DVB SI API or JavaTV APIs access strings encoded in the SI tables and return them to applications as `String` objects, the following character encodings shall be supported as defined in Annex A of the DVB SI specification ISO 8859-1 [20]:

- ISO 6937 (default)
- ISO 8859-5 through ISO 8859-9 (SI string first byte codes 0x01...0x05)
- ISO 8859-1 through ISO 8859-9 (SI string first byte code 0x10)
- 16-bit ISO/IEC 10646-1 UCS-2 (SI string first byte code 0x11)

These encodings shall also be supported by the methods in the `org.dvb.si.SIUtil` class. Support of the other character encodings whose signalling is specified in the DVB SI specification is not required from MHP terminals.

## 11.3 Fundamental DVB-J APIs

### 11.3.1 Java platform APIs

The following packages are defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#). See also 11.8.1.3, "Other classes" on page 283.

#### 11.3.1.1 java.lang package

The java.lang package is supported with the following modifications.

- a) The following methods shall always throw a SecurityException when called by inter-operable applications:

```
Runtime.exec,
Runtime.load,
Runtime.loadLibrary,

Runtime.exit
System.exit,
System.load,
System.loadLibrary,
```

- b) MHP implementations are not required to include the following methods:

```
Runtime.runFinalizersOnExit,
System.runFinalizersOnExit,

Thread.destroy,
Thread.stop,
Thread.suspend,
Thread.resume,
Thread.countStackFrames,
ThreadGroup.stop,
ThreadGroup.suspend,
ThreadGroup.resume,
ThreadGroup.allowThreadSuspension
```

- c) The following fields shall not be used by inter-operable applications:

```
System.in
```

- d) The following classes shall not be used by inter-operable applications:

```
java.lang.Process
```

- e) Applications shall be able to use:

```
System.out,
System.err,
Runtime.traceInstructions(),
Runtime.traceMethodCalls()
```

for debugging without any adverse effects to the application. The output shall not be visible to normal end users and shall not conflict with any other API.

- f) The `java.lang.Compiler` class and following methods shall be taken as hints from an application to the system however there is no guarantee of what happens:

```
Runtime.gc(),
System.gc()
```

g) Only the following properties are required to be supported for `System.getProperty()` and `System.getProperties()`:

`file.separator`,  
`path.separator`,  
`line.separator`,

`dvb.returnchannel.timeout` (see 11.5.3, "Support for IP over the Return Channel" on page 269),

`dvb.persistent.root` (see 11.5.6, "Persistent Storage API" on page 270)

With the exception of `dvb.persistent.root` all of these properties are accessible to all applications. `dvb.persistent.root` is accessible only as defined in 11.10.2.1, "java.util.PropertyPermission" on page 288.

Property names beginning "dvb." are reserved for future use.

h) The `System.setProperties()` and `System.setSecurityManager()` methods will always throw an exception when called by downloaded DVB-J applications.

i) The class `SecurityManager` shall be as specified in [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#).

j) The in [JDK 1.2.2 \[78\]](#) the methods `java.lang.SecurityManager.checkPackageDefinition` and `java.lang.SecurityManager.checkPackageAccess` are documented to check a package name against a list of packages obtained from a method defined in `java.security.Security`. As the class `java.security.Security` is not required by MHP, for MHP the documentation of these two methods is considered to say that the list of restricted packages is obtained from a platform-specific list.

MHP terminal implementors are recommended to use this mechanism to prevent application classes from having access to implementation classes where this could compromise the security of the MHP terminal.

MHP terminals shall not use the empty ("") package name-space.

NOTE: MHP terminal implementors who are also implementing MHP applications need to ensure that the namespaces used for applications do not collide with those used for their MHP implementation.

The call `System.currentTimeMillis()` shall feature a granularity of the returned time value of not more than 10 ms. With the call `Object.wait(long timeout)`, the timeout value is specified as a maximum time to wait. The MHP further guarantees that if not notified the object will wait for at least `timeout - 10` ms.

### 11.3.1.2 `java.lang.reflect` package

The `java.lang.reflect` package is supported.

### 11.3.1.3 `java.util`

The `java.util` package is supported. The constants in the `Locale` class do not imply support (or otherwise) for these Locales. Locales supported in the MHP are specified in profiles (see 15.4, "Locale support" on page 386).

The format used for the `java.util.Properties.save()` and `java.util.Properties.load()` methods shall be that specified for those methods in [JDK 1.2.2 \[78\]](#).

The effect of an MHP application calling the `java.util.Timezone.setDefault` method shall be limited to the application calling the method.

### 11.3.1.4 `java.util.zip`

The `java.util.zip` package is supported with the exception of the following classes:

- `Deflater`
- `DeflaterOutputStream`
- `GZIPOutputStream`
- `ZipOutputStream`
- `Adler32`

### 11.3.1.5 java.io

The `java.io` package is supported.

The method `java.io.ObjectInputStream.readLine()` shall not be called by inter-operable applications but is required to be present for backwards compatibility with earlier versions of the MHP specification.

The classes and interfaces in this package relating to files and file systems have additional semantics defined for MHP specific file systems as follows.

- For broadcast carousels in 11.5.1.1, "[Constraints on the java.io.File methods for broadcast carousels](#)" on page 267,
- For persistent storage in 11.5.6, "[Persistent Storage API](#)" on page 270,
- For applications running as part of stored services in 11.12.2.2, "[Modified behaviour of MHP 1.0 APIs](#)" on page 296,

### 11.3.1.6 java.net

From the `java.net` package, the `java.net.URL` and `java.net.InetAddress` classes and the exceptions `MalformedURLException` and `UnknownHostException` only are supported. Unless included in the platform as part of a specific profile, All the rest of this package is to be non-supported as defined in section 11.2.2, "[Approach to Subsetting](#)" on page 249. The signature dependencies from these to the rest of this package are severed as described in 11.2.2, "[Approach to Subsetting](#)" on page 249.

Support is required for at least one implementation dependant `java.net.URL` protocol. Platform methods that return a URL to access resources, such as `Class.getResource`, `ClassLoader.getResource` and `ClassLoader.getResource` shall return instances of `java.net.URL` using such a protocol where no appropriate protocol is defined in this specification.

In a signed application, a URL to this resource shall be returned as for an unsigned application, regardless of whether the underlying file is signed. When that file is accessed (e.g. via an input stream obtained from `java.net.URL.openStream()`), then if the file fails authentication as described in 11.2.3, "[Class Loading](#)" on page 249, the system shall behave as if the file contained no data (i.e. as if it were a zero-length file).

NOTE: Due to the overhead of processing the signature verification, asset files which are not critical to be authenticated should be loaded using `java.io.File` or `org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject` and sent as unsigned.

Support is required for the "file:" protocol. Applications shall be able to construct instances of `java.net.URL` using strings containing "file:" URLs as defined in IETF RFC 1738 [67] where the `<host>` element is the empty string and the `<path>` element is an absolute filename.

The method `URL.getContent` shall work as specified in its specification even though the reference to the URL connection is not valid in all MHP profiles.

The return types of `URL.getContent()` are defined by the mappings from data type to java class name listed in table 113 "[Return types of URL.getContent\(\)](#)".

**Table 113 : Return types of URL.getContent()**

| Data type                         | Return type                               |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Unknown or unsupported data types | <code>java.io.InputStream</code>          |
| <code>text/plain</code>           | <code>java.io.InputStream</code>          |
| <code>text/dvb.utf8</code>        | <code>java.io.InputStream</code>          |
| <code>text/Generic</code>         | <code>java.io.InputStream</code>          |
| <code>image/png</code>            | <code>java.awt.image.ImageProducer</code> |
| <code>image/jpeg</code>           | <code>java.awt.image.ImageProducer</code> |
| <code>image/mpeg</code>           | <code>org.havi.ui.HBackgroundImage</code> |

The behaviour of `URL.getContent()` responds to data type using information with the following priority:

- a) Content type signalling such as:
  - the content type descriptor in the OC (see [B.2.3.4, "Content type descriptor" on page 460](#)).
  - the HTTP header (if supported in the profile) the Content-Type header field (if present)
- b) The filename extension (if known) (see [table 7, "File type identification" on page 75](#))
- c) Open the file & study

`getContentType` returns the value contained in the optional content type descriptor in the OC (see [B.2.3.4, "Content type descriptor" on page 460](#)) if present.

`getFileNameMap` returns information derived from [table 7, "File type identification" on page 75](#).

In the class `java.net.URLStreamHandler`, the protected method `setURL` is not required to be present.

In the class `java.net.URLConnection`, the static methods `getDefaultRequestProperty` and `setDefaultRequestProperties` are not required to be present.

See the Object Carousel signalling described in [B.2.3.4, "Content type descriptor" on page 460](#).

### 11.3.1.7 `java.beans`

In this package the following classes and interfaces are supported;

- Beans
- `PropertyChangeEvent`
- `PropertyChangeListener`
- `PropertyChangeSupport`
- `PropertyVetoException`
- `VetoableChangeListener`
- `VetoableChangeSupport`
- `Visibility`

In the Beans class, only the following methods shall be required:

- `Beans.instantiate(ClassLoader cl, String beanName)`
- `Beans.isDesignTime()`
- `Beans.isGuiAvailable()`

Finally, the following methods shall behave as follows;

- `Beans.isDesignTime()` must return "false".

### 11.3.1.8 `java.math`

From the `java.math` package `java.math.BigInteger` is supported.

### 11.3.1.9 java.text

The `java.text` package is supported with the exception of the following classes and interfaces:

- `CharacterIterator`
- `BreakIterator`
- `CollationElementIterator`
- `CollationKey`
- `Collator`
- `RuleBasedCollator`
- `StringCharacterIterator`

### 11.3.2 MHP platform APIs

#### 11.3.2.1 org.dvb.lang

The `org.dvb.lang` package is supported as defined in annex I, "(normative): DVB-J fundamental classes" on page 523.

Where no parent is specified at creation, the delegation parent classloader of `DVBClassLoader` shall be the original classloader of the calling application.

Classloader delegation is defined in the specification for `java.lang.ClassLoader` in [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#).

#### 11.3.2.2 org.dvb.event

The `org.dvb.event` package is supported as defined in annex J, "(normative): DVB-J event API" on page 527.

When sending events from a `org.dvb.event.EventManager` to listeners, the implementation shall ensure that any single listener shall only be sent one platform generated event instance at one time. If a new event is generated before the listener method has returned from processing a previous event, the MHP terminal shall not call that listener method until the call for processing the previous event returns.

The behaviour where applications have multiple such event listeners registered is implementation dependent. Implementations may use multiple threads to send the same event instance to any such multiple listeners. Implementations may ensure that at most one event listener in any one application for all these events is executing at any one time.

## 11.4 Presentation APIs

### 11.4.1 Graphical User Interface API

#### 11.4.1.1 The Core GUI API

The following package is defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#).

The following classes and interfaces from the `java.awt` package are included in the MHP specification:

- Adjustable
- AWTError
- AWTEvent
- AWTEventMulticaster
- AWTException
- BorderLayout
- CardLayout
- Color
- Component
- Container
- Cursor
- Dimension
- EventQueue
- FlowLayout
- Font
- FontMetrics
- Graphics
- GridBagConstraints
- GridBagConstraints
- GridBagLayout
- GridLayout
- IllegalArgumentException
- Image
- Insets
- ItemSelectable
- LayoutManager
- LayoutManager2
- MediaTracker
- Point
- Polygon
- Rectangle
- Shape
- Toolkit (as detailed below)

The entire `java.awt.event` package is included.

Property names for use with the `getProperty` method on `java.awt.Image` and its sub classes beginning "dwb." are reserved for future use.

See also [11.8.1.3, "Other classes" on page 283](#).

The signature dependencies from `Component` to `PopupMenu` (the `add` method) and `MenuComponent` (the `remove` method) are severed as described in [11.2.2, "Approach to Subsetting" on page 249](#). The same applies for all references to the `java.awt.peer` package. In `Component` and `Container`, the `list` methods are not required.



In the Toolkit class, the following methods are required:

- `getDefaultToolkit`,
- `getFontList`,
- `getFontMetrics`,
- `sync`,
- `getColorModel`,
- and all the methods relating to images.

The following two methods are added to the Toolkit class from [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#). These two methods shall not cache `java.awt.Image` objects.

- `public abstract Image createImage(String filename);`
- `public abstract Image createImage(URL url);`

The image caching behaviour of the following two methods is now observed as explicitly specified in [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#). These two methods cache `java.awt.Image` objects so that two calls with the same argument return the same object.

- `public abstract Image getImage(String filename);`
- `public abstract Image getImage(URL url);`

Applications shall be able to use `Toolkit.beep` without any adverse effects to the application. The output is not required to be audible to normal end users and shall not conflict with any other API.

The methods `getScreenResolution` and `getScreenSize` shall be supported with the additional semantics described in [HAVi \[50\]](#).

All of the `java.awt.image` package is required. The encoding of image content types for use by `java.awt.image` are defined in 7.1.1, "[Bitmap image formats](#)" on page 68. The set of formats supported is profile dependent.

When using the `java.awt.FontMetrics` class, the width of a set of characters or string returned by the `charsWidth` or `stringWidth` method shall be correct taking into account any kerning and sub-pixel positioning applied by the font renderer. Calculating the same number by adding the widths of the individual characters is not required or expected to return the same number since it will not take into account any kerning or sub-pixel positioning applied by the font renderer.

The downloading of fonts from the network (see [D.2.2, "Downloaded fonts" on page 488](#)) shall be supported using the methods concerned on `org.dvb.ui.FontFactory`. Failure to download a font shall be reported by these methods. The constructor for `java.awt.Font` shall only be aware of platform resident fonts.

#### 11.4.1.2 TV user interface

The packages `org.havi.ui` and `org.havi.ui.event` defined in [HAVi \[50\]](#) shall be supported. Instances of `org.havi.ui.event.HRCEvent` are reported through the normal `java.awt` event mechanism due to the inheritance from `java.awt.event.KeyEvent`.

With the exception of the `HSound.load` method, no methods specified in [HAVi \[50\]](#) shall throw a security exception in the MHP context. The permissions for `HSound.load` are those defined for `java.io`.

The `DVBTextLayoutManager` specified in [U, "\(normative\): Extended graphics APIs" on page 847](#) shall be supported.

The following semantics shall be used for the `getVideoController` method on `HVideoDevice`.

- It shall only return JMF players (see [Java Media Player Specification \[33\]](#)) which are in the Prefetched or Started states and which are using that `HVideoDevice` as one of their scarce resources. Otherwise null will be returned. It shall not return JMF players from other applications if those are using the video device underlying the `HVideoDevice`.
- Except as specified below, it shall only return JMF players which have been already created in response to the application calling `javax.media.Manager.createPlayer` or which have been returned by `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContext.getServiceContentHandlers` (see [Java TV \[51\]](#)).
- The only exception to the above is the situation where video is being played in the background as part of the context of an application but where `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContext.getServiceContentHandlers` has not yet been called. In this case, `getVideoController` shall return the same JMF player as would be returned by `getServiceContentHandlers` if it was to be called subsequently.

The signatures of the classes `HComponent` and `HContainer` shall be extended with `"implements org.dvb.ui.TestOpacity"`.

The methods `HGraphicsConfiguration.getPunchThroughToBackgroundColor` shall not be used by inter-operable applications.

The methods `fontAvailable()` and `downloadFont()` in the class `org.havi.ui.HFontCapabilities` shall not be used by inter-operable applications.

The package `javax.tv.graphics` defined in [Java TV \[51\]](#) shall be supported.

Applications shall only pass in calls to the method `javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer.getRootContainer` the exact same `XletContext` instance as was passed to their `initXlet` method when it was called by the MHP terminal. The behaviour of `getRootContainer` if passed any other `XletContext` is implementation dependent and returning null is one valid option. Except for this case, this method shall never return null in an MHP implementation.

The method `HComponent.isDoubleBuffered` shall not be used by inter-operable applications.

### 11.4.1.3 Extended graphics

See [U, "\(normative\): Extended graphics APIs" on page 847](#).

### 11.4.1.4 Handling of input events

The MHP includes two ways for applications to receive input events: the normal AWT method in `java.awt.Component` and the `org.dvb.event` package (see [11.3.2.2, "org.dvb.event" on page 255](#)). Via the normal AWT method, the application normally receives all input events when the component has the focus. The minimum set of input events that are supported is defined in [G.5, "Input events" on page 519](#).

Often the resident Navigator software of the MHP terminal uses many of the keys on the remote control for its own navigation purposes. The navigator shall not act on input events which are delivered to MHP applications. In particular, the navigator shall not respond to number key input if that input is delivered to one or more MHP applications. Conversely, if the MHP application with input focus has indicated disinterest in number key input (using `HScene.setKeyEvents` with an `HEventGroup` not including the number keys) then navigators which respond to number key input are free to do so. Rules on when MHP applications should request interest in particular input events and when they should not are found below.

To ensure consistent user experience, the following rules are defined:

- an application creating an HScene and placing components into it shall not by default get the input focus for these components
- the application may request to get the input focus by calling `Component.requestFocus()`. If this is granted and the focus moved to the requested component, this component shall receive input events as defined in J.1 on page 527.
- the application may request to receive a subset of input events via the `org.dvb.event` API even when not having the AWT focus.

For applications delivered within normal television services, it is recommended that the following items are taken into account:

- when the display is primarily showing the video of the television service and the user perception is that he is not actively interacting with an application but is just watching the television service (this state is later called 'television viewing mode'), the applications should not request the AWT focus but let most of the input events go to the resident Navigator (e.g. number keys, directional arrow keys and Enter may cause the normal actions the user expects from the Navigator)
- in the 'television viewing mode' the applications should request only the minimum required input events, e.g. only input events that cause some further action to happen and that may transition the user from the 'television viewing mode' into a state where the user more actively interacts with the applications.
- if the applications require some input events for the user to be able to activate the application when in the 'television viewing mode', it is recommended that the `VK_COLOURED_KEY_(0...3)` and `VK_TELETEXT` (see note below) input events are used for this purpose and the applications request them via the `org.dvb.event` API. In practice this means that the navigator can not map any essential function directly to the `VK_COLOURED_KEY(0...3)` events in television viewing mode.
- MHP applications wishing to leave "tv viewing mode" and receive events other than the `VK_COLOURED_KEY_(0...3)` and `VK_TELETEXT` are obliged to display a non-transparent graphics object on the screen that covers at least 3 % of the visible area on the screen (equivalent to 9852 pixels on a 634x518 visible screen in a 720x576 graphics mode) which clearly indicates to the user the "non-navigator" mode of the receiver with respect to input event handling.

NOTE 1: In television services where DVB Teletext is transmitted within the service, a typical Navigator action in the 'television viewing mode' can be to activate a teletext decoder, if supported by the terminal. The application requesting this input event may cause the DVB Teletext decoder not to be conveniently accessible to the end user. Therefore, within services that carry DVB Teletext it is recommended that the `VK_TELETEXT` input event is requested in the 'television viewing mode' only by such applications that provide a simulcast MHP application version of the teletext service, thus providing a replacement for the DVB Teletext information.

In environments where WST Teletext services are prevalent when there is no DVB Teletext service associated with the video service, the MHP application should display an information service of a similar nature to teletext. When receiving this event for the second time the information service should terminate and the user will return to normal viewing mode.

The `VK_TELETEXT` event should have no other purposes in MHP applications.

NOTE 2: The items above apply only to the 'television viewing mode' as explained above. In states where the user experience is that the user is clearly primarily interacting actively with an application the applications can naturally use the normal AWT input event mechanism and request the focus as well as use any of the supported input events via the `org.dvb.event` API.

NOTE 3: For data services, the first interaction state of an application that is automatically started after service selection should behave as television viewing mode. This is in order to allow users who are navigating with the navigator to seamlessly navigate through these services without getting confused.

## 11.4.1.5 Font bindings

### 11.4.1.5.1 PFR0

For fonts in the PFR0 format 7.4, "Downloadable Fonts" on page 71, the bindings between the Java APIs relating to font metrics and the font format itself shall be as follows;

The return values of the methods `FontMetrics.getMaxAscent` and `FontMetrics.getMaxDescent` shall be `yOffsetTop` and `yOffsetBottom` respectively as defined in D.3.5.3, "Conversion of units" on page 494.

For PFR fonts with the auxiliary data record;

- `FontMetrics.getAscent` shall be obtained from the ascent field
- `FontMetrics.getDescent` shall be obtained from the descent field
- `FontMetrics.getLeading` shall be obtained from `externalLeading`.

All values in the auxiliary data record shall be converted from font metrics units to pixels as described in D.3.4, "Converting font metrics to display pixels" on page 493 before being returned. This conversion shall round up.

For PFR fonts without the auxiliary data record;

- `FontMetrics.getAscent` shall be the same as `getMaxAscent`
- `FontMetrics.getDescent` shall be the same as `getMaxDescent`
- `FontMetrics.getLeading` shall be zero.

The "advance width" of a character, in metrics units, is defined as follows:

- For PFR fonts with the "proportionalEscapement" flag set, the advance width of a character is given by the "charSetWidth" field in the character record.
- For PFR fonts without the "proportionalEscapement" flag set, the advance width of a character is given by the "standardSetWidth" field in the physical font record.

`java.awt.FontMetrics.charWidth()` shall return the advance width of the character converted to pixels. This conversion shall round up.

`java.awt.FontMetrics.stringWidth()`, `java.awt.FontMetrics.bytesWidth()` and `java.awt.FontMetrics.charsWidth()` are calculated by summing the advance widths of all the characters in the string, and adjusting for any kerning in the font. Adjustments for kerning are performed in metrics units, then the result is converted to pixel units. This conversion shall round up.

`java.awt.FontMetrics.getMaxAdvance()` returns the maximum value that `java.awt.FontMetrics.charWidth()` can return. Note that for proportional fonts the implementation must calculate this value from the advance width of every character in the font; there is no field in the PFR file which contains it.

## 11.4.2 Streamed Media API

### 11.4.2.1 Framework of solution

The `javax.media` and `javax.media.protocol` packages from Java Media Framework as defined in [Java Media Player Specification \[33\]](#) shall be implemented with the clarifications, extensions and restrictions as defined in the corresponding sections below.

### 11.4.2.2 Clarifications

The JMF "time base time" when playing MPEG content delivered in MPEG transport streams is used as a constantly progressing time whose rate may be synthesized from the Program Clock References / the System Time Clock in MPEG or by some other appropriate method. The value does not have any direct relation to the value of the MPEG System Time Clock in the receiver.

The media time of JMF when playing MPEG content delivered in MPEG transport streams is just a time value that progresses as the media stream is played, but whose actual value is implementation dependent.

NOTE: There is no implied or expected connection between the JMF media time and any time base(s) provided by the MPEG-2 / DSM-CC Normal Play Time.

When creating a JMF player, Locators and URLs which reference a DVB service, event or elementary stream will create a player which plays the content concerned direct from the network. Locators and URLs which reference files will create a player which will download the content concerned from the network during the Prefetching state of the player concerned. If the content cannot be downloaded then such players will never enter the Prefetched state.

Interoperable applications shall not call `javax.media.MediaHandler.setSource()`.

In the `javax.media.PackageManager`:

- a) The effect of the `set<xxx>PrefixList` methods is limited to the application calling the method.
- b) The `SecurityException` of the `commit<xxx>` methods shall always be thrown in MHP.

The events `javax.media.ControllerEvent` and `javax.media.GainChangeEvent` shall inherit from `java.util.EventObject`.

The interfaces `javax.media.ControllerListener` and `javax.media.GainChangeListener` shall inherit from `java.util.EventListener`.

`SubtitlingLanguageControl.isSubtitlingOn()` returns the current state of subtitle presentation and NOT the last value set with `setSubtitling`. In particular `setSubtitling` may be set to true but if there are no subtitles in the network or no subtitle service component selected then `isSubtitlingOn` shall return false.

Any elements in `DVBLocators` after and including the `event_id` element are ignored by JMF players.

### 11.4.2.3 Default media player behaviour

For a JMF player which is presenting a DVB service, the following rules will be followed in the order given to decide which service components will be presented when multiple audio, video or subtitle components are present in a service:

- a) For audio and subtitle streams in different languages, user preferences will be used to determine which streams are selected.
- b) The streams which are first in the network signalling information (i.e. in the PMT) will be presented.

If any of the media components comprising the service change then the implementation will as far as possible replace the changed components with suitable replacements in a user preference and implementation dependant manner.

### 11.4.2.4 Required controls for video drips

The following controls are supported for video drips (see 7.1.3, "MPEG-2 Video "drips"" on page 68):

- `javax.tv.media.AWTVideoSizeControl`
- `org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl`

### 11.4.2.5 Extensions to the Framework

#### 11.4.2.5.1 DVB specified extensions

The classes and interfaces defined in annex N, "(normative): Streamed Media API Extensions" on page 655 of this specification are included.

If a `Player` bound to a `DripFeedDataSource` receives a `ResourceWithdrawnEvent` and later a `ResourceReturnedEvent`, the video output from the video decoder to which the player is bound is implementation dependent. The MHP application using the `Player` shall call the `DripFeedDataSource.feed` method with an I-frame as soon as possible after `ResourceReturnedEvent` is received.

NOTE: Application developers should take this into account when constructing video drip sequences. A large number of P-frames between I-frames could lead to a significant delay before the visible display can be refreshed due to the limitations on the frequency with which new data can be fed to the decoder.

#### 11.4.2.5.2 Extensions in org.davic

The following classes and interfaces will be included from the `org.davic.media` package, as defined in annex L of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#).

- `MediaPresentedEvent`
- `MediaLocator`
- `MediaTimePositionControl`
- `FreezeControl`
- `ResourceWithdrawnEvent`
- `ResourceReturnedEvent`
- `MediaTimePositionChangedEvent`
- `LanguageNotAvailableException`
- `NotAuthorizedException`
- `NotAuthorizedMediaException`
- `MediaFreezeException`
- `LanguageControl`
- `AudioLanguageControl`
- `SubtitlingLanguageControl`

The following classes will be included from the `org.davic.media` package as defined in annex L of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) with the following semantic modification:

- The completion of the action started by calling `setMediaTimePosition()` on the `MediaTimePositionControl` will be signalled by a `org.davic.media.MediaTimePositionChangedEvent`.
- The `org.davic.media.MediaPresentedEvent` shall only be thrown following changes caused using controls in the `org.davic` package and as part of the transition of a JMF player into the Started state. In this second case, it augments the JMF state transition events and does not replace them.

NOTE: Changes effected using `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` do not lead to the `org.davic.media.MediaPresentedEvent` being thrown.

NOTE: This specification defines more specific conditions under which `ResourceWithdrawnEvent` and `ResourceReturnedEvent` than the original DAVIC specification. This can be found in [11.6.2, "Service Selection API" on page 272](#).

#### 11.4.2.5.3 Extensions in javax.tv

The package `javax.tv.media` defined in [Java TV \[51\]](#) shall be implemented.

In `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` the `InsufficientResourcesException` is thrown by the `select()` method if selecting any service component fails due to a lack of system resources.

In `javax.tv.media.AWTVideoSize.equals()`, the "data members" shall be considered to be the "source" and "dest" parameters used to create the object.

The components returned by `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl.getCurrentSelection` are the currently selected components which may be different from those previously selected by this control. Mechanisms which may modify the current selection include:

- control of subtitles & audio language
- the CA system including the common interface e.g Host Control replace / clear\_replace
- user intervention via the navigator

The following clarifications shall apply to the method `getDefaultSize` in `javax.tv.media.AWTVideoSizeControl`:

- a) This method shall return the current default `AWTVideoSize`. The default shall be that which would be implemented by the MHP terminal when the video scaling & positioning of a JMF player is under control of the MHP platform (see `org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PLATFORM`). When the video scaling and positioning is in the `DFC_PLATFORM` mode, the return value of this method shall change to track changes made by the policy underlying `DFC_PLATFORM`.
- b) Calling `AWTVideoSizeControl.setSize()` with the `AWTVideoSize` object returned by this method as the parameter shall set the video scaling to the current default at the time `getDefaultSize()` was called. Hence it shall be equivalent to calling `BackgroundVideoPresentationControl.setVideoTransformation` with the video transformation returned by the method `VideoFormatControl.getVideoTransformation(getDecoderFormatConversion())` and not with the video transformation returned by `getVideoTransformation(DFC_PLATFORM)`.

NOTE: When the MHP terminal is in pan & scan mode, (see `org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_PAN_SCAN`), the return value of `AWTVideoSizeControl.getSize()` will be out of date almost as soon as the method has returned.

#### 11.4.2.5.4 Required controls for broadcast profiles

The following controls are supported for the broadcast streaming formats specified in 7.2, "Broadcast streaming formats" on page 70:

- `org.davic.media.LanguageControl`
- `org.davic.media.AudioLanguageControl`
- `org.davic.media.SubtitlingLanguageControl`
- `org.davic.media.FreezeControl`
- `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl`
- `javax.tv.media.AWTVideoSizeControl`
- `org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl`
- `org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl`
- `org.dvb.media.SubtitlingEventControl`
- `org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl`
- `org.dvb.media.DVBMediaSelectControl`

The following controls are supported for media decoded from 7.1.4, "Monomedia format for audio clips" on page 70:

- `org.davic.media.MediaTimePositionControl`

#### 11.4.2.5.5 Clarifications

In `SubtitlingLanguageControl`, subtitling being presented shall be defined as the subtitle decoder running. It does not require subtitles to be visible on screen at that time. See 13.5, "Subtitles" on page 369.

When a `PresentationChangedEvent` is generated, the Player in question should re-evaluate the list of controls returned by the `getControls()` method for that player. Similarly, Players supporting the `MediaSelectControl` should re-evaluate the list of Controls returned by `getControls()` after calls to the `MediaSelectControl.select()` method is called.

Any controls referenced by an application after a `PresentationChangedEvent` or a `MediaSelectSucceededEvent` is generated may fail silently if they are no longer valid. Controls which are valid for the new content remain unaffected. Applications should re-acquire any controls they require after either of these events has been generated.

If the content being presented by a JMF player becomes unavailable due to tuning, `org.davic.media.ResourceWithdrawnEvent` shall be sent to listeners registered to receive that events. A `ResourceReturnedEvent` shall be sent to all listeners registered at that time if the content becomes available again.

#### 11.4.2.6 Restrictions on the Framework for Broadcast

Controls that are supported the MHP need not have an associated GUI component. Any calls to `Control.getComponent()` may return null.

Developers of MHP applications should not rely on the presence of the following classes or interfaces:

```
javax.media.CachingControl (unless returned by a call to a JMF method)
javax.media.CachingControlEvent
javax.media.GainControl (unless returned by a call to a JMF method).
```

An MHP implementation need not return a `CachingControl` or `GainControl` from a call to `Player.getControls()` however this is not prohibited. If an MHP implementation does return a `GainControl`, then the volume that is set using this control may not be greater than the system volume level. I.e. the gain control may only change the volume between mute and the volume level at the time the application was started. This system volume level shall be represented as 1.0.

JMF Players are not required to return a `java.awt.Component` from their `getVisualComponent` method and may return null. Players which return null can only be used to present video in the background. Players which return a `java.awt.Component` must fully support the semantics for `java.awt.Component` concerning positioning and scaling.

Players start as background players. If a `getVisualComponent` returns a component then a player is also capable of performing as a component based player. Video shall continue running in the background until the first call to the `paint` method of the component returned `getVisualComponent`. When this transition happens the video is resized and repositioned as required by the `visualComponent`. Possible areas outside of the component are updated to follow the rules in 13.3, "Graphics" on page 357.

After this transition, applications shall re-acquire the list of JMF controls for the player. It is implementation dependent whether any previous JMF controls are re-used. Applications shall not use any previous JMF controls which are not in the new list of JMF controls. When a JMF player is performing as a component based player, the following JMF controls shall not be supported and video scaling & positioning shall be done by controlling the size & position of the component returned by the `getVisualComponent` method.

- `org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl`
- `javax.tv.media.AWTVideoSizeControl`

Applications should not expect `PushDataSource` and `PullDataSource` to exist for broadcast MPEG content, and it is not required that functional implementations be provided for implementations of JMF in DVB. The `DataSource` used may be implementation-specific and non-specified apart from its inheritance from `javax.media.protocol.DataSource`.

The constructor for `URLDataSource` may always throw `IOException` for broadcast MPEG content.

For the purposes of integration with `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` "resynchronization" is not considered to occur provided that the same `PCR_PID` is referenced between the new and existing service components.

Implementations of JMF shall not tune but shall allow selection of media components from transport streams which can be reached without tuning even where they are not part of a currently selected service.



The failure modes if a locator is used which cannot be reached without tuning are defined as follows;

- For a JMF player which is a `ServiceMediaHandler`, the failure modes are fully specified in the description of `MediaSelectControl`.
- If a JMF player which is not a `ServiceMediaHandler` is created with such a locator then it shall not be able to enter the `Realized` state.

The `Realizing` state shall be exited with the posting of a `ResourceUnavailableEvent`.

- For JMF players which are not `ServiceMediaHandlers`, `MediaSelectControl` shall be restricted to operating only on service components belonging to transport streams currently available without tuning.

NOTE: In this version of this specification, no media types are defined for which `javax.media.Player.addController` can have any other behaviour apart from throwing a `IncompatibleTimeBaseException`.

#### 11.4.2.7 Intersection Between `MediaSelectControl` and `SubtitlingLanguageControl` / `AudioLanguageControl`

The method `org.davic.media.LanguageControl.listAvailableLanguages()` shall list all available languages in the service concerned. This includes languages carried in service components which are not currently selected, either because the service component concerned has been de-selected using `MediaSelectControl` or because it was never selected initially because it was not carried in one of the components listed in the component tags of a locator which included component tags.

The method `org.davic.media.LanguageControl.selectLanguage()` shall over-ride any selection of service components made either by `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` or by using a locator for a service which included component tags. If `selectLanguage()` has changed the set of service components selected, the methods on `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` shall behave as if that change had been made through `MediaSelectControl` and return the correct set of service components taking into account the change made by `selectLanguage()`.

If the methods on `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` are used to replace or remove the service component carrying the currently active audio or subtitles then the presentation of this service component shall stop. If the methods on `javax.media.MediaSelectControl` are used to add a service component carrying audio or subtitles when a service component of this media type is not already being presented then presentation of this service component shall be started. The language of the newly selected service component shall be returned by calls from the application to the method `getCurrentLanguage` on `AudioLanguageControl` or `SubtitlingLanguageControl` respectively. Attempting to select multiple service components of the same media type to be presented at the same time using methods on `MediaSelectControl` shall fail unless the MHP terminal concerned has sufficient resources to present them simultaneously. The failure mode shall be that as specified in `MediaSelectControl` for when insufficient resources are available.

Control of the availability of subtitles using `MediaSelectControl` or the methods `selectLanguage` & `selectDefaultLanguage` (which `SubtitlingLanguageControl` inherits from `LanguageControl`) shall not impact the value of "Application Control" as mentioned in figure 39, "[Determining subtitling language and presentation setting](#)" on page 369 and vice versa.

#### 11.4.2.8 Intersection between Streamed Media API and TV User Interface API

##### 11.4.2.8.1 Basic Principles

Some of the decoder format controls pre-defined as part of `org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl` may require control over the pixel aspect ratio of the final video output signal after video, graphics and backgrounds have been combined as shown in figure 22 on page 353. In order to enable this, a JMF player shall attempt to reserve the `HVideoDevice` instance on which its output is being displayed. Failure to reserve the `HVideoDevice` shall not be considered fatal to the JMF player but may result in an inferior TV video presentation.

NOTE: The actual configurations of the `HVideoDevice` used and available are dependent on the precise configuration of the MHP terminal. Differences will exist between set-top boxes, integrated digital TVs and PCs. The precise nature of any "inferior TV video presentation" is dependent on the configuration of the MHP terminal, on the input video and the characteristics of the final output device.

If the JMF player from which an `HVideoComponent` was obtained is in either the prefetched or started states then the associated `HVideoDevice` shall be the one on which that JMF players video is being displayed. If the JMF player is in another state then there may not be an associated `HVideoDevice`.

#### 11.4.2.8.2 TV Behaviour Control

The "TV Behaviour Control" in figure 36, "Format control in the presence of a JMF player" on page 366, is the default video transformation behaviour for JMF players which have none other set. Setting the `VideoTransformation` to `DFC_PLATFORM` shall set the video format control to TV behaviour control mode.

NOTE 1: In this mode, any changes in the video input signal where "television behaviour control" requires changing the pixel aspect ratio of the final output signal (i.e. after the combination of video with graphics, subtitles & backgrounds) will also change the pixel aspect ratio of any graphics, subtitles & backgrounds combined into that one final output signal.

NOTE 2: For an example of "TV behaviour control" in set-top boxes and integrated digital TVs, see [E-Book \[I\]](#).

#### 11.4.2.8.3 Application Behaviour Control

When an MHP application is controlling video presentation through `BackgroundVideoPresentationControl` (for video in the background) or `VideoPresentationControl` & methods on `java.awt.Component` (for video in a component), the application is responsible for monitoring the incoming video format & changing the video presentation if desired.

Instances of `VideoTransformation` constructed using the constructor of that class shall not impact the configuration of the `HVideoDevice`. Instances of `VideoTransformation` returned by `VideoFormatControl.getVideoTransformation` shall have the same impact on the `HVideoDevice` as the equivalent conversion applied in "TV behaviour control mode". These may not be fully achievable if the JMF player does not have the `HVideoDevice` reserved.

#### 11.4.2.8.4 Dynamic Behaviour

A JMF player shall attempt to reserve the `HVideoDevice` instance on entry to the `Prefetched` state from any state except the `Started` state. A JMF player in the `prefetched` or `started` states which does not have the `HVideoDevice` reserved shall attempt to reserve it only when the application which created the JMF player calls the `setVideoTransformation` method of the control `org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl`. A JMF player leaving the `Started` or `Prefetched` state for the `Realized` state shall release the `HVideoDevice` if it has it reserved.

A JMF player which has the `HVideoDevice` reserved and then loses the right to control that device shall post an instance of the event `org.davic.media.ResourceWithdrawnEvent` to all registered listeners for `ControllerEvents` on that `Player` instance. If the right to control that device is subsequently recovered when a attempt to reserve the device (as defined above) succeeds, then an `org.davic.media.ResourceReturnedEvent` shall be posted.

#### 11.4.2.8.5 Resource Management Details

Inter-operable applications shall not call any of the methods on the instance of `ResourceClient` returned by `HVideoDevice.getClient` when a JMF player has reserved that `HVideoDevice` instance.

Inter-operable applications are allowed to call `HVideoDevice.release` or `HVideoDevice.setConfiguration` directly. JMF implementations shall tolerate this behaviour when it happens.

## 11.5 Data Access APIs

### 11.5.1 Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API

The broadcast transport protocol access API is defined in section P, "(normative): Broadcast Transport Protocol Access" on page 709.

Relative file names used to access objects in the carousel shall be taken as being relative to the base directory indicated in 10.9.2, "DVB-J application location descriptor" on page 236. Calling `new DSMCCObject(".")` or `new java.io.File(".")` will instantiate the directory object that refers to the base directory as indicated in 10.9.2, "DVB-J application location descriptor" on page 236.

The caching rules specified in B.5, "Caching" on page 484 shall be evaluated at the time when the information is loaded using `DSMCCObject.synchronousLoad()` or `DSMCCObject.asynchronousLoad()` or is loaded implicitly in response to other actions as defined in the following section (11.5.1.1 "Constraints on the java.io.File methods for broadcast carousels"). After the DVB-J object has been loaded, any possible changes in the object carousel to the content the object represents are not visible to the application when it accesses the content using this DVB-J object instance.

#### 11.5.1.1 Constraints on the java.io.File methods for broadcast carousels

The application shall be able to use the standard `java.io.File` class for access to broadcast carousels (e.g. a carousel unaware application). In this case, the following definitions shall apply:

- the constructor of `File` only creates an instance of the abstract pathname and shall not cause synchronous access to the broadcast carousel that would block the thread
- after the constructor of the DVB-J `File` object has been run, the directory entry information relating to this object may be in an unloaded state. The information relating to this object (e.g. its length) comes from the parent directory which is not required to have been loaded at this point by the constructor. However, this information may be available if the implementation has the information in cache.
- if the directory entry information for a DVB-J `File` object is in the unloaded state, then this information shall be synchronously loaded when any of the following methods are called on the object: `canRead()`, `exists()`, `isDirectory()`, `isFile()`. If the loading fails, all these methods shall return false.
- if the content is in unloaded state, it shall be synchronously loaded when the `list()` method is called for a directory. If this implicit load should result in a service transfer, it shall not be done implicitly and the `list()` shall return an empty list.
- the method `lastModified()` returns `moduleVersion` from the DII for the module that carries the file (treating the octet as an unsigned integer).
- any version changes in a file after the constructor for an `FileInputStream`, `FileReader` or `RandomAccessFile` is called will not be visible in the data read from that instance.
- list methods shall return null when called on a object that isn't a directory.
- the creation of a `FileInputStream`, `FileReader` or `RandomAccessFile` shall throw `FileNotFoundException` if the referenced object is not a file.
- Failure of a signed file to be authenticated shall be reported as defined in 12.6.1, "General principles" on page 314.
- Failure of a signed directory to be authenticated shall be reported by the list methods returning null when called on a file object representing the directory whose authentication failed.
- The value returned by `java.io.File.length()` may not be accurate as it returns the value from the directory information rather than the actual size of the file

There are no guarantees that the most recent version of a file will be returned unless the network signalling specifies that the file concerned requires transparent access.

### 11.5.1.2 Methods dealing with write access

The `java.io.File` class also contains methods that assume write access to the file system. Due to its broadcast nature, the receiver naturally does not have write access to the carousel. It should be noted, however, that a broadcast carousel is not a read-only file system (which has the property of not changing). The carousel content can certainly be written and modified, but only by broadcaster - not the receiver. Therefore, the situation is equivalent to a Unix file system where the user has only read permissions, but not write permissions or ownership of the files.

The following `java.io.File` methods deal with write access to directories: `canWrite()`, `mkdir()`, `makedirs()`, `renameTo()`.

For abstract pathname entries in the broadcast carousel, the following behaviour shall apply:

- `canWrite()` returns false to indicate that the file can not be written to
- `mkdir()`, `makedirs()` and `renameTo()` return false to indicate that the request failed

### 11.5.1.3 Behaviour following loss of a broadcast carousel

When a broadcast carousel is lost to an application as described in 6.2.5.3, "Loss of Carousel Behaviour" on page 60, the following failure modes shall be followed for data which is unavailable.

- Attempting to load data from a file using a content format specific API shall fail as if the file itself never existed. This shall be done according to the specific API concerned.
- The classloader created by the platform when the application was first launched never attempts to automatically recover following loss of its initial broadcast file system.
- Attempting to load a class which is unavailable shall fail as if the class was never present.
- After the constructor for an `InputStream` has been successfully called, the data for that `InputStream` shall be maintained by the platform until the `InputStream` is closed. This is the same behaviour as specified for `InputStream` and file version changes in 11.5.1.1, "Constraints on the `java.io.File` methods for broadcast carousels" on page 267.
- Attempting to create a `FileInputStream` for a file whose data is unavailable shall fail with a `FileNotFoundException`.
- Attempting to create a `RandomAccessFile` for a file whose data is unavailable shall fail with an `IOException`.
- Attempting to use a `FileDescriptor` of a `FileInputStream` whose data is unavailable shall result in a `FileInputStream` or `InputStreamReader` where all methods shall throw an `IOException`.
- Attempting to call methods on a `File` object whose data is unavailable shall fail in the same way as if the `File` itself never existed.
- Operations ongoing at the time of loss of broadcast carousel shall be terminated. Blocked Java I/O operations shall throw `InterruptedIOException`.

## 11.5.2 Support for Multicast IP over the Broadcast Channel

Where support for IP over the broadcast channel is included, the following classes and packages shall be supported in addition to those listed above for the case where IP support is not included.

- a) The `javax.tv.net` package as defined in [Java TV \[51\]](#) is included.
- b) In `java.net.MulticastSocket`, the `send` method shall throw an `IOException` when called on sockets bound to unidirectional sources of IP multicast data.
- c) In `java.net.DatagramSocket`, the `send` method shall throw an `IOException` when called on sockets bound to unidirectional sources of IP multicast data.

d) The following classes from `java.net` shall be supported:-

- `DatagramPacket`
- `SocketException`
- `UnknownHostException`
- `ProtocolException`
- `BindException`

e) The class `org.dvb.net.DatagramSocketBufferControl` shall be supported see [Q, "\(normative\): Datagram Socket Buffer Control" on page 775](#).

f) Behaviour if unsupported:

When the application tries to `joinGroup()` on a Multicast address, `ProtocolException` shall be thrown to indicate failure on joining the group.

The methods `getTTL` and `setTTL` of `java.net.MulticastSocket` are not required to be present.

### 11.5.3 Support for IP over the Return Channel

Where support for IP over the return channel is included, all of the `java.net` package shall be included. Platforms not implementing specific optional return channel protocols shall fail as defined in the specification of this API.

On devices whose return channel can be connected or disconnected, connecting a `java.net.Socket` or a `java.net.URLConnection` to a host addressed via the return channel shall automatically setup a connection to the default connection target subject to the application having return channel permission for the default ISP and the return channel either being not connected or being connected to a different target but with the return channel resource reserved by another application with a lower priority. Such connections shall be automatically disconnected after a period of inactivity on that connection which it should be possible to define using the Navigator. This period shall be returned to applications in the `"dvb.returnchannel.timeout"` system property encoded in seconds as a decimal number.

See [11.10, "Java permissions" on page 287](#).

See also [11.8.1.3, "Other classes" on page 283](#).

The constant `java.net.HTTPURLConnection.HTTP_SERVER_ERROR` is not required to be present.

The class `java.net.DatagramSocketImpl` is not required to be present.

The methods `getTTL` and `setTTL` of `java.net.MulticastSocket` are not required to be present.

In the class `java.net.URLStreamHandler`, the protected method `setURL` is not required to be present.

In the class `java.net.URLConnection`, the static methods `getDefaultRequestProperty` and `setDefaultRequestProperties` are not required to be present.

The class `org.dvb.net.DatagramSocketBufferControl` shall be supported see annex [Q, "\(normative\): Datagram Socket Buffer Control" on page 775](#).

NOTE: Support multicast of IP over the return channel is not required by [6.3, "Interaction Channel Protocols" on page 61](#). On MHP terminals not supporting this, the methods concerned will fail using one of their defined failure modes.

### 11.5.4 MPEG-2 Section Filter API

The MPEG-2 section filter API is defined in annex E of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#).

### 11.5.5 Mid-Level Communications API

See Annex [R, "\(normative\): DVB-J Return Channel Connection Management API" on page 778](#).

On devices whose return channel can be connected or disconnected, when use of `java.net.Socket` or a `java.net.URLConnection` automatically sets up a connection, this shall be reported through this API to any applications listening for it.

Implementations shall automatically drop connections established using this API after the same period of inactivity as defined for automatically setup connections in 11.5.3, "Support for IP over the Return Channel" on page 269.

If an application which has reserved a `ConnectionRCInterface` and established a connection then releases the resource without disconnecting, the behaviour of the MHP terminal is implementation dependent.

If there are open sockets using that connection, the MHP terminal should keep the connection established until the time-out period defined in 11.5.3, "Support for IP over the Return Channel" on page 269 for automatically setup connections.

## 11.5.6 Persistent Storage API

- The API to persistent storage shall be the `java.io` package and the extensions to it found in the `org.dvb.io.persistent` defined in annex K, "(normative): DVB-J persistent storage API" on page 549.
- The `"dvb.persistent.root"` property which can be obtained from `java.lang.System.getProperty()` identifies the directory at the root of the file name space used for persistent storage. This value shall be the same for all applications.
- Accessing any files or directories in the parent directory of this root or directories above that shall throw a `SecurityException` as defined in the specification for the `java.io` package.
- Signed applications which are authenticated and which are granted the right to access persistent storage have the following privileges:
  - read only access to the root directory (defined above)
  - automatic read and write access to an "organisation" sub-directory named `<organisation_id>`
  - automatic read and write access to an "application" sub-directory named `<organisation_id> + <file.separator> + <application_id>`
- When the permission request file for an application requests access to persistent storage and this is granted, the MHP terminal shall be responsible for creating the necessary directories in which the application is allowed to read/write where these do not already exist. This shall be done before the first access (including existence checks such as `File.isDirectory()`) by that application instance to the directories concerned.

For applications which are granted file access (see 12.6.2.7, "File Access" on page 323), the necessary directories are only its organisation and application sub-directories. For applications which are granted a credential, (see 12.6.2.6, "Credentials" on page 320), the necessary directories are those defined by any filename elements in that credential up to but not including the first directory containing a wildcard.

EXAMPLE: A filename element such as

```
org0_id/appA_id/external/B_?/-
```

creates

```
org0_id/appA_id/external
```

When the MHP terminal automatically creates an "application" sub-directory as part of the necessary directories defined above, it shall set the owner of the created sub-directory to the application whose name corresponds to that sub-directory and set read and write access to the application whose name corresponds to that sub-directory and no access for other applications. The MHP terminal shall set the owner of any additional automatically created necessary directories that reside below an "application" sub-directory to the application whose name corresponds to that "application" sub-directory and set read and write access to the application whose name corresponds to that "application" sub-directory and no access for other applications.

If at the time when an MHP terminal would create the "application" sub-directory (if it did not exist), that directory already exists but is owned by an application other than the one whose application\_id is used as its name, the MHP terminal shall remove this directory and any contents of it and create an empty "application" sub-directory with the owner and access rights set as defined above.

- The owner of the "organisation" directory shall be the platform and the directory itself shall always have organisation read / write and world read access.
- All files in persistent storage shall store the 48 bit application identifier of their creator as the "owner" of the file. Only the owner of the file is entitled to change the file attributes and file access rights. The owner of a file cannot be changed once a file is created.
- Applications may only create files or directories in directories to which they have write access.
- The existing semantics for the java.io package are respected.
- See [14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377](#). The fields <organisation\_id> and <application\_id> are hexadecimal text encodings (without leading zeros) of the fields in the 48 bit application identifier of the application concerned as defined in [10.5, "Application identification" on page 220](#).
- All access to persistent storage shall be consistent with the security mechanism defined in [12, "Security" on page 301](#).

NOTE 1: As defined in [11.5.1, "Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API" on page 267](#), relative paths cannot be used to access persistent storage in an inter-operable way. NOTE 2: Unsigned applications have no access to persistent storage. See [12.6.2.7.1, "Unsigned applications" on page 323](#)

The contents of a file placed in persistent storage shall persist at least until one of the following conditions occur.

- a) There is not enough free persistent storage available to satisfy the persistent storage needs of a running application.
- b) The file stored in persistent storage expires.
- c) The file is cleared (i.e. deleted) by the creating application or an application with appropriate permissions.
- d) The file is cleared as a result of an explicit request by the end user.
- e) The persistent storage used by MHP applications exceeds 75% of the value in table [G.5, "Minimum requirements for other resources for conformance purposes" on page 521](#)

NOTE: This enables terminal's resource management system to release files as a result of an implementation-specific resource management policy.

The terminal shall give priority to the retention of higher priority files over lower priority files within the scope of a specific(organization ID, application ID) pair. See `org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes` for priorities.

The details regarding the release of cleared (i.e.deleted) or expired files are implementation dependent.

The MHP terminal shall have a means to clear at least the quantity of persistent storage defined in table [G.5, "Minimum requirements for other resources for conformance purposes" on page 521](#). This mechanism shall be usable in conformance tests, and is not subject to the rules above.

Some MHP terminals may allow a file to be opened for writing by only one `FileOutputStream` (or other file-writing object) at a time. In such situations the constructors in `FileOutputStream`, `RandomAccessFile` and `FileWriter` will fail if the file involved is already open. Concurrently running applications writing to the same file(s) in persistent storage cannot rely on this mechanism and will need to co-ordinate access to persistent storage themselves.

## 11.6 Service Information and Selection APIs

### 11.6.1 DVB Service Information API

The DVB specific SI API is defined in annex [M, "\(normative\): SI Access API" on page 570](#).

## 11.6.2 Service Selection API

The service selection API is defined by the `javax.tv.service.selection` package from [Java TV \[51\]](#).

On the first occasion when the method `ServiceContext.getServiceContentHandlers` is called for a specific service, any JMF players returned shall always be in the started state and if they are presenting video, that video shall always be presenting on the background video device. The same JMF player shall be returned for all real-time media components sharing the same clock. The MHP terminal shall monitor the set of service components being presented and update the list of service content handlers to track changes.

Applications shall re-acquire the list of service content handlers after a service selection completes. It is implementation dependent whether any previous handlers are re-used. JMF players which are not re-used are stopped and may be disposed by the platform. Where a JMF player is re-used, it shall be reset to a default condition as if it was not being re-used. In particular the implementation shall cancel all listeners previously defined and reset any previously defined characteristics such as video scaling or positioning.

The exception `javax.tv.services.selection.ServiceContextException` shall never be thrown by MHP terminals.

The default media player behaviour following service selection is defined under [11.4.2.3, "Default media player behaviour" on page 261](#).

The protected constructor of `ServiceContextFactory` is for implementation use. MHP applications shall not subclass `ServiceContextFactory`. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if they should do this.

Implementations of this API are required to perform tuning as part of implementing the `ServiceContext.select` methods where the new service to be selected is part of a transport stream known to the MHP terminal but not currently tuned to.

All the MHP applications running within the same service context shall have the ability to obtain and modify the state of the service component handlers for all service components being presented in that `ServiceContext`. For service component handlers which are JMF players, modifying the state includes changes to the settings of JMF controls in addition to the state machine of the JMF player itself.

Applications not running in that service context (e.g. the MHP navigator) shall not be able to modify the state of service component handlers unless they first inform the applications in the service context of this. For service component handlers which are JMF players, this informing shall be done by sending a `org.davic.media.ResourceWithdrawnEvent` to all applications which have currently registered listeners for `ControllerEvents` on the JMF player whose state will be modified.

Once a `ResourceWithdrawnEvent` has been sent, any changes made by applications inside the service context to the state of service component handlers will be ignored by the MHP terminal. Methods to query state shall return the actual state and methods to change the state shall silently fail. It is implementation dependent whether events related to JMF continue to be sent to applications.

If the application outside the service context ceases to need to make changes to the state of service component handlers, the applications inside the service context shall return to having that right exclusively. The applications inside the service context shall be informed of the return of this right. For service component handlers which are JMF players, this informing shall be done by sending a `org.davic.media.ResourceReturnedEvent` to all applications which have currently registered listeners for `ControllerEvents` on the JMF player which is returned to exclusive control.

Following receipt of a `ResourceReturnedEvent`, the MHP applications running in the service context are responsible for returning the configuration of all service component handlers to what they require. The MHP terminal is not required to automatically restore any configuration of any service component handler to any former value. In the case of a service component handler which is a JMF Player, the configuration is the set of writeable properties accessed through the `Controls` of that `Player`.

NOTE: Example properties include video scaling, video positioning and audio language choice.

NOTE: One situation where this may occur is where the end-user of the MHP terminal brings up the UI of the navigator, does some operation and then exits the navigator, returning control back to the MHP applications.



NOTE: There is no relationship required between the generation of these events and the Xlet state model. MHP terminals may choose to put all MHP applications which are in the Active state into the Paused state when they bring up the UI of the navigator however there is no requirement for this.

A running DVB-J application shall be considered as a component of the service being presented in the `ServiceContext` in which the application is running. It shall have a `ServiceContentHandler` which is intentionally not defined by this specification except that it shall not be a `ServiceMediaHandler`. The results of calling the `getServiceContentLocators` method on this `ServiceContentHandler` are implementation dependent. If the `ServiceContext` in which a DVB-J application is running is stopped, the DVB-J application shall be stopped like all other service components being presented in that service context. `ServiceContentHandlers` for DVB-J applications shall not be shared between DVB-J applications if more than one application is running.

NOTE: An Xlet is not a `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceComponent`, the elementary stream(s) carrying the object carousel carrying the Xlet shall be represented by at least one of these.

NOTE: Services with only DVB-J applications and no media components will have no `ServiceMediaHandlers` but only `ServiceContentHandlers` representing the running DVB-J applications.

NOTE: This specification intentionally does not define any circumstances under which `SelectionFailedEvent(MISSING_HANDLER)` is required to be generated.

NOTE: Stopping all the components of a service (both media and Xlets) results in a service with no components being presented, the same as if a service with no components had been initially selected.

The following stream types (from `javax.tv.service.navigation.StreamType`) shall be selectable and shall have `ServiceContentHandlers` defined: AUDIO, VIDEO, SUBTITLES.

If the selected service is a DVB NVOD reference service, MHP terminals shall make an implementation dependent choice from those NVOD time shifted services associated with that reference service and try to select the chosen time shifted service. The algorithm for the implementation dependent choice shall be automatic and not involve the end-user. Any failure shall be reported as specified through this API.

NOTE: Applications which wish to choose a specific time shifted service need to explicitly specify that service and not rely on the choice of the receiver.

This API shall support the following features on those MHP terminals which support the feature concerned.

- Internet clients (see: 9.8, "Lifecycle of internet access applications" on page 211, 11.14.1, "Internet client control APIs" on page 298)
- Stored services (see: 9.7.2, "Stored services" on page 209, 11.12.2.2, "Modified behaviour of MHP 1.0 APIs" on page 296)
- Services signalled over the interaction channel (see 9.7.1, "Applications loaded from the interaction channel" on page 209, 11.11.12, "Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J" on page 295)

### 11.6.3 Tuning API

The tuning API is defined in annex H of DAVIC 1.4.1p9 [3] apart from section H.4, (the `Locator` and `DvbLocator` classes) which are found in section 11.7.6 "Content Referencing".

The following methods in this package shall throw `java.lang.SecurityException` where and only where the application does not have a `org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission`:

- `NetworkInterfaceController.reserve`
- `NetworkInterfaceController.reserveFor`

The class `org.davic.net.tuning.dvb.DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil` is not required.

See also 11.8.3, "Additional permissions classes" on page 284.

Tuning automatically performed by other APIs in MHP shall be reported through the tuning API to any applications listening for it.

## 11.6.4 Conditional Access API

The conditional access API is defined in annex I of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#).

The following classes are not supported as defined in section 11.2.2 "Approach to Subsetting" - CA1Module, CA0Module, CA1Message, CA0Message, CA1ModuleResponseEvent and CA0ModuleResponseEvent.

Physical CI modules or embedded systems following the CI protocol can produce MMI messages. The API implementation, subject to security model, passes those to be presented by the application if the application is interested. Otherwise CA dialogs are generated.

The following methods in this API may throw `java.lang.SecurityException`:-

- `CAModuleManager.addMMIListener`
- `CAModule.queryEntitlement`
- `CAModule.listEntitlements`
- `CAModule.buyEntitlement`
- `CAModule.openMessageSession`

The `sessionIDs` used in CI message passing are unique to a single application and access shall fail if shared between applications.

See also 11.8.3, "Additional permissions classes" on page 284.

Host Control tune requests from a CI module cause service selections. Host Control `replace / clear_replace` has an equivalent effect to using `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl`.

## 11.6.5 Protocol Independent SI API

The protocol independent SI API is defined by the following packages from [Java TV \[51\]](#):

- `javax.tv.service`
- `javax.tv.service.guide`
- `javax.tv.service.navigation`
- `javax.tv.service.transport`

The mapping of this onto the DVB-SI protocol is specified in annex O, "(normative): Integration of the JavaTV SI API and DVB SI" on page 701.

Cancellation shall fail if the request is no longer pending. It is implementation dependent if cancellation fails under any other circumstances. Implementations are not required to support cancellation of requests between when the requested SI data has arrived in the device and when execution of the `notifySuccess` method starts.

The interface `javax.tv.service.ServiceMinorNumber` is not required to be implemented by any object defined in this specification.

This API shall support the following features on those MHP terminals which support the feature concerned.

- Internet clients (see 9.8, "Lifecycle of internet access applications" on page 211, 11.14.1, "Internet client control APIs" on page 298)
- Stored services (see 9.7.2, "Stored services" on page 209, 11.12.2.2, "Modified behaviour of MHP 1.0 APIs" on page 296)

## 11.7 Common Infrastructure APIs

### 11.7.1 APIs to support DVB-J application lifecycle

This API is formed of the Java classes and interfaces found in the `javax.tv.xlet` package specified in [Java TV \[51\]](#).

#### 11.7.1.1 Xlet properties

The following named Xlet properties shall be supported:

- `dvb.org.id`
- `dvb.app.id`
- `dvb.caller.parameters`

They can be retrieved from an Xlet's `XletContext` by calling `getXletProperty` with the string name defined above.

All keys for `XletContext.getXletProperty` beginning 'dvb.' are reserved for use in DVB project specifications.

The array of strings returned by `XletContext.getXletProperty(XletContext.ARGS)` shall be the array of strings defined in the [DVB-J application descriptor](#) (see [10.9.1 on page 235](#)) in the same order as specified in the signalling. Each entry in the loop of that descriptor shall be presented as one string in the array returned by this method, interpreted using the encoding as specified in [10.4.8, "Text encoding in AIT" on page 219](#). Zero-length strings in the signalling shall be represented as the empty string.

The "dvb.caller.parameters" XletProperty contains the array of Strings that was passed into the `AppProxy.start(String[])` method by the application that started this application. If this application was started by the system or by another application using the `AppProxy.start()` method without parameters, an empty array with length 0 is returned as the value of this XletProperty.

**Table 114 : Property name / type / encoding mapping**

| Property Name                      | getXletProperty return type   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code>dvb.app.id</code>            | String encoded as in <a href="#">14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377</a> . |
| <code>dvb.org.id</code>            | String encoded as in <a href="#">14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377</a> . |
| <code>dvb.caller.parameters</code> | String[], no information to be indicated with an array of length zero.                              |

#### 11.7.1.2 Actions for DVB-J applications to perform in their destroy method

Xlets shall perform at least the following in their `Xlet.destroyXlet` method and before calling `XletContext.notifyDestroyed`:

- cause any threads that they have created to exit voluntarily. See ["java.lang package" on page 251](#).
- stop, deallocate and close any JMF players that they have created.
- stop and destroy any JavaTV service selection `ServiceContext` objects that they created.
- release any other scarce resources that they created, e.g. `NetworkInterfaceControllers` if they do any tuning.
- flush any images using the `Image.flush()` method.
- Xlets shall not cause any unnecessary delay in their `Xlet.destroyXlet` method.
- de-register any event listeners

If applications do not release these resources then the platform may do it for them.

Regardless of whether an application releases resources or whether the platform does it, the appropriate notifications shall be sent to all other MHP applications which are registered to receive these. For resources which are managed by an API using the `org.davic.resources` package, these notifications are specified by that API. For resources which are related to JMF players which are `ServiceMediaHanders`, if the MHP terminal implementation changes the configuration of these resources (e.g. to tidy-up), this shall be notified as defined in 11.6.2, "Service Selection API" on page 272 for "Applications not running in that service context".

## 11.7.2 Application discovery and launching APIs

This API is formed of the `org.dvb.application` package defined in S, "(normative): Application Listing and Launching" on page 802.

The following properties are defined for use with the method `AppAttributes.getProperty`:

**Table 115 : Application attribute properties**

| Property name (note 1)   | Return  |
|--|---|
| <code>dvb.j.location.base</code>                                     | Returns String containing <code>base_directory_bytes</code> from DVB-J application location descriptor.   |
| <code>dvb.j.location.cpath.extension</code>                          | Returns String[] derived from <code>classpath_extension_bytes</code> of DVB-J application location descriptor with each array entry corresponding to a pathname entry as defined for <code>classpath_extension_bytes</code> .   |
| <code>dvb.transport.oc.component.tag</code>                          | Returns Integer containing the <code>component_tag</code> from the selector bytes of the transport protocol descriptor.<br>If more than one transport protocol descriptor is in the AIT for a remote application then it is implementation dependent which of them is returned. |
| <code>dvb.ait.descriptors</code>                                     | See 11.7.8, "Plug-in APIs" on page 281.   |
| NOTE 1: Property names beginning "dvb." are reserved for future use. |   |

The following table defines the source of the information which shall be used for methods returning information from entries in the application database for an application signalled in an AIT. This shall apply to both AITs delivered via MPEG-2 broadcast and ones delivered as an AIT file (see 10.4.9, "AIT file" on page 219). This shall also apply to applications running as part of a stored service using information stored at the time when the application itself was stored.

**Table 116 : Information source for methods on AppAttributes (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Method                                   | Information source   |
|--|--|
| <code>getName()</code>                   | One of the names that can be found in the application name descriptor.   |
| <code>getName(String ISO639code)</code>  | A name of the application from the application name descriptor corresponding to the specified language.  |
| <code>getNames()</code>                  | All of the names for the application which can be found in the application name descriptor and their ISO 639 language code.  |
| <code>getProfiles()</code>               | The set of profiles signalled in the application profile field of the application descriptor.  |
| <code>getPriority()</code>               | The contents of the <code>application_priority</code> field of the application descriptor.   |
| <code>getVersions(String profile)</code> | The values <code>version.major</code> , <code>version.minor</code> and <code>version.micro</code> for the specified profile from the application descriptor.   |
| <code>getIsServiceBound()</code>         | True if the <code>service_bound</code> field in the application descriptor is set to 1. Otherwise false.   |
| <code>isStartable()</code>               | There is no information source for this method, the return value is derived as specified in the method description. For the purpose of the method description, remote applications are defined to be those signalled as such in the transport protocol descriptor. |

**Table 116 : Information source for methods on AppAttributes (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Method              | Information source   |
|---------------------|--|
| getIdentifier()     | The contents of the application_identifier field of the application information section.   |
| getServiceLocator() | An application shall be considered to be transmitted on a remote connection only where the application control code in the signalling is REMOTE. The locator for a remote application shall encapsulate the values found in the selector bytes of the transport protocol descriptor. |
| getType()           | Returns the application_type field from the AIT section in which the application was signalled.  |
| isVisible()         | True if the visibility field in the application descriptor is set to 11. False otherwise.  |

**Table 117 : Information source for methods on Applcon**

| Method         | Information source   |
|----------------|--|
| getLocator()   | The bytes carried in the application_locator_byte of the application icons descriptor appended to either the base directory of the application (where the application type from the application information section is zero, from the DVB-J application location descriptor) or the physical root (where the application type from the application information section is 1, from the DVB-HTML application location descriptor). |
| getIconFlags() | The icon_flags field of the application_icon_descriptor.   |

Applications signalled in an AIT shall be considered to be externally authorised where their only signalling in that AIT is by an [External application authorisation descriptor](#).

`CurrentServiceFilter` shall behave as defined in its specification for stored services and services signalled over the interaction channel in addition to broadcast service as defined in its specification.

### 11.7.3 Inter-Application and Inter-Xlet communication API

The javadoc for the `org.dvb.io.ixc` package is provided in annex Y, "(normative): [Inter-application and Inter-Xlet communication API](#)" on page 902. An example is provided in W.2, "[Example of exporting an object for inter-application communication](#)" on page 888.

This API is formed of the interfaces `java.rmi.Remote` and `java.rmi.RemoteException`, and the classes `java.rmi.NotBoundException` and `java.rmi.AlreadyBoundException` as specified in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#), plus the package `org.dvb.io.ixc`.

Two named Xlet properties are introduced: `dvb.org.id` and `dvb.app.id`. They can be retrieved from an Xlet's `XletContext` by calling `getXletProperty("dvb.org.id")` and `getXletProperty("dvb.app.id")`, respectively.

#### 11.7.3.1 Remote Call Semantics

An object may be communicated to another Xlet in two ways:

- A reference to the remote object can be passed,
- or
- a copy of the remote object can be made.

These two techniques are called "pass by remote reference", and "pass by remote copy". When an object that has been bound to the IXC Registry via a method of `org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry` is imported by another, it shall be passed by remote reference.

### 11.7.3.1.1 Objects Passed by Remote Reference

An object that is passed by remote reference must implement a remote interface. A remote interface is an interface that extends, either directly or indirectly, the marker interface `java.rmi.Remote`. The declared type of a parameter or a return value for a remote method invocation must be a remote interface, or a class whose instances are serializable. If a remote interface that is application-defined, the interface definition must be included in both the sending and receiving Xlet. If the two xlets contain an identically named remote interfaces that contain different declarations, the result of attempting to use these interfaces for inter-Xlet communication is undefined, and possibly implementation dependent.

When an object is passed by remote reference to a different Xlet, the receiving Xlet does not receive a direct reference to the exported object; rather, it receives an instance of a stub class. This stub class will not be a subclass of the remote object's runtime type; rather, it will be a platform-generated class that implements the remote interface type that is the declared type of the argument or return value. It will include implementations of all methods specified by the remote interface, and will contain no other members accessible to the application. These methods are called "remote methods." Remote methods invoked on this stub class instance will be forwarded to the object in the original Xlet, and executed in the context of that Xlet.

NOTE: The remote methods specified by a remote interface include all methods specified by that interface, including the methods inherited from superinterfaces. This applies even for methods inherited from superinterfaces that do not themselves extend `java.rmi.Remote`, either directly or indirectly.

The definition of the stub class shall be automatically created by the platform.

NOTE: This differs from traditional network RMI, where the stub classes are created by the developer using a tool such as `rmic`. If stub classes produced by `rmic` or any other off-line tool are present, the platform shall silently ignore them for the purposes of inter-Xlet communication.

The stub class that is generated shall include a definition for all of the methods specified by the declared remote interface type. A remote interface is an interface that extends `java.rmi.Remote`, either directly or indirectly. These remote methods must be declared as follows:

- Each method must declare `java.rmi.RemoteException` in its `throws` clause, in addition to any application-specific exceptions.
- A remote object passed by remote reference as an argument or return value must be declared as an interface that extends `java.rmi.Remote`, and not as an application class that implements this remote interface.
- The type of each method argument must either be a remote interface, a class or interface that implements `java.io.Serializable`, or a primitive type.
- Each return value must either be a remote interface, a class or interface that implements `java.io.Serializable`, a primitive type, or `void`.

If any remote method does not follow these rules, the platform cannot generate a stub class. When one is required, a `RemoteException` shall instead be thrown to the caller.

#### 11.7.3.1.1.1 Lifecycle Considerations for Remote Objects

When an Xlet is destroyed, it is possible that other Xlets may have remote references to some of the Xlet's objects. If a method is invoked on one of these remote objects, the platform may fail to execute the method, and instead throw a `RemoteException`. If a remote method call is in progress when the Xlet receiving the call is destroyed, the calling Xlet may receive a `RemoteException` on the calling thread, and the remote method invocation may be abruptly terminated. If a remote method has started executing code in the implementation of the remote object when the Xlet making the call is destroyed, the call shall run to completion, unless the Xlet receiving the call is also destroyed.

#### 11.7.3.1.1.2 Exceptions in Remote Method Calls

If an exception is thrown from a remote method, a remote copy of that exception shall be made in the context of the calling Xlet. This copy of the exception shall be thrown to the caller.

### 11.7.3.1.1.3 Re-exported Objects

It is possible that an object passed from one Xlet to another might be passed back to the original Xlet. This could happen through any number of intervening Xlets. If this happens, the original Xlet will receive the instance that it originally exported. If it compares the instance it receives with the original instance using the Java `==` operator, the result will be true. Because of this, there is no need to provide an override of `java.lang.Object.equals()` or `java.lang.Object.hashCode()` for remote objects.

NOTE: This behaviour is different than network RMI, as implemented in traditional Java implementations. In Sun's implementation of network RMI, a remote stub object is given to the original Xlet, but stubs and remote objects are required to have a special version of the `equals()` and `hashCode()` methods.

### 11.7.3.1.2 Objects Passed by Remote Copy

An object is passed by remote copy when a method argument or return value is passed, where the class of that object does not implement `java.rmi.Remote`. Additionally, a remote method call exception is communicated to the receiving Xlet by remote copy, as described in 11.7.3.1.1.2, "Exceptions in Remote Method Calls" on page 278.

When an object is passed by remote copy, it is serialized into a byte stream in the context of the exporting Xlet, and deserialized in the context of the importing Xlet. Serialization is performed as defined for `java.io.Serializable`. Application-defined classes may be serialized, but the definition of the application-defined class must be present in both Xlets, and the external forms of both versions of the class must be compatible. If any error in serialization or deserialization occurs, an instance of `java.rmi.RemoteException` shall be thrown.

#### 11.7.3.1.2.1 Treatment of Primitive Types

Primitive types passed as method arguments or return values are copied.

### 11.7.3.1.3 Classloading Considerations

The presence of inter-xlet communication does not allow the loading of one Xlet's classes from another. No classloader that loads classes from a remote Xlet for remote method calls is created (unlike network RMI, which creates a special `RMIClassLoader` for remote objects). Rather, a copy of each application-defined remote interface and serializable object involved in a remote method invocation must be present in both Xlets. If this is not the case, the platform shall generate a `RemoteException` and throw it in the calling thread.

### 11.7.3.1.4 Thread Usage

A remote method may or may not execute in separate underlying thread. If an application makes a remote method invocation to a remote object in a different application, and that second application calls back to the first in the same "thread," then the first application might or might not observe that the original calling thread and the callback thread are the same instance of `java.lang.Thread`.

If an application makes simultaneous remote calls in separate threads, then the remote execution shall appear to be carried out in parallel.

NOTE: This is not meant to rule out thread-pooling techniques. Specifically, an implementation may choose to serialize such remote calls, as long as the first one completes within a reasonably short time, relative to the normal scheduling rules of Java threads.

### 11.7.3.1.5 Garbage Collection of Remote Objects

When a non-destroyed Xlet contains a reachable instance of a stub for a remote object, that remote object shall not be garbage collected, unless the remote Xlet is destroyed. When an exported object no longer has any remote stub objects that are reachable in other non-destroyed Xlets, and when that exported object is also not reachable locally within its Xlet, then that remote object shall be considered unreachable, and thus eligible for reclamation.

When an Xlet is destroyed, other Xlets may hold remote references to objects within the Xlet being destroyed. In this case, the referenced objects may be dereferenced and ultimately garbage collected. If this is done, then attempts to invoke remote methods on these objects shall result in a `RemoteException` to the caller.

## 11.7.4 Basic MPEG Concepts

This API is formed of the Java classes defined in annex G of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#):

- `ApplicationOrigin`,
- `ElementaryStream`,
- `Service`,
- `TransportStream`,
- `DvbElementaryStream`,
- `DvbService`,
- `DvbTransportStream`.

Methods returning instances of elementary stream, service or transport stream shall return instances of the dvb specific subclass (`DvbElementaryStream` etc.).

## 11.7.5 Resource Notification

The resource notification API is defined in annex F of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#).

- The `notifyRelease()` method shall be called for all `ResourceClients` where the corresponding resource has been removed without the application releasing it. The `release()` method shall be called for specific resources where time to cleanup is of practical use considering the specific resource in question. The only one of these in this specification is connection oriented return channels.
- The `requestData` parameter of the `requestRelease` method shall implement the `java.rmi.Remote` interface. In APIs using the `ResourceProxy` interface, where the method to reserve the resource has a parameter 'requestData', this parameter shall also implement the `java.rmi.Remote` interface or be null. Use of other values shall result in null being used when `requestRelease()` is called. Implementing the `Remote` interface does not force java.rmi to be used when the current owner of the resource is in the same application as code requesting ownership.
- The `resourceProxy.getClient()` method shall always return the `ResourceClient` provided to the platform by the application when that instance of a `ResourceProxy` was created or reserved. The `ResourceClient` for the current owner of a resource is only returned when this method is called on the `ResourceProxy` which currently holds the resource concerned.

This text clarifies the DAVIC javadoc with respect to multiple simultaneous applications. Interpretations of the DAVIC javadoc which are inconsistent with this are excluded.

## 11.7.6 Content Referencing

This API is formed of the classes found in section H.4 of annex H of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) - the `Locator` and `DvbLocator` classes. It also includes the `javax.tv.locator` package as defined in [Java TV \[51\]](#).

The signature of the `org.davic.net.Locator` class will be extended with:

```
"implements javax.tv.locator.Locator"
```

The `createFactory()` method of `javax.tv.locator.LocatorFactory` shall always return `org.davic.net.Locator(s)` which implement the `javax.tv.locator.Locator` interface when provided with DVB URLs as input (as defined in [14.1, "Namespace mapping \(DVB Locator\)" on page 373](#)).

In this specification, methods whose signature has a return type of `org.davic.net.Locator` or `javax.tv.locator.Locator` shall return an instance of `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator` (or a platform defined subclass of that) where the locator returned can be represented by the DVB locator syntax described in [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#). In this case, the `DvbLocator` returned shall contain the numeric identifiers of a DVB service (see [14.9, "Service identification" on page 380](#)).



In `javax.tv.locator.Locator.toExternalForm()`, the canonical form of a DVB locator is defined as follows:

- For instances of `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbNetworkBoundLocator`, the syntax of this string is implementation-dependent. However, the resulting string shall be sufficient to recreate an equivalent locator (e.g. using JavaTV's `LocatorFactory`) at a later time. The same string shall be valid even if stored by the Xlet (e.g. in persistent storage) and used at a later time.
- For instances of `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator` which are not instances of the above sub-class and reference a service or more detailed parts of a service, this shall be the format defined in the MHP specification. If the optional `transport_stream_id` was provided when the instance was built, it shall form part of the external form otherwise it shall not.
- For instances of `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator` which are not instances of the above sub-class and reference only a transport stream but not a service, this shall be the format defined in the MHP specification, including the transport stream id.

NOTE: Because optional extensions (e.g. component tag, event id) are part of the external form, they are considered in a comparison thus if they are not equally present in both locators then the comparison will fail.

For the above locators "best effort" comparison shall be exact.

The protected constructor of `LocatorFactory` is for implementation use. MHP applications shall not subclass `LocatorFactory`. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if they should do this.

### 11.7.7 Common Error Reporting

This API is formed of the interface and exceptions defined in annex G of [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#):

- `NotAuthorizedInterface`,
- `NotAuthorizedException`,
- `ObjectUnavailableException`,
- `ResourceException`,
- `TuningException`.

### 11.7.8 Plug-in APIs

The plug-in API is defined in Annexes [AF, "\(normative\): Plug-in APIs" on page 969](#) and [AE, "\(normative\): Inner Applications" on page 955](#) of this specification.

MHP inter-operable plug-ins signalled with the [delegated application descriptor](#) (see [10.13.3 on page 242](#)) shall implement the `org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin` interface. Failure to implement this interface shall result in the plug-in being ignored. Plug-ins which only execute "delegated" applications signalled in the AIT do not need to implement the `javax.tv.xlet.Xlet` interface as part of the initial entry point from the application manager to the plug-in. Plug-ins which can execute both AIT & natively signalled "delegated" applications shall implement both the Plug-in and the Xlet interfaces.

The semantics of the method `org.dvb.application.AppAttributes.getProperty()` are extended such that when it is called with the string "dvb.ait.descriptors", an array of bytes containing the `application_descriptors_loop` shall be returned. If this information is no longer available then null shall be returned.

Each running instance of a plug-in shall execute in a single logical VM instance as defined in [11.2.1, "Basic Considerations" on page 248](#). Hence all delegated application Xlets returned by the `initApplication` method are all executed in the same logical VM instance. It is the responsibility of the plug-in to ensure the presence or absence of shared context between instances of delegated application Xlets in the same logical VM instance.

## 11.8 Security

### 11.8.1 Basic Security

The following packages and classes as defined in [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#) are supported.

#### 11.8.1.1 java.security

From the `java.security` package:

- `AccessControlContext`
- `AccessControlException`
- `AccessController`
- `AllPermission`
- `BasicPermission`
- `CodeSource`
- `GeneralSecurityException`
- `Guard`
- `InvalidKeyException`
- `Key`
- `KeyException`
- `NoSuchAlgorithmException`
- `NoSuchProviderException`
- `Permission`
- `PermissionCollection`
- `Permissions`
- `Policy`
- `Principal`
- `PrivilegedAction`
- `PrivilegedActionException`
- `PrivilegedExceptionAction`
- `ProtectionDomain`
- `PublicKey`
- `SignatureException`
- `SecurityPermission`
- `SecureClassLoader` (note 1)
- `UnresolvedPermission`

NOTE 1: The `java.security.SecureClassLoader` class extends the version of `java.lang.ClassLoader`, defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) therefore the `java.security.SecureClassLoader` class is not required to support additional APIs from later versions of `java.lang.ClassLoader`. It is an allowed implementation option for `SecureClassLoader` to be abstract.

The MHP platform shall always install a `SecurityManager` before starting any DVB-J applications.

The following classes shall be supported:

- `java.security.KeyFactory`

`KeyFactory.getInstance(String algorithm)` shall return a valid `KeyFactory` for algorithm "RSA".

NOTE: since `KeyFactorySpi` is not required, the protected constructor will be subset out via the subsetting rule

- `java.security.spec.KeySpec`
- `java.security.spec.EncodedKeySpec`

The `EncodedKeySpec` constructor is guaranteed to work for X.509 key encodings.

- `java.security.spec.X509EncodedKeySpec`
- `java.security.spec.InvalidKeySpecException`

### 11.8.1.2 java.security.cert

- Certificate
- CertificateEncodingException
- CertificateException
- X509Certificate
- CertificateExpiredException
- CertificateNotYetValidException

X509Certificate is not required to implement X509Extension on a compliant MHP terminal.

### 11.8.1.3 Other classes

The following other classes are supported.

- java.io.FilePermission
- java.io.SerializablePermission
- java.lang.RuntimePermission
- java.util.PropertyPermission
- java.net.SocketPermission
- java.awt.AWTPermission

## 11.8.2 APIs for return channel security

This API is defined in the following packages from JSSE [60]:

- javax.net
- javax.net.ssl
- javax.security.cert

NOTE: As support for server-side sockets is not mandated by this specification, it is an allowed implementation option for the method `javax.net.ssl.SSLServerSocketFactory.getDefault()` to fail with an appropriate `RuntimeException`, e.g. `ClassNotFoundException`.

For the method `getSupportedCipherSuites` in the following classes:

- javax.net.ssl.SSLServerSocket
- javax.net.ssl.SSLSocketFactory
- javax.net.ssl.SSLSocket
- javax.net.ssl.SSLServerSocketFactory

Cipher suites listed in table 132, "Profile of cipher suites that implementations are required to support" on page 340 shall have the name found in the "cipher suite" column of that table with "TLS\_" replaced by "SSL\_". If other cipher suites from TLS IETF RFC 2246 [63] are supported, it is implementation dependent whether their names start with "TLS\_" or "SSL\_".

Also see 12.10, "Security on the return channel" on page 339.

### 11.8.3 Additional permissions classes

See T, "(normative): Permissions" on page 839.

### 11.8.4 General security issues

Unless otherwise specified, sub-classes of `java.security.Permission` are not required to check the input parameters to their constructors. When an MHP platform constructs these, it is responsible for creating them with legal values. The behaviour of an MHP platform if an application creates such an instance with illegal values is intentionally not specified.

## 11.9 Other APIs

### 11.9.1 Timer Support

This API is formed of the Timer API defined in [Java TV \[51\]](#) in the `javax.tv.util` package.

Implementations are required to meet the following specifications:

- Minimum repeat interval less than or equal to **40 ms**
- Granularity less than or equal to **10ms**

The only condition defined in this specification where `TVTimer.scheduleTimerSpec` may throw `TVTimerScheduleFailedException` is if the MHP terminal is unable to provide any more timers. See table [G.4](#), "[Minimum requirements for other resources](#)" on page 520.

### 11.9.2 User Settings and Preferences API

This API is defined in L "(normative): User Settings and Preferences API".

The preferences listed below shall be accessible to all applications.

- User Language
- Parental Rating
- Country Code
- Default Font Size

Other preferences shall only be accessible where a `UserPreferencePermission` for "read" has been granted (see [11.10.2.8](#), "[org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission](#)" on page 289).

### 11.9.3 Profile and version properties

Applications can discover the supported profile and the version of the profile (and thus, what functionality is supported) by retrieving profile and version properties. If a particular profile is not supported then the related version properties shall return null.

More specifically, the properties listed in table [118](#) shall be included in the property set of the `java.lang.System` class. Thus these properties can be retrieved using `java.lang.System.getProperty()`. Since this API returns a string, numeric return values shall be encoded as defined by `java.lang.Integer.toString(int)`.

**Table 118 : System properties for profile and version interrogation (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Property                                       | Semantics  | Possible values | Example |
|--|--|-----------------|---------|
| <code>mhp.profile.enhanced_broadcast</code>    | Indicates whether the enhanced broadcast profile is supported    | "YES"           | "YES"   |
| <code>mhp.profile.interactive_broadcast</code> | Indicates whether the interactive broadcast profile is supported | "YES", null     | "NO"    |
| <code>mhp.profile.internet_access</code>       | Indicates whether the internet access profile is supported       | "YES", null     | "NO"    |

**Table 118 : System properties for profile and version interrogation (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Property   | Semantics   | Possible values            | Example |
|--|---|----------------------------|---------|
| mhp.eb.version.major   | Major version number of the supported enhanced broadcast profile    | Non-negative integer value | "1"     |
| mhp.eb.version.minor   | Minor version number of the supported enhanced broadcast profile    | Non-negative integer value | "0"     |
| mhp.eb.version.micro   | Micro version number of the supported enhanced broadcast profile    | Non-negative integer value | "0"     |
| mhp.ib.version.major   | Major version number of the supported interactive broadcast profile | Non-negative integer value | "1"     |
| mhp.ib.version.minor   | Minor version number of the supported interactive broadcast profile | Non-negative integer value | "0"     |
| mhp.ib.version.micro   | Micro version number of the supported interactive broadcast profile | Non-negative integer value | "0"     |
| mhp.ia.version.major   | Major version number of the supported internet access profile       | Non-negative integer value | "1"     |
| mhp.ia.version.minor   | Minor version number of the supported internet access profile       | Non-negative integer value | "0"     |
| mhp.ia.version.micro   | Micro version number of the supported internet access profile       | Non-negative integer value | "0"     |
| NOTE 1: In previous versions of this specification, "NO" might be returned instead of null for profiles which are not supported. |   |                            |         |

The properties for querying the version of a profile which is not supported by the MHP terminal shall not be supported. Hence, calling `System.getProperty()` for these properties shall return null.

### 11.9.3.1 Information on options

Chapter 15 defines what is mandatory and optional for each profile. In order to give an application information about which options a particular MHP implementation supports, a property string is defined for each option (with the same granularity as in chapter 15).

An MHP implementation supports an option if and only if the corresponding property is known and its value is "SUPPORTED". The properties are part of the property set of the `java.lang.System` class.

The general syntax of the properties that indicate whether a certain feature is supported or not is:

```
mhp.option.<the optional feature>.
```

The table 119 lists the currently defined options.

**Table 119 : System properties for optional feature interrogation (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Option  | Property                |
|---|-------------------------|
| IP Multicast over Broadcast Channel   | mhp.option.ip.multicast |
| HTTP 1.1 over the interaction channel   | mhp.option.http.1.1     |
| DSMCC user-to-user over the interaction channel   | mhp.option.dsmcc.uu     |
| DVB-HTML  | mhp.option.dvb.html     |
| Does this MHP receiver have a smart card reader accessible to applications through the smart card reader API? | mhp.smartcard.reader    |

**Table 119 : System properties for optional feature interrogation (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Option   | Property            |
|--|---------------------|
| Memory for stored services (see 9.7.2, "Stored services" on page 209) is greater than zero. (note 1)   | mhp.stored.services |
| NOTE 1: The available memory may be insufficient to store a particular application and hence requests to add applications to stored services may fail even though this property is both known and "SUPPORTED". |                     |

## 11.9.4 Non-CA smart card API

### 11.9.4.1 Framework

The non conditional access API for smart cards is defined in [Embedded OCF \[106\]](#) with the clarifications, extensions and restrictions as defined in the corresponding sections below.

### 11.9.4.2 Clarifications

The implementation has to make sure that there is at most one open SlotChannel per physical slot channel at any given time.

The use of `opencard.opt.terminal.Lockable` is not applicable in the MHP context.

### 11.9.4.3 Extensions

This API is extended with the classes found in Annex AI, "(normative): Non-CA Smartcard APIs" on page 1039.

### 11.9.4.4 Restrictions

The behaviour is changed so that an application only can obtain instances of card services that are either registered by the system or that it itself has registered.

`CardServiceScheduler.getSlotChannel()` shall return null, this is to prevent application developers to be tempted to bypass the use of a `CardChannel` in services.

The `opencard.opt.terminal` package is not required in MHP.

### 11.9.4.5 Modified semantics

The following methods shall throw `java.lang.SecurityException` if the calling application does not have the `SmartCardPermission` class defined in 11.9.4.3, "Extensions" on page 286.

- `CardTerminal.getTerminal`
- `EventGenerator.getGenerator`
- `SmartCard.getSmartCard`
- `CardServiceRegistry.getRegistry`

If no non-CA smart card reader is available to MHP applications, the following failure behaviour shall be observed.

- `CardTerminal.getTerminal()` shall return a `CardTerminal` instance where the `getSlots` method shall return zero. The other methods shall fail according to their specification where the `slotID` is invalid.
- The methods on `EventGenerator` shall work but the MHP terminal shall never generate any events to any registered listeners.
- `SmartCard.getSmartCard` shall throw a `CardTerminalException`
- `CardServiceRegistry.getRegistry` shall return a `CardServiceRegistry` which does not initially have any `CardServiceFactories` in it. Applications are able to add factories by the `add` method but the platform is not required to use them for any purpose other than returning them in the enumeration from `getCardServiceFactories`.

## 11.10 Java permissions

This section explains how the permissions that are defined to be included in the sandbox that is available to unsigned applications and the permissions that can be requested in the permission request file are mapped to the Permission objects in the Java platform.

### 11.10.1 Permissions for unsigned applications

The MHP security policy includes a set of resources that are always guaranteed to be granted to applications, if the application is executed. Unsigned applications have access to only these resources.

This section defines the mapping of those resources to the Java Permission objects. DVB-J applications shall always be granted these Permissions.

#### 11.10.1.1 `java.awt.AWTPermission`

This control access to sensitive parts of AWT which is not needed for MHP applications. This shall be denied for both unsigned and signed applications.

#### 11.10.1.2 `java.net.SocketPermission`:

Because access to return channel is not within the sandbox, this is not required for unsigned applications.

#### 11.10.1.3 `java.util.PropertyPermission`

For unsigned applications, a read permission shall be granted for all properties defined in this chapter except for those explicitly identified as only available for signed applications. The permission shall be denied for the action string "write".

A read permission may also be granted for other properties except for those explicitly identified as only available for signed applications.

#### 11.10.1.4 `java.lang.RuntimePermission`

This permission shall be denied for both unsigned and signed applications.

#### 11.10.1.5 `java.io.SerializablePermission`

This permission shall be denied for both unsigned and signed applications.

#### 11.10.1.6 `java.io.FilePermission`

A read permission shall be granted for the subtree under which the implementation mounts the object carousels.

#### 11.10.1.7 `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission`

The Media API (i.e. JMF) is within the sandbox, so all applications shall be granted a `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission` with a locator string "\*" that indicates access to all media streams.

#### 11.10.1.8 `javax.tv.service.ReadPermission`

Access to Service Information is within the sandbox, so all applications shall be granted a `javax.tv.service.ReadPermission` with a locator string "\*" .

#### 11.10.1.9 `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission`

All applications shall be granted a `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextPermission` with a name string "getServiceContentHandlers" and action string "own" .

`ServiceContextPermission( "access", "own" )` shall be granted to all MHP applications.  
`ServiceContextPermission( "access", "*" )` shall not be granted.

### 11.10.1.10 `java.util.Locale.setDefault`

This method shall throw a security exception.

### 11.10.1.11 Applications signalled in AIT file

Applications signalled in an AIT file [10.4.9, "AIT file" on page 219](#) shall have an instance of `SocketPermission` for each combination of host and port number listed in all transport protocol descriptors with the protocol ID value `0x0003` in both their AIT entry and in the "common" descriptor loop. Each permission shall have the "connect" action only.

## 11.10.2 Additional Permissions for signed applications

Signed applications can additionally request to get more permissions. These permissions are requested using the permission request file ([12.6, "Security policy for applications" on page 314](#)). This section defines the mapping from the items in the permission request file to the Java Permissions that may be granted by the MHP terminal in response to the request.

### 11.10.2.1 `java.util.PropertyPermission`

For signed applications, a read permission shall be granted for all properties for unsigned applications and `dvb.persistent.root`.

### 11.10.2.2 `java.io.FilePermission`

A read permission shall be granted for the subtree under which the implementation mounts the object carousels.

When the permission request file requests the permission to access persistent storage and this is granted, a `FilePermission` that permits access to the persistent storage directory subtree is created.

NOTE: The `FilePermission` created shall comply with the access rights defined in section [12.6.2.7.2, "Policy for signed applications" on page 323](#).

When there is a persistent file credential in the permission request file and this is granted, `FilePermissions` are created as follows:

- file path = value of `dvb.persistent.root` property + filename from the credential
- action = string containing "read" if "read" is indicated in the credential; or string containing "write, delete" if "write" is indicated in the credential"

NOTE: A single instance of `FilePermission` is not sufficient to express the limitations on accessing files & directories through credentials required by section [12.6.2.6, "Credentials" on page 320](#). Implementations are responsible for enforcing those requirements and cannot rely on a single instance of `FilePermission` to achieve this.

### 11.10.2.3 `org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission`

When the permission request file requests the permission to communicate with a CA system and this is granted, a `CAPermission` is created as follows:

The CA system ID string from the permission request file is directly used as the first part of the string used for the `CAPermission` constructor, this is concatenated with a colon character and the list of the attribute strings based on the attributes listed as true in the permission request file.

### 11.10.2.4 `org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission`

When the permission request file requests the permission to have additional permissions to control the lifecycle of applications and this is granted, an `AppsControlPermission` is created.



### 11.10.2.5 org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to communicate through the return channel and this is granted, an `RCPermission` is created as follows:

- for the default ISP item, the `RCPermission` is created with "target:default" string.
- for items with phone numbers in them, the string is "target:" + the phone number prefix in the permission request file + "\*"

On `org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface`, the method `getCurrentTarget` shall always throw a `SecurityException`. The method `setTarget` shall throw a security exception where the application doesn't have the permission to use the target specified. The method `setTargetToDefault` shall throw a security exception where the application doesn't have either "target:default" or "target:\*" permissions.

### 11.10.2.6 org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to access the Tuning API and this is granted, an `TunerPermission` is created.

### 11.10.2.7 javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission

By default a `SelectPermission` is created with a locator "\*" and action string "own" and a `ServiceContextPermission` is created with a name "\*" and action string "own", unless denied by an entry in the permission request file.

### 11.10.2.8 org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to read and/or write user preferences and this is granted, a `UserPreferencePermission` is created as follows:

- when the permission request file includes "true" for the "read" attribute and this is granted, a `UserPreferencePermission` is created with the string "read"
- when the permission request file includes "true" for the "write" attribute and this is granted, a `UserPreferencePermission` is created with the string "write"

### 11.10.2.9 java.net.SocketPermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to communicate with remote hosts and this is granted, `SocketPermissions` are created with the host and action as indicated in the permission request file.

These permissions shall not be granted in MHP terminals where all return channels are represented by instances of `org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface` (i.e. where all return channels are connection oriented) unless an instance of `org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission` is also granted.

### 11.10.2.10 org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to use the drip feed feature and this is granted, a `DripFeedPermission` shall be created.

### 11.10.2.11 org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to store applications and this is granted, a `StoredApplicationPermission` is created. This permission class is defined in Annex AG, "(normative): [Stored application APIs](#)" on page 989.

### 11.10.2.12 org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission

When the permission request file requests the permission to access the smart card API and this is granted, a `SmartCardPermission` is created. This permission class is defined in Annex AI, "(normative): [Non-CA Smartcard APIs](#)" on page 1039 of this specification.

### 11.10.2.13 ServiceContextPermission

On MHP terminals supporting the internet access profile, all applications which are granted a SelectPermission (see 11.10.2.7, "javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission" on page 289) shall be granted instances of `javax.tv.service.Selection.ServiceContextPermission` with names:

- "create"
- "destroy"
- "stop"

all of these to have the actions string "own".

## 11.11 Content referencing

The following mapping shall be used between the types of locator defined in table 136, "Addressable entities, locators and their text representation" on page 379 and the DVB-J methods defined in this chapter. It lists the Java methods & constructors which accept or return (as defined by their method signature) instances of `org.davic.net.Locator`, `javax.tv.locator.Locator`, `javax.media.MediaLocator` or their sub-classes. The external form of these locators shall be the text representation defined in the table 136, "Addressable entities, locators and their text representation" on page 379 for the corresponding entity being referenced. Where the same method is listed as accepting multiple forms of locator, then it is required to accept all forms listed in this section.

Where a method listed below is defined (in its specification) to check its input then it shall only accept the forms of locator listed below as being valid for that method from among those defined in this specification. Other forms of locator from among those defined in this specification shall be rejected as specified for the method concerned. If a method does not specify a means of rejecting inappropriate locators then it shall fail silently apart from Exceptions and Events which do not check their input and where it is the responsibility of the platform to use correct locators when constructing them. This specification does not prevent methods accepting other forms of locator which are not defined in this specification.

The sections below apply equally to locators including and not including the `network_id`.

### 11.11.1 Transport stream

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which describe an MPEG transport stream. Methods which accept a locator for a transport stream as an input parameter shall also accept all other DVB locators which include the information to identify a transport stream. If present, `service_id`, `component_tag`, `event_id` and `path_segments` shall be retained but not used except where there is both a method that accepts such a locator and a query method specified to return that input. In this case the specified semantics of the query method shall be respected.

- `javax.tv.service.transport.TransportStream.getLocator()`
- `javax.tv.service.transport.TransportStreamCollection.retrieveTransportStream()`

NOTE: This requirement holds only if the terminal supports `TransportStreamCollection` objects.

- `org.davic.net.tuning.StreamTable.getTransportStreams()`
- `org.davic.net.tuning.NetworkInterfaceController.tune()`
- `org.davic.net.tuning.NetworkInterface.getLocator()`
- `org.davic.net.tuning.NetworkInterfaceController.reserveFor()`
- `org.davic.net.tuning.StreamTable.listTransportStreams()`
- `org.dvb.si.SITransportStream.getDvbLocator()`

NOTE: The numeric identifiers in the locator are matched in the DVB-SI tables as defined in see 14.1.5, "dvb\_entity = dvb\_transport\_stream" on page 374.

## 11.11.2 Network

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which describe a DVB network.

- `javax.tv.service.transport.NetworkCollection.retrieveNetwork()`
- `javax.tv.service.transport.Network.getLocator()`

## 11.11.3 Bouquet

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which describe a DVB bouquet.

- `javax.tv.service.transport.BouquetCollection.retrieveBouquet()`
- `javax.tv.service.transport.Bouquet.getLocator()`

## 11.11.4 Service

### 11.11.4.1 MPEG/DVB specific service

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which describe a DVB service. Methods which accept a locator for a MPEG/DVB service as an input parameter shall also accept all other DVB locators which include the information to identify a service. If present, `component_tag`, `event_id` and `path_segments` shall be retained but not used except where there is both a method that accepts such a locator and a query method specified to return that input. In this case the specified semantics of the query method shall be respected.

- `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule.buyEntitlement()`
- `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule.queryEntitlement()`
- `org.dvb.si.SIDatabase.retrieveSIService()`
- `org.dvb.si.SIDatabase.retrievePMTService()`
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream.getStreamLocator` where the method `isMPEGProgram` returns `true`
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain.attach()`
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain.getLocator()`
- `org.dvb.si.PMTService.getDvbLocator()`
- `org.dvb.si.SIBouquet.getSIServiceLocators()`
- `org.dvb.si.SIService.getDvbLocator()`
- `org.davic.net.ca.TuneRequestEvent` - constructor
- `org.davic.net.ca.TuneRequestEvent.getLocator()`
- `org.dvb.application.AppAttributes.getServiceLocator()` where the service is a MPEG / DVB service
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference` - constructor where the service is a MPEG / DVB service
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference.getLocator()` - where the service is a MPEG / DVB service

NOTE: The numeric identifiers in the locator are matched in the DVB-SI tables as defined in see 14.1.1, "`dvb_entity = dvb_service`" on page 373.

### 11.11.4.2 Generic Service

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which reference generic services. These methods are also required to accept or return the same locators as in the previous section.

- `javax.tv.service.navigation.LocatorFilter` - constructor
- `javax.tv.service.navigation.LocatorFilter.getFilterValue()`
- `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getService()`
- `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceDetails.getLocator()`
- `javax.tv.service.Service.getLocator()`
- `javax.tv.service.SIManager.retrieveServiceDetails()`
- `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceList.findService()`
- `org.dvb.application.AppAttributes.getServiceLocator()` - where the service is not a MPEG / DVB specific one
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference` - constructor where the service is not a MPEG / DVB specific one
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference.getLocator()` where the service is not a MPEG / DVB specific one
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRException` - constructor
- `org.davic.media.MediaLocator` - constructor
- `javax.media.MediaLocator` - constructor
- `javax.media.Manager.createPlayer(MediaLocator)`
- `javax.media.Manager.createDataSource(MediaLocator)`
- Constructor of various JMF events consumes JMF MediaLocators:  
`org.dvb.media.CAStopEvent`, `org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent`, `org.dvb.media.ServiceRemovedEvent`, `org.dvb.media.NoComponentSelectedEvent`
- Various JMF events return JMF MediaLocators which were passed into their constructors:  
`org.dvb.media.CAStopEvent`, `org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent`, `org.dvb.media.ServiceRemovedEvent`, `org.dvb.media.NoComponentSelectedEvent`
- `StoredApplicationService.getLocator` - return value
- `InternetClient.getServiceContentLocators` - return value

### 11.11.5 DVB Event

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which describe a DVB event.

- `javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramEvent.getLocator()`
- `javax.tv.service.SIManager.retrieveProgramEvent()`
- `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule.buyEntitlement()`
- `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule.queryEntitlement()`
- `javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramSchedule.retrieveProgramEvent()`
- `org.dvb.si.SIEvent.getDvbLocator()`

### 11.11.6 MPEG elementary stream

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return instances of Objects which describe a MPEG elementary stream. Methods below which accept as an input parameter an array of locators shall also accept DVB locators including multiple component tags.

- `javax.tv.net.InterfaceMap.getLocalAddress()`
- `javax.tv.service.selection.InvalidServiceComponentException` - constructor
- `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl` - all methods accepting or returning instances of `javax.tv.locator.Locator`
- `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectEvent` & subclasses - constructor
- `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectPermission` - constructor
- `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContext.select()`
- `org.dvb.si.SIDatabase.retrievePMTElementaryStreams()`
- `org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream.getDvbLocator()`
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain.attach()`
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain.getLocator()`
- `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl.getCurrentSelection()`
- `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceComponent.getLocator()`
- `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectEvent.getSelection()` (also subclasses)
- `org.davic.net.ca.DescramblingStoppedEvent.getServiceLocator()`
- `org.davic.net.ca.DescramblingStartedEvent.getServiceLocator()`
- `org.davic.media.MediaLocator` - constructor - shall also accept multiple component tag "dvb:" locator
- `javax.media.MediaLocator` - constructor - shall also accept multiple component tag "dvb:" locator
- `javax.media.manager.createPlayer( MediaLocator )` - shall also accept multiple component tag "dvb:" locator
- `javax.tv.service.selection.InvalidServiceComponentException.getInvalidServiceComponent()`
- `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContentHandler.getServiceContentLocators()`

NOTE: The numeric identifiers in the locator are matched in the DVB-SI tables as defined in see [14.1.2](#), "dvb\_entity = dvb\_service\_component" on page 374.

### 11.11.7 File

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return locators which reference files.

- `org.davic.media.MediaLocator` - constructor - for audio files intended to be played from memory
- `javax.media.MediaLocator` - constructor - for audio files intended to be played from memory
- `javax.media.Manager.createPlayer(MediaLocator)` - for audio files intended to be played from memory
- `javax.media.Manager.createDataSource(MediaLocator)` - for audio files intended to be played from memory
- `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain.getURL(Locator)` - instances of "dvb:" locator including `dvb_abs_path`

Apart from the above, all file references shall be encapsulated in instances of `java.net.URL`.

### 11.11.8 Directory

The following method shall return an instance of the "dvb:" locator referencing a directory.

- `org.dvb.application.AppIcon.getLocator()`

### 11.11.9 Drip feed decoder

The following methods used in this specification shall accept or return locators which reference the "drip feed" decoder.

- `javax.media.MediaLocator` - constructor
- `javax.media.Manager.createDataSource(MediaLocator)`

### 11.11.10 Irrelevant

The following methods used in this specification which accept Locators according to their signature have no requirement to have locator types specified for them in this specification:

- `javax.tv.service.ReadPermission`, all applications shall have this permission with "\*", see 11.10.1.8, "[javax.tv.service.ReadPermission](#)" on page 287.
- `javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission`, applications shall either have this permission with "\*" or not to have it at all, see 11.10.2.7, "[javax.tv.service.selection.SelectPermission](#)" on page 289.

### 11.11.11 Methods working on many Locator types

The following methods used in this specification work on many locator types. The locator types which each method is required to support are listed for each of the methods concerned.

- `javax.tv.locator.LocatorFactory.transformLocator` - transforms a transport independent locator into a transport dependent one  
 required to accept instances of `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator`  
 required to return instances of `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbNetworkBoundLocator`
- `javax.tv.locator.LocatorFactory.createLocator` - creates a locator from a string  
 required to accept valid 'dvb' URLs (see 14.1, "[Namespace mapping \(DVB Locator\)](#)" on page 373) and return corresponding instances of `org.davic.net.dvb.DVBLocator`
- `javax.tv.service.SIManager.registerInterest` - accepts a locator referencing one or more SIElements as input
- `javax.tv.service.SIManager.retrieveSIElement` - accepts a locator referencing one or more SIElements as input

Both these methods are required to accept locators referencing:-Bouquet, Network, Event, ElementaryStream, Service, TransportStream

- `javax.tv.service.SIElement.getLocator`

returns a locator for "this SIElement" as specified by the JavaTV specified sub-interfaces, no other SIElements exist

### 11.11.12 Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J

In MHP terminals where an HTTP protocol (6.3.7.1, "HTTP 1.1" on page 62 or 6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62) is supported, the following classes and methods shall support the HTTP protocol concerned. In MHP terminals where the HTTPS protocol (6.3.7.3, "HTTPS" on page 63) is supported, the following class and methods shall support that protocol.

- The constructor for `javax.media.MediaLocator` - for referencing audio files intended to be played from memory
- methods on `javax.media.Manager` accepting `javax.media.MediaLocator` as input parameters - for constructing JMF players for audio files intended to be played from memory
- The classes & methods in the "java.net" package
- Methods in this specification which accept instances of `java.net.URL` are required to accept instances which encapsulate an "http" URL and behave according to their specification. - e.g. `Toolkit.getImage(java.net.URL)`
- On MHP terminals supporting applications downloaded over the interaction channel as defined in 9.7, "Services and applications not related to conventional DVB services" on page 209, the method `LocatorFactory.createLocator(String)` shall additionally accept Strings containing URLs using the "http" and "https" protocols as being valid and return a corresponding `Locator`. This method shall only validate the string to the extent that this is possible without network access.
- On MHP terminals supporting applications downloaded over the interaction channel as defined in 9.7, "Services and applications not related to conventional DVB services" on page 209, the method `SIManager.getService(Locator)` shall accept such `Locators` as being valid and return a corresponding `javax.tv.service.Service`. This method shall only validate the locator to the extent that this is possible without network access.

When HTTP URLs are used with instances of `DVBClassLoader` to load DVB-J classes over the interaction channel in a signed application, the requirements of the MHP security model shall be complied with before a class is allowed to be successfully loaded from such a URL.

## 11.12 Stand-alone applications

### 11.12.1 Common behaviour

The extended MHP application model allows several forms of applications to execute in a stand-alone mode independent of any broadcast services. The environment of these stand-alone applications shall be as follows:

- Instances of `org.dvb.si.SIDatabase` may not return any SI objects if the corresponding network interface isn't tuned to anything. It is implementation dependent whether some network interfaces are left tuned to some previously used transport stream.

For DVB-J applications, the behaviour defined in 9.7.4, "[Common behaviour](#)" on page 211 shall mean the following:

- The method `ServiceContext.getServiceContentHandlers` shall not return a `ServiceContentHandler` for any such existing video or audio for a stand-alone stored application.
- A stand-alone application creating and starting a JMF player shall receive a higher priority for resources than the presentation of any previously existing video and audio.

### 11.12.2 Stored services

The MHP specification supports two forms of stored applications as defined in 9.1.9, "[Broadcast service related stored applications](#)" on page 191 and 9.7.2, "[Stored services](#)" on page 209.

#### 11.12.2.1 Stored application APIs

This is defined in Annex AG, "[\(normative\): Stored application APIs](#)" on page 989 of this specification.

#### 11.12.2.2 Modified behaviour of MHP 1.0 APIs

The following APIs defined in MHP 1.0 shall have extended semantics to support listing and launching of stored services as defined in 9.7.2, "[Stored services](#)" on page 209. The modifications to these APIs are as follows:-

- The class `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceTypeFilter` when used with a `ServiceType "org.dvb.application.StoredApplicationService.STORED_APPLICATION_SERVICE"` shall return a `ServiceList` containing all currently installed stored services when passed to `SIManager.filterServices`.

NOTE: Implementations may choose to expose other installed services (e.g. manufacturer resident ones) through this API.

- Instances of `javax.tv.service.Service` returned from such a `ServiceList` shall be instances of `org.dvb.application.StoredApplicationService` with the modified semantics as defined for that interface.
- The method `ServiceContext.select(Service selection)` shall accept instances of `org.dvb.application.StoredApplicationService` and attempt to start the stored application service concerned subject to the MHP security model.
- The file system APIs shall see a file system comprised of the files defined in the application description file as needing to be stored for this application. Calling `new DSMCCObject( ". " )` or `new java.io. File( ". " )` shall instantiate the directory object that refers to the outermost (top level) directory listed in the application description file (see 10.14.3, "[Application description file](#)" on page 245) when the application was stored. Other file system behaviour shall be as defined in 9.7.2, "[Stored services](#)" on page 209.
- The `org.dvb.dsmcc` API shall work for access to stored files. Asynchronous loading can be expected to complete immediately. `ObjectChangeEvents` shall not be generated. Pre-fetching shall be always supported for stored files. The `unload( )` method shall not be considered as removing stored files from where they are stored.



## 11.13 Support for DVB-HTML

### 11.13.1 Document object model APIs

#### 11.13.1.1 Framework

The required document object model APIs are defined in the following:

- From [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Core Specification \[96\]](#), that part of Annex D, "Java Language Binding" corresponding to the "Fundamental Interfaces" as specified in section 1.2 of that specification.
- From [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Events Specification \[98\]](#), Annex B, "Java Language Binding", only those parts corresponding to the interfaces listed as required in 8.11.1.1, "Fundamental interfaces" on page 133 and 8.11.1.2, "Event interfaces" on page 133.
- From [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Views Specification \[100\]](#), Annex B, "Java Language Binding".
- From [Document Object Model \(DOM\) Level 2 Style Specification \[99\]](#), Annex B, "Java Language Binding" the interface `org.w3c.dom.css.CSS2Properties` is required.

#### 11.13.1.2 DVB defined extensions

The DVB defined DOM extensions are defined in Annex AD, "(normative): Support for DVB-HTML" on page 937 of this specification see also AD.1, "Java bindings to DVB extensions" on page 937.

#### 11.13.1.3 Read Only Access to DOM

Where a DVB-J application only has or requests read-only access to the DOM, calling methods in the DOM APIs whose result would be to modify the DOM shall result in an `org.w3c.dom.DOMException` with exception code `NO_MODIFICATION_ALLOWED_ERR` being thrown.

### 11.13.2 Embedded Xlets in a DVB-HTML Page

Below is a list of the semantic differences in MHP APIs between DVB-J applications and xlets embedded in a DVB-HTML page of a DVB-HTML application.

- Xlets shall not use the HAVi HScene APIs to get the "primary" Container that is managed by the enclosing DVB-HTML document. The method `javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer.getRootContainer(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext)` shall be used for this purpose. The object returned shall be a subclass of `java.awt.Container` implementing the following interfaces:
  - `org.havi.ui.HComponentOrdering`
  - `org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene`
 It may be an instance of `org.havi.ui.HScene` or a subclass of that but is not required to be either of these.
- Embedded Xlets are only guaranteed to be able to perform actions using the Document Object Model APIs when they are in the active state. The results of calling methods on `org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentFactory` when the embedded xlet is in any other state are implementation dependent. They may include a `RuntimeException` being thrown or the Document passed to `DocumentAction.run()` being null. If the state of an application changes from the active state to another state between when a method on `DocumentFactory` is called and when the `run()` method of the specified `DocumentAction` is called then the results of this are also implementation dependent.
- If the Xlet is in the active state or if the `startXlet` method is executing, and the width and height are  $> 0$ , then `getRootContainer()` shall return a valid `Container` instance. If the width or height are  $\leq 0$ , `getRootContainer` shall return null. In all other cases, situations and xlet states, the value returned is implementation dependent.

Any "param" elements of the `<object>` used to define an embedded xlet shall be accessible to the embedded xlet. The sequence of these arguments is mapped to `XletContext.ARGS` and shall be available to the Xlet, in the form of an array of `Strings`, by calling:

```
javax.tv.xlet.XletContext.getXletProperty(XletContext.ARGS)
```

## 11.14 Internet access

### 11.14.1 Internet client control APIs

These are defined in the `org.dvb.internet` package (see [AH, "\(normative\): Internet client APIs" on page 1007](#)).

Internet clients accessible to MHP applications shall appear in the list of services maintained by the `SIManager` which is returned by calls to the method `SIManager.filterServices`. For each accessible internet client, the corresponding sub-class of `InternetClientService` shall be returned from calls to that method both when passed an instance of `ServiceTypeFilter` constructed with the type `InternetServiceType.INTERNET_CLIENT` and when passed null.

The method `ServiceContext.select(Service selection)` shall accept instances of `InternetClientService` and its sub-classes returned by the mechanism described above as being valid input.

**NOTE:** When a internet client application is selected in the same service context as an MHP application, the mechanism by which that internet client application terminates is implementation dependent. Examples of termination may include the end-user closing the browser (by some mechanism), the end user selecting a broadcast TV service using the navigator or the end user selecting a broadcast TV service by selecting a link to a "dvb:" URL in a WWW page or email. See also [9.8, "Lifecycle of internet access applications" on page 211](#).

MHP terminals capable of supporting MHP applications and internet client applications simultaneously shall support the creation of a second service context by MHP applications using `ServiceContextFactory.createServiceContext()` in addition to the one used for "normal" MHP applications. This second service context need only support the selection of instances of `InternetClientService`. Selection of other services in this second service context would fail with a `SelectionFailedEvent` with reason code `INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES`.

**NOTE 1:** This does not prevent MHP terminals with multiple independent video outputs supporting a service context per video output capable of supporting MHP services however in this case, these service contexts would be created by the MHP navigator.

**NOTE 2:** Support of multiple service contexts on the same video output each allowing presentation of MHP services is not excluded in this specification but is not fully specified here.

### 11.14.2 Internet applet support

Internet applet support is defined as follows.

#### 11.14.2.1 HTML tags

Internet applets shall be supported using the "`<applet>`" and "`<object>`" tag with the semantics defined in [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

### 11.14.2.2 Common MHP features

The following features of the DVB-J platform shall be supported for internet applets in the same way as they are supported for DVB-J applications.

- [The Virtual Machine](#) see 11.1 on page 248
- [Approach to Subsetting](#) (see 11.2.2 on page 249)
- [Unloading](#) (see 11.2.4 on page 249)
- [java.lang.reflect package](#) (see 11.3.1.2 on page 252)
- [java.util](#) (see 11.3.1.3 on page 252)
- [java.util.zip](#) (see 11.3.1.4 on page 252)
- [java.io](#) (see 11.3.1.5 on page 253)
- [java.net](#) (see 11.3.1.6 on page 253 and 11.5.3, "Support for IP over the Return Channel" on page 269, 11.11.12, "Support for the HTTP protocol in DVB-J" on page 295)
- [java.beans](#) (see 11.3.1.7 on page 254)
- [java.math](#) (see 11.3.1.8 on page 254)
- [java.awt.event](#) (see 11.4.1.1, "The Core GUI API" on page 256)
- [java.awt.image](#) (see 11.4.1.1, "The Core GUI API" on page 256)
- [java.security](#) (see 11.8.1.1 on page 282 and 11.8.2, "APIs for return channel security" on page 283).
- [java.security.cert](#) (see 11.8.1.2 on page 283)

### 11.14.2.3 Extended or modified common MHP features

The following features of the DVB-J platform shall be supported for internet applets in the same way as they are supported for DVB-J applications except as modified below.

- [Basic Considerations](#) (see 11.2.1 on page 248)

The requirements on DVB-J applications do not apply to internet applets.

- [java.lang package](#) (see 11.3.1.1 on page 251)

The full set of system properties required to be supported for `System.getProperty()` and `System.getProperties` by [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) are required to be supported.

- [java.text](#) (see 11.3.1.9 on page 255)

The complete `java.text` package as defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) shall be supported.

### 11.14.2.4 The java.awt package

The `java.awt` package shall be supported as defined in section 5.2 of [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#) as modified below.

- Support for deprecated methods is required in this package and its sub-packages.
- The following class of the `java.awt` package is not required:

`FileDialog`

- The following method of the `java.awt.Component` class is not required:  
`isDoubleBuffered()`
- The following methods of the `java.awt.Toolkit` class are not required:  
`getMenuShortcutKeyMask()`, `getPrintJob()`, `getSystemEventQueueImpl()`, `loadSystemColors(int[])`
- Where [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#) has optional behaviour or defines multiple levels of support, the following minimums shall be supported.
  - Dialog: Minimal support
  - Frame: Minimal support
  - Window: Minimal support
  - `Component.setCursor()`: The specified cursor may be ignored
  - `Dialog.setResizable()`: Unsupported
  - `PopupMenu.add(MenuItem)`: Nested `PopupMenu`s supported
  - `Graphics.setXORMode()`: Supported
  - Scrolling controls: As defined in section 5.2.1 of [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#)
  - Menu option: Supported (see table 2 of 5.2 of [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#))
  - Scrollbars: Supported (see table 2 of 5.2 of [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#))
- Where the PJAE specification indicates that `com.sun.lang.UnsupportedOperationException` shall be thrown to indicate the absence of an optional operation, a subclass of `java.lang.RuntimeException` shall be permitted instead.

#### 11.14.2.5 Additional features for applet support.

The following additional features shall be supported for internet applets.

- The `java.applet` package as defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#).  
This specification does not require support for any specific audio formats for use with the `java.applet.AudioClip` feature. Attempting to play Audio Clips where audio is not supported shall fail silently.
- The `java.awt.datatransfer` package as defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#)

#### 11.14.2.6 Security

This specification does not require support for signed applets or for the code signing mechanism and APIs as defined in [PersonalJAE \[36\]](#).

Applets shall have at least the following permissions.

- `java.util.PropertyPermission` to "read" all properties defined for the `java.lang.system.getProperties()` method.
- `java.net.SocketPermission` to "connect" to all ports on the server from which the applet was originally downloaded.

---

# 12 Security

## 12.1 Introduction

This section covers the following areas of security:

- Authentication of applications
- Security policies for applications
- Authentication and privacy of the return channel communications
- Certificate management

### 12.1.1 Overview of the security framework for applications

The security framework enables a receiver to authenticate the source of application code or other files. In the case of application code files, the authentication advises the receiver what access rights should be granted to an application for sensitive resources, see 12.6, "Security policy for applications" on page 314 for more detail.

The system uses 3 different security messages:

- Cryptographic hash codes

This provides a summary of a quantity of data - typically a subset of the total set of data under consideration.

- Signatures

These deliver a master hash code (computed over all of the appropriate data) that has been "signed" by an authorising organisation. The signing process securely associates the master hash code with the signatory. The hash code process shows that the data has not been tampered with since it was signed by the signatory.

- Certificates

These provide a "chain of trust" from the authorising organisation up to some trusted third party (the root certificate authority) that is well known to the receiver.

The messages are delivered within files of the file system so this authentication scheme is applicable to any hierarchical file system whether operating over the broadcast or return channels.

Applications that are signed shall be identified with an [application\\_id](#) from the signed applications range (see table 79, "Value ranges for application\_id" on page 221). Applications that are unsigned shall be identified with an [application\\_id](#) from the unsigned applications range. An application with an [application\\_id](#) from the signed applications range but that is not signed is considered to have failed authentication. An application with an [application\\_id](#) from the unsigned applications range is treated as unsigned even if the files might be transmitted with signatures.

### 12.1.2 Overview of return channel security

In this version of the specification general purpose protocols and a standard cryptographic suite derived from internet standards are used.

## 12.2 Authentication of applications

### 12.2.1 Overview of authentication messages

Three different message types are used: "Hash codes", "Signatures" & "Certificates". Each message is placed in a file. The placement of the files depends on their function and is specified under the appropriate headings under 12.4, "Detail of application authentication messages" on page 304.

### 12.2.1.1 Hash codes

This specification describes application of hash codes to the following types of information:

- Files
- Directories

The hash computation considers the content and attributes of the objects rather than transport specific information. As a result, the authentication is independent of the underlying transport protocol.

In the case of a directory the hash value depends on the hash values of the objects bound to it, and so provides a hash of all of the objects to be authenticated in the "tree" below it.

### 12.2.1.2 Signatures

The data authenticated is a hierarchical file system (for example DSM-CC OC). The root of an authenticated "tree" carries one or more signatures. This allows one or more organisations to sign a set of information.

The root of the authenticated "tree" can be the root directory of the file system or the "top" directory of a "subtree".

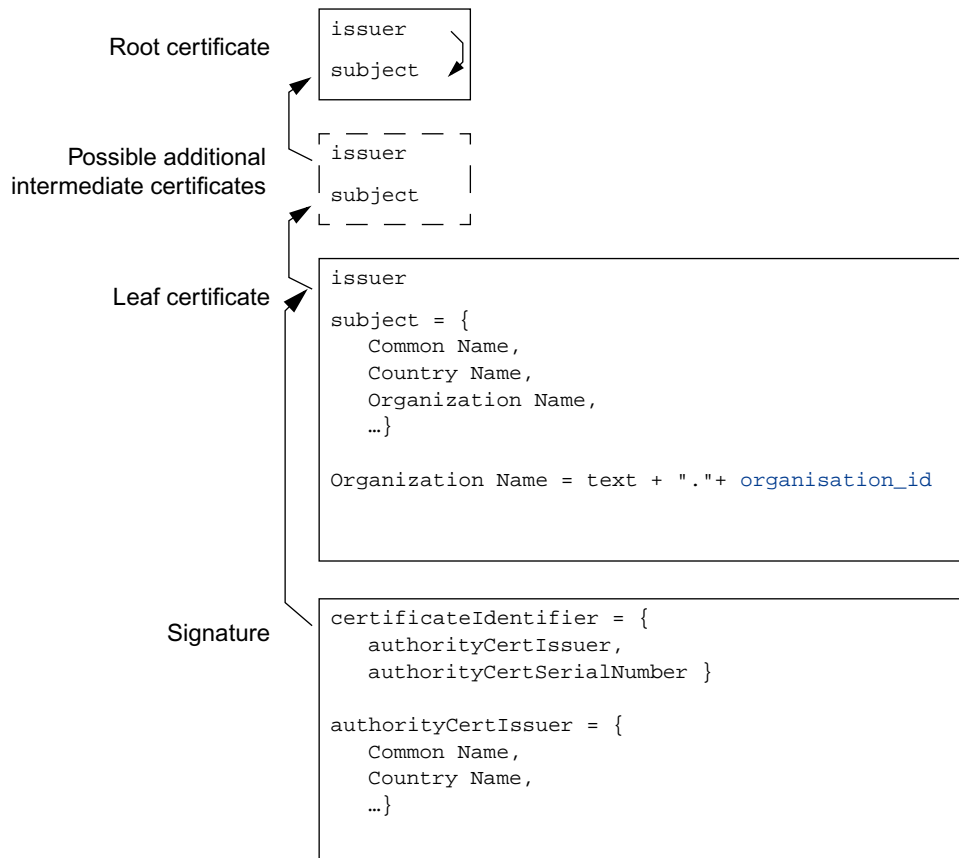
The signature:

- references a certificate containing the public key required to decode the signature
- identifies the hash algorithm used
- and the value of the signature

### 12.2.1.3 Certificates

The certificate provides a public key that can be used to decode a hash code contained in a signature and so enable a tree/subtree to be verified. The certificate itself is signed by a higher certification authority.

To correctly authenticate a subtree there must be a valid "chain" of certificates from the signature to a root certificate as is illustrated in figure 19.



**Figure 19 : Certificate chain illustrated**

### 12.2.1.4 Authentication of hierarchical file systems

The solution here is based on authentication of a hierarchical structure of objects. Hashcodes are computed systematically and accumulatively across some or all of the objects in the hierarchy. A signature at the top of the hierarchy identifies the source of the objects.

The framework provides a flexible and non-time consuming method enabling the authentication of subtrees of a file system with a single signature. Since checking signature is far more time-consuming than checking hashcode values, this mechanism is more efficient than signing each object of a subtree.

Further, only the objects that are loaded need real-time hashcode checking.

This mechanism does NOT mandate that the whole subtree is authenticated.

**NOTE:** The broadcaster can choose which files in the file system are authenticated. For example code files might be authenticated and asset files might be left without authentication.

Finally, this framework embraces key distribution by specifying a certificate mechanism, the aim of this is to certify that the key used to compute the signature is valid and used by a certified service provider. See 12.8, "MHP certification procedures" on page 333.

## 12.3 Message transport

The security messages are transported in files.

In no cases shall a service transfer be required to access the file content. In the case that the file system is an object carousel this means that the IOR for the security files shall always use a BIOP profile body and never a Lite options profile body.

## 12.4 Detail of application authentication messages

Three data structures are defined for communicating authentication information:

- "HashFile" on page 304
- "SignatureFile" on page 307
- "CertificateFile" on page 309

These are placed in files in the file system. The location of the file depends on its function.

### 12.4.1 HashFile

#### 12.4.1.1 Description

The [HashFile](#) lists all of the elements of the current directory except itself. On transport protocols supporting the listing of files in a directory (e.g. Object Carousel), signature files shall not be listed. On transport protocols not supporting the listing of files in a directory (e.g. HTTP), signature files shall be listed and shall have a [digest\\_type](#) of non-authenticated. Those elements to be authenticated are associated with hashcodes. The syntax of the [HashFile](#) is shown in table 120.

**Table 120 : Syntax of the Hashfile**

| Syntax  | Num. Bits | Format |
|---|-----------|--------|
| Hashfile () {   |           |        |
| digest_count  | 16        | uimsbf |
| for( i=0; i<digest_count; i++ ) {   |           |        |
| digest_type   | 8         | uimsbf |
| name_count  | 16        | uimsbf |
| for( j=0; j<name_count; j++ ) {   |           |        |
| name_length   | 8         | uimsbf |
| for( k=0; k<name_length; k++ ) {  |           |        |
| name_byte   | 8         | bslbf  |
| }   |           |        |
| }   |           |        |
| for( j=0; j<digest_length; j++ ) {  |           |        |
| digest_byte   | 8         | bslbf  |
| }   |           |        |
| }   |           |        |
| }   |           |        |
| Other data may follow but can be ignored by implementations conforming to this profile. |           |        |

**digest\_count:** This 16 bit value identifies the number of digest values in this hash file.



**digest\_type:** This 8 bit value identifies the digest computation rules and the digest algorithm, if any, used for the associated objects. Table 121 lists the allowed values for this field. The digest computation rules are defined in 12.4.1.3, "Digest value computation rules" on page 305.

**Table 121 : Values of digest\_type**

| value        | digest len. | algorithm  |
|--------------|-------------|--|
| 0            | 0           | Non authenticated  |
| 1            | 16          | Digest computation rules without prefix and with MD-5 as defined in IETF RFC 1321 [38] |
| 2            | 20          | Digest computation rules without prefix and with SHA-1 as defined in FIPS-180-1 [62]   |
| 3            | 20          | Digest computation rules with prefix and with SHA-1 as defined in FIPS-180-1 [62].     |
| Other values |             | Reserved for future use  |

**name\_count:** This 16 bit value identifies the number of object names associated with the digest value. The value of this field shall be greater than zero.

**name\_length:** This 8 bit value identifies the number of bytes in the object name.

**name\_byte:** This 8 bit value holds one byte of the object name.

Each name shall be the name of an object in the directory that contains the [HashFile](#). So, file names are the names of files in the directory and directory names are the names of direct sub-directories of the directory. No path information shall be included in the name.

The names carried by this field are binary identical to the payload part of names in the file system. So, any name matching process can be binary and ignorant of character encoding, letter case etc. Also, terminating null characters are not considered to be part of the file name.

**digest\_length:** This integer value gives the number of bytes in each digest value. It depends upon the digest type as tabulated in table 121. MHP terminals shall support all digest algorithms.

NOTE: Non-authenticated objects have a zero length digest.

**digest\_byte:** This 8 bit value holds one byte of the digest value. See 12.4.1.3, "Digest value computation rules" on page 305.

### 12.4.1.2 [HashFile](#) location and naming conventions

An application comprises files containing data that can be spread across various directories and is contained within a subtree of the file hierarchy. A [HashFile](#) will be put in each directory containing objects that need to be authenticated.

The name of the [HashFile](#) shall be:

```
"dvb.hashfile"
```

There shall only be one instance of [HashFile](#) per directory that contains authenticated resources.

See 12.7, "Example of creating an application that can be authenticated" on page 330.

### 12.4.1.3 Digest value computation rules

The digest value is computed over the objects named in the [HashFile](#) in the order listed in the [HashFile](#). The length of the list of objects associated with each digest value may be one or more.

Each list of objects may contain an arbitrary mix of different object types (e.g. a mixture of file and directory names). The digest value is computed by first initialising the digest algorithm in an algorithm specific way and then applying the relevant data for each object to the algorithm in order. The relevant data for each object depends on its type (File or Directory) and on the value of `digest_type` and is specified in table 122.

**Table 122 : Data required for digest value computation**

| Object type  | Digest type | entry_type     | Relevant data  |
|--|-------------|----------------|--|
| File   | 1 or 2      | not applicable | The entire content of the file   |
| Directory  |             |                | The content of the <code>HashFile</code> of the named directory  |
| File   | 3           | 1              | A prefix concatenated with the entire content of the file.<br>The prefix is made of the <code>entry_type</code> encoded as a 32 bit uimsbf and concatenated with the file length in bytes encoded as a 32 bit uimsbf.                                  |
| Directory  |             | 0              | A prefix concatenated with the content of the <code>HashFile</code> of the named directory.<br>The prefix is made of the <code>entry_type</code> encoded as a 32 bit uimsbf and concatenated with the file length in bytes encoded as a 32 bit uimsbf. |
| NOTE 1: All other values of entry type are reserved for future use |             |                |  |

#### 12.4.1.3.1 Example

Consider two files `file1` and `file2` and one directory `dir1`. Using digest type 3, the digest value of `file1 + file2 + dir1` is equal to:

```
SHA-1 ( (uimsbf 32) 1 + (uimsbf 32) FileLength ( file1) + contents of file1
+ (uimsbf 32) 1 + (uimsbf 32) FileLength(file2) + contents of file2
+(uimsbf 32) 0 +(uimsbf 32) FileLength(HashFile(dir1))
+ contents of HashFile(dir1) ).
```

#### 12.4.1.4 Warning concerning grouping of objects under a single digest (Informative)

Broadcasters should be made aware that during the construction of the object carousel, grouping objects under one digest can significantly and adversely affect the performance and memory requirements of an application on a terminal. For example, if 3 objects are grouped under the same digest, implementations must load all 3 objects even if only one is needed.

This specification in general recommends that while setting up a signed application for broadcast, only one digest be associated with each object requiring authentication. Grouping of multiple files under one hash value should only be employed if those files must always be loaded together and simultaneously. Additionally, the rate of change of the contents of an object should be carefully considered because grouping a rapidly changing object with more slowly changing objects for the purposes of hashing will negatively impact performance. When attempting such grouping, the resource limits of the MHP terminal should always be carefully considered.

### 12.4.1.5 Special authentication rules

- a) For objects which are directories, if the `digest_type` is non-zero there shall be a `HashFile` in the sub-directory listed. If the `HashFile` is absent then the authentication fails.
  - b) Each `HashFile` shall provide a complete list of all the objects named in the directory except itself and any possible signature files mentioning each name exactly one time. The behaviour varies depending on the ability of the transport protocol to support directory listing.
    - On transport protocols supporting the listing of files in a directory (e.g. Object Carousel), the authentication shall fail if the set of objects listed in the `HashFile` is different to the set of objects in the directory.
    - On transport protocols that don't support the listing of files in a directory (e.g. HTTP), the set of names in the `HashFile` acts as a filter for the set of objects that can be accessed. Attempts to access a file neither named in the `HashFile` nor the `HashFile` itself, nor the signature files shall fail (that is behave as if the file is not available). The file system for loading applications from the interaction channel via HTTP is a case of such a file system, see 6.4.1.4 on page 65.

These rules apply regardless of the value of `digest_type` associated with the object.
  - c) If the `digest_count` is equal to 0, the file `HashFile` shall be ignored. Every entry in the directory will be non authenticated.
  - d) If a `name_length` is equal to zero (or if a name is not found in the directory containing the `HashFile`), all the names associated with the current digest value shall be considered as incorrectly authenticated. It means the authentication checking will fail for these entries.
  - e) If the object is a Stream or StreamEvent then the `digest_type` shall be zero.
  - f) Objects associated with a `digest_type` that the receiver does not support shall be treated by that receiver as if the value of `digest_type` was zero (not authenticated).
  - g) There is no requirement for certificates files to have a `digest_type` other than zero (not authenticated). However, if they do have a non-zero `digest_type` they don't receive exceptional treatment.
- NOTE: There is no security benefit in including a certificate file with a `digest_type` other than zero.
- h) When a permission request file exists, its entry in the `HashFile` cannot have a digest type of 0. MHP terminals shall ignore a permission request file with a digest type of 0.

## 12.4.2 SignatureFile

### 12.4.2.1 Description

The `SignatureFile` is a File containing one digital signature. It contains the following ASN.1 DER structure:

```
Signature ::= SEQUENCE {
    certificateIdentifier           AuthorityKeyIdentifier,
    hashSignatureAlgorithm        OBJECT IDENTIFIER,
    signatureValue                BIT STRING }
```

**certificateIdentifier** : As defined in the ITU-T X.509 [54] extension for the AuthorityKeyIdentifier field. It identifies the certificate that carries the certified public key that is used to check the signature.

```
AuthorityKeyIdentifier ::= SEQUENCE {
    keyIdentifier                 [0] KeyIdentifier OPTIONAL,
    authorityCertIssuer           [1] GeneralNames OPTIONAL,
    authorityCertSerialNumber     [2] CertificateSerialNumber OPTIONAL }
```

Implementations are not required to use the possibly present `keyIdentifier` element of the `AuthorityKeyIdentifier`. The `AuthorityKeyIdentifier` structure shall contain both the `authorityCertIssuer` and `authorityCertSerialNumber` elements.

The `authorityCertIssuer` shall contain the field "directoryName", this field shall be equal to the `issuerName` of the certificate that carries the public key used to check the signature.

**hashSignatureAlgorithm:** this field identifies the hash algorithm that is used. Note that the encryption algorithm used to compute the signature is already described in the SubjectKeyInfo field of the certificate that certifies this key, and thus that only the identification of the hash algorithm is needed. The supported algorithms are MD5 and SHA-1.

```
md5 OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::=
  { iso(1) member-body(2) US(840) rsadsi(113549)
    digestAlgorithm(2) 5 }

sha-1 OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::=
  { iso(1) identified-organization(3) oiw(14) secsig(3)
    algorithm(2) 26 }
```

**signatureValue:** See ["signatureValue" on page 342](#).

#### 12.4.2.2 SignatureFile location and naming conventions

The [SignatureFile](#) is located in the root directory of the subtree that it signs. There can be several [SignatureFiles](#), as there can be several entities that sign the structure. See [12.4.4, "Integration" on page 310](#).

By convention, the name of a [SignatureFile](#) is:

```
"dvb.signaturefile."<x>
```

where the <x> is a textual representation of an integer decimal number without leading zeroes. The range of values represented in any single directory shall start with 1 and increment in steps of 1. The first unused integer value in the ascending sequence indicates the end of the range.

The purpose of this x is to allow the hash file of an authenticated subtree to be signed by more than one entity. It is equal to the x value in the file name of the corresponding certificate file. See [12.4.3.5, "CertificateFile location and naming conventions" on page 309](#) and [12.4.4, "Integration" on page 310](#).

#### 12.4.2.3 Supported algorithms

Signing data is a two-step process:

- first a hash is computed over the data.
- the resulting hashvalue is then encrypted using an encryption algorithm.

As indicated in [12.4.1 "HashFile"](#) this specification defines two possible hash algorithms: MD5 and SHA-1.

The encryption algorithm used to compute the signature is indicated in the certificate that carries this key.

#### 12.4.2.4 Signature computation rules.

The hash is computed over the content of the [HashFile](#) contained in this root directory.

NOTE: This is the same principle as for the classical hash computation described in ["Digest value computation rules" on page 305](#).

#### 12.4.2.5 Authentication rules

See [signatureValue on page 308](#).

## 12.4.3 CertificateFile

### 12.4.3.1 Description

The CertificateFile contains all of the certificates in the certificate chain up to, and including, the root certificate. The leaf certificate is placed first in the file. The last certificate in the file is the root certificate. The root certificate is included in this file only for consistency. How the MHP terminal determines its policy related to this root CA is implementation dependent. The encoding of the certificate is defined in [ITU-T X.509 \[54\]](#). Below is defined the profile of [ITU-T X.509 \[54\]](#) for use in authenticating MHP applications. This profile is based on [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#).

The syntax of the CertificateFile is shown in table 123.

**Table 123 : Syntax of the CertificateFile**

| Syntax   | Num. Bits | Format |
|--|-----------|--------|
| <pre> Certificatefile () {     certificate_count     for( i=0; i&lt;certificate_count; i++ ) {         certificate_length         certificate()     } } </pre> | 16        | uimsbf |
|  | 24        | uimsbf |

**certificate\_count:** This 16-bit integer carries the number of certificates in the certificate file.

**certificate\_length:** This 24-bit integer specifies the number of bytes in the certificate.

**certificate():** This field carries a single "Certificate" data structure as defined by [ITU-T X.509 \[54\]](#). See 12.11.1, "Main part of the certificate" on page 342.

### 12.4.3.2 ASN.1 encoding

The basic specification of the ASN.1 DER encoding used in [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) is given in [ASN.1 \[57\]](#). However, [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) defines some extensions which are required to implement this specification.

### 12.4.3.3 Supported algorithms

There are various algorithm identifiers in the certificate structure. The OID of the algorithm used in the [SubjectPublicKeyInfo](#) structure shall be RSA.

The values for [AlgorithmIdentifier](#) used both in the certificate structure and in the [TBSCertificate](#) structure that are supported in this specification are listed under "[signatureAlgorithm](#)" on page 311.

### 12.4.3.4 Name matching

The only allowed encoding of attributes of distinguished names shall be UTF8String.

NOTE: The use of this encoding allows name matching to be a binary comparison.

### 12.4.3.5 CertificateFile location and naming conventions

As described in 12.2.1.3, "Certificates" on page 303, a key can be authenticated through a "certificate chain".

A certificate chain is a hierarchy of certificates that enable the implementation to verify the validity of the key used to check a signature. In the MHP environment, the root certificate is embedded in the MHP. However, for consistency, the file shall carry all of the certificate chain up to, and including, the root certificate.

The certificate file that leads to the public key of a signature shall be placed in the same directory as that signature file.

The name of a [CertificateFile](#) is:

```
'dvb.certificates.'<x>
```

where the <x> corresponds to the x value in the file name of the signature file verified by this certificate. Hence in the root directory of an authenticated subtree there shall be one certificate file for each signature file. See [12.4.2.2, "SignatureFile location and naming conventions" on page 308](#) and [12.4.4 "Integration"](#).

### 12.4.3.6 Authentication rules

Certificates are considered to be the same if they have bitwise identical contents.

Where an MHP application is authenticated by multiple signature file / certificate file pairs, the MHP terminal shall check all the signature file / certificate file pairs before deciding that a file fails authentication. It is dependant on receiver policy whether additional signature file / certificate file pairs are checked once one satisfactory pair has been found.

## 12.4.4 Integration

Logically a file is authenticated as follows:

- a) Confirm that the file is listed in the hash file located in the same directory as the file to be authenticated.
- b) Verify that the file contents and the corresponding digest value are consistent.
- c) Recursively ascend the directory hierarchy checking that each directory is authenticated by its parent directory until a directory is found that contains one or more signature files.

Such a directory is termed the root directory of an authenticated subtree.

NOTE 1: This means that there is no requirement to progress above the root of the authenticated subtree to examine further hash files. If such a directory has a digest type other than "Non authenticated" in its parent directory, this is only significant when verifying the hash file of the parent directory.

NOTE 2: The presence of more than one signature file enables more than one set of organisations to authenticate a subtree.

NOTE 3: When authenticating a signed application, an MHP terminal can select any one of these certificates to use to authenticate all subsequent classes or files loaded.

Where an MHP terminal trusts more than one of these certificates, it should attempt to select the most trusted of these. Apart from this, the mechanism used to make this selection is implementation dependent.

- d) For a signature file locate the corresponding certificate file (where the x portion of the signature file's file name identifies the certificate file to be used).
- e) If the root certificate in the corresponding certificate file is unknown to the MHP receiver, return to step (d) and repeat for the other signature files.
- f) Use the corresponding certificate file to verify that the signature correctly signs the hash file.
- g) Follow the certificate chain contained within the certificate file verifying each link in the chain until the link to the root certificate is found.
- h) If the identified root certificate and all the intermediate certificates leading to it are "satisfactory", accept the files as being authenticated.

"satisfactory" depends on the policies implemented in the receiver and other constraints expressed in this specification. In particular the requirements in [11.2.3, "Class Loading" on page 249](#) for using the "same" leaf certificate to authenticate DVB-J class files shall be observed. For HTML applications the definition of "satisfactory" is given in [8.14, "Security of DVB-HTML applications" on page 169](#).

- i) If the identified root certificate or any of the intermediate certificates leading to it are not "satisfactory", return to step (d) and repeat for the other signature files.
- j) Dependant on receiver policy return to step (c) and repeat for other signature files.

NOTE: The above is a logical description of the process and does not constrain implementations to perform these steps in this exact order. E.g. hash files may be verified when descending an directory hierarchy rather than ascending one.

A file system may contain several independent authenticated subtrees, each tree with its own subtree root directory.

NOTE: For the method `org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject.getSigners`, the semantics defined in that method take precedence over these rules where there are conflicts.

## 12.5 Profile of X.509 certificates for authentication of applications

This section identifies how [ITU-T X.509 \[54\]](#) is profiled when used for authentication of broadcast MHP applications. This profile is a variation (in general a sub-set) of the internet profile defined in [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#). This section identifies the differences from the profile in [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#). Section 12.11, "The internet profile of X.509 (informative)" on page 342 summarises the profile in [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#).

### 12.5.1 signatureAlgorithm

This specification supports 2 signature algorithms: MD5 with RSA and SHA-1 with RSA.

#### 12.5.1.1 MD5 with RSA

The signature algorithm with MD5 and the RSA encryption algorithm is defined in [IETF RFC 2313 \[56\]](#). As defined in [IETF RFC 2313 \[56\]](#), the [ASN.1](#) OID used to identify this signature algorithm is:

```
md5WithRSAEncryption OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {
  iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) rsadsi(113549) pkcs(1) pkcs-1(1) 4 }
```

#### 12.5.1.2 SHA-1 with RSA

The signature algorithm with SHA-1 and the RSA encryption algorithm is implemented using the padding and encoding conventions described in [IETF RFC 2313 \[56\]](#). The message digest is computed using the SHA-1 hash algorithm. The [ASN.1](#) object identifier used to identify this signature algorithm is:

```
sha-1WithRSAEncryption OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= {
  iso(1) member-body(2) us(840) rsadsi(113549) pkcs(1) pkcs-1(1) 5 }
```

#### 12.5.1.3 parameters

For both of the 2 supported algorithms the parameters component shall be the [ASN.1](#) type NULL.

### 12.5.2 signatureValue

The RSA signature generation process and the encoding of the result is described in detail in [IETF RFC 2313 \[56\]](#).

### 12.5.3 version

The version field of the certificate shall signal v3. All implementations shall support the v3 extensions as required by [12.5.9, "Extensions" on page 313](#).

### 12.5.4 issuer

#### 12.5.4.1 minimum requirement

For this specification at least a Common Name attribute shall be provided. The text value of the attribute shall be non-empty. It shall be suitable for direct presentation to the user.

#### 12.5.4.2 certificate authority responsibility

The senior certificate authority who signs a certificate shall oversee the attribute information to ensure that the information is suitable.

## 12.5.5 validity

The only allowed format for encoding time in the `validity` field is `GeneralizedTime`.

## 12.5.6 subject

The subject field is a "distinguished name". The following requirements are specified by this specification:

- The only allowed encoding attributes of the subject is `UTF8String` (see 12.4.3.4, "Name matching" on page 309)
- The minimum set of attributes that shall be present in the subject are:
  - `commonName`
  - `countryName`
- If the certificate is a "leaf certificate" (see figure 19, "Certificate chain illustrated" on page 303) then the subject shall also contain an `organizationName`.
- When encoded the `organizationName` carries organisation specific text post fixed by the `organisation_id` of the authenticated files. This integer value is represented as a fixed length 8 character hexadecimal string (with leading zeros where required). So the `organizationName` takes the form:

```
text + "." + organisation_id
```

Except for the presence of leading zeros, this is the same as 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377.

This field reproduces the `organisation_id` value from the application's application identifier, see 10.5.1, "Encoding" on page 220. Before the application starts executing, the value of the `organisation_id` of at least one of the leaf certificates used in the authentication of the application's root subdirectory must match that in the application identifier. If this is not true, then the application is considered to have failed authentication. Applications which fail authentication at this point shall not be started on MHP terminals.

## 12.5.7 SubjectPublic Key Info

This specification supports a single public key algorithm (RSA) for the subject public key.

The key lengths that implementation are required to support are addressed in G, "(normative): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515.

### 12.5.7.1 rsaEncryption

The OID `rsaEncryption` identifies RSA public keys:

```
rsaEncryption OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { pkcs-1 1 }

pkcs-1 OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { iso(1) member-body(2) us(840)
                                rsadsi(113549) pkcs(1) 1 }
```

The parameters field shall have ASN.1 type `NULL`.

### 12.5.7.2 subjectPublicKey

The RS `subjectPublicKey` BIT STRING shall be encoded using the ASN.1 type `RSAPublicKey`:

```
RSAPublicKey ::= SEQUENCE {
    modulus             INTEGER, -- n
    publicExponent     INTEGER -- e -- }
```

The semantics of the modulus (n) and the public exponent (e) are defined in IETF RFC 2313 [56].



## 12.5.8 Unique Identifiers

X.509 defines the issuerUniqueID and subjectUniqueID extensions.

CAs conforming to this profile shall not generate certificates with unique identifiers.

MHP terminals conforming to this profile are not required to be capable of parsing unique identifiers and making comparisons.

## 12.5.9 Extensions

The following restrictions and semantics are placed on the use of certificate extensions when used to authenticate applications.

**Table 124 : Profile for standard certificate extensions**

| Extension                    | In broadcasts | In implementations | Semantic  |
|------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---|
| Authority key identifier     | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Subject key identifier       | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Key usage                    | Mand.         | Mand.              | If the keyUsage extension is marked critical, for the leaf certificate the bit digitalSignature shall be set, for other certificates the bit keyCertSign shall be set. If these bits are not set then the certificate shall be ignored by the implementation. |
| Private key usage period     | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Certificate policies         | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Policy mappings              | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Subject Alternative Name     | Mand.         | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical<br>The subject name unambiguously identifies the subject. It is recommended that DVB MHP implementations can read rfc822Name (email address)   |
| Issuer Alternative Name      | Mand.         | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical<br>The issuer name unambiguously identifies the issuer. It is recommended that DVB MHP implementations can read rfc822Name (email address).  |
| Subject Directory attributes | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Basic Constraints            | Opt.          | Mand.              | May be marked critical  |
| Name Constraints             | Opt.          | Mand.              | May be marked critical.<br>DVB MHP decoders shall be able to recognise name constraints when GeneralName are either directoryName or rfc822 names.  |
| Policy Constraints           | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| Extended key usage field     | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |
| CRL Distribution points      | Opt.          | Opt.               | Shall not be marked critical  |

Table 125 : Key for table 124

| Keyword                 | When applied to ...   |   |
|-------------------------|---|---|
|                         | broadcasts  | receivers   |
| Mandatory               | Certificates shall include these extensions.  | Receivers shall observe the semantic for this information when provided.  |
| Optional                | Certificates may or may be not include these extensions.<br>The MHP specification does not define the use of these extensions and hence broadcasters should not use them. | Receivers can ignore these extensions if present.   |
| Critical / not-critical | Broadcasters should not mark the receiver optional extensions as critical.  | Certificates containing unrecognised critical extensions shall be considered as invalid.<br>Receivers should recognise all the extensions that can be critical. |

## 12.6 Security policy for applications

### 12.6.1 General principles

This section specifies the resource access policy for the downloaded applications. The resource access policy depends on two factors

- The access rights requested by the broadcaster through the signalling
- The access rights granted by the user.

The ultimate access rights that are granted to the applications are the intersection of the access rights requested by the broadcaster and the access rights granted by the user.

Unsigned applications have limited access to platform resources.

Unless specified elsewhere in this specification, signed applications have the same access rights as unsigned applications. An application broadcaster can request additional permissions to access specific resources by providing a signed "Permission Request File" along with the application. The syntax and semantics of the Permission Request File are defined in the following sections. The permission request file may also contain a credential that indicates that a persistent file owned by another organisation may be accessed. If the "Permission Request File" is not correctly authenticated the application is not granted any additional permissions but is not prevented from starting for this reason.

The way the user grants rights to the downloaded applications is implementation dependant and is not addressed by this specification.

For DVB-J applications, accessing a resource consists of method calls. Each method call that results in accessing the resource shall throw a security exception as defined in 11.10, "Java permissions" on page 287 and the specifications of the java APIs concerned. For each resource subject to access restriction, the application can test whether it has been granted permissions to access it by using the corresponding java Permission class (See 11.8, "Security" on page 282).

For a DVB-J application to be correctly authenticated, all the class files that the application consists of need to be signed, the signatures need to verify (see 12.4.4, "Integration" on page 310) and the `application_id` needs to be from within the range allocated to signed applications (see Table 79, "Value ranges for application\_id" on page 221). If, during the loading or execution of the application the MHP detects a signed file containing a class that failed to pass the authentication process (e.g. because its actual hash value does not match the expected hash value), then the class shall be considered as not available.

When an application requests to retrieve data from a file that is signalled as being signed, but for which the MHP failed to match the computed hash value and the expected hash value, then the API concerned shall fail in a manner consistent with the defined behaviour of that API when the file exists but has no content in it.

NOTE: In order to be efficient, if a directory D contains objects that are likely to frequently change, it is advised to put a signature file in this directory D and to mark the directory D as non authenticated in the hashfile located in the parent directory of D. By doing so, it will limit the propagation of modifications to just one directory.

The authentication of a file is evaluated each time that the file is loaded from a transport connection. File version information in the transport system cannot be assumed to be secure.

Applications authors should be aware that deciding whether to grant a permission or not may, depending on the implementation, involve prompting and asking the end user. The latest point in time when the implementation must decide if an application has a permission or not is when the application either queries the presence of this permission for the first time or when it invokes an action that requires the permission for the first time. Application authors should be aware that in these situations, an implementation may prompt and ask the user. Depending on the implementation, this prompting (if necessary) can also happen at any point in time prior to this (e.g. at the application start up time).

An MHP terminal is required to be able to operate in a mode where it grants permission to provide access to all of the functionality required by the profiles and options that it supports when appropriately requested (e.g. via the permission request file). The mechanism for causing the terminal to operate in this mode is implementation-dependent. The granting of permissions for accessing functionality outside of the claimed MHP profile and options is not required.

NOTE: In the case of permissions represented by a Java class in DVB-J, this means that it will be possible to have such a permission granted if the corresponding class is required in the given profile, and it can be requested in the permission request file.

NOTE: This means that, for example, it must be possible to grant the permission associated with dialling a phone number on a terminal that supports the interactive broadcast profile, even if the terminal implements the interaction channel using a cable modem. In this case, the dialling APIs will fail in a manner consistent with this specification.

## 12.6.2 Permission request file

### 12.6.2.1 File encoding

#### 12.6.2.1.1 XML

The Permission Request File is an XML File. Its syntax is defined by the following DTD. The Name used in the document type declaration shall be "permissionrequestfile".

#### 12.6.2.1.2 MHP 1.0

The `PublicLiteral` to be used for specifying this DTD in document type declarations of the XML files is:

```
"-//DVB//DTD Permission Request File 1.0//EN"
```

and the URL for the `SystemLiteral` is:

```
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/permissionrequestfile-1-0.dtd".
```

The DTD is:

```
<!ELEMENT permissionrequestfile
  (file?,capermission?,applifecyclecontrol?,returnchannel?,tuning?,
  servicesel?,userpreferences?,network?, dripfeed?, persistentfilecredential*)>
<!ATTLIST permissionrequestfile
  orgid CDATA #REQUIRED
  appid CDATA #REQUIRED
>

<!ELEMENT file EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST file
  value          (true|false) "true"
>
```

```

<!ELEMENT capermission (casystemid)+>
<!ELEMENT casystemid EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST casystemid
  entitlementquery      (true|false) "false"
  id                    CDATA #REQUIRED
  mmi                   (true|false) "false"
  messagepassing        (true|false) "false"
  buy                   (true|false) "false"
>

<!ELEMENT applifecyclecontrol EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST applifecyclecontrol
  value                (true|false) "true"
>

<!ELEMENT returnchannel (defaultisp?,phonenumber*)>
<!ELEMENT defaultisp EMPTY>
<!ELEMENT phonenumber (#PCDATA)>

<!ELEMENT tuning EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tuning
  value                (true|false) "true"
>

<!ELEMENT servicesel EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST servicesel
  value                (true|false) "true"
>

<!ELEMENT userpreferences EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST userpreferences
  write                (true|false) "false"
  read                 (true|false) "true"
>

<!ELEMENT network (host)+>
<!ELEMENT host (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST host
  action                CDATA #REQUIRED
>

<!ELEMENT dripfeed EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST dripfeed
  value                (true|false) "true"
>

<!ELEMENT persistentfilecredential (grantoridentifier,expirationdate,filename+,signature,
certchainfileid)>
<!ELEMENT grantoridentifier EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST grantoridentifier
  id                    CDATA #REQUIRED
>
<!ELEMENT expirationdate EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST expirationdate
  date                  CDATA #REQUIRED
>
<!ELEMENT filename (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST filename
  write                 (true|false) "true"
  read                  (true|false) "true"
>
<!ELEMENT signature (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT certchainfileid (#PCDATA)>

```

### 12.6.2.1.3 MHP 1.1

The `PublicLiteral` to be used for specifying this DTD in document type declarations of the XML files is:

```
"-//DVB//DTD Permission Request File 1.1//EN"
```

and the URL for the SystemLiteral is:

["http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/permissionrequestfile-1-1.dtd"](http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/permissionrequestfile-1-1.dtd).

The DTD is:

```

<!ELEMENT permissionrequestfile
  (file?,capermission?,applifecyclecontrol?,returnchannel?,tuning?,
  servicesel?,userpreferences?,network?, dripfeed?, persistentfilecredential*,
  applicationstorage?,smartcardaccess?)>

<!ATTLIST permissionrequestfile
  orgid CDATA #REQUIRED
  appid CDATA #REQUIRED
  >

<!ELEMENT file EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST file
  value          (true|false) "true"
  >

<!ELEMENT capermission (casystemid)+>
<!ELEMENT casystemid EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST casystemid
  entitlementquery (true|false) "false"
  id               CDATA #REQUIRED
  mmi             (true|false) "false"
  messagepassing (true|false) "false"
  buy             (true|false) "false"
  >

<!ELEMENT applifecyclecontrol EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST applifecyclecontrol
  value          (true|false) "true"
  >

<!ELEMENT returnchannel (defaultisp?,phonenumber*)>
<!ELEMENT defaultisp EMPTY>
<!ELEMENT phonenumber (#PCDATA)>

<!ELEMENT tuning EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST tuning
  value          (true|false) "true"
  >

<!ELEMENT servicesel EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST servicesel
  value          (true|false) "true"
  >

<!ELEMENT userpreferences EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST userpreferences
  write          (true|false) "false"
  read           (true|false) "true"
  >

<!ELEMENT network (host)+>
<!ELEMENT host (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST host
  action         CDATA #REQUIRED
  >

<!ELEMENT dripfeed EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST dripfeed
  value          (true|false) "true"
  >

<!ELEMENT persistentfilecredential (grantoridentifier,expirationdate,filename+,signature,
certchainfileid)>
<!ELEMENT grantoridentifier EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST grantoridentifier

```

```

    id                CDATA #REQUIRED
  >
<!ELEMENT expirationdate EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST expirationdate
  date                CDATA #REQUIRED
  >
<!ELEMENT filename (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST filename
  write                (true|false) "true"
  read                 (true|false) "true"
  >
<!ELEMENT signature (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT certchainfileid (#PCDATA)>

<!-- ..... new elements in MHP 1.1 ..... -->
<!ELEMENT applicationstorage EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST applicationstorage
  orgid CDATA #REQUIRED
  store (true|false) "false"
  remove (true|false) "false"
  create (true|false) "false"
  removeservice (true|false) "false"
  >

<!ELEMENT smartcardaccess EMPTY>

<!ELEMENT privilegedrce EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST privilegedrce
  value (internal|external) "internal"
  >

```

## 12.6.2.1.4 Number representation

### 12.6.2.1.4.1 Hex

Unless stated otherwise (e.g. section 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377) each hexadecimal value has the following form "0x" Nhex where "N" specifies the fixed number of significant digits in the value and hex is specified by the following BNF:

```

hex = digit | "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F" | "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f"
digit = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9"

```

## 12.6.2.2 File integrity

If the permission file is not parsable as defined by the XML parsing rules (see 14.3, "XML notation" on page 375) it shall be ignored and hence no additional permissions are granted.

### 12.6.2.3 Example

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE permissionrequestfile PUBLIC "-//DVB//DTD Permission Request File 1.0//EN"
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/permissionrequestfile-1-0.dtd">
<permissionrequestfile orgid="0x000023d2" appid="0x4020">

  <file value="true"></file>

  <capermission>
    <casystemid
      id="0x1111" messagepassing="true"
      entitlementquery="true" mmi="false">
    </casystemid>
  </capermission>

  <applifecyclecontrol value="true"></applifecyclecontrol>

  <returnchannel>
    <defaultisp></defaultisp>

```

```

    <phonenumber>+3583111111</phonenumber>
    <phonenumber>+3583111112</phonenumber>
    <phonenumber></phonenumber>
</returnchannel>

<tuning value="false"></tuning>

<servicesel value="true"></servicesel>

<userpreferences read="true" write="false"></userpreferences>

<network>
  <host action="connect">hostname</host>
</network>

<persistentfilecredential>
  <grantoridentifier id="0x05"></grantoridentifier>
  <expirationdate date="24/12/2032"></expirationdate>
  <filename read="true" write="false">5/15/dirl/scores</filename>
  <filename read="true" write="false">5/15/dirl/names</filename>
  <signature>023203293292932932921493143929423943294239432
  </signature>
  <certchainfileid>3</certchainfileid>
</persistentfilecredential>
</permissionrequestfile>

```

#### 12.6.2.4 Permission request file name and location

The format for the permission request file name is:

```
'dvb.' <application name> '.perm'
```

The prefix "dvb" identifies this as a well known file specified by this specification. The portion "application name" carries the file name of the initial file of the application excluding any file name extension or suffix. The initial file depends on the application type as is shown in table 126 for the types defined in this specification.

**Table 126 : Application name for different application types**

| Application type |          | Path from which file name shall be extracted                   |
|------------------|----------|--|
| Value            | Meaning  |  |
| 0x0001           | DVB-J    | The name <i>initial_class_byte</i> , see table 102 on page 236 |
| 0x0002           | DVB-HTML | The name <i>initial_path_bytes</i> , see table 104 on page 237 |

This file shall be located in the same directory as the initial file.

#### 12.6.2.5 Permission request file

##### 12.6.2.5.1 Minimum permissions

If the permission file does not contain a valid permissionrequestfile element it shall be ignored and hence no additional permissions are granted.

##### 12.6.2.5.2 Syntax and semantics

```

<!ATTLIST permissionrequestfile
  orgid CDATA #REQUIRED
  appid CDATA #REQUIRED
>

```

**orgid:** This attribute is a hexadecimal string (*hex\_string*) that conveys the organisation id of the associated application. The encoding of this value is specified in 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377.

**appid:** This attribute is a hexadecimal string (*hex\_string*) that conveys the application id of the associated application. The encoding of this value is specified in 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377.

### 12.6.2.5.3 Defaults

NOTE: As defined by [XML 1.0 \[65\]](#), the defaults for attributes defined in the DTD (see [12.6.2.1, "File encoding" on page 315](#)) only apply when the element is present but the attribute concerned is omitted.

### 12.6.2.6 Credentials

A credential contains a resource description and is used to allow the owner of this resource (the grantor) to grant to the permission request file's application to access it. In this specification, the only resource that can be contained in a credential is a file (or a set of files of a directory). Credentials shall not grant access to directories, only files within them. This type of credential is named `persistentfilecredential` in the XML DTD. The credential contains an expiration date that allow the grantor to grant access to its resource for a limited duration. The credential is signed by the grantor. The signature checking is done by the implementation by getting the certificate of the grantor. The certificate can be found thanks to the information contained in the `certchainfileid` element.

The certificate file that leads to the public key of the signature shall be placed either in the same directory as the permission request file containing the credential or in one of its parent directories. The directory containing the permission request file shall be searched first and then recursively ascend the directory hierarchy checking certificate files until one is found with the file name matching the contents of the `certchainfileid` field of the credential. If the root of the file system is reached without finding a matching certificate then the file access shall not be granted.

The `grantoridentifier` in the `persistentfilecredential` shall match the `organisation_id` contained in the Subject `organisationName` field of the leaf certificate for file access to be granted.

The persistent file credential is transmitted using the following XML DTD syntax:

```
<!ELEMENT persistentfilecredential (grantoridentifier,expirationdate,filename+,signature,
certchainfileid)>
<!ELEMENT grantoridentifier EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST grantoridentifier
  id CDATA #REQUIRED
>
<!ELEMENT expirationdate EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST expirationdate
  date CDATA #REQUIRED
>
<!ELEMENT filename (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST filename
  write (true|false) "true"
  read (true|false) "true"
>
<!ELEMENT signature (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT certchainfileid (#PCDATA)>
```



The following table provide more information about the different elements:

**Table 127 :**

| Elements          | Comments   |
|-------------------|--|
| grantoridentifier | <p>This element contains the 32 bit organization id identifying the grantor organization. The encoding of the CDATA attribute id of this element is given in <a href="#">14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377</a>.</p>   |
| expirationdate    | <p>This element contains the expiration date of this credential. The implementation should ignore the certificate if the date has expired. The CDATA attribute date shall follow the following BNF syntax:</p> <pre>2dec "/" 2dec "/" 4dec ; e.g. "01/12/2001"</pre> <p>where:</p> <pre>dec = "0"   "1"   "2"   "3"   "4"   "5"   "6"         "7"   "8"   "9"</pre> <p>Where the first 2 digits are the day number in the month, the second two digits are the month number in the year and the last 4 digits are the year. All values are in accordance with the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>NOTE: Numbers start counting from one and not zero unlike the java.util.GregorianCalendar class.</p>  |
| filename          | <p>This element contains the filename path and the read/write access rights that are granted on the file. The element consists of a CDATA string following the following BNF syntax:</p> <pre>filename = persistentfilename             persistentpath "/" persistentfilename             persistentpath "/" "*"             persistentstpath "/" "-"</pre> <p>where</p> <p>"/" is the file separator<br/>         "*" used at the end of a pathname indicates all files contained in that directory<br/>         "-" used at the end of a pathname indicates all files contained in that directory and existing subdirectories recursively at the time the permission request file is parsed.</p> <p>persistentpath, persistentfilesubstring and persistentfilename are defined in <a href="#">14.6.1, "Persistent storage" on page 378</a>.</p> <p>The file path is relative to the path obtained from the dvb.persistent.root property.</p> <p>Receivers are required to support the same restrictions on the lengths of persistentfilesubstrings and persistentfilesuffixes as specified in <a href="#">14.6.1, "Persistent storage" on page 378</a>.</p> <p>The file path shall not start with a "/". It is relative to the path obtained from the dvb.persistent.root property. The element has two attributes read and write that can take the value "true" or "false".</p> |

**Table 127 :**

| <b>Elements</b> | <b>Comments</b>  |
|-----------------|--|
| signature       | This element contains a signature from the grantor. Signature structure is as defined section <a href="#">12.4.2, "SignatureFile" on page 307</a> .<br>The signature is encoded using the Base64 content transfer encoding as specified in section 6.8 of <a href="#">IETF RFC 2045 [64]</a> . |
| certchainfileid | This element contains the identifier of the leaf certificate, i.e. the "x" in the file name "dvb.certificates.x".  |

The signature is computed on the binary concatenation of the following fields in the following order:

**Table 128 :**

| Fields   | Binary content  |
|--|---|
| grantee_identifier.organization_id   | 32 bits   |
| grantee_identifier.application_id  | 16 bits   |
| grantor_identifier (organization_id)   | 32 bits   |
| expiration_date  | 10 characters (e.g. "10/12/2001") in ASCII  |
| filenames & actions (in the order they appear in the XML document) i.e.:<br><br><pre>for (i=0;i&lt;filenumber;i++) {   read   write   filepath }</pre> | <p>4 or 5 char ("true" or "false")</p> <p>4 or 5 char ("true" or "false")</p> <p>string in ASCII (without any string termination character)</p> |

The implementation will check the validity of the credential by checking the signature with the grantor's public key that can be found in the grantor's certificate. Certificates are carried by the grantee in the file format defined section 12.4.3, "CertificateFile" on page 309. Certification chain authenticates grantor's certificate. This chain shall derive from one of the root authorities embedded in the MHP.

The right to access a file shall not include the right to create it.

## 12.6.2.7 File Access

### 12.6.2.7.1 Unsigned applications

Have no access to the persistent storage

### 12.6.2.7.2 Policy for signed applications

No access to the persistent storage, unless otherwise indicated in the Permission File.

When the permission request file requests access to persistent storage and this is granted, the file access policy is derived from the policy used in the Unix world.

An application owns the files it has created. The root directory of the persistent file namespace is defined by the 'dvb.persistent.root' property as described in 11.5.6, "Persistent Storage API" on page 270. The files owned by an application shall be located in sub-directories below this directory, specifically one of the following two choices:

- a) the sub-directory whose name is the [organisation\\_id](#) of the application concerned.
- b) a sub-directory of the immediately previously defined directory whose name is the [application\\_id](#) of the application concerned.

The encodings of the organisation identifier and application identifier are as defined in 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377. By default, files created by an application will have owner read/write access only.

An Application can modify the access rights to a file it owns as follows:

- it can grant a read-only access, a write-only access or a read-write access to all applications having the same organisationId value.
- it can grant a read-only access, a write-only access or a read-write access to all applications.
- write access to a directory is required to add or remove an entry in a directory.
- read access to a directory is required to list the contents of a directory or access any of the files contained within in it.
- to read the contents of a file or directory, permission to read that file or directory and all directories on the path to the root of the persistent file system is required.

An application shall be granted access to a file if it qualifies for such access by application, organisation or world access permissions.

An application's right to access a file is the union of the rights granted by the credential mechanism and the right granted by the file permission mechanism.

See org.dvb.io.persistent see [K, "\(normative\): DVB-J persistent storage API" on page 549.](#)

### 12.6.2.7.3 Permission request syntax

```
<!ELEMENT file EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST file
  value (true|false) "true"
>
```

## 12.6.2.8 CA API

### 12.6.2.8.1 Unsigned applications

An unsigned application cannot access the following methods:

- `CAModule.buyEntitlements`
- `CAModule.openMessageSession`
- `CAModuleManager.addMMILListener`
- `CAModule.queryEntitlements`
- `CAModule.listEntitlements`.

### 12.6.2.8.2 Signed applications

By default, an application has limited access to the CA API functions (same default rights as an unsigned application)

In particular, the following method calls are not accessible to an unsigned application:

- `CAModule.buyEntitlements`
- `CAModule.openMessageSession`
- `CAModuleManager.addMMILListener`
- `CAModule.queryEntitlements`
- `CAModule.listEntitlements`.

The permission request file requests the MHP to grant additional rights to the application with the ConditionalAccess Permission described below.

### 12.6.2.8.3 Conditional Access Permission syntax

The ConditionalAccess Permission is optional. When not present, the application has the default access rights. When present, the permission request file overrides the default rights for this application.

```
<!ELEMENT capermission (casystemid)+>
<!ELEMENT casystemid EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST casystemid
  entitlementquery      true|false) "false"
  id                    CDATA #REQUIRED
  mmi                   (true|false) "false"
  messagepassing       (true|false) "false"
  buy                   (true|false) "false"
>
```

The string specifying the CA system IDs has the following syntax:

```
CAIds          = CASystemId | "[" CASystemId "-" CASystemId "]" | "*"
CASystemId     = "0x" 4hex
```

See [12.6.2.1.4.1, "Hex" on page 318](#).

### 12.6.2.9 Application lifecycle control policy

Applications shall not launch broadcast applications that are not signalled in the currently selected service for the service context in which the application wishing to do the launching is running.

#### 12.6.2.9.1 Unsigned applications

An unsigned broadcast application can launch any application visible in the listing API that is signalled in the currently selected service for the service context in which the application wishing to do the launching is running.

An unsigned application can control (pause, stop, resume) the lifecycle of an application it has launched.

An unsigned application cannot control the lifecycle of an application it has not launched.

#### 12.6.2.9.2 Default policy for Signed applications

By default, a signed application has the same rights as an unsigned application as concerns the application lifecycle control policy.

These default rights can be overridden by the permission request file as described below.

#### 12.6.2.9.3 Syntax

```
<!ELEMENT applifecyclecontrol EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST applifecyclecontrol
  value (true|false) "true"
>
```

**value:** When the boolean value is set to `true`, this means that the application can control the lifecycle of all the applications signalled in the currently selected service for the service context in which the application wishing to do the launching is running. When set to `false` the policy is as in [12.6.2.9.2, "Default policy for Signed applications" on page 325](#).

### 12.6.2.10 Return channel access policy

#### 12.6.2.10.1 Unsigned applications

An unsigned application may not use the return channel.

### 12.6.2.10.2 Signed applications

By default, a signed application may not access the return channel, unless otherwise specified by the permission request file. The syntax of the return channel permission is so that it describes the phone numbers that the application may try to dial.

### 12.6.2.10.3 Return channel permission syntax

```
<!ELEMENT returnchannel (defaultisp?,phonenumber*)>
<!ELEMENT phonenumber (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT defaultisp EMPTY>
```

The syntax of the phone number string is as defined below.

```
phonenumber = "+" digit digits | digits
digits      = "" | digit digits
digit       = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9"
```

The presence of the `defaultisp` tag indicates that the application is allowed to use the default ISP connection. If this tag is not present, then the application shall not be able to specify connecting to the default target except where the connection parameters for that target are explicitly specified by the application and are included in the phone number string.

When a phone number is given, this number defines a prefix of the allowed phone numbers and applications are allowed to call to all numbers that start with one of the prefixes defined in the permission request file, subject to the MHP terminal granting this right (see 12.6.1, "General principles" on page 314).

NOTE: By defining an empty phone number tag (i.e. empty string as the prefix), the application could try to call to any phone number.

### 12.6.2.11 Tuning access policy

#### 12.6.2.11.1 Unsigned applications

An unsigned application may not tune using the Tuning API.

#### 12.6.2.11.2 Signed applications

By default, a signed application may not tune using the Tuning API. However, the right to tune can be requested with the Tuning permission that can be put in the permission request file.

#### 12.6.2.11.3 Tuner Permission syntax

The syntax of this permission is as follows:

```
<!ELEMENT tuning EMPTY><
<!ATTLIST tuning
  value (true|false) "true"
>
```

The value `true` requests the permission to tune using the Tuning API.

### 12.6.2.12 Service selection policy

#### 12.6.2.12.1 Unsigned applications

Unsigned applications may not select a new service.

#### 12.6.2.12.2 Signed applications

By default, signed applications can select any new service, unless otherwise specified in the permission request file.

Service selection might require return channel access. If an application attempts to do a service selection using a locator that refers to an AIT file delivered over the return channel, and a return channel has not already been established or the application does not have permission to establish a connection via the default isp (see 12.6.2.10, "Return channel access policy" on page 325), then the service selection shall fail in a manner consistent with the defined failure mode for service selection when a security violation is encountered (e.g. a DVB-J application using the service selection API shall be thrown a SecurityException).

Note: See also 12.14.1, "Permission for application loading from the return channel" on page 350

### 12.6.2.12.3 Service Selection Permission

The syntax of the service selection permission is as follows:

```
<!ELEMENT servicesel EMPTY>

<!ATTLIST servicesel
  value (true|false) "true"
>
```

If no service selection permission is present in the permission request file, the application has the default right, i.e. it can select any service.

The value "false" in this item in the permission request file, denies the right to select a new service.

### 12.6.2.13 Media API access policy

The media API is inside the sandbox.

### 12.6.2.14 Inter-application communication policy

#### 12.6.2.14.1 Unsigned applications

Unsigned applications are allowed to communicate with each other through the inter-application communication API. However, an unsigned application is not allowed to communicate with a signed application through the inter-application communication API.

#### 12.6.2.14.2 Signed applications

Signed applications signalled in the same service are allowed to communicate with each other through the inter-application communication API.

No special Permission need be defined.

### 12.6.2.15 User Setting and Preferences access policy

#### 12.6.2.15.1 Unsigned applications

Read access to:

- User Language
- Parental Rating
- DefaultFontSize
- Country Code

An unsigned application cannot access (neither read nor write) other preferences

#### 12.6.2.15.2 Signed applications

By default, same as unsigned applications. The permission request file may include items that request read access to all user preferences and/or write access to all user preferences.

### 12.6.2.15.3 Permission syntax

```
<!ELEMENT userpreferences EMPTY>

<!ATTLIST userpreferences
  write (true|false) "false"
  read (true|false) "true"
>
```

True value in the write and read attribute means that the permission for writing and reading, respectively, is requested.

### 12.6.2.16 Network permissions

#### 12.6.2.16.1 Unsigned applications

Unsigned applications can not have access to the return channel and therefore can not access remote network hosts.

#### 12.6.2.16.2 Signed applications

For signed applications, the permission request file can contain a set of permissions that specify the hosts and actions for which permissions are requested.

#### 12.6.2.16.3 Permission syntax

```
<!ELEMENT network (host)+>
<!ELEMENT host (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST host
  action CDATA #REQUIRED
>
```

The two strings that specify the host and the action shall be formatted as specified in the `java.net.SocketPermission` class as defined in 11.8, "Security" on page 282.

### 12.6.2.17 Dripfeed permissions

#### 12.6.2.17.1 Unsigned applications

Has no access to drip feed mode.

#### 12.6.2.17.2 Default policy for signed applications

No access to drip feed mode unless otherwise indicated in the Permission file. When an application is granted access to the drip feed mode, it is able to instantiate a `DripFeedDataSource`.

#### 12.6.2.17.3 Permission request syntax

```
<!ELEMENT dripfeed EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST dripfeed
  value (true|false) "true"
>
```

### 12.6.2.18 Privileged Runtime Code Extension Permission

Note: DVB-J prohibits runtime code extension from data sources less secure than the original program code by virtue of the fact that interoperable DVB-J applications cannot directly create a `ClassLoader`, so this permission does not apply to DVB-J. See 11.10.1.4, "java.lang.RuntimePermission" on page 287 and `DVBClassLoader` in annex I, "(normative): DVB-J fundamental classes" on page 523.

Note: In ECMAScript, code executed via runtime code extension has the same permission level as the enclosing application. Thus, granting an unsigned application the ability to do runtime code extension with string data does not give the application the ability to execute a string as privileged code.



### 12.6.2.18.1 Unsigned Applications

Unsigned applications shall be permitted to do runtime code extension with string data from any source.

### 12.6.2.18.2 Signed applications with no permission request file

Signed applications with no permission request file shall be permitted to do runtime code extension with string data from any source.

### 12.6.2.18.3 Signed applications with a permission request file

By default, a signed application with a permission request file is prohibited from doing any runtime code extension from a string. The permission request file may include items that request the ability to do runtime code extension with internal strings only, or with both internal and external strings.

### 12.6.2.18.4 Permission request syntax

```
<!ELEMENT privilegedrce EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST privilegedrce
  value (internal|external) "internal"
>
```

## 12.6.2.19 Application storage

### 12.6.2.19.1 Unsigned applications

Have no permission to store applications

### 12.6.2.19.2 Default policy for signed applications

By default signed applications do not have permission to store any applications.

Permission to store applications can be requested using the permission request file.

### 12.6.2.19.3 Permission request syntax

```
<!ELEMENT applicationstorage EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST applicationstorage
  orgid CDATA #REQUIRED
  store (true|false) "false"
  remove (true|false) "false"
  create (true|false) "false"
  removeservice (true|false) "false"
>
```

**orgid:** The organization\_id of the organization whose application and stored services this permission request concerns. This field is encoded in hexadecimal form as specified in 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377.

**store:** When set to "true", requests a permission to store applications of the organization identified by the organization\_id. If set to false, this permission is not requested.

**remove:** When set to "true", requests a permission to remove applications of the organization identified by the organization\_id. If set to false, this permission is not requested.

**create:** When set to "true", requests a permission to create a stored application service with the organization identified by the organization\_id. If set to false, this permission is not requested.

**removeservice:** When set to "true", requests a permission to remove a stored application service with the organization identified by the organization\_id. If set to false, this permission is not requested.

## 12.6.2.20 Non-CA smart card access

### 12.6.2.20.1 Unsigned applications

Have no permission to access smart cards

### 12.6.2.20.2 Default policy for signed applications

By default signed applications do not have permission to access smart cards.

Permission to access smart cards can be requested using the permission request file.

### 12.6.2.20.3 Permission request syntax

```
<!ELEMENT smartcardaccess EMPTY>
```

When the smartcardaccess element is included in the permission request file, the permission to access smart cards is requested. If the element is not included in the permission request file, this permission is not requested.

## 12.7 Example of creating an application that can be authenticated

### 12.7.1 Scenario Example

This section is informative and gives an example of how a file system carrying an application can be organised.

In this example, the file system carries single signed application Xlet1.

The main class of the application is the file `root/Xlet1/classes/Xlet1.class`, other files comprising the application are the following classes:

- `root/Xlet1/classes/fool.class`
- `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/sub1.class`
- `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/sub2.class`

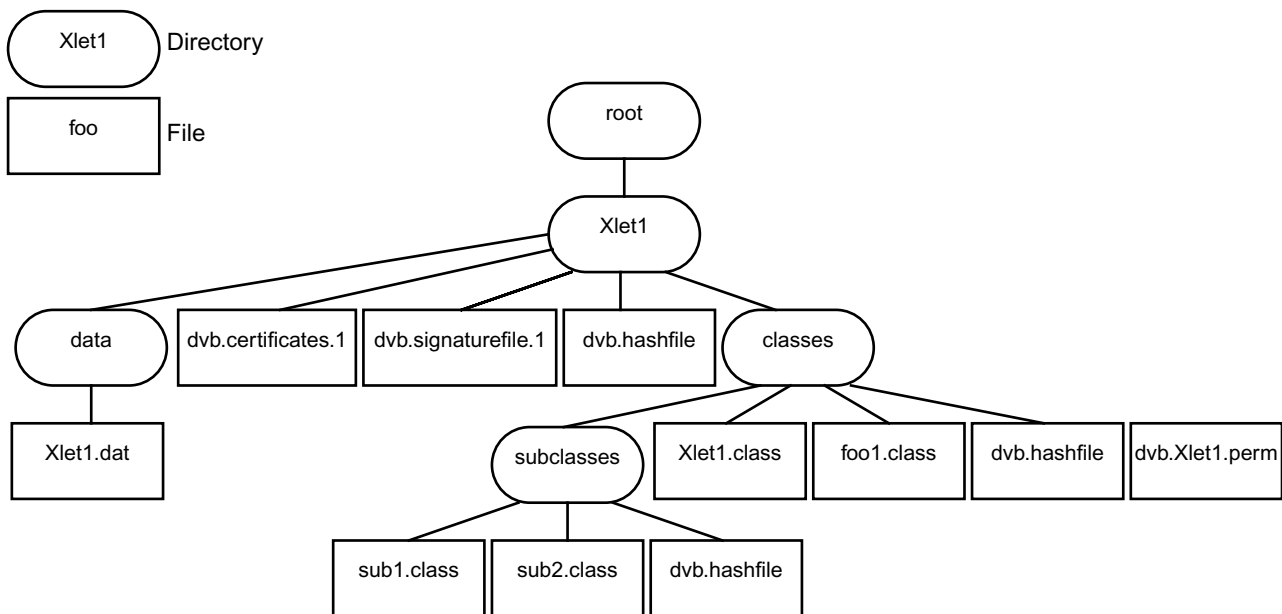
Xlet1 consumes data located in the file `root/Xlet1/data/Xlet1.dat`. This file is not authenticated.

Each subdirectory that contains signed files contains a hashfile.

Assumptions in this example:

- All the \*.class files are signed
- The file `root/Xlet1/data/Xlet1.dat` is not signed
- The only digest algorithm used is MD5

The file structure is shown below:



**Figure 20 : Example of an authenticated file tree**

## 12.7.2 Hashes and signature computations:

### 12.7.2.1 Computation of the hashes of the root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses directory

- a) initialise the MD5 algorithm
- b) apply the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/sub1.class` to the MD5 algorithm then apply the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/sub2.class` to the MD5 algorithm. The cumulative result from these two files is the result `H0`
- c) construct the contents of the hash file for the directory `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/` as follows:

**Table 129 : root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/dvb.hashfile**

| Field      | Comment   |
|------------|---|
| 1          | One digest  |
| 1          | Type of digest algorithm = MD5  |
| 2          | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed             |
| sub1.class | List of names of entries  |
| sub2.class |   |
| H0         | MD5 hash of files <code>sub1.class</code> and <code>sub2.class</code> |

NOTE: In this example we have chosen that the digests for this directory result from processing the concatenation of the contents of the files in the directory.

- d) create the hash file `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/dvb.hashfile` with the above contents

### 12.7.2.2 Computation of the hashes of the of root/Xlet1/classes directory

- e) initialise the MD5 algorithm, compute the MD5 hash `H2` using the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/classes/subclasses/dvb.hashfile`
- f) initialise the MD5 algorithm, compute the MD5 hash `H3` using the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/classes/Xlet1.class`
- g) initialise the MD5 algorithm, compute the MD5 hash `H4` using the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/classes/foo1.class`

h) construct the contents of the hash file for the directory `root/Xlet1/classes/` as follows:

**Table 130 : root/Xlet1/classes/dvb.hashfile**

| Field       | Comment   |
|-------------|---|
| 3           | Three digests   |
| 1           | Type of digest algorithm = MD5                            |
| 1           | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed |
| subclasses  | List of names of entries                                  |
| H2          | MD5 hash of subclasses directory                          |
| 1           | Type of digest algorithm = MD5                            |
| 1           | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed |
| Xlet1.class | List of names of entries                                  |
| H3          | MD5 hash of file Xlet1.class                              |
| 1           | Type of digest algorithm = MD5                            |
| 1           | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed |
| foo1.class  | List of names of entries                                  |
| H4          | MD5 hash of file foo1.class                               |

NOTE: In this example we have chosen to individually hash each object in this directory.

i) create the hash file `root/Xlet1/classes/dvb.hashfile` with the above contents

### 12.7.2.3 Computation of the hashes of the of root/Xlet1 directory

j) initialise the MD5 algorithm, compute the MD5 hash H5 using the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/classes/dvb.hashfile`

k) construct the contents of the hash file for the directory `root/Xlet1/classes/` as follows:

**Table 131 : root/Xlet1/dvb.hashfile**

| Field                      | Comment   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 3                          | Three digests   |
| 1                          | Type of digest algorithm = MD5                            |
| 1                          | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed |
| classes                    | List of names of entries                                  |
| H5                         | MD5 hash of the classes directory                         |
| 0                          | Type of digest algorithm = non authenticated data         |
| 1                          | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed |
| data                       | List of names of entries                                  |
| <no digest in this case>   |   |
| 0                          | Type of digest algorithm = non authenticated data         |
| 1                          | Number of entries over which a MD5 hash has been computed |
| dvb.certificates.1<br>List | List of names of entries                                  |
| <no digest in this case>   |   |

NOTE: the `root/Xlet1/classes` entry is the only authenticated entry of the `root/Xlet1` directory

l) create the hash file `root/Xlet1/dvb.hashfile` with the above contents

### 12.7.2.4 Computation of the signature

m) initialise the MD5 algorithm, compute the MD5 hash H6 using the contents of the file `root/Xlet1/dvb.hashfile`

- n) RSA-encrypt H6 with the private key corresponding to the public key that can be found in the leaf certificate in the file `root/Xlet1/dvb.certificates.1`. In this example this has serial number 0123456.
- o) ASN.1 encode the following structure:
- AuthorityCertIssuerName: Name of the CA
  - AuthorityCertSerialNumber: 0123456
  - HashSignatureAlgorithm: MD5
  - SignatureValue: result of step (n).
- p) put this structure into the signature file `root/Xlet1/dvb.signaturefile.1`

NOTE: The file system could contain other Xlets in their own authenticated sub-trees. If these use the same certificate chain as Xlet1 (above) then logically the certificates file is replicated at the root of each of the authenticated sub-trees. Some file systems support symbolic links. These may in some cases improve the efficiency of the broadcast.

## 12.8 MHP certification procedures

The MHP certification procedures are outside of the scope of this document.

## 12.9 Certificate management

### 12.9.1 Certificate Revocation Lists

#### 12.9.1.1 Introduction (informative)

Certificates may be revoked prior to their expiration time, e.g. if the broadcaster's private key is assumed to be compromised, or the broadcaster is no longer to be certified by the CA. Each CA publishes a list of revoked certificates, called a CRL (Certificate Revocation List). This contains the list of the serial number of revoked certificates.

During the validation process of a certificate chain, the CRL of each certification authority on the certification path is checked.

The number of CRLs to be supported per level is defined in G, "(normative): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515.

#### 12.9.1.2 Distribution of CRLs (informative)

Two routes from the broadcaster to the MHP terminal can be envisaged:

- via the return channel
- in the broadcast MPEG stream

##### 12.9.1.2.1 Distribution via return channel

In the certificate extension fields, there is an optional field called "CRL Distribution points". This field can hold a URL pointing to a `crlFile` which can be downloaded.

This approach is suitable for obtaining CRLs relating to TLS authentication of return channel exchanges. It is not suitable for delivering CRLs for broadcast application authentication as:

- not all MHP profiles require return channel support
- MHP terminals may be able to receive broadcast applications when not connected to a return channel
- it would not be acceptable to require a return channel session to authenticate each broadcast application

##### 12.9.1.2.2 Distribution via MPEG stream

For an MHP terminal without a working return channel, the only way to deliver CRLs is via the broadcast MPEG Transport Stream.

### 12.9.1.3 CRL retention

#### 12.9.1.3.1 Requirement

MHP terminals shall retain CRLs or the information they contain (including serial numbers) in persistent storage because:

- this enhances security as it defends against attacks with signals that filter out the CRL and use a revoked certificate
- it is more efficient to cache CRLs rather than downloading the CRLs for authentication of each application

#### 12.9.1.3.2 Storage requirement

The minimum amount of persistent storage required to store CRLs is addressed in [12.12, "Platform minima" on page 349](#).

#### 12.9.1.3.3 Storage management

The broadcast CRL and RCMM signalling (see [12.9.2, "Root certificate management" on page 337](#)) manages the use of the persistent storage.

If the CRL of a non-root certificate CA become's too large the CA's certificate itself can be revoked by its parent CA who adds it to their CRL. For root certificates, the RCMM mechanism can be used.

### 12.9.1.4 CRL file location and naming convention

For CRLs that are authenticated by a broadcast certificate the format of the name of files carrying CRLs shall be:

```
"dvb.crl.x"
```

In this case the "x" portion of the filename corresponds to the "x" portion of a certificate filename for the certificate file that authenticates the CRL.

For CRLs that are authenticated by a root certificate the format of the name of files carrying CRLs shall be:

```
"dvb.crl.root.x"
```

In this case the "x" portion of the filename is just a discriminator to ensure non-collision of CRL file names in the event that there is more than one in this directory.

The CRL filename may not be constant through time or across broadcasts. So, implementations shall not rely on this filename when caching the CRL.

All CRL files shall be located in a subdirectory of the root of the file system called "dvb.crl". The location of certificate files authenticating the CRL files shall follow the same rules as for the location of certificates relative to a signature file. That is the certificate files shall either be in the dvb.crl directory or in the root directory. See [12.4.3.5, "CertificateFile location and naming conventions" on page 309](#).

### 12.9.1.5 Operational model

Receivers are expected to inspect the set of CRL files periodically and cache the revocation information for future use. This inspection process can assume that a file system will not normally carry certificates revoked by CRL files carried in the same file system. So, inspection of the CRL set in a file system is not a precondition to authenticating other files in that file system.

This specification does not address the reliability with which implementations are required to consider certificate revocations when authenticating files.

## 12.9.1.6 Examples

### 12.9.1.6.1 Revocation of a broadcaster's certificate

If the broadcaster B's certificate is compromised:

- a) the certification authority CA01 adds the serial number of broadcaster B's certificate to its CRL
- b) CA01 then sends the new CRL file to the broadcasters that use CA01
- c) these broadcasters (broadcaster A for instance) broadcast the new CRL file

As soon as an MHP terminal has downloaded the new CRL file (after selecting one of broadcaster A's channel), the MHP terminal's CRL cache in persistent storage is updated. The MHP terminal is then protected against any malicious usage of the compromised certificate.

To continue authenticating applications broadcast "B" will require a new certificate.

### 12.9.1.6.2 Revocation of a CA's certificate.

If the CRL of CA01 becomes too big, CA01's certificate could be revoked:

- a) the root certification authority RCA0 adds the serial number of CA01's certificate to its CRL
- b) RCA0 sends the new CRL file to the broadcasters that use RCA0
- c) these broadcasters broadcast the new CRL file

As soon as an MHP terminal has downloaded the new CRL file, its CRL cache in persistent storage for RCA0 is updated and CA01's CRL is removed from the cache (as CA01 has been revoked).

## 12.9.1.7 CRL format

Each CRL file contains the CRL of one certification authority.

The encoding of the CRL is defined in the [ITU-T X.509 \[54\]](#) is reproduced below for information. The fields Version, Time, CertificateSerialNumber correspond to fields with the same names in the certificate see [12.11, "The internet profile of X.509 \(informative\)" on page 342](#):

```

CertificateList ::= SEQUENCE {
    tbsCertList                TBSCertList,
    signatureAlgorithm          AlgorithmIdentifier,
    signatureValue BIT STRING }

TBSCertList ::= SEQUENCE {
    version                    Version OPTIONAL,
                                -- if present, shall be v2
    signature                  AlgorithmIdentifier,
    issuer                     Name,
    thisUpdate                 Time,
    nextUpdate                 Time OPTIONAL,
    revokedCertificates        SEQUENCE OF SEQUENCE {
    userCertificate            CertificateSerialNumber,
    revocationDate            Time,
    crlEntryExtensions        Extensions OPTIONAL
                                -- if present, shall be v2
    } OPTIONAL,
    crlExtensions              [0] EXPLICIT Extensions OPTIONAL
                                -- if present, shall be v2
}

```

### 12.9.1.8 Profile of CRL

The profile of fields that correspond to fields in the certificate follow the profile in 12.5, "Profile of X.509 certificates for authentication of applications" on page 311. This applies to the following fields:

**signatureAlgorithm** : follows "signatureAlgorithm" on page 311.

**signatureValue**: follows "signatureValue" on page 311.

**version**: follows "version" on page 311.

**signature**: follows "signatureAlgorithm" on page 311.

**issuer**: follows "issuer" on page 311.

**thisUpdate**: Publication date of this CRL. Follows the encoding of Time used for **validity**. See "validity" on page 312.

**nextUpdate**: Publication date of the next version of the CRL. Follows the encoding of Time used for **validity**. See "validity" on page 312.

**userCertificate**: SerialNumber of the revoked certificate. It is used to identify the revoked certificate.

The serial number shall be unique for a given CA. So, the pair [issuerName, serialNumber] shall be unique.

**revocationDate**: Date of revocation for a given certificate. Follows the encoding of Time used for **validity**. See "validity" on page 312.

**crlExtensions**: The syntax of the **Extensions** element is reproduced on "Extensions" on page 346. This element allows multiple extension elements to be carried. The set of extensions defined for certificates and CRLs is reproduced at 12.11.2, "Standard certificate extensions" on page 346.

The following crlExtension shall be supported:

- AuthorityKeyIdentifier as defined in section 12.4.2.1 on page 307.

This extension identifies the certificate that is needed to check the signature of the CRL.

The crlExtension **AuthorityKeyIdentifier** shall be included in every CRL. MHP implementations shall use the **AuthorityKeyIdentifier** to find the certificate that carries the public key that is used to check the signature of the CRL and ignore any CRLs where this check fails or where the **AuthorityKeyIdentifier** is not present.

Other crlExtensions are optional.

### 12.9.1.9 CRL Processing

CRLs, or the information they contain (including serial numbers), shall be kept in persistent storage in the MHP terminal.

When an MHP terminal finds a file with the file name format given in 12.4.3.5, "CertificateFile location and naming conventions" on page 309, it shall do the following sequence:

- a) Get the field **thisUpdate** and compare it with the last update for the CRL. If **thisUpdate** is not after the last update, ignore the CRL.
- b) The signature of the CRL is verified and the signing certificate is verified to be from a trusted source. If the certificate cannot be trusted, the CRL is ignored.
- c) Process the content of the CRL message:
  - store the list of serial numbers of revoked certificates in persistent storage.
  - update the stored value of **thisUpdate** with the value from the CRL.
- d) If a CA's certificate has been revoked, remove its CRL (or the information which that CRL contained) if it was stored in the MHP terminal.



During the validation process of a certificate chain, the CRL of each certification authority on the certification path is checked.

## 12.9.2 Root certificate management

### 12.9.2.1 Introduction

Every compliant MHP terminal will have to maintain a set of X.509 root certificates in persistent storage. These root certificates will be placed in the MHP terminal by its manufacturer during the manufacturing process.

It could be necessary to update the set of root certificates for MHP terminals that are already deployed. Possible reasons that could require such an update include:

- a root certificate becoming compromised
- technical developments (such as the emergence of factorisation algorithms) that require the use of greater key lengths in root certificates to provide adequate security
- retirement of a certificate due to its age

So, It is necessary to have a standard mechanism to update this set.

**NOTE:** A manufacturer specific mechanism could require a different message for each manufacturer and so would be more expensive in terms of broadcast bandwidth.

The mechanism specified here uses messages called RCMM (Root Certificate Management Messages). These messages contain a set of new root certificates to add and a reference to the root certificates to remove.

### 12.9.2.2 Security of RCMM

RCMM are authenticated by multiple signatures. An RCMM message will be accepted by an MHP terminal if and only if it has at least N signatures.

The initial value of N and the maximum value of N that MHP terminals will ever be asked to support are specified in [12.12, "Platform minima" on page 349](#).

The use of multiple signatures guarantees that the set of root certificates can be updated securely even if one of the root certificates has been compromised.

RCMM can update the number of signatures required for future RCMM using the nextNbOfSignature field.

The RCMM message shall be signed with the key of the certificates to be removed.

### 12.9.2.3 Format of RCMM

The encoding of RCMM is ASN.1 DER (see [ASN.1 \[57\]](#)):

```
URCMM ::= SEQUENCE {
    issuer                Name,
    thisUpdate            Time,
    nextNbOfSignatures   INTEGER OPTIONAL,
    addedCertificates    SET OF Certificate
    removedCertificates  SET OF CertificatesReference }
```

```
CertificatesReference ::= SEQUENCE {
    issuerName           Name,
    serialNumber        CertificateSerialNumber }
```

**issuer:** Identification of the certification authority which has issued the message.

**thisUpdate:** Date of the issue of the message.

**nextNbOfSignatures:** This field could be used to change the minimum number of valid signatures required for an RCMM message. This value will be applied to the next RCMMs not to itself!

**addedCertificates:** List of root certificates to be added in persistent storage

**removedCertificates:** Reference of the root certificates to be removed from persistent storage

```
RCMM ::= SEQUENCE {
    uRCmm                URCMM,
    signatures            SET OF SignatureInfo }

SignatureInfo ::= SEQUENCE {
    signerName           Name,
    signatureAlgorithm   AlgorithmIdentifier,
    signatureValue       BIT STRING }
```

NB: The signatures are computed on the whole content of uRCMM.

**issuerName:** Name of the issuer of the root certificate to remove (for a self signed root certificate this field is equal to the subject name).

**serialNumber:** Serial number of the root certificate to remove.

#### 12.9.2.4 Distribution of RCMM

RCMM are distributed to the MHP terminals in the broadcast MPEG Transport Stream. The RCMM from a particular CA are supplied to at least the broadcasters that use that CA.

The most recent RCMM shall be placed in a file named:

```
"dvb.rcmm"
```

The RCMM files are inserted on a sample basis specified by the CA. These files shall be located in root directories of the object carousels broadcast.

Older RCMMs shall be placed in files named "dvb.rcmm.<x>" where x is a textual representation of an integer decimal number without leading zeroes. The range of values represented in any single directory shall start with 1 and increment in steps of 1. The first unused integer value in the ascending sequence indicates the end of the range. RCMMs shall be sorted in chronological order with the oldest RCMM in dvb.rcmm.1. The RCMM signalled as "dvb.rcmm" shall not be duplicated in the "dvb.rcmm.<x>" sequence.

#### 12.9.2.5 RCMM Processing

When an MHP terminal finds RCMM messages in a root directory, it shall perform the following sequence of operations:

- a) If there has never been any RCMM processing (last update to be stored in the receiver not initialised), then process sequentially according to steps (b) to (j) all dvb.rcmm.<x> messages in ascending order including the dvb.rcmm message as the final step. Otherwise, identify the dvb.rcmm.<x> message whose field thisUpdate is the closest after the last update and process sequentially according to steps (b) to (j) all following dvb.rcmm.<x> in ascending order including the dvb.rcmm message as the final step. If the field thisUpdate from the dvb.rcmm message is not after the last update, ignore the messages.

For each RCMM message identified in step (a), perform the following:

- b) If there is a **nextNbOfSignatures** in the RCMM, and if **nextNbOfSignatures** will be greater than the number of remaining root CAs (i.e. the number of root CA that would remain if the RCMM was processed), ignore the RCMM.
- c) Get the number signatures from the RCMM, if this number is lower than the minimum required, ignore the message.
- d) If the RCMM contains references to root certificates to remove, check this RCMM is signed with the keys belonging to the certificates to be removed. If at least one of these signatures is missing, ignore the RCMM message.
- e) Check all the signatures of the RCMM. If any of the signatures is invalid, ignore the message.
- f) Process the content of the RCMM message, add and remove root certificates according to the RCMM message.

- g) Store in persistent storage the date of this Update as the date of the last update.
- h) If a root certificate is removed, the CRLs associated are also removed.
- i) If there is a `nextNbOfSignatures` in the RCMM, replace the minimum number of signature required by the `nextNbOfSignatures`.
- j) Since this process will permanently modify the terminal behaviour and is highly sensitive for security, this is allowed to have an implementation dependent enabling / confirmation step prior to performing the action (e.g. it may prompt the end user for verification). Such an enabling / confirmation step is allowed to reject this RCMM action.

The implementation shall ensure the following:

- The integrity of the persistent storage shall be kept if the power supply fails for any reason during the processing of any RCMM message in a `dvb.rcmm.<x>` file or the `dvb.rcmm` file. i.e. If the power is switched off during the processing of the RCMM message, the set of root certificates shall remain as if processing of that RCMM message had not started.  
i.e. If the power is switched off during the processing of the RCMM message, the set of root certificates shall remain as if processing of the RCMM message had not started.
- The minimum amount of persistent storage reserved to store the list of root certificate is specified in 12.12, "Platform minima" on page 349. If there is not enough persistent storage available to process an RCMM message, it shall be ignored (to prevent inconsistencies).

NOTE: This specification is intentionally silent about the impact of RCMM processing on MHP applications which are already running.

### 12.9.2.6 Example: Renewal of a root certificate

Let's assume the root certification authority RCA has two certificates in each MHP terminal: RC0 and RC1. If RC0 is compromised, RCA may wish to renew this certificate using the following steps:

- a) RCA generates a new key pair and a new self signed certificate RC2.
- b) RCA provides new certificates signed by RC1 to all the entities authenticated by RCA.
- c) Wait until all entities authenticated by RCA have switched to the new certificates and have stopped using RC0.
- d) RCA generates an RCMM message to add RC2 and to remove RC0. This RCMM will be double signed by RC0 and RC1 keys.
- e) RCA will deliver this RCMM message to the broadcasters to update the MHP terminals.  
(The broadcasting period should be long enough to update almost all of the MHP terminals in the field).
- f) RCA will provide RC1 and RC2 to set top box manufacturers as the new list of root certificates to put in set top boxes.

### 12.9.3 Test certificates

There shall be a means to make test root certificates (as required by 12.12, "Platform minima" on page 349) available while the terminal is being tested. The method for doing so shall be implementation dependent; it may involve either replacing non-test root certificates, or storing test root certificates in addition to non-test root certificates.

Test root certificates shall only be functional when the terminal is being tested. Objects signed with test root certificates shall not be used other than for the purposes of testing.

This specification is intentionally silent on the test root certificates to be used.

## 12.10 Security on the return channel

General purpose security for the return channel is provided by the TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocol as described in IETF RFC 2246 [63].

## 12.10.1 MHP functionality

When implementing return channel security the MHP shall:

- implement the cipher suites identified in section 12.10.2

The MHP is not required to implement the following:

- the functionality of being a server for the TLS protocol
- compliance with SSL 3.0
- TLS client authentication

## 12.10.2 TLS cipher suites

The minimum set of cypher tools that implementations of the MHP profile of TLS shall implement are:

- RSA ()
- MD5
- SHA-1
- DES

More detail of this requirement is given in table 132 (see IETF RFC 2246 [63] for definition of the terms) which identifies which methods are required in an MHP.

**Table 132 : Profile of cipher suites that implementations are required to support**

| CipherSuite                       | Key Exchange | Cipher       | Hash  | Value (hex) | MHP status |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--------------|-------|-------------|------------|
| TLS_NULL_WITH_NULL_NULL (note 1)  | NULL         | NULL         | NULL  | 00, 00      | Required   |
| TLS_RSA_WITH_NULL_MD5             | RSA          | NULL         | MD5   | 00, 01      | Required   |
| TLS_RSA_WITH_NULL_SHA             | RSA          | NULL         | SHA-1 | 00, 02      | Required   |
| TLS_RSA_EXPORT_WITH_DES40_CBC_SHA | RSA_EXPORT   | DES40_CBC    | SHA-1 | 00, 08      | Required   |
| TLS_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA          | RSA          | DES_CBC      | SHA-1 | 00, 09      | Required   |
| TLS_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA     | RSA          | 3DES_EDE_CBC | SHA-1 | 00, 0A      | Required   |

NOTE 1: This cipher suite is only used by a TLS implementation during the negotiation of a connection. It is not required to be enabled as a cipher suite that is available for a negotiated connection.

NOTE: The ciphers TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_NULL\_MD5 and TLS\_RSA\_WITH\_NULL\_SHA provide integrity checking but without confidentiality (i.e. data are in clear). Data encryption is very time consuming for a server. They are useful for applications in which data don't need to be encrypted but in which data integrity is very important. For these applications, the server will only have to compute a HMAC for every message exchanged.

## 12.10.3 Downloading of certificates for TLS

### 12.10.3.1 Introduction

Before the TLS connection can be established, the MHP has to ensure that the certificate list sent by a server contains at least one trusted certificate. In computer environment, this is simply done by checking the list of certificates against one certificate that is resident in the computer.

In the MHP environment, a downloadable application can establish a TLS session. This can be used for e.g. sensitive transactions. In such a scenario, the application knows which server to connect to, and also knows one certificate against which it can check that a given certificate chain contains the expected certificate that it knows and trusts.

The API that is used by a downloadable application is described in section 11.8.2, "APIs for return channel security" on page 283. The process of server authentication involves the checking of the certificate chain sent by the TLS server.

This section specifies how the MHP terminal identifies and manages the TLS certificates that are downloaded along with the application and how verification (or otherwise) is presented to the application).

### 12.10.3.2 Usage of certificate in TLS

#### 12.10.3.2.1 When certificates are delivered with the application

One or several TLS root certificates can be optionally broadcast along with the application.

When the certificate chain sent by the TLS server is not compatible with any of the TLS root certificates sent with the application an `IOException` will be thrown.

##### 12.10.3.2.1.1 Certificate file naming and location

To facilitate certificate chain checking the name of the certificate file shall be:

```
dvb.tls.organisation_id.application_id.x
```

where:

- "x" is an optional string discriminating certificates where necessary.
- the encoding of `organisation_id` and `application_id` are specified in 14.5, "Text encoding of application identifiers" on page 377.

Location of the TLS certificates is application type dependant. See table 133.

**Table 133 : TLS certificate locator semantics**

| application_type | description   |
|------------------|---|
| 0x0000           | reserved  |
| 0x0001           | For DVB-J the TLS certificate(s) are placed in the base directory of the application as defined in 10.9.2, "DVB-J application location descriptor" on page 236.       |
| 0x0002           | For DVB-HTML the TLS certificate(s) are placed at the physical root of the application as defined in 10.10.2, "DVB-HTML application location descriptor" on page 237. |
| 0x0003...0xFFFF  | reserved for future use   |

##### 12.10.3.2.1.2 Certificate authentication

To be considered valid TLS certificates the certificate files shall be authenticated members of the same authenticated sub-tree as the application.

##### 12.10.3.2.1.3 Certificate file format

Each TLS certificate file contains a single certificate. The file format is the same as that used by certificate files for application authentication, see 12.4.3, "CertificateFile" on page 309.

##### 12.10.3.2.2 When no certificates are provided

When there are no TLS certificates sent with the application then the implementation will allow connection to be established to any server. The application can then use the JSSE API (see 11.8.2 on page 283) to retrieve the certificate chain and check that it contains what the application requires. In such a case both name and public keys need to be checked by the application if the application wants to be sure of the remote server.

##### 12.10.3.2.3 CRL distribution points

MHP implementations are free to ignore this field during TLS server authentication over the return channel.

## 12.11 The internet profile of X.509 (informative)

The text that follows summarises the technical features of [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) and references the different profile decisions made for the different MHP application areas.

### 12.11.1 Main part of the certificate

#### 12.11.1.1 Certificate

```
Certificate ::= SEQUENCE {
    tbsCertificate      TBSCertificate,
    signatureAlgorithm  AlgorithmIdentifier,
    signatureValue      BIT STRING }
```

#### 12.11.1.2 signatureAlgorithm

The signatureAlgorithm field contains the identifier for the cryptographic algorithm used by the CA to sign this certificate.

An algorithm identifier is defined by the following [ASN.1](#) structure:

```
AlgorithmIdentifier ::= SEQUENCE {
    algorithm          OBJECT IDENTIFIER,
    parameters        ANY DEFINED BY algorithm OPTIONAL }
```

The algorithm identifier is used to identify a cryptographic algorithm. The OBJECT IDENTIFIER component identifies the algorithm. The contents of the optional parameters field will vary according to the algorithm identified.

This field **MUST** contain the same algorithm identifier as the signature field in the sequence [TBSCertificate](#).

**See 12.5.1, "signatureAlgorithm" on page 311.**

NOTE: [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 7.2 lists the signature algorithms supported by that profile.

For all of the currently specified algorithms possible non-NULL parameters shall be ignored.

#### 12.11.1.3 signatureValue

The signatureValue field contains a digital signature computed upon the [ASN.1](#) DER encoded [tbsCertificate](#). The [ASN.1](#) DER encoded [tbsCertificate](#) is used as the input to the signature function. This signature value is then [ASN.1](#) encoded as a BIT STRING and included in the Certificate's signature field.

NOTE: [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 7.2 describes in detail this process for the algorithms supported by that profile.

By generating this signature, a CA certifies the validity of the information in the [tbsCertificate](#) field. In particular, the CA certifies the binding between the public key material and the subject of the certificate.

**See 12.5.2, "signatureValue" on page 311.**

#### 12.11.1.4 tbsCertificate

The field contains the names of the subject and issuer, a public key associated with the subject, a validity period, and other associated information. The tbscertificate may also include extensions.

The pair [issuer](#) / [serialNumber](#) uniquely identifies the certificate.

```
TBSCertificate ::= SEQUENCE {
    version          [0] EXPLICIT Version DEFAULT v1,
    serialNumber     CertificateSerialNumber,
    signature        AlgorithmIdentifier,
    issuer           Name,
    validity         Validity,
    subject          Name,
    subjectPublicKeyInfo SubjectPublicKeyInfo,
```

```

issuerUniqueID [1] IMPLICIT UniqueIdentifier OPTIONAL,
-- If present, version shall be v2 or v3
subjectUniqueID [2] IMPLICIT UniqueIdentifier OPTIONAL,
-- If present, version shall be v2 or v3
extensions [3] EXPLICIT Extensions OPTIONAL
-- If present, version shall be v3 }

```

### 12.11.1.5 version

This field describes the version of the encoded certificate. When extensions are used, as expected in this profile, use X.509 version 3 (value is 2). If no extensions are present, but a UniqueIdentifier is present, use version 2 (value is 1). If only basic fields are present, use version 1 (the value is omitted from the certificate as the default value).

Implementations SHOULD be prepared to accept any version certificate. At a minimum, conforming implementations MUST recognize version 3 certificates.

```
Version ::= INTEGER { v1(0), v2(1), v3(2) }
```

Generation of version 2 certificates is not expected by implementations based on this profile.

See 12.5.3, "version" on page 311.

### 12.11.1.6 serialNumber

The serial number is an integer assigned by the CA to each certificate. It MUST be unique for each certificate issued by a given CA (i.e., the issuer name and serial number identify a unique certificate).

```
CertificateSerialNumber ::= INTEGER
```

### 12.11.1.7 signature

This field contains the algorithm identifier for the algorithm used by the CA to sign the certificate.

This field MUST contain the same algorithm identifier as the `signatureAlgorithm` field in the sequence `Certificate`. The contents of the optional parameters field will vary according to the algorithm identified.

If the signatureAlgorithm is different from the algorithm identifier in the signature field, the signature shall be rejected as being inconsistent.

See 12.5.1, "signatureAlgorithm" on page 311.

NOTE: IETF RFC 2459 [58] section 7.2 lists the supported signature algorithms for that profile.

### 12.11.1.8 issuer

The issuer field identifies the entity who has signed and issued the certificate. The issuer field MUST contain a non-empty distinguished name (DN). The issuer field is defined as the X.501 type Name. ITU-T X.501 [53] Name is defined by the following ASN.1 structures:

```
Name ::= CHOICE {
    RDNSequence }

```

```
RDNSequence ::= SEQUENCE OF RelativeDistinguishedName
```

```
RelativeDistinguishedName ::=
    SET OF AttributeTypeAndValue
```

```
AttributeTypeAndValue ::= SEQUENCE {
    type      AttributeType,
    value     AttributeValue }

```

```
AttributeType ::= OBJECT IDENTIFIER
```

```
AttributeValue ::= ANY DEFINED BY AttributeType
```

```
DirectoryString ::= CHOICE {
```

|                 |                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| teletexString   | TeletexString (SIZE (1..MAX)),   |
| printableString | PrintableString (SIZE (1..MAX)), |
| universalString | UniversalString (SIZE (1..MAX)), |
| utf8String      | UTF8String (SIZE (1.. MAX)),     |
| bmpString       | BMPString (SIZE (1..MAX)) }      |

The Name describes a hierarchical name composed of attributes, such as country name, and corresponding values, such as US. The type of the component AttributeValue is determined by the AttributeType; in general it will be a DirectoryString.

See 12.5.4, "issuer" on page 311.

### 12.11.1.9 validity

The certificate validity period is the time interval during which the CA warrants that it will maintain information about the status of the certificate. The field is represented as a SEQUENCE of two dates: the date on which the certificate validity period begins (notBefore) and the date on which the certificate validity period ends (notAfter). Both notBefore and notAfter may be encoded as UTCTime or GeneralizedTime.

CAs conforming to this profile MUST always encode certificate validity dates through the year 2049 as UTCTime; certificate validity dates in 2050 or later MUST be encoded as GeneralizedTime.

```

Validity::= SEQUENCE {
    notBefore      Time,
    notAfter       Time }

Time::= CHOICE {
    utcTime        UTCTime,
    generalTime    GeneralizedTime }

```

A non-root certificate validity is limited by the validity period of the signer's certificate.

#### 12.11.1.9.1 UTCTime

The universal time type, UTCTime, is a standard [ASN.1](#) type intended for representation of dates and time. UTCTime specifies the year through the two low order digits and time is specified to the precision of one minute or one second. UTCTime includes either Z (for Zulu, or Greenwich Mean Time) or a time differential.

For the purposes of this profile, UTCTime values MUST be expressed Greenwich Mean Time (Zulu) and MUST include seconds (i.e., times are YYMMDDHHMMSSZ), even where the number of seconds is zero. Conforming systems MUST interpret the year field (YY) as follows:

- Where YY is greater than or equal to 50, the year shall be interpreted as 19YY; and
- Where YY is less than 50, the year shall be interpreted as 20YY.

#### 12.11.1.9.2 GeneralizedTime

The generalized time type, GeneralizedTime, is a standard [ASN.1](#) type for variable precision representation of time. Optionally, the GeneralizedTime field can include a representation of the time differential between local and Greenwich Mean Time.

For the purposes of this profile, GeneralizedTime values MUST be expressed Greenwich Mean Time (Zulu) and MUST include seconds (i.e., times are YYYYMMDDHHMMSSZ), even where the number of seconds is zero. GeneralizedTime values MUST NOT include fractional seconds.

See 12.5.5, "validity" on page 312.

#### 12.11.1.10 subject

The subject field identifies the entity associated with the public key stored in the [SubjectPublicKeyInfo](#) field. It thus represents the entity whose public key is certified. It is encoded as a Distinguished Name (see "issuer" on page 343). This name must be unique for each subject entity certified by one CA as defined by the issuer field.



### 12.11.1.10.1 issuerUniqueID

This field is optional and appears in X.509 v2 or v3 only. It enables to reuse the IssuerName over time. It is redundant with the [issuer](#) Name, and it is proposed here that this field be not parsed by the client.

### 12.11.1.10.2 subjectUniqueID

This field is optional and appears in X.509 v2 or v3 only. It enables to reuse the subjectName over time. It is redundant with the [subject](#) Name, and it is proposed here not to use this field.

The subject name may be carried in the subject field and/or the subjectAltName extension. If the subject is a CA (e.g., the basic constraints extension, as discussed in [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 4.2.1.10, is present and the value of cA is TRUE,) then the subject field MUST be populated with a non-empty distinguished name matching the contents of the issuer field (see [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 4.1.2.4) in all certificates issued by the subject CA. If subject naming information is present only in the subjectAltName extension (e.g., a key bound only to an email address or URI), then the subject name MUST be an empty sequence and the subjectAltName extension MUST be critical.

Where it is non-empty, the subject field MUST contain an X.500 distinguished name (DN). The DN MUST be unique for each subject entity certified by the one CA as defined by the issuer name field. A CA may issue more than one certificate with the same DN to the same subject entity.

The subject name field is defined as the X.501 type Name. Implementation requirements for this field are those defined for the issuer field (see [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 4.1.2.4). When encoding attribute values of type DirectoryString, the encoding rules for the issuer field MUST be implemented. Implementations of this specification MUST be prepared to receive subject names containing the attribute types required for the issuer field. Implementations of this specification SHOULD be prepared to receive subject names containing the recommended attribute types for the issuer field. The syntax and associated object identifiers (OIDs) for these attribute types are provided in the [ASN.1](#) modules in [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) Appendices A and B. Implementations of this specification MAY use these comparison rules to process unfamiliar attribute types (i.e., for name chaining). This allows implementations to process certificates with unfamiliar attributes in the subject name.

In addition, legacy implementations exist where an RFC 822 name is embedded in the subject distinguished name as an EmailAddress attribute. The attribute value for EmailAddress is of type IA5String to permit inclusion of the character '@', which is not part of the PrintableString character set. EmailAddress attribute values are not case sensitive (e.g., "fanfeedback@redsox.com" is the same as "FANFEEDBACK@REDSOX.COM").

Conforming implementations generating new certificates with electronic mail addresses MUST use the rfc822Name in the subject alternative name field (see [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 4.2.1.7) to describe such identities. Simultaneous inclusion of the EmailAddress attribute in the subject distinguished name to support legacy implementations is deprecated but permitted.

### 12.11.1.11 SubjectPublic Key Info

This field is used to carry the public key which is certified and identifies the algorithm with which the key is used. The algorithm is identified using the [AlgorithmIdentifier](#) structure (see "[signatureAlgorithm](#)" on page 342) and the public key is represented as a bitstring.

```
SubjectPublicKeyInfo ::= SEQUENCE {
    algorithm           AlgorithmIdentifier,
    subjectPublicKey    BIT STRING }
```

See [12.5.7, "SubjectPublic Key Info" on page 312](#).

NOTE: [IETF RFC 2459 \[58\]](#) section 7.3 lists the supported algorithms for that profile.

### 12.11.1.12 Unique Identifiers

These fields may only appear if the version is 2 or 3. The subject and issuer unique identifiers are present in the certificate to handle the possibility of reuse of subject and/or issuer names over time. This profile recommends that names not be reused for different entities and that Internet certificates not make use of unique identifiers. CAs conforming to this profile SHOULD NOT generate certificates with unique identifiers. Applications conforming to this profile SHOULD be capable of parsing unique identifiers and making comparisons.

**UniqueIdentifier** ::= BIT STRING

See 12.5.8, "Unique Identifiers" on page 313.

### 12.11.1.13 Extensions

This field may only appear if the version is 3 and is optional. If present, this field is a SEQUENCE of one or more certificate extensions.

**Extensions** ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF *Extension*

```
Extension ::= SEQUENCE {
    extnID      OBJECT IDENTIFIER,
    critical    BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
    extnValue   OCTET STRING }
```

The extensions are defined in ITU-T X.509 [54].

See 12.5.9, "Extensions" on page 313.

## 12.11.2 Standard certificate extensions

See table 124, "Profile for standard certificate extensions" on page 313.

### 12.11.2.1 Authority key identifier

This extension is used where an issuer has multiple signing keys. It provides a means of finding the public key that can be used to check the signature of the certificate.

The identification can be based on either the keyIdentifier or the on the pair (authorityCertIssuer, AuthorityCertSerialNumber). It is recommended to use the pair (authorityCertIssuer, AuthorityCertSerialNumber) instead of the keyIdentifier because there is no common agreement on the way to compute a unique KeyIdentifier.

```
AuthorityKeyIdentifier ::= SEQUENCE {
    keyIdentifier          [0] KeyIdentifier          OPTIONAL,
    authorityCertIssuer    [1] GeneralNames          OPTIONAL,
    authorityCertSerialNumber [2] CertificateSerialNumber OPTIONAL }
```

### 12.11.2.2 Subject key identifier

This extension provides of identifying certificates that contain a particular public key.

**SubjectKeyIdentifier** ::= KeyIdentifier

### 12.11.2.3 Key usage

The key usage extension defines the purpose of the key contained in the certificate.

```
keyUsage ::= BIT STRING {
    digitalSignature      (0),
    nonRepudiation        (1),
    keyEncipherment       (2),
    dataEncipherment      (3),
    keyAgreement          (4),
    keyCertSign           (5),
    cRLSign               (6),
    encipherOnly          (7),
    decipherOnly          (8)
}
```

### 12.11.2.4 Private key usage period

This field is used to defined a period of validity for the private key which is different from the period of validity of the certificate. This is only meaningful for digital signature keys.

```
privateKeyUsagePeriod EXTENSION ::= {
    SYNTAX      PrivateKeyUsagePeriod
```

```
IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-privateKeyUsagePeriod }
```

```
PrivateKeyUsagePeriod ::= SEQUENCE {
  notBefore      [0] GeneralizedTime OPTIONAL,
  notAfter       [1] GeneralizedTime OPTIONAL }
( WITH COMPONENTS {..., notBefore PRESENT} |
  WITH COMPONENTS {..., notAfter PRESENT} )
```

### 12.11.2.5 Certificate policies

This field is used to define a policy defining the purpose for which the certificate may be used.

Applications may have a list of specific policies they will accept, the certificate validation software must be able to compare the policy OIDs found in the certificate to that list.

```
certificatePolicies EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      CertificatePoliciesSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-certificatePolicies }
```

```
CertificatePoliciesSyntax ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF PolicyInformation
```

```
PolicyInformation ::= SEQUENCE {
  policyIdentifier  CertPolicyId,
  policyQualifiers  SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF
                    PolicyQualifierInfo OPTIONAL }
```

```
CertPolicyId ::= OBJECT IDENTIFIER
```

```
PolicyQualifierInfo ::= SEQUENCE {
  policyQualifierId  CERT-POLICY-QUALIFIER.&id
                    ({SupportedPolicyQualifiers}),
  qualifier          CERT-POLICY-QUALIFIER.&Qualifier
                    ({SupportedPolicyQualifiers}{@policyQualifierId})
                    OPTIONAL }
```

```
SupportedPolicyQualifiers CERT-POLICY-QUALIFIER ::= { ... }
```

### 12.11.2.6 Policy mappings

This field is used to define equivalence between policies from different CA's policy Domain.

```
policyMappings EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      PolicyMappingsSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-policyMappings }
```

```
PolicyMappingsSyntax ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF SEQUENCE {
  issuerDomainPolicy  CertPolicyId,
  subjectDomainPolicy CertPolicyId }
```

### 12.11.2.7 Subject Alternative Name

This field is used to define additional identities for the subject name of the certificate (such as an internet email address).

```
subjectAltName EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      GeneralNames
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-subjectAltName }
```

```
GeneralNames ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF GeneralName
```

```
GeneralName ::= CHOICE {
  otherName          [0] INSTANCE OF OTHER-NAME,
  rfc822Name         [1] IA5String,
  dNSName            [2] IA5String,
  x400Address        [3] ORAddress,
  directoryName      [4] Name,
  ediPartyName       [5] EDIPartyName,
  uniformResourceIdentifier [6] IA5String,
  iPAddress          [7] OCTET STRING,
```

```
registeredID [8] OBJECT IDENTIFIER }
```

### 12.11.2.8 Issuer Alternative Name

This field is similar to the previous one for the issuer identity.

```
issuerAltName EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      GeneralNames
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-issuerAltName }
```

### 12.11.2.9 Subject Directory attributes

This field is used to carry optional directory attributes associated with the subject.

```
subjectDirectoryAttributes EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      AttributesSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-subjectDirectoryAttributes }
```

```
AttributesSyntax ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF Attribute
```

### 12.11.2.10 Basic Constraints

This field indicates if the subject of the certificate is a certification authority and how deep a certification path may exist through that path.

This extension shall appear in every CA Certificates. It will be used to prevent unauthorised entities to act as a CA.

```
basicConstraints EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      BasicConstraintsSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-basicConstraints }
```

```
BasicConstraintsSyntax ::= SEQUENCE {
  ca                BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  pathLenConstraint INTEGER (0..MAX) OPTIONAL }
```

### 12.11.2.11 Name Constraints

This field indicates a namespace within which all subject names in subsequent certificates in a certification path shall be located.

```
nameConstraints EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      NameConstraintsSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-nameConstraints }
```

```
NameConstraintsSyntax ::= SEQUENCE {
  permittedSubtrees [0] GeneralSubtrees OPTIONAL,
  excludedSubtrees  [1] GeneralSubtrees OPTIONAL }
```

```
GeneralSubtrees ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF GeneralSubtree
```

```
GeneralSubtree ::= SEQUENCE {
  base          GeneralName,
  minimum       [0] BaseDistance DEFAULT 0,
  maximum       [1] BaseDistance OPTIONAL }
```

```
BaseDistance ::= INTEGER (0..MAX)
```

### 12.11.2.12 Policy Constraints

This field is only used in CA's certificate (i.e. not in end entity certificate). It is used to prohibit policy mapping or to require that each certificate in a path contain an acceptable policy identifier.

```
policyConstraints EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      PolicyConstraintsSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-policyConstraints }
```

```
PolicyConstraintsSyntax ::= SEQUENCE {
  requireExplicitPolicy [0] SkipCerts OPTIONAL,
  inhibitPolicyMapping  [1] SkipCerts OPTIONAL }
```

```
SkipCerts ::= INTEGER (0..MAX)
```

### 12.11.2.13 Extended key usage field

This field is an extensions of the previous field keyUsage. It is used to define more purposes for which the certified public key may be used.

```
extKeyUsage EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF KeyPurposeId
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-extKeyUsage }
```

```
KeyPurposeId ::= OBJECT IDENTIFIER
```

### 12.11.2.14 CRL Distribution points

This field defines how CRL (Certificate revocation list) information can be obtained.

```
cRLDistributionPoints EXTENSION ::= {
  SYNTAX      CRLDistPointsSyntax
  IDENTIFIED BY id-ce-cRLDistributionPoints }
```

```
CRLDistPointsSyntax ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF DistributionPoint
```

```
DistributionPoint ::= SEQUENCE {
  distributionPoint [0] DistributionPointName OPTIONAL,
  reasons           [1] ReasonFlags OPTIONAL,
  cRLIssuer         [2] GeneralNames OPTIONAL }
```

```
DistributionPointName ::= CHOICE {
  fullName           [0] GeneralNames,
  nameRelativeToCRLIssuer [1] RelativeDistinguishedName }
```

```
ReasonFlags ::= BIT STRING {
  unused           (0),
  keyCompromise   (1),
  cACompromise    (2),
  affiliationChanged (3),
  superseded      (4),
  cessationOfOperation (5),
  certificateHold  (6) }
```

## 12.12 Platform minima

NOTE: At the time of writing, the minima described in this section have not been tested in real operations. It is believed possible that these minima may need to be revised upwards in future versions of this specification.

MHP platform hardware is required to support the following minimum sizes to support the MHP security model:

- A value of 2 for N in 12.9.2.2, "Security of RCMM" on page 337
- A minimum depth of 5 levels in the certificate chain
- A minimum of 5 CRLs
- A minimum of 10 entries per CRL
- A minimum of 3 root certificates (regardless of the number of underlying root certificate authorities).
- A minimum of 3 root certificates for testing (see 12.9.3, "Test certificates" on page 339).

## 12.13 Plug-ins

The security aspects for the plug-in are the same as for any other DVB-J application. The security aspects of the delegated application cannot exceed the permissions available to the plug-in.

So, the plug-in will normally request the set of permissions required to support a delegated application. For a delegated application that follows the security model defined in this specification (e.g. a DVB-HTML application), the plug-in shall implement a security system to grant a sub-set of these permissions to the delegated application (see annex AF, "(normative): Plug-in APIs" on page 969). For a delegated application whose security model does not follow this specification, the plug-in can optionally implement a private security system to manage a sub-set of these permissions to the delegated application.

## 12.14 Applications loaded from an interaction channel

Same as for applications delivered over the broadcast channel except where specified otherwise below.

### 12.14.1 Permission for application loading from the return channel

The following policy covers loading of applications over the interaction channel. It includes both initial loading to start and application and dynamic loading during the lifetime of an application. It covers both the code of an application and supporting data however loaded.

- The user enters a locator specifying the location of the AIT file into the navigator:

In this case the user implicitly gives permission for the connection to retrieve the AIT when they supply the locator.

Applications launched by this mechanism inherit limited rights to use the return channel. Where the protocol ID is "3" the application gets rights to access the files specified by the transport protocol descriptor.

Additional permissions can be granted by the normal permissions mechanism.

- A service has a broadcast AIT and the transport protocol for the application is type "3" so ALL files are provided by the interaction channel.

If the application launch is initiated by another application using the listing and launching API and it is necessary to open the interaction channel before the permissions of the launched application are evident then the permissions of the launching application are considered.

If the application launch is initiated from service selection (autostart application on a service) then the behaviour depends on policy in the MHP terminal.

NOTE: This behaviour may, for example, be controlled by a terminal user preference.

- A service has a broadcast AIT but a proportion of the files forming the application are provided via the interaction channel.

If the permission request file and the authentication infrastructure are available without opening the interaction channel then these can be used to determine if opening the interaction channel is suitably authorised.

- An application selects a service using a locator pointing to an AIT file delivered over the return channel to perform service selection

In this case the service selection succeeds only if the application has permission to do a service selection and the appropriate return channel access permission, as described in section 12.6.2.12.2, "Signed applications" on page 326.

If the permission request file is not available then, as above, the behaviour depends on policy in the MHP terminal.

## 12.15 Stored applications

Applications can be authenticated as describe in MHP 1.0.

Application authentication is modelled in two phases:

- a) At time of application storage all of the certificates authenticating the application must be valid (unexpired and unrevoked) for the application to be considered authenticated.
- b) At the time of application retrieval from storage if any certificate authenticating the application has been revoked then the application will be treated as failing authentication.

## **12.16 Inner applications and content embedded within other applications**

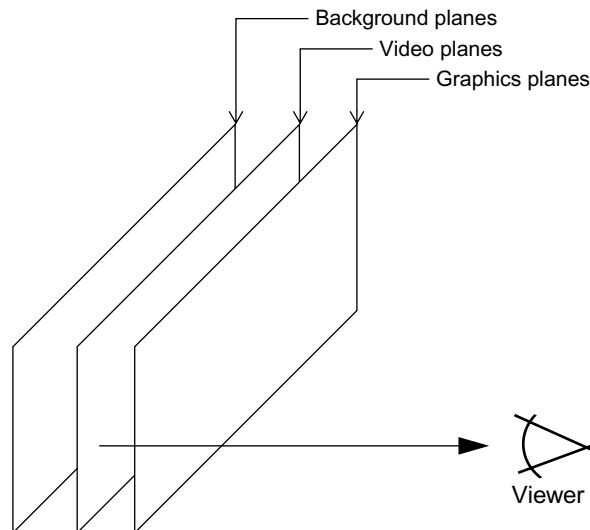
Inner applications shall inherit the set of permissions granted to the application in which they are embedded.

## 13 Graphics reference model

### 13.1 Introduction

The MHP provides tools to control the positioning of: video on an output device, interface components such as buttons and lists, as well as raw graphical primitives.

Each screen connected to an MHP has three planes which are, from back to front, a background plane, a video plane and a graphics plane.



**Figure 21 : Illustration of the different types of display planes**

The behaviour of the subtitle plane varies between implementations. API facilities are provided to allow applications to make the behaviour predictable. See [13.5, "Subtitles" on page 369](#).

An application is provided with a contiguous rectangular region of the graphics plane in which it can draw (see [13.3.3, "HAVi devices and AWT components" on page 360](#)). An application can place video, interface elements and graphics inside its rectangle on the graphic plane.

An application can also control video outside of the AWT hierarchy on the video plane, and place still images, video drips or solid colour in the background plane.

The MHP specification enables terminals to support multiple applications at any one time, each of which can have a sub area of the screen to which it can draw. The specification enables the areas to overlap. However, the minimum required support for these features is profile specific. See annex G, "[\(normative\): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515](#).

**NOTE** :The mapping between planes in this reference model and planes in the hardware used in an MHP terminal is implementation dependent. In particular, it is certainly allowed to use planes which the terminal hardware considers to be "video" as what MHP considers to be "background" for the purposes of displaying MPEG stills and video drips in what MHP considers to be the background.

#### 13.1.1 Interapplication interaction

If the presentations of different applications overlap, the areas obscured by other applications are clipped. Therefore where an application is translucent it will be blended with the video or background image behind it rather than being blended with another application.



## 13.2 General Issues

### 13.2.1 Coordinate Spaces

The MHP includes a number of coordinate systems for different purposes and includes the means to transform between these as needed:

- Input video space

This considers post upsampling MPEG pixels.

- Device space

Logical pixels in the various display devices. There may be different device spaces for the various device types (e.g. video and graphics).

- Normalised screen space

Normalised coordinates relative to the output (HScreen).

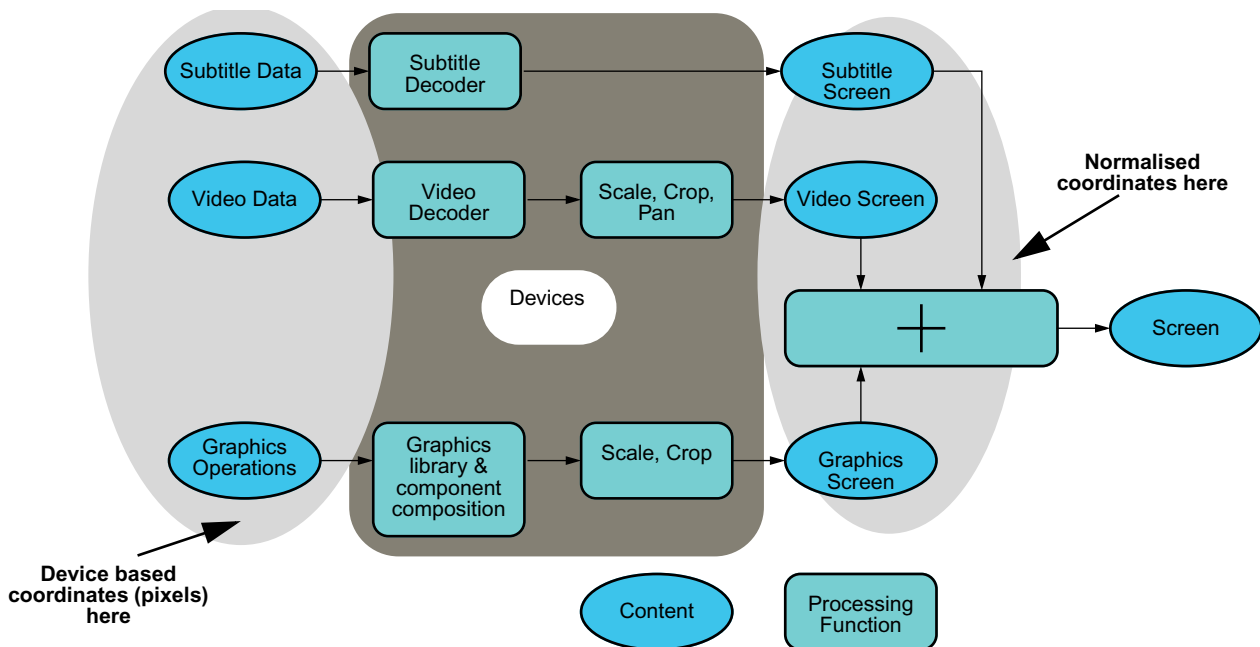


Figure 22 :

Various different interfaces provide access to different parts of the graphics and video systems using these coordinate spaces.

#### 13.2.1.1 Normalised screen space

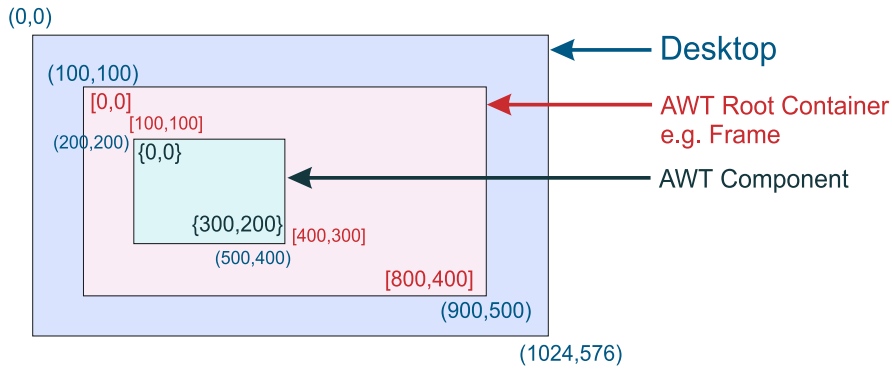
A normalised screen coordinate system supports references to positions and sizes in the video output from an MHP device without reference to any form of pixels.

This coordinate system describes the top left corner of the screen as  $\{0, 0\}$  and the bottom right corner of the screen as  $\{1, 1\}$ . This coordinate system is used in the positioning of graphics and video on the screen through a number of classes in the `org.havi.ui` package and the JMF control `org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl`.

The normalized coordinate system is given through the `HScreen`.

### 13.2.1.2 User space

The coordinate space for graphics used in java.awt is defined by applications through the creation of an `HGraphicsDevice`. The root container, an instance of the class `org.havi.ui.HScene` can be placed within the normalised coordinate system. The `HSceneTemplate` class allows applications to express requirements for their top level container. Instances of this class are used by `HSceneFactory` to return instances of an `HScene`.



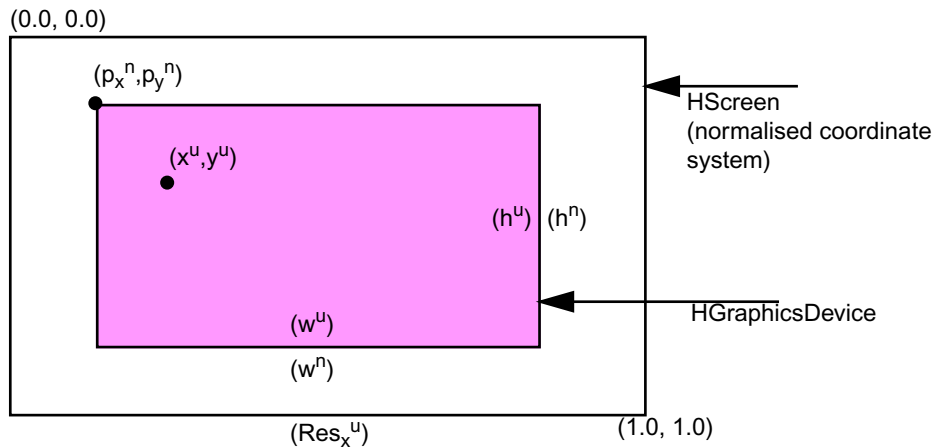
#### Coordinate Systems

- (x,y) coordinate system of the Desktop
- [x,y] coordinate system of the root container
- {x,y} coordinate system of the component

**Figure 23 : AWT Coordinate system in a computer environment**

Figure 23 shows the AWT coordinate system in a normal computer environment. In an MHP device the `HGraphicsDevice` can be thought of being the desktop and the `HScene` as being the AWT RootContainer. Thus an `HScene` is placed within the coordinate system of the `HGraphicsDevice`. An `HScene` itself defines a new coordinate system which pixels are aligned to those of the `HGraphicsDevice` but the origin is translated (see figure 23).

The mapping between the user space and the normalised coordinate system is done given the size and location of the `HGraphicsDevice` in the normalised coordinate system and the resolution of the `HGraphicsDevice` in pixel.



**Figure 24 : Conversion between normalised and user coordinate systems**

$(x^n, y^n)$  = normalised coordinate system of `HScreen`

$(x^u, y^u)$  = coordinate system of the `HGraphicsDevice` in pixels

$x^{vu}$  = "virtual" user coordinate system in pixels relative to the `HScreen`

Assume the `HGraphicsDevice` has the origin of  $(p_x^n, p_y^n)$  with a dimension of  $(w^n, h^n)$  and has a pixel resolution of  $w^u \times h^u$  than the point  $(x^u, y^u)$  in normalised coordinates is given by

$$x^n = \frac{x^{vu}}{Res_x^{vu}} \quad y^n = \frac{y^{vu}}{Res_y^{vu}}$$

where

$$Res_x^{vu} = \frac{w^u}{w^n} \quad Res_y^{vu} = \frac{h^u}{h^n}$$

is the virtual resolution of the `HScreen` in (sub)pixel and

$$x^{vu} = p_x^{vu} + x^u \quad y^{vu} = p_y^{vu} + y^u$$

is the point  $(x, y)$  in the virtual coordinate space with

$$p_x^{vu} = p_x^n \cdot Res_x^{vu} \quad p_y^{vu} = p_y^n \cdot Res_y^{vu}$$

being the location of the `HGraphicsDevice` in the virtual coordinate system.

Given the Point  $(x^n, y^n)$  the point  $(x^u, y^u)$  is given by

$$x^u = \text{floor}[(x^n - p_x^n) \cdot Res_x^{vu} + 0.5]$$

and

$$y^u = \text{floor}[(y^n - p_y^n) \cdot Res_y^{vu} + 0.5]$$

Given a `HGraphicsDevice` which is full screen this simplifies to

$Res_x^{vu}=w^u$  and  $Res_y^{vu}=h^u$ ,  $x^{vu} = x^u$  and  $y^{vu}=y^u$  thus

$$x^n = \frac{x^u}{w^u} \quad y^n = \frac{y^u}{h^u}$$

and

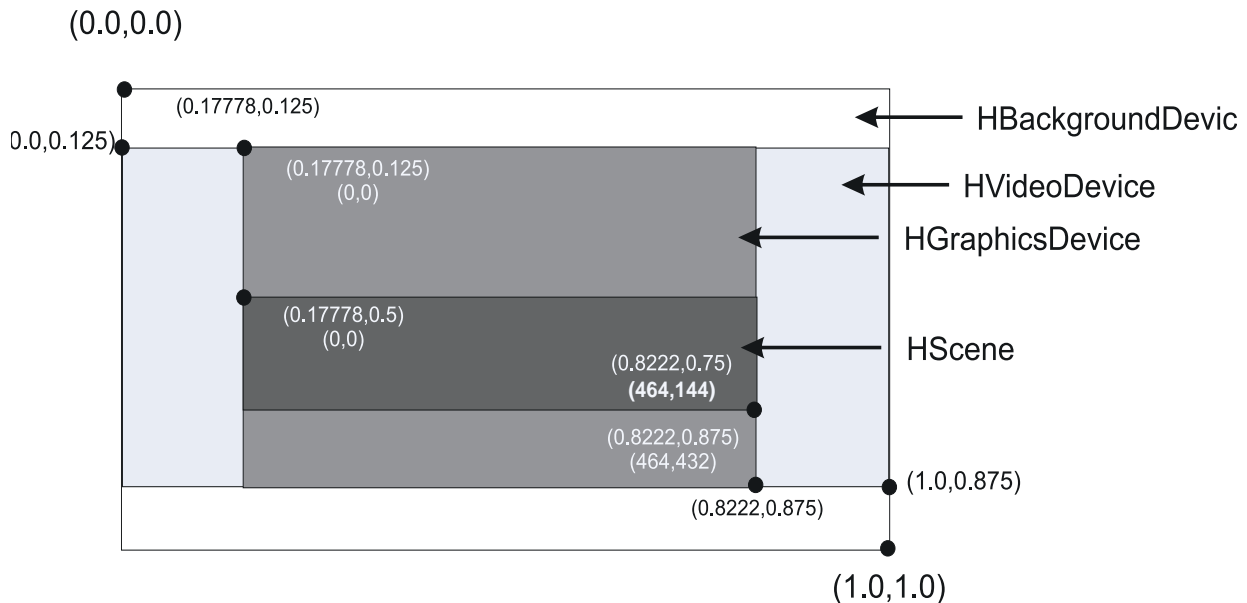
$$x^u = x^n \cdot w^u \quad y^u = y^n \cdot h^u$$

Within the above calculations precision equivalent to a float shall be used. Conversion to integer shall only be used when the result is a point in a pixel oriented co-ordinate space (e.g. user space).

The resolution of an `HGraphicsDevice` is specified using the constant `HScreenConfigTemplate.PIXEL_RESOLUTION` with a `Dimension` on the `setPreference(int, Object, int)` method.

The constants `HSceneTemplate.SCENE_PIXEL_LOCATION` and `HSceneTemplate.SCENE_PIXEL_DIMENSION` allows applications to define the position and size of an `HScene` in the coordinate system of the `HGraphicsDevice` (in pixels). The constants `HSceneTemplate.SCENE_SCREEN_LOCATION` and `HSceneTemplate.SCENE_SCREEN_DIMENSION` allows applications to define the position and size which the `HScene` should occupy on the screen in normalised coordinates.

The combination of these defines the transformation between graphics pixels and the video output from the MHP device concerned. Only a limited set of transformations are required to be supported.



**Figure 25 : Possible configuration of HAVi Devices**

Figure 25 shows a possible configuration of HAVi Devices. The HBackgroundDevice is configured to be full screen, the HVideoDevice to cover the area of (0.0, 0.125) to (1.0, 0.875).

When positioning video implementations may snap the video position to an adjacent line vertically (for example, to accommodate video and display field order) or an adjacent pixel horizontally (for example, to accommodate display chroma structure). The direction of "snapping" shall always be to minimise the error relative to the requested coordinate.

In figure 25 the HGraphicsDevice is configured to cover the area (0.17, 0.125) to (0.82, 0.875) with a pixel resolution of 464x432.

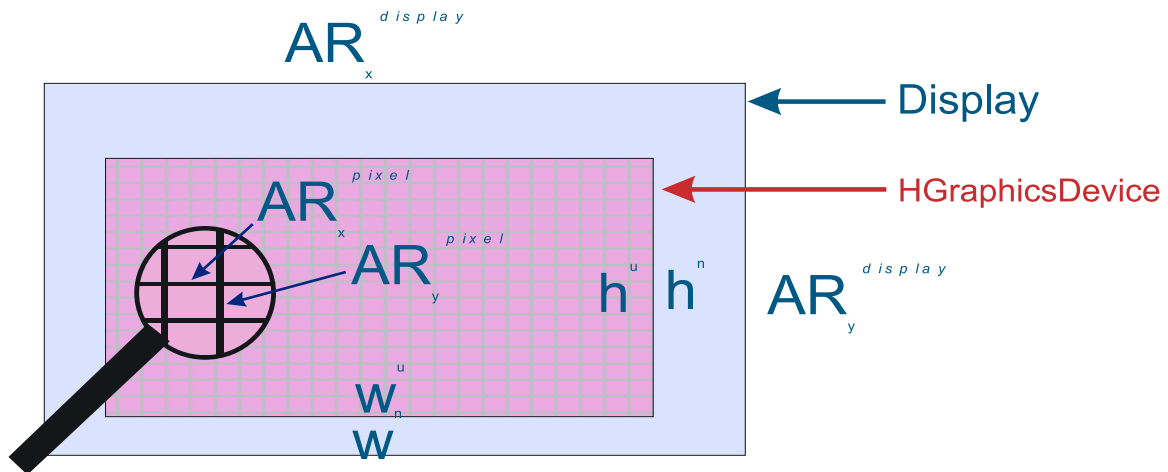
The HScene can be configured by setting the location of its origin and by defining its dimensions. The location of the HScenes origin can be specified by setting the preference HSceneTemplate.SCENE\_PIXEL\_LOCATION with a Point of (0,216) or setting the preference HSceneTemplate.SCENE\_SCREEN\_LOCATION with a HScreenPoint of (0.17,0.5). The dimensions can be configured by setting the preference HSceneTemplate.SCENE\_PIXEL\_DIMENSION with a Dimension of (464,144) or setting the preference HSceneTemplate.SCENE\_SCREEN\_DIMENSION with a HScreenDimension of (0.64,0.25).

In some implementations and/or configurations pixels in the HGraphicsDevice may not correspond to discrete physical pixels in the actual display device. For example, this may be the case when the HGraphicsDevice is emulated.

### 13.2.1.3 Pixel Aspect Ratio

A pixel orientated coordinate system does not say anything about the pixel aspect ratio. The pixel aspect ratio ( $AR_x^{pixel} / AR_y^{pixel}$ ) is defined by the aspect ratio of the display ( $AR_x^{display} / AR_y^{display}$ , 4:3 or 16:9), the area that is covered by the HGraphicsDevice ( $w^n, h^n$ ) and the pixel resolution of the HGraphicsDevice ( $w^u, h^u$ ). See figure 26

$$AR^{pixel} = \frac{AR_x^{pixel}}{AR_y^{pixel}} = \frac{AR_x^{display} \cdot w^n}{AR_y^{display} \cdot h^n} \cdot \frac{h^u}{w^u}$$



**Figure 26 : Calculating the Pixel Aspect Ratio**

Table 134 shows typical resolutions of a full screen HGraphicsDevice and the corresponding pixel aspect ratios for different display aspect ratios. The supported resolutions are defined in G, "(normative): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515.

**Table 134 : Typical Resolutions and their pixel aspect ratio (informative)**

|  | 4:3 Display        | 16:9 Display       |
|--|--------------------|--------------------|
| Resolution for full screen HGraphicsDevice   | Pixel Aspect Ratio | Pixel Aspect Ratio |
| 720x576 (note 1)   | 1150:1053          | 4600:3159          |
| 768x576  | 1:1                | 48:36              |
| 1024x576   | 36:48              | 1:1                |
| NOTE 1: Based on 702 nominally displayable pixels derived from ITU-R BT.470 [28] and ITU-R BT.601 [29]. This is approximate due to the tolerances defined. |                    |                    |

#### 13.2.1.4 Video space

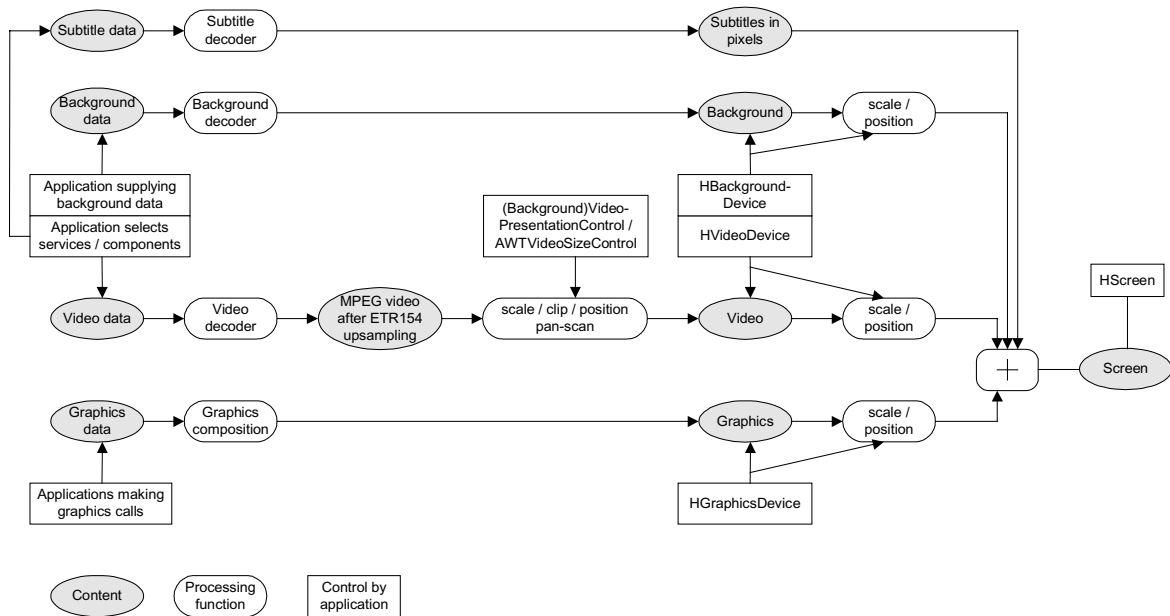
The coordinate space for video is that defined by the input video signal after any scaling required by the platform (e.g. that required by ETR154). Scaling and clipping of video can be achieved using the JMF control `org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl`. The JMF control `VideoFormatControl` allows applications to query the various transformations being performed on video as part of its decoding and presentation.

## 13.3 Graphics

### 13.3.1 Modelling of the MHP display stack composition

The following sections describes the theoretical model of the MHP display stack. Unfortunately, certain real world constraints may apply see section 13.6, "Approximations" on page 370. The "Graphics, Video and Subtitle pipeline" is illustrated in figure 27.

Figure 27 shows the conceptual model of the "graphical content" pipelines from an applications point of view. There are four sources of graphical content: subtitles, background, video and application graphics, and these four sources are mapped in a controllable way onto single screen. The figure shows the conceptual processing functions, the content stages, and application control points inside the content pipelines.



**Figure 27 : Graphics, Video and Subtitle pipeline**

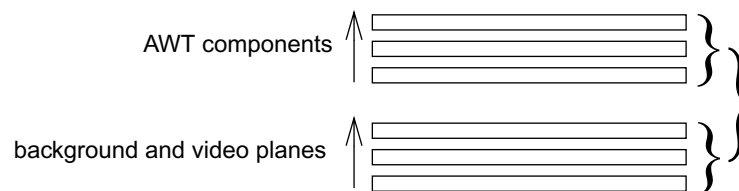
The figure shows that applications have full control over the source of the content that enters the different pipelines. Furthermore the application may control clipping, scaling and positioning of the content at different stages in the different pipelines. Of course an application can only apply operations that are supported by the underlying system.

The clipping and positioning of subtitles follows the video. Behaviour of subtitles when video is scaled is platform dependent.

From the application author's point of view the behaviour of the graphics composition process has 3 elements:

- The graphics elements are composed following the traditional graphics model using Porter-Duff rules (see [Porter-Duff \[D\]](#)). The default rule used is the SRC\_OVER rule.
- The background and video planes are composed using the Porter-Duff rule SRC\_OVER (Note that only alpha of 0 and 1 is used in the Video planes).
- The results are composed together using the SRC\_OVER rule (with the graphics results as the source and the results of the background / video composition as the destination).

This is illustrated in figure 28.



**Figure 28 : Overview of AWT / HAVi plane composition**

The HAVi stack has a single full screen `HBackgroundDevice` at the back. In front of this are an ordered set of zero or more `HVideoDevices`. Each of the video devices can occupy the full screen area or part of it. Any area that is not occupied behaves as transparent. The occupied areas (video pixels) are considered to be opaque and will be obscured by any video devices in front of them. Non active video devices are invisible.

Systems that support only a single video device that can display full screen (and possibly other partial screen video devices) should report the full screen capable device as the first (back most) of the video devices.

The composition rules in each group follow the traditional "painter's" algorithm i.e. composing the layers from back to front.

The Xlet AWT Root Component is transparent (as shown in figure 29) so by default the result of the HAVi video and background device composition is the background to any application graphics.

Video already running in the `HVideoDevice` will keep on playing when an application starts.

The stack is illustrated in figure 29.

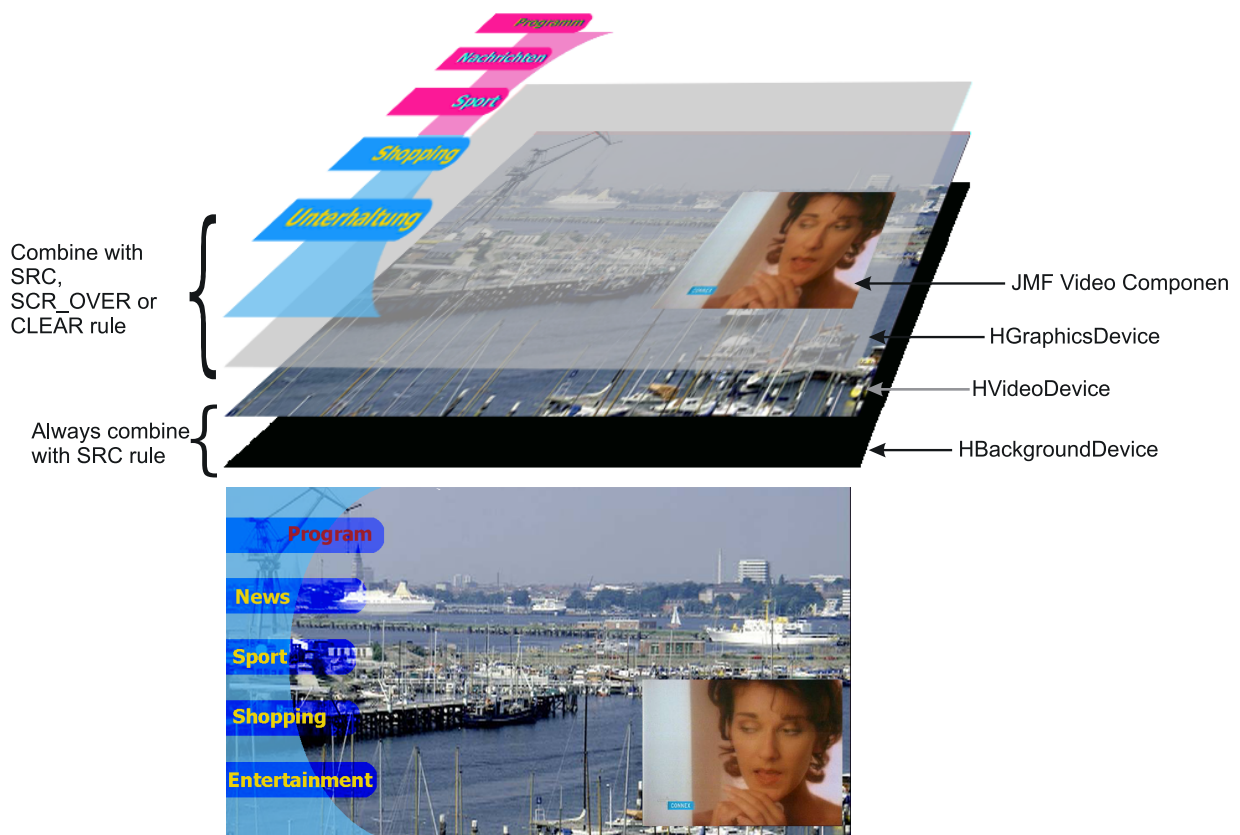


Figure 29 : The MHP display stack illustrated

### 13.3.2 AWT Reference Model in the MHP

In the AWT all graphics rendering of the lightweight components is done via the `java.awt.Graphics` class. When a component needs to be redrawn it issues a repaint command which gets passed from component to component from top to bottom until a heavyweight component is reached. Although there are no heavyweight components in the MHP the `HScene` can be thought of being similar to a heavyweight component. Thus in MHP devices the repaint command gets passed until it reaches the root container - the `HScene`. The repaint method of the `HScene` causes a call to this component's `update` method as soon as possible. Before calling the `paint` method of a child the origin gets translated to the coordinate system of the child and the graphics object passed is clipped to the size of the child (see figure 30)

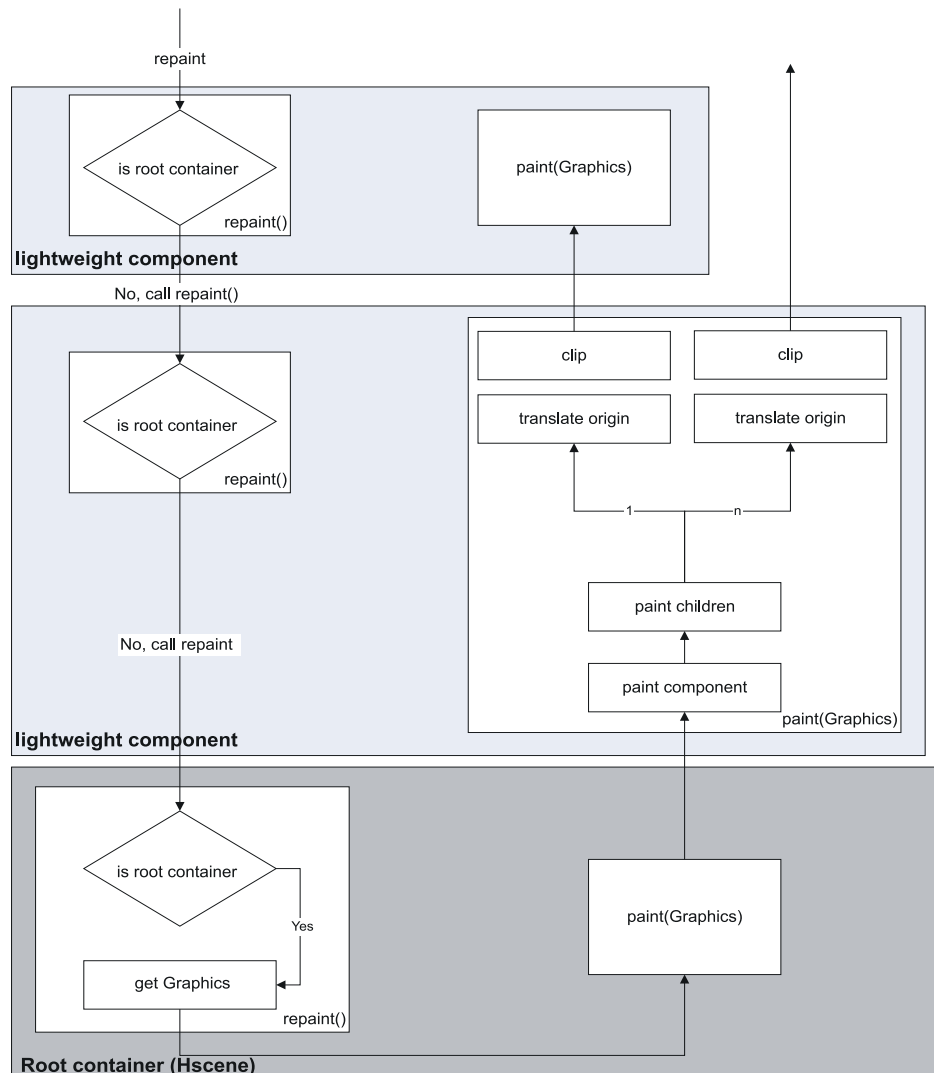


Figure 30 : Repaint model in the MHP

### 13.3.3 HAVi devices and AWT components

The top level user interface container for DVB-J applications is represented by the `org.havi.ui.HScene` class. DVB-J applications may obtain an instance of this class from an instance of `org.havi.ui.HSceneFactory`. The `HSceneFactory` class provides a number of methods which may be used to obtain an `HScene` depending on the specific requirements of the DVB-J application. `HScene` is conceptually equivalent to `java.awt.Window` or `java.awt.Frame` however it models the differing graphical environment found in many digital TV receivers. In this environment, there are typically significant constraints on what sizes and positions of top level containers may be possible.

One means for obtaining an `HScene` from an `HSceneFactory` is to populate an `HSceneTemplate` with a set of constraints and then request an `HScene` from the `getBestScene()` method which meets these constraints. Applications wishing to obtain a full screen sized `HScene` may use the `getFullScreenScene()` method specifying a particular graphics device on which the full screen scene should be presented.



MHP terminals are allowed to support only non overlapping HScenes. In implementations not supporting overlapping HScenes the following behaviour shall be implemented:

- Overlapping at creation or size change through HSceneFactory:  
returns a null reference if "REQUIRED" is used. Returns best effort if "PREFERRED" is used.
- Overlapping later when sizes change by awt:  
Size does not change. Fails silently.

The MHP specification provides a general model for video output devices using the model found in the HAVi specification. A final output video signal is expressed through the `org.havi.ui.HScreen` class and is the result of adding a number of different video components.

- The output of one or more graphics decoders
- The output of one or more video decoders
- The output of any special decoders, e.g. a background

An abstraction of each of these decoders is represented by an instance of a class inheriting from `HScreenDevice` - `HGraphicsDevice`, `HVideoDevice` and `HBackgroundDevice` respectively. Each of these can potentially exist in a range of configurations which are exposed by instances of classes inheriting from `HScreenConfiguration` - `HGraphicsConfiguration`, `HVideoConfiguration` and `HBackgroundConfiguration` respectively. Where devices support multiple configurations, applications may construct and populate templates to define criteria to select between configurations. These templates are classes inheriting from `HScreenConfigTemplate`.

As well as the general features, some of these sub-classes provide support for specific features of the devices concerned. `HGraphicsConfiguration` supports loading of images and listing of fonts specific to that configuration. It also support conversion between various coordinate systems. `HVideoDevice` provides access to the source of the video currently being decoded (a `Locator`) and provides access to the decoder object for the video currently being decoded (a `javax.media.Player`). The `HBackgroundClass` provides a means to support MPEG I-frames through the `HStillImageBackgroundConfiguration` class.

The method `HScreen.getCoherentScreenConfigurations ( HScreenConfigTemplate[] configs )` allows applications to express a common set of constraints for video, graphics and backgrounds and get back a coherent answer. In `HGraphicsConfigTemplate`, the constant `VIDEO_MIXING` allows applications to request configurations where graphics is super-imposed above video but without any requirement for pixels to be aligned. In `HScreenConfigTemplate`, there are constants to allow applications to ask for configurations as follows:-

- `VIDEO_GRAPHICS_PIXEL_ALIGNED` - video & graphics pixels are the same size and aligned
- `ZERO_VIDEO_IMPACT` - a graphics configuration must not change the existing video configuration
- `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT` - a video configuration must not change the existing graphics configuration

### 13.3.3.1 Video and graphics pixel aligned

The VIDEO\_GRAPHICS\_PIXEL\_ALIGNED relationship between the pixels in the HGraphicsDevice and the pixels in the HVideoDevice is shown in figure 31. Note that the relationship applies to the pixels in HVideoDevice after "Decoder Format Conversion" processing, and the pixels in HGraphicsDevice. As a result of this relationship the following constraint holds for the configurations of HGraphicsDevice and HVideoDevice that have aligned video and graphics pixels:

- the pixel aspect ratio of the pixels in both devices is equal.

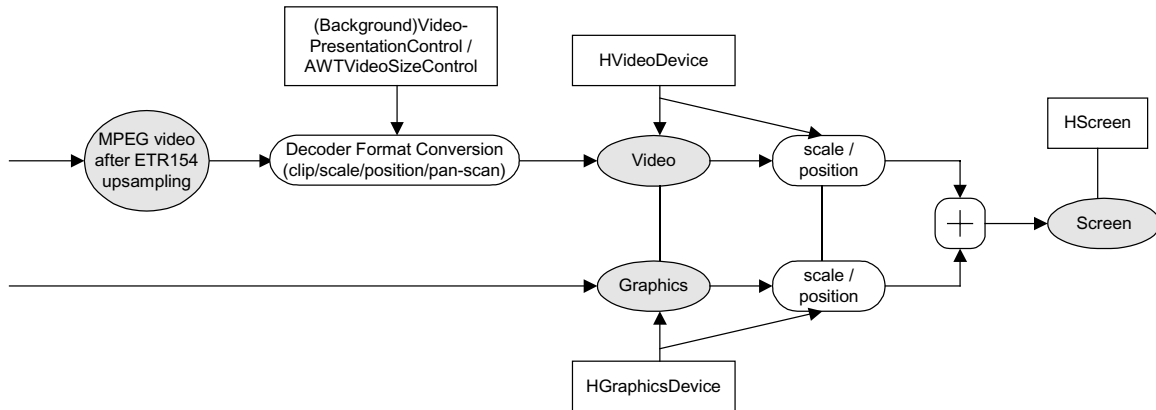


Figure 31 : Video and graphics pixel impact

### 13.3.3.2 Zero graphics impact

Constants ZERO\_GRAPHICS\_IMPACT and ZERO\_VIDEO\_IMPACT can be used by applications to prevent changes to the HGraphicsDevice or the HVideoDevice respectively, in the case that changes are not intended. In general a change of the configuration of the HGraphicsDevice may lead to an automatic change of the configuration of, for example, the HVideoDevice (if the application is authorised to make this change), because restricted systems may not be able to deal with the two different configurations simultaneously. Therefore an application must specify ZERO\_GRAPHICS\_IMPACT or ZERO\_VIDEO\_IMPACT in the configuration template if it does not want to change the configuration of another device.

## 13.3.4 Composition

### 13.3.4.1 AWT paint rule

The normal AWT paint rules shall be followed. That is the root container (the HScene) is painted and then its components are painted recursively.

The observed *behaviour* shall be such that of each component drawing directly into the root component. Any use of temporary storage or double buffering shall not affect the final result of the AWT composition or its subsequent composition with the result of the video composition.

The process is shown in Figure 32. The numbers in the arrows indicate the chronological order of the painting (note the root container is painted first). If a container has multiple components they get painted in the order N, N-1, ..., 0 where N indicates the order components are added to the parent container. (See Documentation on `java.awt.Container` in JAE 1.1.8 API [31]).

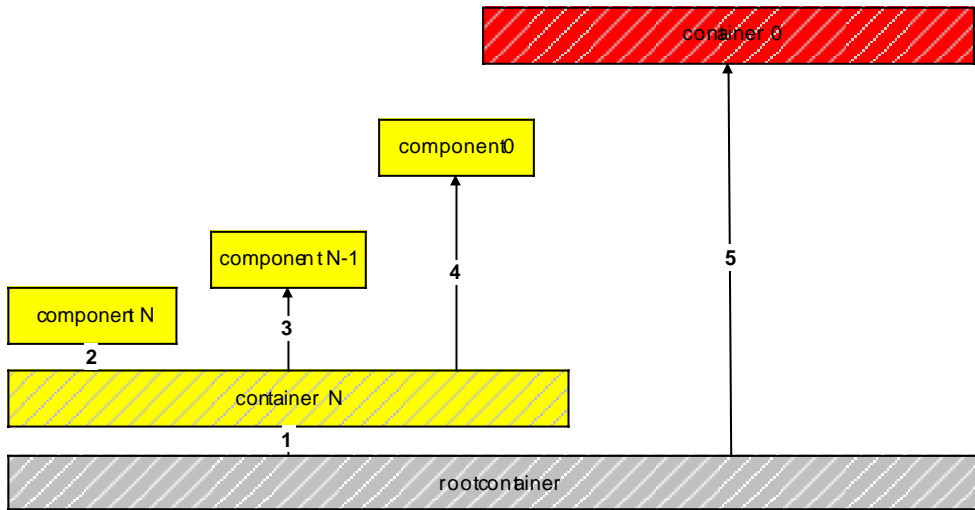


Figure 32 : Chronological order of painting

### 13.3.5 Composition Rules

#### 13.3.5.1 Components generally

By setting an appropriate `DVBAAlphaComposite` rule on a `DVBGraphics` and using translucent colours blending may be achieved. By repeated placement of components complex scenes can be described. In figure 33 the background picture (of the harbour) is representative of the video plane. The translucent grey rectangle is drawn into a transparent off-screen buffer using the SRC rule. The red circle is then drawn into this off-screen buffer using one of the 8 most common Porter-Duff operations. When the AWT rendering in the off-screen buffer is complete it is composited with the video using the SRC\_OVER rule.



Figure 33 : Summary of the Porter-Duff rules

### 13.3.6 Extensions to the AWT graphics capabilities

For graphics the MHP specification mainly uses AWT facilities defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#). However, certain extensions are made.

In order to allow compositing in the MHP the graphics capabilities of [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) have been extended by providing the `org.dvb.ui` package.

The package consist of the classes `DVBGraphics`, `DVBAlphaComposite`, `DVBBufferedImage`, `DVBColor` and one `Exception`. See [U, "\(normative\): Extended graphics APIs" on page 847](#).

#### 13.3.6.1 Graphics Objects in the MHP

The class `org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics` extends the normal `java.awt.Graphics` class by adding support for alpha compositing.

In the MHP each platform-created graphics object shall be an instance of `org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics`.

`DVBGraphics` and `DVBAlphaComposite` has a principle support of 8 different Porter-Duff compositing rules but not all rules have to be supported for all `DVBGraphics` Objects.

Different `DVBGraphics` Object could support different compositing rules. E.g. a `DVBGraphics` Object created using a `DVBBufferedImage` with an image type of `DVBBufferedImage.TYPE_ADVANCED` supports all 8 specified Porter-Duff rules, `TYPE_BASIC` supports only `SRC`, `CLEAR`, `SRC_OVER`. Application can query the available compositing rules using `DVBGraphics.getAvailableCompositingRules()`. When setting an unsupported compositing rule a `org.dvb.ui.UnsupportedDrawingOperationException` will be thrown. All images whose `getGraphics` method returns a non-null object shall support alpha.

The supported compositing rules are defined in [G, "\(normative\): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515](#).

The default compositing rule used by all graphics objects is `SRC_OVER`.

#### 13.3.6.2 Buffered Image

The class `DVBBufferedImage` in the package `org.dvb.ui` adds the support for an accessible, transparent `Image` which can be used e.g. for off screen buffers. Two different platform dependent sample models are supported by `DVBBufferedImage`. When doing compositing in the `TYPE_BASE` sample model approximations may be applied (using `SRC` instead of `SRC_OVER`, see figure 41 or by approximating the alpha, see [G, "\(normative\): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515](#)) while in the `TYPE_ADVANCED` sample model the compositing rules set by the program will be used.

`TYPE_ADVANCED` is always a direct colour model while `TYPE_BASE` can be a `CLUT` based colour model.

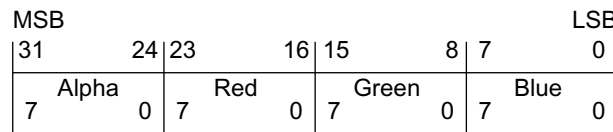
#### 13.3.6.3 DVBColor

Note The general philosophy of this class has been to imitate the features of `JDK 1.2` dealing with colour.

Unless explicitly specified otherwise, the internal implementation of the platform (e.g. `java.awt`) shall use the `org.dvb.ui.DVBColor` class instead of the `java.awt.Color` where technically possible (e.g. not the constructor for `java.awt.Color`). The class signatures shall not change. For example, where a method is specified to return `java.awt.Color` it shall return an instance of `org.dvb.ui.DVBColor`.

### 13.3.6.3.1 Modified packed colour representation

The most significant byte of the integer representation of an RGB colour is defined to hold an alpha value as is illustrated in figure 34. This data type is used in various of the constructors and methods described in the API documentation. It is referred to in the API documentation as `TYPE_INT_ARGB`.



**Figure 34 : MHP colour format (`TYPE_INT_ARGB`)**

## 13.3.7 14:9 Aspect Ratio Support

As well as the real display aspect ratios of 4:3 and 16:9, MHP defines a 14:9 aspect ratio. When this is in effect, all text will be subject to moderate aspect ratio distortion. However, broadcasters will be able to predict text flow without having to author specifically for each display type.

All `HGraphicsDevices` must be `HEmulatedGraphicsDevices` capable of emulating a 14:9 aspect ratio on their actual aspect ratio at the time.

**NOTE:** Applications can still set the configuration of an `HEmulatedGraphicsDevice` to an `HGraphicsConfiguration` and have this be supported without emulation.

Where the current configuration of an `HEmulatedGraphicsDevice` has a 14:9 aspect ratio and the device is not reserved by any MHP application, the MHP terminal shall automatically maintain this 14:9 aspect ratio if the real underlying aspect ratio changes between 4:3 and 16:9 or vice-versa.

**NOTE:** The `HGraphicsConfiguration` observed by an application when it starts running may be unpredictable since there may be an already running MHP application which has reserved the `HGraphicsDevice` and set the `HGraphicsConfiguration`.

## 13.4 Video

### 13.4.1 Component-based players and background players

Video is received by the MHP as an MPEG sequence of compressed frames, each of which contains a large number of picture elements (pels) arranged in rows and columns. The MHP decodes the MPEG stream to a presented stream which may be placed either in the video plane, or in a component in the graphics plane.

These two different ways of presenting video result in having two different kinds of JMF players, a background JMF player and a component-based JMF player.

A component-based JMF player plays video inside an AWT component, and the video inside that component is positioned and scaled by positioning and resizing the component. The video is always scaled to the full size of the component. Support for component-based players is not mandatory in all profiles.

Support for background players is mandatory for broadcast streaming formats (see 7.2, "[Broadcast streaming formats](#)" on page 70).

Background JMF players play video in the video plane, outside and independent of any AWT component hierarchy.

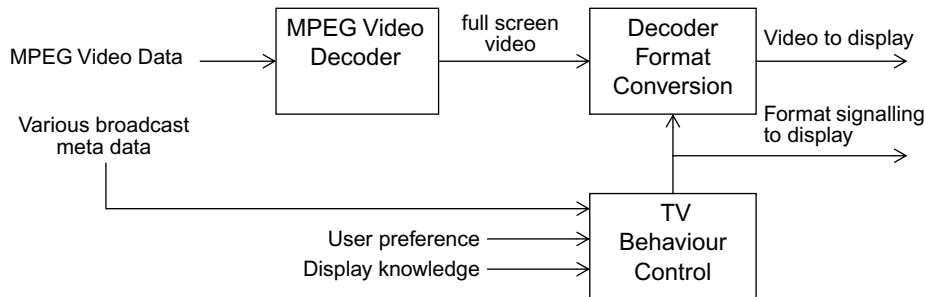
When a component-based player is stopped, the last displayed frame shall continue to be displayed until the underlying video decoder resource is re-used. The behaviour when the underlying video decoder resource is re-used is implementation dependent.

When a background player is in the realized state, the video plane concerned shall become transparent to expose what is behind it such as background plane(s). See figure 21, "[Illustration of the different types of display planes](#)" on page 352.

## 13.4.2 Modelling MPEG decoding and presentation pipeline

Figure 35 illustrates the underlying format conversion control process in a [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#) compliant SD digital receiver. In this model the video decoder produces "full-screen" video from the MPEG data (i.e. the decoder resolves any sub-sampling in the MPEG broadcast). Subsequent "Decoder Format Conversion" adapts this for the display device taking account of:

- broadcast meta data (aspect ratio, pan/scan and active format description)
- display knowledge (4:3 or 16:9, and resolution)
- user preferences (e.g. display wide screen in a letterbox)



**Figure 35 : Format control in TV mode**

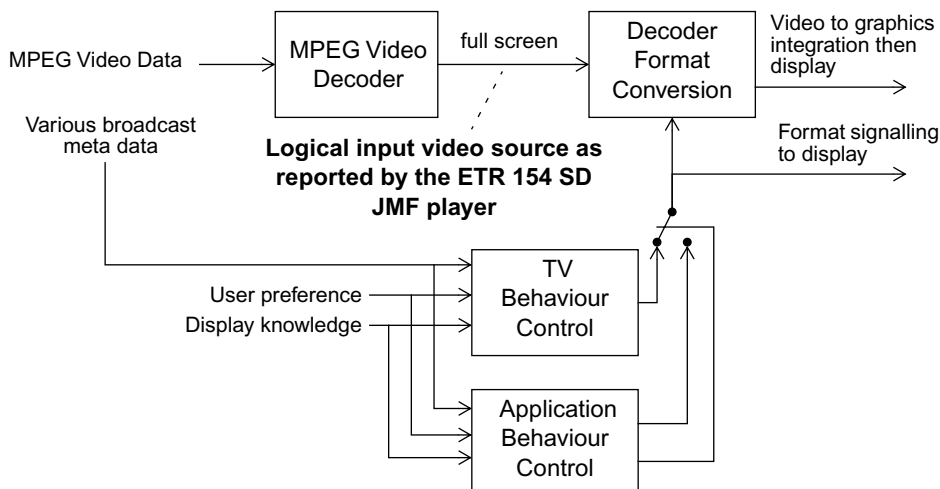
If appropriate, the video that is sent to the display is accompanied by the proper WSS or SCART signalling to indicate the format of the video that is being sent.

Note that the display device may do its own Decoder Format Conversion on top of the Decoder Format Conversion that the MHP device does. This is beyond the control of the MHP device.

The JMF players in this version of the MHP specification are "DVB ETR 154 Standard Definition" players and so act as if they are taking the full screen output of the MPEG Video Decoder as their logical input video source, as is illustrated in figure 36. In addition, there are two alternative sources of control for the "Decoder Format Conversion" process:

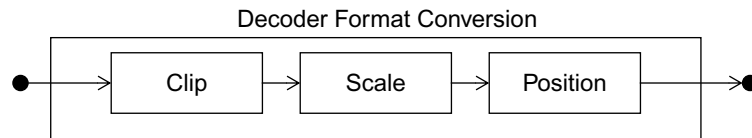
- Conventional TV format control behaviour (as in figure 35)
- Application format control behaviour

The selection between these behaviours is under the control of the application. Before and after the existence of an application the behaviour is that for a conventional TV. During application execution the default behaviour of the JMF player's decoder format conversion shall be the conventional TV behaviour.



**Figure 36 : Format control in the presence of a JMF player**

The Decoder Format Conversion consists of three steps that are performed on the full screen input video, which may have been up-sampled by the MPEG video decoder to become full screen. As illustrated in Figure 37, these steps are clipping, scaling and positioning.



**Figure 37 : Reference model for Decoder Format Conversion**

An application can query the implemented capabilities of each step of the Decoder Format Conversion using the `org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl` ("VideoPresentationControl" on page 693). For instance, it can query the supported scaling factors.

An application can also set up the Decoder Format Conversion steps atomically by using an `org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation` object ("VideoTransformation" on page 698) that encapsulates the clipping, scaling, and positioning parameters. An application can get a number of pre-defined video transformations that correspond with standard Decoder Format Conversions like 16:9 letterboxing in a 4:3 display. It can either use these video transformations directly to set the Decoder Format Conversion, or it can change one or more parameters of the transformation before setting it. The API also offers support for querying the current video transformation.

### 13.4.3 Coordinate Spaces

The input to the Decoder Format Conversion block is always full screen video. If necessary, the MPEG video decoder block performs up-sampling as required by ETSI TR 101 154 [9] to get full screen video.

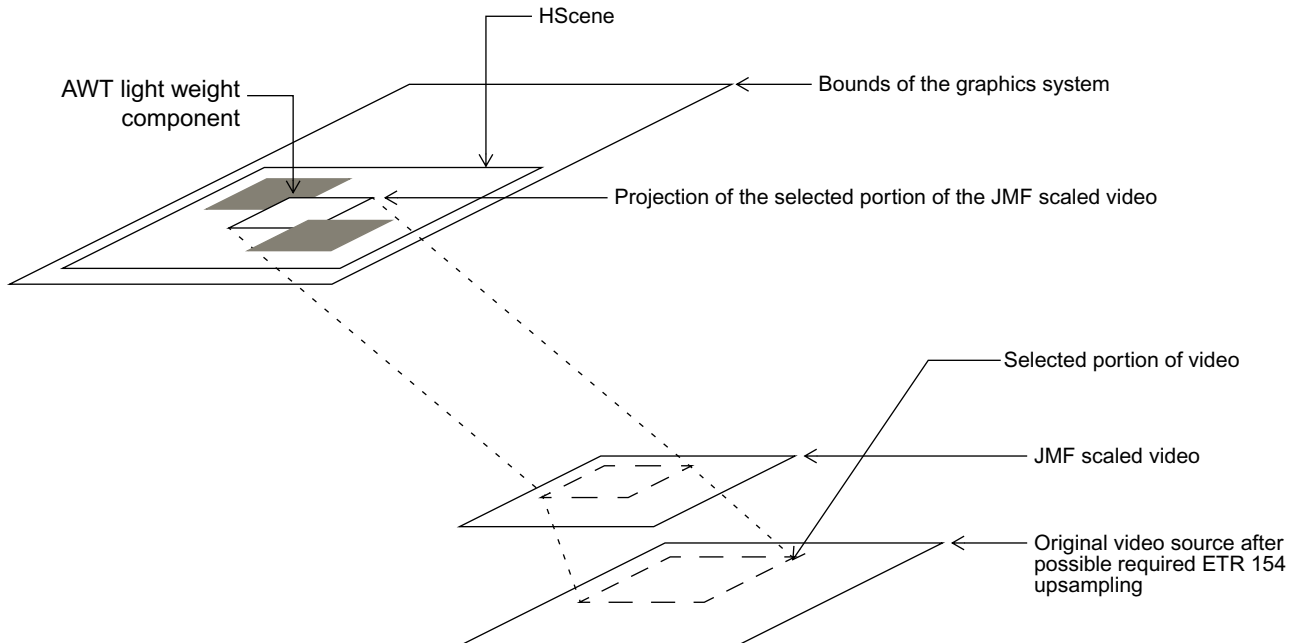
An application expresses the video clipping in terms of the pixel-based coordinate space of the full screen video. For 50Hz SD video this is always a 720x576 raster.

Positioning of the video is expressed in the normalised coordinate space for background JMF players. For component-based JMF players, the position of the video component is expressed in the pixel-based device coordinate space (i.e., a video component is positioned like any other AWT component).

## 13.4.4 Video components

A scaled portion of a video can be presented as a component within the AWT hierarchy. The controls that influence this presentation are parts of AWT and JMF.

Video components are treated just like any other component. However, it shall be noted that pixels within the video have opaque colours. The mapping to the source video is provided by the video presentation control (see N, "(normative): Streamed Media API Extensions" on page 655) which allows an arbitrary portion of the video to be placed within the AWT hierarchy.



**Figure 38 : Introducing video into the AWT component stack**

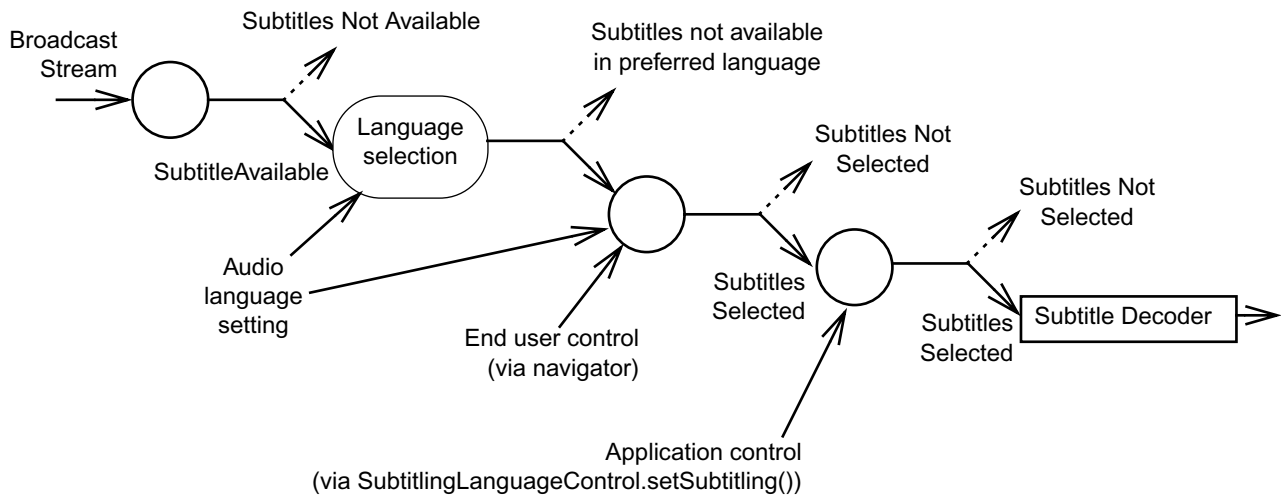


## 13.5 Subtitles

### 13.5.1 Language and presentation setting

The following reference model shows how the presentation of subtitles is controlled. The selection of the subtitles language depends by default on the user's preferences, the audio language and can be overridden by the application. The end user can set the subtitles on or off where the default depends on the preferences. The application can override all this and switch the subtitles off even if the user has set them on.

The figure below illustrates the decision procedure:



**Figure 39 : Determining subtitling language and presentation setting**

The DVB-J API includes a control (see "[SubtitlingEventControl](#)" on page 684) that the application can use to get notified of the state changes in the availability and presentation status of the subtitles. This corresponds to the status of the left hand side input and the right hand side output in the diagram. The language selection and the resulting preferred language are determined using an implementation dependent algorithm. e.g. the platform may support separate language preferences for audio and for subtitles.

The `org.davic.media.SubtitlingLanguageControl` allows the application to query the currently set subtitling language, override the default language setting and switch the subtitles off or let them be end user controlled. This corresponds to the language selection phase and the application controlled switch in the diagram

### 13.5.2 Relation to graphics

Ideally subtitles should be presented on top of the video plane but below the graphics plane(s). However, MHP terminals conforming to this specification are only required to support subtitles in areas where they are not overlapped by application graphics (i.e. by an `HScene` for a DVB-J application). The behaviour if the subtitles overlap with application graphics is non deterministic. Therefore, when presenting application graphics on screen, the application should either turn subtitles off or the broadcaster shall coordinate the use of screen area between subtitling and application graphics so that they will not overlap.

The subtitling plane is full screen and allows the subtitles to be positioned anywhere on screen. The positioning of the subtitling texts is part of the subtitling stream content and is fully controlled by the broadcaster.

### 13.5.3 Coordinate Spaces

Subtitles are decoded into a plane with the same coordinate system and position as the `HVideoDevice`.

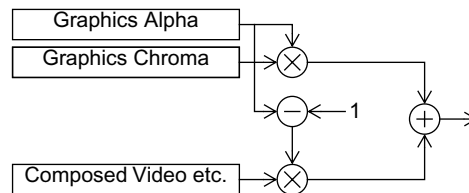
## 13.6 Approximations

### 13.6.1 Approximations in composition

The MHP specification references the Porter-Duff rules for composition (see [Porter-Duff \[D\]](#)). The minimum set of operations required is defined in ([G.1.3.1, "Composition rules" on page 516](#)), in addition the implementation of the compositions may be approximated as detailed below.

#### 13.6.1.1 Implementation of modes

Typical implementations have a hardware blending process that blends the graphics plane over the video using SRC\_OVER (see [figure 40](#)). This places certain practical limitations on the purity of the display model.



**Figure 40 : Typical current technology implementation**

The SRC rule simply requires that the colour and alpha characteristics of the new pixels replace those previously present.

HVideoComponents are treated as having an alpha of 1 so whether SRC or SRC\_OVER is used when placing the video component the effect is that the video completely replaces anything previously drawn.

For the purposes of this discussion, MPEG I-frames and video drips shall be considered as video and not as graphics even if particular implementations may implement them using part of the graphics system of their hardware.

#### 13.6.1.1.1 Graphics directly over video

When drawing graphics directly over video:

- The effect of SRC\_OVER mode is as expected as the alpha value of the drawn graphics is used to control blending of the graphics with the video.

#### 13.6.1.1.2 Graphics over other graphics

##### 13.6.1.1.2.1 SRC

If graphics are painted over other graphics using SRC mode the result is as expected.

##### 13.6.1.1.2.2 SRC\_OVER

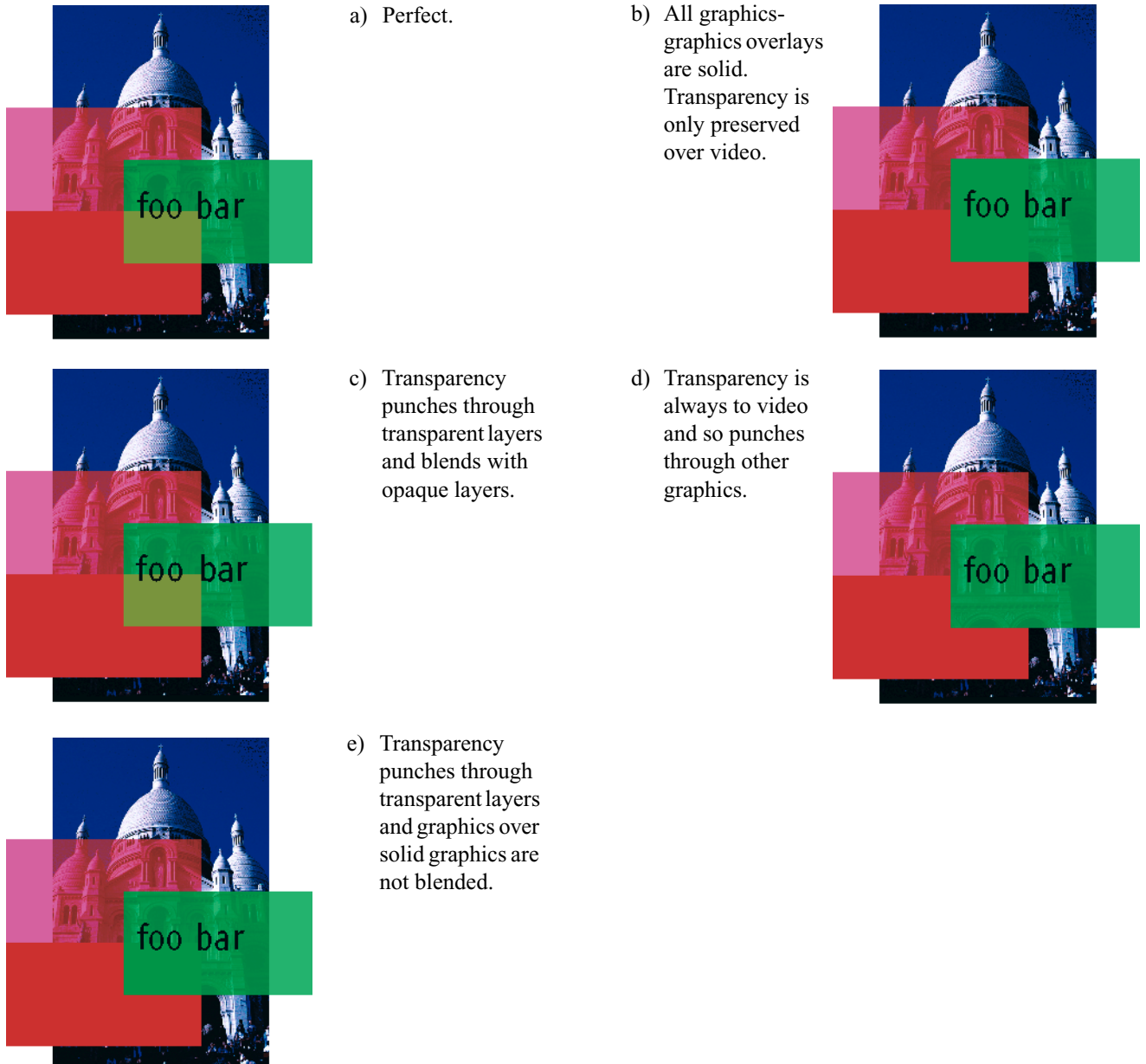
If graphics are painted over other graphics using SRC\_OVER mode the result will be implementation dependant when  $0 < \alpha < 1$ . Drawing with colour where  $\alpha = 0$  (i.e. fully transparent) shall not cause any effect to the existing pixels. [Figure 41 on page 371](#) illustrates a variety of implementations of SRC\_OVER graphics to graphics blending. One allowed behaviour where the sample model is of TYPE\_BASE is that defined in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) for those signatures of the drawImage methods in `java.awt.Graphics` which do not have a "bgcolor" parameter. Specifically, only pixels which are fully opaque are drawn at all. Pixels which are transparent to any extent do not affect whatever pixels are already there.

- [a] Shows the logically correct result where the green and red areas mix to produce intermediate colours.

This implies a graphics to graphics blending process, it also implies a large gamut in both the chroma and alpha channels. This may not be practical in many early implementations.

The following cases illustrate simplifications of the blending scheme. These should not be considered equally good approximations:

- [b] Here the graphics alpha is preserved only when it is drawn directly over a video component. When drawn over another graphic the alpha facets of the colours are considered to be 1.
- [c] Here the source graphics alpha is preserved when it is drawn over a video component even if there is an intermediate semi-transparent graphic. Where the source is over opaque graphics then a graphic to graphic blend is implemented.
- [d] Here the source graphics alpha becomes the hardware mixing alpha regardless of what has been drawn previously over the MPEG image.
- [e] Here the source graphics alpha becomes the hardware mixing alpha in areas where the alpha is already less than 1. Where the alpha is currently 1 (i.e. over opaque graphics) the alpha remains 1.



**Figure 41 : Implementations of blending**

### 13.6.1.1.2.3

### CLEAR

If graphics are painted over other graphics using the CLEAR mode the result is as expected. This operation is the same as using a source with alpha=0 and the SRC rule.

### 13.6.1.2 Approximation of alpha

The precision of implementation of alpha depends on the `DVBGraphics` object concerned. The minimum requirements are specified in G, "(normative): Minimum Platform Capabilities" on page 515. The actual colour used for a given colour can be queried using `org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics.getBestColorMatch()`.

### 13.6.1.3 Approximation of colour

Logically the colour model is a "true colour" one. However, colour approximation is allowed as described in G.1.5, "Colour capabilities" on page 517.

## 14 System integration aspects

### 14.1 Namespace mapping (DVB Locator)

An extended format of the DAVIC DVB URL ([DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#)) shall be used for addressing DVB-SI entities as well as files within object carousels. This extension of the DAVIC locator is backwards compatible with both the original DAVIC locator as well as the UK DTG extension ([UK MHEG Profile \[B\]](#)). The main extensions are support for multiple component tags for specifying a subset of the components of a service, and a specified way of referencing files in an object carousel within a service.

Using the same informal notation as used above, the following locator formats shall be used:

```
dvb://<original_network_id>[.<transport_stream_id>][.<service_id>[.<component_tag>{&<component_tag>}][;.<event_id>]]{</path_segments>}
```

or

```
dvb://'<textual_service_identifier>'[.<component_tag>{&<component_tag>}][;.<event_id>]]{</path_segments>}
```

A more formal specification of the DVB URL expressed in BNF (as used in [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#)) is presented below:

**Table 135 : DVB URL syntax**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| dvb_url   | = dvb_scheme ":" dvb_hier_part   |
| dvb_scheme  | = "dvb"  |
| dvb_hier_part   | = dvb_net_path   dvb_abs_path  |
| dvb_net_path  | = "/" dvb_entity [ dvb_abs_path ]  |
| dvb_entity  | = dvb_transport_stream   dvb_service   dvb_service_component   |
| dvb_transport_stream  | = original_network_id "." transport_stream_id  |
| dvb_service   | = dvb_service_without_event [ dvb_event_constraint ]   |
| dvb_service_component   | = dvb_service_without_event "." component_tag_set [ dvb_event_constraint ]                               |
| dvb_service_without_event   | = original_network_id "." [ transport_stream_id ] "." service_id  <br>"'" textual_service_identifier "'" |
| component_tag_set   | = component_tag *( "&" component_tag )   |
| dvb_event_constraint  | = ";" event_id   |
| original_network_id   | = hex_string   |
| transport_stream_id   | = hex_string   |
| service_id  | = hex_string   |
| component_tag   | = hex_string   |
| event_id  | = hex_string   |
| hex_string  | = 1*hex  |
| hex   | = digit   "A"   "B"   "C"   "D"   "E"   "F"   "a"   "b"   "c"  <br>"d"   "e"   "f"                       |
| digit   | = "0"   "1"   "2"   "3"   "4"   "5"   "6"   "7"   "8"   "9"  |
| dvb_abs_path  | = "/" path_segments  |
| (path_segments as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 2396 [41]</a> ) |  |

It should be noted that this syntax is fully compliant with the generic syntax of URIs as specified in [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#) and uses the registry-based naming authority version of that. Furthermore, all generic definitions specified in [IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#) shall be valid for the DVB URL as well (e.g. escaping of special characters within file names, etc.).

[IETF RFC 2396 \[41\]](#) defines methods for path segments to include parameters (introduce with a semicolon character ";"). This specification currently makes no use of such parameters. Implementations conforming to this specification shall ignore any such parameters to ensure compatibility with future specifications.

#### 14.1.1 dvb\_entity = dvb\_service

When a path is present in a URL where the dvb\_entity part identifies a DVB service, the path references an object in an object carousel within the service. If the dvb\_service\_component element is not present there shall only be one Object Carousel in the DVB service.

The numeric identifiers `original_network_id`, `transport_stream_id` (if present) and `service_id` shall be matched against the corresponding fields in the SDT.

### 14.1.2 `dvb_entity = dvb_service_component`

When a path is present in a URL where the `dvb_entity` part identifies one component of a DVB service and that component carries an object carousel stream, the path references an object in an object carousel whose "root" (i.e. DSI message) is sent within that component. In this case the component tag set shall only contain one element.

The semantics when the path is present in URL where the `dvb_entity` part identifies something else than the two cases described above are not specified in this specification.

The numeric identifiers `original_network_id`, `transport_stream_id` (if present) and `service_id` shall be matched against the corresponding fields in the SDT.

### 14.1.3 `dvb_hier_part = dvb_abs_path`

When the `dvb_net_path` part is missing and only the `dvb_abs_path` is present, the URL refers to a file in a default object carousel within the current service. The "current" service is dependent on the usage context.

### 14.1.4 `dvb_abs_path`

The following restrictions apply to the `dvb_abs_path` part of a name:

- The total length of pathnames, separators and filename shall be less than or equal to 254 bytes long.
- The following characters are not allowed in filenames and pathnames: character null (0xC080), byte zero.
- The encoding of the filename is in UTF-8 (see [7.1.5 on page 70](#)).
- The directory separator character (i.e. Java's `path.separator` property) shall be a slash character (0x2F).
- An absolute filename starts with a slash character (as indicated in the BNF above).

### 14.1.5 `dvb_entity = dvb_transport_stream`

The numeric identifiers `original_network_id` and `transport_stream_id` shall be matched against the corresponding fields in the NIT.

## 14.2 Reserved names

File names starting with the characters "dvb." are reserved for use as "well known" files defined in this or future specifications.

Authors shall not use file names with this form to avoid possible collision with standards defined files.

## 14.3 XML notation

These rules shall apply to the processing and encoding of all the files where XML is used as an encoding format in the MHP.

Rules for encoding of the XML formatted files:

- the file shall be a well-formed XML document (but not necessarily valid against the DTD specified in this version of this specification). Here 'well-formed' and 'valid' are used as defined in the XML 1.0 (see [XML 1.0 \[65\]](#)) specification.

NOTE: The remark on validity is included, because it is possible to be valid only relative to one DTD. Valid documents relative to a DTD specified in a later version of this specification would not be valid relative to the DTD specified in this specification - however, the rules defined here intend to provide this future-proofness and allow terminal implementations compliant with this specification to be able to process files that may be encoded according to a later version of this specification.

- the XML files may contain the XMLDecl item ("<?xml ... ?>" tag) in the prologue in the beginning of the file
- all the XML files shall be formatted using the UTF-8 character encoding which is the default used in XML
- the possible XMLDecl item in the beginning of the file shall not contain an 'encoding' attribute specifying another encoding than UTF-8
- if the XMLDecl item is included in files conforming to this specification, it shall indicate XML version 1.0
- the XML file shall contain a document type declaration ("<!DOCTYPE ...>" tag) where the Name is the same as the name of the root element
- the document type declaration shall contain an ExternalID item with the "PUBLIC" identifier and both a PublicLiteral and a SystemLiteral. This specification specifies the PublicLiteral that shall be used to identify the document types defined in this specification. This specification specifies a SystemLiteral that can be used for identifying a location where the DTD can be retrieved. The SystemLiteral included in the document type declaration shall point to a location where the DTD can be obtained via the Internet using the HTTP protocol as specified in this specification.
- the PublicLiteral is used for identifying the type of the file. For document types specified in this specification, the PublicLiteral shall have the following syntax:

```
"-//DVB//DTD " <document type> " " <version_number> "-//EN"
```

where:

<document type> has the following syntax:

```
<document_type> = letter letters
letters = " " | letter letters
letter = uppercase_letter | lowercase_letter | space
uppercase_letter = "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F" | "G" | "H"
                  | "I" | "J" | "K" | "L" | "M" | "N" | "O"
                  | "P" | "Q" | "R" | "S" | "T" | "U" | "V"
                  | "W" | "X" | "Y" | "Z"
lowercase_letter = "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f" | "g" | "h"
                  | "i" | "j" | "k" | "l" | "m" | "n" | "o"
                  | "p" | "q" | "r" | "s" | "t" | "u" | "v"
                  | "w" | "x" | "y" | "z"
space = " "
```

<version\_number> has the following syntax:

```
<version_number> = major_version "." minor_version
major_version = digit digits
minor_version = digit digits
digit = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9"
digits = " " | digit digits
```

The `<document_type>` part of the `PublicLiteral` is used as an identifier of the document type. When future versions of this specification specify newer, backwards compatible versions of the document type, the `<document_type>` part shall not be changed and the `<version_number>` part shall be changed to a new version number unused in a previous version of this specification for that document type.

- the XML file shall be valid relative to the DTD identified in the `ExternalId` document type declaration. Here 'valid' is used as defined in the XML 1.0 specification.
- the document type declaration shall not contain a declaration part in square brackets ('[' and ']')
- where the XML type PCDATA is used in XML elements and it is specified that this contains a string (for example a file name), these strings shall not contain '<', '&' or '>' characters that might be mistaken as XML tags or references of the markup.

NOTE: Strings where these characters must be allowed should be specified to be encoded as CDATA, leading to a more complex notation but allowing those symbols to be used.

- the file shall include only tags and attributes that are defined in this specification or a later version of this specification
- the file shall not include XML entity declarations ("`<!ENTITY ...>`" tags)
- the file shall not include XML character or entity references (references starting with '&' character)
- the file shall not include XML processing instructions, except optionally the "`<?xml ...?>`" XMLDecl item
- the file may include XML comments ("`<!-- ... -->`" strings), but not within elements that are specified as PCDATA containing strings to be encoded as defined in this specification

Rules for processing of the XML formatted files in the MHP terminal:

- the parser shall use the `PublicLiteral` in the document type declaration in the XML file ("`<!DOCTYPE ...>`" tag) for identifying the type of the file.
- The `PublicLiteral` in the document type declaration identifies the version of the DTD that is used for this file. There is no requirement for the parser to fetch that DTD file using the URL defined by the `SystemLiteral`. It is an implementation option for the parser to retrieve the DTD from that URL. If the DTD is unavailable from that URL, then the behaviour shall be platform dependent.
- The parser shall accept files that have a different version number in the `PublicLiteral` than the one specified in this specification for the given file type. These are probably files encoded according to a different version of this specification. From those files, the parser shall parse, recognize and handle all those elements and attributes that are part of the DTD included in this specification.
- the parser shall ignore all XML elements (start tag, end tag, and possible string between them) that are not specified in the DTD included in this specification.



NOTE: This allows extending the DTDs in the future in a future proof manner where existing terminals ignore all the elements introduced in later versions of this specification

- the parser shall ignore such attributes of XML tags that are not specified in the DTD included in this specification
- the parser shall ignore XML comments encoded as defined in the XML 1.0 specification
- the parser must accept empty XML elements specified in this specification both in their start-tag and end-tag form as well as in the empty element tag form (e.g. '<tuning value="true"></tuning>' may be used as well as '<tuning value="true"/>')
- rules for evolving the specification must ensure that the encoding of the file will always be maintained backwards compatible when these rules are followed (i.e. later versions of this specification may add new XML tags and new attributes to existing XML tags, but may not change the semantics of the existing elements)
- if the encoding of the file violates the rules defined for the encoding above, the behaviour of the parser can be platform dependent, including the possibility that the parser may completely discard such files and the system may behave as if the file is not present at all.

## 14.4 Network signalling

The behaviour of MHP terminals when receiving incorrectly formatted data, however transmitted or otherwise acquired, is implementation dependent except where a specific error behaviour is required by this specification or referenced specifications. MHP terminals may implement whatever strategy they like for this situation. It is an allowed implementation choice to pass values from the network straight through to applications without checking them for correctness. Hence API calls which are specified as returning a specific piece of information may not return a valid piece of information if the original information in the network is wrong.

MHP terminals should observe the behaviour defined in section 4.1 of [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#).

NOTE: It is highly recommended that the MHP terminal should be designed to allow for future compatible extensions to the DVB SI, DSMCC or other formatted data interpreted by the MHP terminal. All of the fields "reserved" (for ISO), "reserved\_future\_use" (for ETSI), and "user defined" in the [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#) should be ignored by MHP terminals not designed to make use of them. The "reserved" and "reserved\_future\_use" fields may be specified in the future by the respective bodies, whereas the "user defined" fields will not be standardized. Where an MHP API provides access to this data, the data should be returned to the MHP application without validation or correction.

## 14.5 Text encoding of application identifiers

Where an [organisation\\_id](#) or [application\\_id](#) is encoded in textual form it shall be encoded as follows:

- a hexadecimal representation of the value
- lower case letters
- no extra leading zeros (as would be produced by Integer.toHexString)

Where both an [organisation\\_id](#) and [application\\_id](#) are combined into an application identifier, they will be represented as a single hexadecimal number using the previously described encoding with the [organisation\\_id](#) as the most significant bits and the [application\\_id](#) as the least significant bits.

## 14.6 Filename requirements

### 14.6.1 Persistent storage

Receivers shall support path and file names as specified by `persistentpath` and `persistentfilename` in the following BNF:

```

lowalpha = "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f" | "g" | "h" | "i" |
           "j" | "k" | "l" | "m" | "n" | "o" | "p" | "q" | "r" |
           "s" | "t" | "u" | "v" | "w" | "x" | "y" | "z"

upalpha  = "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F" | "G" | "H" | "I" |
           "J" | "K" | "L" | "M" | "N" | "O" | "P" | "Q" | "R" |
           "S" | "T" | "U" | "V" | "W" | "X" | "Y" | "Z"

alpha    = lowalpha | upalpha

digit    = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" |
           "8" | "9"

punct    = "_"

persistentfilechar := alpha | digit | punct

persistentfilesubstring := persistentfilechar | persistentfilesubstring persistentfilechar

persistentfilename = persistentfilesubstring
                   | persistentfilesubstring "."
                   | persistentfilesubstring "." persistentfilesuffix

persistentpath = persistentfilesubstring | persistentpath "/" persistentfilesubstring

persistentfilesuffix = persistentfilechar | persistentfilesuffix persistentfilechar

```

Receivers are required to support:

- `persistentfilesubstrings` of length less than or equal to 8 characters
- `persistentfilesuffixes` of length less than or equal to 3 characters

Receivers are not required to reject filenames which exceed these requirements but applications using such filenames are not compliant. These restrictions do not apply to stored applications.

Receivers shall have filesystems for persistent storage which are either case sensitive or "case preserving". Applications shall be written to work on both of these. "case preserving" filesystems are case insensitive when opening an existing file but preserve the case which was used when the file was initially created.

### 14.6.2 DSMCC object carousel

Receivers shall support object carousels at least matching these requirements;

- file paths (i.e. the concatenation of directory names, directory separators and a filename) must be  $\leq 1024$  bytes long
- within the file path requirement, file and directory names must be  $\leq 255$  bytes
- the OC file system shall be case sensitive

Other object carousel limitations are found in [B.2.8, "Mapping of objects to data carousel modules" on page 477](#).

NOTE 1: There is no limit on the maximum number of directory nesting levels as long as the limit on file paths is not exceeded.

NOTE 2: Authors should avoid relying on OC being case sensitive since some authoring platforms will get it wrong.

NOTE 3: To ease development of applications on computer platforms using traditional file systems the author is recommended to restrict file names to the character codes 0x21 to 0x7E excluding 0x22, 0x27, 0x3A, 0x3B, 0x5C (double quote, single quote, colon, semicolon, backslash).

## 14.7 Files and file names

The MHP specification defines how applications can use the names of files in order to access content held in files. It is intentionally silent about the file systems and file system namespaces of MHP terminals except as defined below.

- When an MHP application starts, the filesystem where that application is carried will be mounted into the file system namespace of the MHP terminal concerned. For a DVB-J application [11.5.1, "Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API" on page 267](#) defines that creating a new instance of `java.io.File(".")` will result in a reference to the base directory of the application. This base directory may be a sub-directory within this filesystem.
- MHP applications which have requested the right to access persistent storage, and had this right granted, are allowed to access the persistent file namespace. For DVB-J applications, the top level directory of this namespace is obtainable from the system property, `"dvb.persistent.root"`.
- MHP applications may have the ability to mount additional filesystems into the file system namespace of the MHP terminal concerned. DVB-J applications are allowed to use the `attach()` method on the `org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain` class in order to attach an object carousel as an additional file system. In all other methods, using a DVB locator including the `dvb_abs_path` part of the name part of the syntax shall not mount the specified object carousel file system.
- Conformant MHP applications shall not attempt to access files or file systems outside what is allowed by this specification. The consequences should they attempt to do this are undefined and implementation dependent. Platforms are allowed to choose to limit the access rights of DVB-J applications through use of platform security mechanisms, e.g. `java.io.FilePermission`.
- References to content carried in files shall either be done using names of files encoded in text or using "file:" URLs as defined in [IETF RFC 1738 \[67\]](#). File names encoded in "dvb:" URLs shall be transformed to "file:" URLs before use. For DVB-J applications, file names shall be encoded in Java String objects and "file:" URLs shall be encoded in instances of `java.net.URL`. See `ServiceDomain.getURL(Locator)`.

When constructing a `java.net.URL` for the "file:" protocol, the host part shall be empty and the path part shall be as specified for the constructors of `java.io.File` with the platform path separator replaced by "/" and omitting the first separator character.

- Stand-alone interaction channel applications shall see a file system where the current directory is derived from the contents of the "AIT file" (see [10.4.9 on page 219](#)). Unless the MHP terminal is certain of the complete contents of a directory in this file system, all attempts to list such contents shall fail as if an I/O error had occurred in the underlying system.

## 14.8 Locators and content referencing

The table below lists the types of entity which this specification requires locators to be able to address. It defines the text representation for each entity. Where no text representation is standardised, an implementation dependent representation shall be used. This specification does not require support for addressing any other type of entity in an MHP system by locator or URL.

**Table 136 : Addressable entities, locators and their text representation (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Entity           | Text Representation   |
|------------------|---|
| Transport stream | DVB locator including "dvb_transport_stream" element.         |
| Network          | No standardised text representation                           |
| Bouquet          | No standardised text representation                           |
| DVB Service      | DVB locator including "dvb_service" element (note 3).         |
| Generic Service  | No standardised text representation unless also a DVB service |

**Table 136 : Addressable entities, locators and their text representation (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Entity  | Text Representation  |
|---|--|
| DVB Event   | DVB locator including "dvb_service" element and "dvb_event_constraint" element   |
| MPEG Elementary Stream  | If the elementary stream is signalled with a component tag then this shall be a DVB locator including the "dvb_service_component" element otherwise there is no standardised text representation.  |
| File  | "file:" URL as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 1738 [67]</a> (note 1)<br>DVB locator including "dvb_abs_path" element (note 2)<br>"http:" URL as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 2616 [40]</a> .<br>"https:" URL as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 2818 [112]</a> . |
| Directory   | "file:" URL as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 1738 [67]</a> (note 1)<br>DVB locator including "dvb_abs_path" element (note 2)<br>"http:" URL as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 2616 [40]</a> .<br>"https:" URL as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 2818 [112]</a> . |
| Drip feed decoder   | "dripfeed:/"   |
| <p>NOTE 1: The hostname part of a "file:" URL shall always be the empty string. These URLs are always in the namespace of the receiver. Transmitting them across a network as part of an application is meaningless.</p> <p>NOTE 2: DVB locators including the "dvb_abs_path" element may be returned by MHP APIs as a mechanism to provide references to files in carousels which may not currently be mounted. These locators can only be used to mount new carousels or be translated into a "file:" URL once a new carousel has been mounted.</p> <p>NOTE 3: It is not recommended to include the transport_stream_id in references to DVB services because the pair (original_network_id, service_id) already uniquely identifies the service.</p> |  |

The DVB specifications define two places where multiple logical service components can be carried in a single MPEG elementary stream - DVB subtitles and MPEG-2 multichannel audio. This specification does not provide locators to distinguish between multiple languages of subtitles or audio carried in a single MPEG elementary stream in this way. Hence methods returning locators for service components / elementary streams shall return the same locator regardless of any selection between such logical service components. Methods accepting locators for service components / elementary streams shall select between any such logical service components based on the rules for elementary stream selection in section 11.4.2.2, "[Clarifications](#)" on page 260.

Where there is no standardised text representation, the implementation specific representation can be used to construct Locators which address the original addressable entity but only within that single application instance.

NOTE: This means there is no requirement to be able to re-use implementation specific representations after reading them in from persistent storage or over the inter-application communication API.

## 14.9 Service identification

In the MHP, there are two mechanisms for uniquely identifying a service:

- the triplet of numeric SI identifiers:

original\_network\_id, transport\_stream\_id and service\_id (corresponding to identifiers with the same name defined by [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#) carried in the SI of the broadcast)

NOTE: It is not recommended to use the transport\_stream\_id because the tuple original\_network\_id, service\_id already uniquely identifies a service.

- a textual service identifier:

textual\_service\_identifier\_bytes carried in the optional [Service identifier descriptor](#) in the SDT (see 10.12.1 on page 241).

Both enable global, unique identification of a service.

The textual identifier has additional properties:

- They can identify two (or more) service instances as being the same service even if they for technical reasons have different numeric identifiers.

It is up to the service provider to decide whether different service instances are identified as being the same service.

- They can give alternative identifications for a single service.

### 14.9.1 Syntax of the textual service identifier

The syntax of the textual service identifier is:

```
<service_name> "." <service_provider_domain_name>
```

where:

**<service\_name>**: is a unique name for the service within the service provider's domain

**<service\_provider\_domain\_name>**: is an Internet DNS domain name that the service provider has rights to control. The organization's administrating the Internet DNS domain names are used as a globally unique registration mechanism that allows these textual service identifiers to be globally unique names.

The **<service\_name>** field shall follow the rules defined for Internet DNS names so that the whole textual service identifier is a valid host name to be used in the Internet DNS as defined in [IETF RFC 1035 \[75\]](#).

An example of a textual service identifier is:

```
movie-channel-1.broadcaster-b.com
```

where "broadcaster\_b.com" is an Internet DNS domain owned by the broadcaster and "movie\_channel\_1" is a unique name for the service assigned by the service provider

**NOTE:** The textual service identifier has the same syntax as an Internet host name and it must be assigned in a domain that the service provider has the rights to control. However, the textual service name for a service is not required to resolve to any IP address using the Internet DNS service and if it does, this version of this specification does not specify any specific services that this host should provide if contacted using the IP protocols.

### 14.9.2 Handling of the textual service identifiers within the MHP terminal

The MHP terminal discovers the textual service identifiers for a given service from the SDT table similarly as it discovers the existence of the service in the first place. The MHP terminal shall know the textual service identifiers for the available services in the same way that it knows the numeric identifiers: `original_network_id`, `transport_stream_id` and `service_id`.

When the application uses a URI referring to a DVB service, the resolution of this URI to the necessary information needed to locate the service happens in the same way regardless of if this URI contains a textual identifier or the numeric identifiers.

The URI string provided by the application shall be considered to match the one included in the SDT when the strings are the same.

## 14.10 CA system

In this clause the term "CA system" applies to the CA system however implemented and thus embraces both embedded CA systems and those implemented via the DVB common Interface.

If a functioning CA system is exposed to MHP applications at all then it shall be equally exposed through all CA related API features, e.g.

- the CA API
- CA related reason codes of `org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent`
- `javax.tv.service.selection.PresentationChangedEvent` and sub-classes

### 14.10.1 Service selection

Where the CA system causes changes in the currently decoded service the effect is equivalent to a service selection.

In the specific case of the DVB Common Interface this will occur when a Host Control tune request is made by a module. A `javax.tv.service.selection.AlternateContentEvent` shall be sent in this case.

### 14.10.2 Media component selection

Requests from the CA system to change in composition of the media components (Audio, Video or subtitles) shall be automatically performed (this effect is equivalent effect to using `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl`) and shall be reported to the application by the `org.davic.net.ca.PIDChangeEvent` and `org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent` with reason code either `CA_FAILURE` or `CA_RETURNED` as specified for that event. It shall also be reported by sending `MediaSelectEvents` to all currently registered `MediaSelectListeners` whose current selection would be changed by this.

In the specific case of the DVB Common Interface this will occur when a Host Control `replace / clear_replace` request is made by a module. Events `javax.tv.service.selection.AlternativeContentEvent` and `NormalContentEvent` shall be sent respectively.

### 14.10.3 Non-media component selection

Requests from the CA system to change in composition of the non-media components (e.g. DSM-CC Object Carousel and private data) shall not be automatically performed but shall be reported to the application by the `org.davic.net.ca.PIDChangeEvent`.

In the specific case of the DVB Common Interface this will occur when a Host Control `replace / clear_replace` request is made by a module.

## 15 Detailed platform profile definitions

This chapter defines the capabilities of platforms as presented to applications. Products that claim to conform to a profile shall provide at least the minimum capabilities identified for the profile. In some cases this implies that specific hardware resources are present in the platform.

**Table 137 : Detailed platform profile definitions (Sheet 1 of 3)**

| Area                                 | Specification  | Enhanced Broadcast Profile 2 | Interactive Broadcast Profile 2 | Internet Access Profile 2 |
|--------------------------------------|--|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Static formats</b>                |  |                              |                                 |                           |
| Bitmap pictures                      | 7.1.1.3, "PNG" on page 68 + 15.1, "PNG - restrictions" on page 385   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                      | 7.1.1.3, "PNG" on page 68 without restrictions   | n/r                          | n/r                             | n/r (note 3)              |
|                                      | 7.1.1.4, "GIF" on page 68  | n/r                          | n/r                             | n/r (note 3)              |
|                                      | 7.1.2, "MPEG-2 I-Frames" on page 68  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                      | 7.1.1.2, "JPEG" on page 68 + 15.3, "JPEG - restrictions" on page 386   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                      | 7.1.1.2, "JPEG" on page 68   | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| Audio clips                          | 7.1.4, "Monomedia format for audio clips" on page 70   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Video drips                          | 7.1.3, "MPEG-2 Video "drips"" on page 68   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Text encoding                        | 7.1.5, "Monomedia format for text" on page 70  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| <b>Broadcast streaming formats</b>   |  |                              |                                 |                           |
| Video                                | 7.2.2, "Video" on page 70  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Audio                                | 7.2.1, "Audio" on page 70  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Subtitles                            | 7.2.3, "Subtitles" on page 70  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| <b>Fonts</b>                         |  |                              |                                 |                           |
| Built in                             | Character set see annex E, "(normative): Character set" on page 507, Metrics see annex D, "(normative): Text presentation" on page 488<br>Face: UK RNIB "Tiresias"   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Downloadable                         | 7.4, "Downloadable Fonts" on page 71   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| <b>Broadcast channel protocols</b>   |  |                              |                                 |                           |
|                                      | 6.2.2, "MPEG-2 Sections" on page 59  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                      | 6.2.5, "DSM-CC User-to-User Object Carousel" on page 59  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                      | IP Multicast stack based on:<br>6.2.6, "DVB Multiprotocol Encapsulation" on page 60,<br>6.2.7, "Internet Protocol (IP)" on page 60<br>6.2.8, "User Datagram Protocol (UDP)" on page 60<br>6.2.10, "IP signalling" on page 61 | O                            | Ro                              | M                         |
| <b>Interaction channel protocols</b> |  |                              |                                 |                           |
| TCP/IP                               | 6.3.3, "Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)" on page 61<br>6.3.2, "Internet Protocol (IP)" on page 61  | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| UDP/IP                               | 6.3.2, "Internet Protocol (IP)" on page 61<br>6.3.9, "User Datagram Protocol (UDP)" on page 63   | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| DSM-CC U-U RPC                       | 6.3.4, "UNO-RPC" on page 61<br>6.3.5, "UNO-CDR" on page 62<br>6.3.6, "DCM-CC User to User" on page 62  | -                            | O                               | O                         |
| HTTP                                 | 6.3.7.1, "HTTP 1.1" on page 62   | -                            | O                               | O                         |
| HTTP                                 | 6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62  | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| DNS                                  | 6.3.10, "DNS" on page 63   | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| HTTPS                                | 6.3.7.3, "HTTPS" on page 63  | -                            | M                               | M                         |

Table 137 : Detailed platform profile definitions (Sheet 2 of 3)

| Area                            | Specification  | Enhanced Broadcast Profile 2 | Interactive Broadcast Profile 2 | Internet Access Profile 2 |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Interaction Channel File System | 6.4.1, "File system implemented only via the interaction channel" on page 64 | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| DSMCC / HTTP hybrid             | 6.4.2, "Hybrid between broadcast stream and interaction channel" on page 66  | -                            | M                               | M                         |
| <b>DVB-HTML</b>                 |  |                              |                                 |                           |
| DVB-HTML                        | 8, "DVB-HTML" on page 76   | n/r                          | O (note 2)                      | O (note 2)                |
| <b>DVB-J</b>                    |  |                              |                                 |                           |
| Core                            | 11.3, "Fundamental DVB-J APIs" on page 251                                   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Presentation                    | 11.4.1, "Graphical User Interface API" on page 256                           | M (note 1)                   | M (note 1)                      | M (note 1)                |
|                                 | 11.4.2, "Streamed Media API" on page 260                                     | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Data Access                     | 11.5.1, "Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API" on page 267                | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.5.2, "Support for Multicast IP over the Broadcast Channel" on page 268    | O                            | Ro                              | M                         |
|                                 | 11.5.3, "Support for IP over the Return Channel" on page 269                 | -                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.5.4, "MPEG-2 Section Filter API" on page 269                              | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.5.5, "Mid-Level Communications API" on page 269                           | -                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.5.6, "Persistent Storage API" on page 270                                 | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Service Information & Selection | 11.6.1, "DVB Service Information API" on page 271                            | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.6.2, "Service Selection API" on page 272                                  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.6.3, "Tuning API" on page 273   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.6.4, "Conditional Access API" on page 274                                 | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.6.5, "Protocol Independent SI API" on page 274                            | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Common Infrastructure           | 11.7.1, "APIs to support DVB-J application lifecycle" on page 275            | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.2, "Application discovery and launching APIs" on page 276               | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.3, "Inter-Application and Inter-Xlet communication API" on page 277     | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.4, "Basic MPEG Concepts" on page 280                                    | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.5, "Resource Notification" on page 280                                  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.6, "Content Referencing" on page 280                                    | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.7, "Common Error Reporting" on page 281                                 | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.7.8, "Plug-in APIs" on page 281   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Security                        | 11.8.1, "Basic Security" on page 282   | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.8.2, "APIs for return channel security" on page 283                       | -                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.8.3, "Additional permissions classes" on page 284                         | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Others                          | 11.9.1, "Timer Support" on page 284  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.9.2, "User Settings and Preferences API" on page 284                      | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.9.3, "Profile and version properties" on page 284                         | M                            | M                               | M                         |
|                                 | 11.9.4, "Non-CA smart card API" on page 286                                  | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Stand-alone applications        | 11.12.2, "Stored services" on page 296                                       | M                            | M                               | M                         |
| Support for DVB-HTML            | 11.13, "Support for DVB-HTML" on page 297                                    | O (note 2)                   | O (note 2)                      | O (note 2)                |



**Table 137 : Detailed platform profile definitions (Sheet 3 of 3)**

| Area   | Specification   | Enhanced Broadcast Profile 2 | Interactive Broadcast Profile 2 | Internet Access Profile 2 |
|--|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Internet access  | <a href="#">11.14, "Internet access" on page 298</a>      | -                            | -                               | M                         |
|  | <a href="#">17, "Internet access clients" on page 391</a> | -                            | -                               | M                         |
| NOTE 1: The javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer.getRootContainer method shall return an instance of org.havi.ui.HScene or null except when called by an embedded Xlet where the behaviour is defined in <a href="#">11.13.2, "Embedded Xlets in a DVB-HTML Page" on page 297</a> . |   |                              |                                 |                           |
| NOTE 2: DVB-HTML is a single option which shall only be considered included if all parts of it are included.   |   |                              |                                 |                           |
| NOTE 3: Recommended to be implemented as part of WWW browser but outside the scope of the MHP conformance regime   |   |                              |                                 |                           |

Where an MHP product claims to support a feature defined as optional, recommended optional or not required in the above table, it shall be supported according to this specification, shall be subject to the MHP conformance regime and shall report that the feature is supported using the mechanisms defined in [table 119, "System properties for optional feature interrogation" on page 285](#).

| Key |  |
|-----|--|
| -   | Not applicable                               |
| n/r | Not required                                 |
| O   | Optional feature in the receiver             |
| Ro  | Recommended optional feature in the receiver |
| M   | Mandatory feature in the receiver            |

## 15.1 PNG - restrictions

MHP terminals are required to support ALL of the PNG colour types defines in PNG Specification Version 1.0 (see [table 138](#)). MHP terminals are responsible for mapping these colours to those used by the terminal's OSD.

Any combination of PNGs with different colour types may be active at any one time. Similarly, terminals are responsible for mapping RGB16 direct colour specifications to colours that the OSD can support.

**Table 138 : PNG Formats**

| Colour Type | Allowed Bit Depths  | Interpretation   |
|-------------|---------------------|--|
| 0           | 1, 2, 4, 8, 16      | Each pixel is a grayscale sample.                              |
| 2           | 8, 16 per component | Each pixel is an R,G,B triple.                                 |
| 3           | 1, 2, 4, 8          | Each pixel is a palette index; PLTE chunk must appear.         |
| 4           | 8, 16               | Each pixel is a grayscale sample, followed by an alpha sample. |
| 6           | 8, 16               | Each pixel is an R,G,B triple, followed by an alpha sample.    |

Where PNG graphics use colours defined in the minimum palette specified by [table G.1, "Palette construction rules" on page 517](#) these colours shall be reproduced correctly. Other colours shall be reproduced on a "best effort" basis.

Receivers should ignore gAMA (gamma) and cHRM (chromaticity) chunks in PNG files.

### 15.1.1 PNG Aspect ratios

PNG bitmaps shall carry a pHYs chunk indicating the pixel aspect ratio of the bitmap. This aspect ratio should be the same as that of the scene containing the bitmap.

The PNG specification indicates that if the aspect ratio is absent square pixels should be assumed. To avoid overriding this specification the aspect ratio should be signalled explicitly.

## 15.2 Minimum media formats supported by DVB-J APIs

The following table specifies the minimum set of media types that implementations of the "Enhanced Broadcast Profile 1" and "Interactive Broadcast Profile 1" shall support. It also identifies the APIs that shall provide this support:

**Table 139 : Media type support required in Enhanced and Interactive Broadcast profile 1**

| Media type          | Reference                           | API(s)  |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| Downloadable fonts  | <a href="#">7.4</a>                 | <code>org.dvb.ui.FontFactory</code>   |
| Audio from file     | <a href="#">7.1.4</a>               | <code>org.havi.ui.HSound</code><br>JMF only with references to files          |
| MPEG I frame images | <a href="#">7.1.1</a>               | <code>org.havi.ui.HBackgroundImage</code>                                     |
| PNG images          | <a href="#">7.1.1.3</a>             | <code>java.awt.Image</code>   |
| JPEG images         | <a href="#">7.1.1.2</a>             | <code>java.awt.Image</code>   |
| DVB service         | <a href="#">ETSI EN 300 468 [4]</a> | JMF only with references to DVB services for playback direct from the network |
| Video "drips"       | <a href="#">7.1.3</a>               | <code>org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource</code>                                 |
| Text files          | <a href="#">7.1.5</a>               | All Java APIs supporting reading or writing text files.                       |
| Subtitles           | <a href="#">7.2.3</a>               | JMF only as part of a DVB service   |

## 15.3 JPEG - restrictions

The restricted JPEG specification is as specified in [7.1.1.2, "JPEG" on page 68](#) except that the "progressive DCT-based" mode is excluded.

## 15.4 Locale support

Support of resources for the following locales is required:

- one guaranteed one (EN.UK)
- zero (or more) implementation dependant ones

Further it is guaranteed that the default Locale shall have resources. The default Locale is implementation dependant.

## 15.5 Video raster format dependencies

This section addresses the aspects of this specification that vary as a consequence of the video raster format. The formats names follow those used in [ETSI TR 101 154 \[9\]](#).

### 15.5.1 25 Hz standard definition

#### 15.5.1.1 Logical pixel resolution

The logical pixel resolution shall be 72 dots per inch.

## 16 Registry of Constants

### 16.1 System constants

Table 140 : Registry of constants

| Entity                  | Value | Description   |
|-------------------------|-------|---|
| PTimerMinRepeatInterval | 40 ms | This (or optionally a smaller) value shall be returned by javax.tv.util.TVTimer.getMinRepeatInterval().<br>See 11.9.1, "Timer Support" on page 284. |
| PTimerGranularity       | 10ms  | This (or optionally a smaller) value shall be returned by javax.tv.util.TVTimer.getGranularity().<br>See 11.9.1, "Timer Support" on page 284.       |

Table 141 : Profile encoding

| application profile | version |       |       | Definition   |
|---------------------|---------|-------|-------|--|
|                     | major   | minor | micro |  |
| 1                   | 1       | 1     | 1     | Enhanced Broadcast Profile 2 as defined in this specification    |
| 2                   | 1       | 1     | 1     | Interactive Broadcast Profile 2 as defined in this specification |
| 3                   | 1       | 1     | 1     | Internet Access Profile 2 as defined in this specification       |

### 16.2 DVB-J constants

This section to be populated with the values of public final static symbols from the various Java APIs.

#### 16.2.1 Public and Protected final static primitive fields from DVB packages

The following is a list of the values assigned for public and protected final static primitive fields defined in the DVB defined DVB-J packages:

```

public final static int org.dvb.application.AppAttributes.DVB_J_application = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppAttributes.DVB_HTML_application = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppProxy.STARTED = 0;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppProxy.DESTROYED = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppProxy.NOT_LOADED = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppProxy.PAUSED = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent.NEW_DATABASE = 0;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent.APP_CHANGED = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent.APP_ADDED = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent.APP_DELETED = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.application.DVBProxy.LOADED = 5;

public static final int org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy.LOADING=6;
public static final int org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy.KILLED=7;

public final static int org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject.FROM_CACHE = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject.FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject.FROM_STREAM_ONLY = 3;

public final static int org.dvb.event.UserEvent.UEF_KEY_EVENT = 1;

public final static int org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes.PRIORITY_LOW = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes.PRIORITY_MEDIUM = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes.PRIORITY_HIGH = 3;

public final static int org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent.STREAM_UNAVAILABLE = 0;
public final static int org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent.CA_FAILURE = 1;

```

```

public final static int org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent.CA_RETURNED = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.ASPECT_RATIO_UNKNOWN = -1;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_NOT_PRESENT = -1;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_UNKNOWN = -1;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_NONE = 0;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_FULL = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DAR_4_3 = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.ASPECT_RATIO_4_3 = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_16_9_TOP = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_LB_16_9 = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DAR_16_9 = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.ASPECT_RATIO_16_9 = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_14_9_TOP = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_LB_14_9 = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.ASPECT_RATIO_2_21_1 = 4;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_GT_16_9 = 4;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_CCO = 4;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_PAN_SCAN = 5;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_LB_2_21_1_ON_4_3 = 6;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_LB_2_21_1_ON_16_9 = 7;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_SAME = 8;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PLATFORM = 8;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_4_3 = 9;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_16_9 = 10;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_14_9 = 11;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_4_3_SP_14_9 = 13;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_16_9_SP_14_9 = 14;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.AFD_16_9_SP_4_3 = 15;
public final static int org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl.DFC_PROCESSING_16_9_ZOOM = 9;
public final static byte org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl.POS_CAP_OTHER = -1;
public final static byte org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl.POS_CAP_FULL = 0;
public final static byte org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl.POS_CAP_FULL_IF_ENTIRE_VIDEO_ON_SCREEN = 1;
public final static byte org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl.POS_CAP_FULL_EVEN_LINES = 3;
public final static byte org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl.POS_CAP_FULL_EVEN_LINES_IF_ENTIRE_VIDEO_ON_SCREEN = 4;

public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_PSTN = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_ISDN = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_DECT = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_CATV = 4;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_LMDS = 5;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_MATV = 6;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_RCS = 7;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_UNKNOWN = 8;
public final static int org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface.TYPE_OTHER = 9;

public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.NETWORK_NAME = 64;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SERVICE_LIST = 65;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.STUFFING = 66;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SATELLITE_DELIVERY_SYSTEM = 67;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.CABLE_DELIVERY_SYSTEM = 68;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.BOUQUET_NAME = 71;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SERVICE = 72;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.COUNTRY_AVAILABILITY = 73;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.LINKAGE = 74;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.NVOD_REFERENCE = 75;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.TIME_SHIFTED_SERVICE = 76;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SHORT_EVENT = 77;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.EXTENDED_EVENT = 78;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.TIME_SHIFTED_EVENT = 79;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.COMPONENT = 80;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.MOSAIC = 81;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.STREAM_IDENTIFIER = 82;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.CA_IDENTIFIER = 83;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.CONTENT = 84;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.PARENTAL_RATING = 85;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.TELETEXT = 86;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.TELEPHONE = 87;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.LOCAL_TIME_OFFSET = 88;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SUBTITLING = 89;

```

```

public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.TERRESTRIAL_DELIVERY_SYSTEM = 90;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.MULTILINGUAL_NETWORK_NAME = 91;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.MULTILINGUAL_BOUQUET_NAME = 92;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.MULTILINGUAL_SERVICE_NAME = 93;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.MULTILINGUAL_COMPONENT = 94;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.PRIVATE_DATA_SPECIFIER = 95;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SERVICE_MOVE = 96;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.SHORT_SMOOTHING_BUFFER = 97;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.FREQUENCY_LIST = 98;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.PARTIAL_TRANSPORT_STREAM = 99;
public final static short org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag.DATA_BROADCAST = 100;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType.MPEG1_VIDEO = 1;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType.MPEG2_VIDEO = 2;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType.MPEG1_AUDIO = 3;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType.MPEG2_AUDIO = 4;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIInformation.FROM_CACHE_ONLY = 0;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIInformation.FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM = 1;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIInformation.FROM_STREAM_ONLY = 2;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType.NETWORK = 1;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType.BOUQUET = 2;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType.SERVICE = 3;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType.PMT_SERVICE = 4;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType.PRESENT_FOLLOWING_EVENT = 5;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType.SCHEDULED_EVENT = 6;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus.UNDEFINED = 0;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus.NOT_RUNNING = 1;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus.STARTS_IN_A_FEW_SECONDS = 2;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus.PAUSING = 3;
public final static byte org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus.RUNNING = 4;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.UNKNOWN = -1;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.DIGITAL_TELEVISION = 1;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.DIGITAL_RADIO_SOUND = 2;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.TELETEXT = 3;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.NVOD_REFERENCE = 4;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.NVOD_TIME_SHIFTED = 5;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.MOSAIC = 6;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.PAL = 7;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.SECAM = 8;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.D_D2_MAC = 9;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.FM_RADIO = 10;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.NTSC = 11;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.DATA_BROADCAST = 12;
public final static short org.dvb.si.SIServiceType.MHP_APPLICATION = 16;

public final static int org.dvb.test.DVBTest.UNTESTED = -5;
public final static int org.dvb.test.DVBTest.UNRESOLVED = -4;
public final static int org.dvb.test.DVBTest.HUMAN_INTERVENTION = -3;
public final static int org.dvb.test.DVBTest.OPTION_UNSUPPORTED = -2;
public final static int org.dvb.test.DVBTest.FAIL = -1;
public final static int org.dvb.test.DVBTest.PASS = 0;

public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.CLEAR = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.SRC = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.SRC_OVER = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.DST_OVER = 4;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.SRC_IN = 5;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.DST_IN = 6;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.SRC_OUT = 7;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite.DST_OUT = 8;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage.TYPE_ADVANCED = 20;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage.TYPE_BASE = 21;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN = 1;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.HORIZONTAL_END_ALIGN = 2;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.HORIZONTAL_CENTER = 3;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.VERTICAL_START_ALIGN = 4;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.VERTICAL_END_ALIGN = 5;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.VERTICAL_CENTER = 6;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.LINE_ORIENTATION_HORIZONTAL = 10;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.LINE_ORIENTATION_VERTICAL = 11;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.START_CORNER_UPPER_LEFT = 20;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.START_CORNER_UPPER_RIGHT = 21;

```

```
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.START_CORNER_LOWER_LEFT = 22;
public final static int org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.START_CORNER_LOWER_RIGHT = 23;

public static final int org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter.EMAIL_CLIENT = 1;
public static final int org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter.WWW_CLIENT = 2;
public static final int org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter.NEWS_CLIENT = 3;
```

## 16.2.2 Public and Protected final static primitive fields from standard Java packages

These constants are recorded in the following documents:

- [JAE 1.1.8 const \[72\]](#)
- [JAE 1.2.2 const \[73\]](#)
- [JMF const \[74\]](#)

NOTE: The constants for [Java TV \[51\]](#) are within that specification. [JSSE \[60\]](#) introduces no constants.

## 17 Internet access clients

### 17.1 Referencing DVB services and content within WWW content

MHP internet access clients shall support the following mechanisms of referencing DVB services & content from within WWW content.

- Use of a reference to a DVB service in an HTML "href" shall launch that DVB service in the same way as is done by MHP applications using the MHP service selection API or the end user of the MHP terminal using the navigator to select DVB services.

MHP internet access clients which support a particular element.attribute from tables 13, "Use of ContentType attribute on elements" on page 88 and 15, "Use of MIME media type by element" on page 89 to a specific MIME type listed in the table shall support the DVB-HTML behaviour defined for that type of reference. This applies to the following MIME types only:

audio/mpeg, video/mpeg

multipart/dvb.service

NOTE: MHP applications shall only be started in response to selection of a reference to a DVB service. All MHP applications run in the scope of a DVB service and cannot run on their own outside of a service of some type.

### 17.2 Minimum requirements for internet clients

The following table defines some minimum network protocols which shall be supported by those internet client applications which form part of the MHP internet access profile.

Table 142 :

| Internet Client Application | Minimum required protocols  |
|-----------------------------|---|
| WWW browser                 | HTTP (see 6.3.7.2, "MHP profile of HTTP 1.0" on page 62)<br>HTTPS (see 6.3.7.3, "HTTPS" on page 63)                                 |
| Email client                | SMTP for sending email (see SMTP [107]) or HTTP to a WebMail server.<br>Protocols for receiving email are implementation dependent. |
| Usenet news                 | NNTP (NNTP [108]) or HTTP to a WebNews server.  |

WWW browser internet clients shall support use of the "mailto" URL as defined in IETF RFC 2818 [112], IETF RFC 2368 [114].

Email internet clients shall support use of the "http" and "https" URLs as defined in section 3.2.2 of IETF RFC 2616 [40].

If a Usenet news internet client is present, then the WWW browser and E-mail internet clients shall also support the use of the "news" URL as defined by IETF RFC 1738 [67]. Usenet news internet clients, if present, shall support the use of the "http", "https", and "mailto" URLs.

### 17.3 Internet streamed media

There is no requirement for MHP terminals to support internet streaming media content however where these are both supported and visible to DVB-J applications, it shall be done using the Java Media Framework (Java Media Player Specification [33]).

## 17.4 Internet Connection Management

MHP applications which wish to use internet client applications are responsible for ensuring that a return channel connection is operating before starting the internet client. For connectionless return channel interfaces, nothing needs to be done by the MHP application. For connection oriented return channel interfaces, the MHP application is responsible for ensuring that the interface is connected, e.g. by calling `ConnectionRCInterface.connect()`.

Internet client applications started by MHP application shall inherit the return channel connectivity and permissions of the MHP application which started them. They shall be able to reconnect to this connection if necessary, e.g. due to time-out or connection having been dropped. Return channel connectivity of internet client applications started direct from the MHP navigator is outside the scope of this specification.



---

## Annex A (normative): External references; errata, clarifications and exemptions

This section lists known errata in normative external references, as well as clarifications to those references and/or exemptions from requirements in those specifications.

### A.1 JAE 1.1.8 API [31]

#### A.1.1 `java.lang.ThreadGroup.getParent()`

This specification is considered to include:

This method may throw a security exception.

#### A.1.2 `java.net.URLConnection.setFileNameMap`

The method `java.net.URLConnection.setFileNameMap` is considered to specify:

If there is a security manager, its `checkSetFactory` method is called with no arguments. This may result in a security exception.

#### A.1.3 `java.util.Locale.setDefault`

This specification is considered to include:

This method may throw a security exception.

#### A.1.4 `java.lang.Class`

The following clarifications are considered to be part of this specification:

Reflective operations, such as `Class.forName(String)` shall cause class initialization of the given class, if the call succeeds and the class had not previously been initialized.

#### A.1.5 `java.awt.Font`

Where an MHP terminal does not have available a font matching the specification of the parameters passed to the constructor of the `java.awt.Font` class, the implementation shall silently approximate to a font which is available. No runtime error or exception shall be thrown by the constructor. The approximation shall not be visible to implementations through any of the methods on the returned instance of `java.awt.Font`.

#### A.1.6 `java.io.PrintStream`

The two constructors `PrintStream(OutputStream)` and `PrintStream(OutputStream, boolean)`, are considered to not be deprecated, and are therefore required to be present on an MHP terminal.

#### A.1.7 `java.io.Serializable`

NOTE: This specification does not have standardised external forms for serializable classes. Thus applications cannot rely on using serialization for transmitting data into or out of a specific MHP terminal. Use of `Serialized` objects with persistent storage shall work as specified where applications have the required permissions however using this is not recommended.

#### A.1.8 `java.io.ObjectStreamConstants`

The interface `java.io.ObjectStreamConstants` implemented by `java.io.ObjectInputStream` is not part of this specification.

## A.1.9 java.net.SocketOptions

The interface `java.net.SocketOptions` implemented by `java.net.SocketImpl` is not part of this specification.

## A.1.10 java.util.zip.ZipConstants

The interface `java.util.zip.ZipConstants` implemented by `java.util.zip.ZipEntry`, `java.util.zip.ZipFile` and `java.util.zip.ZipInputStream` is not part of this specification.

## A.1.11 Component

The specification of `Component.getGraphics` in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) is considered to read:

```
/**
 * Creates and returns a graphics context to be used for
 * rendering directly to this component.
 * Returns <code>null</code> if this component is currently not
 * displayable.
 * The returned object is a graphics context that causes drawing to the output device of this
component;
 * in other words, it is the same whether or not
 * double buffering is enabled on this component.
 * When you have finished using the graphics context
 * returned by this method,
 * you should invoke the <code>dispose</code> method on it.
 *
 * @return a graphics context for this component, or <code>null</code>
 *         if it has none
 * @see     #paint
 * @see     Graphics#dispose
 * @since   JDK1.0
 */
```

## A.1.12 java.awt.event.KeyEvent

The constructor:

```
KeyEvent(Component, int, long, int, int)
```

shall be considered to be deprecated.

## A.1.13 java.awt.Component

### A.1.13.1 java.awt.Component.update(Graphics)

The following text:

The AWT calls the update method in response to a call to `repaintupdate` or `paint`. You can assume that the background is not cleared.

Is considered to be replaced by:

If this component is not a lightweight component, the AWT calls the update method in response to a call to `repaint`. You can assume that the background is not cleared.

### A.1.13.2 java.awt.Component.repaint()

The following text:

This method causes a call to this component's update method as soon as possible.

Is considered to be replaced by:

If this component is a lightweight component, this method causes a call to this component's `paint` method as soon as possible. Otherwise, this method causes a call to this component's update method as soon as possible.

### A.1.13.3 `java.awt.Component.repaint(long)`

The following text:

Repaints the component. This will result in a call to update within *tm* milliseconds.

Is considered to be replaced by:

Repaints the component. If this component is a lightweight component, this will result in a call to paint within *tm* milliseconds.

Otherwise, this will result in a call to update within *tm* milliseconds.

### A.1.13.4 `java.awt.Component.repaint(int, int, int, int)`

The following text:

This method causes a call to this component's update method as soon as possible.

Is considered to be replaced by:

If this component is a lightweight component, this method causes a call to this component's paint method as soon as possible. Otherwise, this method causes a call to this component's update method as soon as possible.

## A.1.14 `java.lang.Thread`

The specification of `Thread.checkAccess` in [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) is considered to be marked as final.

## A.1.15 `java.lang.Object`

The definitions of `hashCode()` and `equals()` shall be as for [JDK 1.2.2 \[78\]](#).

## A.1.16 `java.awt.Graphics`

### A.1.16.1 `drawBytes(byte[], ...)`

NOTE: The character encoding used to convert the bytes into a string is unspecified, and might vary by platform implementation.

## A.1.17 `java.lang.Character`

The following text in the class description:

The Unicode attribute table is available on the World Wide Web as the file:

<ftp://unicode.org/pub/MappingTables/UnicodeData1.1.5.txt>

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

The character attribute tables for specific versions of Unicode are available on the World Wide Web in various subdirectories of:

<ftp://ftp.unicode.org/Public/>

## A.1.18 `java.awt.FontMetrics`

The method `java.awt.FontMetrics.bytesWidth(byte[], int, int)` shall use the default character encoding for the platform, as defined in [11.2.11, "Text Encodings" on page 250](#).

## A.1.19 General

### A.1.19.1 Unicode version exemption

In the MHP specification, it is an allowed implementation option to use a future version of the Unicode specification more recent than the one specified by [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#).

MHP terminals supporting user input of characters not found in the version of Unicode specified by [JAE 1.1.8 API \[31\]](#) should use a sufficiently recent version of the Unicode specification to support those characters. e.g. for the purposes of `java.awt.event.KeyEvent.getKeyChar`.

NOTE: Application developers should be careful when using parts of JAE like the methods on `java.lang.Character` which unicode characters which have been subject to a non-backwards compatible change between Unicode 2.0 and Unicode 3.0.

## A.1.20 `java.net.MulticastSocket.setInterface`

The following sentence:

Set the outgoing network interface for multicast packets on this socket, to other than the system default.

Shall be considered to read:

Set the multicast network interface used by methods whose behavior would be affected by the value of the network interface.

## A.2 [Java Language Spec \[32\]](#)

### A.2.1 `java.lang.ThreadGroup.getParent()`

This method may throw a security exception.

### A.2.2 `java.lang.Runtime.runFinalizersOnExit()`

This method may throw a `SecurityException`

### A.2.3 `java.lang.System.runFinalizersOnExit()`

This method may throw a `SecurityException`

## A.3 [Java Media Player Specification \[33\]](#)

### A.3.1 `javax.media.protocol.URLDataSource.sources`

The `javax.media.protocol.URLDataSource.sources` field shall be considered not to be present. So, any reference to it will fail.

### A.3.2 `javax.media.protocol.ContentDescriptor`

#### A.3.2.1 `getContenttype`

This method shall return the string passed into the constructor; which is defined to be a MIME type.

#### A.3.2.2 `mimeTypeToPackageName`

This method is considered to have "public" visibility.

## A.4 [Java VM \[34\]](#)

The following clarifications are considered to be part of this specification:

- As described in sections 12.1.2 and 12.3.1 of [Java Language Spec \[32\]](#), class file verification is mandatory for all implementations that conform to [Java VM \[34\]](#).
- Resolving a class causes its superinterfaces to be resolved.
- As specified in section 13.1 of [Java Language Spec \[32\]](#), the target of the `invokeinterface` instruction's method invocation must support the referenced interface. If it does not, an `IncompatibleClassChangeError` shall be raised when the `invokeinterface` instruction is executed.

NOTE: This is described on page 282 of [Java VM2 \[F\]](#).

Additionally for MHP terminals:

- MHP terminals are exempt from implementing class finalization, as required by section 2.16.8 of [Java VM \[34\]](#).

NOTE: As noted in the appendix of [Java VM2 \[F\]](#), class finalization has not been implemented, and it is not required in the 2nd edition of the VM specification.

On the top of page 123 of [Java VM \[34\]](#), the following bullet point is considered to be present:

- The type of every class instance that is the target of a method invocation instruction must be assignment compatible (2.6.6) with the class or interface type specified in the instruction. In addition, the type of the target of an invokespecial instruction must be assignment compatible with the current class.

## A.5 Java TV [51]

The following is considered to be present:

All methods in JavaTV whose name is of the form `removeXXXXListener`, shall have no effect if the listener concerned is not registered.

### A.5.1 javax.tv.service.selection

#### A.5.1.1 PresentationTerminatedEvent

The following specification additions are considered to be present:

When a call to `ServiceContext.select()` fails for a service context in the not presenting state, the following table defines how the reason code for the `PresentationTerminatedEvent` shall be derived from the reason code of the `SelectionFailedEvent` which first notified applications of the failure of the method call.

**Table A.1 : Reason code mapping**

| <b>SelectionFailedEvent reason code</b> | <b>PresentationTerminatedEvent reason code</b> |
|---|--|
| CA_REFUSAL                              | ACCESS_WITHDRAWN                               |
| CONTENT_NOT_FOUND                       | SERVICE_VANISHED                               |
| INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES                  | RESOURCES_REMOVED                              |
| MISSING_HANDLER                         | RESOURCES_REMOVED                              |
| TUNING_FAILURE                          | TUNED_AWAY                                     |

No equivalent of the reason code `SelectionFailedEvent.INTERRUPTED` shall be generated for service contexts formerly in the `not_presenting` state since by definition, another selection is in process on the service context concerned.

In the definition of the `USER_STOP` code, replace "The user" with "An application or the end user."

#### A.5.1.2 ServiceContext.select( Locator [] )

- a) The following text shall be considered as being added to the end of the description of this method.

If the content corresponding to any of the locators specified can be successfully presented then the selection operation shall be considered to have succeeded even if attempts to present content corresponding to other locators failed. If different locators failed for different reasons then the reason code is implementation dependent.

- b) Replace the following text:

Successful completion of a select operation using this method provides `ServiceContentHandler` instances for all components that are indicated in the `components` parameter.

with

Successful completion of a selection operation using this method provides `ServiceContentHandlers` for those components indicated in the `components` parameter which were successfully presented.

- c) The following shall be added to the `Throws InvalidLocatorException` clause:

For locators which reference a service component which is not selectable and where there is no `ServiceContentHandler` defined, the exception shall be thrown if the error condition can be detected without causing the method to block. For example, implementations shall not block waiting for network access or tuning where this is required to discover whether a specific locator references a selectable service component and there is a `ServiceContentHandler`. Where such an error condition is discovered after the return from this method, a `SelectionFailedEvent` with reason code `MISSING_HANDLER` shall be generated.

### A.5.1.3 `ServiceContext.getServiceContentHandlers`

The following text is considered to be added to the end of the main body of the method description;

When a service with no components is selected, the `ServiceContext` shall generate a `NormalContentEvent` and enter the `PRESENTING` state.

NOTE: A zero length array may also be returned if the currently selected service has no components at all. For example, a service which is only on-air for part of day and presently has no video, audio or applications.

NOTE: Applications cannot assume anything about the order of the `ServiceContentHandlers` returned by this method.

A zero length array shall also be returned in the case of `ServiceContexts` which are in the presenting state and but where the service components are of a type which has no `ServiceContentHandler` defined.

### A.5.1.4 `ServiceContextPermission`

The following text;

From a security standpoint, a caller is said to "own" a `ServiceContext` instance if it was acquired through `ServiceContextFactory.createServiceContext()` or `ServiceContextFactory.getServiceContext(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext)`.

shall be considered to be replaced by:

A callers "own" service contexts are those which it has created through `ServiceContextFactory.createServiceContext()`. If an `Xlet` would have a `ServiceContext` returned should it call `ServiceContextFactory.getServiceContext(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext)` then that `ServiceContext` is also considered to be one of its "own".

## A.5.2 `javax.tv.util.TVTimer`

### A.5.2.1 `scheduleTimerSpec(TVTimerSpec)`

The following specification changes are considered to be present:

Replace:

If you schedule an absolute specification that should have gone off already, it will go off immediately.

With:

If you schedule an absolute specification that should have gone off already, it will go off immediately, and the return value of this method will be an absolute specification reflecting the current absolute time.

The following text:

If you schedule an absolute specification that should have gone off already, it will go off immediately.

Shall be considered to read:

If you schedule an absolute specification that should have gone off already, it will immediately be eligible to go off though the actual listener notification may happen asynchronously.

In `TVTimer.scheduleTimerSpec`, the following sentence should be considered to be appended to the method description:

The platform may modify the values in the timer spec during the execution of this method. A delayed `TimerSpec` may be transformed into an absolute `TimerSpec`.

#### A.5.2.2 `deschedule(TVTimerSpec)`

In `TVTimer.deschedule`, the following paragraph is considered to be appended to the method description:

No other instances of timer specifications shall be descheduled.

In `TVTimer.deschedule`, the parameters section is considered to read:

t - The timer specification to end monitoring. This shall be an instance returned from the method `TVTimer.schedule` on this instance of `TVTimer`. If it is not, this method shall have no effect.

### A.5.3 `javax.tv.util.TVTimerSpec`

#### A.5.3.1 `setAbsoluteTime(long)`

The following specification additions are considered to be present:

If the time parameter passed is negative, this method shall throw an `IllegalArgumentException`.

#### A.5.3.2 `setTime(long)`

The following specification additions are considered to be present:

If the time parameter passed is negative, this method shall throw an `IllegalArgumentException`.

### A.5.4 `javax.tv.xlet.Xlet`

#### A.5.4.1 Xlet state descriptions

In the table of xlet state descriptions in the package description of the `javax.tv.xlet` package, the description of the loaded state is considered to be modified as follows.

Replace "created using new" with "created using `Class.newInstance`".

#### A.5.4.2 `initXlet`

The sentence:

After this method returns successfully, the Xlet is in the Paused state and should be quiescent.

shall be considered to read:

After this method returns successfully, assuming that the Xlet is still in the Loaded state, it shall transition to the Paused state and should be quiescent.

### A.5.5 `javax.tv.graphics.AlphaColor`

The following features imply dependencies on Java 2 and are therefore not considered to be present in this specification:

- the `createContext` method listed under "Methods inherited from `java.awt.Color`"
- the `java.awt.Transparency` interface listed under "All Implemented Interfaces:"
- the fields listed under "Fields inherited from interface `java.awt.Transparency`"
- the `java.awt.Paint` interface listed under "All Implemented Interfaces:"

## A.5.6 javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl

### A.5.6.1 addMediaSelectListener

The following specification addition is considered to be present

If the specified listener is currently subscribed, no action is performed.

### A.5.6.2 Class Description

The description of this class shall be considered to have the following additional paragraph.

Applications should note that the set of selected service components can be changed by other entities apart from themselves. Such changes will be reported by a `MediaSelectEvent` being sent if a `MediaSelectListener` is currently registered.

### A.5.6.3 All methods throwing `InvalidServiceComponentException`

In all methods throwing `InvalidServiceComponentException`, the following text

If the specified service component is not part of the Service to which the `MediaSelectControl` is restricted

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

If the specified service component is not part of the Service or Services to which the `MediaSelectControl` is restricted

## A.5.7 javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer

### A.5.7.1 getRootContainer

The returns clause of this method is considered to be prefixed with the following:

On the first occasion this method is called for a particular xlet,

The returns clause is considered to have the following text added to it:

On subsequent calls to this method for a particular xlet, the implementation shall return the container without modifying it.

## A.5.8 javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceList

The sorting algorithm used for the method `ServiceList.sortByName` shall be implementation dependent. The result should be something sensible when presented to an end-user of the MHP terminal.

## A.5.9 javax.tv.service.SIManager

### A.5.9.1 getService

The text in the method description "referred to by a given locator" shall be considered to be "identified by a given locator".

The text in the parameters clause "specifying a service" shall be considered to be "identifying a service".

The text in the throws clause "does not reference a valid service" shall be considered to be "does not contain sufficient information to identify a service".

### A.5.9.2 retrieveSIElement

On some implementations of JavaTV, attempts to retrieve a `ProgramEvent` will always fail with an `SIRequestFailureType(INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES)`.



### A.5.9.3 retrieveProgramEvent

On some implementations of JavaTV, attempts to retrieve a ProgramEvent will always fail with an `SIRequestFailureType(INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES)`.

### A.5.10 javax.tv.service.SIElement.getServiceInformationType

This method is considered to have the following text at the end of the method description:

NOTE: In the case where an SI format is in use which is not encoded as one of the set of values defined as constants in the class `ServiceInformationType`, the value returned may be outside this set of values.

### A.5.11 retrieveProgramEvent(Locator,SIRequestor)

The following text is assumed to form part of this method description:

On some implementations of JavaTV, attempts to retrieve a ProgramEvent will always fail with an `SIRequestFailureType(INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES)`.

## A.6 DAVIC 1.4.1p9 [3]

### A.6.1 org.davic.mpeg

#### A.6.1.1 General

The following classes are considered to have a no argument protected constructor:

- `ElementaryStream`
- `Service`
- `TransportStream`

#### A.6.1.2 NotAuthorizedException

The specification is considered to include `org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException` as specified below:

# org.davic.mpeg NotAuthorizedException

## Syntax

```
public class NotAuthorizedException extends java.lang.Exception implements org.davic.mpeg.
    NotAuthorizedInterface
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+-- java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +-- java.lang.Exception
        |
        +-- org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

NotAuthorizedInterface, java.io.Serializable

## Description

This class is thrown by MPEG related APIs when access is requested to information which is scrambled and to which access is not permitted by the security system.

## Constructors

### NotAuthorizedException()

```
public NotAuthorizedException()
```

Constructs a NotAuthorizedException with no detail message

### NotAuthorizedException(String)

```
public NotAuthorizedException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs a NotAuthorizedException with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

*s* - the detail message

## Methods

### getElementaryStreams()

```
public ElementaryStream[] getElementaryStreams()
```

If `getType()` returns `ELEMENTARY_STREAM`, then this method returns the set of ElementaryStreams that could not be descrambled. Otherwise it returns null.

#### Specified By:

`NotAuthorizedInterface.getElementaryStreams()` in interface `NotAuthorizedInterface`

#### Returns:

either the set of ElementaryStreams that could not be descrambled or null

**getReason(int)**

```
public int[] getReason(int index)
```

Returns the reason(s) why descrambling was not possible.

**Specified By:**

`NotAuthorizedInterface.getReason(int)` in interface `NotAuthorizedInterface`

**Parameters:**

`index` - If the component to which access failed is a Service, `index` shall be 0. Otherwise `index` shall refer to one stream in the set returned by `getElementaryStreams()`.

**Returns:**

an array of length 2 where the first element of the array is the major reason and the second element of the array is the minor reason.

**Throws:**

`IndexOutOfBoundsException` - If the component to which access failed is a Service, this exception will be thrown if `index` is non zero. If the component(s) to which access failed was a (set of) elementary streams then this exception will be thrown where `index` is beyond the size of the array returned by `getElementaryStreams`.

**See Also:**

`NotAuthorizedInterface.getElementaryStreams()`

**getService()**

```
public Service getService()
```

If `getType()` returns `SERVICE`, then this method returns the Service that could not be descrambled. Otherwise it returns null.

**Specified By:**

`NotAuthorizedInterface.getService()` in interface `NotAuthorizedInterface`

**Returns:**

either the Service that could not be descrambled or null

**getType()**

```
public int getType()
```

**Specified By:**

`NotAuthorizedInterface.getType()` in interface `NotAuthorizedInterface`

**Returns:**

`SERVICE` or `ELEMENTARY_STREAM` to indicate that either a service (MPEG program) or one or more elementary streams could not be descrambled.

## A.6.2 Chapter 9, Application Format

### A.6.2.1 Section 9.4.7. "The MPEG-2 Section Filter API"

In the description of this class there are 2 instances of a cross reference to DAVIC part 10, section 115.3. In each case this shall be considered as a reference to DAVIC part 10, section 12.5.3.

## A.6.3 org.davic.mpeg.dvb

### A.6.3.1 General

The following classes are considered to have a no argument protected constructor:

- DvbService
- DvbElementaryStream
- DvbTransportStream

## A.6.4 org.davic.mpeg.sections

### A.6.4.1 RingSectionFilter

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

All sections in a ring section filter are initialised to empty when the ring section filter is first created. Clearing them to empty any time after this is the responsibility of the application. Starting a ring section filter shall not clear any of the sections to empty.

### A.6.4.2 Section

#### A.6.4.2.1 clone()

Section is considered to have the method clone() with the following behaviour.

A cloned Section object is a new and separate object. It is unaffected by changes in the state of the original Section object or restarting of the SectionFilter the source Section object originated from. The clone method must be implemented without declaring exceptions.

#### A.6.4.2.2 getData()

Remove the following text from the methods of org.davic.mpeg.sections.Section:

(everything after the length field, not including a CRC check)

#### A.6.4.2.3 getFullStatus()

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

Returns true when the Section object contains valid data.

#### A.6.4.2.4 Class Description

The following text shall be considered to be present at the end of the class description.

In this class, the term "section data" shall be considered to include the section header, any possible CRC and all bytes in between.

### A.6.4.3 SectionFilter

#### A.6.4.3.1 Cross reference error

In the description of this class there are 12 instances of a cross reference to H7. In each case this shall be considered as a reference to E.8.1.

#### A.6.4.3.2 startFiltering( all signatures )

In these methods, the description of when the FilterResourceException shall be thrown is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

This shall be applied whether the parent section filter group is connected to a TS or not, or whether this SectionFilter object is already started or not.

#### A.6.4.3.3 `startFiltering(java.lang.Object, int, int, int, byte[], byte[])`

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

`IllegalFilterDefinitionException` is thrown if offset is too small.

#### A.6.4.3.4 `startFiltering (appData, pid, tableId) exceptions`

Like other `startFiltering` methods `org.davic.mpeg.sections.SectionFilter.startFiltering (appData, pid, tableId)` shall throw an `IllegalFilterDefinitionException` where:

- the Java integer is negative
- the Java integer is larger than what is allowed for PID or `table_id` according to the relevant MPEG specification

#### A.6.4.3.5 **Started Section Filters**

The class description is considered to have the following text added at its end.

When a `SectionFilterGroup` is detached, either by the client or through resource withdrawal, started `SectionFilters` shall remain started. Hence if the `SectionFilterGroup` is re-attached, those filters shall re-activate.

### A.6.4.4 **SectionFilterGroup**

#### A.6.4.4.1 **attach**

A `NotAuthorizedException` is added to the definition of this method.

#### A.6.4.4.2 **Constructors**

The constructors are considered to have.

Throws `IllegalArgumentException` if `numberOfFilters < 1`.

#### A.6.4.4.3 **sectionSize**

All methods with a `sectionSize` parameter are considered to have the following text appended to their descriptions:

Throws `IllegalArgumentException` if `sectionSize < 1`.

#### A.6.4.4.4 **newRingSectionFilter**

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

Throws `IllegalArgumentException` if `ringSize < 1`.

#### A.6.4.4.5 **Constructor(int, boolean)**

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

The scope of the `resourcePriority` shall be a single application only.

### A.6.4.5 **TimeOutEvent**

The specification is considered to include `org.davic.mpeg.sections.TimeOutEvent` as specified below:

# org.davic.mpeg.sections TimeOutEvent

## Declaration

```
public class TimeOutEvent extends org.davic.mpeg.sections.EndOfFilteringEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.davic.mpeg.sections.org.davic.mpeg.sections.SectionFilterEvent
        |
        +--org.davic.mpeg.sections.org.davic.mpeg.sections.EndOfFilteringEvent
            |
            +--org.davic.mpeg.sections.TimeOutEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is generated if section filter operations time out within the period specified by the `setTimeout()` method. For a `SimpleSectionFilter` it will be generated if no sections arrive within the specified period. For a `TableSectionFilter`, it will be generated if the complete table does not arrive within the specified time. For a `RingSectionFilter`, it will be generated if the specified time has elapsed since the arrival of the last section being successfully filtered.

## Constructors

### TimeOutEvent(SectionFilter, Object)

```
public TimeOutEvent(SectionFilter f, java.lang.Object appData)
```

This constructs an `TimeOutEvent` event for the specified `SectionFilter` object.

#### Parameters:

`f` - the `SectionFilter` object which timed out

`appData` - application data that was passed to the `startFiltering` method

## Methods

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

This returns the `SectionFilter` object which timed out

#### Overrides:

`EndOfFilteringEvent.getSource()` in class `EndOfFilteringEvent`

## A.6.5 Simple Section Filter

The description of the `getSection` method shall be considered to have the following text added:

This method shall return null if no section has been successfully filtered for this instance and the owning `SectionFilterGroup` is not attached.

## A.6.6 org.davic.media

### A.6.6.1 FreezeControl.resume()

Add the following to the description of the semantics for this method:

If the player is started and if decoding of the media stream is not frozen then calls to this method shall have no effect. If the player is not started then the exception shall be thrown.

### A.6.6.2 MediaTimePositionChangedEvent

Add the following constructor:

```
MediaTimePositionChangedEvent (
    Controller from,
    int previous,
    int current,
    int target,
    Time mediaTime)
```

With the following definition of parameters:

Parameters:

- from - the controller whose media position was changed
- previous - the state the controller was in before this event
- current - the state the controller was in at the time the event was generated
- target - the state that the controller is heading to
- mediaTime - the media time after the change

### A.6.6.3 NotAuthorizedMediaException

The following constructors are considered to be removed from the specification:

```
NotAuthorizedMediaException()
NotAuthorizedMediaException(java.lang.String reason)
```

The following constructors are considered to be a normative part of the specification:

```
NotAuthorizedMediaException( org.davic.mpeg.Service, int reason )
NotAuthorizedMediaException( org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[], int reason[] )
NotAuthorizedMediaException( org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[], int[], int[] )
NotAuthorizedMediaException(Service, int major_reason,int minor_reason)
```

#### **NotAuthorizedMediaException(ElementaryStream[], int[])**

```
public NotAuthorizedMediaException(org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[] e, int[] reason)
```

Constructor for exception due to failure accessing one or more MPEG elementary streams The caller of this constructor is responsible for ensuring the two arrays provided as parameters are the same size. The implementation is not expected to check this. The exception has no detail message.

**Parameters:**

- e - the elementary streams which could not be accessed
- reason - the reason why the exception was thrown for each elementary stream

Use of the constructor `NotAuthorizedMediaException(ElementaryStream[] e, int[] reason)` will result in the major reason for each elementary stream being the one specified in the reason parameter to the method and the minor reason being `OTHER` as defined in `NotAuthorizedInterface`.

### **NotAuthorizedMediaException(Service, int)**

```
public NotAuthorizedMediaException(org.davic.mpeg.Service s, int reason)
```

Constructor for exception due to failure accessing an MPEG service. The exception has no detail message.

#### **Parameters:**

`s` - the service which could not be accessed

`reason` - the reason why the service could not be accessed

Use of the constructor `NotAuthorizedMediaException(Service, int reason)` will result in the major reason for the service being the one specified in the reason parameter to the method and the minor reason being `OTHER` as defined in `NotAuthorizedInterface`.

### **NotAuthorizedMediaException(ElementaryStream[], int[], int[])**

```
NotAuthorizedMediaException(ElementaryStream[] e, int[] major_reason, int[] minor_reason)
```

Constructor for exception due to failure accessing one or more MPEG elementary streams. The caller of this constructor is responsible for ensuring the three arrays provided as parameters are the same size. The implementation is not expected to check this.

#### **Parameters:**

`e` - the elementary streams which could not be accessed

`major_reason` - the major reason why the exception was thrown for each elementary stream

`minor_reason` - the minor reason why the exception was thrown for each elementary stream

### **NotAuthorizedMediaException(Service, int, int)**

```
public NotAuthorizedMediaException(org.davic.mpeg.Service s, int major_reason, int minor_reason)
```

Constructor for exception due to failure accessing an MPEG service

#### **Parameters:**

`s` - the service which could not be accessed

`major_reason` - the major reason why the service could not be accessed

`minor_reason` - the minor reason why the service could not be accessed

#### **Since:**

MHP 1.0.2

## **A.6.6.4 LanguageControl**

The following description of semantics is considered to be present:

If more than one stream with the same language exists, the behaviour of `selectLanguage(String)` is to select the first listed in the network signalling.

NOTE: This is equivalent to item **b** under 11.4.2.3, "Default media player behaviour" on page 261.

If no content of the appropriate media type for the control is present, a String of length zero is returned.



## A.6.7 org.davic.net

### A.6.7.1 InvalidLocatorException

The following class definition is considered to be a normative part of the specification:

# org.davic.net InvalidLocatorException

## Syntax

```
public class InvalidLocatorException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+-- java.lang.Throwable
|
+-- java.lang.Exception
|
+-- org.davic.net.InvalidLocatorException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

This exception is thrown when one or more parameters to construct a Locator are invalid.

## Constructors

### InvalidLocatorException()

```
public InvalidLocatorException()
```

Constructor without reason.

### InvalidLocatorException(String)

```
public InvalidLocatorException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised

## A.6.7.2 Locator

### A.6.7.2.1 Locator()

The no-argument constructor for `org.davic.net.Locator` is considered to not be present. The absence of any description on the method indicates that this was an editing error in the DAVIC specification.

### A.6.7.2.2 toExternalForm()

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If the instance of `Locator` has been created using `Locator(java.lang.String url)` and the URL is a non-null invalid URL the behaviour is implementation dependent.

### A.6.7.3 tuning

#### A.6.7.3.1 NetworkInterfaceController

##### A.6.7.3.1.1 reserve()

The semantic of the following throws clause is corrected as follows:

```
Throws: NoFreeInterfaceException
        raised if the requested network interface can not be reserved
```

The following from the semantic of this method:

If this `NetworkInterfaceController` has already reserved another `NetworkInterface`, then it will either release that `NetworkInterface` and reserve the specified one, or throw an exception. If the specified `NetworkInterface` has already been reserved by this `NetworkInterfaceController`, then this method does nothing.

is replaced with the following:

If this `NetworkInterfaceController` has currently reserved another `NetworkInterface`, then it will either release that `NetworkInterface` and reserve an appropriate one, or throw an exception. If a `NetworkInterface` that is able to tune to the specified transport stream is currently reserved by this `NetworkInterfaceController`, then this method does nothing.

##### A.6.7.3.1.2 reserveFor()

The following from the semantic of this method:

If this `NetworkInterfaceController` has already reserved another `NetworkInterface`, then it will either release that `NetworkInterface` and reserve an appropriate one, or throw an exception. If `NetworkInterfaceController` has already reserved a `NetworkInterface` that is able to tune to the specified transport stream, then this method does nothing.

is replaced with the following:

If this `NetworkInterfaceController` has currently reserved another `NetworkInterface`, then it will either release that `NetworkInterface` and reserve an appropriate one, or throw an exception. If a `NetworkInterface` that is able to tune to the specified transport stream is currently reserved by this `NetworkInterfaceController`, then this method does nothing.

##### A.6.7.3.1.3 tune()

Replace "this `NetworkInterface`" with "the `NetworkInterface` reserved by this `NetworkInterfaceController`" in section H.5.4.3 of DAVIC specification.

#### A.6.7.3.2 NetworkInterface

##### A.6.7.3.2.1 Protected constructor

This class is considered to have a no argument protected constructor with the following statement attached to it:

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## A.6.7.4 ca

### A.6.7.4.1 CAMessage

The following class definition is considered to be a normative part of the specification:

```
public class CAMessage
  extends java.lang.Object
```

This class represents messages to CA modules.

Constructors

```
public CAMessage(byte [] data)
```

Constructor for the message

Parameters:

data - message data

Method Detail

getData

```
public byte[] getData()
```

Returns:

the data of the message

### A.6.7.4.2 CAModule

#### A.6.7.4.2.1 buyEntitlement(org.davic.net.Locator)

This method is considered to have the amendment.

Replace:

Initiates a purchase dialogue for specified service or future event (specified by a Locator).

With:

Request to buy a specified service or future event (specified by a Locator) from a conditional access system.

In the comments of `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule.buyEntitlement()` the sentence:

In case of CA0 this maps onto event\_query with event\_cmd\_id = mmi (Common Interface specification, section B.4.1.1)."

is replaced with

In case of DVB Common Interface, this maps onto CI messages as follows:

- when the Locator points to a service and the terminal is currently receiving the transport stream that this service is carried in and this transport stream is available to this CA module, then this method is mapped to a ca\_pmt message with ca\_pmt\_cmd\_id set to "ok\_mmi". The value returned in the ca\_pmt\_reply is mapped as defined in the documentation of the constants in the class. If the module is currently descrambling the service and the terminal is aware of this, ENTITLEMENT\_AVAILABLE shall be returned immediately without communicating with the module.
- when the Locator points to a service that is not carried in a currently received transport stream, NotTunedException is thrown
- when the Locator points to an event, this maps onto event\_query message with event\_cmd\_id set to "mmi" (Common Interface specification, section B.4.1.1). The value returned in the event\_reply message is mapped as defined in the documentation of the constants in this class.

In the CA API, the constants defined in the `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule` class are mapped to the `CA_enable` values of the `ca_pmt_response` message and the `event_status` values of the `event_reply` message in the Common Interface protocol as follows:

ENTITLEMENT\_AVAILABLE:

CA\_enable value "Descrambling possible" (0x01)  
 event\_status value "entitlement\_available" (0x01)  
 event\_status value "mmi\_complete\_available" (0x05)

ENTITLEMENT\_NOT\_AVAILABLE:

CA\_enable value "Descrambling not possible (because no entitlement)" (0x04)  
 event\_status value "entitlement\_not\_available" (0x02)  
 event\_status value "mmi\_complete\_not\_available" (0x06)

ENTITLEMENT\_UNKNOWN:

CA\_enable value "Descrambling not possible (for technical reasons)" (0x05)  
 all other CA\_enable values not having an explicit mapping in this section  
 event\_status value "entitlement\_unknown" (0x00)  
 event\_status value "mmi\_complete\_unknown" (0x04)  
 all other event\_status values not having an explicit mapping in this section

MMI\_DIALOGUE\_REQUIRED:

CA\_enable value "Descrambling possible under conditions (purchase dialogue)" (0x02)  
 CA\_enable value "Descrambling possible under conditions (technical dialogue)" (0x03)  
 event\_status value "mmi\_dialogue\_required" (0x03)

A.6.7.4.2.2 `isDescramblable(ElementaryStream streams[])`

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If an empty array is passed in, returns true.

A.6.7.4.2.3 `openMessageSession(MessageListener)`

This method is considered to have the amendment:

Modify:

Throws: `ModuleBusyException`  
 raised if the module is busy and is not able to handle a message session at the moment

To say:

Throws: `ModuleBusyException`  
 raised if the module is busy and is not able to handle a message session at the moment. This is CA system dependant.

The description of this method is considered to have the following text added to it.

In systems based on the DVB common interface, messages sessions opened using this method shall be mapped onto the CA pipeline for the module represented by this `CAModule` instance as defined in section 6.8. of the common interface extensions specification. Neither the `module_id` or the `resource_id` of the module are visible to the application. It is the responsibility of the platform to perform the relevant mapping.

NOTE: The document referred to as "common interface extensions specification." is [ETSI TS 101 699 \[71\]](#).

The following text:

Throws: `ModuleResourceNonExistentException`

raised if the specified resource cannot be addressed. This includes situations where the resource is not present in the module as well as addressing what would be a public resource in a DAVIC CA0 / DVB-CI system.

Is considered to be replaced by:

Throws: `ModuleResourceNonExistentException`

raised if the specified resource is not present in the module.

NOTE: The `ModuleResourceVersionTooLowException` shall never be thrown in this version of this specification.

#### A.6.7.4.2.4 `queryEntitlement(org.davic.net.Locator)`

This method is considered to include the following:

Throws: `org.davic.net.InvalidLocatorException`

if the locator does not point to a valid service or event

In the comments of `org.davic.net.ca.CAModule.queryEntitlement()` the sentence:

In case of CA0 this maps onto `event_query` with `event_cmd_id = query` (Common Interface specification, section B.4.1.1)."

is replaced with

In case of DVB Common Interface, this maps onto CI messages as follows:

- when the Locator points to a service and the terminal is currently receiving the transport stream that this service is carried in and this transport stream is available to this CA module, then this method is mapped to a `ca_pmt` message with `ca_pmt_cmd_id` set to "query". The value returned in the `ca_pmt_reply` is mapped as defined in the documentation of the constants in the class. If the module is currently descrambling the service and the terminal is aware of this, `ENTITLEMENT_AVAILABLE` shall be returned immediately without communicating with the module.
- when the Locator points to a service that is not carried in a currently received transport stream, `ENTITLEMENT_UNKNOWN` shall be returned.
- when the Locator points to an event, this maps onto `event_query` with `event_cmd_id = query` (Common Interface specification, section B.4.1.1). The return values is mapped as defined in the documentation of the constants in this class.

#### A.6.7.4.2.5 `sendToModule`

The description of this method is considered to have the following text added to it.

In systems based on the DVB common interface, messages sent using this method shall be mapped onto the `CAPipelineRequest` as defined in section 6.8.3 of the common interface extensions specification. Responses from the CA system reported through the `CAPipelineResponse` and `CAPipelineNotification` messages shall be mapped onto instances of `ModuleResponseEvent`.

NOTE: The document referred to as "common interface extensions specification." is [ETSI TS 101 699 \[71\]](#).

#### A.6.7.4.2.6 Protected constructor

This class is considered to have a no argument protected constructor with the following statement attached to it:

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

#### A.6.7.4.2.7 Additional methods"

The following specification is considered to contain the following additional methods:

##### **getApplicationTitle**

```
/**
 * Retrieves the Application Title String.

This functionality is provided at low lowel (within MMI and Application Information
sessions defined in EN50221) by the message application_info() message (Application
Information resource, see 8.
4.2.2)

 * @exception ModuleUnavailableException raised if the physical CA module
 *         has been removed and is not available any more
 * @return the application title string
 */
public String getApplicationTitle() throws ModuleUnavailableException;
```

##### **enterApplication**

```
/**
 * Requests the module to enter start the application and enter
 * the main application menu.

This functionality is provided at low lowel (within MMI and Application Information
sessions defined in EN50221) by the message enter_menu() message (Application Information
resource, see 8.4.2.3)

 * @exception ModuleUnavailableException raised if the physical CA module
 *         has been removed and is not available any more
 */
public void enterApplication() throws ModuleUnavailableException;
```

##### **closeMMI**

```
/**
 * Requests the module to leave
 * the complete tree of the current high-level MMI dialogs.

This functionality is provided at low lowel (within MMI and Application Information
sessions defined in EN50221) by the message close_mmi() message (MMI resource, see 8.6.2.1)

 * @exception ModuleUnavailableException raised if the physical CA module
 *         has been removed and is not available any more
 */
public void closeMMI() throws ModuleUnavailableException;
```

#### A.6.7.4.2.8 listEntitlements

This method is considered to have the following text added:

In case of DVB Common Interface, it is not possible to obtain this information from the CI module. Thus this method shall return an array of length zero.

#### A.6.7.4.3 CAModuleManager

##### A.6.7.4.3.1 addMMIListener()

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If an application has registered (and not removed) a listener to handle the MMI dialogues and if an MMI dialogue is required, this causes the platform to ask the MMI listener to handle the MMI dialogues. If there is no application registered to handle the MMI dialogues, these will be handled by the platform.

#### A.6.7.4.3.2 getModules(Service s)

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If the service passed as a parameter is not scrambled, returns an empty array whose length is 0.

#### A.6.7.4.4 NoFreeCapacityException

The following class definition is considered to be a normative part of the specification:

## org.davic.net.ca NoFreeCapacityException

### Syntax

public class NoFreeCapacityException extends [org.davic.net.ca.CAException](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+-- java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +-- java.lang.Exception
        |
        +-- org.davic.net.ca.CAException
            |
            +-- org.davic.net.ca.NoFreeCapacityException
  
```

### All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

### Description

This exception is thrown when a method is called and the CA module does not have the required capacity to perform the action

## Constructors

### NoFreeCapacityException()

```
public NoFreeCapacityException()
```

Default constructor for the exception

### NoFreeCapacityException(String)

```
public NoFreeCapacityException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised

#### A.6.7.4.5 MMIOObject

The following class definition is considered to be a normative part of the specification:

## org.davic.net.ca

# MMIObject

## Syntax

```
public class MMIObject
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.davic.net.ca.MMIObject
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

## List, Text

## Description

The base class of all MMI classes.

## Methods

### close()

```
public void close()
```

Closes the MMI object and informs the CA API implementation that the application intends to close or has closed the corresponding MMI screen.

### A.6.7.4.6 DescramblerProxy

#### A.6.7.4.6.1 startDescrambling()

In the comments of `org.davic.net.ca.DescramblerProxy.startDescrambling()` (all signature versions) the sentence:

This method may start an MMI dialog.

is replaced with:

This method may result in the CA system requesting an MMI dialog.

The description of this method is considered to be extended by the following text:

In systems based on the DVB common interface this maps onto `ca_pmt` with `ca_pmt_cmd_id = ok_descrambling` (Common Interface specification, section 8.4.3.4). and the `NotAuthorizedException` shall never be thrown.

#### A.6.7.4.6.2 startDescrambling(org.davic.mpeg.Service, java.lang.Object)

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

`DescramblerProxy` applies from the point of view of one application. Methods such as `startDescrambling()` and `stopDescrambling` apply on a per-application basis and do not impact descrambling on behalf of other applications, except subject to platform resource limitations.

#### A.6.7.4.6.3 startDescrambling(org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[], java.lang.Object)

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:



If `org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[]` is a zero length array the method has no effect.

A.6.7.4.6.4            `startDescrambling(org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[],  
CAModule, java.lang.Object)`

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If `org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[]` is a zero length array the method has no effect.

A.6.7.4.6.5            `startDescramblingDialog(org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[])`

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If `org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[]` is a zero length array the method has no effect.

A.6.7.4.6.6            `stopDescrambling()`

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

If no descrambling is being done then this method has no effect

A.6.7.4.6.7            `stopDescrambling(org.davic.mpeg.ElementaryStream[] streams)`

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

The method `stopDescrambling( ElementaryStream[] )` only stops the descrambling of streams which have been started through this `DescramblerProxy` instance, and not started through any other instance.

Is considered to include the following parameter specification:

**streams:** array of `ElementaryStreams` whose descrambling is to be stopped.

Is considered to have the following text appended to its description:

The `stopDescrambling` method only affects members of the array of streams that are being descrambled. There is no effect on any streams listed in the array that are not being descrambled.

A.6.7.4.6.8            `startDescramblingDialog`

The description of this method is considered to be extended by the following:

In systems based on the DVB common interface, the `NotAuthorizedException` shall never be thrown.

A.6.7.4.6.9            Class Description

The methods `startDescrambling` and `stopDescrambling` in `DescramblerProxy` are used to add and remove, respectively, elementary streams of one service from the set of elementary streams to be descrambled. The MHP implementation needs to keep track of the set of elementary streams that are requested to be descrambled by the application.

When the application calls `startDescrambling` or `stopDescrambling` and this set of elementary streams changes while the service is being descrambled, an implementation using the Common Interface shall send the `CA_PMT` message with the `ca_pmt_list_management` set to "update" and the version number appropriately changed. This `CA_PMT` message shall include information about only those elementary streams that are to be descrambled. Those elementary streams that are not requested to be descrambled should be omitted from the `CA_PMT` message completely.

NOTE 1: The `ca_pmt_cmd_id` can't be used to tag elementary streams that should not be descrambled because there is no suitable value of `ca_pmt_cmd_id` for this purpose. Therefore these streams need to be left out from the `CA_PMT` completely.

NOTE 2: Updating the `CA_PMT` in response to the method calls from the MHP application requires also changing the `CA_PMT version_number` field. This implies that the MHP implementation needs to have an independent version numbering for the `CA_PMTs` while descrambling one service and the `version_number` field of the `PMT` in the broadcast can't be simply copied into the `CA_PMT`.

#### A.6.7.4.7 StartMMIEvent(MMIObject, int, java.lang.Object)

Is considered to include the following parameter specification:

**caModule:** the CAModule object that is the source of the event, which shall be returned by the getSource() method.

#### A.6.7.4.8 ModuleResponseEvent

##### A.6.7.4.8.1 Protected Constructor

This class is considered to have a no argument protected constructor with the following statement attached to it:

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

#### A.6.7.4.9 NewModuleEvent

The class description for this class is considered to have the following text appended to it:

In the case of a CA module based on the DVB common interface, this event shall only be generated when module initialisation has been completed. Hence an application has no means to detect when a module is inserted but has not yet been initialised.

#### A.6.7.4.10 PIDChangeEvent

The following the text:

This event is generated as part of the Host Control functionality in the Common Interface / CA0 to signal that an elementary stream should be substituted with an other one. This event is intended for data services only. Television services that are presented using a high level media player API (whose implementation implicitly handles descrambling) will also have this event handled implicitly by that implementation.

Is considered to be replaced with the following:

In systems based upon the DVB Common Interface this event is generated in response to the Host Control replace / clear\_replace requests.

NOTE: This event is for information only. The platform is responsible for implementing the requests from the CA system. See also [R206 \[79\]](#).

This class is considered to inherit from `org.davic.net.ca.CAEvent` instead of `org.davic.net.ca.DescramblerEvent`.

The text:

```
public PIDChangeEvent(short oldPid,
                    short newPid,
                    Object descramblerProxy)
```

and:

descramblerProxy - the DescramblerProxy object representing the descrambling resource which is the source of the event.

is considered to be replaced with:

```
public PIDChangeEvent(short oldPid,
                    short newPid,
                    Object caModule)
```

and:

caModule - the CAModule object representing the CA system which is the source of the event.

The text:

```
public Object getSource()
Returns the DescramblerProxy that is the source of the event.
```

Overrides:

```
getSource in class DescramblerEvent
```

is considered to be replaced with:

```
public Object getSource()
Returns the CAModule that is the source of the event.
```

Overrides:

```
getSource in class CAEvent
```

#### A.6.7.4.11 TuneRequestEvent

The following text:

This event is generated as part of the Host Control functionality in the Common Interface / CA0.

Is considered to be replaced with the following:

In systems based upon the DVB Common Interface this event is generated in response to the Host Control tune request.

NOTE 1: This event is only guaranteed to be delivered to applications that survive the service selection caused by the Host Control tune request (see [11.6.4, "Conditional Access API" on page 274](#)).

NOTE 2: This event is for information only. The platform is responsible for implementing the service selection autonomously in response to the request from the CA system.

This class is considered to inherit from `org.davic.net.ca.CAEvent` instead of `org.davic.net.ca.DescramblerEvent`.

The text:

```
public TuneRequestEvent(Locator locator,
                        Object descramblerProxy)
```

and:

descramblerProxy - the DescramblerProxy object representing descrambler resource which is the source of the event

is considered to be replaced with:

```
public TuneRequestEvent(Locator locator,
                        Object caModule)
```

and:

caModule - the CAModule object representing the CA system which is the source of the event.

The text:

```
public Object getSource()
Returns the DescramblerProxy that is the source of the event.
```

Overrides:

```
getSource in class DescramblerEvent
```

is considered to be replaced with:

```
public Object getSource()
Returns the CAModule that is the source of the event.
```

Overrides:

```
getSource in class CAEvent
```

#### A.6.7.4.12 DescramblingStartedEvent

In the case of DVB common interface, this event is sent when the MHP terminal has requested the module to start the descrambling.

#### A.6.7.4.13 DescramblingStoppedEvent

In the case of DVB common interface, this event is sent when the MHP terminal has requested the module to stop the descrambling.

#### A.6.7.5 dvb.DvbLocator(int onid, int tsid, int serviceid, int eventid, int componenttags[], String filePath).

The following parameter specification:

**the:** file path string including the slash character in the beginning

is considered to read:

**filePath:** string including the slash character in the beginning

#### A.6.7.6 dvb.DvbLocator

##### A.6.7.6.1 DvbLocator(int, int, int, int, int[])

In the constructor `DvbLocator(int, int, int, int, int[])`, the name of the last parameter in the method signature shall be considered to be "componenttags".

##### A.6.7.6.2 Additional method

The following method is considered to be present:

```
/** Returns the textual service identifier, if one was provided to the constructor.
 * @return the textual service identifier, null if not present
 * @since MHP1.0.1
 */
public String getTextualServiceIdentifier() ;
```

##### A.6.7.6.3 getOriginalNetworkId

The returns clause of the `getOriginalNetworkId()` method is considered to include "-1 if not present" similarly as the other methods returning the numeric identifiers.

## A.6.8 org.davic.net.tuning

### A.6.8.1 Figure H-1

In Figure H-1: " Tuning API object model: Base classes. " in the class `NetworkInterface`, the method `getURL()` shall be considered to be "`getLocator()`"

## A.6.8.2 Figure H-2

In:

Figure H-2: " Tuning API object model: Exceptions."

the exception `IncorrectURLException` shall be considered to be absent.

## A.6.9 Extensibility and Over-Riding

The DAVIC specification [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) is considered to include the following;

The addition of public or protected constructors, methods or fields to the `org.davic` packages is allowed except where this would cause a compliant MHP application to fail. Examples of the latter include the adding of abstract methods to classes or adding of methods to interfaces which application classes will implement.

Within the `org.davic` package and its sub packages, overriding inherited public and protected methods not specified as being overridden is an allowable implementation option.

NOTE: This language does not apply to constructors or to fields, because inherited fields and constructors cannot be overridden in the Java language.

## A.7 HAVi [50]

### A.7.1 Drafting conventions

This specification does not follow the ETSI drafting rules as specified in [ETSI TR 101 262 \[81\]](#). In particular, the term "should" shall be interpreted in terms of the ETSI drafting rules as being closer to "shall" than "should".

### A.7.2 General

#### A.7.2.1 Thread-safety

As with the `java.awt` package, the `org.havi.ui` package is not required to be thread safe.

#### A.7.2.2 javadoc errors

The javadoc for the HAVi specification appears to be compiled against a version of the "java.\*" packages more recent than that required for the MHP specification. All methods, fields & inner classes shown as inherited from classes outside the "org.havi" package namespace which are not present in the MHP specification for that class shall be considered to be absent from the HAVi specification.

### A.7.3 Event mechanism

This section presents a clarification for the HAVi event mechanism.

#### A.7.3.1 Introduction

One of the reasons for the HAVi event mechanism is to provide a mechanism for widgets to request a type of input that may not be available on the input device supported by a platform. A HAVi widget can indicate its input preference by implementing one or more `HxxxInputPreferred` interfaces. This is important to enable application provided widgets to have access to the same capabilities as have always been available to platform provided ones.

An `HxxxInputPreferred` interface indicates the widget that implements the interface expects a certain type of input events. E.g. on systems with limited input devices the platform can supply a virtual keyboard to generate the interface-specific events.

The `Hxxxable` and `HxxxValue` interfaces group methods common to various `HVisible` subclasses; they do not imply additional support from the platform.

The `HxxxInputPreferred` interfaces all imply possible support by a (virtual) keyboard. The platform shall provide a way for the user to generate the input expected by the focused component. This could mean automatically presenting some kind of virtual keyboard when a focused component requires input that could not be generated in another way. The platform can determine which virtual keys a widget requires by looking at the `HxxxInputPreferred` interfaces it implements.

For `keyCode` input, `HNavigationInputPreferred.getNavigationkeys()` and `HKeyboardInputPreferred.getValidInput()` allow the platform to determine which `keyCodes` the particular widgets expect. Platform implementations shall provide the user with a means to generate the `keyCodes` expected by all `HxxxInputPreferred` interfaces implemented by the widget having input focus (with the exception of `keyCodes` not supported according to `org.havi.ui.event.HKeyCapabilities`).

HAVi events generated by the platform and sent to a `HComponent` are `HActionEvent`, `HAdjustmentEvent`, `HItemEvent`, `HTextEvent`, `HRcEvent`, `HFocusEvent` and `HKeyEvent`.

### A.7.3.2 Overview of HAVi events

`HComponents` indicate they want to receive `HFocusEvents` by implementing the `HNavigationInputPreferred` interface. For `HNavigationInputPreferred`, the `keyCodes` for navigation keystrokes generated on the `HNavigationInputPreferred` will be passed to the `HNavigationInputPreferred` as an `HFocusEvent` `transferId`. The `HNavigationInputPreferred` will process an `HFocusEvent` of id `FOCUS_TRANSFER` in its `processHFocusEvent` method by calling `requestFocus` on the `HNavigable` associated with the `keyCode` returned by `HFocusEvent`. `getTransferId()`, if there is one.

Implementations of `HNavigationInputPreferred` will not send this `HFocusEvent` to `FocusListeners` or `HFocusListeners`, it is only used by the platform to communicate the `transferId` to the `HNavigationInputPreferred`.

The manner in which the keystrokes are generated is implementation-specific, as some platforms may supply a more extensive hardware keyboard, while other platforms may choose to provide a virtual keyboard to generate these keystrokes.

Also, HAVi allows generation of the HAVi events on top of AWT (in `HComponent.processEvent`) from other events as an implementation option, to allow for platforms unable to generate HAVi event directly. As a result of this, it is platform specific whether `processEvent` is ever called with a HAVi event as argument, or that the event is generated in this method from other events. In such an implementation, a widget may receive the original, unexpected, platform-specific, non-HAVi `java.awt` events as well as the translated HAVi events. To avoid confusion, a HAVi widget is supposed to process only the HAVi events and applications should ignore other events (i.e. not add listeners for `java.awt` events and not use them through `processXxxEvent` methods).

For the handling of navigation keys, an implementation of the `HNavigationInputPreferred` interface receives the keycodes for navigation as the `transferId` of `org.havi.ui.event.HFocusEvent`, and not as a `java.awt.event.KeyEvent` or `org.havi.ui.event.HKeyEvent`. (On platforms which generate HAVi events from other events, it is possible that the component does receive a `java.awt.event.KeyEvent`, however this is platform-specific and applications should not rely on this).

`HComponent.processEvent` is responsible to dispatch `HFocusEvents` to the `processHFocusEvent` method; this method will call `requestFocus` on the target of a `transferId` for a `FOCUS_TRANSFER` event, and send `HFocusEvents` of type `FOCUS_GAINED` and `FOCUS_LOST` to any registered `HFocusListeners` for classes that support adding these listeners. Depending on which other HAVi interfaces the component implements and on whether it extends `HVisible`, this method will also change the state of the widget, play appropriate sounds, and notify any listeners specified in these other interfaces for a focus change.

An `HComponent` implementing `HKeyboardInputPreferred` will receive input in the form of `HKeyEvents`. On platforms with limited input devices, the platform can present a virtual keyboard for the user to generate the requested `keyCodes`. The platform can use the input type of the `HKeyboardInputPreferred` to determine which keys to present on this virtual keyboard, however, the platform is not required to prevent the user from generating more `keyCodes` than those requested by the `HKeyboardInputPreferred`.

HAVi allows to generate the `HKeyEvents` from other events in `HComponent.processEvent`, so any `KeyEvents` received by the component which are not `HKeyEvents` should be ignored as platform-specific.

`HComponent.processEvent` is responsible for dispatching `HKeyEvents` to the `processHKeyEvent` method; this method will send the `HKeyEvent` to any registered `HKeyListeners` for classes that support adding these listeners.

If an `HComponent` implements both `HNavigationInputPreferred` and `HKeyboardInputPreferred`, the platform will provide a way for the user to generate the `keyCodes` for both `HFocusEvents` and `HKeyEvents` in an unambiguous way (e.g. while in edit mode, `keyCodes` are converted into `HKeyEvents`, otherwise they generate `HFocusEvents`). The `getEditMode` method can be called by the platform to determine the current input mode of the widget. The platform will provide a platform specific way to switch between any different input modes as required by any limitations of its input devices, and notify the widget of this change by sending it an appropriate `START_CHANGE` or `END_CHANGE` event.

If the same `keyCode` is expected for different input types (e.g. `VK_ENTER` is set as navigation code while the widget also expects it as an `HKeyEvent`), then the platform will present the user with means to separately generate each of the HAVi events for that `keyCode` (in the case of the example, an `HFocusEvent` with `transferId` `VK_ENTER` and an `HKeyEvent`). Application authors should realize that to use `keyCodes` which are likely to have multiple functions may force some platforms to present a less than perfectly user-friendly display.

For platforms that generate HAVi events in `HComponent.processEvent`, extra events may be received in addition to the HAVi events. For example, for `HFocusEvent` `FOCUS_GAINED` and `FOCUS_LOST`, if the `HFocusEvent` is generated directly, `processEvent` should send this `HFocusEvent` to both `processHFocusEvent` and to `processFocusEvent` (the second one will happen in the superclass method). If the platform generates HAVi events in `processEvent`, when a `FocusEvent` is received by `HComponent.processEvent`, it will be sent to `processFocusEvent` and a new `HFocusEvent` will be created to send to `processHFocusEvent`.

For the other HAVi events, like `HActionEvent`, `HAdjustmentEvent`, `HItemEvent` and `HTextEvent` events, the behaviour is analogous. The platform will provide a way for the user to generate the events, either directly or from other events (translated in `HComponent.processEvent`), on `HComponents` that implement the `HActionInputPreferred`, `HAdjustmentInputPreferred`, `HSelectionInputPreferred`, and `HKeyboardInputPreferred` interfaces, respectively.

Implementations of the interfaces do not have to override `processEvent` so as to send these events to the appropriate `processHxxEvent` method, this will be the responsibility of `HComponent.processEvent`. The `processHxxEvent` method will call any registered listeners and perform any other specified actions, such as changing states, playing sounds, etc.

`HAdjustmentInputPreferred` and `HSelectionInputPreferred`, which extend `HOrientable`, allow the platform to select a way for the user to generate `HAdjustmentEvents` and `HItemEvents` which best matches the component's representation.

### A.7.3.3 Relation between HAVi events and AWT events

Applications which extend from `java.awt.Component` (and not `org.havi.ui.HComponent`) and which register event listeners from the `java.awt.event` package shall receive the behaviour defined for the `java.awt.event` package. If events from the `org.havi.ui.event` package are generated on such a `Component`, these shall be sent to any registered listeners according to the behaviour defined for their parent class in `java.awt.event`.

HAVi allows implementations that generate `HxxxEvents` from other events, so an `HComponent` may receive the `HxxxEvent` in addition to those other events. For example, you could get both `org.havi.ui.event.HKeyEvents` sent to `HKeyListeners` and `java.awt.event.KeyEvent`s sent to `AWT KeyListeners`.

For subclasses that extend from `Component` and not from `HComponent`, it is implementation dependent whether they receive the events defined in `java.awt.event` or a subclass of these events defined in `org.havi.ui.event` (e.g. `org.havi.ui.event.HKeyEvent` instead of `java.awt.event.KeyEvent`). However, in the latter case the behaviour will be as defined for the parent class, e.g. an `org.havi.ui.event.HKeyEvent` will go to `KeyListeners` added with `Component.addKeyListener`. Also, applications cannot assume that such `Components` will be able to receive `KeyEvents` with `keyCodes` other than those specified in the MHP minimum profile.

### A.7.3.4 Application guidelines

Any implementation of a `HxxxInputPreferred` interface shall implement the processing of the `HxxxEvent` and calling of listeners in the `processHxxEvent` method (where this event processing is not inherited from a parent class). It is the platforms' responsibility to provide a way in which the user can generate the events requested by the widget. Since the HAVi events may be generated in the `processEvent` method on some platforms, interface implementers should not assume that the `processEvent` method will receive the HAVi events on every platform. On platforms where the HAVi events are generated in `processEvent`, it is the platform's responsibility to call the `processHxxEvent` method with the HAVi event.

## A.7.4 org.havi.ui

### A.7.4.1 HActionable

The class `HListGroup` is considered to be removed from the list of "Platform Classes".

#### A.7.4.1.1 `getActionSound`

The description of this method shall be considered to be replaced with the following

Return the last action sound set by the `setActionSound` method or null if no action sound has been set.

#### A.7.4.2 HActionInputPreferred

The description of this method shall be considered to have the following text added:

If this `HActionInputPreferred` has no action command then an empty string shall be returned.

#### A.7.4.3 HAdjustmentInputPreferred

##### A.7.4.3.1 Interface description

In the interface description of `HAdjustmentInputPreferred` after the sentence:

For platforms with a restricted number of physical keys this may involve a "virtual keyboard" or similar mechanism.

is considered to be extended by the following text:

The system might use the information returned by the method `getOrientation()` of the super interface to select appropriate key mappings for this event. The mechanisms to generate this event shall not be effective while the component is disabled (see `HComponent.setEnabled()`).

Also, the following text:

All interoperable implementations of the `HAdjustmentInputPreferred` interface must extend `HComponent`.

Is considered to be replaced with:

Widgets of HAVi compliant applications implementing the `HAdjustmentInputPreferred` interface must have `HComponent` in their inheritance tree.

Also, in the following text:

Note that the `java.awt.Component` method `isFocusTraversable` should always return true for a `java.awt.Component` implementing this interface.

the word "should" is considered to be replaced with "shall".

##### A.7.4.3.2 `getAdjustMode`

The last sentence of the description of `getAdjustMode()` is considered to be extended with:

Note that these events are ignored, if the component is disabled. See also: `HComponent.setEnabled()`.



### A.7.4.3.3 `processHAdjustmentEvent`

The description of `processHAdjustmentEvent()` is considered to be extended with:

Widgets implementing this interface shall ignore `HAdjustmentEvents`, while the component is disabled. See also: `HComponent.setEnabled()`.

### A.7.4.3.4 `setAdjustMode`

The description of `setAdjustMode()` is considered to be extended with:

Calls to this method shall be ignored, if the component is disabled. See also: `HComponent.setEnabled()`.

## A.7.4.4 `HAdjustmentValue`

### A.7.4.4.1 Class description

The class `HListGroup` is considered to be removed from the list of "Platform Classes".

### A.7.4.4.2 `getAdjustmentSound`

This method is considered to have the following text added to the method description.

`null` shall be returned if this method is called before its corresponding set method.

### A.7.4.4.3 `getBlockIncrement`

This method is considered to have the following text added to the method description.

`1` shall be returned if this method is called before its corresponding set method.

### A.7.4.4.4 `getUnitIncrement`

This method is considered to have the following text added to the method description.

`1` shall be returned if this method is called before its corresponding set method.

## A.7.4.5 `HAnimateEffect`

### A.7.4.5.1 `getRepeatCount`

This method shall be considered to have the following text added to the method description.

Except for `HAnimateEffect` implementations that specify a different default, `getRepeatCount()` returns `REPEAT_INFINITE` if no call to `setRepeatCount()` has previously been made.

## A.7.4.6 `HBackgroundDevice`

### A.7.4.6.1 `setBackgroundConfiguration`

In the `setBackgroundConfiguration` method, the sentence below shall be considered to be added to the description of this method:

Applications can prevent or limit changes to configurations of other, not intended, devices by using constants `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT`, `ZERO_VIDEO_IMPACT` and `ZERO_BACKGROUND_IMPACT` in their configuration templates.

The following shall be added as the first item in the bulleted list:

- If an application tries to select a configuration which is not valid for that device at that time or when the device is in a particular mode then an `HConfigurationException` shall be thrown.

### A.7.4.6.2 `getConfigurations`

The following shall be added to the end of the method description.

The set of configurations returned may include ones which are only valid for the device at particular times or when the device is in a particular mode.

## A.7.4.7 HBackgroundImage

### A.7.4.7.1 Constructors - HBackgroundImage(String), HBackgroundImage(URL)

The sentence:

Loading of the data for the object is not required at this time.

shall be considered to be replaced with:

Loading of the data for the object shall not happen at this time.

### A.7.4.7.2 load

The following text is considered to be added to the description of this method:

Multiple calls to load shall each add an extra listener, all of which are informed when the loading is completed. If load is called with the same listener more than once, the listener shall then receive multiple copies of a single event.

### A.7.4.7.3 Constructor(byte[])

In the following sentence:

If the byte array does not contain a valid image then this constructor shall throw a java.lang.  
IllegalArgumentException.

"shall" shall be considered to say "may".

## A.7.4.8 HComponent

### A.7.4.8.1 processEvent

The following text is a clarification of the HAVi specification:

The implementation of the method `HComponent.processEvent()` shall ensure that key events which are translated to HAVi events shall not be reported to `processKeyEvent()` or reported to `KeyListener`s. Key events which are not translated to HAVi events shall be reported to `processKeyEvent()` and `KeyListener`s as defined in the Java specification.

NOTE: If applications override `processEvent` they may terminally disturb these processes. Applications should not do this without extreme care, as the results may be very implementation dependent.

## A.7.4.9 HComponentOrdering

### A.7.4.9.1 addAfter, addBefore

In the returns clause, the text:

is successfully added.

shall be considered to read

is successfully added or was already present.

## A.7.4.10 HEventMulticaster

### A.7.4.10.1 Class description

The following text is considered to be added to the description of this class:

The `HEventMulticaster` class is intended to assist platform or subclass implementers with the handling of HAVi events. Implementations are not required to use this class to dispatch HAVi events. Applications should not extend the `HEventMulticaster` class and implementations are not required to behave correctly if an application does extend this class. If an extended multicaster is desired, `AWTEventMulticaster` should be used rather than `HEventMulticaster`.

Also, extend the following paragraph in the class description:

It is an implementation option for this class to insert other classes in the inheritance tree (for example `java . awt . AWTEventMulticaster`). It is allowed that this may result in `HEventMulticaster` inheriting additional methods beyond those specified here.

with:

If this class does extend `java . awt . AWTEventMulticaster`, it is allowed for the fields defined in this class to be inherited from that parent class.

#### A.7.4.10.2 Constructor

The following text is considered to form part of the constructor description:

The parameters a & b passed to the constructor shall be used to populate the fields a & b of the instance.

#### A.7.4.10.3 remove

In the description of this method, replace:

returns the resulting multicast listener

with

returns the result

#### A.7.4.11 HFontCapabilities

##### A.7.4.11.1 getSupportedCharacterRanges

The returns clause of this method shall be considered to be extended with the following text:

including where the capabilities of the font are unknown.

#### A.7.4.12 HGraphicsDevice

##### A.7.4.12.1 getBestConfiguration

The following text shall be considered to be added to the end of the second paragraph of the method description:

If there are such equally best configurations, the one which is returned by this method is an implementation dependent selection from among those which are equally best.

##### A.7.4.12.2 setGraphicsConfiguration

In the `setGraphicsConfiguration` method, the sentence below:

Applications can prevent or limit changes to configurations of other, not intended, devices by using constants `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT` and `ZERO_VIDEO_IMPACT` in their configuration templates.

shall be considered to be extended as follows:

Applications can prevent or limit changes to configurations of other, not intended, devices by using constants `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT`, `ZERO_VIDEO_IMPACT` and `ZERO_BACKGROUND_IMPACT` in their configuration templates.

The following shall be added as the first item in the bulleted list;

- If an application tries to select a configuration which is not valid for that device at that time or when the device is in a particular mode then an `HConfigurationException` shall be thrown.

##### A.7.4.12.3 getConfigurations

The following shall be added to the end of the method description.

The set of configurations returned may include ones which are only valid for the device at particular times or when the device is in a particular mode.

### A.7.4.13 HGraphicsConfigTemplate

#### A.7.4.13.1 setPreference

The following text shall be added to the third paragraph of the method description:

Calling this method with null for the object parameter shall have no effect if the preference is not currently set in the template.

### A.7.4.14 HListElement

#### A.7.4.14.1 Class description

The class description is considered to be extended by the following:

The methods `setIcon()` and `setLabel()` of `HListElement` shall not be used for elements, which are part of `HListGroup`. If an application requires to alter the content, it shall either replace the entire element, or remove it temporarily and re-add it after the content was changed.

### A.7.4.15 HListGroup

#### A.7.4.15.1 Class description

In the following text:

The `HListGroup` is a user interface component representing a list of selectable items (`HListElements`) which contain static read-only graphical and / or textual content.

The phrase "static read-only" is considered to be removed.

Also, extend the following text:

Interoperable HAVi applications shall not add `HListElement` more than once. If an application requires items with identical contents (label and/or icon), then additional items shall be created. The behaviour of the `HListGroup` if duplicates are added is implementation specific.

With:

The methods `setIcon()` and `setLabel()` of `HListElement` shall not be used for elements, which are part of `HListGroup`. If an application requires to alter the content, it shall either replace the entire element, or remove it temporarily and re-add it after the content was changed.

Also, in the text:

the minimum size is the size to present one element or an implementation specific minimum (32 x 32 for example) if no elements are present.

The phrase "if no elements are present" is considered to be replaced with:

if label and icon size are not set (see `HListGroupLook.getMinimumSize()`).

Also, under the parameters table under heading "Default parameter values exposed in the constructors" the description of the parameter "items" missing is considered to read:

The initial list of elements for this `HListGroup` or null for an empty list.

#### A.7.4.15.2 Fields

##### A.7.4.15.2.1 ITEM\_NOT\_FOUND

In the description:

A constant which may be returned from `getIndex` if the requested element is not found in the content.

The word "may" is considered to be replaced by "shall".

#### A.7.4.15.2.2 ADD\_INDEX\_END

In the description:

A constant for use with `addItem` and `addItem`s which specifies that the new items should be appended to the end of the list.

The word "should" is considered to be replaced by "shall".

#### A.7.4.15.3 Use of "action" and "actioning"

The use of the words "action" and "actioning" in the following methods in `HListGroup` does not imply any connection between `HListGroup` and `HActionable`. There is no such connection in the API.:

- `getCurrentIndex()`
- `getCurrentItem()`
- `setCurrentItem()`
- `getSelectionIndices()`
- `getSelection()`

#### A.7.4.15.4 addItem(HListItem item, int index)

In the description of parameter "index" all occurrences of the word "items" is considered to be replaced by "item".

#### A.7.4.15.5 addItem(HListItem items[], int index)

In the parameter description:

item - the item to add.

is considered to be replaced by:

items - the items to add.

#### A.7.4.15.6 getIconSize

The description of this method is considered to be extended by:

If label and icon size do not match the size per element, the associated `HListGroupLook` is allowed to use other sizes during the rendering process. This size shall be used by `HListGroupLook` to calculate the size per element.

#### A.7.4.15.7 getLabelSize

The description of this method is considered to be extended by:

If label and icon size do not match the size per element, the associated `HListGroupLook` is allowed to use other sizes during the rendering process. This size shall be used by `HListGroupLook` to calculate the size per element.

#### A.7.4.15.8 getOrientation

The following text:

The orientation controls how an associated `HLook` lays out the component and affects the visual behaviour of the `HAdjustmentEvent` and `HItemEvent` events. `HListGroups` do not receive `HAdjustmentEvents`.

Is considered to be replaced by:

The orientation controls how an associated `HLook` lays out the component and affects the visual behaviour of `HItemEvent` events.

**A.7.4.15.9      setFocusTraversal**

In all cases the phrase "then null should be specified" is considered to be replaced by "then null shall be specified".

**A.7.4.15.10      setSelected**

The following text

If a successful call to this method causes the selection to change an `HItemEvent` shall be sent to any registered listeners. If the selection does not change then no `HItemEvent` shall be sent.

Shall be considered be replaced with:

If a call to this method causes an item to become deselected an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_CLEARED` shall be sent to all registered listeners. This can happen because either `sel` is false or this `HListGroup` is not in multi selection mode.

If a call to this method causes an non selected item to become selected item then an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SELECTED` shall be sent to all registered listeners.

**A.7.4.15.11      setIconSize**

The description of this method is considered to be extended by:

If label and icon size do not match the size per element, the associated `HListGroupLook` is allowed to use other sizes during the rendering process. This size shall be used by `HListGroupLook` to calculate the size per element.

In the description of the size parameter, the following text:

`Dimension(DEFAULT_ICON_SIZE, DEFAULT_ICON_SIZE)`

is considered to be replaced by

`Dimension(DEFAULT_ICON_WIDTH, DEFAULT_ICON_HEIGHT)`

**A.7.4.15.12      setLabelSize**

The description of this method is considered to be extended by:

If label and icon size do not match the size per element, the associated `HListGroupLook` is allowed to use other sizes during the rendering process. This size shall be used by `HListGroupLook` to calculate the size per element.

**A.7.4.15.13      setListContent**

The sentence:

Any existing selection is discarded (which may cause an `HItemEvent` to be generated.)

Is considered to be replaced by

If any elements are selected, then the selection is discarded and an `HItemEvent` is generated.

The following text:

Set the list content for this `HListGroup`. If any elements are selected, then the selection is discarded and an `HItemEvent` is generated.

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

Set the list content for this `HListGroup`. If any items are selected, then the selection shall be discarded and an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SELECTION_CLEARED` shall be generated and sent to all registered listeners.

If elements is null then the current active item index shall be set to `ITEM_NOT_FOUND`. If elements is non null then the current active item index shall be set to 0. An `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SET_CURRENT` shall be sent to all registered listeners.

**A.7.4.15.14 setMove**

In all cases the phrase "then null should be specified" is considered to be replaced by "then null shall be specified".

**A.7.4.15.15 setScrollPosition**

This method is considered to have the following text added:

Parameters

scroll - the scroll position

**A.7.4.15.16 setSelectionMode**

The parameter in the method signature called `adjust` shall be considered to be called `edit` as used in the parameter list.

**A.7.4.15.17 removeItem**

The following text:

Remove the `HListElement` at the specified index. The item is also removed from the selection, if any is set. If this was the last item in the selection the entire selection is destroyed and calls to `getSelection` shall return null until new content and selections are created.

If the act of removing an item causes the current active item index to change, an `HItemEvent` shall be sent.

If the act of removing an item causes the selection to change, an `HItemEvent` shall be sent.

Shall be considered to be replaced with the following text:

Removes the `HListElement` at the specified index. All following items are shifted.

If the item is the only `HListElement` in this `HListGroup` then the current active item index shall be set to `ITEM_NOT_FOUND`. If the removal of the item causes a change in the current active item index then an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SET_CURRENT` shall be generated and sent to all registered listeners.

If the item is selected then it shall be removed from the selection and an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_CLEARED` shall be generated and sent to all registered listeners.

**A.7.4.15.18 removeAllItems**

The following text:

Remove all the content. The selection is also destroyed and calls to `getSelection` shall return null until new content and selections are created.

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

Removes all the content. If any items are selected, then the selection shall be discarded and an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SELECTION_CLEARED` shall be generated and sent to all registered listeners.

The current active item index shall be set to `ITEM_NOT_FOUND` and an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SET_CURRENT` shall be generated and sent to all registered listeners.

**A.7.4.15.19 setCurrentItem**

The following paragraph shall be considered to form part of the description of this method.

If `index` is valid for this `HListGroup` then the current active item index shall be set to `index`. If this causes a change in the current active item index then an `HItemEvent` with an ID of `ITEM_SET_CURRENT` shall be generated and sent to all registered listeners.

Under the Returns subsection, the following paragraph;

true if the current item was changed, false if `index` was not a valid index for this `HListGroup` or the current item was not changed because it is already selected. No exception is thrown if `index` is not valid.

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

true if the current item was changed, false if index was not a valid index for this HListGroup or the current item was not changed because it is already the current item. No exception is thrown if index is not valid.

#### A.7.4.15.20 setMultiSelection

The following text:

Note that if the HListGroup is switched out of multiple selection mode and more than one item is selected, the selection shall change so that the first of the items is selected and the others are deselected. This will cause an HItemEvent to be sent to any registered listeners.

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

Note that if the HListGroup is switched out of multiple selection mode and more than one item is selected, the selection shall change so that the first of the items is selected and the others are deselected. An HItemEvent with an ID of ITEM\_CLEARED shall be sent to all registered listeners for each deselected item.

#### A.7.4.16 HListGroupLook

##### A.7.4.16.1 getMaximumSize

The description of `getMaximumSize()` is considered to be replaced by the following:

Returns the size to present all elements of the specified `HVisible` plus any additional dimensions that the `HListGroupLook` requires for border decoration etc. If no elements are present, a dimension object is returned with width and height set to `java.lang.Short.MAX_VALUE`.

The extra space required for border decoration can be determined from the `getInsets()` and `getElementInsets()` methods. The behaviour is not defined for the case, when a subclass overrides these methods. Application developers shall not assume any influence on the returned dimensions.

The size per element shall be determined by calls to `getIconSize()` and `getLabelSize()` of `HListGroup`. If any of the values requests a default as specified by `DEFAULT_ICON_WIDTH`, `DEFAULT_ICON_HEIGHT`, `DEFAULT_LABEL_WIDTH` and `DEFAULT_LABEL_HEIGHT`, then an implementation specific default is used for the corresponding value(s).

Parameters:

`visible` `HVisible` to which this `HLook` is attached.

Returns:

A dimension object indicating this `HListGroupLook`'s maximum size. See also:

```
HListGroup.setIconSize()
HListGroup.setLabelSize()
HVisible.getMaximumSize()
```

##### A.7.4.16.2 getMinimumSize

The description of `getMinimumSize()` is considered to be replaced by the following:

Returns the size to present one element of the specified `HVisible` plus any additional dimensions that the `HListGroupLook` requires for border decoration etc.

The extra space required for border decoration can be determined from the `getInsets()` and `getElementInsets()` methods. The behaviour is not defined for the case, when a subclass overrides these methods. Application developers shall not assume any influence on the returned dimensions.

The size per element shall be determined by calls to `getIconSize()` and `getLabelSize()` of `HListGroup`. If any of the dimensions requests a default as specified by `DEFAULT_ICON_WIDTH`, `DEFAULT_ICON_HEIGHT`, `DEFAULT_LABEL_WIDTH` and `DEFAULT_LABEL_HEIGHT`, then an implementation specific default is used for the corresponding value(s).

Parameters:

`visible` `HVisible` to which this `HLook` is attached.



Returns:

A dimension object indicating this `HListGroupLook`'s minimum size. See also:

```
HListGroup.setIconSize()
HListGroup.setLabelSize()
HVisible.getMinimumSize()
```

#### A.7.4.16.3 `getPreferredSize`

The description of `getPreferredSize()` is considered to be replaced by the following:

Gets the preferred size of the `HVisible` component when drawn with this `HListGroupLook`.

If a default size for width and height was set with `HVisible.setDefaultSize()`, then the dimensions are rounded down to the nearest element (minimum of one) according to the orientation of the associated `HListGroup`, and any dimensions for border decorations etc. are added.

If no default size was set or only for one dimension (i.e. height is `NO_DEFAULT_HEIGHT` or width is `NO_DEFAULT_WIDTH`), then the unset dimension(s) shall be sufficiently large to present five elements according to the `HListGroup`'s orientation. Any dimensions for border decoration etc. are added.

The extra space required for border decoration can be determined from the `getInsets()` and `getElementInsets()` methods. The behaviour is not defined for the case, when a subclass overrides these methods. Application developers shall not assume any influence on the returned dimensions.

The size per element shall be determined by calls to `getIconSize()` and `getLabelSize()` of `HListGroup`. If any of the values requests a default as specified by `DEFAULT_ICON_WIDTH`, `DEFAULT_ICON_HEIGHT`, `DEFAULT_LABEL_WIDTH` and `DEFAULT_LABEL_HEIGHT`, then an implementation specific default is used for the corresponding value(s).

Parameters:

`visible` `HVisible` to which this `HListGroupLook` is attached.

Returns:

A dimension object indicating the preferred size of the `HVisible` when drawn with this `HListGroupLook`. See also:

```
HListGroup.setIconSize()
HListGroup.setLabelSize()
HVisible.getPreferredSize()
HVisible.setDefaultSize()
```

#### A.7.4.16.4 `getValue`

The first paragraph of `getValue()` is considered to be extended by the following:

A non-null value represents the scroll position of the associated `HListGroup`. The value shall never be less than zero.

And the description of returns is considered to be replaced by the following:

the non-negative scroll position associated with the specified pointer position or null

#### A.7.4.16.5 `hitTest`

In the description of `hitTest()` after

...then this method will return the index of that element.

is considered to be extended by the following:

The `HListGroup` shall interpret this index as current item. If the value is `ADJUST_THUMB`, then the caller shall use `getValue()` to retrieve the actual scroll position corresponding to the specified pointer position."

And the returns description considered to be extended by the following:

, or a non-negative element index.

### A.7.4.16.6 showLook

The description of `showLook()` is considered to be replaced by the following:

This method is responsible for repainting the entire visible including the list content set on the `HListGroup`, and the visible background, subject to the clipping rectangle of the graphics object passed to it.

If the method modifies the clipping rectangle of the graphics object, it shall restore the original rectangle upon return.

`showLook()` paints the visible with its current background colour according to the `getBackgroundMode()` method of `HVisible` and draws any (implementation-specific) borders, regardless whether content is available or not. Note that by default the background mode is set to not paint a background. Furthermore on platforms which support transparent colours the background colour may be partially or completely transparent.

Any resources explicitly associated with this look shall be loaded by it during its creation. Note that the "standard" looks do not load content by default.

This method is called from the `paint()` method of `HVisible` and must never be called from elsewhere. Components wishing to redraw themselves shall call their repaint method in the usual way or call `widgetChanged()` under certain circumstances.

The labels of the associated `HListElements` shall be rendered by using the current text layout manager of the `HListGroup`. For each visible label is the `render()` method of `HTextLayoutManager` called. The position and size per label are specified as insets relatively to the bounds of `HListGroup`. Note that the bounds are independent of any borders of the `HListGroup`, but the insets have to include the borders per element, if any. The look shall use the method `getLabelSize()` of `HListGroup` to determine the size for each label. If the returned dimension object has `DEFAULT_LABEL_WIDTH` for the width and/or `DEFAULT_LABEL_HEIGHT` for the height as values, then this method shall use implementation specific value(s) as default(s) for the missing dimension(s) instead. If `getTextLayoutManager()` returns null, then labels shall not be rendered.

If supported, scaling of icons shall reflect the resize mode of the visible within the area of the respective list element. The look shall use the method `getIconSize()` of `HListGroup` to determine the size for each icon. If the returned dimension object has `DEFAULT_ICON_WIDTH` for the width and/or `DEFAULT_ICON_HEIGHT` for the height as values, then this method shall use implementation specific value(s) as default(s) for the missing dimension(s) instead.

Except for the alignment of labels and sizes of labels and icons, it is explicitly not defined, how this look arranges icons and labels within the elements' areas. Additionally, it is an implementation option to render labels and icons in other sizes than specified, if the available size per element is smaller or larger than label and icon size. It is also not defined, how the look presents the current item and selected items, or the current selection mode. The elements shall be layed out as specified by `getOrientation()` of the associated `HListGroup`.

When the associated `HListGroup` contains more elements than presentable, the look shall make the user aware of that condition, e.g. by displaying an additional scrollbar reflecting the current scroll position. Again, the visible means by which this information is conveyed is not defined and implementation dependent. It is an implementation option for `HListGroupLook` to draw elements before the scroll position, in order to fill the available space.

The behaviour of this method, when a subclass overrides the methods `getInsets()` or `getElementInsets()`, is not defined. Application developers shall not assume that the corresponding borders will appear as specified.

Parameters:

`g` the graphics context.

`visible` the visible.

`state` the state parameter indicates the state of the visible, allowing the look to render the appropriate content for that state. Note that the default behaviour of `HListGroupLook` is to ignore this parameter, since the content of `HListGroup` is not state based. See also:

```
java.awt.Component.getBounds()
java.awt.Graphics.getClipBounds()
HListGroup.getCurrentItem()
HListGroup.getListContent()
HListGroup.getOrientation()
```

```
HListGroup.getScrollPosition()
HListGroup.setIconSize()
HListGroup.setLabelSize()
HListGroup.isItemSelected()
HTextLayoutManager.render()
```

#### A.7.4.16.7 Class description

The following sentence shall be considered to be removed.

Borders are not drawn around the content.

#### A.7.4.16.8 showLook and renderVisible

The five paragraphs in `showLook` starting with "The labels of the associated `HListElements` shall be rendered..." and ending "...Application developers shall not assume that the corresponding borders will appear as specified." shall be considered to form part of the `renderVisible` method instead.

#### A.7.4.16.9 renderVisible

The following shall be considered to be added to the end of this method description:

The `org.havi.ui.HExtendedLook.renderVisible` method is responsible for painting any implementation specific borders for each `HListElement` as well as drawing of an additional scrollbar if required.

#### A.7.4.17 HLook

##### A.7.4.17.1 General

In the description of `HLook` and all implementing classes, the term `clipRect` shall be interpreted to mean "clipping rectangle".

##### A.7.4.17.2 Class description

Only the first paragraph of the "Invocation Mechanism" section shall be considered to be present.

##### A.7.4.17.3 getPreferredSize

In the description of this method, the text:

"... then the return value is the size of the largest piece of content..."

shall be considered to be replaced with:

"...then the return value is a size that is sufficiently large to hold each piece of content..."

The equivalent replacement shall apply for `getMinimumSize()` and `getMaximumSize()`.

In `HLook` and all classes implementing this interface, the following text shall be considered to form part of the method description of `getPreferredSize()`:

If a default preferred size has been set for this `HVisible` (using `setDefaultSize(Dimension)`) and the default preferred size has an `NO_DEFAULT_WIDTH` then the return value is a `Dimension` with this height (obtained with `getDefaultSize()`) and the preferred width for the content plus any additional dimensions that the `HLook` requires for border decoration etc.

If a default preferred size has been set for this `HVisible` (using `setDefaultSize(Dimension)`) and the default preferred size has an `NO_DEFAULT_HEIGHT` then the return value is a `Dimension` with this width (obtained with `getDefaultSize()`) and the preferred height for the content plus any additional dimensions that the `HLook` requires for border decoration etc.

##### A.7.4.17.4 showLook

In `org.havi.ui.HLook.showLook()`, the text;

The `showLook` method should not modify the `clipRect` of the `Graphics` object that is passed to it.

Shall be clarified as follows:

The `showLook` method shall not modify the `clipRect` (clipping rectangle) of the `Graphics` object passed to it in a way which includes any area not part of that original `clipRect`. If any modifications are made, the original `clipRect` shall be restored.

#### A.7.4.18 `HMultilineEntry`

The following text shall be considered to be added to the class description:

A call to the inherited method `setDefaultLook(HSinglelineEntry)` shall behave the same as a call to `HSinglelineEntry.setDefaultLook(HSinglelineEntry)`.

#### A.7.4.19 `HMultilineEntryLook`

##### A.7.4.19.1 `getCaretCharPositionForLine`

The following text:

If an invalid line is specified an `IllegalArgumentException` is thrown. If it cannot be moved the nearest position should be returned.

shall be considered to be replaced by:

If an invalid line is specified an `IllegalArgumentException` is thrown. If the caret cannot be moved to the same column position on this line, the nearest position should be returned.

##### A.7.4.19.2 `getSoftLineBreakPositions`

The following text shall be considered to be added to the returns clause of this method

If there is no text content within the `HVisible`, a zero length array shall be returned.

##### A.7.4.19.3 `getVisibleSoftLineBreakPositions`

The following text is considered to be added to the returns clause of this method

If there is no text content within the `HVisible`, a zero length array shall be returned.

#### A.7.4.20 `HNavigable`

##### A.7.4.20.1 Class description

In the following sentence:

Applications should assume that classes which implement `HNavigable` can only generate events of the type `HFocusEvent` in response to other types of input event.

The word "only" shall be considered to be not present.

##### A.7.4.20.2 `setMove`

All occurrences of "then null should be specified" shall be considered to be replaced by "then null shall be specified".

##### A.7.4.20.3 `setFocusTraversal`

All occurrences of "then null should be specified" shall be considered to be replaced by "then null shall be specified".

#### A.7.4.21 `HOrientable`

##### A.7.4.21.1 Interface description

The following text:

All interoperable implementations of the `HOrientable` interface must extend `HComponent`.

Is considered to be replaced with:

Widgets of HAVi compliant applications implementing the `HOrientable` interface must have `HComponent` in their inheritance tree.

#### A.7.4.21.2 `getOrientation`

The following text:

The orientation controls how an associated `HLook` lays out the component and affects the visual behaviour of the `HAdjustmentEvent` and `HItemEvent` events. For example, the system might use this information to select appropriate key mappings for these events.

Is considered to be replaced with:

The orientation controls the layout of the component.

#### A.7.4.21.3 `setOrientation`

The following text:

The orientation controls how the associated `HLook` lays out the component.

Is considered to be replaced with:

The orientation controls the layout of the component.

#### A.7.4.21.3.1 Orientation constants

In the description of the orientation constants: `ORIENT_LEFT_TO_RIGHT`, `ORIENT_RIGHT_TO_LEFT`, `ORIENT_TOP_TO_BOTTOM` and `ORIENT_BOTTOM_TO_TOP` the word "shall" is considered to replace "should" in each instance of the phrase "should be rendered".

### A.7.4.22 `HScene`

#### A.7.4.22.1 `addAfter`, `addBefore`

In the returns clause, the text:

is successfully added

shall be considered to read:

is successfully added or was already present.

#### A.7.4.22.2 `getFocusOwner`

The following text shall be considered to be added to the end of the method description:

if and only if this `HScene` is active.

#### A.7.4.22.3 Rendering behavior

The following text shall be considered to form an additional paragraph under this heading.

An application which sets both of `setBackgroundMode(NO_BACKGROUND_FILL)` and `setImageMode(IMAGE_NONE)` shall be responsible for ensuring that all pixels in the `HScene` are filled with a value which is either opaque or transparent only to video. Such an application cannot make any assumptions about the previous contents of the graphics objects into which it is drawing. For implementations which double-buffer the display of graphics, these existing contents are implementation dependent.

### A.7.4.23 `HScreenConfigurationListener`

The parameter "gce" for the report method shall be considered to have the following description.

gce - The event notifying the listener of the modification.

Add to errata to external references - HAVi

#### A.7.4.24 HSceneFactory

##### A.7.4.24.1 getDefaultHScene

The text:

... identical to calling `org.havi.ui.HScene.getDefaultHScene()`

shall be considered to read:

... identical to calling `org.havi.ui.HSceneFactory.getDefaultHScene()`

##### A.7.4.24.2 Class Description

The following text

Calling `resizeScene` for an `HScene` shall apply the same policies as described above for newly created `HScenes` when deciding whether the resizing operation requested is possible.

Shall be considered to read:

Calling `resizeScene` for an `HScene` shall apply the same policies as described above for newly created `HScenes` when deciding whether the method call is possible.

#### A.7.4.25 HSelectionInputPreferred

##### A.7.4.25.1 Interface description

The following text is considered to be added to the interface description:

The system must provide a means of generating `HItemEvent` events as necessary. For platforms with a restricted number of physical keys this may involve a "virtual keyboard" or similar mechanism. The system might use the information returned by the method `getOrientation()` of the super interface to select appropriate key mappings for this event. The mechanisms to generate this event shall not be effective while the component is disabled (see `HComponent.setEnabled()`).

Also, the text:

All interoperable implementations of the `HSelectionInputPreferred` interface must extend `HComponent`.

Is considered to be replaced with:

Widgets of HAVi compliant applications implementing the `HSelectionInputPreferred` interface must have `HComponent` in their inheritance tree.

Also, in the text:

Note that the `java.awt.Component` method `isFocusTraversable` should always return true for a `java.awt.Component` implementing this interface.

The word "should" is considered to be replaced with "shall".

##### A.7.4.25.2 getSelectionMode

The description of this method is considered to be extended by the following text:

Note that these events are ignored, if the component is disabled. See also: `HComponent.setEnabled()`.

##### A.7.4.25.3 processHItemEvent

The description of this method is considered to be extended by the following text:

Widgets implementing this interface shall ignore `HItemEvents`, while the component is disabled. See also: `HComponent.setEnabled()`.

#### A.7.4.25.4 setSelectionMode

The description of this method is considered to be extended by the following text:

Calls to this method shall be ignored, if the component is disabled. See also: `HComponent.setEnabled()`.

#### A.7.4.26 HSingleLineEntry

##### A.7.4.26.1 Class description

The term:

`TEXT_START_CHANGE` event

is considered to be replaced with:

an `HTextEvent` event with an id of `TEXT_START_CHANGE`.

##### A.7.4.26.2 Default parameter values not exposed in the constructors

In the row "Password protection (the echo character)", in the "default value" column, replace

Entry is "clear", i.e. not password protected.

with:

Zero (ASCII NUL), i.e. not password protected.

##### A.7.4.26.3 setType(int)

The following text:

Set the type of permitted keyboard entry.

Parameters:

type - one of `INPUT_ANY`, `INPUT_ALPHA`, `INPUT_NUMERIC` or `INPUT_CUSTOMIZED`

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

Set to indicate to the system which input keys are required by this component. The input type constants can be added to define the union of the character sets corresponding to the respective constants.

Parameters:

type - sum of one or several of `INPUT_ANY`, `INPUT_NUMERIC`, `INPUT_ALPHA`, or `INPUT_CUSTOMIZED`.

##### A.7.4.26.4 getValidInput

The following text:

Retrieve the customized input character range. The return value of this method should reflect the range of input keys which the component wishes to see, should `getType` return a value with the `INPUT_CUSTOMIZED` bit set. This method may return null if customized input is not requested.

shall be considered to be replaced with

Retrieve the customized input character range. If `getType` returns a value with the `INPUT_CUSTOMIZED` bit set then this method shall return an array containing the range of customized input keys. If the range of customized input keys has not been set then this method shall return a zero length char array. This method shall return null if `getType` returns a value without the `INPUT_CUSTOMIZED` bit set.

### A.7.4.27 HStaticAnimation

The following text is considered to be added to the description of this class:

Calling `setVisible(false)` on `HStaticAnimation` shall not automatically stop the animation hence applications are not required to call the `play()` method again when the animation becomes visible. It is implementation dependent whether the animation continues from the last visible position or from where it would be if it kept running.

### A.7.4.28 HStaticRange

#### A.7.4.28.1 Fields

##### A.7.4.28.1.1 SCROLLBAR\_BEHAVIOR

The description of this field is considered to be replaced by the following text:

The `HStaticRange` shall behave as a scrollbar, i.e. the allowable values that may be set / returned for the `HStaticRange` shall be affected by the "thumb" offsets, and hence its value shall be able to vary between `[minimum + minThumbOffset, maximum - maxThumbOffset]`.

##### A.7.4.28.1.2 SLIDER\_BEHAVIOR

The description of this field is considered to be replaced by the following text:

The `HStaticRange` shall behave as a slider, i.e. the allowable values that may be set / returned for the `HStaticRange` shall not be affected by the "thumb" offsets, and hence its value shall be able to vary between `[minimum, maximum]`.

#### A.7.4.28.2 getOrientation

The following text:

The orientation controls how an associated `HLook` lays out the component and affects the visual behaviour of the `HAdjustmentEvent` and `HItemEvent` events. For example, the system might use this information to select appropriate key mappings for these events.

Is considered to be replaced by:

The orientation controls how the associated `HLook` lays out the component.

#### A.7.4.28.3 setBehavior

The following text is considered to be appended to the method description:

If the new behaviour is `SCROLLBAR_BEHAVIOR` and the control's settings for range and thumb offsets are illegal, i.e. `minimum + thumbMinOffset` is equal or greater than `maximum - thumbMaxOffset`, then an `IllegalArgumentException` shall be thrown. If the control's value is not valid for the offsets, then the value shall be changed to the closest valid value.

#### A.7.4.28.4 setRange

The following text is considered to be appended to the method description:

If the maximum is greater than the minimum and the value of the control is outside the new range (subject to the control's current behaviour), then the value is changed to the closest valid value.

#### A.7.4.28.5 setThumbOffsets

The following text is considered to be appended to the method description:

If this control's behaviour is `SCROLLBAR_BEHAVIOR`, then the following rules apply: If the thumb offsets are illegal, i.e. `minimum + thumbMinOffset` is equal or greater than `maximum - thumbMaxOffset`, then an `IllegalArgumentException` shall be thrown. If the control's value is not valid for the specified offsets, then the value shall be changed to the closest valid value.



#### A.7.4.28.6 setValue

The method's parameter description is considered to be replaced by:

value - the value for this HStaticRange

Also, the following text is considered to be appended to the method description:

If the specified value is not valid, then the method shall round it to the closest valid value. An application can retrieve the corrected value by means of method `getValue()`.

#### A.7.4.29 HVideoDevice

##### A.7.4.29.1 getBestConfiguration

The following text is considered to be added to the end of the second paragraph of the descriptions of both methods of this name.

If there are such equally best configurations, the one which is returned by this method is an implementation dependent selection from among those which are equally best.

##### A.7.4.29.2 setVideoConfiguration

In the `setVideoConfiguration` method, the sentence below:

Applications can prevent or limit changes to configurations of other, not intended, devices by using constants `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT` and `ZERO_VIDEO_IMPACT` in their configuration templates.

shall be considered to be extended as follows:

Applications can prevent or limit changes to configurations of other, not intended, devices by using constants `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT`, `ZERO_VIDEO_IMPACT` and `ZERO_BACKGROUND_IMPACT` in their configuration templates.

The following additional text is considered to be present;

NOTE: If a configuration which includes `ZERO_GRAPHICS_IMPACT` or `ZERO_BACKGROUND_IMPACT` and this would require changes to already running devices then this will not be possible to apply successfully and hence this method will return `False`.

##### A.7.4.29.3 getVideoController

The following text:

`HPermissionDeniedException` - (`HPermissionDeniedException`) if the application does not currently have the right to get the `VideoPlayer` object.

shall be considered to be replaced by:

`HPermissionDeniedException` - (`HPermissionDeniedException`) this exception shall never be thrown.

##### A.7.4.29.4 setVideoConfiguration

The following shall be added as the first item in the bulleted list:

- If an application tries to select a configuration which is not valid for that device at that time or when the device is in a particular mode then an `HConfigurationException` shall be thrown.

##### A.7.4.29.5 getConfigurations

The following shall be added to the end of the method description.

- The set of configurations returned may include ones which are only valid for the device at particular times or when the device is in a particular mode.

### A.7.4.30 HVisible

#### A.7.4.30.1 Class description

In the class description of `HVisible`, the sentence:

Most content is stored by reference, but text content is copied as `java.lang.String` objects are immutable. shall be considered to not be present.

In the table "Default parameter values not exposed in the constructors", row "getDefaultSize", column "Default value" the following text:

The default preferred size not set (i.e. null) unless specified by width and height parameters

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

The default preferred size not set (i.e. `NO_DEFAULT_SIZE`) unless specified by width and height parameters

#### A.7.4.30.2 Constructors

The following text shall be considered to form part of those constructor descriptions which have an `HLook` as a parameter:

Applications shall not use `HLOOKS` with this constructor unless those `HLOOKS` are specified as working with `HVisible`. If an `HLook` is used which is specified as only working with specific sub-classes of `HVisible` then the failure mode is implementation dependent.

#### A.7.4.30.3 setDefaultSize

The following text:

If this parameter or specifies a size smaller than an implementation-defined minimum size a `java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` will be thrown.

Shall be considered to be replaced by:

If this parameter specifies a size smaller than an implementation-defined minimum size, the preferred size of this component shall be set to that implementation-defined minimum size.

Also, the following text:

If the parent Container into which the `HVisible` is placed has no layout manager this method has no effect.

Is considered to be removed.

#### A.7.4.30.4 setLookData

The method description shall be considered to have the following text added.

If for this specified key a data object has been set, the old data object shall be replaced with the new one.

#### A.7.4.30.5 setResizeMode

The following text added shall be considered to be replaced:

Set the scaling mode for scaling any state-based content rendered by an associated `HLook`. If content is not used in the rendering of this `HVisible` calls to this method shall change the current alignment mode, but this will not affect the rendered representation.

by:

Set the resize mode of this `HVisible`. If the associated `HLook` does not render content or if scaling is not supported, changing the mode may have no visible effect.

#### A.7.4.30.6      `setTextContent`

In the description of this method, the following sentence is considered to not be present:

Note that unlike `setGraphicContent`, `setAnimateContent` and `setContent`, the content is copied as it is not possible to store a reference to a `java.lang.String`.

#### A.7.4.30.7      `NO_DEFAULT_SIZE`

The following text shall be considered to be appended to the end of the field description.

The contents of the Dimension object cannot be relied upon. Comparisons must always be done using object identity, i.e. using the "==" operator.

#### A.7.4.31      `HVideoConfigTemplate`

##### A.7.4.31.1      `setPreference`

The paragraph:

An application which wishes to remove a preference from an existing template (e.g. one generated by the platform) may call this method with null for the object parameter.

Shall be considered to be extended with the following sentence:

Specifying null as the object parameter shall have no effect if the preference is not in the template.

#### A.7.4.32      `HVideoComponent`

In section 8.3.3.6 "Integrating HAVi Video Support into Platforms" the following sentence:

In platforms based on the Java Media Framework, the `Player.getVisualComponent` method shall return objects of this class.

Shall be considered to be extended with the following text:

or null if the platform does not support video in components.

#### A.7.4.33      `HBackgroundConfiguration`

##### A.7.4.33.1      `setColor`

The "throws" clause for `HPermissionDeniedException` shall be considered to read as follows

If the application has not currently reserved the `HBackgroundDevice` associated with this configuration or this configuration is not the current configuration of that `HBackgroundDevice`.

##### A.7.4.33.2      `getConfigTemplate`

The following text shall be considered to be added to the description of this method:

Preferences that are not filled in by the platform will return `DONT_CARE` priority.

#### A.7.4.34      `HScreenDevice`

##### A.7.4.34.1      `reserveDevice`

The following paragraph:

Once the right to control this device has been granted and not removed in the intervening period further calls to this method shall have no effect and return true.

Shall be considered to be replaced by:

Once the right to control this device has been granted and not removed in the intervening period further calls to this method re-using the current resource client shall have no effect and return true.

### A.7.4.35 HImageMatte

#### A.7.4.35.1 setMatteData

The method `setMatteData` shall be considered to have the following text added;

Note that if the size of the image is smaller than the size of the component to which the matte is applied, the empty space behaves as if it were an opaque flat matte of value 1.0. By default images are aligned at the top left corner of the component. This can be changed with the `setOffset` method.

### A.7.4.36 HVersion

#### A.7.4.36.1 General

The following text;

Note that it is a valid implementation to return empty strings for the implementation, vendor and name strings. shall be considered to be replaced with

Note that it is a valid implementation to return empty strings for `HAVI_IMPLEMENTATION_NAME`, `HAVI_IMPLEMENTATION_VENDOR` and `HAVI_IMPLEMENTATION_VERSION` strings.

#### A.7.4.36.2 MHP Specific Clarification

In MHP, a call to `getProperty()` when referencing the constants listed in column Constant in the table below shall return a string as listed in column Value.

**Table A.2 : getProperty**

| Constant                                | Value       |
|---|-------------|
| <code>HAVI_SPECIFICATION_VENDOR</code>  | "DVB"       |
| <code>HAVI_SPECIFICATION_NAME</code>    | "MHP"       |
| <code>HAVI_SPECIFICATION_VERSION</code> | "<version>" |

**<version>**: this string shall represent the MHP version to which this HAVi implementation is conformant. The encoding shall be, in order, the major, minor and micro values from table 141, "Profile encoding" on page 387 presented as the textual representation of decimal integers with no leading zeros and separated by a single "." character, e.g. "1.0.3".

#### A.7.4.36.3 Field descriptions

Consider all occurrences of: `java.lang.System.getProperty(havi.specification.version)`  
to be replaced with: `java.lang.System.getProperty(HVersion.HAVI_SPECIFICATION_VERSION)`

and all occurrences of: `java.lang.System.getProperty(havi.specification.vendor)`  
to be replaced with: `java.lang.System.getProperty(HVersion.HAVI_SPECIFICATION_VENDOR)`,

and all occurrences of: `java.lang.System.getProperty(havi.specification.name)`  
to be replaced with: `java.lang.System.getProperty(HVersion.HAVI_SPECIFICATION_NAME)`,

all occurrences of: `java.lang.System.getProperty(havi.implementation.version)`  
to be replaced with: `java.lang.System.getProperty(HVersion.HAVI_IMPLEMENTATION_VERSION)`,

and all occurrences of: `java.lang.System.getProperty(havi.implementation.vendor)`  
to be replaced with: `java.lang.System.getProperty(HVersion.HAVI_IMPLEMENTATION_VENDOR)`

and all occurrences of: `java.lang.System.getProperty(havi.implementation.name)`  
to be replaced with: `java.lang.System.getProperty(HVersion.HAVI_IMPLEMENTATION_NAME)`.

### A.7.4.37 HKeyboardInputPreferred

#### A.7.4.37.1 INPUT\_NUMERIC

The following text:

This constant indicates that the component only requires alphanumeric input, as determined by the java.lang.Character isDigit method.

shall be considered to be replaced by:

This constant indicates that the component requires numeric input, as determined by the java.lang.Character isDigit method.

#### A.7.4.37.2 INPUT\_ALPHA

The following text:

This constant indicates that the component only requires alphanumeric input, as determined by the java.lang.Character isLetter method.

shall be considered to be replaced by:

This constant indicates that the component requires alphabetic input, as determined by the java.lang.Character isLetter method.

#### A.7.4.37.3 getValidInput

The following text:

Retrieve the customized input character range. The return value of this method should reflect the range of input keys which the component wishes to see, should getType return a value with the INPUT\_CUSTOMIZED bit set. This method may return null if customized input is not requested.

shall be considered to be replaced with:

Retrieve the customized input character range. If getType returns a value with the INPUT\_CUSTOMIZED bit set then this method shall return an array containing the range of customized input keys. If the range of customized input keys has not been set then this method shall return a zero length char array. This method shall return null if getType returns a value without the INPUT\_CUSTOMIZED bit set.

### A.7.4.38 HScreenConfigTemplate

#### A.7.4.38.1 Class description

The following text shall be considered to be added to the end of the class description:

Several preferences in this class are required to be not filled in by the platform in templates generated by the platform. This shall mean;

- the object for this preference (if there is one) is set to null
- the priority for this preference is set to DONT\_CARE

### A.7.4.39 HGraphicsConfiguration

#### A.7.4.39.1 getConfigTemplate

The following text shall be considered to be added to the description of this method:

Preferences that are not filled in by the platform will return DONT\_CARE priority.

#### A.7.4.40 HVideoConfiguration

##### A.7.4.40.1 getConfigTemplate

The following text shall be considered to be added to the description of this method:

Preferences that are not filled in by the platform will return DONT\_CARE priority.

#### A.7.4.41 HToggleButton

##### A.7.4.41.1 Default parameter values exposed in the constructors

The following descriptions will be used to replace the ones already in HToggleButton's "Default parameter values exposed in the constructors" table:

imageFocused - The image to be used as the content for the HState.FOCUSED\_STATE and HState.DISABLED\_FOCUSED\_STATE states of this component.

imageActioned - The image to be used as the content for the HState.ACTIONED\_FOCUSED\_STATE and HState.DISABLED\_ACTIONED\_FOCUSED\_STATE states of this component.

imageNormalActioned - The image to be used as the content for the HState.ACTIONED\_STATE and HState.DISABLED\_ACTIONED\_STATE states of this component.

#### A.7.4.42 HGraphicButton

##### A.7.4.42.1 Default parameter values exposed in the constructors

The following descriptions will be used to replace the ones already in HGraphicButton's "Default parameter values exposed in the constructors" table:

imageFocused - The image to be used as the content for the HState.FOCUSED\_STATE and HState.DISABLED\_FOCUSED\_STATE states of this component.

imageActioned - The image to be used as the content for the HState.ACTIONED\_STATE, HState.ACTIONED\_FOCUSED\_STATE states of this component.

#### A.7.4.43 HTextButton

##### A.7.4.43.1 Default parameter values exposed in the constructors

The rows for textFocus and textAction in HTextButton's "Default parameter values exposed in the constructors" table shall be considered to be removed.

#### A.7.4.44 HLook and classes implementing HLook

In the getMinimumSize method of HLook and all these classes, the following paragraph shall be considered to be replaced:

If the HLook supports the scaling of its content (e.g. an HGraphicLook) and content is set then the return value is a size sufficiently large to hold the minimum size of each piece of content plus any additional dimensions that the HLook requires for border decoration etc.

with:

If the HLook supports the scaling of its content (e.g. an HGraphicLook) and scaling is requested and content is set then the return value is a size containing the width of the narrowest content and the height of the shortest content plus any additional dimensions that the HLook requires for border decoration etc.

#### A.7.4.45 HTextLook

##### A.7.4.45.1 General

In getMaxmimumSize(), getMinimumSize() and getPreferredSize(), the following sentence:

If the HDefaultTextLayoutManager returns a zero size, then proceed with the following steps.

shall be considered to be replaced with the following:

If `HVisible.getTextLayoutManager()` does not return an instance of `HDefaultTextLayoutManager`, or `HDefaultTextLayoutManager` returns a zero size, then proceed with the following steps as if content for this `HVisible` had not been set.

#### A.7.4.46 HExtendedLook

## org.havi.ui HExtendedLook

### Syntax

```
public interface HExtendedLook extends HLook
```

### All Superinterfaces:

`java.lang.Cloneable`, `HLook`

### Description

The `HExtendedLook` interface is derived from the `HLook` interface and abstracts out the drawing of the look into separate background, border and visible data components. The interface allows the programmer to derive new looks from the default looks and have control over which component parts are drawn. This aids interoperability between platforms since no two manufacturer's `HLook` implementation look the same.

### See Also:

`setLook(HLook)`, `setLookData(Object, Object)`, `paint(Graphics)`,  
`setBackgroundMode(int)`, `setHorizontalAlignment(int)`,  
`setVerticalAlignment(int)`, `setResizeMode(int)`, `HTextLook`, `HGraphicLook`,  
`HAnimateLook`, `HRangeLook`, `HSinglelineEntryLook`, `HMultilineEntryLook`

## Methods

### fillBackground(Graphics, HVisible, int)

```
public void fillBackground(java.awt.Graphics g, HVisible visible, int state)
```

The `fillBackground(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method paints the component with its current background `Color` according to the `setBackgroundMode(int)` method of `HVisible`.

This method is only called from `showLook` within this `HExtendedLook` implementation. It's not the intention to call this method directly from outside of the `HExtendedLook`.

Regardless of the background mode, it is an implementation option for this method to render added decorations which may affect the look's transparency. This method shall not be used to render any `HVisible` related data or content associated with the `HVisible`. It is purely for background and decoration only.

The `fillBackground` method should not modify the `clipRect` (clipping rectangle) of the `Graphics` object that is passed to it in a way which includes any area not part of that original `clipRect`. If any modifications are made, the original `clipRect` shall be restored.

### Parameters:

`g` - the graphics context.

`visible` - the visible.

`state` - the state parameter indicates the state of the visible

**See Also:**

`isOpaque` (`HVisible`)

**renderBorders(Graphics, HVisible, int)**

```
public void renderBorders(java.awt.Graphics g, HVisible visible, int state)
```

The `renderBorders(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method paints any implementation specific borders according to the `setBordersEnabled(boolean)` method of `HVisible`. If borders are drawn, the border decoration shall be rendered within the border area as returned by `getInsets`. The behavior of this method, when a subclass overrides the method `getInsets` is undefined, except that it will never draw outside the border area as returned by `getInsets`.

This method is only called from `showLook` within this `HExtendedLook` implementation. It's not the intention to call this method directly from outside of the `HExtendedLook`.

The `renderBorders(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method should not modify the `clipRect` (clipping rectangle) of the `Graphics` object that is passed to it in a way which includes any area not part of that original `clipRect`. If any modifications are made, the original `clipRect` shall be restored.

**Parameters:**

`g` - the graphics context.

`visible` - the visible.

`state` - the state parameter indicates the state of the visible

**renderVisible(Graphics, HVisible, int)**

```
public void renderVisible(java.awt.Graphics g, HVisible visible, int state)
```

The `renderVisible(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method paints any content or other data associated with the look's `HVisible`. This method shall not be used to render a background nor any other decoration. Its purpose is purely to render content or other value data stored on the `HVisible`. This may be set via `HVisible` methods such as `setTextContent` and `setGraphicContent`. Rendering shall take place within the bounds returned by the `getInsets` method.

This method is only called from `showLook` within this `HExtendedLook` implementation. It's not the intention to call this method directly from outside of the `HExtendedLook`.

For looks which draw content (e.g. `HTextLook`, `HGraphicLook` and `HAnimateLook`), if no content is associated with the component, this method does nothing.

The `renderVisible(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method should not modify the `clipRect` (clipping rectangle) of the `Graphics` object that is passed to it in a way which includes any area not part of that original `clipRect`. If any modifications are made, the original `clipRect` shall be restored.

**Parameters:**

`g` - the graphics context.

`visible` - the visible.

`state` - the state parameter indicates the state of the visible

**showLook(Graphics, HVisible, int)**

```
public void showLook(java.awt.Graphics g, HVisible visible, int state)
```

The `showLook(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method is the entry point for repainting the entire `HVisible` component. This method delegates the responsibility of drawing the component background, borders and any `HVisible` related data or content to the `fillBackground`, `renderVisible` and `renderBorders` methods respectively, subject to the clipping rectangle of the `Graphics` object



passed to it. This method shall call the methods `fillBackground`, `renderVisible`, and `renderBorders` in that order and shall not do any rendering itself.

The `showLook(Graphics, HVisible, int)` method should not modify the `clipRect` (clipping rectangle) of the `Graphics` object that is passed to it in a way which includes any area not part of that original `clipRect`. If any modifications are made, the original `clipRect` shall be restored.

Any resources **explicitly** associated with an `HExtendedLook` should be loaded by the `HExtendedLook` during its creation, etc. Note that the "standard" looks don't load content by default.

This method is called from the `paint(Graphics)` method of `HVisible` and must never be called from elsewhere. Components wishing to redraw themselves should call their `repaint` method in the usual way.

**Overrides:**

`showLook(Graphics, HVisible, int)` in interface `HExtendedLook`

**Parameters:**

`g` - the graphics context.

`visible` - the visible.

`state` - the state parameter indicates the state of the visible, allowing the look to render the appropriate content for that state. Note that some components (e.g. `HStaticRange`, `HRange`, `HRangeValue`) do not use state-based content.

#### A.7.4.47 `HAnimateLook`, `HGraphicLook`, `HListGroupLook`, `HMultilineEntryLook`, `HRangeLook`, `HSinglelineEntryLook` and `HTextLook`

The following changes shall be considered to apply to all these implementing looks.

- a) The method descriptions in `HExtendedLook` for `fillBackground()`, `renderBorders()` and `renderVisible()` shall be considered to form part of all the above looks.
- b) The description of `showLook()` in each of the above looks shall be considered to be replaced with the one in `HExtendedLook`.
- c) `HAnimateLook`, `HGraphicLook`, `HSinglelineEntryLook` and `HTextLook` shall be considered to implement `HExtendedLook` instead of `HLook`.
- d) `HListGroupLook` and `HRangeLook` shall be considered to implement `HExtendedLook` additionally to `HAdjustableLook`. The method `showLook()` shall be implemented as specified by `HExtendedLook`.

### A.7.5 `org.havi.ui.event`

#### A.7.5.1 `HActionEvent`

The text:

Modifiers are not used with the HAVi platform. Interoperable HAVi applications shall not use the return value of this method.

shall be considered to be replaced by:

Modifiers are not used for `HActionEvents` with the HAVi platform. Interoperable HAVi applications shall not use the return value of this method.

## A.7.5.2 HItemEvent

### A.7.5.2.1 Constructor

The following text:

item - The item which caused the change, or null if this information is not available. This information shall be provided if the event id is one of ITEM\_SELECTED, ITEM\_CLEARED, ITEM\_SET\_CURRENT, ITEM\_SET\_NEXT or ITEM\_SET\_PREVIOUS.

Shall be considered to be replaced with the following:

item - The item which caused the change, or null if this information is not available.

If the event is sent to listeners, this information shall be provided if the event id is one of ITEM\_SELECTED, ITEM\_CLEARED, ITEM\_SET\_NEXT or ITEM\_SET\_PREVIOUS."

### A.7.5.2.2 ITEM\_SET\_CURRENT

The following paragraph:

An item event with this id is sent from the component whenever the current item of an HItemValue component changes.

Shall be considered to be replaced with:

An item event with this id is sent to or from the component whenever the current item of an HItemValue component changes.

## A.7.5.3 HKeyEvent

The following paragraph shall not apply in this specification:

Note that the HAVi system should only generate KEY\_PRESSED events. Neither KEY\_TYPED nor KEY\_RELEASED events should be generated. Furthermore, the system should collapse combined events. For example, a usual Java Virtual Machine generates for the letter A three events: KEY\_PRESSED for modifier key Shift, KEY\_PRESSED for letter "A" and KEY\_TYPED for "A". This should be collapsed into one single KEY\_PRESSED event with the letter "A" and the Shift modifier set. This is to simplify the key event handling of applications.

### A.7.5.3.1 Constructors

The description of the "id" parameter shall be considered to have the following text added:

This is the value that will be returned by the event object's getID method.

## A.7.5.4 HRcEvent

The following changes shall be considered to apply in this class:

- Replace all occurrences of "action id" in the descriptions of the VK constants by "key code".
- Replace all occurrences of "event ids" in the descriptions of RC\_FIRST and RC\_LAST by "key codes". Tag both constants as being deprecated. Add for RC\_FIRST a specific deprecated text:
  - \* @deprecated The value of this field is useless, since it mixes event ids and key codes. It does **not** reflect any of the remote control key codes listed in this class.
- Remove the following sentence from the class description: "Note that it is an implementation constraint that the HrcEvent event range should not intersect with the Java AWT key event range."
- Add to the parameter descriptions of "id" for both constructors: "in the range KEY\_FIRST to KEY\_LAST".

## A.7.5.5 HRcCapabilities

In the method `isRepresentation(int aCode)`, all references to the parameter `id` shall be considered to be replaced with `keyCode`.

## A.7.5.6 HEventGroup

### A.7.5.6.1 getKeyEvents

This class shall be considered to be extended with the following method:

```
/**
 * Return the key codes contained in this event group
 */
public int[] getKeyEvents() {}
```

## A.7.6 References to ISO/IEC10646-1:1993

All references to ISO/IEC10646-1:1993 are considered to be non-specific references to [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#). Also, the term "support for Unicode ranges" is considered to be "support for character ranges as specified by [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#)".

## A.8 ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26]

### A.8.1 Reconstruction of NPT

In equation 8-3, SCR\_Reference is considered to be STC\_Reference.

## A.9 JAE 1.1.8 const [72]

The constants listed below shall have the values given below and not those in the normative reference:

```
public final static float java.awt.Component.TOP_ALIGNMENT = 0.0f;
public final static float java.awt.Component.CENTER_ALIGNMENT = 0.5f;
public final static float java.awt.Component.BOTTOM_ALIGNMENT = 1.0f;
public final static float java.awt.Component.LEFT_ALIGNMENT = 0.0f;
public final static float java.awt.Component.RIGHT_ALIGNMENT = 1.0f;

public final static long java.lang.Long.MIN_VALUE = 0x8000000000000000L;
public final static long java.lang.Long.MAX_VALUE = 0x7fffffffffffffffL;
public final static float java.lang.Float.NEGATIVE_INFINITY = -1.0f/0.0f;
public final static float java.lang.Float.POSITIVE_INFINITY = 1.0f/0.0f;
public final static float java.lang.Float.NaN = 0.0f/0.0f;
public final static double java.lang.Double.POSITIVE_INFINITY = 1.0/0.0;
public final static double java.lang.Double.NEGATIVE_INFINITY = -1.0/0.0;
public final static double java.lang.Double.NaN = 0.0/0.0;
public static final float java.lang.Float.MIN_VALUE = 1.40129846432481707e-45f;
public final static double java.lang.Double.MIN_VALUE = Double.longBitsToDouble(0x0000000000000001L);
public static final float java.lang.Float.MAX_VALUE = 3.40282346638528860e+38f;
```

## A.10 CSS 2 [101]

This specification is considered to include:

### 11.1.2 Clipping: the "clip" property

A clipping region defines what portion of an element's rendered content is visible. By default, the clipping region has the same size and shape as the element's box(es). However, the clipping region may be modified by the "clip" property.

"clip"

Value: <shape> | auto | inherit

Initial: auto

Applies to: block-level and replaced elements

Inherited: no

Percentages: N/A

Media: visual

The "clip" property applies to elements that have a "overflow" property with a value other than "visible". Values have the following meanings:

auto

The clipping region has the same size and location as the element's box(es).

<shape>

In CSS2, the only valid <shape> value is: rect (<top> <right> <bottom> <left>) where <top>, <bottom> <right>, and <left> specify offsets from the respective sides of the box.

<top>, <right>, <bottom>, and <left> may either have a <length> value or "auto". Negative lengths are permitted. The value "auto" means that a given edge of the clipping region will be the same as the edge of the element's generated box (i. e., "auto" means the same as "0".)

When coordinates are rounded to pixel coordinates, care should be taken that no pixels remain visible when <left> + <right> is equal to the element's width (or <top> + <bottom> equals the element's height), and conversely that no pixels remain hidden when these values are 0.

The element's ancestors may also have clipping regions (in case their "overflow" property is not "visible"); what is rendered is the intersection of the various clipping regions.

If the clipping region exceeds the bounds of the UA's document window, content may be clipped to that window by the native operating environment.

Example(s):

The following two rules:

```
P { clip: rect(5px, 10px, 10px, 5px); }
```

```
P { clip: rect(5px, -5px, 10px, 5px); }
```

will create the rectangular clipping regions delimited by the dashed lines in the following illustrations:

[D]

Note. In CSS2, all clipping regions are rectangular. We anticipate future extensions to permit non-rectangular clipping.

While CSS2 specifies that values of "rect()" specify offsets from the respective sides of the box, current implementations interpret values with respect to the top and left edges for all four values (top, right, bottom, and left). The Working Group proposes to revise CSS2 to conform to current practice.

## Annex B (normative): Object carousel

### B.1 Introduction

The broadcast applications are transmitted using the DSM-CC User-to-User Object Carousels.

This specification is based on the following specifications:

- ISO/IEC 13818-1 [23] - MPEG 2 systems
- ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26] - DSM-CC
- ETSI EN 301 192 [5] - DVB specification for data broadcasting
- ETSI TR 101 202 [49] - Implementation Guidelines for Databroadcasting

With the constraints and extensions described here.

#### B.1.1 Key to notation

Certain notations are used in the "value" columns of the syntax tables:

**Table B.1 : Key to notation**

| Symbol |  |
|--------|--|
| +      | A value that is "allocated" e.g. configuration parameter of the object carousel server.  |
| *      | A value that is "calculated" e.g. a field whose value is calculated by the carousel server as a consequence of the number of bytes in other fields |

### B.2 Object Carousel Profile

In the following chapter, the message structures of the Object carousels are introduced with associated additional restrictions. Each section contains a table specifying the restrictions on the usage of the fields. The table also indicates the source for these restrictions: the DSM-CC standard, DVB guidelines or a specific restriction for this specification.

For the object carousel messages, also the message syntax is included. **In the syntax tables grey shading indicates parts that the broadcaster may put in, but an MHP terminal compliant with this specification may ignore.**

#### B.2.1 DSM-CC Sections

All object carousels messages are transmitted using DSM-CC section format. The DSM-CC Section format is defined in chapter 9.2 of the DSM-CC specification.

The DSM-CC standard provides an option to use either a CRC32 or a checksum for detecting bit errors. For this specification, we make the following restriction:

**Table B.2 : Restrictions on DSM-CC Section format**

| Field                    | Restrictions   | Source     |
|--------------------------|--|------------|
| section_syntax_indicator | 1 (indicating the use of the CRC32)  | This spec. |
| last_section_number      | For sections transporting DownloadDataBlock fragments:<br>- all modules intended to be retrieved shall have the last section number $\leq 0xFE$<br>- if last section number = $0xFF$ implementations conforming to this spec are allowed to abort the retrieval and report error condition | This spec. |

The maximum section length is 4096 bytes for all types of sections used in Object Carousels. The section overhead is 12 bytes, leaving a maximum of 4084 bytes of payload per section.

### B.2.1.1 Sections per TS packet

Any single TS packet is allowed to contain no more than the payload of two sections (i.e. the end of one section and the beginning of another).

## B.2.2 Data Carousel

This section defines the content of the data carousel messages when used in the object carousel.

### B.2.2.1 General

The definitions in [Table B.3](#) apply to both the `dsmccDownloadDataHeader` and the similar `dsmccMessageHeader`.

**Table B.3 : Restrictions on DSM-CC DownloadData and Message headers**

| Field            | Restrictions   | Source     |
|------------------|--|------------|
| TransactionId    | See "Assignment and use of transactionId values" on page 476                                       | This spec. |
| AdaptationLength | The MHP terminal may ignore the possible contents of the <code>dsmccAdaptationHeader</code> field. | This spec. |

### B.2.2.2 DownloadInfoIndication

The `DownloadInfoIndication` is a message that describes a set of modules and gives the necessary parameters to locate the module and retrieve it.

**Table B.4 : Restrictions on the DII**

| Field   | Restrictions  | Source                   |
|---|---|--------------------------|
| blockSize   | maximum size 4066 (max. section payload - DDB-header size (18))<br>The recommended blockSize is 4066. | DSM-CC (This spec. rec.) |
| windowSize  | 0 (not used for Object Carousels)   | DSM-CC                   |
| ackPeriod   | 0 (not used for Object Carousels)   | DSM-CC                   |
| tCDownloadWindow  | 0 (not used for Object Carousels)   | DSM-CC                   |
| tCDownloadScenario  | 0 (not used for Object Carousels)   | DSM-CC                   |
| compatibilityDescriptor():<br>compatibilityDescriptorLength | 0 (no compatibility descriptor for Object Carousels)  | DSM-CC                   |
| PrivateDataLength   | The MHP terminal may ignore the possible contents of the <code>privateData</code> field               | DVB                      |

### B.2.2.3 DownloadServerInitiate

The `DownloadServerInitiate` is used in the case of object carousels to provide the object reference to the `ServiceGateway` (i.e. root directory) of the object carousel.

**Table B.5 : Restrictions on DSI**

| Field   | Restrictions   | Source           |
|---|--|------------------|
| compatibilityDescriptor():<br>compatibilityDescriptorLength | 0 (no compatibility descriptor for Object Carousels)   | DSM-CC           |
| privateData   | Contains the <code>ServiceGatewayInfo</code> structure | DSM-CC           |
| serverId  | Shall be set to 20 bytes each with the value of 0xFF   | DVB / This spec. |

### B.2.2.4 ModuleInfo

The moduleInfo structure is placed in the moduleInfo field of the DownloadInfoIndication of the data carousel. It contains the information needed to locate the module.

**Table B.6 : Restrictions on the DII moduleInfo field**

| Field                      | Restrictions  | Source           |
|----------------------------|---|------------------|
| BIOP::ModuleInfo::Taps     | The first tap shall have the "use" value 0x0017 (BIOP_OBJECT_USE). The id and selector fields are not used and the MHP terminal may ignore them. The MHP terminal may ignore possible other taps in the list.   | DVB              |
| BIOP::ModuleInfo::UserInfo | The userInfo field contains a loop of descriptors. These are specified in the DVB Data Broadcasting standard and/or this specification. The MHP terminal shall support the compressed_module_descriptor (tag 0x09) used to signal that the module is transmitted in compressed form. The userInfo field may also contain a caching_priority_descriptor and one or more label_descriptors. | DVB / This spec. |

**Table B.7 : BIOP::ModuleInfo syntax**

| Syntax  | bits   | Type   | Value   | Comment  |
|---|--|--|---|--|
| BIOP::ModuleInfo() {<br>moduleTimeOut<br>blockTimeOut<br>minBlockTime<br>taps_count<br>{<br>id<br>use<br>assocTag<br>selector_length<br>}<br>for (j=1; j<N1; j++) {<br>id<br>use<br>assocTag<br>selector_length<br>for (j=0; j<N2; j++) {<br>selector_data<br>}<br>}<br>userInfoLength<br>for (k=0; k<N3; j++) {<br>userInfo_data<br>}<br>} | 32<br>32<br>32<br>8<br>16<br>16<br>16<br>8<br>16<br>16<br>16<br>8<br>8<br>8<br>8 | uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf | +<br>+<br>+<br>N1<br>0x0000<br>0x0017<br>+<br>0x00<br>+<br>+<br>+<br>N2<br>+<br>N3<br>+ | ≥ 1<br>user private<br>BIOP_OBJECT_USE<br>Possible additional taps that may be ignored by MHP terminals. |

### B.2.2.4.1 Label descriptor

The `label_descriptor` may be placed in the `userInfo` field of the `moduleInfo` structure. It attaches a label to the corresponding module. Multiple labels can be attached to a module by including multiple label descriptors in the same `userInfo` field. Labels can be used for pre-fetching modules (see 10.8.3.2, "Pre-fetch descriptor" on page 234).

Within one object carousel, the same label may not be used in multiple DII messages. This implies that all modules that share a label are signalled in the same DII message.

**Table B.8 : Label descriptor syntax**

| Syntax  | bits | Type   | Value | Comment   |
|---|------|--------|-------|-----------|
| <pre>label_descriptor() {   descriptor_tag   descriptor_length   for (n=0; n&lt;N1; n++) {     label_char   } }</pre> | 8    | uimsbf | 0x70  | The label |
| <pre>  descriptor_tag</pre>   | 8    | uimsbf | N1    |           |
| <pre>    label_char</pre>   | 8    | uimsbf |       |           |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer value with 0x70 identifies this descriptor.

**label\_char:** These 8-bit fields carry an array of bytes that are a module label. This label matches a label used in one of the pre-fetch descriptors 10.8.3.2, "Pre-fetch descriptor" on page 234.

### B.2.2.4.2 Caching priority descriptor

To indicate priorities for the objects, a `caching_priority_descriptor` may be included in the `userInfo` field of the `moduleInfo` in the `DownloadInfoIndication` message.

This descriptor provides a priority value for the caching. The same priority applies for each object in the module. The priority indicated in the descriptor is only a hint to the MHP terminal and implementations may use that in combination with other caching strategies.

The descriptor includes also the transparency level (see section B.5.2, "Transparency levels of caching" on page 484) that shall be used by the terminal implementation if it caches objects in this module.

**Table B.9 : Caching priority descriptor syntax**

| Syntax  | bits | Type   | Value | Comment |
|---|------|--------|-------|---------|
| <pre>caching_priority_descriptor() {   descriptor_tag   descriptor_length   priority_value   transparency_level }</pre> | 8    | uimsbf | 0x71  |         |
| <pre>  descriptor_tag</pre>   | 8    | uimsbf |       |         |
| <pre>  priority_value</pre>   | 8    | uimsbf |       |         |
| <pre>  transparency_level</pre>   | 8    | uimsbf |       |         |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8 bit integer value with 0x71 identifies this descriptor.

**priority\_value:** indicates the caching priority for the objects within this module. A higher value indicates more importance for caching.



**transparency\_level:** Transparency level that shall be used by the MHP terminal if it caches objects contained in this module. The possible values are listed in table B.10. The semantics of the policies are defined in section B.5.2, "Transparency levels of caching" on page 484.

**Table B.10 : Transparency level values**

| Value   | Description              |
|---------|--------------------------|
| 0       | reserved                 |
| 1       | Transparent caching      |
| 2       | Semi-transparent caching |
| 3       | Static caching.          |
| 4...255 | reserved for future use  |

When this descriptor is not included in the userInfo field of the moduleInfo for a module, the default values that shall be assumed are:

- priority\_value: 128
- transparency\_level: 1 (transparent caching)

### B.2.2.5 ServiceGatewayInfo

The ServiceGatewayInfo structure is carried in the DownloadServerInitiate message and provides the object reference to the ServiceGateway object.

**Table B.11 : Restrictions on the ServiceGatewayInfo**

| Field  | Restrictions  | Source     |
|--|---|------------|
| BIOP::<br>ServiceGatewayInfo::<br>downloadTaps       | The MHP terminal may ignore the downloadTap list.     | This spec. |
| BIOP::<br>ServiceGatewayInfo::<br>serviceContextList | The MHP terminal may ignore the service context list. | This spec. |
| BIOP::<br>ServiceGatewayInfo::<br>UserInfo           | The MHP terminal may ignore the user info.            | This spec. |

**Table B.12 : ServiceGatewayInfo() syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Syntax  | bits | Type   | Value   | Comment  |
|---|------|--------|---------|--|
| ServiceGatewayInfo(){<br>IOP::IOR()<br>downloadTaps_count<br>for (i=0; i<N1; i++) {<br>DSM::Tap()<br>}<br>serviceContextList_count<br>for (i=0; i<N2; i++) {<br>context_id<br>context_data_length<br>for (j=0; j<N3; j++) {<br>context_data_byte<br>}<br>}<br>userInfoLength<br>for (i=0; i<N5; i++) {<br>userInfo_data | 8    | uimsbf | +<br>N1 | See Table B.21 on page 462<br>software download Taps |
|   | 8    | uimsbf | N2      | serviceContextList                                   |
|   | 32   | uimsbf |         |  |
|   | 16   | uimsbf | N3      |  |
|   | 8    | uimsbf | +       |  |
|   | 16   | uimsbf | N5      | user info  |
|   | 8    | uimsbf | +       |  |

**Table B.12 : ServiceGatewayInfo() syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Syntax | bits | Type | Value | Comment |
|--------|------|------|-------|---------|
| }      |      |      |       |         |
| }      |      |      |       |         |

### B.2.2.6 Download Cancel

There is no semantic for this message in this profile. Receivers may ignore them.

## B.2.3 The Object Carousel

### B.2.3.1 BIOP Generic Object Message

The BIOP Generic Object Message is a common structure used by all the BIOP (Broadcast Inter-ORB Protocol) messages.

**Table B.13 : Restrictions on the BIOP Generic Object Message**

| Field                        | Restrictions  | Source |
|------------------------------|---|--------|
| MessageHeader::byte_order    | 0 (indicating big-endian byte order)                                    | DVB    |
| MessageSubHeader::objectKey  | Maximum length of the key shall be four bytes.                          | DVB    |
| MessageSubHeader::objectKind | The short three-letter aliases shall be used, plus the null-terminator. | DVB    |
| Access attributes            | Access attributes are not transmitted in object carousels               | DSM-CC |

### B.2.3.2 CORBA strings

In a number of places Object Carousel messages include text strings. These are formatted in accordance with 12.3.2 of [CORBA/IIOP \[2\]](#) and using CDR-Lite encoding as specified by DSM-CC. I.e. the text is preceded by an integer specifying the length of the string and followed by a null terminator. The size of this integer depends on the string concerned and can be seen clearly in the syntax tables that follow. However, for clarity CORBA format strings and the size of their length fields are summarised in table [B.14](#):

**Table B.14 : Location of CORBA format strings**

| string                            | length field size (bits) | location   |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| objectKind_data                   | 8                        | <a href="#">Table B.16, "BIOP::FileMessage syntax," on page 459</a>  |
| objectKind_data                   | 32                       | <a href="#">Table B.19, "BIOP::DirectoryMessage syntax," on page 461</a>                                       |
| id_data                           | 8                        |  |
| kind_data                         | 8                        |  |
| objectKind_data                   | 8                        | <a href="#">Table B.28, "BIOP::StreamMessage syntax," on page 467</a>  |
| objectKind_data<br>eventName_data | 32<br>8                  | <a href="#">Table B.30, "BIOP::StreamEventMessage syntax," on page 469</a>                                     |
| type_id_byte                      | 32                       | <a href="#">Table B.21, "IOP::IOR syntax," on page 462</a>   |
| id_data<br>kind_data              | 32<br>32                 | <a href="#">Table B.25, "Syntax of Lite Options Profile Body with ServiceLocation component.," on page 465</a> |

### B.2.3.3 BIOP FileMessage

The BIOP FileMessage is used for carrying file objects.

**Table B.15 : Restrictions on the BIOP File Message**

| Field                                    | Restrictions  | Source     |
|--|---|------------|
| MessageSubHeader::<br>ObjectInfo         | The ObjectInfo may be empty (have a length of zero). If not empty the first 8 bytes of the ObjectInfo shall contain the DSM::File::ContentSize attribute. This is optionally followed by a loop of descriptors. The descriptors defined for possible use in this location are:<br><a href="#">Content type descriptor</a> | This spec. |
| MessageSubHeader::<br>ServiceContextList | The MHP terminal may skip the possible serviceContextList structures.   | This spec. |

**Table B.16 : BIOP::FileMessage syntax**

| Syntax   | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment                  |
|--|------|--------|------------|--------------------------|
| BIOP::FileMessage() {  |      |        |            |                          |
| magic  | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x42494F50 | "BIOP"                   |
| biop_version.major   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01       | BIOP major version 1     |
| biop_version.minor   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | BIOP minor version 0     |
| byte_order   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | Big endian byte ordering |
| message_type   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       |                          |
| message_size   | 32   | uimsbf | *          |                          |
| objectKey_length   | 8    | uimsbf | N1         | 1..4                     |
| for (i=0; i<N1; i++) {   |      |        |            |                          |
| objectKey_data   | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                          |
| }  |      |        |            |                          |
| objectKind_length  | 32   | uimsbf | 0x00000004 |                          |
| objectKind_data  | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x66696C00 | "fil" type_id alias      |
| objectInfo_length  | 16   | uimsbf | N2         |                          |
| DSM::File::ContentSize   | 64   | uimsbf | +          | objectInfo (note 1)      |
| for (i=0; i<N2-8; i++) {   |      |        |            |                          |
| descriptor()   | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                          |
| }  |      |        |            |                          |
| serviceContextList_count   | 8    | uimsbf | N3         | serviceContextList       |
| for (i=0; i<N3; i++) {   |      |        |            |                          |
| context_id   | 32   | uimsbf |            |                          |
| context_data_length  | 16   | uimsbf | N4         |                          |
| for (j=0; j<N4; j++) {   |      |        |            |                          |
| context_data_byte  | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                          |
| }  |      |        |            |                          |
| }  |      |        |            |                          |
| messageBody_length   | 32   | uimsbf | *          |                          |
| content_length   | 32   | uimsbf | N5         |                          |
| for (i=0; i<N5; i++) {   |      |        |            |                          |
| content_byte   | 8    | uimsbf | +          | actual file content      |
| }  |      |        |            |                          |
| }  |      |        |            |                          |
| NOTE 1: If present and non-zero, this shall be the same as the content_length of the referenced FileMessage. |      |        |            |                          |

### B.2.3.4 Content type descriptor

Zero or one content type descriptors can be carried in the file `MessageSubHeader::ObjectInfo` or the `BIOP::Binding::ObjectInfo`. Where more than one content type descriptor is used they shall express the same content format. Also, the content type (if any) signalled in the directory binding shall be identical to that signalled in the bound file's header. This optional descriptor identifies the media type of the file.

This content type signalling only applies to objects of type file and is not appropriate for other object types.

If this descriptor is absent or not sufficient to categorise the content type then the extension portion of the file name shall be used to provide the media type mapping via table 7, "File type identification" on page 75. The extension portion of the filename shall not be used if this descriptor is provided.

The format of the content type descriptor is shown in table B.17.

**Table B.17 : Content type descriptor syntax**

| Syntax  | bits | Type   | Value | Comment     |
|---|------|--------|-------|-------------|
| <code>content_type_descriptor() {</code>              |      |        |       |             |
| <code>descriptor_tag</code>                           | 8    | uimsbf | 0x72  |             |
| <code>descriptor_length</code>                        | 8    | uimsbf |       |             |
| <code>for (i=0; i&lt;descriptor_length; i++) {</code> |      |        |       |             |
| <code>content_type_data_byte</code>                   | 8    | uimsbf |       | A MIME type |
| <code>}</code>  |      |        |       |             |
| <code>}</code>  |      |        |       |             |

**descriptor\_tag:** This 8-bit integer with value 0x72 identifies this descriptor.

**descriptor\_length:** This 8-bit integer identifies the number of bytes following it.

**content\_type\_data\_byte:** These bytes form a string that indicates the MIME content type of the object. The string is specified as follows:

```
content_type_data = type "/" subtype *("; " parameter)
```

Where `type`, `subtype` and `parameter` are as defined in section 5 of IETF RFC 2045 [64] and hence `content_type_data` carries the payload of the Content-Type header defined in [64].

### B.2.3.5 BIOP DirectoryMessage

The BIOP DirectoryMessage is used for carrying the directory objects.

**Table B.18 : Restrictions on the BIOP Directory Message**

| Field                                | Restrictions  | Source     |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------|
| MessageSubHeader::ObjectInfo         | The MHP terminal may skip the N2 possible bytes in the objectInfo field.  | This spec. |
| MessageSubHeader::ServiceContextList | The MHP terminal may skip the N3 possible serviceContextList structures.  | This spec. |
| BIOP::Name                           | The name shall contain exactly one NameComponent.   | This spec. |
| BIOP::Binding::BindingType           | Either "ncontext" (in the case of a Directory object) or "nobject" (in the case of a File or a Stream object). Binding type "composite" shall not be used.  | DVB        |
| BIOP::Binding::ObjectInfo            | The ObjectInfo for bound objects may be empty (have a length of zero). If the bound object is a file and the ObjectInfo is not empty the first 8 bytes of the ObjectInfo shall contain the ContentSize attribute. This is optionally followed by a loop of descriptors. The descriptors defined for possible use in this location are:<br><a href="#">Content type descriptor</a> | This spec. |

Table B.19 : BIOP::DirectoryMessage syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Syntax                     | bits | Type   | Value              | Comment  |
|----------------------------|------|--------|--------------------|--|
| BIOP::DirectoryMessage() { |      |        |                    |  |
| magic                      | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x42494F50         | "BIOP"   |
| biop_version.major         | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01               | BIOP major version 1   |
| biop_version.minor         | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00               | BIOP minor version 0   |
| byte_order                 | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00               | big endian byte ordering   |
| message_type               | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00               |  |
| message_size               | 32   | uimsbf | *                  |  |
| objectKey_length           | 8    | uimsbf | N1                 | 1..4   |
| for (i=0; i<N1; i++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| objectKey_data             | 8    | uimsbf | +                  |  |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| objectKind_length          | 32   | uimsbf | 0x00000004         |  |
| objectKind_data            | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x64697200         | "dir" type_id alias  |
| objectInfo_length          | 16   | uimsbf | N2 = 0<br>(note 1) | objectInfo   |
| for (i=0; i<N2; i++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| objectInfo_data            | 8    | uimsbf | +                  |  |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| serviceContextList_count   | 8    | uimsbf | N3                 | serviceContextList   |
| for (i=0; i<N3; i++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| context_id                 | 32   | uimsbf |                    |  |
| context_data_length        | 16   | uimsbf | N4                 |  |
| for (j=0; j<N4; j++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| context_data_byte          | 8    | uimsbf | +                  |  |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| messageBody_length         | 32   | uimsbf | *                  |  |
| bindings_count             | 16   | uimsbf | N5                 | Binding  |
| for (i=0; i<N5; i++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| BIOP::Name() {             |      |        |                    |  |
| nameComponents_count       | 8    | uimsbf | N6 = 1             | See <a href="#">Table B.15</a> .   |
| for (i=0; i<N6; i++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| id_length                  | 8    | uimsbf | N7                 | NameComponent id   |
| for (j=0; j<N7; j++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| id_data                    | 8    | uimsbf | +                  | The "/" character shall not be used.   |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| kind_length                | 8    | uimsbf | N8                 | NameComponent kind   |
| for (j=0; j<N8; j++) {     |      |        |                    |  |
| kind_data                  | 8    | uimsbf | +                  | as type_id (see <a href="#">Table 4-4</a> in <a href="#">ETSI TR 101 202</a> ) |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| }                          |      |        |                    |  |
| BindingType                | 8    | uimsbf | +                  | 0x01 for nobject<br>0x02 for ncontext  |
| IOP::IOR()                 |      |        | +                  | objectRef see <a href="#">Table B.21</a> on <a href="#">page 462</a>           |
| objectInfo_length          | 16   | uimsbf | N9                 |  |
| if(kind_data == "fil"){    |      |        |                    |  |

**Table B.19 : BIOP::DirectoryMessage syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Syntax  | bits | Type   | Value | Comment                                 |
|---|------|--------|-------|---|
| DSM::File::ContentSize  | 64   | uimsbf | +     | 0 means that file size is not signalled |
| <pre> for (j=0; j&lt;N9-8; j++) {     descriptor_byte } </pre>  | 8    | uimsbf | +     |   |
| <pre> else {     for (j=0; j&lt;N9; j++) {         descriptor_byte     } } </pre>                             | 8    | uimsbf | +     |   |
| <pre> } } } </pre>  |      |        |       |   |
| NOTE 1: See item 2 under 11.3.2.2 "Directory Message Format" in DSM-CC "the objectInfo field shall be empty". |      |        |       |   |

### B.2.3.6 BIOP ServiceGateway message

The syntax of the BIOP ServiceGateway message is identical to that of the [BIOP DirectoryMessage](#) (described above) with the following exceptions:

- the object kind is "srg" rather than "dir".

### B.2.3.7 BIOP Interoperable Object References

The Interoperable Object References (IOR) are references to objects and contain the necessary information to locate the object. The IOR structure may contain different options to be able to point to objects that can be reached via different types of connections. For this specification, the use of IORs is limited to references to objects carried in broadcast object carousels. For object carousels, there are two types of object references: one to be used to reference objects carried in the same object carousel and one to be used to reference objects in other object carousels.

**Table B.20 : Restrictions on the BIOP IOR**

| Field                       | Restrictions  | Source     |
|-----------------------------|---|------------|
| IOP::IOR::type_id           | Contains the objectKind of the referenced object. A short three-letter aliases shall be used, plus a null-terminator.   | This spec. |
| IOP::IOR::taggedProfileList | There shall be at least 1 taggedProfile included in an IOR. For objects carried in a broadcast object carousel, the first taggedProfile shall be either a TAG_BIOP profile or a TAG_LITE_OPTIONS. If the first tagged profile is some other profile, the object is not carried in a broadcast object carousel and the MHP terminal may ignore the object subject to its own capabilities. | This spec. |

**Table B.21 : IOP::IOR syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Syntax                 | bits | Type   | Value | Comment                          |
|------------------------|------|--------|-------|----------------------------------|
| IOP::IOR {             |      |        |       |                                  |
| type_id_length         | 32   | uimsbf | N1    |                                  |
| for (i=0; i<N1; i++) { |      |        |       |                                  |
| type_id_byte           | 8    | uimsbf | +     | Short alias type_id (e.g. "dir") |
| }                      |      |        |       |                                  |
| taggedProfiles_count   | 32   | uimsbf | N2    | Profile bodies                   |

Table B.21 : IOP::IOR syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Syntax   | bits | Type | Value | Comment  |
|--|------|------|-------|--|
| IOP::taggedProfile()   |      |      |       | For objects in broadcast carousels: either <a href="#">BIOPProfileBody</a> or <a href="#">LiteOptionsProfileBody</a> . |
| <pre> for (n=0; n&lt;N2-1;n++) {     IOP::taggedProfile() } </pre> |      |      |       | MHP terminal may ignore other profiles (2...N1) if present   |

### B.2.3.7.1 BIOPProfileBody

The BiopProfileBody is used for references to objects within the same object carousel.

Table B.22 : Restrictions on the BIOP Profile Body

| Field                          | Restrictions   | Source     |
|--------------------------------|--|------------|
| BiopProfileBody::byte_order    | 0 (indicating big-endian byte order)   | DVB        |
| BiopProfileBody::LiteComponent | The list shall contain exactly 1 BiopObjectLocation and exactly 1 DSM::ConnBinder as the first two components in that order. The MHP terminal may ignore possible other components in the list.  | This spec. |
| DSM::ConnBinder                | For objects carried in the broadcast object carousel, the first Tap shall be of type BIOP_DELIVERY_PARA_USE. If there is another type of tap in the first position, the MHP terminal may ignore this object reference, as it is a reference for object accessed using another type of protocol (e.g. for return channel use). The MHP terminal may ignore possible other taps in the list. | This spec. |
| DSM::Tap                       | In the BIOP_DELIVER_PARA_USE tap, the id field is not used and may be ignored by the MHP terminal.   | This spec. |

Table B.23 : BIOP Profile Body syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Syntax   | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment                       |
|--|------|--------|------------|-------------------------------|
| <pre> BIOPProfileBody {     profileId_tag     profile_data_length     profile_data_byte_order     lite_component_count     BIOP::ObjectLocation {         componentId_tag         component_data_length         carouselId         moduleId         version.major         version.minor         objectKey_length         for (k=0; k&lt;N2; k++) {             objectKey_data         }     } } </pre> |      |        |            |                               |
|  | 32   | uimsbf | 0x49534F06 | TAG_BIOP (BIOP Profile Body)  |
|  | 32   | uimsbf | *          |                               |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | big endian byte order         |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | N1         |                               |
|  | 32   | uimsbf | 0x49534F50 | TAG_ObjectLocation            |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | *          |                               |
|  | 32   | uimsbf | +          |                               |
|  | 16   | uimsbf | +          |                               |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01       | BIOP protocol major version 1 |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | BIOP protocol minor version 0 |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | N2         | 1..4                          |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                               |

Table B.23 : BIOP Profile Body syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Syntax                    | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment   |
|---------------------------|------|--------|------------|---|
| DSM::ConnBinder {         |      |        |            |   |
| componentId_tag           | 32   | uimsbf | 0x49534F40 | TAG_ConnBinder  |
| component_data_length     | 8    | uimsbf | N4         |   |
| taps_count                | 8    | uimsbf | N3         |   |
| DSM::Tap {                |      |        |            |   |
| id                        | 16   | uimsbf | 0x0000     | user private  |
| use                       |      |        |            | If BIOP_DELIVERY_PARA_USE is provided it shall be the first tap.  |
|                           | 16   | uimsbf | 0x0016     | If there is another type of tap in the first position, the MHP terminal may ignore this object reference, as it is a reference for an object accessed using another type of protocol (e.g. for return channel use). |
| assocTag                  | 16   | uimsbf | +          |   |
| selector_length           | 8    | uimsbf | 0x0A       |   |
| selector_type             | 16   | uimsbf | 0x0001     |   |
| transactionId             | 32   | uimsbf | *          |   |
| timeout                   | 32   | uimsbf | *          |   |
| }                         |      |        |            |   |
| for (n=0; n<N4-18; n++) { |      |        |            | The MHP terminal may skip over the possible additional taps   |
| additional_tap_byte       | 8    | uimsbf |            |   |
| }                         |      |        |            |   |
| for (n=0;n<N6;n++) {      |      |        |            | N6=N1-2   |
| BIOP::LiteComponent{      |      |        |            |   |
| componentId_tag           | 32   | uimsbf | +          |   |
| component_data_length     | 8    | uimsbf | N7         |   |
| for (i=0; i<N7; i++) {    |      |        |            |   |
| component_data_byte       | 8    | uimsbf |            |   |
| }                         |      |        |            |   |
| }                         |      |        |            |   |
| }                         |      |        |            |   |
| }                         |      |        |            |   |



### B.2.3.7.2 LiteOptionsProfileBody

The LiteOptionsProfileBody is used for making links to objects carried in other object carousels. The LiteOptionsProfileBody can be used to make references to objects carried in other carousels within the same Transport Streams or in other Transport Streams. The following constraints are put on the use of the LiteOptionsProfileBody;

- LiteOptionsProfileBody references shall never be used in an IOR which is in the DSI referencing the service gateway.
- The target carousel is never mounted automatically by the implementation, but the application may do so using the MHP DSMCC API and where necessary, the tuning API.
- When the LiteOptionsProfileBody is encountered the application will get a ServiceXFRErrorEvent or a ServiceXFRException unless the object carousel which is the target of the lite options profile body reference is already mounted by the MHP terminal. In this latter case, the access to the object shall succeed unless the object is unavailable, e.g. the target file does not exist in the target carousel or the target carousel has lost its connection.

**Table B.24 : Restrictions on the Lite Options Profile Body**

| Field   | Restrictions  | Source     |
|---|---|------------|
| LiteOptionsProfileBody::profile_data_byte_order | 0 (indicating big-endian byte order)  | DVB        |
| LiteOptionsProfileBody::LiteOptionComponents    | The list shall contain a ServiceLocation component as the first component. The MHP terminal may ignore possible other components in the list. | This spec. |
| DSM::ServiceLocation                            | For objects carried in the broadcast object carousel, the service domain NSAP address shall follow the Carousel NSAP address format.          | This spec. |
| DSM::ServiceLocation::InitialContext            | The MHP terminal may ignore the initial context   | This spec. |

**Table B.25 : Syntax of Lite Options Profile Body with ServiceLocation component. (Sheet 1 of 2)**

| Syntax                                      | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment  |                       |
|---|------|--------|------------|--|-----------------------|
| LiteOptionsProfileBody {<br>profileId_tag   | 32   | uimsbf | 0x49534F05 | TAG_LITE_OPTIONS (Lite Options Profile Body)                       |                       |
| profile_data_length                         | 32   | uimsbf | *          |  |                       |
| profile_data_byte_order                     | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       |  | big endian byte order |
| lite_component_count                        | 8    | uimsbf | N1         |  |                       |
| DSM::ServiceLocation {<br>componentId_tag   | 32   | uimsbf | 0x49534F46 | TAG_ServiceLocation  |                       |
| component_data_length                       | 8    | uimsbf | *          |  |                       |
| serviceDomain_length                        | 8    | uimsbf | 0x14       | Length of carousel NSAP address                                    |                       |
| serviceDomain_data()                        | 160  | uimsbf | +          | <a href="#">Table B.26 "DVB Carousel NSAP Address"</a><br>pathName |                       |
| CosNaming::Name() {<br>nameComponents_count | 32   | uimsbf | N2         | NameComponent id   |                       |
| for (i=0; i<N2; i++) {<br>id_length         | 32   | uimsbf | N3         |  |                       |
| for (j=0; j<N3 j++) {<br>id_data            | 8    | uimsbf | +          |  |                       |
| }   |      |        |            |  |                       |
| kind_length                                 | 32   | uimsbf | N4         | NameComponent kind   |                       |
| for (j=0; j<N4 j++) {<br>kind_data          | 8    | uimsbf | +          | as type_id (see <a href="#">Table 4-4 in ETSI TR 101 202</a> )     |                       |
| }   |      |        |            |  |                       |
| }   |      |        |            |  |                       |
| }   |      |        |            |  |                       |

**Table B.25 : Syntax of Lite Options Profile Body with ServiceLocation component. (Sheet 2 of 2)**

| Syntax  | bits         | Type                       | Value   | Comment |
|---|--------------|----------------------------|---------|---------|
| }<br>initialContext_length  | 32           | uimsbf                     | N5      |         |
| for (n=0; n<N5; n++) {<br>InitialContext_data_byte<br>}   | 8            | uimsbf                     |         |         |
| }<br>for (n=0; n<N6; n++) {<br>BIOP::LiteComponent{<br>componentId_tag<br>component_data_length<br>for (i=0; i<N7; i++) {<br>component_data_byte<br>}<br>}<br>} | 32<br>8<br>8 | uimsbf<br>uimsbf<br>uimsbf | +<br>N7 | N6=N1-1 |
| }   |              |                            |         |         |

**Table B.26 : DVB Carousel NSAP Address**

| Syntax   | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment   |
|--|------|--------|------------|---|
| DVBcarouselNSAPaddress {<br>AFI                  | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | NSAP for private use  |
| Type   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | Object carousel NSAP Address.   |
| carouselId                                       | 32   | uimsbf | +          | To resolve this reference a carousel_id_descriptor with the same carousel_id as indicated in this field must be present in the PMT signalling for the service identified below.     |
| specifierType                                    | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01       | IEEE OUI  |
| specifierData { IEEE OUI }                       | 24   | uimsbf | 0x00015A   | Constant for DVB OUI  |
| dvb_service_location () {<br>transport_stream_id | 16   | uimsbf | +          | This may be set to 0x0000 which indicates that the MHP terminal shall not use the transport_stream_id when locating the service. For any other value then this field shall be used. |
| original_network_id                              | 16   | uimsbf | +          |   |
| service_id                                       | 16   | uimsbf | +          | (= MPEG-2 program_number)   |
| reserved   | 32   | bslbf  | 0xFFFFFFFF |   |
| }  |      |        |            |   |
| }  |      |        |            |   |

## B.2.3.8 BIOP StreamMessage

Table B.27 : Restrictions on the BIOP Stream Message

| Field                                    | Restrictions   | Source     |
|--|--|------------|
| MessageSubHeader::<br>ObjectInfo         | The ObjectInfo field contains the DSM::Stream::Info_T structure and optionally other data after the Stream Info structure. MHP terminals may ignore the aDescription_bytes in the DSM::Stream::Info_T structure and the possible other object info data following the structure. Broadcasts may set the duration field to zero to indicate undefined duration.   | This spec. |
| MessageSubHeader::<br>ServiceContextList | The MHP terminal may skip the possible serviceContextList structures.  | This spec. |
| MessageSubHeader::<br>MessageBody        | The MessageBody carries a sequence of taps.<br>There shall be at most one tap of use BIOP_PROGRAM_USE. This tap identifies the service that provides the media stream associated with the Stream object (via a deferred_association_tags_descriptor in the PMT). The tap may only reference programs that are broadcast on the same multiplex (i.e. MHP terminals shall not need to tune to a different multiplex in order to receive the referenced media stream).<br>There shall also be at most one tap with use STR_NPT_USE, which MHP terminals shall interpret as described in <a href="#">ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26]</a> .<br>MHP terminals may ignore possible other Taps (such as BIOP_ES_USE). | This spec. |

Table B.28 : BIOP::StreamMessage syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Syntax                         | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment                               |
|--------------------------------|------|--------|------------|---------------------------------------|
| BIOP::StreamMessage() {        |      |        |            |                                       |
| magic                          | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x42494F50 | "BIOP"                                |
| biop_version.major             | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01       | BIOP major version 1                  |
| biop_version.minor             | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | BIOP minor version 0                  |
| byte_order                     | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | big endian byte ordering              |
| message_type                   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       |                                       |
| message_size                   | 32   | uimsbf | *          |                                       |
| objectKey_length               | 8    | uimsbf | N1         | 1..4                                  |
| for (i=0; i<N1; i++) {         |      |        |            |                                       |
| objectKey_data                 | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                                       |
| }                              |      |        |            |                                       |
| objectKind_length              | 32   | uimsbf | 0x00000004 |                                       |
| objectKind_data                | 8    | uimsbf | 0x73747200 | "str" type_id alias                   |
| objectInfo_length              | 16   | uimsbf | N2         |                                       |
| DSM::Stream::Info_T {          |      |        |            | objectInfo                            |
| aDescription_length            | 8    | uimsbf | N3         | aDescription                          |
| for (i=0; i<N3; i++) {         |      |        |            |                                       |
| aDescription_bytes             | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                                       |
| }                              |      |        |            |                                       |
| duration.aSeconds              | 32   | simsbf | +          | may be set to 0 to indicate undefined |
| duration.aMicroSeconds         | 32   | uimsbf | +          | may be set to 0 to indicate undefined |
| audio                          | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                                       |
| video                          | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                                       |
| data                           | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                                       |
| }                              |      |        |            |                                       |
| for (i=0; i<N2-(N3+10); i++) { |      |        |            |                                       |
| objectInfo_byte                | 8    | uimsbf | +          |                                       |
| }                              |      |        |            |                                       |
| serviceContextList_count       | 8    | uimsbf | N4         | serviceContextList                    |

Table B.28 : BIOP::StreamMessage syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Syntax   | bits | Type   | Value    | Comment  |
|--|------|--------|----------|--|
| <pre> for (i=0; i&lt;N4; i++) {   context_id   context_data_length   for (j=0; j&lt;N5; j++) {     context_data_byte   } } </pre>  | 32   | uimsbf |          |  |
| <pre> messageBody_length taps_count for (i=0; i&lt;N6; i++) {   id   use   assocTag   selector_length } } </pre>   | 32   | uimsbf | *        |  |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | N5       |  |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | +        |  |
|  | 16   | uimsbf | (note 1) | see B.2.4.4 "Timebases"                                |
|  | 16   | uimsbf | +        | see Table 4-12 in DVB Guidelines for Data Broadcasting |
|  | 16   | uimsbf | +        |  |
|  | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00     | no selector  |
| <p>NOTE 1: If the tap use is STR_NPT_USE then the value of this 16 bit integer corresponds to the value of the contentId field of the NPTReferenceDescriptor that defines the time base for this stream. For other values of tap use the value of this field is undefined.</p> |      |        |          |  |

## B.2.3.9 BIOP StreamEventMessage

Table B.29 : Restrictions on the BIOP StreamEvent Message

| Field                                | Restrictions  | Source     |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------|
| MessageSubHeader::ObjectInfo         | The ObjectInfo field contains the DSM::Stream::Info_T and DSM::Stream::EventList_T structures followed optionally by other object info data (which may be ignored by MHP terminals).<br>See <a href="#">Table B.27 on page 467</a> regarding the DSM::Stream::Info_T. MHP terminals may ignore the possible other data following the DSM::Stream::EventList_T.<br>The EventList_T defines a sequence of event names that correlates to the sequence of event ids in the MessageBody. eventNames_count shall equal eventIds_count.   | This spec. |
| MessageSubHeader::ServiceContextList | The MHP terminal may skip the possible serviceContextList structures.   | This spec. |
| MessageSubHeader::MessageBody        | The MessageBody carries a sequence of taps followed by a sequence of event ids.<br>The sequence of taps follows the following rules: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There shall be at most one tap of use BIOP_PROGRAM_USE. This tap identifies the service that provides the media stream associated with the Stream object (via a deferred_association_tags_descriptor in the PMT). The tap may only reference programs that are broadcast on the same multiplex (i.e. MHP terminals shall not need to tune to a different multiplex in order to receive the referenced media stream).</li> <li>• There shall be at most one tap with use STR_NPT_USE, which MHP terminals shall interpret as described in <a href="#">ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26]</a>.</li> <li>• There shall be at most one tap with use STR_EVENT_USE or STR_STATUS_AND_EVENT_USE. This tap indicates the PID where all StreamEvent descriptors related to the StreamEvent object are broadcast. MHP terminals may ignore possible other Taps (such as BIOP_ES_USE).</li> </ul> | This spec. |

Table B.30 : BIOP::StreamEventMessage syntax (Sheet 1 of 2)

| Syntax                       | bits | Type   | Value      | Comment                                |
|------------------------------|------|--------|------------|--|
| BIOP::StreamEventMessage() { |      |        |            |  |
| magic                        | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x42494F50 | "BIOP"                                 |
| biop_version.major           | 8    | uimsbf | 0x01       | BIOP major version 1                   |
| biop_version.minor           | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | BIOP minor version 0                   |
| byte_order                   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       | big endian byte ordering               |
| message_type                 | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00       |  |
| message_size                 | 32   | uimsbf | *          |  |
| objectKey_length             | 8    | uimsbf | N1         |  |
| for (i=0; i<N1; i++) {       |      |        |            |  |
| objectKey_data               | 8    | uimsbf | +          |  |
| }                            |      |        |            |  |
| objectKind_length            | 32   | uimsbf | 0x00000004 |  |
| objectKind_data              | 4x8  | uimsbf | 0x73746500 | "ste" type_id alias                    |
| objectInfo_length            | 16   | uimsbf | N2         |  |
| DSM::Stream::Info_T {        |      |        |            |  |
| aDescription_length          | 8    | uimsbf | N3         | aDescription                           |
| for (i=0; i<N3; i++) {       |      |        |            |  |
| aDescription_bytes           | 8    | uimsbf | +          | see <a href="#">BIOP StreamMessage</a> |
| }                            |      |        |            |  |
| duration.aSeconds            | 32   | simsbf | +          | see <a href="#">BIOP StreamMessage</a> |
| duration.aMicroSeconds       | 32   | uimsbf | +          | see <a href="#">BIOP StreamMessage</a> |
| audio                        | 8    | uimsbf | +          | see <a href="#">BIOP StreamMessage</a> |
| video                        | 8    | uimsbf | +          | see <a href="#">BIOP StreamMessage</a> |

Table B.30 : BIOP::StreamEventMessage syntax (Sheet 2 of 2)

| Syntax  | bits | Type   | Value    | Comment  |
|---|------|--------|----------|--|
| data  | 8    | uimsbf | +        | see <a href="#">BIOP StreamMessage</a>   |
| }<br>DSM::Event::EventList_T {<br>eventNames_count  | 16   | uimsbf | N4       | (including zero terminator)  |
| for (i=0; i<N4; i++) {<br>eventName_length  | 8    | uimsbf | N5       |  |
| for (j=0; j<N5; j++) {<br>eventName_data  | 8    | uimsbf | +        |  |
| }<br>}<br>}<br>for (i=0; i<N2 - (N3 + 14 + N4 + sum(N5)); i++) {<br>objectInfo_byte   | 8    | uimsbf | +        |  |
| }<br>serviceContextList_count   | 8    | uimsbf | N6       |  |
| for (i=0; i<N6; i++) {<br>context_id  | 32   | uimsbf | N7       |  |
| context_data_length   | 16   | uimsbf |          |  |
| for (j=0; j<N7; j++) {<br>context_data_byte   | 8    | uimsbf |          |  |
| }<br>}<br>messageBody_length  | 32   | uimsbf | *        | see <a href="#">B.2.4.4 "Timebases"</a><br>see Table 4-12 in DVB<br>Guidelines for Data<br>Broadcasting<br><br>no selector<br><br>(= eventNames_count) |
| taps_count  | 8    | uimsbf | N8       |  |
| for (i=0; i<N8; i++) {<br>id  | 16   | uimsbf | (note 1) |  |
| use   | 16   | uimsbf | +        |  |
| assocTag  | 16   | uimsbf | +        |  |
| selector_length   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x00     |  |
| }<br>eventIds_count   | 8    | uimsbf | N4       |  |
| for (i=0; i<N4; i++) {<br>eventId   | 16   | uimsbf | +        |  |
| }<br>}  |      |        |          |  |
|   |      |        |          |  |
| NOTE 1: If the tap use is STR_NPT_USE then the value of this 16 bit integer corresponds to the value of the contentId field of the NPTReferenceDescriptor that defines the time base for this stream. For other values of tap use the value of this field is undefined. |      |        |          |  |

## B.2.4 Stream Events

There are two versions of stream messages. The BIOP StreamMessage is used for carrying the stream objects that don't use DSM-CC Stream events. The BIOP StreamEventMessage is used for carrying stream objects that include a stream carrying the DSM-CC Stream events. This section addresses the later.

### B.2.4.1 Stream & StreamEvent messages

#### B.2.4.1.1 Association with time bases

The id field of the STR\_NPT\_USE tap of a StreamMessage or StreamEventMessage identifies the timebase associated with that Stream/StreamEvent object. Multiple StreamMessage or StreamEventMessage may be used at the same time to allow subscriptions to multiple timebases of the same service. See [B.2.4.4, "Timebases" on page 474](#).

### B.2.4.1.2 Event names and event ids

In StreamEventMessages the EventList\_T defines a sequence of event names that correlates 1:1 to the sequence of event ids in the MessageBody. Within each BIOP::StreamEventMessage the event names uniquely associate to event id values.

- The eventNames\_count shall equal eventIds\_count.
- The names in the EventList\_T are zero-terminated strings.
- The eventID values in the StreamEventMessage correspond to the eventID values carried in StreamEventDescriptors.

### B.2.4.1.3 Stream event life time

In StreamEventMessages the set of events described in the BIOP::StreamEvent message is possibly a subset of the events that may be used by the application during the course of a programme. Therefore, applications may need to accommodate the dynamic change of such messages. Cache transparency (see section B.5.2.1, "Transparent caching" on page 484) and version listener mechanisms (see DSMCCObject methods in annex P, "(normative): Broadcast Transport Protocol Access" on page 709) provide applications with the means to do this.

Similarly the set of stream event descriptors being transmitted at any time may not correspond to the set of events described in the BIOP::StreamEventMessage.

The event id for an event name shall not change while the name exists. If a name is removed it shall not be reintroduced within 60 seconds.

## B.2.4.2 Stream Descriptors

### B.2.4.2.1 NPT Reference descriptor

#### B.2.4.2.1.1 Usage scenarios

The following 3 usage scenarios are envisaged for NPT:

- No NPT associated with a service  
Enables use of "do it now" events but not scheduled events
- A single continuous timebase (i.e. a single progressing value of NPT)  
In this case all types of stream event can be used. However, the broadcast is logically a single continuing interactive production and the broadcaster is responsible for preprocessing the applications etc. before broadcast to be suitable
- The signal received by the MHP terminal includes a unique timebase for each programme needing one. This timebase to be suspended during any insertion into that programme and this timebase to be discontinued at the end of the programme.

i.e. the timebase for each programme is preserved through the distribution network.

#### B.2.4.2.1.2 Syntax

MHP terminals shall interpret this descriptor as it is described in ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26] with the following clarifications and additions.

With regard to contentId:

- This 7 bit field identifies the "timebase" see B.2.4.4, "Timebases" on page 474.

With regard to scaleNumerator and scaleDenominator:

- 1/1 - means normal play.  
i.e. NPT and STC advance at the same rate.
- 0/m (m > 0) - means the NPT value does not advance.

As a consequence no scheduled stream events will be raised. However, the "do it now" events continue to be effective.

- 0/0 - means that the scaleNumerator and scaleDenominator fields are not defined in the NPT Reference descriptor and should be derived as described in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) "8.1.2 Reconstruction of NPT"

MHP terminals are not required to support this mode of operation.

- m/0 ( $m > 0$ ) - this is not allowed by [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#).

With regard to broadcast repetition rate:

- NPT Reference descriptors shall be transmitted at least once per second.

With regard to postDiscontinuity indicator:

- it is optional for broadcasters to broadcast descriptors with this set to one however if they are broadcast then the following conditions shall be met
  - it shall be broadcast for at least 5 seconds before the underlying PCR discontinuity
  - the descriptors with both states of postDiscontinuity indicator shall be carried within the same DSMCC descriptor list section
  - within one second of the underlying PCR discontinuity, the NPTReferenceDescriptor must be updated to reflect the new underlying PCR. See `org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTDiscontinuityEvent` in annex P, "(normative): Broadcast Transport Protocol Access" on page 709.
- it is optional for MHP terminals to take advantage of this signalling but terminals which do not take advantage of this must ignore descriptors with postDiscontinuity indicator set to 1.

#### B.2.4.2.2 Stream event descriptor

##### B.2.4.2.2.1 Association of event ids to event time

The eventNPT field conveys the NPT value at which the event will occur (or has occurred).

Each StreamEventDescriptor provides a single association between an eventID and a value of eventNPT. If the MHP terminal detects a change in the value of eventNPT associated with a value of eventID this redefines the time at which the event should fire.

MHP terminals shall ignore scheduled events where the eventNPT has passed.

See also "number range for NPT" on page 473 and "Signalling of "do it now events"" on page 472.

##### B.2.4.2.2.2 Re-use of event ids

Event ID values may be re-used any number of times. For example, after an event has fired then stream event descriptors with the same eventID but different eventNPT may be broadcast.

##### B.2.4.2.2.3 Signalling of "do it now events"

[ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) is silent on the broadcast signalling of "do it now" events.

These events shall be identified by the value of eventID and hence table id extension (see "[Encoding of table id extension](#)" on page 473).

Where the value of eventID identifies a "do it now" event then the value of eventNPT shall be ignored by the MHP terminal.

##### B.2.4.2.2.4 Private data

The `privateDataByte` field does not need to be interpreted by the MHP terminal.

- NOTE: that an application can access the `privateDataByte` field via [11.4.2.5, "Extensions to the Framework"](#) on page 261 and [11.5.1, "Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API"](#) on page 267



### B.2.4.2.3 Unused descriptors

MHP terminals may ignore the following descriptors if present:

- NPT Endpoint descriptor
- Stream Mode descriptor

### B.2.4.2.4 Clarification of number encoding

#### B.2.4.2.4.1 number range for NPT

There is some ambiguity in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) regarding the data type used to carry NPT values in the signalling (tcimsbf or uimsbf). The following requirements insulate this profile from this ambiguity:

- The range of values used shall be in the range 0 to 0x0FFFFFFF (which is unambiguous for both tcimsbf or uimsbf).

#### B.2.4.2.4.2 number range for scaleDenominator

There is some ambiguity in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#) regarding the data type used to carry `scaleDenominator` values in the signalling (tcimsbf or uimsbf). The following requirements insulate this profile from this ambiguity:

- The range of values used shall be in the range 0 to 0x7FFF (which is unambiguous for both tcimsbf or uimsbf).

### B.2.4.3 DSM-CC Sections carrying Stream Descriptors

#### B.2.4.3.1 Section version number

The section version number field increments to reflect changes in stream descriptor(s) carried by sections with the same value of `table_id` (0x3D) and `table_id_extension`.

The version number shall increment for reasons including the change in value of `eventNPT` for a given `eventId`.

#### B.2.4.3.2 Single firing of "do it now" events

MHP terminals shall respond to the first instance of a "do it now" event detected under a particular combination of table id, table id extension & version number. Reception of subsequent copies of the particular event shall be ignored until a different version number is detected.

#### B.2.4.3.3 Section number

For this specification MHP terminals shall only consider section number zero.

#### B.2.4.3.4 DSM-CC sections for `DSMCC_descriptor_list()`

If the `table_id` field equals 0x3D the `current_next_indicator` bit shall be set to "1".

#### B.2.4.3.5 Encoding of table id extension

The section's table id extension field provides information on the stream descriptor(s) carried by the section:

**Table B.31 : Encoding of table id extension for `DSMCC_descriptor_lists`**

| table_id_extension bits |      |                         | Payload of DSM-CC section with table ID 0x3D   |
|-------------------------|------|-------------------------|--|
| [15]                    | [14] | [13...0]                |  |
| 0                       | 0    | eventId[13...0]         | Section carries a single "do it now" event   |
| 0                       | 1    | xx xxxx xxxx            | Section carries NPT reference descriptors  |
| 1                       | 0    | xx xxxx xxxx            | Section carries one or more other stream descriptors. I.e<br>- Stream event descriptor(s) with a future eventNPTs<br>- Stream mode descriptor (can be ignored in this specification)<br>- NPT endpoint descriptor (can be ignored in this specification) |
| 1                       | 1    | reserved for future use |  |

The value of eventID for "do it now" events shall be in the range 0x0001...0x3FFF. The value of eventID for scheduled events shall be in the range 0x8000...0xBFFF. The value 0 is not allowed (see 5.5.2.2.1 in [ISO/IEC 13818-6 \[26\]](#)).

#### B.2.4.4 Timebases

Multiple concurrent timebases may be defined for a single MPEG program but only a single time base is allowed to progress at any instant (the other timebases shall be paused). The relationship between each timebase and the MPEG timebase (STC) is defined by an NPTReferenceDescriptor. The contentId field of the NPTReferenceDescriptor (a 7 bit unsigned integer) identifies the timebase.

The value of the id field of the STR\_NPT\_USE tap (a 16 bit unsigned integer) of a StreamMessage or StreamEventMessage identifies the timebase associated with that Stream/StreamEvent object. Multiple StreamMessage or StreamEventMessage may be used at the same time to allow subscriptions to multiple timebases of the same service.

In this profile NPTReferenceDescriptors can indicate two states:

- non-paused  
The scaleNumerator and scaleDenominator are both non-zero
- paused  
The scaleNumerator is zero and the scaleDenominator is non-zero

When a timebase is signalled as paused then the NPT value for that timebase is frozen at NPT\_Reference (as specified by equation 8-4 in DSM-CC).

All of the NPTReferenceDescriptors for all of the currently signalled timebases shall be carried in a single DSMCC\_descriptor\_list section and shall be transmitted at least once every second. In any such set of NPTReferenceDescriptors at most one shall be non-paused and there shall be at most one instance of each value of contentId. The set of signalled timebases can change through time. When a timebase is not signalled then the behaviour of the MHP terminal shall be identical to that of the timebase being paused.

Timebases can be added or subtracted from the current set. The set of current timebases can be empty.

A stream (i.e. a StreamMessage or StreamEventMessage) may have no associated timebase (i.e. it may have no tap with use STR\_NPT\_USE). This is valid in the following cases:

- only "do it now" events are used
- no stream events are used

A value of contentId shall not be reused for a new timebase within 60 seconds of the removal of the timebase.

In normal use the NPT of a non-paused timebase progresses at a constant rate. Discontinuities should either be the results of errors in the broadcast or transient conditions (for example, while an NPT reference generator catches up with an MPEG PCR discontinuity). Transient discontinuities should be tolerated by the MHP Terminal. The behaviour of the MHP terminal when subject to a permanent discontinuity is not specified, apart from the generation of the NPTRDiscontinuityEvent to registered listeners.

The broadcaster shall start generating corrected NPTReferenceDescriptors within at most 1 second of a PCR discontinuity (ideally the descriptors should be generated before the PCR discontinuity). If the receiver is sampling the NPTReferenceDescriptor at the lowest allowed rate (once every 5 seconds) then the receiver may not receive a correct NPTReferenceDescriptor for 5 seconds. During this period the receiver should linearly extrapolate the NPT from previous NPT values in the expectation that a corrected NPTReferenceDescriptor will be delivered shortly. See also [B.2.4.2.1.2, "Syntax" on page 471](#) on use of the postDiscontinuity.

There is a window of uncertainty around a segment of paused timebase due to the time taken for all receivers to acquire the new NPTReferenceDescriptor. During this window scheduled events cannot be used reliably.

NOTE: It is suggested that broadcasters use "do it now" events near junctions between different timebases.

## B.2.4.5 Monitoring stream events

### B.2.4.5.1 NPT reference monitoring

When applications have registered for timebase stimulated events, the MHP terminal shall allocate resources sufficient to ensure that updates to the set of timebases is detected within 5 seconds for conformant broadcasts.

### B.2.4.5.2 Timebase stimulated event monitoring

When applications have registered for timebase stimulated events the MHP terminal shall allocate resources sufficient to ensure that updates to the set of timebase stimulated events is detected within 5 seconds for conformant broadcasts. So, if an event is introduced or the NPT time at which it is specified to fire is changed then the MHP terminal will respect this change within 5 seconds. If the fire time for an event changes less than 5 seconds before it was previously scheduled to fire then there is no guarantee that all receivers will detect the change in time.

If a timebase is deleted (reference to it is removed from the set of NPTReferenceDescriptors) then the receiver shall deactivate any event listeners dependant on that timebase and may free resources associated with those listeners.

### B.2.4.5.3 "do it now" events

"do it now" events are single shot events, accordingly MHP terminals need to make special efforts to ensure a high probability that they can be reliably received.

For each application, the MHP terminal is not required to monitor more than a single component delivering "do it now" stream events. So, if events from more than one DSM-CC StreamEventMessage are subscribed to no more than one stream component shall be specified as the source of StreamEventDescriptors carrying "do it now" events (i.e. the taps with use STR\_EVENTUSE or STR\_STATUS\_AND\_EVENT\_USE shall have the same value when referring to "do it now" events).

MHP terminals shall dedicate a section filter to monitoring the possible transmission of "do it now" events while there are any applications subscribed to these events.

### B.2.4.5.4 scheduled events

The stream descriptors for scheduled events are transmitted several times in the period before the time that they should fire. This allows a high probability that they will be effective even if they are not monitored continuously by the MHP terminal.

Any scheduled stream event descriptors shall be transmitted at least once each second.

MHP terminals shall raise an event in response to a scheduled stream event provided that the stream event descriptors are broadcast for at least 5 seconds before the scheduled time.

For each application, the MHP terminal is not required to monitor more than a single component delivering scheduled stream events. So, if events from more than one DSM-CC StreamEventMessage are subscribed to no more than one stream component shall be specified as the source of StreamEventDescriptors carrying scheduled events (i.e. the taps with use STR\_EVENT\_USE or STR\_STATUS\_AND\_EVENT\_USE shall have the same value when referring to scheduled events).

NOTE: Scheduled and "do-it-now" stream events can be carried on different stream components. The MHP terminal is required to be able to monitor one stream of each.

### B.2.4.5.5 number of NPT components

The MHP terminal is only required to monitor a single NPT component. So, if events from more than one DSM-CC StreamEventMessages are subscribed to no more than one stream component shall be specified as the source of NPTReferenceDescriptors (i.e. the taps with use STR\_NPT\_USE shall be the same).

## B.2.5 Assignment and use of transactionId values

## B.2.6 Informative Background

The use of the transactionId in the object carousel is inherited from its use as defined by the DSM-CC specification, and as such it can appear somewhat complex. The transactionId has a dual role, providing both identification and versioning mechanisms for control messages, i.e. DownloadInfoIndication and DownloadServerInitiate messages. The transactionId should uniquely identify a download control message within a data carousel, however it should be "incremented" whenever any field of the message is modified.

NOTE: The term "incremented" is used in the DSM-CC specification. Within the scope of this specification this should be interpreted as "changed".

The object carousel is carried on top of one or more data carousels. By a data carousel used below the object carousel, we mean in this specification a set of DownloadInfoIndication message transmitted on a single PID and the DownloadDataBlock messages carrying the modules described in the DownloadInfoIndication messages. The DownloadDataBlock messages may be spread on other elementary streams than the DownloadInfoIndication messages. The DownloadServerInitiate message in the context of object carousels is considered to be part of the top level of the object carousel and not associated with any data carousel.

When a module is changed, the version number of the module needs to be changed. This implies that the DownloadInfoIndication message that references the module needs to be also updated. Since the DownloadInfoIndication is updated, the transactionId needs to be also changed. However, the transactionId of the DownloadInfoIndication message is used in other messages also, but the need to change the other messages should specifically be avoided and the implications of updating a module should be limited to the module itself and the DownloadInfoIndication that references the module. Therefore, additional rules on the usage of the transactionId have been specified as follows.

## B.2.7 DVB semantics of the transactionId field

The transactionId has been split up into a number of sub-fields defined in [Table B.32](#). This reflects the dual role of the transactionId (outlined above) and constraints imposed to reduce the effects of updating a module. However, to increase interoperability the assignment of the transactionId has been designed to be independent of the expected filtering in target MHP terminals.

**Table B.32 : Sub-fields of the transactionId**

| Bits  | Value                              | Sub-field      | Description  |
|-------|------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| 0     | User-defined                       | Updated flag   | This must be toggled every time the control message is updated   |
| 1-15  | User-defined                       | Identification | This must and can only be all zeros for the DownloadServerInitiate message. All other control messages must have one or more non-zero bit(s).              |
| 16-29 | User-defined                       | Version        | This shall be incremented every time the control message is updated. The value by which it is incremented should be one.                                   |
| 30-31 | Bit 30 - zero<br>Bit 31 - non-zero | Originator     | This is defined in the DSM-CC specification [26] as 0x02 if the transactionId has been assigned by the network - in a broadcast scenario this is implicit. |

Due to the role of the transactionId as a versioning mechanism, any change to a control message will cause the transactionId of that control message to be incremented. Any change to a Module will necessitate incrementing its moduleVersion field. This change must be reflected in the corresponding field in the description of the Module in the DownloadInfoIndication message(s) that describes it. Since a field in the DownloadInfoIndication message is changed its transactionId must be incremented to indicate a new version of the message. Also, any change in the DownloadServerInitiate message implies that its transactionId must also be incremented. However, when the transactionId is divided into subfields as specified above, updating a message will change only the Version part of the transactionId while the Identification part remains the same.

Since the transactionId is used also for identifying the messages when referencing the messages in other structures, it is very desirable that these referenced would not need to be updated every time the control message is update. Therefore the following rule shall be applied when locating the messages based on the references:

**When locating a message based on the transactionId value used for referencing the message, only the Identification part (bits 1...15) shall be matched.**

Using this rule, the implications of updating a module can be limited to the module itself and the DownloadInfoIndication message describing the module. Also, this implies that if an MHP terminal wants to find out if a particular module that it has retrieved earlier has changed, it needs to filter the DownloadInfoIndication message that described that module and check if it has been changed.

## B.2.8 Mapping of objects to data carousel modules

The DSM-CC Object Carousels allow one or more objects to be carried in one module of the data carousel. In order to optimize the performance and memory requirements three additional requirements are specified:

- When mapping objects to modules of a data carousel, only closely related objects should be put into one module. Objects that are not closely related should not be put into the same module. If in the process of retrieving an object from the carousel an MHP terminal acquires a module containing multiple objects, it should attempt to cache these since the expectation should be that the other objects are related to the object requested and probably will be needed soon.
- The size of a module that contains multiple objects should not exceed 65536 bytes when decompressed<sup>1</sup>. MHP terminals complying to this specification are only required to handle modules containing multiple objects where the module size when decompressed is 65536 bytes or less. Modules containing a single file message can exceed 65536 bytes with upper size only limited by the memory resources in the MHP terminal.
- In addition to the limitations imposed by the 65536 byte limit, directory and service gateway messages are limited to 512 object bindings per message.

## B.2.9 Compression of modules

The modules may be transmitted either in uncompressed or compressed form. If the module is transmitted in compressed form, this is signalled by including the compressed\_module\_descriptor in the userInfo field of the moduleInfo in the DownloadInfoIndication message.

Table B.33 shows the syntax of the compressed\_module\_descriptor:

**Table B.33 : compressed\_module\_descriptor**

|                                 | No. of bytes | Mnemonic | Value |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----------|-------|
| compressed_module_descriptor(){ |              |          |       |
| descriptor_tag                  | 1            | uimsbf   | 0x09  |
| descriptor_length               | 1            | uimsbf   |       |
| compression_method              | 1            | uimsbf   |       |
| original_size                   | 4            | uimsbf   |       |
| }                               |              |          |       |

Presence of the compressed\_module\_descriptor indicates that the data in the module has the "zlib" structure as defined in IETF RFC 1950 [76].

The MHP terminal shall support the Deflate compression algorithm as specified in IETF RFC 1951 [77]. This is signalled by setting the least significant nibble of the compression\_method to 0x8 (i.e. compression\_method is xxxx1000). The MHP terminal is not required to support other compression algorithms.

1. I.e. when the file has been decompressed from the file transport but before the content decoding has started.

## B.2.10 Mounting an Object Carousel

The ServiceGateway object is the root directory of the file system delivered by an Object Carousel and must be acquired before any other object can be downloaded. This may be achieved by two compatible mechanisms. The signalling of which mechanisms are being supported by a broadcast is provided by the [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#).

In this specification the use of the [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#) for signalling is mandatory in the second descriptor loop of a PMT (corresponding to a PID on which the DSI message for an Object Carousel is broadcast, i.e. the boot-PID). The consequence is that if a PMT second descriptor loop contains a [data\\_broadcast\\_id\\_descriptor](#) that provides signalling for this specification, it shall also contain a [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#).

Note: A single PID shall only contain messages from a single Object Carousel and so only one [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#) shall be present in any second descriptor loop. However, a single service may contain more than one Object Carousel. Consequently, the [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#) may appear more than once in any single PMT.

The acquisition of the ServiceGateway object may be via the standard DSI-DII mechanism. This shall be supported by all broadcasts regardless of signalling in the [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#) and shall be sufficient for all MHP terminals.

See also 10.2, "Program Specific Information" on page 215.

A broadcast may also contain additional information in the [carousel\\_id\\_descriptor](#) to support the "enhanced" boot mechanism. This is signalled by setting the formatId field for this descriptor to 0x01. This additional information is an aggregation of all the fields necessary to locate the ServiceGateway, also found in the DSI and DII messages. However, in such a case the module containing the ServiceGateway object shall be broadcast on the PID identified by the [data\\_broadcast\\_id\\_descriptor](#). It is optional for both broadcasts and MHP terminals to support this mechanism.

### B.2.10.1 carousel\_id\_descriptor

This descriptor is MPEG defined and in this specification may be included in the second descriptor loop of a PMT.

**Table B.34 : Carousel identifier descriptor syntax**

| Syntax                           | bits | Type   | Value  |
|----------------------------------|------|--------|--------|
| carousel_identifier_descriptor { |      |        |        |
| descriptor_tag                   | 8    | uimsbf | 0x13   |
| descriptor_length                | 8    | uimsbf | N1     |
| carousel_id                      | 32   | uimsbf |        |
| FormatID                         | 8    | uimsbf |        |
| if( FormatID == 0x00 ) {         |      |        |        |
| for( i=0; i<N1-5; i++ ){         |      |        |        |
| private_data_byte                | 8    |        |        |
| }                                |      |        |        |
| }                                |      |        |        |
| if( FormatID == 0x01 ) {         |      |        |        |
| ModuleVersion                    | 8    | uimsbf |        |
| ModuleId                         | 16   | uimsbf |        |
| BlockSize                        | 16   | uimsbf |        |
| ModuleSize                       | 32   | uimsbf |        |
| CompressionMethod                | 8    | uimsbf |        |
| OriginalSize                     | 32   | uimsbf |        |
| TimeOut                          | 8    | uimsbf |        |
| ObjectKeyLength                  | 8    | uimsbf | N2 ≤ 4 |
| for( i=0; i<N2; i++ ){           |      |        |        |
| ObjectKeyData                    | 8    | bslbf  |        |
| }                                |      |        |        |
| for( i=0; i<N1-N2-21; i++ ){     |      |        |        |
| private_data_byte                | 8    |        |        |
| }                                |      |        |        |
| }                                |      |        |        |

**Table B.34 : Carousel identifier descriptor syntax**

| Syntax | bits | Type | Value |
|--------|------|------|-------|
| }<br>} |      |      |       |

**carousel\_id:** The 32 bit field it identifies the object carousel with the corresponding carouselId.

**FormatID:** This 8 bit integer identifies whether the carousel supports the "enhanced boot" mechanism or not. The value 0x00 indicates "standard boot", 0x01 indicates that "enhanced boot" is possible.

**ModuleVersion:** This 8 bit integer is the version number of the module containing the service gateway. This is equivalent to moduleVersion in the DII.

**ModuleId:** This 16 bit integer is the identifier of the module in the carousel. This is equivalent to moduleId in the DII.

**BlockSize:** This 16 bit integer is the size in bytes of every block in the module (except for the last block which may be the same or smaller). This is equivalent to blockSize in the DII.

**ModuleSize:** This 32 bit integer is the size of the module in bytes. This is equivalent to moduleSize in the DII.

**CompressionMethod:** This 8 bit field identifies the compression algorithm defined in [IETF RFC 1950 \[76\]](#) used to compress the module. It is equivalent to compression\_method carried in the compressed\_module\_descriptor in the DII.

**OriginalSize:** This 32 bit integer is the size of the data (in bytes) carried by the module before it was compressed. It is equivalent to original\_size carried in the compressed\_module\_descriptor in the DII.

If the module has not been compressed the values of OriginalSize and ModuleSize shall be equal and the value of CompressionMethod is not defined.

**TimeOut:** This 8 bit integer specifies the timeout in seconds for acquisition of all blocks of the module.

**ObjectKeyLength:** This 8 bit integer specifies the number of bytes of ObjectKeyData.

**ObjectKeyData:** These 8 bit values form an octet string that identifies the BIOP message that is the ServiceGateway message.

### B.2.10.2 DVB-J mounting of an object carousel

DVB-J causes an object carousel to be mounted using `ServiceDomain.attach()`. It can be unmounted using `ServiceDomain.detach()`.

An application manager is also allowed to call these methods implicitly when launching or killing an application in order to access the signalled base directory of the application.

### B.2.11 Unavailability of a carousel

Broadcast carousels become permanently unavailable due to changes in the signalling including the following:

- The component signalled as carrying the DSI is removed from the PMT.
- Any value in the DSI changes.
- The value of carousel ID associated with the carousel changes.
- The program disappears from the PAT
- After an implementation dependent time general failure of the signalling (e.g. non-transmission of the PMT).

## B.2.12 Delivery of Carousel within multiple services

A single Object Carousel may be transmitted within more than one service. An example is a single multiplex containing multiple services from the same broadcaster. A common data service could be supplied in all services by including references to the carousel in all PMTs.

Carousels shall be considered identical if, in the PMTs of the services, all the following hold:

- Both services are delivered within the same transport stream.
- Both services list the boot component of the carousel on the same PID.
- The carousel\_id\_descriptor for the carousel are identical in both services (so the carousels have the same carousel Id and boot parameters).
- All association tags used in the carousel map to the same PIDs in both services.

In this case the carousel is transmitted over a single path, but the services are allowed to reference the carousel via a number of routes, including deferral to a second PMT via deferred association tags.

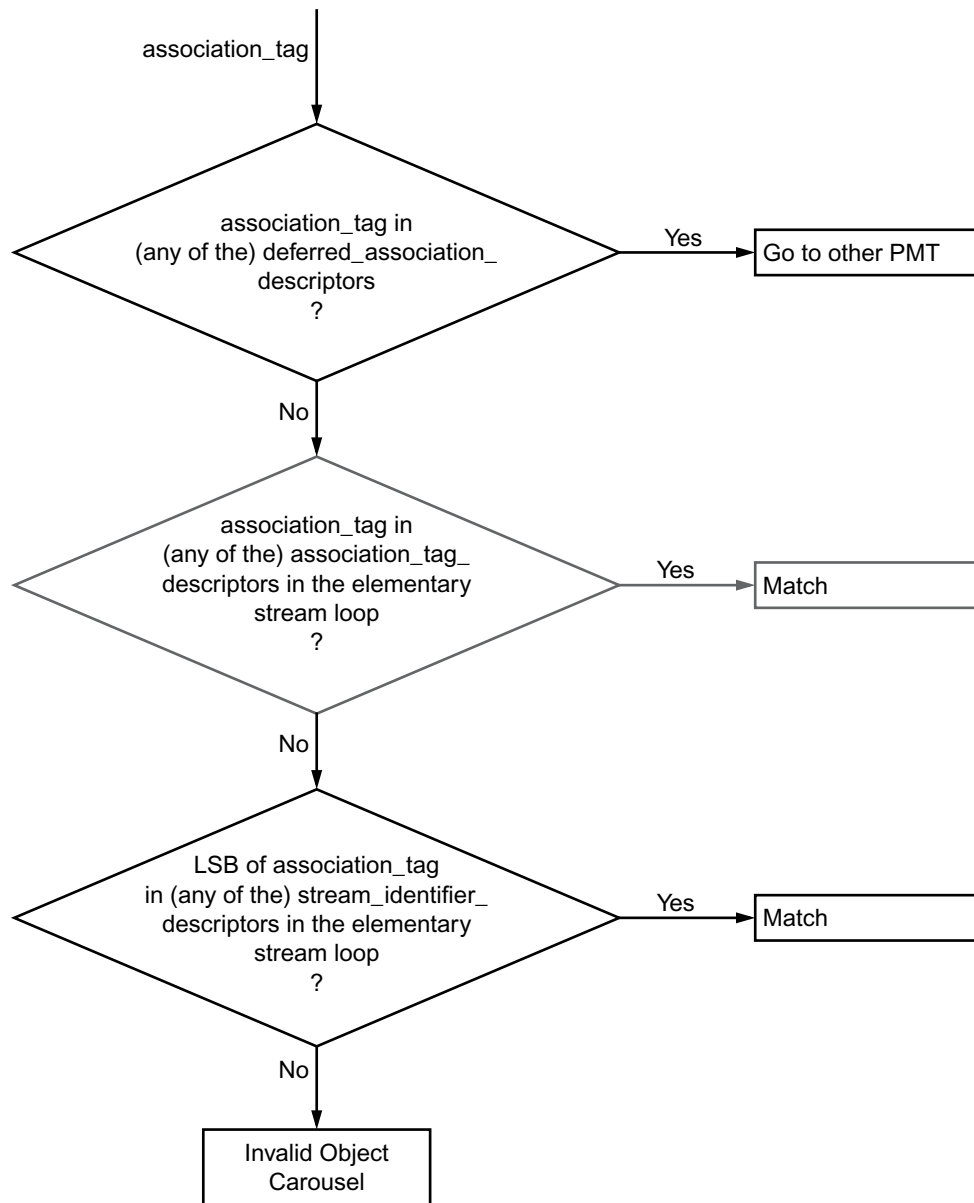


## B.3 AssociationTag Mapping

### B.3.1 Decision algorithm for association tag mapping

#### B.3.1.1 TapUse is **not** BIOP\_PROGRAM\_USE

The following figure illustrates the decision tree for identifying the elementary stream(s) by which the object carousel is distributed:



**Figure B.1 : Object Carousel ES identification decision tree**

In this specification, the stream\_identifier\_descriptor shall always be used for assigning a component\_tag for the elementary streams. Use of association\_tag\_descriptors is not required. If the association\_tag\_descriptor is optionally used, a stream\_identifier\_descriptor shall still be present and the tag values shall be set consistently in each descriptor. This restriction simplifies the decision tree above so that the second decision can be skipped.

### B.3.1.2 TapUse is BIOP\_PROGRAM\_USE

The decision tree in B.1 is not followed when resolving a BIOP\_PROGRAM\_USE tap as the only valid broadcast encoding is for a tap of use BIOP\_PROGRAM\_USE to resolve to deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptor in the PMT even if the deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptor identify the current service (i.e stream or streamEvent reference itself). If this resolution fails then there is an error in the broadcast.

### B.3.2 DSM-CC association\_tags to DVB component\_tags

The component\_tag in a PMT's stream\_identifier\_descriptor is used to relate SI service component information with an elementary stream without directly referring to a PID value. Likewise, association\_tags are used by DSM-CC in order to refer to an elementary stream without directly referencing a PID value. An association\_tag value is mapped to an elementary stream by matching the LSB of the association\_tag with a component\_tag. The stream\_identifier\_descriptor is mandatory for all components referenced by an application and/or object carousel.

Broadcasters may choose to use association\_tag\_descriptors (as defined by ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26]) which should (theoretically) be tested for a match before trying component\_tags. However, the LSB of the association\_tag value in an association\_tag\_descriptor has to be equal to the component\_tag for that PID. Since the component\_tag is unique within a PMT this removes the need to match against association\_tag\_descriptors.

The deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptor required by this specification is the adaptation of the ISO/IEC 13818-6 [26] descriptor defined in ETSI TR 101 202 [49]. This latter definition standardises a mechanism to signal the original network id.

When attempting to map an association\_tag to an elementary stream the association\_tag must first be checked against any deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptors in the current PMT (current in this context means the PMT of the service within which the association\_tag is being mapped). If the association\_tag matches any of the association\_tags present in a deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptor then the matching process proceeds to the service indicated in that descriptor. The MHP terminal is not required to continue its search beyond this second service.

If the transport\_stream\_id field in the deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptor is set to 0x0000 then it shall be ignored and the MHP terminal is free to choose which transport stream ID it selects when obtaining a service.

### B.3.3 deferred\_association\_tags\_descriptor

The transport\_stream\_id field may take value 0x0000 in which case it shall be ignored in resolving the reference.

## B.4 Example of an Object Carousel (informative)

The figure below illustrates an object carousel that is distributed over three elementary streams belonging to the same service.

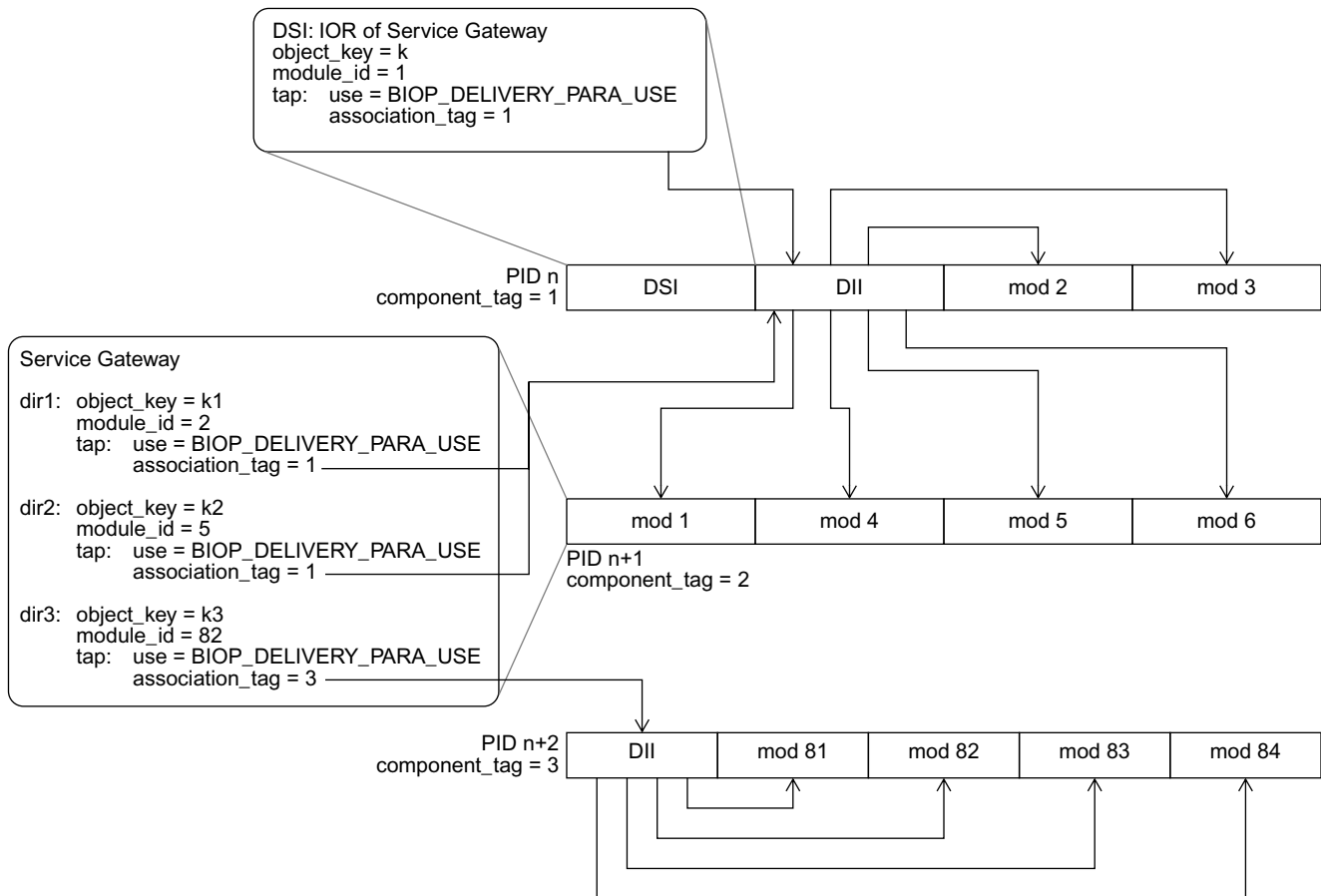


Figure B.2 : Example carousel

The DownloadServerInitiate (DSI) message is carried on the first elementary stream. It contains the object reference that points to the ServiceGateway. The tap with the BIOP\_DELIVERY\_PARA\_USE points to a DownloadInfoIndication (DII) message that provides the information about the module and the location where the module is being broadcasted. In the example, the ServiceGateway object is in the module number 1 that is carried on the second elementary stream (indicated by a BIOP\_OBJECT\_USE tap structure in the DII message).

The ServiceGateway object is a root directory that, in this example, references three subdirectories. Taps with BIOP\_DELIVERY\_PARA\_USE are used in the object references of the subdirectories to provide links to the modules via the DownloadInfoIndication (DII) message. The two first subdirectories "dir1" and "dir2" are referenced in the DII message that is carried in the first elementary stream. The third subdirectory is referenced in the DII message carried in the third elementary stream.

In this example, the two first elementary streams carry the messages of one logical data carousel while the third elementary stream carries the messages of another logical data carousel. All these belong to the same object carousel. In the example, the third elementary stream contains the objects in the "dir3" subdirectory and the objects in the "dir1" and "dir2" subdirectories are distributed over the first and second elementary stream.

It is important to note that the third elementary stream may originate from a completely separate source than the first two elementary streams. The directory hierarchy and objects contained in the third elementary stream are "mounted" in the root directory by providing the "dir3" directory entry with the appropriate location information.

This type of structure could be used, for example, in a national information service that contains some regional parts. The common national parts could be carried in this example case on the two first elementary streams that are distributed unmodified in the whole country. The regional parts are carried in the third elementary stream that is locally inserted at each region. From the application's point of view, the common national parts are in the "dir1" and "dir2" subdirectories while the regional parts are in the "dir3" subdirectory.

Another example where this type of structure could be used is if the service contains multiple independent applications. In this case, each application could be placed in its own subdirectory and these subdirectories might be carried as separate data carousels on different elementary streams.

## B.5 Caching

This section describes the constraints that an MHP terminal compliant with this specification shall implement when caching any content from the object carousel in the memory of the MHP terminal. Caching is optional for the MHP terminal, but if implemented shall conform to the constraints set in this section.

### B.5.1 Determining file version

There is no version number directly related to files (or other BIOP messages), the closest association is the moduleVersion in the DII that references the module that contains the BIOP message. Therefore, to ensure that a file is up to date the MHP terminal must determine that the moduleVersion for the appropriate module is current and reacquire if necessary. The circumstances under which this checking is required are defined by the transparency level as specified in the following section.

### B.5.2 Transparency levels of caching

The definition of transparency levels describes the behaviour that the MHP terminal shall implement when the content in the object carousel is changing. The transparency level determines how certain the MHP terminal is required to be about the validity of the content when returning the content to the application. The object carousel provides a mechanism for determining version changes of the content by monitoring the DII messages.

Validity of content is specified here in terms of the version number of the module that is broadcast in the DII message. The contents of an object as cached in the memory of the MHP terminal are defined to be valid at a certain point in time when the version number of the module in the cache matches the version number of the module as signalled in the DII message describing that module as it was last broadcast. Note that the definition is based on the DII message that was last broadcast and it may be that the MHP terminal was not filtering for this message at that time and did not receive it.

From the MHP terminal point of view, the transparency level indicates the constraints that the terminal needs to implement for monitoring the DII messages.

The broadcaster can indicate the appropriate transparency level that shall be applied for a given piece of content by using a descriptor associated with a module in the DII message (see "[Caching priority descriptor](#)" on page 456). In the absence of this descriptor from a module, the transparent caching is the default level.

#### B.5.2.1 Transparent caching

The transparent caching is a caching level that ensures that the application can not practically notice a difference in the validity of the returned content between an implementation that caches content and an implementation that does not cache any content. Naturally, an implementation that caches the content will return it to the application faster.

When returning content from the cache to the application, the MHP terminal shall ensure that the version number of the cached content matches the version number indicated in the current DII message describing that module. Once a DII has been received it can be assumed that it is current at least for 500 ms and after that period until receiving the next instance of the relevant DII. If filtering for that DII has not resumed by the end of this period, the state of that DII is to be considered unknown until it is received again.

Therefore, terminals must not return transparently cached data if it has waited more than half a second between receiving the relevant DII and *starting to filter* for that DII again. If the terminal does not resume filtering within the 500ms grace period, it must download the relevant DII again when it wishes to use that DII to check cache validity.

The choice of 500 ms is based on the normal timing uncertainty in data delivery through the broadcast chain and is independent of the repetition rate of the DII messages.

### B.5.2.1.1 Active caching

There are several ways the MHP terminal can organise its caching strategy. One possible strategy is so-called active caching. This means that the terminal has a dedicated section filter for each DII message it needs to monitor. Keeping that filter continuously filtering for the DII guarantees that the terminal will notice the update of a module as soon as it happens and can thus be aware of the validity of all the content it has cached.

However, in some cases the DII messages might be sent with a very high repetition rate that may cause a high processing load because the terminal needs to do some processing every DII message that it receives. The 500 ms grace period is designed to help this, as it allows the terminal to stop the section filter for 500 ms after receiving the DII message. This lessens the processing burden on the terminal as it only needs to process each DII message twice a second, even if it may be repeated on the transmission much more frequently.

### B.5.2.1.2 Passive caching

With active caching, the terminal may need to have a dedicated section filter reserved for each DII message that it needs to monitor. This would effectively limit the amount of content that can be cached, possibly to a very small number. Therefore, the terminal may choose a so-called passive caching strategy. This means that the terminal does not even try to monitor for the DII messages continuously, but each time an application wants to retrieve an object, it at that time retrieves the current DII and checks if the cached content is still valid. Although, this strategy imposes a delay before returning the content to the application, this delay is usually significantly smaller than having to retrieve the content from the broadcast stream.

### B.5.2.1.3 DII repetition rate

It should be noted that the description of active and passive caching are only informative here and terminal implementations can use any strategy fulfilling the normative constraints set above. However, broadcasters should set the repetition rate of the DIIs so that a terminal implementing the passive caching strategy will provide the expected benefits of caching over a terminal implementing no caching.

## B.5.2.2 Semi-transparent caching

The semi-transparent caching level allows the MHP terminal to cache the data and also return slightly out-dated data to the application. The benefit of this caching level is that it allows terminals to cache larger quantities of content with a reasonable resource usage while allowing the data to be returned usually immediately to the application. The semi-transparent caching level provides less guarantees about validity of the content, but does not cause the delay implied by the passive caching strategy with the transparent caching level.

When returning content from the cache to the application, the terminal shall ensure that the version number of the cached content matches the version number indicated in a valid DII message describing that module. Once a DII has been received it can be assumed to be valid at least for 30 s and after that period until receiving the next instance of the relevant DII. If filtering for that DII has not resumed by the end of this period, the state of that DII is to be considered unknown until it is received again.

Therefore, terminals must not return semi-transparently cached data if it has waited more than 30 seconds between receiving the relevant DII and starting to filter for that DII again. If the terminal does not resume filtering within the 30 s grace period, it must download the relevant DII again when it wishes to use that DII to check cache validity.

### B.5.2.2.1 Implications for the terminal (informative)

Reasons for selecting the 30 s value for the grace period in the semi-transparent caching level are different from the reasons for the 500 ms grace period in the transparent level. The 30 s grace period in this level is intended e.g. to allow terminals to keep typically a valid copy of each DII by retrieving each DII in a round robin fashion using a single section filter. Naturally, whether this goal can be achieved, depends on the repetition rate of the DIIs and the amount of content that is cached. If this is not possible, the terminal might use the passive caching strategy with this transparency level as well. These strategies are only examples and the terminal may implement any strategy as long the normative constraints defined above are fulfilled (this includes implementing no caching as it is optional, as well as treating the semi-transparent level the same as the transparent level).

### B.5.2.3 Static caching

When using the static caching transparency level, the MHP terminal shall check the validity of the cached content from the version number in the DII message when it is used for the first time during the lifetime of an application instance. After the first usage time, the MHP terminal does not need to check the validity of the content during the lifetime of that application instance.

#### B.5.2.3.1 Implications for the broadcaster (informative)

This has the implication, that content with this transparency level is appropriate for very static content that is updated only rarely and where the possible update of the content does not need to be noticed by the application during the lifetime of one application instance.

#### B.5.2.3.2 Implications for the terminal (informative)

The MHP terminal, however, is allowed to update the contents of the statically cached files if it notices that they have been updated in the carousel as well as use any caching strategy as long as the normative constraint defined above are fulfilled (this includes implementing no caching as it is optional, as well as treating the static level the same as the semi-transparent and/or the transparent level).

## Annex C (informative): References

|     | Reference                   | Edition             | Description   | Note |
|-----|-----------------------------|---------------------|---|------|
| [A] | MHP045                      | Rev.11              | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Commercial requirements   |      |
| [B] | UK MHEG Profile             | 1.05                | Digital Terrestrial Television MHEG-5 Specification, U. K. DTG  |      |
| [C] | Compilers                   | ISBN: 0201100886    | Compilers: Principles, Techniques, and Tools by Alfred V. Aho, Ravi Sethi, Jeffrey D. Ullman (Contributor); Addison-Wesley Pub Co   |      |
| [D] | Porter-Duff                 |                     | T. Porter and T. Duff, "Compositing Digital Images", SIGGRAPH 84, 253-259.  |      |
| [E] | Java Media Player guide     | 1.03, Nov 6, 1997   | Sun Microsystems Java Media Player guide, Java Media Players. Version.<br><a href="http://java.sun.com/products/java-media/jmf/forDevelopers/playerguide/index.html">http://java.sun.com/products/java-media/jmf/forDevelopers/playerguide/index.html</a> . |      |
| [F] | Java VM2                    | ISBN: 0-201-43294-3 | The Java Virtual Machine Specification (2nd edition), T. Lindholm and F. Yellin, Addison-Wesley.  |      |
| [G] | Java Class Libraries Vol. 1 | ISBN 0-201-31002-3  | The Java Class Libraries, Second Edition, Volume 1 by Patrick Chan, Rosanna Lee and Douglas Kramer.   |      |
| [H] | Java Class Libraries Vol. 2 | ISBN 0-201-31003-1  | The Java Class Libraries, Second Edition, Volume 2 by Patrick Chan and Rosanna Lee.   |      |
| [I] | E-Book                      | 1.1                 | EACEM Technical Report Number TR-030, Baseline Digital Terrestrial TV Receiver Specification.   |      |
| [J] | RFC 2068                    | January 1997        | Hypertext Transfer Protocol version 1.1   |      |
| [K] | RFC 2838                    | May 2000            | Uniform Resource Identifiers for Television Broadcasts  |      |
| [L] | Accessibility               | 5 May 1999          | W3C Recommendation: "Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 1.0"<br><a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/WAI-WEBCONTENT">http://www.w3.org/TR/WAI-WEBCONTENT</a>   |      |

---

## Annex D (normative): Text presentation

### D.1 Scope

This section addresses the following topics:

- How downloaded fonts are associated with applications and accessed by them
- The DVB-J APIs that are used for presenting text and their behaviour

Two levels of interface are addressed:

- Simple string rendering as supported by `java.awt.Graphics.drawString`
- More complex object rendering as supported by DVB Text Layout Manager as described in U, "(normative): Extended graphics APIs" on page 847.

Other parts of this specification that are related to this topic are:

- For character sets supported by implementations see E, "(normative): Character set" on page 507.
- For the font families, sizes, styles and weights supported by implementations see and the presentation of this to the API G.4, "Resident fonts and text rendering" on page 518.
- For the content formats used to deliver fonts see 7.4, "Downloadable Fonts" on page 71.

### D.2 Fonts

#### D.2.1 Embedded fonts

See G.4, "Resident fonts and text rendering" on page 518.

#### D.2.2 Downloaded fonts

##### D.2.2.1 Font technology

See 7.4, "Downloadable Fonts" on page 71.



## D.2.2.2 Font index files

### D.2.2.2.1 Format of file

The font index file provides a mapping between a font face name and a file containing the font data. The file syntax is defined by the XML DTD shown in table D.1.

**Table D.1 : Font index file syntax definition**

```
<!ELEMENT fontdirectory (font+)>
  <!-- a font definition -->

<!ELEMENT font (name,fontformat,filename,style*,size?)>
  <!-- filename of the font file.
  Because the font directory is per directory, this should
  not contain any directories, but just be a file in that
  directory -->

<!ELEMENT filename (#PCDATA)>
  <!-- font format, e.g. "PFR" -->

<!ELEMENT fontformat (#PCDATA)>
  <!-- symbolic name of the font -->

<!ELEMENT style (#PCDATA)>
  <!-- font style -->

<!ELEMENT name (#PCDATA)>

<!ELEMENT size EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST size
  min CDATA "0"
  max CDATA "maxint"
>
```

The `PublicLiteral` to be used for specifying this DTD in document type declarations of the XML files is:

```
"-//DVB//DTD Font Directory 1.0//EN"
```

and the URL for the `SystemLiteral` is:

```
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/fontdirectory-1-0.dtd"
```

The Name used in the document type declaration shall be "fontdirectory".

#### D.2.2.2.2 Element semantics

**font:** There shall be one font element per font file included in the font directory.

**name :** Contains the font face name of the font (e.g. "Helvetica")

**fontformat :** The file format of the font. For the PFR format used in this specification, this shall be "PFR".

**filename:** Relative path to the font file. This is relative to the directory containing the font index file. The separator character for directories is "/". As this is a relative path, it shall not begin with a "/" character.

**style :** The style elements contain the names of the styles of the font that are contained in this font file. The possible values for this specification are "PLAIN", "BOLD", "ITALIC" and "BOLD\_ITALIC". There is one style element included per style contained in the indicated font file, except when all the usable styles of the font are in the same file in which case the style elements can be left out. When different styles of the font are contained in separate files, these are included in the directory as separate font entities with the same name but different style and filename.

**size:** Indicates the size range for which this font file can be used. The min. attribute contains the minimum size in points (default is "0"). The max attribute contains the maximum size in points or "maxint" if the maximum size is not limited (default is "maxint").

If all the usable sizes of the font are generated using the same font file, the size element can be left out. If there are separate files for different sizes, these are included in the directory as separate font entities with the same name and style but different size definition and filename.

### D.2.2.2.3 Example

**Table D.2 : Example index file**

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>

<!DOCTYPE fontdirectory PUBLIC "-//DVB//DTD Font Directory 1.0//EN"
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/fontdirectory-1-0.dtd">
<fontdirectory>
  <font>
    <name>Tiresias</name>
    <fontformat>PFR</fontformat>
    <filename>tiresias.pfr</filename>
    <style>BOLD</style>
  </font>
  <font>
    <name>Broadcaster X Screen Font</name>
    <fontformat>PFR</fontformat>
    <filename>brxsf.pfr</filename>
  </font>
</fontdirectory>
```

### D.2.2.3 Name and location of font index files

#### D.2.2.3.1 General

The specification of font paths and fonts by an application are private to that application, they are not available to other applications.

#### D.2.2.3.2 Name of file

The file name shall be:

```
"dvb.fontindex"
```

#### D.2.2.3.3 Location

The font index file shall be placed in the base directory of the application.

### D.2.2.4 Specification of fonts at run time

#### D.2.2.4.1 DVB-J

The implementation locates the font file using the parameters passed to `org.dvb.ui.FontFactory.createFont()`.

The font file is located by searching the directory for a file where the name element matches the name parameter of a call to `FontFactory.createFont()`, a style element matches the style parameter and the size parameter is within the limitations in the size element.

It is font format specific how the font information for a given name, style and size is encoded in the font file. The name and style need to match the corresponding entry in the font file. The font size needs to be within the range supported by the font file.

## D.3 Text rendering

### D.3.1 Low and high level rendering

Two levels of interface are addressed:

#### D.3.1.1 Low level rendering

Simple string rendering as supported by :

- `java.awt.Graphics.drawString`
- `java.awt.Graphics.drawChars`
- `java.awt.Graphics.drawBytes`

This is referred to as "low level" rendering implying that the application author has significant responsibilities for ensuring that the text is visible. This rendering obeys the normal AWT rules. For example, the author is responsible for placing individual words or lines of text on to a component.

`org.havi.ui.HDefaultTextLayoutManager` shall also be considered as supporting low level rendering except that implementations shall respect the rendering settings on the `HVisible` passed as argument to the render method (such as alignment, font and foreground colour).

#### D.3.1.2 High level rendering

More complex object rendering as supported by:

- `org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager`

This is referred to as "high level" rendering implying that the application author may need less effort to ensure that the text is visible. For example, the author could use the text layout manager to handle flowing paragraphs of text into an `org.havi.ui.HText` object.

## D.3.2 Philosophy

This section describes "logical" rules that ensure text flows predictably on all receivers and defines some rendering requirements to ensure that a minimum acceptable level of text legibility is achieved. The scope of this is much broader for "high level" rendering, where rules address text flow in addition to just string rendering.

No restriction is placed on the rendering technology used in a receiver provided that it achieves the deterministic text flow characteristics and the minimum rendering requirements described in this section.

### D.3.2.1 High level rendering conceptual process

The conceptual rendering process can be described as follows:

- a) Based on:
  - the size of the object to render into
  - the characteristics of the font (e.g. see [D.3.3.1, "Font bounds" on page 492](#))
  - any automatic or application controlled insets (see [D.3.5, "Rendering within limits and insets" on page 494](#))
 calculate:
  - The maximum number of lines of text that may be rendered (see [D.3.8.1, "Number of lines" on page 498](#))
  - The width available for rendering on each line (see [D.3.9.1, "Available width" on page 501](#))
- b) Determine how the text to render flows, effectively defining a series of lines to render using:
  - The "logical" rules for calculating the width of rendered text (see [D.3.6, "'logical' text width rules" on page 495](#))
  - The available width for rendering (see [D.3.9.1, "Available width" on page 501](#))
  - The rules for breaking text (see [D.3.7, "Line breaking" on page 497](#))

- c) Determine where each line of text to render is placed vertically within the object (see D.3.8, "Positioning lines of text vertically within an object" on page 498). This needs to consider that:
- If the number of lines of text to render (from step b) exceeds the maximum number of lines of text that may be rendered (from step a) "vertical truncation" may be required, i.e. discard some of the lines to render
  - The positioning of lines to render is affected by the vertical justification setting of the object
- d) Determine the placement of individual characters in a line to render (see D.3.9, "Rendering lines of text horizontally" on page 501). This needs to consider that:
- Even having correctly applied the rules relating to the flow of text, in some extreme circumstances the length of the line of text to render can be wider than the available width for rendering (from step a). To handle this "horizontal truncation" may be required, i.e. discard some of the characters from the line to render
  - The placement of characters in the line to render is affected by the horizontal justification setting of the object
  - The placement of characters in the line to render should ensure sensible and consistent spacing between adjacent characters (see D.3.12, "Placing runs of characters & words" on page 503)

In addition special rules exist for handling tabulation (D.3.11, "Tabulation" on page 503) which need to be taken into account in the implementation of many of these steps.

Behaviour equivalent to the above is required to ensure conformant rendering. The order of these steps is illustrative and may vary between implementations for reasons of convenience or efficiency.

### D.3.3 Font Definition

The nomenclature used in this section is derived from the resident font format(s). The nomenclature and the numerics provided here are directly applicable to downloaded fonts.

#### D.3.3.1 Font bounds

The font definition induces a set of parameters  $xMin$ ,  $xMax$ ,  $yMin$  and  $yMax$  that are **properties of the font**. These define the maximum extent of the outline representation of characters within the physical font, and as such are defined in terms of outline resolution units (outlineResolution).

$(xMin, yMin)$  and  $(xMax, yMax)$  are the bottom-left and top-right corners of an imaginary bounding rectangle within which all characters in the font can be completely enclosed.

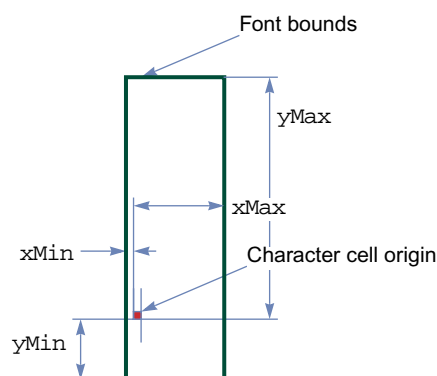


Figure D.1 : Font bounds

In "Low level rendering" the author is responsible for using knowledge of these values to correctly position text.

In "High level rendering" the text layout manager uses this information when managing text flow to guarantee that the extremities of all characters are completely within the object. See D.3.5, "Rendering within limits and insets" on page 494.

### D.3.3.2 "Physical" font data

"Physical" font data such as horizontal escapement and kerning is defined in terms of metrics resolution units (metricsResolution). This is a high resolution representation, abstracted from any actual rendering system.

NOTE: The outlineResolution and metricsResolution are not necessarily the same.

### D.3.3.3 Ligatures

MHP terminals shall not automatically transform letter pairs to ligatures or vice versa at any time. MHP applications which wish to see ligatures rendered shall use the appropriate unicode value and shall ensure that the appropriate unicode character is found in the font being used.

## D.3.4 Converting font metrics to display pixels

Many of the calculations in this section are in a high resolution physical coordinate system, either metrics or outline resolutions. These values need to be converted into the pixel resolution of the HGraphicsDevice to allow characters to be rendered.

Values in terms of these high level resolutions can be simply converted to values in terms of points by multiplying by the font size (in points) and dividing by the resolution, i.e. metricsResolution or outlineResolution as appropriate. However, this value in points still needs to be converted into a value in pixels.

Computer display systems typically assume a 72 pixel per inch display. So, as each point is 1/72 inch, the horizontal and vertical size of each pixel is 1 point.

### D.3.4.1 Vertical resolution

Each pixel in the graphics device (HGraphicsDevice for DVB-J applications) containing the component is equivalent to a single point.

### D.3.4.2 Horizontal resolution

The horizontal relationship depends on the characteristics of the graphics device (HGraphicsDevice for DVB-J applications). For a square pixel graphics device the 1 pixel = 1 point convention can be preserved.

However, for a graphics device whose pixel aspect ratio is given by `org.havi.ui.HScreenConfiguration.getPixelAspectRatio` the horizontal resolution is the pixel aspect ratio \* 1 point.

The following table defines the pixel aspect ratios which shall be used when converting typographic pixels for rendering in the graphics system of an MHP terminal for each graphics device aspect ratio.

**Table D.3 : Pixel width for non-square pixel graphics devices**

| Graphics device resolution | Graphics device aspect ratio | Typographic pixel size width in points |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 720 x 576                  | 4:3                          | 48/45                                  |
|                            | 14:9                         | 56/45                                  |
|                            | 16:9                         | 64/45                                  |

An emulated graphics could be constructed with 14:9 aspect ratio. This could be used where text is required to be acceptable when viewed on either a 4:3 or 16:9 display. The 14:9 aspect ratio is an artificial construct intended to allow easier authoring but text will always be slightly distorted when displayed. 14:9 should be used when maintaining character aspect ratio is less important to the application than text occupying the same number of pixels regardless of the display size which the MHP terminal is using. A possible example of this is illustrated in figure D.2.

Text on a 4:3 display

The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy dog.  
Cozy lummoX gives smart squid who asks for job pen.

Text on a 16:9 display

The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy dog.  
Cozy lummoX gives smart squid who asks for job pen.

Figure D.2 : Example of 14:9 text on either 4:3 or 16:9 display

### D.3.5 Rendering within limits and insets

When typesetting for print, character extremities may extend beyond the nominal text flow area. However, print has margins so the edge of the text flow is not the technical limit to the area that can be printed.

#### D.3.5.1 Low level rendering

In "[Low level rendering](#)" the author is responsible for placing the text so that is not clipped.

#### D.3.5.2 High level rendering

In "[High level rendering](#)" text is automatically rendered with at least a sufficient inset from the object edge (derived from the font properties `xOffsetLeft`, `yOffsetBottom`, `xMax` and `yOffsetTop`) to ensure that all presented characters are completely rendered within the bounds of the object. Applications can further increase this minimum (font property determined) inset in the following ways:

- The `Insets` parameter on the `org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.render` method
- The `org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager.setInsets` method

Each of these mechanisms can be used independently. Their effect is cumulative.

**For simplicity, these application controlled insets are not described in the specification clauses that follow. In relation to the rendering process their behaviour is equivalent to a reduction in the size of the object within which the rendering processes acts.**

#### D.3.5.3 Conversion of units

As stated previously, these parameters are defined in outline resolution units and so need to be converted to device pixels. Based on the principles described previously (see D.3.4, "[Converting font metrics to display pixels](#)" on page 493) this can be achieved by the following:

D.3.5.3.1  $yOffsetTop$ 

$$yOffsetTop_{pixels} = \begin{cases} \text{div}(yMax_{outlineResolution} \times \text{fontSize}, \text{outlineResolution}) & yMax > 0 \\ 0 & yMax \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

D.3.5.3.2  $yOffsetBottom$ 

$$yOffsetBottom_{pixels} = \begin{cases} \text{div}(-yMin_{outlineResolution} \times \text{fontSize}, \text{outlineResolution}) & yMin < 0 \\ 0 & yMin \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

D.3.5.3.3  $xOffsetLeft$ 

$$xOffsetLeft_{pixels} = \begin{cases} \text{div}(-xMin_{outlineResolution} \times \text{fontSize} \times 45, \text{outlineResolution} \times 56) & xMin < 0 \\ 0 & xMin \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

$outlineResolution$  is extracted from the PFR,  $\text{div}(A, B) = \text{ceil}(A / B)$ , '/' is a rational divide and  $\text{ceil}(A)$  is the first integral number greater than or equal to  $A$ .

$yOffsetTop$ ,  $yOffsetBottom$  and  $xOffsetLeft$  are all greater than or equal to zero and represent the number of available pixels required above, below and to the left of the character origin to prevent clipping of any character in the font. A value  $xOffsetRight$  could be defined along similar lines but is not relevant to this specification.

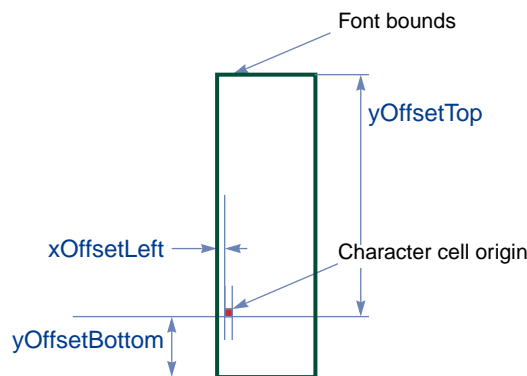


Figure D.3 : Font bounds

## D.3.6 "logical" text width rules

This clause applies to both "Low level rendering" and "High level rendering". Its purpose is to ensure that text will flow predictably on different receivers and authoring stations, regardless of the quality of the character rendering, a set of "logical" text width rules are defined here.

NOTE: I.e. lines and words will break at the same character position.

These rules are a simplification of the rules that might be applied in a typographic rendering system. The objective of these simplifications is to reduce the receiver complexity required to ensure exact correlation of text flow behaviour.

The calculation of "logical" text width is based on "physical" font data. This data provides a description of the font at a very high resolution, abstracted from any actual rendering system. Consequently, the calculation of the "logical" width of a string of characters involves, computing their width at this high resolution and then converting to units appropriate to the rendering system, e.g. device pixels, before making decisions about text flow (see "Converting font metrics to display pixels").

In the case of "Low level rendering" it defines the internal computation performed by the AWT routines that measure the width of text:

- `java.awt.FontMetrics.charWidth`
- `java.awt.FontMetrics.stringWidth`
- `java.awt.FontMetrics.bytesWidth`

Due to the rounding processes within the calculations invoking these methods on subsets of a string may not yield the same total result as invoking the methods on the complete string. In particular the total of the values returned by `java.awt.FontMetrics.getWidths` may be different from the value returned by `java.awt.FontMetrics.stringWidth` for the same string.

In the case of "High level rendering" it defines the computations that the layout manager uses in the following cases:

- to determine when to wrap lines of text within an object
- to determine which tab stops text has passed when implementing tab characters

### D.3.6.1 Computing "logical" text width

The key parameters when calculating the width of a string of N characters are:

- text font size
- `charSetWidth`
- The `metricsResolution`
- Any kerning adjustment

#### D.3.6.1.1 Font sizes

Font sizes are expressed as the size of an "Em" in units of "points".

NOTE 1: Broadly speaking an Em is the minimum distance between the baselines of consecutive lines of text in the given font. If text is 48 point then the Em at that size is 48 points.

NOTE 2: The point is an archaic typographical unit. Traditionally there were 72,27 points to an inch. Computerised systems now use 72 points per inch for simplicity.

#### D.3.6.1.2 Character widths

The font definition gives the width of each character relative to the size of an Em in `metricsResolution` units.

NOTE: If metrics are specified in 1/1000ths of an Em a character with a width of 0,6 Em will have a set width of 600.

#### D.3.6.1.3 Kerning

For certain character combinations (a "kerning pair") a kerning adjustment may also be provided. Typically kerning reduces character spacing for pairs such as AV instead of A V, these provide a signed adjustment to the nominal `charSetWidth` of the first character.

Like `charSetWidth` kerning adjustments are in terms of `metricsResolution` units.

Kerning adjustments only apply between non whitespace characters, not between the start of a line of text and the edge of the object. If justification is being used, only whitespace between words may be adjusted.

#### D.3.6.1.4 Letter spacing

Letter spacing allows for expansion/condensation of the character spacing for all of the characters in a object including whitespace.

NOTE: In printing, this is sometimes referred to as tracking.



### D.3.6.2 Logical text width

The equation below shows how the width of a string of N characters is computed.

$$\text{logical width of N characters}_{\text{points}} = \text{div}((N - 1) \times \text{letterspace}, 256) + \text{div}(\text{fontsize} \times \left( \sum_1^N \text{charSetWidth}[i] + \sum_1^{N-1} \text{kern}[i, i+1] \right), \text{metricsResolution})$$

$$\text{logical width of N characters}_{\text{pixels}} = \text{div}(\text{logical width of N characters}_{\text{points}} \times H, W)$$

Where in  $\text{div}(A, B)$ :

- B is unsigned and A is signed
- and
- $\text{div}(A, B) = \text{ceil}(A / B)$

Where '/' is a rational divide and  $\text{ceil}(A)$  is the first integral number greater than or equal to A. So, the calculations round up when reducing precision and tend to over estimate the width of text.

Where H and W are respectively the height and width returned by `org.havi.ui.HScreenConfiguration.getPixelAspectRatio()`.

### D.3.7 Line breaking

#### D.3.7.1 Text wrapping setting is false

When the text wrapping setting is false, text shall break onto a new line only where a Carriage Return character is present in the text. The number of lines to render shall be equal to the number of Carriage Returns present, plus one.

- NOTE: The "plus one" ensures that the last line of any text can be presented even if it has not been terminated with a Carriage Return.

#### D.3.7.2 Text wrapping setting is true

When the text wrapping setting is true, the text flow may break on to new lines at positions in addition to those caused by Carriage Return characters. These additional break positions are defined below. This behaviour is independent of the object's horizontal alignment settings and is considered to take place before any truncation (see [D.3.8.2, "Truncation" on page 499](#)).

The effect of text wrapping on the rendering process is equivalent to substituting "breaking characters" (defined in table [D.4, "Special characters" on page 504](#)) with Carriage Return characters at positions determined by the wrapping rules.

The behaviour of the wrapping process is described below:

- a) Based on the "logical" width of the text, receivers shall determine for each line, the first contiguous sequence of non-breaking characters that meets both of the following requirements:
  - would not completely fit within the available width (see [D.3.9.1, "Available width" on page 501](#))
  - that follows one or more breaking characters

If such a sequence exists, the breaking character preceding it shall be replaced with a Carriage Return character.
- b) All trailing breaking characters shall be discarded from all lines of text. (Preceding breaking characters are not affected).

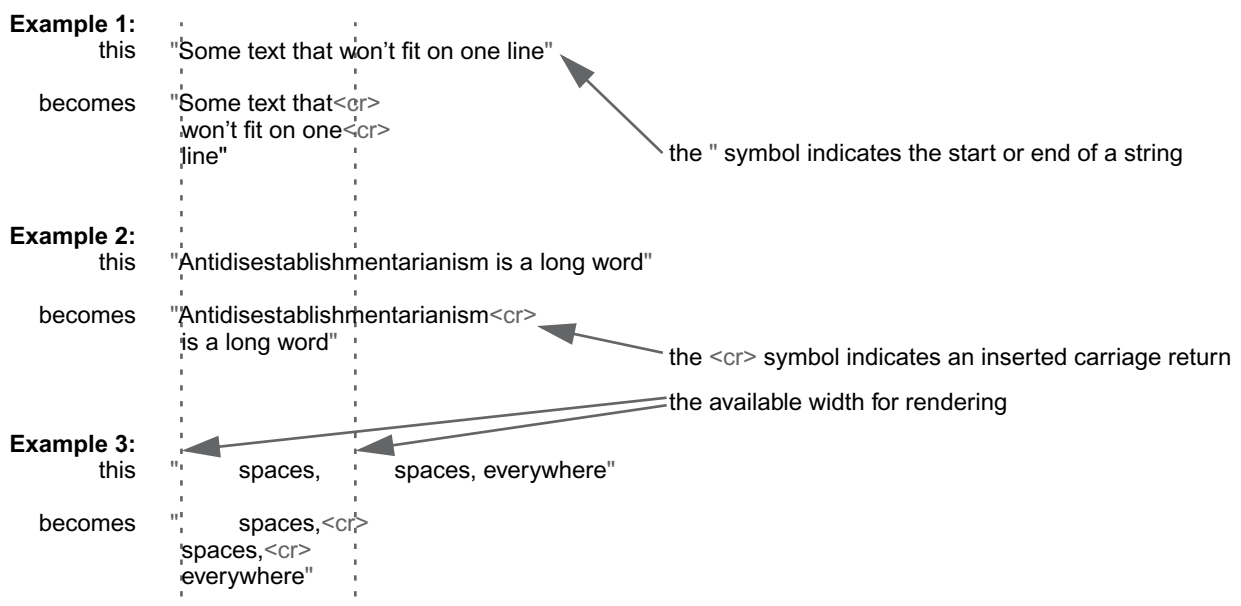
NOTE 1: In general use this identifies the word in a body of text that if rendered would cause the current line to spill outside of the text object. This word becomes the first word in the next line. However, if a line starts with a single word that is longer than the width of the object then the line is broken just before a following word.

**Example 1:** This illustrates the most common case where the word "won't" does not fit and so is broken to the next line.

**Example 2:** This illustrates the particular case of a long first word. In this case "is" is the first word that does not fit AND is preceded by a breaking character.

**Example 2:** This illustrates the consumption of trailing spaces. The line breaks just before the second "spaces" (so the next line starts with this word) and all trailing spaces (e.g. after the first "spaces,") are discarded).

NOTE 2: The importance of the removal of trailing breaking characters is particularly visible if the text is centred or right justified. For example, the text to be centred becomes "spaces" rather than " spaces".



**Figure D.4 : Text wrapping examples**

After text wrapping the text truncation rules have to be considered. For example, in example 2 in figure D.4 the word "Antidisestablishmentarianism" will be truncated (see D.3.9.2, "Truncation" on page 501).

## D.3.8 Positioning lines of text vertically within an object

### D.3.8.1 Number of lines

Assuming that all characters in a line of text share a common baseline then, **regardless of the vertical alignment setting** the number of lines of text that can be presented within an object is:

$$\text{num\_lines} = \text{floor}((\text{object\_height} - (\text{yOffsetBottom} + \text{yOffsetTop})) / \text{linespace}) + 1$$

All values are in pixels.

**object\_height:** is the height of the component less any margin.

**linespace:** is an attribute of the object that defines the space between the baselines of consecutive lines of text. This is defined in units of points but is converted to pixels (see D.3.4, "Converting font metrics to display pixels" on page 493).

The function floor(A) rounds A to the first integral number less than or equal to A.

### D.3.8.2 Truncation

When the number of lines of text to be rendered exceeds the available height within the object then lines of text shall be discarded as follows:

- If the vertical alignment setting is `VERTICAL_CENTER` or `VERTICAL_START_ALIGN` then lines are discarded from the end of the text.
- If the vertical alignment setting is `VERTICAL_END_ALIGN` then lines are discarded from the beginning of the text.

This truncation will result in a number of lines that can be completely displayed within the object. These shall be presented according to [D.3.8.3, "Positioning" on page 499](#).

See also [D.3.10, "Text overflow" on page 502](#).

### D.3.8.3 Positioning

The origin of any character shall be at least `yOffsetTop` inside the top edge of the object and at least `yOffsetBottom` inside its bottom edge.

#### D.3.8.3.1 Vertical alignment setting is `VERTICAL_START_ALIGN`

When the text is top aligned the baseline of the top most line shall be at least `yOffsetTop` inside the top of the object. The baselines of the subsequent lines of text shall be `linespace` apart.

#### D.3.8.3.2 Vertical alignment setting is `VERTICAL_END_ALIGN`

When the text is bottom aligned the baseline of the bottom most line shall be at least `yOffsetBottom` inside the bottom of the object. The baselines of the preceding lines of text shall be `linespace` apart.

### D.3.8.3.3 Vertical alignment setting is VERTICAL\_CENTER

When the text is vertically centred the positioning of the lines shall be such that the space above the first line of text equals the space below the last line of text (to allow for rounding the lower gap may be up to one pixel greater than the upper gap). The spacing between the baselines of text shall be `linespace`.

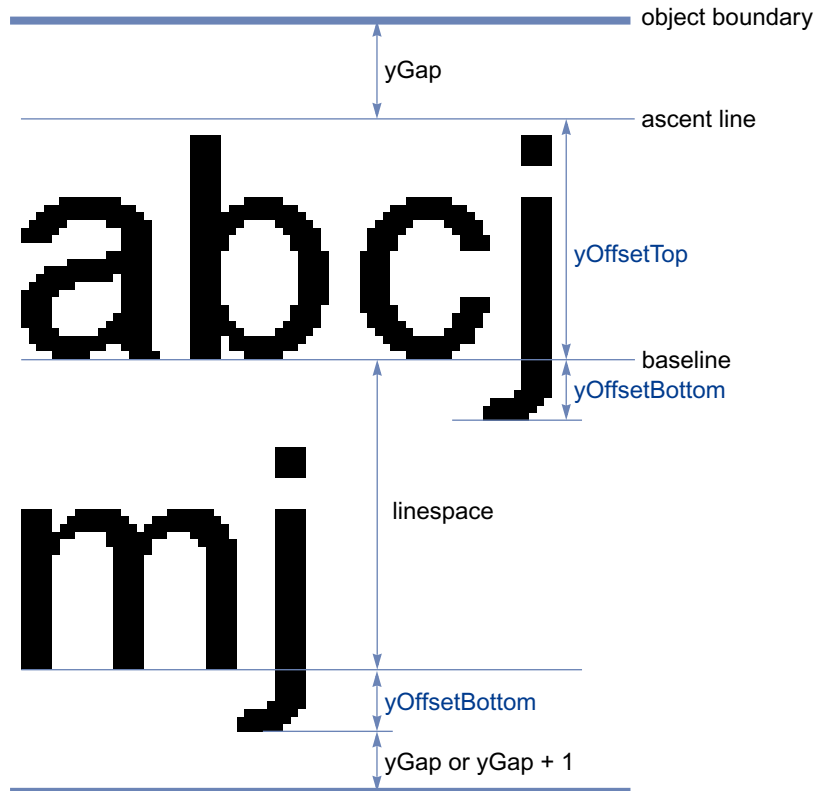


Figure D.5 : Vertical measures

## D.3.8.3.4

## Examples

| vertical alignment-> | VERTICAL_<br>START_<br>ALIGN | VERTICAL_<br>CENTER       | VERTICAL_<br>END_ALIGN    | <b>String:</b>            |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Right:</b>        | Three<br>lines of            | Three<br>lines of         | lines of<br>text          | Three<cr>lines of<cr>text |
| <b>Wrong:</b>        | Three<br>lines of<br>text    | Three<br>lines of<br>text | Three<br>lines of<br>text |                           |
| <b>Wrong:</b>        |                              | lines of                  |                           |                           |

Figure D.6 : Vertical positioning example 1

| vertical alignment-> | VERTICAL_<br>START_<br>ALIGN | VERTICAL_<br>CENTER | VERTICAL_<br>END_ALIGN | <b>String:</b> |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| <b>Right:</b>        | Final CR                     | Final CR            |                        | Final CR<cr>   |
| <b>Wrong:</b>        |                              | Final CR            | Final CR               |                |

Figure D.7 : Vertical positioning example 2

## D.3.9 Rendering lines of text horizontally

## D.3.9.1 Available width

The number of characters that may be rendered on a line is not simply dependent upon the width of the object and the horizontal escapement for each character, but also needs to consider that the rendering of the first character in a line may extend to the left of its origin. Thus, **regardless of the horizontal alignment setting** the space available for rendering a line of text within an object is:

$$\text{available\_width} = \text{object\_width} - \text{xOffsetLeft}$$

All values are in pixels. This derivation of `available_width` shall be used with the "logical" text width rules to determine text flow.

## D.3.9.2 Truncation

Where a line of text is too long to fit within the `available_width` of the object, the line shall be truncated.

**NOTE:** This addresses the case where text wrapping has not made the text fit. This can happen either because the text wrapping setting is false, or because a single word is too long to fit.

The result shall be as if the complete line were aligned appropriately on the object (taking into account the horizontal alignment setting) with only those characters which can be completely presented being rendered. That is those characters:

- whose origin is more than `xOffsetLeft` right of the left hand edge of the object.
- whose right hand edge falls inside the right hand edge of the object.

For example:

- if the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_END_ALIGN` then a portion of text from the right end of the line will be rendered with its edge aligned to the right edge of the object.
- if the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_CENTER` the centre of the string will appear at the centre of the object with excess characters being truncated from each end.

See also [D.3.10, "Text overflow" on page 502](#).

### D.3.9.3 Placement

- When the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN` the origin of the left most character shall be `xOffsetLeft` inside the left edge of the object.
- When the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_CENTER` the positioning of the characters shall be such that the gap to the left of the text equals the gap to the right (to within one pixel).
- When the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_END_ALIGN` the origin of the right most character shall be as necessary to ensure that it is completely visible when rendered.

NOTE 1: `xOffsetLeft` allows for characters (such as capital "J") that extend to the left of their origin. `xOffsetLeft` is a property of the font and so represents a consistent indent, i.e. it is independent of the first character.

NOTE 2: There are characters (e.g. fractional divisor) that can extend beyond the escapement indicated by their `charSetWidth` value. These can theoretically extend beyond the right hand edge of the object if the character is at the end of a word and that word is at the end of a line and the "logical width" of the line just fits the object. With the "fractional divisor" character this is a very unlikely combination of circumstances as this character is normally embedded within a "word". The handling of cases such as this by the MHP Terminal is implementation dependant.

| horizontal alignment-> | <code>HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN</code> | <code>HORIZONTAL_CENTER</code> | <code>HORIZONTAL_END_ALIGN</code> | <b>String:</b>        |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Right:</b>          | This text is too lo                 | his text is too lon            | is text is too long               | This text is too long |
| <b>Wrong:</b>          | This text is too lor                | This text is too lor           | his text is too long              |                       |
| <b>Wrong:</b>          |                                     | This text is too lo            | This text is too lo               |                       |

**Figure D.8 : Horizontal positioning examples**

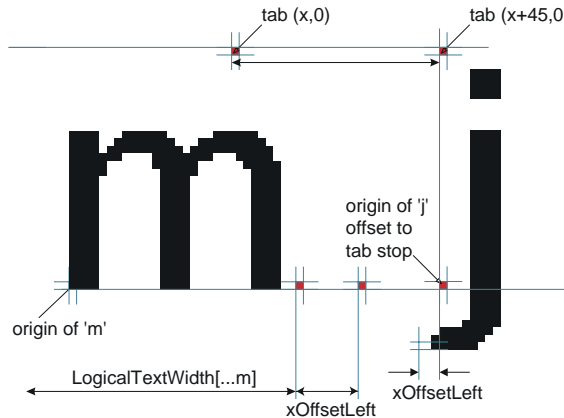
### D.3.10 Text overflow

The `org.dvb.ui.TextOverflowListener.notifyTextOverflow` method is called if truncation occurs.

NOTE: This can be used by an application to alert the viewer or take other remedial action.

### D.3.11 Tabulation

In left aligned text (the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN`) tab stops are defined at intervals of `horizontalTabSpace` from the left edge of the object. By default the value of `horizontalTabSpace` is 56 points. "Horizontal Tabulation" advances the origin of the next character to be rendered to the next tab stop in the direction that the text is currently flowing (the character repertoire in [Table E.1](#) only requires left to right text).



**Figure D.9 : Effect of horizontal tabulation**

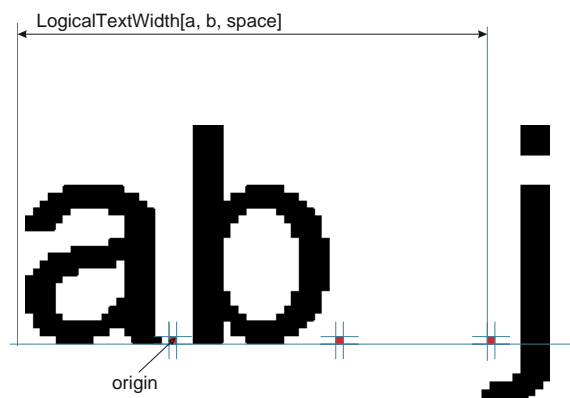
- Tab characters only have meaning in left aligned text (the horizontal alignment setting is `HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN`). If the text is right aligned, centred or justified then tab character shall be treated as a space character.
- A tab logically advances the rendering of the text by at least the width `xOffsetLeft`. If the normal origin of the next character to be rendered after the tab character is after a tab stop, a tab character will advance the rendering to the subsequent tab stop.
- The tab stops are at regular intervals from the left edge of the object and are not affected by the `xOffsetLeft` offset to the origin of the first character.

### D.3.12 Placing runs of characters & words

A run of characters starts from a well defined point:

- The start edge of the object
- A tab stop

After this origin the fine positioning of character cells and the gaps between words is not fully specified.



**Figure D.10 : Calculation of character placement**

However, the following rendering requirements shall be observed to ensure that a minimum acceptable level of text legibility is achieved:

- The spacing between any pair of non whitespace characters should be consistent wherever that pair of characters is displayed.
- At the default character spacing no two non-whitespace characters should "appear" to touch, except for special cases such as where ligatures diphthongs etc. are being used. The definition of the underlying font may make this requirement impossible.
- The physical rendering of a run of text as determined by the "logical" rules shall be achieved completely within the space used for the "logical" calculation.
- No partially rendered characters shall be presented.

NOTE: The "logical" position of each character as determined by the "logical" rules is likely to be a non-integer. For renderers unable to support suitable sub-pixel positioning, e.g. a 1-bit/pixel bitmap renderer, this is impossible to implement. Thus, whilst the "logical" rules must be used to determine the flow of text, are not required to be observed for individual character placement within this flow and other strategies may be employed as long as the requirements above are satisfied.

### D.3.13 Control of text flow

See the definition of the DVB text layout manager.

## D.4 Text mark-up

This clause on text mark-up applies to "High level rendering".

### D.4.1 White Space Characters

Certain non-printing characters have special meaning. These are identified in [Table D.4](#).

**Table D.4 : Special characters**

| UTF8 Value(s)      | Character        | Name                  | Breaking/<br>Non-breaking | Meaning   |
|--------------------|------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|---|
| 0x09               | 0x0009           | Tab                   | Breaking                  | See "Tabulation" on page 503  |
| 0x0A               | 0x000A           | Carriage<br>Return    | N/A                       | Causes the text flow to break. The origin for the next character to be rendered moves to a new baseline "linespace" below that just rendered. The horizontal position of the next line will depend on the horizontal alignment setting. |
| 0x0D               | 0x000D           |                       |                           |   |
| 0x0D0A<br>(note 1) | 0x000D<br>0x000A |                       |                           |   |
| 0x20               | 0x0020           | Space                 | Breaking                  | Spaces text by the width defined for the space character. When an object has the its text wrapping setting set to "true" lines may be broken at a space. See <a href="#">D.3.7, "Line breaking" on page 497</a> .                       |
| 0xC2A0             | 0x00A0           | Non-breaking<br>Space | Non-breaking              | Identical spacing characteristics to 0x20 but is not seen as word boundary for deciding a position to break a line of text. (0xC2A0 is the UTF-8 representation of 0x00A0)  |
| 0xE28087           | 0x2007           | Figure Space          | Non-breaking              | Can be used in a string of numerals as an alternative to using comma to denote "thousands". This character is not treated as a word boundary when deciding a position to break a line of text.  |

NOTE 1: The character sequence 0x0D0A shall be rendered identically to a single 0x0D.



## D.4.2 Marker characters

The codes 0x1C to 0x1F are zero width, non-spacing, non-printing characters available for use by authors as markers in objects, i.e. when using string operations.

## D.4.3 Non-printing characters

Certain characters (or character sequences) have no immediate visual representation.

These include:

- 0x1C to 0x1F marker characters (see [D.4.2 on page 505](#))
- Format control mark-up (see [D.4.4 on page 505](#))
- other characters not recognised by the receiver

When presenting text that includes these characters the character placement shall be as if the non-printing characters were eliminated from the text before rendering. In particular, the character spacing and inter character kerning shall be computed as if the non-printing characters were not present.

## D.4.4 Format Control Mark-up

Within objects mark-up codes can be used to control the presentation of text. The sequence in [table D.5](#) marks the start of some marked-up text. For each "start of mark-up" a corresponding "end of mark-up" is defined. The byte sequence for the "end of mark-up" is illustrated in [Table D.6](#). The minimum number of supported mark-up instances, where each instance is a start and end mark-up pair, is 256.

**Table D.5 : General format for start of text mark-up**

|                         | bits | value       | note       |
|-------------------------|------|-------------|------------|
| start_of_markup         | 8    | 0x1B        | Escape     |
| markup_start_identifier | 8    | 0x40-0x5E   | "@" to "^" |
| parameters_length       | 8    | N           |            |
| for( i=0; i<N; i++ ) {  |      |             |            |
| parameter_byte          | 8    | 0x00...0xFF |            |
| }                       |      |             |            |

**Table D.6 : General format for end of text mark-up**

|                       | bits | value     | note      |
|-----------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| end_of_markup         | 8    | 0x1B      | Escape    |
| markup_end_identifier | 8    | 0x60-0x7E | "" to "~" |

**Table D.7 : Codes defined for use in marked-up text files**

| Min. Nesting   | start mark-up                            | end mark-up | description   |
|--|--|-------------|---|
|  | 0x1B 0x42<br>0x00                        | 0x1B 0x62   | Applies "bold" style to the text enclosed (note 1)  |
| 16   | 0x1B 0x43<br>0x04 0xrr<br>0xgg 0xbb 0xtt | 0x1B 0x63   | Applies colour to the text enclosed. 0xrr specifies the red intensity, 0xgg the green, 0xbb the blue and 0xtt the transparency. |
| NOTE 1: Not supported in this version of this specification.   |  |             |   |
| NOTE 2: The required text encoding for this mark-up format is described in <a href="#">11.2.11, "Text Encodings" on page 250</a> . |  |             |   |

## D.4.5 Future compatibility

Compatible extensions to the set of mark-up codes may be defined in future versions of this specification. For each the `markup_end_identifier` will be 32 (0x20) greater than the `markup_start_identifier`. MHP terminals shall ignore unrecognised mark-up and shall display any text enclosed within an unrecognised mark-up.

## Annex E (normative): Character set

### E.1 Basic Euro Latin character set

The MHP shall be able to *display* and *accept as input* at least the set of characters shown in table E.1 "Extended Latin set".

The range of characters accepted as input may be limited by the capabilities of the available input devices. This paragraph does not imply that keyboards (real and virtual) for MHP terminals are required to support input of this full character set.

**Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 1 of 10)**

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name |
|--------|---------------------------------|
| 0x0020 | SPACE                           |
| 0x0021 | EXCLAMATION MARK                |
| 0x0022 | QUOTATION MARK                  |
| 0x0023 | NUMBER SIGN                     |
| 0x0024 | DOLLAR SIGN                     |
| 0x0025 | PERCENT SIGN                    |
| 0x0026 | AMPERSAND                       |
| 0x0027 | APOSTROPHE                      |
| 0x0028 | LEFT PARENTHESIS                |
| 0x0029 | RIGHT PARENTHESIS               |
| 0x002A | ASTERISK                        |
| 0x002B | PLUS SIGN                       |
| 0x002C | COMMA                           |
| 0x002D | HYPHEN-MINUS                    |
| 0x002E | FULL STOP                       |
| 0x002F | SOLIDUS                         |
| 0x0030 | DIGIT ZERO                      |
| 0x0031 | DIGIT ONE                       |
| 0x0032 | DIGIT TWO                       |
| 0x0033 | DIGIT THREE                     |
| 0x0034 | DIGIT FOUR                      |
| 0x0035 | DIGIT FIVE                      |
| 0x0036 | DIGIT SIX                       |
| 0x0037 | DIGIT SEVEN                     |
| 0x0038 | DIGIT EIGHT                     |
| 0x0039 | DIGIT NINE                      |
| 0x003A | COLON                           |
| 0x003B | SEMICOLON                       |
| 0x003C | LESS-THAN SIGN                  |
| 0x003D | EQUALS SIGN                     |

**Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 2 of 10)**

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name |
|--------|---------------------------------|
| 0x003E | GREATER-THAN SIGN               |
| 0x003F | QUESTION MARK                   |
| 0x0040 | COMMERCIAL AT                   |
| 0x0041 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A          |
| 0x0042 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER B          |
| 0x0043 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C          |
| 0x0044 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER D          |
| 0x0045 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E          |
| 0x0046 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER F          |
| 0x0047 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER G          |
| 0x0048 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER H          |
| 0x0049 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I          |
| 0x004A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER J          |
| 0x004B | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER K          |
| 0x004C | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L          |
| 0x004D | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER M          |
| 0x004E | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER N          |
| 0x004F | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O          |
| 0x0050 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER P          |
| 0x0051 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Q          |
| 0x0052 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER R          |
| 0x0053 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER S          |
| 0x0054 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER T          |
| 0x0055 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U          |
| 0x0056 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER V          |
| 0x0057 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER W          |
| 0x0058 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER X          |
| 0x0059 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Y          |
| 0x005A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Z          |
| 0x005B | LEFT SQUARE BRACKET             |
| 0x005C | REVERSE SOLIDUS                 |
| 0x005D | RIGHT SQUARE BRACKET            |
| 0x005E | CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT               |
| 0x005F | LOW LINE                        |
| 0x0060 | GRAVE ACCENT                    |
| 0x0061 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A            |
| 0x0062 | LATIN SMALL LETTER B            |
| 0x0063 | LATIN SMALL LETTER C            |
| 0x0064 | LATIN SMALL LETTER D            |
| 0x0065 | LATIN SMALL LETTER E            |
| 0x0066 | LATIN SMALL LETTER F            |
| 0x0067 | LATIN SMALL LETTER G            |
| 0x0068 | LATIN SMALL LETTER H            |
| 0x0069 | LATIN SMALL LETTER I            |
| 0x006A | LATIN SMALL LETTER J            |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 3 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name            |
|--------|--|
| 0x006B | LATIN SMALL LETTER K                       |
| 0x006C | LATIN SMALL LETTER L                       |
| 0x006D | LATIN SMALL LETTER M                       |
| 0x006E | LATIN SMALL LETTER N                       |
| 0x006F | LATIN SMALL LETTER O                       |
| 0x0070 | LATIN SMALL LETTER P                       |
| 0x0071 | LATIN SMALL LETTER Q                       |
| 0x0072 | LATIN SMALL LETTER R                       |
| 0x0073 | LATIN SMALL LETTER S                       |
| 0x0074 | LATIN SMALL LETTER T                       |
| 0x0075 | LATIN SMALL LETTER U                       |
| 0x0076 | LATIN SMALL LETTER V                       |
| 0x0077 | LATIN SMALL LETTER W                       |
| 0x0078 | LATIN SMALL LETTER X                       |
| 0x0079 | LATIN SMALL LETTER Y                       |
| 0x007A | LATIN SMALL LETTER Z                       |
| 0x007B | LEFT CURLY BRACKET                         |
| 0x007C | VERTICAL LINE                              |
| 0x007D | RIGHT CURLY BRACKET                        |
| 0x007E | TILDE                                      |
| 0x00A0 | NO-BREAK SPACE                             |
| 0x00A1 | INVERTED EXCLAMATION MARK                  |
| 0x00A2 | CENT SIGN                                  |
| 0x00A3 | POUND SIGN                                 |
| 0x00A4 | CURRENCY SIGN                              |
| 0x00A5 | YEN SIGN                                   |
| 0x00A8 | DIAERESIS                                  |
| 0x00A9 | COPYRIGHT SIGN                             |
| 0x00AA | FEMININE ORDINAL INDICATOR                 |
| 0x00AB | LEFT-POINTING DOUBLE ANGLE QUOTATION MARK  |
| 0x00AC | NOT SIGN                                   |
| 0x00AD | SOFT HYPHEN                                |
| 0x00AE | REGISTERED SIGN                            |
| 0x00B0 | DEGREE SIGN                                |
| 0x00B4 | ACUTE ACCENT                               |
| 0x00B6 | PILCROW SIGN                               |
| 0x00B7 | MIDDLE DOT                                 |
| 0x00B8 | CEDILLA                                    |
| 0x00BA | MASCULINE ORDINAL INDICATOR                |
| 0x00BB | RIGHT-POINTING DOUBLE ANGLE QUOTATION MARK |
| 0x00BC | VULGAR FRACTION ONE QUARTER                |
| 0x00BD | VULGAR FRACTION ONE HALF                   |
| 0x00BE | VULGAR FRACTION THREE QUARTERS             |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 4 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name        |
|--------|--|
| 0x00BF | INVERTED QUESTION MARK                 |
| 0x00C0 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00C1 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00C2 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00C3 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH TILDE      |
| 0x00C4 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00C5 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH RING ABOVE |
| 0x00C6 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER AE                |
| 0x00C7 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x00C8 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00C9 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00CA | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00CB | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00CC | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00CD | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00CE | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00CF | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00D0 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER ETH               |
| 0x00D1 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER N WITH TILDE      |
| 0x00D2 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00D3 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00D4 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00D5 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH TILDE      |
| 0x00D6 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00D7 | MULTIPLICATION SIGN                    |
| 0x00D8 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH STROKE     |
| 0x00D9 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00DA | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00DB | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00DC | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00DD | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Y WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00DE | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER THORN             |
| 0x00DF | LATIN SMALL LETTER SHARP S             |
| 0x00E0 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH GRAVE        |
| 0x00E1 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH ACUTE        |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 5 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name      |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| 0x00E2 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00E3 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH TILDE      |
| 0x00E4 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00E5 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH RING ABOVE |
| 0x00E6 | LATIN SMALL LETTER AE                |
| 0x00E7 | LATIN SMALL LETTER C WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x00E8 | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00E9 | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00EA | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00EB | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00EC | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00ED | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00EE | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00EF | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00F0 | LATIN SMALL LETTER ETH               |
| 0x00F1 | LATIN SMALL LETTER N WITH TILDE      |
| 0x00F2 | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00F3 | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00F4 | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00F5 | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH TILDE      |
| 0x00F6 | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00F7 | DIVISION SIGN                        |
| 0x00F8 | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH STROKE     |
| 0x00F9 | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH GRAVE      |
| 0x00FA | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00FB | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x00FC | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x00FD | LATIN SMALL LETTER Y WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x00FE | LATIN SMALL LETTER THORN             |
| 0x00FF | LATIN SMALL LETTER Y WITH DIAERESIS  |
| 0x0100 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH MACRON   |
| 0x0101 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH MACRON     |
| 0x0102 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH BREVE    |
| 0x0103 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH BREVE      |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 6 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name        |
|--------|--|
| 0x0104 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH OGONEK     |
| 0x0105 | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH OGONEK       |
| 0x0106 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x0107 | LATIN SMALL LETTER C WITH ACUTE        |
| 0x0108 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x0109 | LATIN SMALL LETTER C WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |
| 0x010A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C WITH DOT ABOVE  |
| 0x010B | LATIN SMALL LETTER C WITH DOT ABOVE    |
| 0x010C | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C WITH CARON      |
| 0x010D | LATIN SMALL LETTER C WITH CARON        |
| 0x010E | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER D WITH CARON      |
| 0x010F | LATIN SMALL LETTER D WITH CARON        |
| 0x0110 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER D WITH STROKE     |
| 0x0111 | LATIN SMALL LETTER D WITH STROKE       |
| 0x0112 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH MACRON     |
| 0x0113 | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH MACRON       |
| 0x0116 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH DOT ABOVE  |
| 0x0117 | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH DOT ABOVE    |
| 0x0118 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH OGONEK     |
| 0x0119 | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH OGONEK       |
| 0x011A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E WITH CARON      |
| 0x011B | LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH CARON        |
| 0x011C | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER G WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x011D | LATIN SMALL LETTER G WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |
| 0x011E | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER G WITH BREVE      |
| 0x011F | LATIN SMALL LETTER G WITH BREVE        |
| 0x0120 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER G WITH DOT ABOVE  |
| 0x0121 | LATIN SMALL LETTER G WITH DOT ABOVE    |
| 0x0122 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER G WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x0123 | LATIN SMALL LETTER G WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x0124 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER H WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x0125 | LATIN SMALL LETTER H WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 7 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name        |
|--------|--|
| 0x0126 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER H WITH STROKE     |
| 0x0127 | LATIN SMALL LETTER H WITH STROKE       |
| 0x0128 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH TILDE      |
| 0x0129 | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH TILDE        |
| 0x012A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH MACRON     |
| 0x012B | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH MACRON       |
| 0x012E | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH OGONEK     |
| 0x012F | LATIN SMALL LETTER I WITH OGONEK       |
| 0x0130 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I WITH DOT ABOVE  |
| 0x0131 | LATIN SMALL LETTER DOTLESS I           |
| 0x0132 | LATIN CAPITAL LIGATURE IJ              |
| 0x0133 | LATIN SMALL LIGATURE IJ                |
| 0x0134 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER J WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x0135 | LATIN SMALL LETTER J WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |
| 0x0136 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER K WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x0137 | LATIN SMALL LETTER K WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x0138 | LATIN SMALL LETTER KRA                 |
| 0x0139 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x013A | LATIN SMALL LETTER L WITH ACUTE        |
| 0x013B | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x013C | LATIN SMALL LETTER L WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x013D | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L WITH CARON      |
| 0x013E | LATIN SMALL LETTER L WITH CARON        |
| 0x013F | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L WITH MIDDLE DOT |
| 0x0140 | LATIN SMALL LETTER L WITH MIDDLE DOT   |
| 0x0141 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L WITH STROKE     |
| 0x0142 | LATIN SMALL LETTER L WITH STROKE       |
| 0x0143 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER N WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x0144 | LATIN SMALL LETTER N WITH ACUTE        |
| 0x0145 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER N WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x0146 | LATIN SMALL LETTER N WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x0147 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER N WITH CARON      |
| 0x0148 | LATIN SMALL LETTER N WITH CARON        |
| 0x014A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER ENG               |
| 0x014B | LATIN SMALL LETTER ENG                 |
| 0x014C | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O WITH MACRON     |
| 0x014D | LATIN SMALL LETTER O WITH MACRON       |
| 0x0152 | LATIN CAPITAL LIGATURE OE              |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 8 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name        |
|--------|--|
| 0x0153 | LATIN SMALL LIGATURE OE                |
| 0x0154 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER R WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x0155 | LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH ACUTE        |
| 0x0156 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER R WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x0157 | LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x0158 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER R WITH CARON      |
| 0x0159 | LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH CARON        |
| 0x015A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER S WITH ACUTE      |
| 0x015B | LATIN SMALL LETTER S WITH ACUTE        |
| 0x015C | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER S WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x015D | LATIN SMALL LETTER S WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |
| 0x015E | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER S WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x015F | LATIN SMALL LETTER S WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x0160 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER S WITH CARON      |
| 0x0161 | LATIN SMALL LETTER S WITH CARON        |
| 0x0162 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER T WITH CEDILLA    |
| 0x0163 | LATIN SMALL LETTER T WITH CEDILLA      |
| 0x0164 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER T WITH CARON      |
| 0x0165 | LATIN SMALL LETTER T WITH CARON        |
| 0x0166 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER T WITH STROKE     |
| 0x0167 | LATIN SMALL LETTER T WITH STROKE       |
| 0x0168 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH TILDE      |
| 0x0169 | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH TILDE        |
| 0x016A | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH MACRON     |
| 0x016B | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH MACRON       |
| 0x016C | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH BREVE      |
| 0x016D | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH BREVE        |
| 0x016E | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH RING ABOVE |
| 0x016F | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH RING ABOVE   |
| 0x0172 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U WITH OGONEK     |
| 0x0173 | LATIN SMALL LETTER U WITH OGONEK       |
| 0x0174 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER W WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x0175 | LATIN SMALL LETTER W WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |
| 0x0176 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Y WITH CIRCUMFLEX |
| 0x0177 | LATIN SMALL LETTER Y WITH CIRCUMFLEX   |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 9 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name                      |
|--------|--|
| 0x0178 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Y WITH DIAERESIS                |
| 0x0179 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Z WITH ACUTE                    |
| 0x017A | LATIN SMALL LETTER Z WITH ACUTE                      |
| 0x017B | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Z WITH DOT ABOVE                |
| 0x017C | LATIN SMALL LETTER Z WITH DOT ABOVE                  |
| 0x017D | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Z WITH CARON                    |
| 0x017E | LATIN SMALL LETTER Z WITH CARON                      |
| 0x01CD | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A WITH CARON                    |
| 0x01CE | LATIN SMALL LETTER A WITH CARON                      |
| 0x02C6 | MODIFIER LETTER CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT                    |
| 0x02C7 | CARON (Mandarin Chinese third tone)                  |
| 0x02C9 | MODIFIER LETTER MACRON (Mandarin Chinese first tone) |
| 0x02D8 | BREVE  |
| 0x02D9 | DOT ABOVE (Mandarin Chinese light tone)              |
| 0x02DA | RING ABOVE   |
| 0x02DB | OGONEK   |
| 0x02DC | SMALL TILDE  |
| 0x1E80 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER W WITH GRAVE                    |
| 0x1E81 | LATIN SMALL LETTER W WITH GRAVE                      |
| 0x1E82 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER W WITH ACUTE                    |
| 0x1E83 | LATIN SMALL LETTER W WITH ACUTE                      |
| 0x1E84 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER W WITH DIAERESIS                |
| 0x1E85 | LATIN SMALL LETTER W WITH DIAERESIS                  |
| 0x1EF2 | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Y WITH GRAVE                    |
| 0x1EF3 | LATIN SMALL LETTER Y WITH GRAVE                      |
| 0x2007 | FIGURE SPACE   |
| 0x2013 | EN DASH  |
| 0x2014 | EM DASH  |
| 0x2018 | LEFT SINGLE QUOTATION MARK                           |
| 0x2019 | RIGHT SINGLE QUOTATION MARK                          |
| 0x201A | SINGLE LOW-9 QUOTATION MARK                          |
| 0x201C | LEFT DOUBLE QUOTATION MARK                           |
| 0x201D | RIGHT DOUBLE QUOTATION MARK                          |
| 0x201E | DOUBLE LOW-9 QUOTATION MARK                          |
| 0x2022 | BULLET   |
| 0x2026 | HORIZONTAL ELLIPSIS                                  |
| 0x2030 | PER MILLE SIGN                                       |
| 0x2039 | SINGLE LEFT-POINTING ANGLE QUOTATION MARK            |

Table E.1 : Extended Latin set (Sheet 10 of 10)

| Code   | ISO 10646-1 [18] Character name            |
|--------|--|
| 0x203A | SINGLE RIGHT-POINTING ANGLE QUOTATION MARK |
| 0x2044 | FRACTION SLASH                             |
| 0x20AC | EURO SIGN                                  |
| 0x2122 | TRADE MARK SIGN                            |
| 0x2190 | LEFTWARDS ARROW                            |
| 0x2191 | UPWARDS ARROW                              |
| 0x2192 | RIGHTWARDS ARROW                           |
| 0x2193 | DOWNWARDS ARROW                            |
| 0x2212 | MINUS SIGN                                 |
| 0x2214 | DOT PLUS                                   |
| 0x2215 | DIVISION SLASH                             |
| 0x221E | INFINITY                                   |
| 0x266B | BEAMED EIGHTH NOTES                        |
| 0x2713 | CHECK MARK                                 |
| 0x2717 | BALLOT X                                   |

---

## Annex F (informative): Authoring & Implementation Guidelines

### F.1 Authoring Guidelines

- Authoring guidelines are needed to specify those methods, classes and interfaces which are intended for use by implementations of JMF players. These methods, classes and interfaces are not intended for use by applications except for this purpose and that should be made clear.
- Authoring guidelines are needed to make it clear that it is optional for JMF controls to have an associated java.awt component. This is in the JMF documentation but the phrasing implies this an exceptional case. In many MHP receivers, the presence of such a component would be the exceptional case. To be completed.

### F.2 Implementation Guidelines

To be completed.

### F.3 Authoring guidelines for DVB-J

To be completed.

### F.4 Authoring guidelines for DVB HTML

#### F.4.1 CSS2 Authoring guidelines

The selection of the CSS2 subset in this specification has been influenced by the requirements of the conformance clauses as defined by the W3C. As such, some style properties and selectors have been selected in order to respect this requirement, although they might not be fully adapted to the TV environment and its constraints. The objective of this section is to provide content authors with some guidelines on the potential impacts the use of some selectors or properties might have. Some of those guidelines are due to CPU or other limitations that may with generations of receivers at the time of the writing. This might evolve with the arrival of new generations, however content authors should be aware of the potential existence of different generations of receivers in the field.

##### F.4.1.1 Selectors

Content authors are advised that the use of contextual selectors - descendent, child, adjacent sibling, :first-child - as well as the attribute and the attribute value selector might cause the pattern matching process to be slow when used through the DOM APIs. For better matching efficiency, the type, id and class selectors should be favoured

Content authors are advised that the use of the :first-letter and :first-line pseudo-elements might cause the rendering to be slow. See also guidelines for content generation and the :before and :after selectors.

##### F.4.1.2 Properties

###### F.4.1.2.1 Generalities

On a general basis, use of the "auto" value for properties should be avoided and explicit values should be preferred wherever possible.

###### F.4.1.2.2 Visual Formatting Model

###### F.4.1.2.2.1 "display" :

Use of the "table-header-group", "table-row-group", "table-footer-group", "table-column" and "table-column-group" values of this property might cause the rendering to be slow. These values are meant to make elements behave like the table elements. Their functionality should be well understood before using them.



#### F.4.1.2.2.2 "float", "clear" :

Use of those properties might slow down the positioning operation. Also, for better content predictability and interoperability, absolute positioning should be favoured (see below).

#### F.4.1.2.2.3 "position" :

Use of the "fixed" value of this property might cause the associated rendering to be slow, especially in the case where boxes with different stack levels and with some level of translucency are used through the "z-index" property. On a general basis, for better content predictability and interoperability, absolute positioning should be favoured. Also, Content authors should not make any assumptions on the way the fixed positioning functionality interacts with scrolling.

#### F.4.1.2.2.4 Generated Content, automatic numbering, and lists

On a general level, content generation provides convenient functionality to the content author. However, this is at the cost of increased complexity in the receiver implementation. Content authors are then advised that the use of the associated selectors (:before and :after) and properties ("content", "counter-increment", "counter-reset", "quotes") might slow down the overall rendering.

#### F.4.1.2.2.5 "marker-offset", "display" (value "marker") :

Use of the list properties such as "list-style-type", "list-style-image", "list-style-position", and "list-style" should be favoured to markers because of the induced complexity of the latter, its relationships with content generation and consequently its potential slowness in the rendering.

#### F.4.1.2.3 Colours and Background

##### F.4.1.2.3.1 "background-attachment" :

Use of the "fixed" value of this property might cause the associated rendering to be slow. Content authors should not make any assumptions on the way the fixed positioning functionality interacts with scrolling.

Moreover, content authors should not make assumption on the presence of this functionality in a receiver since it is optional in CSS2.

#### F.4.1.2.4 Visual Effects

##### F.4.1.2.4.1 "overflow" :

Use of the "scroll" or "auto" values of this property might not cause the presence of scrolling mechanisms as used in the desktop environment. Due to ergonomic reasons, implementations might choose other mechanisms.

#### F.4.1.2.5 Fonts

##### F.4.1.2.5.1 "font" :

Content authors should not make any assumption on the expected results when using the "caption", "icon", "menu", "message-box", "small-caption", "status-bar" values of the "font" property, which have no associated semantics in a DVB-MHP environment.

#### F.4.1.2.6 Text

##### F.4.1.2.6.1 "text-align" :

Use of the "justify" value of this property might slow down the rendering because of the induced complexity. Depending on the algorithm used by the receiver, use of this value might also affect interoperability. Content authors should be aware that conformant receivers might interpret this value as being "left" or "right" depending on the directionality of the language.

Use of a string value for this property in a table cell might also slow down the rendering and in general might be unpredictable, for example when the content flows on more than one line.

#### F.4.1.2.6.2 "text-shadow" :

Use of the optional blur radius after the shadow offset might slow down the rendering because of the induced complexity and may not be visible on a low resolution screen. Content authors should be advised that interoperability might be affected since the algorithm for computing the blur effect has not been specified.

#### F.4.1.2.7 User Interface

##### F.4.1.2.7.1 User preferences for colours :

Content authors should not make any assumption on the expected results when using the system colours which have no associated semantics in a DVB-MHP environment. Those colours are: ActiveBorder, ActiveCaption, AppWorkspace, Background, ButtonFace, ButtonHighlight, ButtonShadow, ButtonText, CaptionText, GrayText, Highlight, HighlightText, InactiveBorder, InactiveCaption, InactiveCaptionText, InfoBackground, InfoText, Menu, MenuText, Scrollbar, ThreeDDarkShadow, ThreeDFace, ThreeDHighlight, ThreeDLightShadow, ThreeDShadow, Window, WindowFrame, WindowText.

# Annex G (normative): Minimum Platform Capabilities

## G.1 Graphics

In the area of graphics capability the following requirements are made on MHP terminals:

### G.1.1 Device capabilities

- The number of DVB-J applications concurrently owning instances of `HScene` is not limited except by underlying platform resources like the total memory of the MHP terminal. The MHP terminal is required to support either the "Platforms Supporting a Restricted Multi-Window System" or the "Platforms Supporting a Full Multi-Window System" implementation scenarios as defined in `org.havi.ui.HSceneFactory`. The implementation scenario "Platforms Supporting a Single Window System" is not a valid choice for MHP.
- The MHP terminal is not required to provide a mechanism for the end-user to change user input focus between `HScenes`. Hence MHP applications wishing to receive user input focus must explicitly request it.
- The MHP terminal shall implement at least one `HGraphicsDevice` which shall be full screen.
- The MHP terminal shall implement at least one `HBackgroundDevice`. These are always full screen.
- The MHP terminal shall implement at least one `HVideoDevice` which is always capable of being configured to be full screen.
- The MHP terminal shall implement at least one `HScreen` which shall support at least one video, graphics and background device as defined immediately above.
- The minimum set of required device resolutions that MHP terminals shall support is illustrated in figure G.1. Specifically these are:
  - `HBackgroundDevice` resolution of 720x576
  - `HVideoDevice` resolution of 720x576
  - `HGraphicsDevice` resolution of 720x576

These shall be supported for display aspect ratios of 4:3 and 16:9. These shall be reflected as `HScreenConfigurations` of the respective devices.

- `HEmulatedGraphicsConfigurations` shall be supported with the pixel aspect ratios defined in table D.3, "Pixel width for non-square pixel graphics devices" on page 493 corresponding to the graphics device aspect ratio of 14:9 emulated on both 4:3 and 16:9.

Optionally MHP terminals may also support square pixel `HGraphicsDevice` resolutions of 768x576 and 1024x576 for 4:3 and 16:9 displays respectively.



Figure G.1 : Required device resolutions

## G.1.2 Video presentation capabilities

- The following set of standard decoder format conversions shall be supported by all MHP terminals:

DFC\_PROCESSING\_CCO

DFC\_PROCESSING\_FULL

DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_16\_9

DFC\_PROCESSING\_PAN\_SCAN

The following modes are optional:

DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_14\_9

DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1\_ON\_16\_9

DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1\_ON\_4\_3

- MHP terminals are required to support both displaying MPEG video without any scaling and with 1/2 scaling both vertically and horizontally provided that in this latter case the entire resulting video area is fully on the screen
- Support for component based JMF players is not required for any profile in this specification.

## G.1.3 Image processing capabilities

- All DVBBuffers objects shall support SRC and CLEAR and SRC\_OVER. When SRC\_OVER is used with DVBBuffers objects with a sample model of the type TYPE\_BASE a perfect result is only guaranteed to be produced with alpha values of 0 and 1. Alpha values other than 0 and 1 can be approximated. DVBBuffers object with a type of TYPE\_ADVANCED will produce a result as expected but those SRC\_OVER operations are likely to be slow.
- DVBBuffers object created from a DVBBufferedImage with the type TYPE\_ADVANCED shall perform SRC\_OVER operations without approximations of the compositing rule.

### G.1.3.1 Composition rules

MHP terminals are required to implement at least the SRC, SRC\_OVER and CLEAR rules when compositing graphics over video and graphics over graphics.

## G.1.4 Alpha capabilities

In the composition of the graphics (AWT/HAVi components) with background and video planes (see Figure 28, "[Overview of AWT / HAVi plane composition](#)" on page 358), the following rules shall be applied for the precision of implementation of alpha:

- MHP terminals are required to implement at least 3 levels of transparency: 0 % (opaque), 100 % (completely transparent) and an intermediate value of approximately 30 %. Implementation of additional intermediate levels of transparency is optional.
- Where the MHP terminal cannot implement a particular value of semi-transparency it shall replace it with the nearest value of transparency it can implement.

However, if the encoded value of transparency is in the range 10%-90% / 0x19-0xE6 it shall not be approximated as either 0% or 100% transparency. So, 9% may be approximated as 0% but 10% shall be represented with a value in the range 10% to 90% such as 30%. Similarly, 91% may be approximated as 100%.

Allowed approximations for the composition of graphics over other graphics are defined in [13.6.1.1.2, "Graphics over other graphics"](#) on page 370.

## G.1.5 Colour capabilities

Logically the colour model is a "true colour" one. However, other implementations are possible.

Two styles of indexed colour implementations are considered:

- Dithering
- Nearest colour match

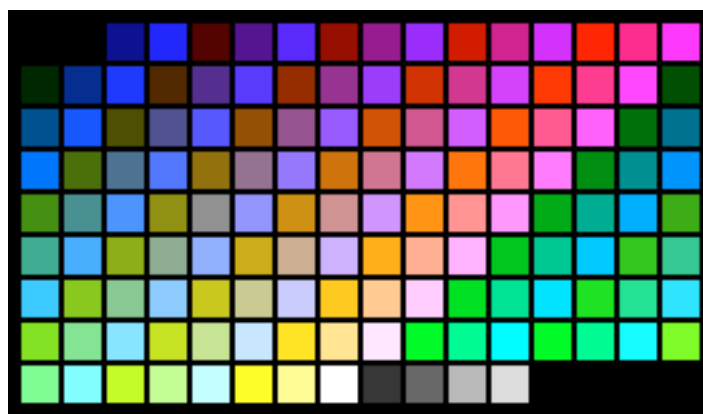
Where an indexed colour implementation can accurately reproduce colours using dithering it is considered to be a true colour implementation. In this case no restrictions are placed on the CLUT used.

Where an indexed colour receiver implements a simpler colour matching, or has other limitations on the number of colours it represents (for example requiring a reservation to accommodate subtitles). It shall use the 188 colour CLUT specified in table G.1. The reservation of 64 CLUT locations for use by the subtitling decoder is not appropriate to all implementations and assumes a corresponding broadcaster rule of operations restricting subtitle transmissions to use only 64 different colours.

**Table G.1 : Palette construction rules**

| Transparency   | Alpha           | Additional Grey Levels (R=G=B) | Red                  | Green                                  | Blue        | Number of colours |
|--|-----------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|--|-------------|-------------------|
| 0 %  | 255             | 42, 85, 170, 212               | 0, 63, 127, 191, 255 | 0, 31, 63, 95, 127, 159, 191, 223, 255 | 0, 127, 255 | 139               |
| 30 %   | 179<br>(note 1) | --                             | 0, 85, 170, 255      | 0, 51, 102, 153, 204, 255              | 0, 255      | 48                |
| 100 %  | 0               | --                             | --                   | --                                     | --          | 1                 |
|  |                 |                                |                      |  | Total       | 188               |
| NOTE 1: Where the receiver cannot implement this "ideal" value of semi-transparency it shall replace it with the nearest value of semi-transparency it can implement. Note: semi-transparency shall not be approximated as either 0 % or 100 % transparency. |                 |                                |                      |  |             |                   |

The opaque portion CLUT specified in table G.1 is illustrated in figure G.2.



**Figure G.2 : Opaque CLUT**

## G.1.6 MPEG I frame and Video drips

The minimum positioning and scaling capabilities defined above for MPEG video shall also apply to MPEG I frame and Video drips.

The MHP terminal shall support at least one `HStillImageBackgroundConfiguration`.

## G.2 Audio

No audio mixing is required.

Audio played from memory may pre-empt any audio from the transport stream. This may disturb decoding of any broadcast video stream.

Audio from memory shall be output in preference to audio from stream if overall audio output has not been disabled by the user. On platforms capable of mixing audio from memory with audio from the stream it shall do this if there is a stream playing. Where audio from the stream is interrupted, decoding of it shall automatically resume when audio from memory ceases if the stream concerned is still playing. This only applies where the audio from memory and the stream are both under the control of the same MHP application. Where multiple applications are involved see 9.5, "Inter application resource management" on page 207.

## G.3 Video

The MHP terminal is only required to support decoding of a single video stream at a given time. The number of implemented video decoders will affect the functionality of the video and background devices.

## G.4 Resident fonts and text rendering

### G.4.1 The built-in font

At least the font [Tiresias \[80\]](#) shall be provided.

The font shall be able to present at least the sizes listed in [G.2](#) and the weight ("PLAIN").

**Table G.2 : Minimum set of sizes**

| Size (points)   | TV lines (note 1) over "Cap-V" | Informative Name         |
|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 36  | 24                             | Heading / Large subtitle |
| 31  | 21                             | Subtitle                 |
| 26  | 18                             | Body (note 2)            |
| 24  | 16                             | Footnote                 |
| NOTE 1: The primary definition of the character size is the font size in points, the height of a capital letter "V" in TV lines is provided for information only. |                                |                          |
| NOTE 2: The default size and style.   |                                |                          |

### G.4.2 Presentation to DVB-J

The embedded font "Tiresias" shall have:

- the logical name "SansSerif" (for example returned by `java.awt.Toolkit.getFontList`)
- the family name "Tiresias" (for example returned by `java.awt.Font.getFamily`)
- the font face name "Tiresias PLAIN"

### G.4.3 Text directions

The `DVBTextLayoutManager` is only required to support the following configuration of text direction:

- `LINE_ORIENTATION_HORIZONTAL` and `START_CORNER_UPPER_LEFT`

## G.5 Input events

Table G.3 : Minimum set of input events

| Input event      |
|------------------|
| VK_0 to VK_9     |
| VK_UP            |
| VK_DOWN          |
| VK_LEFT          |
| VK_RIGHT         |
| VK_ENTER         |
| VK_TELETEXT      |
| VK_COLORED_KEY_0 |
| VK_COLORED_KEY_1 |
| VK_COLORED_KEY_2 |
| VK_COLORED_KEY_3 |

This table defines the minimum set of input events which shall be available to the set of running MHP applications if they are interested in receiving them. For DVB-J applications, this is described in more detail in 11.4.1.4, "Handling of input events" on page 258.

NOTE 1: They are not guaranteed to be always available to any one MHP application because another application running at the same time may have one of these events exclusively reserved. The application with focus (if any) always receives all of these events unless another application within the same service has requested and been granted exclusive access to one or more events. The process for event distribution for DVB-J applications is described in more detail in annex J, "(normative): DVB-J event API" on page 527.

NOTE 2: The user input device for an MHP terminal may support more events than this however this is implementation dependent. If more events than this are supported, it is equally implementation dependent whether the additional events are sent to MHP applications or sent to the MHP navigator. Events which are always sent to the MHP navigator may not be visible at all to MHP applications. For example, an MHP receiver using a conventional remote control will probably have program up/program down keys which are only ever sent to the navigator and cause service selection when received there.

## G.6 Memory

In order to be able to execute MHP conformance tests, the following minimum memory requirements are defined for MHP terminals. All of these are to be measured during normal usage and operational conditions of an MHP terminal. All are to be measured in the `initXlet` method of a DVB-J application which is both the only auto-start application signalled in a service and the only application running at that time.

- Enough memory to successfully load any arbitrary 262 144 (or less) Bytes of Java class files into the memory space of the Java virtual machine. Execution of code called as part of initializing fields in classes is excluded from consideration as part of "load"ing here. RAM usage by the bytecode verifier is included in consideration as part of "load"ing here.

Enough memory to do the above and individually each of the following:

- Enough memory to successfully create a Java byte array of lengths from 1 entry to 262 144 entries.
- Enough memory to successfully load & display any 720x576 8bit PNG image (conforming to 15.1, "PNG - restrictions" on page 385) from a file which contains just the mandatory information and excludes any optional extension fields or chunks.
- Enough memory to successfully load from file & play from memory 5 seconds of audio at 128 kbit/s (where kbit/s is as used in ETSI TR 101 154 [9]). It shall be measured using files that do not include any optional extension fields.
- Enough memory to successfully allocate an array of `java.lang.Object` of length 16 384 and fill each element of this array with a distinct instance of `java.lang.Object`.

The memory requirements detailed in this section are not exhaustive. For example, the specific requirement concerning an array of type byte in no way implies that MHP terminals are exempt from requirements found elsewhere in the MHP specification (including normatively referenced specifications) for supporting arrays of other types.

NOTE: Additional detail may be added to these requirements in order to properly enable the MHP conformance tests.

## G.7 Other resources

**Table G.4 : Minimum requirements for other resources**

| Feature   | Specification  |
|---|--|
| gamma correction in the receiver  | none   |
| HAVi mattes   | Platforms are not required to implement the functionality of mattes in HAVi. Non-implementation should be implemented as specified by HAVi.                            |
| Overlapping applications  | MHP terminals are not required to support overlapping top level UI containers (e.g. HScenes where DVB-J applications are concerned).                                   |
| AIT section filtering   | The implementation is not required to dedicate more than one section filter to monitoring the AIT.   |
| Key lengths for TLS   | Receivers shall support certificate key lengths up to and including 2048 bits for TLS (see 12.10, "Security on the return channel" on page 339).                       |
| Key lengths for Application Authentication (note 1)                                       | Receivers shall support certificate key lengths up to and including 4096 bits for application authentication (see 12.2, "Authentication of applications" on page 301). |
| Internet clients  | WWW and email clients required, usenet news client optional.   |
| Non-CA Smart Card Reader  | MHP terminals are not required to include this   |
| Stored services   | No requirement for persistent storage for stored services even if other forms of persistent storage are supported.   |
| NOTE 1: It is not expected that key lengths as large as 4096 bits will be used initially. |  |



NOTE: The values in the table below are set for the purposes of conformance testing and should not be used by application or MHP terminal developers as being indicative of the capabilities of commercial products.

**Table G.5 : Minimum requirements for other resources for conformance purposes**

| Feature   | Specification  |
|---|--|
| Application accessible timers (note 2)  | At least 4 timers for each ServiceContext which can be presenting MHP applications at the same time. (i.e. shared between the applications signalled as part of the same service). (note 1)  |
| MPEG-2 transport stream network interface   | Shall support at least one network interface enabling reception of an MPEG-2 transport stream and selection of that transport stream from among those available to be received. This shall support those broadcast channel protocols supported by the MHP terminal (see 6.2, "Broadcast Channel Protocols" on page 58) and the MHP APIs defined to interface to these protocols and to control these interfaces. |
| Bidirectional IP network interface  | MHP terminals supporting the interactive broadcast profile shall support at least one network interface for bidirectional IP traffic. This shall support those interaction channel protocols supported by the MHP terminal (see 6.3, "Interaction Channel Protocols" on page 61) and the MHP APIs defined to interface to these protocols and to control these interfaces.                                       |
| Conditional access  | None required.<br>The absence or optional presence of one shall be correctly reported through the Conditional access API.<br>Local regulation may require more support than this minimum   |
| Persistent storage  | At least 4096 bytes. This shall not include the requirements of 12.12, "Platform minima" on page 349 for persistent storage of CRLs and RCMMs.   |
| Application accessible MPEG-2 section filters (note 2)  | At least 2 shared among all applications signalled as part of the same service. (note 1).  |
| Application accessible DVB-J threads (note 2)   | At least 4 shared among all applications signalled as part of the same service. Threads created by the platform and used to call methods of the application are excluded from this number. (note 1).   |
| Applications in a service   | MHP terminals shall not impose any arbitrary limit on the number of applications which they can support at the same time.  |
| Memory for stored services as defined in 9.7.2, "Stored services" on page 209   | Either 0 or greater than or equal to 65536 bytes. This memory shall be non-volatile. If greater than zero, there shall be a means to empty this memory, at least for the purposes of running conformance tests.  |
| NOTE 1: These requirements apply to one set of MHP applications signalled as part of the same service. If an MHP terminal supports simultaneous execution of more than one set of signalled applications then it shall make available at least these minimum resources for each set of signalled applications which can be executed simultaneously. |  |
| NOTE 2: "Application accessible" means guaranteed to be accessible to MHP applications through the API defined in this specification for the feature concerned. This must be regardless of the extent of any usage of that feature or function as part of the MHP terminal implementation.  |  |

---

## Annex H (normative): Extensions

Private protocols and possibly APIs are not precluded and are outside of the scope of the MHP specification.

The addition of public or protected constructors, methods or fields to classes and interfaces in the `org.dvb` namespace is **not** allowed.

Restrictions on proprietary extensions to the `org.havi.ui` packages are found in section 7.2.2 ("Profile #1: DCMs and Application Modules") of [HAVi \[50\]](#).

---

## **Annex I (normative): DVB-J fundamental classes**

# Package org.dvb.lang

## Description

Provides those core platform related features not found in the java.lang package.

### Class Summary

#### Classes

[DVBClassLoader](#)

This class loader is used to load classes and resources from a search path of URLs referring to locations where Java class files may be stored.

# org.dvb.lang DVBClassLoader

## Declaration

```
public abstract class DVBClassLoader extends java.security.SecureClassLoader
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.ClassLoader
|
+--java.security.SecureClassLoader
|
+--org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader
```

## Description

This class loader is used to load classes and resources from a search path of URLs referring to locations where Java class files may be stored.

The classes that are loaded are by default only allowed to load code through the parent classloader, or from the URLs specified when the DVBClassLoader was created.

## Constructors

---

### DVBClassLoader(URL[])

```
public DVBClassLoader(java.net.URL[] urls)
```

Constructs a new DVBClassLoader for the given URLs. The URLs will be searched in the order specified for classes and resources.

If there is a security manager, this method first calls the security manager's `checkCreateClassLoader` method to ensure creation of a class loader is allowed.

#### Parameters:

`urls` - the URLs from which to load classes and resources

#### Throws:

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if a security manager exists and its `checkCreateClassLoader` method doesn't allow creation of a class loader.

#### See Also:

`SecurityManager.checkCreateClassLoader`

---

### DVBClassLoader(URL[], ClassLoader)

```
public DVBClassLoader(java.net.URL[] urls, java.lang.ClassLoader parent)
```

Constructs a new DVBClassLoader for the given URLs. The URLs will be searched in the order specified for classes and resources.

If there is a security manager, this method first calls the security manager's `checkCreateClassLoader` method to ensure creation of a class loader is allowed.

#### Parameters:

`urls` - the URLs from which to load classes and resources

`parent` - the parent classloader for delegation

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if a security manager exists and its `checkCreateClassLoader` method doesn't allow creation of a class loader.

**See Also:**

`SecurityManager.checkCreateClassLoader`

## Methods

---

**findClass(String)**

```
public java.lang.Class findClass(java.lang.String name)
    throws ClassNotFoundException
```

Finds and loads the class with the specified name from the URL search path. Any URLs are searched until the class is found.

**Parameters:**

`name` - the name of the class.

**Returns:**

the resulting class.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.ClassNotFoundException` - if the named class could not be found.

---

**newInstance(URL[])**

```
public static org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader newInstance(java.net.URL[] urls)
```

Creates a new instance of `DVBClassLoader` for the specified URLs. If a security manager is installed, the `loadClass` method of the `DVBClassLoader` returned by this method will invoke the `SecurityManager.checkPackageAccess` method before loading the class.

**Parameters:**

`urls` - the URLs to search for classes and resources.

**Returns:**

the resulting class loader

---

**newInstance(URL[], ClassLoader)**

```
public static org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader newInstance(java.net.URL[] urls,
    java.lang.ClassLoader parent)
```

Creates a new instance of `DVBClassLoader` for the specified URLs. If a security manager is installed, the `loadClass` method of the `DVBClassLoader` returned by this method will invoke the `SecurityManager.checkPackageAccess` method before loading the class.

**Parameters:**

`urls` - the URLs to search for classes and resources.

`parent` - the parent class loader for delegation.

**Returns:**

the resulting class loader

---

## Annex J (normative): DVB-J event API

Applications can use the `org.dvb.event` API, to receive events without being focused and/or to have exclusive access to events.

### J.1 Overview

This API provides a mechanism allowing MHP applications to influence the routing of events to either MHP applications or the navigator. This typically would be used in a mode where the receiver is primarily used for TV viewing, allowing some events to be received by the application, and allowing the navigator to receive those events that are not requested by any MHP application. This API enables MHP applications to choose between the following mechanisms for receiving events:

- through the standard `java.awt` mechanism,
- through the standard `java.awt` mechanism, but for some events to be exclusively accessed by the application,
- through a mechanism defined by this API,
- through the mechanism defined by this API, but for some events to be exclusively accessed by the application.

The last two solutions could be used by non-graphical applications in order to receive events that are coming from the user. It could also be used by an invisible application if it wants to be presented when a specific key is pressed.

If an application wants to have exclusive access to some events and to manage them through the `java.awt` then it must use this API so that it can be aware of the fact that it has lost or gained access to these events. One must notice that an application based on `awt` event mechanism will receive events only if it is focused.

If an application has acquired exclusive access to receive an event through either of these mechanisms, it will not receive this same event through the other mechanism. An application can obtain exclusive access to an event through only one of the two mechanisms at a time.

The diagram below shows how the MHP terminal decides on the processing of an event (defined by a set of keychar/keycode, event id & modifiers). This includes deciding on the mechanisms by which the event will be dispatched and the appropriate Java class to encapsulate the event for each of these mechanisms.:

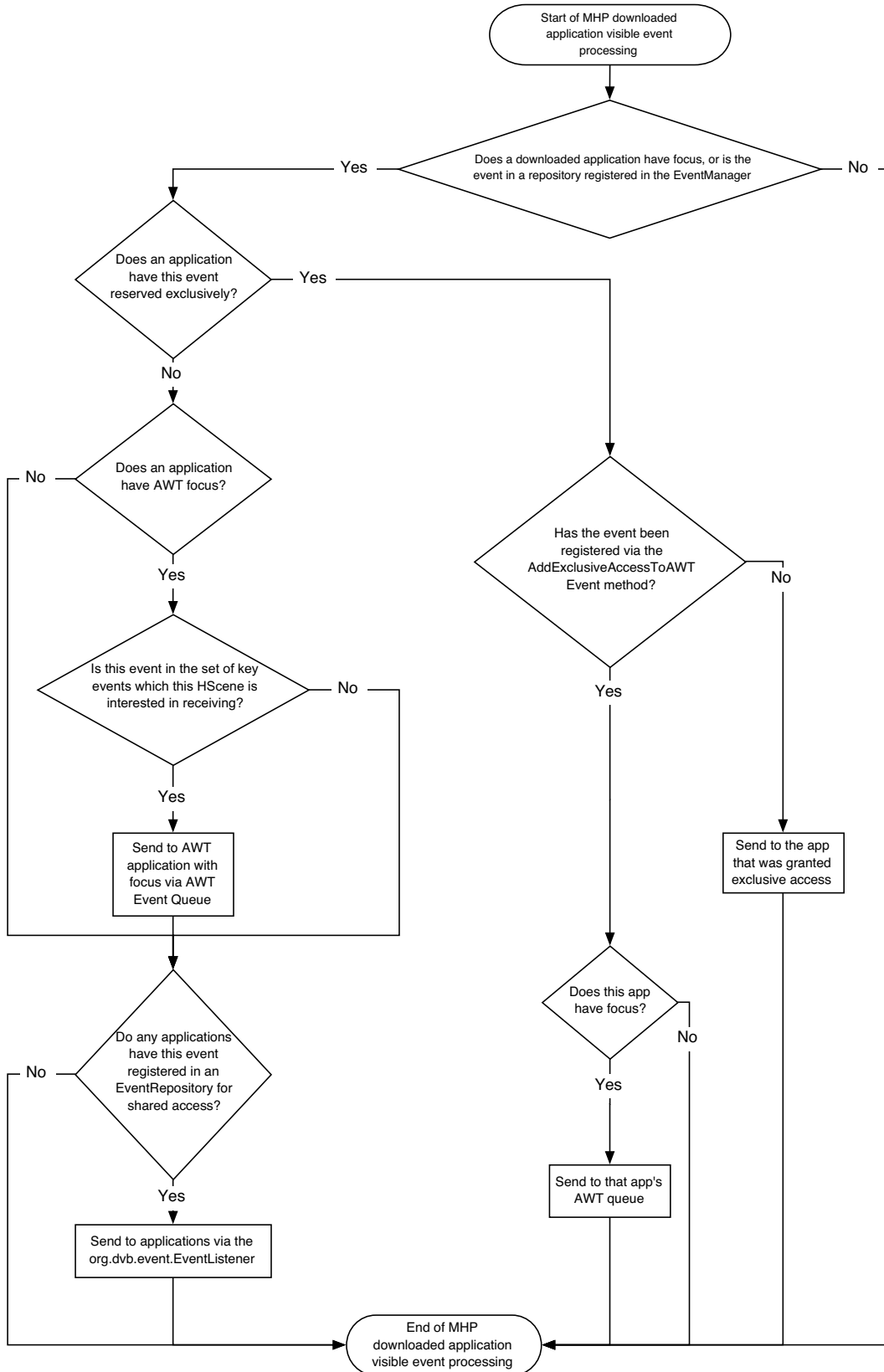


Figure J.1 : The MHP downloaded application visible event distribution mechanism



NOTE: In this diagram, the terms "AWT queue" and "AWT Event Queue" are intended to apply to both events delivered directly through `java.awt` and to events delivered in HAVi event classes. Events delivered in HAVi event classes include `HFocusEvents` with a keycode as the `transfer-id` as well as `HKeyEvents`. Hence if a keycode is exclusively reserved by a `UserEventListener`, or by another application through `EventManager.addExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent()`, this does block `HFocusEvents` being generated if that keycode would be the `transfer-id` of the `HFocusEvent`

## J.2 The resource management

An application asking for exclusive access to some events will use the resource framework defined in [DAVIC 1.4.1p9 \[3\]](#) so that it can be aware of the fact that it has lost access to the user events it asked for (see the example below).

## J.3 The Event Repository

The `UserEventRepository` is the class that is used by the application to define the user events it intends to use. For the moment user events are just key events but it is a place-holder for new families of events (voice command for example). If an application asks for an exclusive access to events by means of a repository, this exclusive access will be lost at the time when one of the event is grabbed by another application. User events that can be accessed by an application are defined in the `UserEvent` class.

### J.3.1 Example

exclusive access to events for a non-focused application

```
import org.davic.resources.ResourceClient.* ;
import org.dvb.event.* ;
class Example implements UserEventListener, ResourceStatusListener, ResourceClient {
    private int myStatus ;
    public Example () {
        EventManager em ;
        UserEventRepository repository ;
        em = EventManager.getInstance () ;
        repository = new UserEventRepository ("R1") ;
        repository.addKey (UserEvent.VK_ENTER) ;
        em.addUserListener ((UserEventListener)this, (ResourceClient)this, repository) ;
        em.addResourceStatusEventListener (this) ;
    }
    /**
     * methods defined by the UserEventListener interface.
     */
    public void UserEventReceived (UserEvent e) {
    }
    /**
     * Methods defined by the ResourceClient interface.
     */
    /**
     * In the case a cooperative application asks for an user event
     * exclusively used by me.
     */
    public boolean requestRelease(ResourceProxy proxy, Object requestData) {
        String name ;
        // let's retrieve the name of the repository, that I have created, and
        // which contains the user event that the other application asks for.
        name = (RepositoryDescriptor)proxy.getName () ;
```

```
    if ((name.compareTo ("R1") == 0) & (myStatus == ...)) {
        // Ok I release this event.
        return true ;
    } else {
        // No I need this event, sorry !
        return false ;
    }
}
}
public void release (ResourceProxy proxy) {
    ...
}
public void notifyRelease (ResourceProxy proxy) {
    ...
}
public void statusChanged (ResourceStatusEvent event) {
    ...
}
}
```

## J.4 Unicode

References to "Unicode" in the following API description shall be interpreted as references to [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#).

## J.5 Virtual keyboards

On platforms where key events are generated from a sequence of other (intermediate) key events, the intermediate key events shall not be visible to MHP applications by any mechanism. Examples of these intermediate key events include;

- For a virtual keyboard, the sequence of keys used to navigate around that keyboard (e.g. VK\_UP, VK\_LEFT, VK\_ENTER)
- For multi-key press entry (as used in some mobile phones), the keys pressed before the final value is resolved.

# Package org.dvb.event

## Description

Provides access to user input events before they are processed through the event mechanism of the java.awt package.

The algorithm used for generating UserEvents by the MHP terminal when reporting user input to MHP applications shall be the same as that used for java.awt.event.KeyEvent. For example, pressing the Shift key will cause a KEY\_PRESSED event with a VK\_SHIFT keyCode, while pressing the 'a' key will result in a VK\_A keyCode. After the 'a' key is released, a KEY\_RELEASED event will be fired with VK\_A, followed by a KEY\_TYPED event with a keyChar value of 'A'.

| Class Summary                          |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                      |  |
| <code>UserEventListener</code>         | The listener interface for receiving user inputs.  |
| <b>Classes</b>                         |  |
| <code>EventManager</code>              | The event manager allows an application to receive events coming from the user.  |
| <code>OverallRepository</code>         | This class defines a repository which initially contains all the user events which can be delivered to an application.   |
| <code>RepositoryDescriptor</code>      | An instance of this class will be sent to clients of the DVB event API to notify them (through the interface org.davic.resources.ResourceClient) when they are about to lose, or have lost, access to an event source. |
| <code>UserEvent</code>                 | Represents a user event.   |
| <code>UserEventAvailableEvent</code>   | This event is sent to the resource status event listeners when user input events which had been exclusively reserved by an application are no longer exclusively reserved.   |
| <code>UserEventRepository</code>       | The application will use this class to define the events that it wants to receive.   |
| <code>UserEventUnavailableEvent</code> | This event is sent to the resource status event listeners when user input events are exclusively reserved by an application.   |

# org.dvb.event EventManager

## Declaration

```
public class EventManager implements org.davic.resources.ResourceServer
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.event.EventManager
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
org.davic.resources.ResourceServer
```

## Description

The event manager allows an application to receive events coming from the user. These events can be sent exclusively to an application or can be shared between applications. The Event Manager allows also the application to ask for exclusive access to some events, these events being received either from the standard java.awt event mechanism or by the mechanism defined in this package. The EventManager is either a singleton for each MHP application or a singleton for the MHP terminal.

The right to receive events is considered as the same resource regardless of whether it is being handled exclusively or shared. An application successfully obtaining exclusive access to an event results in all other applications losing access to that event, whether the access of those applications was shared or exclusive.

## Constructors

---

### EventManager()

```
protected EventManager()
```

Constructor for instances of this class. This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### addExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent(ResourceClient, UserEventRepository)

```
public boolean addExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent(org.davic.resources.ResourceClient client,
org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository userEvents)
```

An application should use this method to express its intend to have exclusive access to some events, but for these events to be received through the java.awt mechanism. The events the application wishes to receive are defined by the means of the UserEventRepository class. This repository is resolved at the time when this method call is made and adding or removing events from the repository after this method call doesn't affect the subscription to those events. An exclusive event will be sent to the application if this latest is focused.

The effect of multiple calls to this method by the same application with different instances of `UserEventRepository` shall be cumulative. If multiple calls to this method succeed in acquiring the events in the specified repositories then the semantics of each successful method call shall be obeyed as specified.

**Parameters:**

`client` - resource client.

`userEvents` - the user events the application wants to be inform of.

**Returns:**

true if the events defined in the repository have been acquired, false otherwise.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the client argument is set to null.

**addResourceStatusEventListener(ResourceStatusListener)**

```
public void addResourceStatusEventListener(org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusListener
    listener)
```

Adds the specified resource status listener so that an application can be aware of any changes regarding exclusive access to some events.

**Specified By:**

`addResourceStatusEventListener` in interface `ResourceServer`

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the resource status listener.

**addUserEventListener(UserEventListener, ResourceClient, UserEventRepository)**

```
public boolean addUserEventListener(org.dvb.event.UserEventListener listener,
    org.davic.resources.ResourceClient client,
    org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository userEvents)
```

Adds the specified listener to receive events coming from the user in an exclusive manner. The events the application wishes to receive are defined by the means of the `UserEventRepository` class. This repository is resolved at the time when this method call is made and adding or removing events from the repository after this method call doesn't affect the subscription to those events. The `ResourceClient` parameter indicates that the application wants to have an exclusive access to the user event defined in the repository.

The effect of multiple calls to this method by the same application with different instances of `UserEventRepository` shall be cumulative. If multiple calls to this method succeed in acquiring the events in the specified repositories then the semantics of each successful method call shall be obeyed as specified. Note that this can result in applications receiving the same event through more than one event listener.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the listener to receive the user events.

`client` - resource client.

`userEvents` - a class which contains the user events it wants to be informed of.

**Returns:**

true if the events defined in the repository have been acquired, false otherwise.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the client argument is set to null.

---

**addUserEventListener(UserEventListener, UserEventRepository)**

```
public void addUserEventListener(org.dvb.event.UserEventListener listener,
    org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository userEvents)
```

Adds the specified listener to receive events coming from the user. The events the application wishes to receive are defined by the means of the UserEventRepository class. This repository is resolved at the time when this method call is made and adding or removing events from the repository after this method call doesn't affect the subscription to those events.

The effect of multiple calls to this method by the same application with different instances of UserEventRepository shall be cumulative. If multiple calls to this method succeed in acquiring the events in the specified repositories then the semantics of each successful method call shall be obeyed as specified. Note that this can result in applications receiving the same event through more than one event listener.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the listener to receive the user events.

`userEvents` - a class which contains the user events it wants to be informed of.

---

**getInstance()**

```
public static org.dvb.event.EventManager getInstance()
```

This method returns the sole instance of the EventManager class. The EventManager class is a singleton.

**Returns:**

the instance of the EventManager.

---

**removeExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent(ResourceClient)**

```
public void removeExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent(org.davic.resources.ResourceClient client)
```

The application should use this method to release its exclusive access to user events defined by the means of the addExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent method.

**Parameters:**

`client` - the client that is no longer interested in events previously registered.

---

**removeResourceStatusEventListener(ResourceStatusListener)**

```
public void removeResourceStatusEventListener(org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusListener
    listener)
```

Removes the specified resource status listener.

**Specified By:**

`removeResourceStatusEventListener` in interface `ResourceServer`

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the listener to remove.

---

**removeUserEventListener(UserEventListener)**

```
public void removeUserEventListener(org.dvb.event.UserEventListener listener)
```

Removes the specified listener so that it will no longer receives user events. If it is appropriate (i.e the application has asked for an exclusive access), the exclusive access is lost.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the user event listener.

# org.dvb.event OverallRepository

## Declaration

```
public class OverallRepository extends UserEventRepository
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.event.RepositoryDescriptor
|
+--org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository
|
+--org.dvb.event.OverallRepository
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
org.davic.resources.ResourceProxy
```

## Description

This class defines a repository which initially contains all the user events which can be delivered to an application. This includes all keycodes for which KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED events can be generated and all keychars for which KEY\_TYPED events can be generated. Note that the set of keycodes and keychars which can be generated is dependent on the input devices of the MHP terminal. For example, this pre-defined repository could be used by an application, which requires a pin code from the user, in order to prevent another applications from receiving events.

## See Also:

[UserEvent](#), [org.havi.ui.event.HKeyCapabilities](#)

## Constructors

---

### OverallRepository()

```
public OverallRepository()
```

The constructor for the repository. The name of the constructed instance (as returned by getName()) is implementation dependent.

---

### OverallRepository(String)

```
public OverallRepository(java.lang.String name)
```

The constructor for the repository with a name.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name to use for the repository

# org.dvb.event RepositoryDescriptor

## Declaration

```
public class RepositoryDescriptor implements org.davic.resources.ResourceProxy  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.event.RepositoryDescriptor
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

org.davic.resources.ResourceProxy

## Direct Known Subclasses:

UserEventRepository

## Description

An instance of this class will be sent to clients of the DVB event API to notify them (through the interface org.davic.resources.ResourceClient) when they are about to lose, or have lost, access to an event source. This object can be used by the application to get the name of the repository from which it will no longer be able to receive events.

## Methods

---

### getClient()

```
public org.davic.resources.ResourceClient getClient()
```

Return the object which asked to be notified about withdrawal of the event source. This is the object passed as the ResourceClient to whichever of the various 'add' methods on EventManager was used by the application to express interest in this repository.

#### Specified By:

getClient in interface ResourceProxy

#### Returns:

the object which asked to be notified about withdrawal of the event source. If the UserEventRepository has not yet been added to an EventManager then null shall be returned. Once the UserEventRepository has been added, the last used ResourceClient shall be returned even if the UserEventRepository has been since removed.

---

### getName()

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

Returns the name of the repository to which the lost, or about to be lost, user event belongs.

#### Returns:

String the name of the repository.



# org.dvb.event

# UserEvent

## Declaration

```
public class UserEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.event.UserEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Represents a user event. A user event is defined by a family, a type and either a code or a character. Unless stated otherwise, all constants used in the specification of this class are defined in `java.awt.event.KeyEvent` and its parent classes.

## Fields

---

### UEF\_KEY\_EVENT

```
public static final int UEF_KEY_EVENT
```

the family for events that are coming from the remote control or from the keyboard.

## Constructors

---

### UserEvent(Object, int, char, long)

```
public UserEvent(java.lang.Object source, int family, char keyChar, long when)
```

Constructor for a new `UserEvent` object representing a key being typed. This is the combination of a key being pressed and then being released. The type of `UserEvents` created with this constructor shall be `KEY_TYPED`. Key combinations which do not result in characters, such as keys like the red key on a remote control, shall not generate `KEY_TYPED` events. `KEY_TYPED` events shall have no modifiers and hence shall not report any modifiers as being down.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the `EventManager` which is the source of the event

`family` - the event family.

`keyChar` - the character typed

`when` - a long integer that specifies the time the event occurred

#### Since:

MHP 1.0.1

---

**UserEvent(Object, int, int, int, int, long)**

```
public UserEvent(java.lang.Object source, int family, int type, int code, int modifiers,  
                 long when)
```

Constructor for a new UserEvent object representing a key being pressed.

**Parameters:**

`source` - the `EventManager` which is the source of the event

`family` - the event family.

`type` - the event type. Either one of `KEY_PRESSED` or `KEY_RELEASED`.

`code` - the event code. One of the constants whose name begins in "VK\_" defined in `java.awt.event.KeyEvent` or `org.havi.ui.event.HRcEvent`.

`modifiers` - the modifiers active when the key was pressed. These have the same semantics as modifiers in `java.awt.event.KeyEvent`.

`when` - a long integer that specifies the time the event occurred

## Methods

---

**getCode()**

```
public int getCode()
```

Returns the event code. For `KEY_TYPED` events, the code is `VK_UNDEFINED`.

**Returns:**

an int representing the event code.

---

**getFamily()**

```
public int getFamily()
```

Returns the event family. Could be `UEF_KEY_EVENT`.

**Returns:**

an int representing the event family.

---

**getKeyChar()**

```
public char getKeyChar()
```

Returns the character associated with the key in this event. If no valid Unicode character exists for this key event, `keyChar` is `CHAR_UNDEFINED`.

**Returns:**

a character

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**getModifiers()**

```
public int getModifiers()
```

Returns the modifiers flag for this event. This method shall return 0 for `UserEvents` constructed using a constructor which does not include an input parameter specifying the modifiers.

**Returns:**

the modifiers flag for this event

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**getType()**

```
public int getType()
```

Returns the event type. Could be KEY\_PRESSED, KEY\_RELEASED or KEY\_TYPED.

**Returns:**

an int representing the event type.

---

**getWhen()**

```
public long getWhen()
```

Returns the timestamp of when this event occurred.

**Returns:**

a long

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.2

---

**isAltDown()**

```
public boolean isAltDown()
```

Returns whether or not the Alt modifier is down on this event. This method shall return false for UserEvents constructed using a constructor which does not include an input parameter specifying the modifiers.

**Returns:**

whether the Alt modifier is down on this event

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**isControlDown()**

```
public boolean isControlDown()
```

Returns whether or not the Control modifier is down on this event. This method shall return false for UserEvents constructed using a constructor which does not include an input parameter specifying the modifiers.

**Returns:**

whether the Control modifier is down on this event

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**isMetaDown()**

```
public boolean isMetaDown()
```

Returns whether or not the Meta modifier is down on this event. This method shall return false for UserEvents constructed using a constructor which does not include an input parameter specifying the modifiers.

**Returns:**

whether the Meta modifier is down on this event

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**isShiftDown()**

```
public boolean isShiftDown()
```

Returns whether or not the Shift modifier is down on this event. This method shall return false for UserEvents constructed using a constructor which does not include an input parameter specifying the modifiers.

**Returns:**

whether the Shift modifier is down on this event

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

# org.dvb.event

## UserEventAvailableEvent

### Declaration

```
public class UserEventAvailableEvent extends org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
|
+--org.dvb.event.UserEventAvailableEvent
```

### All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

### Description

This event is sent to the resource status event listeners when user input events which had been exclusively reserved by an application are no longer exclusively reserved. Where one change in user input event reservation results in instances of this event being sent to several applications, the following shall apply.

- Each application shall receive its own instance of the `UserEventRepository` object which forms the source to this event. Any changes made to that repository by any one application shall not impact the instance seen by any other application.
- Any application receiving an instance of this event is allowed to attempt to to exclusively reserve some of the newly available user events. In this situation, the normal resource management policy of the platform as described elsewhere in this specification shall be obeyed.
- Any applications which have registered for shared access to any of these user events shall start receiving those events following receipt of this event.

### Since:

MHP 1.0.2

## Constructors

---

### UserEventAvailableEvent(Object)

```
public UserEventAvailableEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor for the event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - a `UserEventRepository` which contains the events which stopped being exclusively reserved.

#### Since:

MHP 1.0.2

## Methods

---

### **getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns a `UserEventRepository` which contains the events which were formerly exclusively reserved as passed into the constructor of the instance.

**Overrides:**

`getSource` in class `ResourceStatusEvent`

**Returns:**

a `UserEventRepository`

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.2

# org.dvb.event UserEventListener

## Declaration

```
public interface UserEventListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

The listener interface for receiving user inputs.

## Methods

---

### **userEventReceived(UserEvent)**

```
public void userEventReceived(org.dvb.event.UserEvent e)
```

Called by the platform when a user input is received.

#### **Parameters:**

e - the user input event which was received

# org.dvb.event UserEventRepository

## Declaration

public class **UserEventRepository** extends [RepositoryDescriptor](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.event.RepositoryDescriptor
|
+--org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

[org.davic.resources.ResourceProxy](#)

## Direct Known Subclasses:

[OverallRepository](#)

## Description

The application will use this class to define the events that it wants to receive. Events that are able to be put in the repository are defined in the `UserEvent` class.

Where a repository includes a `KEY_PRESSED` type event without the `KEY_RELEASED` type event for the same key code or vice versa then exclusive reservations shall be made for both event types but only the one requested shall be received by the listener. Where a repository includes a `KEY_TYPED` event without the corresponding `KEY_PRESSED` and `KEY_RELEASED` events (excluding `KEY_PRESSED` or `KEY_RELEASED` events for modifiers), when an exclusive reservation is requested, it shall also be made for those corresponding `KEY_PRESSED` and `KEY_RELEASED` events but only the requested event shall be received by the listener.

Repositories do not keep a count of the number of times a particular user event is added or removed. Repeatedly adding an event to a repository has no effect. Removing an event removes it regardless of the number of times it has been added. For example, `org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository.addUserEvent(UserEvent event)` does nothing in case that the event is already in the repository. Events are considered to be already in the repository if an event with the same triplet of family, type and code is already in the repository.

If an application loses exclusive access to a repository, it shall lose access to all events defined in that repository. Repositories are resolved when they are passed into the methods of `EventManager`. Adding or removing events from the repository after those method calls does not affect the subscription to those events.

Unless stated otherwise, all constants used in the specification of this class are defined in `java.awt.event.KeyEvent` and its parent classes and not in this class.

## See Also:

[UserEvent](#)

## Constructors

---

### UserEventRepository(String)

```
public UserEventRepository(java.lang.String name)
```

The method to construct a new `UserEventRepository`.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name of the repository.



## Methods

---

### addAllArrowKeys()

```
public void addAllArrowKeys()
```

Adds the key codes for the arrow keys (VK\_LEFT, VK\_RIGHT, VK\_UP, VK\_DOWN). Any key codes already in the repository will not be added again. After calling this method, the keycodes shall be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

---

### addAllColourKeys()

```
public void addAllColourKeys()
```

Adds the key codes for the colour keys (VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_0, VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_1, VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_2, VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_3). Any key codes already in the repository will not be added again. After calling this method, the keycodes shall be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

---

### addAllNumericKeys()

```
public void addAllNumericKeys()
```

Adds the key codes for the numeric keys (VK\_0, VK\_1, VK\_2, VK\_3, VK\_4, VK\_5, VK\_6, VK\_7, VK\_8, VK\_9). Any key codes already in the repository will not be added again. After calling this method, the keycodes shall be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

---

### addKey(int)

```
public void addKey(int keycode)
```

Adds the specified keycode to the repository. Keycodes added in this way shall be listed in the list of user events returned by the `getUserEvent` method. If a key is already in the repository, this method has no effect. After calling this method, the keycode shall be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

**Parameters:**

keycode - the key code.

---

### addUserEvent(UserEvent)

```
public void addUserEvent(org.dvb.event.UserEvent event)
```

Adds the given user event to the repository. The values of the modifiers (if any) in the `UserEvent` shall be ignored by the MHP terminal. The value of the source used to construct the specified `UserEvent` shall be ignored by the MHP terminal when the `UserEventRepository` is used to specify events which an application wants to receive.

**Parameters:**

event - the user event to be added in the repository.

---

**getUserEvent()**

```
public org.dvb.event.UserEvent[] getUserEvent()
```

Returns the list of the user events that are in the repository.

**Returns:**

an array which contains the user events that are in the repository.

---

**removeAllArrowKeys()**

```
public void removeAllArrowKeys()
```

Removes the key codes for the arrow keys (VK\_LEFT, VK\_RIGHT, VK\_UP, VK\_DOWN). Key codes from this set which are not present in the repository will be ignored. After calling this method, the keycodes shall not be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

---

**removeAllColourKeys()**

```
public void removeAllColourKeys()
```

Removes the key codes for the colour keys (VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_0, VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_1, VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_2, VK\_COLORED\_KEY\_3). Key codes from this set which are not present in the repository will be ignored. After calling this method, the keycodes shall not be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

---

**removeAllNumericKeys()**

```
public void removeAllNumericKeys()
```

Remove the key codes for the numeric keys (VK\_0, VK\_1, VK\_2, VK\_3, VK\_4, VK\_5, VK\_6, VK\_7, VK\_8, VK\_9). Key codes from this set which are not present in the repository will be ignored. After calling this method, the keycodes shall not be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

---

**removeKey(int)**

```
public void removeKey(int keycode)
```

The method to remove a key from the repository. Removing a key which is not in the repository has no effect. After calling this method, the keycode shall not be present for both the KEY\_PRESSED and KEY\_RELEASED modes.

**Parameters:**

keycode - the key code.

---

**removeUserEvent(UserEvent)**

```
public void removeUserEvent(org.dvb.event.UserEvent event)
```

Remove a user event from the repository. Removing a user event which is not in the repository shall have no effect.

**Parameters:**

event - the event to be removed from the repository.

---

org.dvb.event

# UserEventUnavailableEvent

## Declaration

```
public class UserEventUnavailableEvent extends org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
|
+--org.dvb.event.UserEventUnavailableEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent to the resource status event listeners when user input events are exclusively reserved by an application.

Each application shall receive its own instance of the `UserEventRepository` object which forms the source to this event. Any changes made to that repository by any one application shall not impact the instance seen by any other application.

Any applications which have registered for shared access to any of these user events shall stop receiving those user events following receipt of this event. If such user events become available again, a `UserEventAvailableEvent` shall be generated by the platform before any more of those user events are received by applications.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.2

## Constructors

---

### UserEventUnavailableEvent(Object)

```
public UserEventUnavailableEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor for the event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - a `UserEventRepository` which contains the events which were exclusively reserved.

#### Since:

MHP 1.0.2

## Methods

---

### **getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns a `UserEventRepository` which contains the events which were exclusively reserved as passed into the constructor of the instance.

**Overrides:**

`getSource` in class `ResourceStatusEvent`

**Returns:**

a `UserEventRepository`

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.2

---

## **Annex K (normative): DVB-J persistent storage API**

# Package org.dvb.io.persistent

## Description

Provides extensions to the java.io package for access to files held in persistent storage.

### Class Summary

#### Classes

|                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| <code>FileAccessPermissions</code> | This class encapsulates file access permissions, world, Organisation and owner. |
| <code>FileAttributes</code>        | This class encapsulates the attributes of a file stored in persistent storage.  |

# org.dvb.io.persistent FileAccessPermissions

## Declaration

```
public class FileAccessPermissions

java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions
```

## Description

This class encapsulates file access permissions, world, Organisation and owner. World means all applications authorised to access persistent storage. Owner means the application which created the file. Organisation is defined as applications with the same organisation id as defined elsewhere in this specification.

## Constructors

---

### FileAccessPermissions(boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean)

```
public FileAccessPermissions(boolean readWorldAccessRight, boolean writeWorldAccessRight,
    boolean readOrganisationAccessRight, boolean writeOrganisationAccessRight,
    boolean readApplicationAccessRight, boolean writeApplicationAccessRight)
```

This constructor encodes all the file access permissions as a set of booleans.

#### Parameters:

`readWorldAccessRight` - read access for all applications  
`writeWorldAccessRight` - write access for all applications  
`readOrganisationAccessRight` - read access for organisation  
`writeOrganisationAccessRight` - write access for organisation  
`readApplicationAccessRight` - read access for the owner  
`writeApplicationAccessRight` - write access for the owner

## Methods

---

### hasReadApplicationAccessRight()

```
public boolean hasReadApplicationAccessRight()
```

Query whether this permission includes read access for the owning application

#### Returns:

true if the owning application can have read access, otherwise false.

---

### hasReadOrganisationAccessRight()

```
public boolean hasReadOrganisationAccessRight()
```

Query whether this permission includes read access for the organisation

**Returns:**

true if applications in this organisation can have read access, otherwise false.

---

**hasReadWorldAccessRight()**

```
public boolean hasReadWorldAccessRight()
```

Query whether this permission includes read access for the world.

**Returns:**

true if all applications can have read access, otherwise false.

---

**hasWriteApplicationAccessRight()**

```
public boolean hasWriteApplicationAccessRight()
```

Query whether this permission includes write access for the owning application

**Returns:**

true if the owning application can have write access, otherwise false.

---

**hasWriteOrganisationAccessRight()**

```
public boolean hasWriteOrganisationAccessRight()
```

Query whether this permission includes write access for the organisation

**Returns:**

true if applications in this organisation can have read access, otherwise false.

---

**hasWriteWorldAccessRight()**

```
public boolean hasWriteWorldAccessRight()
```

Query whether this permission includes write access for the world.

**Returns:**

true if all applications can have write access, otherwise false.

---

**setPermissions(boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean)**

```
public void setPermissions(boolean ReadWorldAccessRight, boolean WriteWorldAccessRight,  
    boolean ReadOrganisationAccessRight, boolean WriteOrganisationAccessRight,  
    boolean ReadApplicationAccessRight, boolean WriteApplicationAccessRight)
```

This method allows to modify the permissions on this instance of the FileAccessPermission class.

**Parameters:**

ReadWorldAccessRight - read access for all applications

WriteWorldAccessRight - write access for all applications

ReadOrganisationAccessRight - read access for organisation

WriteOrganisationAccessRight - write access for organisation

ReadApplicationAccessRight - read access for the owner

WriteApplicationAccessRight - write access for the owner



# org.dvb.io.persistent FileAttributes

## Declaration

```
public class FileAttributes  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes
```

## Description

This class encapsulates the attributes of a file stored in persistent storage. The default attributes for a file are low priority, owner read / write only permissions and null expiration date.

## Fields

---

### PRIORITY\_HIGH

```
public static final int PRIORITY_HIGH  
Value for use as a file priority.
```

---

### PRIORITY\_LOW

```
public static final int PRIORITY_LOW  
Value for use as a file priority.
```

---

### PRIORITY\_MEDIUM

```
public static final int PRIORITY_MEDIUM  
Value for use as a file priority.
```

## Methods

---

### getExpirationDate()

```
public java.util.Date getExpirationDate()
```

Returns the expiration date. It will return the value used by the platform, which need not be the same as the value set.

**Returns:**

the expiration date

---

**getFileAttributes(File)**

```
public static org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes getFileAttributes(java.io.File f)
    throws IOException
```

Get the attributes of a file.

**Parameters:**

f - the file to use

**Returns:**

a copy of the attributes of a file

**Throws:**

[java.lang.SecurityException](#) - if the application is denied access to the file or to directories needed to reach the file by security policy

[java.io.IOException](#) - if access to the file fails due to an IO error or if the file reference is not to a valid location in persistent storage

---

**getPermissions()**

```
public org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions getPermissions()
```

Returns the file access permissions

**Returns:**

the file access permissions

---

**getPriority()**

```
public int getPriority()
```

Returns the priority to use in persistent storage

**Returns:**

the priority

---

**setExpirationDate(Date)**

```
public void setExpirationDate(java.util.Date d)
```

Sets the expiration date. This field is a hint to the platform to identify the date after which a file is no longer useful as perceived by the application. The platform may choose to use a different date than the one given as a parameter.

**Parameters:**

d - the expiration date

---

**setFileAttributes(FileAttributes, File)**

```
public static void setFileAttributes(org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes p,
    java.io.File f)
    throws IOException
```

Associate a set of file attributes with a file.

**Parameters:**

p - the file attributes to use

f - the file to use

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is either denied access to the file or directories needed to reach the file by security policy or is not authorised to modify the attributes of the file.

`java.io.IOException` - if access to the file fails due to an IO error or if the file reference is not to a valid location in persistent storage

---

**setPermissions(FileAccessPermissions)**

```
public void setPermissions(org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions p)
```

Sets the file access permissions.

**Parameters:**

`p` - the file access permissions

---

**setPriority(int)**

```
public void setPriority(int priority)
```

Sets the priority to use in persistent storage

**Parameters:**

`priority` - the priority to set

---

## **Annex L (normative): User Settings and Preferences API**

# Package org.dvb.user

## Description

Provides access to settings and preferences configured by the end-user.

| Class Summary                               |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                           |   |
| <code>UserPreferenceChangeListener</code>   | An application wishing to be informed of any change to a user preference implements this interface. |
| <b>Classes</b>                              |   |
| <code>Facility</code>                       | A facility maps a preference's name to a single value or to an array of values.                     |
| <code>GeneralPreference</code>              | This class defines a set of general preferences.  |
| <code>Preference</code>                     | This abstract class defines the Preference object.  |
| <code>UserPreferenceChangeEvent</code>      | This class defines the event sent to appropriate listeners when a user preference has been changed. |
| <code>UserPreferenceManager</code>          | The UserPreferenceManager class gives access to the user preference settings.                       |
| <code>UserPreferencePermission</code>       | This class is for user preference and setting permissions.  |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                           |   |
| <code>UnsupportedPreferenceException</code> | Thrown when a non-supported preference is used.   |

# org.dvb.user Facility

## Declaration

```
public class Facility
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.user.Facility
```

## Description

A facility maps a preference's name to a single value or to an array of values. A facility enables an application to define the list of values supported for a specified preference. For example, if an application is available in English or French then it can create a Facility ("User Language", {"English", "French"}). When the application will retrieve the "User Language" from the general preference it will specify the associated facility in order to get a Preference which will contain a set a values compatible with those supported by the application.

## Constructors

---

### Facility(String, String)

```
public Facility(java.lang.String preference, java.lang.String value)
```

Creates a Facility with a single value. This facility can be used by an application to retrieve a preference compatible with its capabilities.

**Parameters:**

`preference` - a String representing the name of the preference.

`value` - a String representing the value of the preference.

---

### Facility(String, String[])

```
public Facility(java.lang.String preference, java.lang.String[] values)
```

Creates a Facility with a set of values. This facility can be used by an application to retrieve a preference compatible with its capabilities.

**Parameters:**

`preference` - a String representing the name of the preference.

`values` - an array of String representing the set of values.

# org.dvb.user

# GeneralPreference

## Declaration

```
public final class GeneralPreference extends Preference
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.user.Preference
|
+--org.dvb.user.GeneralPreference
```

## Description

This class defines a set of general preferences. These preferences are read from the receiver and each application (downloaded or not) can access them through the `UserPreferenceManager.read` method. The standardized preferences are “User Language”, “Parental Rating”, “User Name”, “User Address”, “User @”, “Country Code”, “Default Font Size”.

When constructed, objects of this class are empty and have no values defined. Values may be added using the add methods inherited from the Preference class or by calling `UserPreferenceManager.read`.

The encodings of these standardized preferences are as follows.

- User Language: 3 letter ISO 639 language codes;
- Parental Rating: string using the same encoding as returned by `javax.tv.service.guide.ContentRatingAdvisory.getDisplayText`;
- User Name: Name of the user. This shall be in an order that is appropriate for presentation directly to the user, e.g. in Western Europe, listing the first name first and the family name last is recommended as being culturally appropriate in many locales.
- User Address: postal address of the user, may contain multiple lines separated by carriage return characters (as defined in table D-4).
- User @: e-mail address of the user in the SMTP form as defined in RFC821;
- Country Code: two letter ISO 3166-1 country code;
- Default Font Size: preferred font size for normal body text expressed in points, decimal integer value encoded as a string (26 is the default; differing size indicates a preference of different font size than usual)

The preference names are treated as case-insensitive. The preference names shall be considered equal at least when the method `java.lang.String.equalsIgnoreCase()` returns true for the strings when the locale “EN.UK” is used.

Depending on the locale used in the implementation, implementations are allowed to consider equal also other upper and lower case character pairs in addition to those defined by the “EN.UK” locale.

The standardized preference names in this specification shall only use such letters where the upper and lower case characters are recognized by the “EN.UK” locale.

## Constructors

### GeneralPreference(String)

```
public GeneralPreference(java.lang.String name)
    throws IllegalArgumentException
```

Constructs a GeneralPreference object. A general preference maps a preference name to a list of strings.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the general preference name.

#### Throws:

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the preference’s name is not supported.

# org.dvb.user Preference

## Declaration

```
public abstract class Preference
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.user.Preference
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

[GeneralPreference](#)

## Description

This abstract class defines the Preference object. A Preference maps a name to a list of favourite values. The first element in the list is the favourite value for this preference.

The preference names are treated as case-insensitive. The preference names shall be considered equal at least when the method `java.lang.String.equalsIgnoreCase()` returns true for the strings when the locale "EN.UK" is used. Depending on the locale used in the implementation, implementations are allowed to consider equal also other upper and lower case character pairs in addition to those defined by the "EN.UK" locale.

The standardized preference names in this specification shall only use such letters where the upper and lower case characters are recognized by the "EN.UK" locale.

## Constructors

---

### Preference()

```
protected Preference()
```

This protected constructor is only present to enable sub-classes of this one to be defined by the platform. It is not intended to be used by inter-operable applications.

---

### Preference(String, String)

```
public Preference(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String value)
```

Creates a new preference with the specified name and the specified value. This single value will be the favourite one for this preference.

#### Parameters:

`name` - a String object representing the name of the preference.

`value` - a String object representing the value of the preference.

---

### Preference(String, String[])

```
public Preference(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String[] value)
```

Creates a new preference with the specified name and the specified value set.

#### Parameters:

`name` - a String object representing the name of the preference.

`value` - an array of String objects representing the set of values for this preference ordered from the most favourite to the least favourite.



## Methods

---

### **add(int, String)**

```
public void add(int position, java.lang.String value)
```

Adds a new value for this preference. The value is inserted at the specified position. If the value is already in the list then it is moved to the position specified. If the position is greater than the length of the list, then the value is added to the end of this list. If the position is negative, then the value is added to the beginning of this list.

**Parameters:**

- `position` - an int representing the position in the list.
  - `value` - a String representing the new value to insert.
- 

### **add(String)**

```
public void add(java.lang.String value)
```

Adds a new value for this preference. The value is added to the end of the list. If the value is already in the list then it is moved to the end of the list.

**Parameters:**

- `value` - a String object representing the new value.
- 

### **add(String[])**

```
public void add(java.lang.String[] values)
```

Adds several new values for this preferences. The values are added to the end of the list in the same order as they are found in the array passed to this method. Any values already in the list are moved to the position in the list which they would have if they were not already present.

**Parameters:**

- `values` - an array of strings representing the values to add

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

### **getFavourites()**

```
public java.lang.String[] getFavourites()
```

Returns the list of favourite values for this preference. Returns an empty array if no value sets are defined for this preference.

**Returns:**

- an array of String representing the favourite values for this preference.
- 

### **getMostFavourite()**

```
public java.lang.String getMostFavourite()
```

Returns the most favourite value for this preference, that is, the first element of the list.

**Returns:**

- a String representing the favourite values Returns null if no value is defined for this preference.

---

**getName()**

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

Returns the name of the preference.

**Returns:**

a String object representing the name of the preference.

---

**getPosition(String)**

```
public int getPosition(java.lang.String value)
```

Returns the position in the list of the specified value.

**Parameters:**

`value` - a String representing the value to look for.

**Returns:**

an integer representing the position of the value in the list counting from zero. If the value is not found then it returns -1.

---

**hasValue()**

```
public boolean hasValue()
```

Tests if this preference has at least one value set.

**Returns:**

true if this preference has at least one value set, false otherwise.

---

**remove(String)**

```
public void remove(java.lang.String value)
```

Removes the specified value from the list of favourites. If the value is not in the list then the method call has no effect.

**Parameters:**

`value` - a String representing the value to remove.

---

**removeAll()**

```
public void removeAll()
```

Removes all the values of a preference

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**setMostFavourite(String)**

```
public void setMostFavourite(java.lang.String value)
```

Sets the most favourite value for this preference. If the value is already in the list, then it is moved to the head. If the value is not already in the list then it is added at the head.

**Parameters:**

`value` - the most favourite value

---

---

**toString()**

```
public java.lang.String toString()
```

Convert name and favourites to a String.

**Overrides:**

toString in class Object

**Returns:**

the preference name and favourites

org.dvb.user

# UnsupportedPreferenceException

## Declaration

```
public class UnsupportedPreferenceException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.user.UnsupportedPreferenceException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown when a non-supported preference is used.

## Constructors

---

### UnsupportedPreferenceException()

```
public UnsupportedPreferenceException()
```

Constructs a `UnsupportedPreferenceException` with no detail message.

---

### UnsupportedPreferenceException(String)

```
public UnsupportedPreferenceException(java.lang.String a)
```

Constructs a `UnsupportedPreferenceException` with a detail message.

#### Parameters:

a - the detail message

org.dvb.user

# UserPreferenceChangeEvent

## Declaration

```
public class UserPreferenceChangeEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class defines the event sent to appropriate listeners when a user preference has been changed.

## Constructors

---

### UserPreferenceChangeEvent(String)

```
public UserPreferenceChangeEvent(java.lang.String preferenceName)
```

Constructs a new event.

#### Parameters:

preferenceName - the name of the modified preference.

## Methods

---

### getName()

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

Returns the name of the modified Preference

#### Returns:

the Preference name.

org.dvb.user

# UserPreferenceChangeListener

## Declaration

```
public interface UserPreferenceChangeListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

An application wishing to be informed of any change to a user preference implements this interface.

## Methods

---

### receiveUserPreferenceChangeEvent(UserPreferenceChangeEvent)

```
public void receiveUserPreferenceChangeEvent(org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeEvent e)
```

This method is called when a user preference changes.

#### Parameters:

e - the event notifying this event.

# org.dvb.user UserPreferenceManager

## Declaration

```
public class UserPreferenceManager
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager
```

## Description

The `UserPreferenceManager` class gives access to the user preference settings. This class provides a set of methods that allow an application to read or save user settings. It also provides a mechanism to notify applications when a preference has been modified. The value of a user setting, retrieved with the `read` method, is a copy of the value that is stored in the receiver. The `write` method, if authorized, overwrites the stored value.

When end-user preferences are read into a `Preference` object from the MHP terminal, the ordering of these values shall be as determined by the end-user, from most preferred to least preferred to the extent that this is known.

NOTE: MHP implementations are not required to validate the values in `Preference` objects, even those which are saved using the `write` method. Applications with write permissions need to be very careful that the values written are valid. Applications reading permissions need to be aware of the possibility that a previous application has set an invalid value.

## Methods

---

### **addUserPreferenceChangeListener**(`UserPreferenceChangeListener`)

```
public void addUserPreferenceChangeListener(org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeListener l)
```

Adds a listener for changes in user preferences.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener to add.

---

### **getInstance**()

```
public static org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager getInstance()
```

Return an instance of the `UserPreferenceManager` for this application. Repeated calls to this method by the same application shall return the same instance.

**Returns:**

an instance of `UserPreferenceManager`

---

### **read**(`Preference`)

```
public void read(org.dvb.user.Preference p)
```

Allows an application to read a specified user preference.

**Parameters:**

p - an object representing the preference to read.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the calling application is denied access to this preference

---

**read(Preference, Facility)**

```
public void read(org.dvb.user.Preference p, org.dvb.user.Facility facility)
```

Allows an application to read a specified user preference taking into account the facility defined by the application. After this method returns, the values in the `Preference` object shall be the values of that user preference with any unsupported values from the `Facility` removed from that list. Note that the order of values returned here need not be the same as that returned by `read(Preference)`.

If the intersection between the two sets of values is empty then the preference will have no value. If there is a mis-match between the name of the preference used when constructing the facility and the name of the preference used in this method then the preference will have no value.

**Parameters:**

`p` - an object representing the preference to read.

`facility` - the preferred values the application for the preference

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the calling application is denied access to this preference

---

**removeUserPreferenceChangeListener(UserPreferenceChangeListener)**

```
public void removeUserPreferenceChangeListener(org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeListener l)
```

Removes a listener for changes in user preferences.

**Parameters:**

`l` - the listener to remove.

---

**write(Preference)**

```
public void write(org.dvb.user.Preference p)
    throws UnsupportedOperationException, IOException
```

Saves the specified user preference. If this method succeeds then it will change the value of this preference for all future MHP applications.

**Parameters:**

`p` - the preference to save.

**Throws:**

`UnsupportedOperationException` - if the preference provided is not a standardized preference as defined for use with `GeneralPreference`.

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application does not have permission to call this method

`java.io.IOException` - if saving the preference fails for other I/O reasons



# org.dvb.user UserPreferencePermission

## Declaration

```
public class UserPreferencePermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.security.Permission
|
+--java.security.BasicPermission
|
+--org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class is for user preference and setting permissions. A `UserPreferencePermission` contains a name, but no actions list.

The permission name can either be “read” or “write”. The “read” permission allows an application to read the user preferences and settings (using `UserPreferenceManager.read`) for which read access is not always granted. Access to the following settings/preferences is always granted: “User Language”, “Parental Rating”, “Default Font Size” and “Country Code”

The “write” permission allows an application to modify user preferences and settings (using `UserPreferenceManager.write`).

## Constructors

---

### **UserPreferencePermission(String)**

```
public UserPreferencePermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new `UserPreferencePermission` with the specified name. The name is the symbolic name of the `UserPreferencePermission`.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name of the `UserPreferencePermission`

---

### **UserPreferencePermission(String, String)**

```
public UserPreferencePermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new `UserPreferencePermission` object with the specified name. The name is the symbolic name of the `UserPreferencePermission`, and the actions `String` is unused and should be null. This constructor exists for use by the Policy object to instantiate new `Permission` objects.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name of the `UserPreferencePermission`

`actions` - should be null.

---

## **Annex M (normative): SI Access API**

### **M.1 Unicode**

References to "Unicode" in the following API description shall be interpreted as references to [ISO 10646-1 \[18\]](#).

# Package org.dvb.si

## Description

Provides access to DVB service information.

## General Design

Many of the methods in this package use a common design template. Asynchronous method calls to retrieve data from the network all return an instance of the `SIRequest` class. Applications may use this to inquire about or terminate the retrieval operation. When the retrieval operation completes, an instance of a subclass of `SIRetrievalEvent` will be sent to the `SIRetrievalListener` which the application passed in as a parameter to the original method call to retrieve data from the network. When constructing these events, the platform shall provide as the request parameter to the event constructor, the same instance of the `SIRequest` class as was returned by the original method call which started the retrieval operation. This `SIRequest` instance shall be returned by the `getSource` method on such events.

| Class Summary                     |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                 |  |
| <code>DescriptorTag</code>        | This interface defines constants corresponding to the most common descriptor tags.   |
| <code>PMTElementaryStream</code>  | This interface represents an elementary stream of a service.   |
| <code>PMTService</code>           | This interface represents a particular service carried by a transport stream.  |
| <code>PMTStreamType</code>        | This interface defines the constants corresponding to the different stream types   |
| <code>SIBouquet</code>            | This interface (together with the <code>SITransportStreamBAT</code> interface) represents a sub-table of the Bouquet Association Table (BAT) describing a particular bouquet.  |
| <code>SIEvent</code>              | This interface represents a particular event within a service.   |
| <code>SIInformation</code>        | This interface groups the common features of <code>SIBouquet</code> , <code>SINetwork</code> , <code>SITransportStream</code> , <code>SIService</code> , <code>PMTService</code> , <code>SIEvent</code> , <code>SITime</code> and <code>PMTElementaryStream</code> . |
| <code>SIIterator</code>           | Objects implementing <code>SIIterator</code> interface allow to browse through a set of SI objects.  |
| <code>SIMonitoringListener</code> | This interface shall be implemented by using application classes in order to listen to changes in monitored SI objects.  |
| <code>SIMonitoringType</code>     | This interface defines the constants corresponding to the SI information type values in <code>SIMonitoringEvent</code> .   |
| <code>SINetwork</code>            | This interface (together with the <code>SITransportStreamNIT</code> interface) represents a sub-table of the Network Information Table (NIT) describing a particular network.  |
| <code>SIRetrievalListener</code>  | This interface shall be implemented by application classes in order to receive events about completion of SI requests.   |
| <code>SIRunningStatus</code>      | This interface defines the constants corresponding to the running status values for services and events.   |
| <code>SIService</code>            | This interface represents a particular service carried by a transport stream.  |

| <b>Class Summary</b>                       |   |
|--|---|
| <code>SIServiceType</code>                 | This interface defines constants corresponding to the different service types.  |
| <code>SITime</code>                        | This interface represents the Time and Date Table (TDT) and the (optional) Time Offset Table (TOT).   |
| <code>SITransportStream</code>             | This interface is the base interface for representing information about transport streams.  |
| <code>SITransportStreamBAT</code>          | This interface represents information about transport streams that has been retrieved from a BAT table.   |
| <code>SITransportStreamDescription</code>  | This interface represents the Transport Stream Description Table (TSDT).  |
| <code>SITransportStreamNIT</code>          | This interface represents information about transport streams that has been retrieved from a NIT table.   |
| <code>TextualServiceIdentifierQuery</code> | An interface that can be implemented by objects representing DVB services.  |
| <b>Classes</b>                             |   |
| <code>Descriptor</code>                    | This class represents a descriptor within a sub-table.  |
| <code>SIDatabase</code>                    | This class represents the root of the SI information hierarchy.   |
| <code>SILackOfResourcesEvent</code>        | This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the resources needed for retrieving the data are not available, e.g.  |
| <code>SIMonitoringEvent</code>             | Objects of this class are sent to listener objects of the using application to notify that a change in the monitored information has happened.  |
| <code>SINotInCacheEvent</code>             | This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the request was made with the FROM_CACHE_ONLY mode and the requested data is not present in the cache.  |
| <code>SIOBJECTNotInTableEvent</code>       | This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the SI table where the information about the requested object should be located has been retrieved but the requested object is not present in it.               |
| <code>SIRequest</code>                     | Object instances of this class represent SI retrieval requests made by the application.   |
| <code>SIRequestCancelledEvent</code>       | This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the request is cancelled with the SIRequest.cancelRequest method call.  |
| <code>SIRetrievalEvent</code>              | This class is the base class for events about completion of a SI retrieval request.   |
| <code>SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent</code>     | This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the retrieve request was successfully completed.  |
| <code>SITableNotFoundEvent</code>          | This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the SI table that should contain the requested information could not be retrieved.  |
| <code>SITableUpdatedEvent</code>           | This event is sent in response to a SI descriptor retrieval request when the table carrying the information about the object has been updated and the set of descriptors consistent with the old object can not be retrieved. |
| <code>SIUtil</code>                        | This class contains SI related utility functions.   |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                          |   |
| <code>SIException</code>                   | This class is the root of the SI exceptions hierarchy.  |
| <code>SIIllegalArgumentException</code>    | This exception is thrown when one or more of the arguments passed to a method are invalid (e.g.   |

**Class Summary**`SIInvalidPeriodException`

This exception is thrown when a specified period is invalid (for example, start time is after the end time)

# org.dvb.si Descriptor

## Declaration

```
public class Descriptor
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.si.Descriptor
```

## Description

This class represents a descriptor within a sub-table.

A descriptor consist of three fields: a tag, a contentLength and the content.

The tag uniquely identifies the descriptor type. The content length indicates the number of bytes in the content. The content consists of an array of bytes of length content length. The data represented by the content is descriptor type dependent.

## See Also:

[DescriptorTag](#)

## Constructors

---

### Descriptor()

```
protected Descriptor()
```

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### getBytesAt(int)

```
public byte getBytesAt(int index)
    throws IndexOutOfBoundsException
```

Get a particular byte within the descriptor content

#### Parameters:

`index` - index to the descriptor content. Value 0 corresponds to the first byte after the length field.

#### Returns:

The required byte

#### Throws:

`java.lang.IndexOutOfBoundsException` - if `index < 0` or `index >= ContentLength`

---

**getContent()**

```
public byte[] getContent()
```

Get a copy of the content of this descriptor (everything after the length field).

**Returns:**

a copy of the content of the descriptor

---

**getContentLength()**

```
public short getContentLength()
```

This method returns the length of the descriptor content as coded in the length field of this descriptor.

**Returns:**

The length of the descriptor content.

---

**getTag()**

```
public short getTag()
```

Get the descriptor tag. The value returned shall be the actual value used and is not limited to the values defined in `DescriptorTag`.

**Returns:**

The descriptor tag (the most common values are defined in the `DescriptorTag` interface)

**See Also:**

[DescriptorTag](#)

# org.dvb.si DescriptorTag

## Declaration

```
public interface DescriptorTag
```

## Description

This interface defines constants corresponding to the most common descriptor tags.

## See Also:

[Descriptor](#)

## Fields

---

### BOUQUET\_NAME

```
public static final short BOUQUET_NAME
```

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

### CA\_IDENTIFIER

```
public static final short CA_IDENTIFIER
```

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

### CABLE\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM

```
public static final short CABLE_DELIVERY_SYSTEM
```

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

### COMPONENT

```
public static final short COMPONENT
```

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

### CONTENT

```
public static final short CONTENT
```

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

### COUNTRY\_AVAILABILITY

```
public static final short COUNTRY_AVAILABILITY
```

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468



---

**DATA\_BROADCAST**

public static final short **DATA\_BROADCAST**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**EXTENDED\_EVENT**

public static final short **EXTENDED\_EVENT**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**FREQUENCY\_LIST**

public static final short **FREQUENCY\_LIST**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**LINKAGE**

public static final short **LINKAGE**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**LOCAL\_TIME\_OFFSET**

public static final short **LOCAL\_TIME\_OFFSET**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**MOSAIC**

public static final short **MOSAIC**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**MULTILINGUAL\_BOUQUET\_NAME**

public static final short **MULTILINGUAL\_BOUQUET\_NAME**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**MULTILINGUAL\_COMPONENT**

public static final short **MULTILINGUAL\_COMPONENT**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**MULTILINGUAL\_NETWORK\_NAME**

public static final short **MULTILINGUAL\_NETWORK\_NAME**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**MULTILINGUAL\_SERVICE\_NAME**

public static final short **MULTILINGUAL\_SERVICE\_NAME**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

---

**NETWORK\_NAME**

public static final short **NETWORK\_NAME**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**NVOD\_REFERENCE**

public static final short **NVOD\_REFERENCE**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**PARENTAL\_RATING**

public static final short **PARENTAL\_RATING**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**PARTIAL\_TRANSPORT\_STREAM**

public static final short **PARTIAL\_TRANSPORT\_STREAM**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**PRIVATE\_DATA\_SPECIFIER**

public static final short **PRIVATE\_DATA\_SPECIFIER**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SATELLITE\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM**

public static final short **SATELLITE\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SERVICE**

public static final short **SERVICE**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SERVICE\_LIST**

public static final short **SERVICE\_LIST**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SERVICE\_MOVE**

public static final short **SERVICE\_MOVE**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SHORT\_EVENT**

public static final short **SHORT\_EVENT**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

---

**SHORT\_SMOOTHING\_BUFFER**

public static final short **SHORT\_SMOOTHING\_BUFFER**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**STREAM\_IDENTIFIER**

public static final short **STREAM\_IDENTIFIER**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**STUFFING**

public static final short **STUFFING**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SUBTITLING**

public static final short **SUBTITLING**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**TELEPHONE**

public static final short **TELEPHONE**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**TELETEXT**

public static final short **TELETEXT**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**TERRESTRIAL\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM**

public static final short **TERRESTRIAL\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**TIME\_SHIFTED\_EVENT**

public static final short **TIME\_SHIFTED\_EVENT**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

**TIME\_SHIFTED\_SERVICE**

public static final short **TIME\_SHIFTED\_SERVICE**

Constant value for the descriptor tag as specified in EN 300 468

---

# org.dvb.si PMTElementaryStream

## Declaration

```
public interface PMTElementaryStream extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## Description

This interface represents an elementary stream of a service.

For each running service there is a PMT describing the elementary streams of the service. An object that implements this interface represents one such elementary stream. Each object that implements the PMTElementaryStream interface is identified by the combination of the identifiers original\_network\_id, transport\_stream\_id, service\_id, component\_tag (or elementary\_PID).

## See Also:

[PMTService](#), [PMTStreamType](#)

## Methods

---

### getComponentTag()

```
public int getComponentTag()
```

Get the component tag identifier.

#### Returns:

The component tag. If the elementary stream does not have an associated component tag, this method returns -2.

---

### getDvbLocator()

```
public org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator getDvbLocator()
```

Gets a DvbLocator that identifies this elementary stream

#### Returns:

The DvbLocator of this elementary stream

---

### getElementaryPID()

```
public short getElementaryPID()
```

Get the elementary PID.

#### Returns:

The PID the data of elementary stream is sent on in the transport stream.

---

**getOriginalNetworkID()**

```
public int getOriginalNetworkID()
```

Get the original network identification identifier.

**Returns:**

The original network identification.

---

**getServiceID()**

```
public int getServiceID()
```

Get the service identification identifier.

**Returns:**

The service identification.

---

**getStreamType()**

```
public byte getStreamType()
```

Get the stream type of this elementary stream. The value returned shall be the actual value from the descriptor loop and is not limited to the set of values defined in `PMTStreamType`.

**Returns:**

The stream type (some of the possible values are defined in the `PMTStreamType` interface).

**See Also:**

[PMTStreamType](#)

---

**getTransportStreamID()**

```
public int getTransportStreamID()
```

Get the transport stream identification identifier.

**Returns:**

The transport stream identification.

# org.dvb.si PMTService

## Declaration

```
public interface PMTService extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## Description

This interface represents a particular service carried by a transport stream. The information is retrieved from the PMT table.

Each object that implements the PMTService interface is identified by the combination of the following identifiers: original\_network\_id, transport\_stream\_id, service\_id.

## Methods

---

### getDvbLocator()

```
public org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator getDvbLocator()
```

Gets a DvbLocator that identifies this service

**Returns:**

The DvbLocator of this service

---

### getOriginalNetworkID()

```
public int getOriginalNetworkID()
```

Get the original network identification.

**Returns:**

The original network identification identifier.

---

### getPcrPid()

```
public int getPcrPid()
```

Get the PCR pid.

**Returns:**

The PCR pid.

---

### getServiceID()

```
public int getServiceID()
```

Get the service identification.

**Returns:**

The service identification identifier.

---

**getTransportStreamID()**

```
public int getTransportStreamID()
```

Get the transport stream identification.

**Returns:**

The transport stream identification identifier.

---

**retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short, Object, SIRecoveryListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRecoveryListener listener,
    short[] somePMTDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with the elementary streams which compose this service from the Program Map Table (PMT).

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the PMTElementaryStream interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIObjectNotInCacheEvent, SIObjectNotInTableEvent or SITableNotFoundEvent. This method will retrieve PMTElementaryStreams from the same sub-table version as this PMTService instance. If this version of the sub-table is no longer available, an SITableUpdatedEvent is returned.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRecoveryListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`somePMTDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If somePMTDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All non applicable tag values are ignored.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRecoveryListener`, `PMTElementaryStream`

# org.dvb.si PMTStreamType

## Declaration

```
public interface PMTStreamType
```

## Description

This interface defines the constants corresponding to the different stream types

## See Also:

[PMTElementaryStream](#), [PMTElementaryStream.getStreamType\(\)](#)

## Fields

---

### MPEG1\_AUDIO

```
public static final byte MPEG1_AUDIO
```

Constant value for the stream type as specified in ISO/IEC 13818-1

---

### MPEG1\_VIDEO

```
public static final byte MPEG1_VIDEO
```

Constant value for the stream type as specified in ISO/IEC 13818-1

---

### MPEG2\_AUDIO

```
public static final byte MPEG2_AUDIO
```

Constant value for the stream type as specified in ISO/IEC 13818-1

---

### MPEG2\_VIDEO

```
public static final byte MPEG2_VIDEO
```

Constant value for the stream type as specified in ISO/IEC 13818-1



# org.dvb.si

# SIBouquet

## Declaration

```
public interface SIBouquet extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## Description

This interface (together with the SITransportStreamBAT interface) represents a sub-table of the Bouquet Association Table (BAT) describing a particular bouquet.

Each object that implements the SIBouquet interface is identified by the identifier bouquet\_id.

## See Also:

[SITransportStreamBAT](#)

## Methods

---

### getBouquetID()

```
public int getBouquetID()
```

Get the identification.

#### Returns:

The bouquet identification of this bouquet.

---

### getDescriptorTags()

```
public short[] getDescriptorTags()
```

This method defines extra semantics for the SIInformation.getDescriptorTags method. If the BAT sub-table on which this SIBouquet object is based consists of multiple sections, then this method returns the descriptor tags in the order they appear when concatenating the descriptor loops of the different sections.

#### Overrides:

[getDescriptorTags](#) in interface [SIInformation](#)

#### Returns:

The tags of the descriptors actually broadcast for the object (identified by their tags).

#### See Also:

[SIInformation](#), [SIInformation.getDescriptorTags\(\)](#)

---

**getName()**

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

This method returns the name of this bouquet. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_bouquet_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_bouquet_name_descriptor` and the name in the `bouquet_name_descriptor`. When this information is not available "" is returned. All control characters as defined in ETR 211 are ignored. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation

**Returns:**

The bouquet name of this bouquet.

---

**getShortBouquetName()**

```
public java.lang.String getShortBouquetName()
```

This method returns the short name (ETR 211) of this bouquet without emphasis marks. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_bouquet_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_bouquet_name_descriptor` and the name in the `bouquet_name_descriptor`. If the descriptor is not present, "" is returned. If the string can be found but does not contain control codes for abbreviating it, the full string shall be returned. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The short bouquet name of this bouquet.

---

**getSIServiceLocators()**

```
public org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator[] getSIServiceLocators()
```

Get a list of DvbLocators identifying the services that belong to the bouquet.

**Returns:**

An array of DvbLocators identifying the services

**See Also:**

`org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator`, [SIService](#)

---

**retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIReivalListener)**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveDescriptors(short retrieveMode,
        java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIReivalListener listener)
        throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

This method defines extra semantics for the `SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors` method (first prototype). If the BAT sub-table on which this `SIBouquet` object is based consists of multiple sections, then this method returns the requested descriptors in the order they appear when concatenating the descriptor loops of the different sections.

**Overrides:**

`retrieveDescriptors` in interface `SIInformation`

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIInformation`, `SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener)`

**retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveDescriptors(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

This method defines extra semantics for the `SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors` method (second prototype). If the BAT sub-table on which this `SIBouquet` object is based consists of multiple sections, then this method returns the requested descriptors in the order they appear when concatenating the descriptor loops of the different sections.

**Overrides:**

`retrieveDescriptors` in interface `SIInformation`

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of tags for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the behaviour is implementation dependent. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIInformation`, `SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])`

---

**retrieveSIBouquetTransportStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSIBouquetTransportStreams(short retrieveMode,  
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,  
    short[] someDescriptorTags)  
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with transport streams belonging to the bouquet.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the SITransportStreamBAT interface. This method will retrieve SIBouquetTransportStreams from the same sub-table version as this SIBouquet instance. If this version of the sub-table is no longer available, an SITableUpdatedEvent is returned.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the behaviour is implementation dependent. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRetrievalListener](#), [SITransportStreamBAT](#), [DescriptorTag](#)

# org.dvb.si SIDatabase

## Declaration

```
public class SIDatabase
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.si.SIDatabase
```

## Description

This class represents the root of the SI information hierarchy. There is one SIDatabase per network interface. In a system with a single network interface there is only one SIDatabase object.

When adding a listener to monitor for changes in an SI table (or data carried in an SI table), an event shall not be generated for the current version of that table (or data) found in the network at the time the listener is added. Events shall only be generated for changes following the detection of that current version.

## Constructors

---

### SIDatabase()

```
protected SIDatabase()
```

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### addBouquetMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)

```
public void addBouquetMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
    int bouquetId)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Initiate monitoring of the bouquet information. When the bouquet information changes, an event will be delivered to the registered listener object.

How the monitoring is performed is implementation dependent and especially does not necessarily need to be continuous. The event will be delivered as soon as the implementation notices the change which might have some delay relative to when the change was actually made in the stream due to resources for the monitoring being scheduled between the monitoring activities of different tables. This specification does not set any minimum requirements for monitoring of the SI tables. This is to be done at a best effort basis by the implementation and is entirely implementation dependent. The only requirement is that when an implementation detects a change, e.g. because a resident Navigator or an MHP application has retrieved some SI information from the stream, then these listeners are notified of the change.

The monitoring stops silently and permanently when the network interface with which this SIDatabase object is associated starts tuning to another transport stream.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that will receive events when a change in the information is detected.  
`bouquetId` - bouquet identifier of the bouquet whose information will be monitored.

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

**addEventPresentFollowingMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)**

```
public void addEventPresentFollowingMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener
    listener, int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Initiate monitoring of information in the EIT related to present and following events. When the information related to those events changes, an event will be delivered to the registered listener object.

The scope of the monitoring is determined by the original network identifier, transport stream identifier and service identifier. The listener will be notified about the change of the information in any present and following event within that scope.

How the monitoring is performed is implementation dependent and especially does not necessarily need to be continuous. The event will be delivered as soon as the implementation notices the change which might have some delay relative to when the change was actually made in the stream due to resources for the monitoring being scheduled between the monitoring activities of different tables. This specification does not set any minimum requirements for monitoring of the SI tables. This is to be done at a best effort basis by the implementation and is entirely implementation dependent. The only requirement is that when an implementation detects a change, e.g. because a resident Navigator or an MHP application has retrieved some SI information from the stream, then these listeners are notified of the change.

The monitoring stops silently and permanently when the network interface with which this SIDatabase object is associated starts tuning to another transport stream.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that will receive events when a change in the information is detected.  
`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`serviceId` - service identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

**addEventScheduleMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int, Date, Date)**

```
public void addEventScheduleMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
    int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId,
    java.util.Date startTime, java.util.Date endTime)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException, SIInvalidPeriodException
```

Initiate monitoring of information in the EIT related to scheduled events. When the information related to those events changes, an event will be delivered to the registered listener object.

The scope of the monitoring is determined by the original network identifier, transport stream identifier, service identifier, start time and end time of the schedule period. The listener will be notified about the change of the information in any scheduled event within that scope.

How the monitoring is performed is implementation dependent and especially does not necessarily need to be continuous. The event will be delivered as soon as the implementation notices the change which might have some delay relative to when the change was actually made in the stream due to resources for the monitoring being scheduled between the monitoring activities of different tables. This specification does not set any minimum requirements for monitoring of the SI tables. This is to be done at a best effort basis by the implementation and is entirely implementation dependent. The only requirement is that when an implementation detects a change, e.g. because a resident Navigator or an MHP application has retrieved some SI information from the stream, then these listeners are notified of the change.

The monitoring stops silently and permanently when the network interface with which this SIDatabase object is associated starts tuning to another transport stream.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that will receive events when a change in the information is detected.  
`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`serviceId` - service identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring  
`startTime` - start time of the schedule period  
`endTime` - end time of the schedule period

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)  
`SIInvalidPeriodException` - thrown if end time is before start time

**See Also:**

`SIMonitoringListener`, `SIMonitoringEvent`

**addNetworkMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)**

```
public void addNetworkMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
    int networkId)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Initiate monitoring of the network information. When the network information changes, an event will be delivered to the registered listener object.

How the monitoring is performed is implementation dependent and especially does not necessarily need to be continuous. The event will be delivered as soon as the implementation notices the change which might have some delay relative to when the change was actually made in the stream due to resources for the monitoring being scheduled between the monitoring activities of different tables. This specification does not set any minimum requirements for monitoring of the SI tables. This is to be done at a best effort basis by the implementation and is entirely implementation dependent. The only requirement is that when an implementation detects a change, e.g. because a resident Navigator or an MHP application has retrieved some SI information from the stream, then these listeners are notified of the change.

The monitoring stops silently and permanently when the network interface with which this SIDatabase object is associated starts tuning to another transport stream.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that will receive events when a change in the information is detected.  
`networkId` - network identifier of the network whose information will be monitored.

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

---

**addPMTServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)**

```
public void addPMTServiceMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
      int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId)
      throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Initiate monitoring of information in the PMT related to a service. When the information related to a service changes, an event will be delivered to the registered listener object.

How the monitoring is performed is implementation dependent and especially does not necessarily need to be continuous. The event will be delivered as soon as the implementation notices the change which might have some delay relative to when the change was actually made in the stream due to resources for the monitoring being scheduled between the monitoring activities of different tables. Except as specified below, this specification does not set any minimum requirements for monitoring of the SI tables. This is to be done at a best effort basis by the implementation and is entirely implementation dependent. The only requirement is that when an implementation detects a change, e.g. because a resident Navigator or an MHP application has retrieved some SI information from the stream, then these listeners are notified of the change. When the referenced service is the currently selected service within a service context, the terminal shall monitor this PMT and report the changes to any registered listener(s).

The monitoring stops silently and permanently when the network interface with which this SIDatabase object is associated starts tuning to another transport stream.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that will receive events when a change in the information is detected.

`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier of the service

`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier of the service

`serviceId` - service identifier specifying the service whose information will be monitored

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

---

**addServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int)**

```
public void addServiceMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
      int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId)
      throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Initiate monitoring of information in the SDT related to services. When the information related to services changes, an event will be delivered to the registered listener object.

The scope of the monitoring is determined by the original network identifier and transport stream identifier. The listener will be notified about the change of the information in any service within that scope.

How the monitoring is performed is implementation dependent and especially does not necessarily need to be continuous. The event will be delivered as soon as the implementation notices the change which might have some delay relative to when the change was actually made in the stream due to resources for the monitoring being scheduled between the monitoring activities of different tables. This specification does not set any minimum requirements for monitoring of the SI tables. This is to



be done at a best effort basis by the implementation and is entirely implementation dependent. The only requirement is that when an implementation detects a change, e.g. because a resident Navigator or an MHP application has retrieved some SI information from the stream, then these listeners are notified of the change.

The monitoring stops silently and permanently when the network interface with which this SIDatabase object is associated starts tuning to another transport stream.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that will receive events when a change in the information is detected.  
`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

`SIMonitoringListener`, `SIMonitoringEvent`

### **getSIDatabase()**

```
public static org.dvb.si.SIDatabase[] getSIDatabase()
```

Return an array of SIDatabase objects (one object per network interface). In a system with one network interface, the length of this array will be one. The network interface of each SIDatabase is used as data source for all new data accessed by this SIDatabase or SIInformation instances obtained from it.

This is the first method to be called to access the DVB-SI API. The returned SIDatabase objects provide the access point to the DVB-SI information.

**Returns:**

An array of SIDatabase objects, one per network interface.

### **removeBouquetMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)**

```
public void removeBouquetMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
      int bouquetId)
      throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Removes the registration of an event listener for bouquet information monitoring. If this method is called with a listener that is registered but not with the same identifiers of the SI objects as given in the parameters, the method shall fail silently and the listeners stays registered with those identifiers that it has been added.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that has previously been registered  
`bouquetId` - bouquet identifier of the bouquet whose information has been requested to be monitored

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

`SIMonitoringListener`, `SIMonitoringEvent`

---

**removeEventPresentFollowingMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)**

```
public void removeEventPresentFollowingMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener
    listener, int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Removes the registration of an event listener for monitoring information related to present and following events. If this method is called with a listener that is registered but not with the same identifiers of the SI objects as given in the parameters, the method shall fail silently and the listener stays registered with those identifiers that it has been added. When the referenced service is carried in the currently tuned transport stream, the terminal shall monitor this EITp/f actual and report the changes to any registered listener(s).

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that has previously been registered  
`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`serviceId` - service identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

---

**removeEventScheduleMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)**

```
public void removeEventScheduleMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
    int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Removes the registration of an event listener for monitoring information related to scheduled events for all periods. If this method is called with a listener that is registered but not with the same identifiers of the SI objects as given in the parameters, the method shall fail silently and the listener stays registered with those identifiers that it has been added.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that has previously been registered  
`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.  
`serviceId` - service identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

---

**removeNetworkMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)**

```
public void removeNetworkMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
    int networkId)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Removes the registration of an event listener for network information monitoring. If this method is called with a listener that is registered but not with the same identifiers of the SI objects as given in the parameter, the method shall fail silently and the listener stays registered with those identifiers that it has been added.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that has previously been registered

`networkId` - network identifier of the network which is no longer to be monitored by the listener

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

**removePMTServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)**

```
public void removePMTServiceMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
        int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId)
        throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Removes the registration of an event listener for monitoring information in the PMT related to a service. If this method is called with a listener that is registered but not with the same identifiers of the SI objects as given in the parameters, the method shall fail silently and the listeners stays registered with those identifiers that it has been added.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that has previously been registered

`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier of the service

`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier of the service

`serviceId` - service identifier specifying the service whose information has been requested to be monitored

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

**removeServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int)**

```
public void removeServiceMonitoringListener(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener listener,
        int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId)
        throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Removes the registration of an event listener for monitoring information related to services. If this method is called with a listener that is registered but not with the same identifiers of the SI objects as given in the parameters, the method shall fail silently and the listeners stays registered with those identifiers that it has been added.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - listener object that has previously been registered

`originalNetworkId` - original network identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.

`transportStreamId` - transport stream identifier specifying the scope of the monitoring.

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the identifiers are invalid (e.g. out of range)

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

**retrieveActualSINetwork(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveActualSINetwork(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with the actual network. The actual network is the network carrying the transport stream currently selected by the network interface connected to this SIDatabase.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the SINetwork interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIObjectNotInCacheEvent or SITableNotFoundEvent

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SINetwork`, `DescriptorTag`

**retrieveActualSIServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveActualSIServices(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with the actual services. The actual services are the services in the transport stream currently selected by the network interface connected to this SIDatabase.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the SIService interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIObjectNotInCacheEvent, SIObjectNotInTableEvent or SITableNotFoundEvent.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIService`, `DescriptorTag`

### **retrieveActualSITransportStream(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveActualSITransportStream(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with the actual transport stream. The actual transport stream is the transport stream currently selected by the network interface connected to this `SIDatabase`.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the `SITransportStreamNIT` interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: `SIObjctNotInCacheEvent` `SIObjctNotInTableEvent` or `SITableNotFoundEvent`.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SITransportStream`, `DescriptorTag`

**retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short, Object, SIRecoveryListener, DvbLocator, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRecoveryListener listener,
    org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator dvbLocator, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve PMT elementary stream information associated with components of a service. The required component(s) can be specified by its DVB locator.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the PMTElementaryStream interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: ObjectNotInCacheEvent, ObjectNotInTableEvent or TableNotFoundEvent.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRecoveryListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`dvbLocator` - DVB Locator identifying the component(s) of a service. The locator may be more specific than identifying one or more service components, but this method will only use the parts starting from the beginning up to the component tags.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid or if the locator is invalid and does not identify one or more service components

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRecoveryListener](#), [SIService](#), [DescriptorTag](#)

**retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short, Object, SIRecoveryListener, int, int, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRecoveryListener listener,
    int serviceId, int componentTag, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve PMT elementary stream information associated with components of a service from the actual transport stream of this SIDatabase object. The elementary streams can be specified by their identification. When -1 is specified for `componentTag` then elementary streams shall be retrieved regardless of their component tag.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the PMTElementaryStream interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIObjectNotInCacheEvent, SIObjectNotInTableEvent or SITableNotFoundEvent.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`serviceId` - Identification of the elementary streams to be retrieved: service identifier

`componentTag` - Identification of the elementary streams to be retrieved: component tag (-1 means return elementary streams regardless of their component tag)

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid or the numeric identifiers are out of range

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIService`, `DescriptorTag`

**retrievePMTService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, DvbLocator, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePMTService(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator dvbLocator, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve PMT information associated with a service. The required service can be specified by its DVB locator.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the `PMTService` interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: `SIObjctNotInCacheEvent` `SIObjctNotInTableEvent` or `SITableNotFoundEvent`.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`dvbLocator` - DVB Locator identifying the service. The locator may be more specific than identifying a service, but this method will only use the parts starting from the beginning up to the service id.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid or the locator is invalid and does not identify a service

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIService`, `DescriptorTag`

**retrievePMTServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePMTServices(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    int serviceId, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve PMT information associated with services from the actual transport stream of this `SIDatabase` object. The required services can be specified by their identification. When -1 is specified as `serviceId` then services shall be retrieved regardless of their service id.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the `PMTService` interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: `SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT`, `SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT` or `SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT`.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`serviceId` - Identification of the services to be retrieved: service identifier (-1 means return services regardless of their service id)

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid or the numeric identifiers are out of range

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIService`, `DescriptorTag`



---

**retrieveSIBouquets(short, Object, SIRecoveryListener, int, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSIBouquets(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRecoveryListener listener,
    int bouquetId, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with bouquets. A bouquet can be specified by its identification. When bouquetId is set to -1, all bouquets signalled in the BAT of the currently received transport stream on that network interface are retrieved.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the SIBouquet interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIObjectNotInCacheEvent, SIObjectNotInTableEvent or SITableNotFoundEvent.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRecoveryListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`bouquetId` - Identifier of the bouquet to be retrieved or -1 for all bouquets signalled on the currently received transport stream.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid or the numeric identifiers are out of range

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRecoveryListener](#), [SIBouquet](#), [DescriptorTag](#)

---

**retrieveSINetworks(short, Object, SIRecoveryListener, int, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSINetworks(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRecoveryListener listener,
    int networkId, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with networks. A network can be specified by its identification. When networkId is set to -1, all networks signalled in NIT Actual and Other of the currently received TransportStream on that network interface shall be retrieved.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the SINetwork interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIObjectNotInCacheEvent, SITableNotFoundEvent.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`networkId` - Identification of the network to be retrieved or -1 for all networks currently signalled.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid or the numeric identifiers are out of range

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SINetwork`, `DescriptorTag`

**retrieveSIService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, DvbLocator, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSIService(short retrieveMode, java.lang.Object appData,
    org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator dvbLocator, short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with a service. The required service can be specified by its DVB locator.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the `SIService` interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: `SIObjctNotInCacheEvent` `SIObjctNotInTableEvent` or `SITableNotFoundEvent`

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`dvbLocator` - DVB locator identifying the service. The locator may be more specific than identifying a service, but this method will only use the parts starting from the beginning up to the service id.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in

all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid or the locator is invalid and does not identify a service

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRetrievalListener](#), [SIService](#), [DescriptorTag](#)

**retrieveSIServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, int, int, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSIServices(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with services. The required services can be specified by their identification. When -1 is specified for transportStreamId then services shall be retrieved regardless of their transport stream id. When -1 is specified for serviceId then services shall be retrieved regardless of their service id.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the SIService interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: [SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT](#), [SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT](#) or [SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT](#).

**Parameters:**

retrieveMode - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

appData - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

listener - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

originalNetworkId - Identification of the services to be retrieved: original network identifier

transportStreamId - Identification of the services to be retrieved: transport stream identifier (-1 means return services regardless of their transport stream id)

serviceId - Identification of the services to be retrieved: service identifier (-1 means return services regardless of their service id)

someDescriptorTags - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid or the numeric identifiers are out of range

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRetrievalListener](#), [SIService](#), [DescriptorTag](#)

**retrieveSITimeFromTDT(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener)**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSITimeFromTDT(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with time from the Time and Date Table (TDT) from the actual transport stream.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the SITime interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT or SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRetrievalListener](#), [SITime](#)

**retrieveSITimeFromTOT(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSITimeFromTOT(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with time from the Time Offset Table (TOT) from the actual transport stream. The time information will be accompanied with offset information

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the SITime interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT or SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SITime`

**retrieveSITransportStreamDescription(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSITransportStreamDescription(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve the `SITransportStreamDescription` object representing the information of the TSDT table in the actual transport stream of this `SIDatabase` object.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the `SITransportStreamDescription` interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: `SIObjectNotInCacheEvent`, `SIObjectNotInTableEvent` or `SITableNotFoundEvent`.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SITransportStreamDescription`, `DescriptorTag`

# org.dvb.si SIEvent

## Declaration

```
public interface SIEvent extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## Description

This interface represents a particular event within a service.

Each object that implements the SIEvent interface is defined by the combination of the identifiers `original_network_id`, `transport_stream_id`, `service_id`, `event_id`.

Where methods return values from a `short_event_descriptor`, the following algorithm shall be used where more than one such descriptor is present. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those for which there is a `short_event_descriptor` then return the value from that descriptor. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the values in the available `short_event_descriptors`.

## See Also:

[SIService](#)

## Methods

---

### **getContentNibbles()**

```
public byte[] getContentNibbles()
```

This method returns the content nibbles related to the event. This information is extracted from the `content_descriptor`. If this descriptor is not present an empty array is returned (array with length 0). The return value is an array, each array element describes one content nibble. In each nibble the level 1 content nibbles occupy the four most significant bits of the returned bytes, level 2 content nibbles the four least significant bits.

#### **Returns:**

The content nibbles related to the event; level 1 content nibbles occupy the four most significant bits of the returned bytes, level 2 content nibbles the four least significant bits.

---

### **getDuration()**

```
public long getDuration()
```

Get the duration of this event.

#### **Returns:**

The duration in seconds.

---

**getDvbLocator()**

```
public org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator getDvbLocator()
```

Gets a DvbLocator that identifies this event.

**Returns:**

The DvbLocator of this event

---

**getEventID()**

```
public int getEventID()
```

Get the event identification.

**Returns:**

The event identification.

---

**getFreeCAMode()**

```
public boolean getFreeCAMode()
```

Get the free\_CA\_mode value for this event, false indicates none of the component streams of this event are scrambled.

**Returns:**

The free\_CA\_mode value.

---

**getLevel1ContentNibbles()**

```
public byte[] getLevel1ContentNibbles()
```

This method returns the level 1 content nibbles of this event. This information is extracted from the content\_descriptor. If this descriptor is not present an empty array is returned (array with length 0). The return value is an array, each array element describes one content nibble. In each nibble the data occupies the four least significant bits of the returned bytes with the four most significant bits set to 0.

**Returns:**

All level 1 content nibbles related to the event.

---

**getName()**

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

This method returns the name of this event. The name is extracted from a short\_event\_descriptor. When this information is not available "" is returned. All control characters as defined in ETR 211 are ignored. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The event name of this event.

---

**getOriginalNetworkID()**

```
public int getOriginalNetworkID()
```

Get the original network identification identifier.

**Returns:**

The original network identification.

---

---

**getRunningStatus()**

```
public byte getRunningStatus()
```

Get the running status of this event.

**Returns:**

The running status (the possible values are defined in the SIRunningStatus interface).

**See Also:**

[SIRunningStatus](#)

---

**getServiceID()**

```
public int getServiceID()
```

Get the service identification identifier.

**Returns:**

The service identification.

---

**getShortDescription()**

```
public java.lang.String getShortDescription()
```

This method returns the description of this event. The description is extracted from a short\_event\_descriptor. When this information is not available, "" is returned. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation

**Returns:**

The short description of this event.

---

**getShortEventName()**

```
public java.lang.String getShortEventName()
```

This method returns the short event name (ETR 211) of this event without emphasis marks. The name is extracted from a short\_event\_descriptor. If the descriptor is not present, "" is returned. If the string can be found but does not contain control codes for abbreviating it, the full string shall be returned. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The short event name of this event.

---

**getStartTime()**

```
public java.util.Date getStartTime()
```

Get the start time of this event in UTC time.

**Returns:**

The start time of this event.

---

**getTransportStreamID()**

```
public int getTransportStreamID()
```

Get the transport stream identification identifier.

**Returns:**

The transport stream identification.

---



---

**retrieveSIService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSIService(short retrieveMode, java.lang.Object appData,  
    org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener, short[] someDescriptorTags)  
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

This method retrieves the SIService object representing the service the event, represented by this SIEvent, is part of.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the SIService interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT or SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIService`, `DescriptorTag`

# org.dvb.si SIException

## Declaration

```
public abstract class SIException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
SIIllegalArgumentException, SIInvalidPeriodException
```

## Description

This class is the root of the SI exceptions hierarchy.

## Constructors

---

### SIException()

```
public SIException()
```

Default constructor for the exception

---

### SIException(String)

```
public SIException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the SI exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised

# org.dvb.si SIIllegalArgumentException

## Declaration

```
public class SIIllegalArgumentException extends SIIException
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.si.SIIException
            |
            +--org.dvb.si.SIIllegalArgumentException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This exception is thrown when one or more of the arguments passed to a method are invalid (e.g. numeric identifiers out of range, etc.)

## Constructors

---

### SIIllegalArgumentException()

```
public SIIllegalArgumentException()
```

Default constructor for the exception

---

### SIIllegalArgumentException(String)

```
public SIIllegalArgumentException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised

# org.dvb.si

# SIInformation

## Declaration

```
public interface SIInformation
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

```
PMTElementaryStream, PMTService, SIBouquet, SIEvent, SINetwork, SIService,
SITime, SITransportStream, SITransportStreamBAT,
SITransportStreamDescription, SITransportStreamNIT
```

## Description

This interface groups the common features of SIBouquet, SINetwork, SITransportStream, SIService, PMTService, SIEvent, SITime and PMTElementaryStream.

Each SIInformation instance represents a sub-table (part). Any method accessing descriptors will retrieve descriptors from the same sub-table version as the SIInformation instance. When this version is no longer available, an SITableUpdatedEvent is returned.

## See Also:

```
SIBouquet, SINetwork, SITransportStream, SIService, PMTService, SIEvent, SITime,
PMTElementaryStream
```

## Fields

---

### FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY

```
public static final short FROM_CACHE_ONLY
```

Constant for retrieve mode parameter of the retrieve methods. When FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY mode is specified, the data will be retrieved only if it is in the cache. Otherwise, SINotInCacheEvent will be delivered to the listener. No stream access is done in this case.

---

### FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM

```
public static final short FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM
```

Constant for retrieve mode parameter of the retrieve methods. When FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM mode is specified, the data will be retrieved from cache if it is present in the cache, otherwise it will be retrieved from the stream.

---

### FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY

```
public static final short FROM_STREAM_ONLY
```

Constant for retrieve mode parameter of the retrieve methods. When FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY mode is specified, the data will be retrieved directly from the stream and no cache access is tried first. This mode is meaningful only if the application knows that the information is not in the cache or that the information in the cache is no longer valid, but the implementation of the SI database may not be aware of the invalidity of the cached data. If the application has got the notification of the existence of

an updated version through the listener mechanism in this API, the implementation of the SI database is aware of the version change and the application should specify the FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM mode to be able to retrieve the data faster if the updated version has already been loaded to the cache by the SI database implementation.

## Methods

---

### fromActual()

```
public boolean fromActual()
```

Return true when the information contained in the object that implements this interface was filtered from an 'actual' table or from a table with no 'actual/other' distinction.

**Returns:**

true if the information comes from an 'actual' table or from a table with no 'actual/other' distinction, otherwise returns false

---

### getDataSource()

```
public org.davic.mpeg.TransportStream getDataSource()
```

Return the org.davic.mpeg.TransportStream object the information contained in the object that implements that interface was filtered from.

**Returns:**

The org.davic.mpeg.TransportStream object the information was filtered from.

**See Also:**

org.davic.mpeg.TransportStream

---

### getDescriptorTags()

```
public short[] getDescriptorTags()
```

Get the tags of all descriptors that are part of this version of this object. The tags are returned in the same order as the descriptors are broadcast. This method returns also the tags of descriptors that were not hinted at and that are not necessarily present in the cache. If there are no descriptors associated with this SIInformation object, this method returns an empty array whose length is 0.

**Returns:**

The tags of the descriptors actually broadcast for the object (identified by their tags).

**See Also:**

[DescriptorTag](#)

---

### getSIDatabase()

```
public org.dvb.si.SIDatabase getSIDatabase()
```

Return the root of the hierarchy the object that implements this interface belongs to.

**Returns:**

The root of the hierarchy.

---

**getUpdateTime()**

```
public java.util.Date getUpdateTime()
```

Return the time when the information contained in the object that implements this interface was last updated.

**Returns:**

The date of the last update.

---

**retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIReceptionListener)**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveDescriptors(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIReceptionListener listener)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

This method retrieves all descriptors in the order the descriptors are broadcast.

This method is asynchronous and the completion of the method will be signalled by an `SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent` being sent to listener. Any retrieved descriptors are found in the `SIIterator` returned by the `getResult` method of that event. If descriptors are found then this iterator will contain `Descriptor` objects. If there are no matching descriptors, this iterator will contain no objects.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIReceptionListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIReceptionListener`, `Descriptor`, `SIIterator`

---

**retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIReceptionListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveDescriptors(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIReceptionListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve a set of descriptors. This method retrieves all or a set of descriptors in the order the descriptors are broadcast.

The tag values included in the `someDescriptorTags` parameter are used for filtering the descriptors that are returned. Only those descriptors whose tag value is included in the `someDescriptorTags` array are retrieved, unless the `someDescriptorTags` array contains -1 as its one and only item in which case all descriptors related to this object are retrieved.

If the list of tags is a subset of the one hinted to the underlying implementation (in the request which created the object on which the method is called), this is likely to increase the efficiency of the (optional) caching mechanism

This method is asynchronous and the completion of the method will be signalled by an `SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent` being sent to listener. Any retrieved descriptors are found in the `SIIterator` returned by the `getResult` method of that event. If descriptors are found then this iterator will contain `Descriptor` objects. If there are no matching descriptors, this iterator will contain no objects.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - Descriptor tag values of descriptors that are used for filtering descriptors from the descriptors included in the SI table item corresponding to this `SIInformation` object. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, all descriptors related to this object are retrieved.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `Descriptor`, `SIIterator`, `DescriptorTag`

# org.dvb.si SIInvalidPeriodException

## Declaration

```
public class SIInvalidPeriodException extends SIException
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--org.dvb.si.SIException
         |
         +--org.dvb.si.SIInvalidPeriodException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This exception is thrown when a specified period is invalid (for example, start time is after the end time)

## Constructors

---

### SIInvalidPeriodException()

```
public SIInvalidPeriodException()
```

Default constructor for the exception

---

### SIInvalidPeriodException(String)

```
public SIInvalidPeriodException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised



# org.dvb.si SIIterator

## Declaration

```
public interface SIIterator extends java.util.Enumeration
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.Enumeration
```

## Description

Objects implementing SIIterator interface allow to browse through a set of SI objects. In order to maintain consistency within the set of SI objects, this browsing does NOT initiate an actual access to the stream.

## Methods

---

### numberOfRemainingObjects()

```
public int numberOfRemainingObjects()
```

Get the number of remaining objects in the iterator.

#### Returns:

The number of remaining objects.

# org.dvb.si SILackOfResourcesEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SILackOfResourcesEvent extends SIRetrievalEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|   |  
   +--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent  
       |  
       +--org.dvb.si.SILackOfResourcesEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the resources needed for retrieving the data are not available, e.g. due to the necessary resources being all taken up by the calling application or other applications.

## See Also:

```
SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### **SILackOfResourcesEvent(Object, SIRequest)**

```
public SILackOfResourcesEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the SIRequest instance which is the source of the event

# org.dvb.si SIMonitoringEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SIMonitoringEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Objects of this class are sent to listener objects of the using application to notify that a change in the monitored information has happened.

## See Also:

[SIMonitoringType](#), [SIMonitoringListener](#)

## Constructors

---

### **SIMonitoringEvent(SIDatabase, byte, int, int, int, int, int, Date, Date)**

```
public SIMonitoringEvent(org.dvb.si.SIDatabase source, byte objectType, int networkId,
    int bouquetId, int originalNetworkId, int transportStreamId, int serviceId,
    java.util.Date startTime, java.util.Date endTime)
```

Constructor for the event object

#### Parameters:

- `source` - the SIDatabase object which is the source of the event
- `objectType` - type of the SIInformation object (constants in SIMonitoringType)
- `networkId` - networkId
- `bouquetId` - bouquetId
- `originalNetworkId` - originalNetworkId
- `transportStreamId` - transportStreamId
- `serviceId` - serviceId
- `startTime` - start time of event schedule period
- `endTime` - end time of event schedule period

## Methods

---

### getBouquetID()

```
public int getBouquetID()
```

Returns the bouquetId of the bouquet. This method is only applicable if the SIIInformation type returned with the getSIIInformationType method is BOUQUET.

**Returns:**

the bouquetId or -2 if not applicable for this event

---

### getEndTime()

```
public java.util.Date getEndTime()
```

Returns the end time of the schedule period whose event information has changed. This method is only applicable if the SIIInformation type returned with the getSIIInformationType method is SCHEDULED\_EVENT.

**Returns:**

the end time or null if not applicable for this event

---

### getNetworkID()

```
public int getNetworkID()
```

Returns the networkId of the network. This method is only applicable if the SIIInformation type returned with the getSIIInformationType method is NETWORK.

**Returns:**

the networkId or -2 if not applicable for this event

---

### getOriginalNetworkID()

```
public int getOriginalNetworkID()
```

Returns the originalNetworkId of the SIIInformation objects This method is only applicable if the SIIInformation type returned with the getSIIInformationType method is SERVICE, PMT\_SERVICE, PRESENT\_FOLLOWING\_EVENT or SCHEDULED\_EVENT.

**Returns:**

the originalNetworkId or -2 if not applicable for this event

---

### getServiceID()

```
public int getServiceID()
```

Returns the serviceId of the SIIInformation objects This method is only applicable if the SIIInformation type returned with the getSIIInformationType method is PMT\_SERVICE, PRESENT\_FOLLOWING\_EVENT or SCHEDULED\_EVENT.

**Returns:**

the serviceId or -2 if not applicable for this event

---

**getSIInformationType()**

```
public byte getSIInformationType()
```

Get the SIInformation type of the information that has changed

**Returns:**

The SIInformation type (the possible values are defined in the SIMonitoringType interface).

**See Also:**

[SIMonitoringType](#)

---

**getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Gets the SIDatabase instance that is sending the event.

**Overrides:**

getSource in class EventObject

**Returns:**

the SIDatabase instance that is the source of this event.

---

**getStartTime()**

```
public java.util.Date getStartTime()
```

Returns the start time of the schedule period whose event information has changed. This method is only applicable if the SIInformation type returned with the getSIInformationType method is SCHEDULED\_EVENT.

**Returns:**

the start time or null if not applicable for this event

---

**getTransportStreamID()**

```
public int getTransportStreamID()
```

Returns the transportStreamId of the SIInformation objects This method is only applicable if the SIInformation type returned with the getSIInformationType method is SERVICE, PMT\_SERVICE, PRESENT\_FOLLOWING\_EVENT or SCHEDULED\_EVENT.

**Returns:**

the transportStreamId or -2 if not applicable for this event

---

# org.dvb.si SIMonitoringListener

## Declaration

```
public interface SIMonitoringListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

This interface shall be implemented by using application classes in order to listen to changes in monitored SI objects.

## See Also:

[SIMonitoringEvent](#)

## Methods

---

### postMonitoringEvent(SIMonitoringEvent)

```
public void postMonitoringEvent(org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent anEvent)
```

This method is called back by the SI API implementation to notify the listener about an event.

#### Parameters:

`anEvent` - The notified event.

#### See Also:

[SIMonitoringEvent](#)

# org.dvb.si SIMonitoringType

## Declaration

```
public interface SIMonitoringType
```

## Description

This interface defines the constants corresponding to the SI information type values in SIMonitoringEvent.

## See Also:

[SIMonitoringListener](#), [SIMonitoringEvent](#)

## Fields

---

### BOUQUET

```
public static final byte BOUQUET
```

Constant for the type of SIInformation object: Bouquet

---

### NETWORK

```
public static final byte NETWORK
```

Constant for the type of SIInformation object: Network

---

### PMT\_SERVICE

```
public static final byte PMT_SERVICE
```

Constant for the type of SIInformation object: PMTService

---

### PRESENT\_FOLLOWING\_EVENT

```
public static final byte PRESENT_FOLLOWING_EVENT
```

Constant for the type of SIInformation object: Present or following event

---

### SCHEDULED\_EVENT

```
public static final byte SCHEDULED_EVENT
```

Constant for the type of SIInformation object: Scheduled event

---

### SERVICE

```
public static final byte SERVICE
```

Constant for the type of SIInformation object: Service

# org.dvb.si

# SINetwork

## Declaration

public interface `SINetwork` extends `SIInformation`

## All Superinterfaces:

`SIInformation`

## Description

This interface (together with the `SITransportStreamNIT` interface) represents a sub-table of the Network Information Table (NIT) describing a particular network.

Each object that implements the `SINetwork` interface is identified by the identifier `network_id`.

## See Also:

`SITransportStream`, `SITransportStreamNIT`

## Methods

---

### `getDescriptorTags()`

```
public short[] getDescriptorTags()
```

This method defines extra semantics for the `SIInformation.getDescriptorTags` method. If the NIT sub-table on which this `SINetwork` object is based consists of multiple sections, then this method returns the descriptor tags in the order they appear when concatenating the descriptor loops of the different sections.

#### Overrides:

`getDescriptorTags` in interface `SIInformation`

#### Returns:

The tags of the descriptors actually broadcast for the object (identified by their tags).

#### See Also:

`SIInformation`, `SIInformation.getDescriptorTags()`

---

### `getName()`

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

This method returns the name of this network. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_network_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_network_name_descriptor` and the name in the `network_name_descriptor`. When this information is not available "" is returned. All control characters as defined in ETR 211 are ignored. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

#### Returns:

The network name of this network.



---

**getNetworkID()**

```
public int getNetworkID()
```

Get the identification of this network.

**Returns:**

The network identification identifier.

---

**getShortNetworkName()**

```
public java.lang.String getShortNetworkName()
```

This method returns the short name (ETR 211) of this network without emphasis marks. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_network_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_network_name_descriptor` and the name in the `network_name_descriptor`. If the descriptor is not present, "" is returned. If the string can be found but does not contain control codes for abbreviating it, the full string shall be returned. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The short network name of this network.

---

**retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIReivalListener)**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveDescriptors(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIReivalListener listener)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentExpection
```

This method defines extra semantics for the `SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors` method (first prototype). If the NIT sub-table on which this `SINetwork` object is based consists of multiple sections, then this method returns the requested descriptors in the order they appear when concatenating the descriptor loops of the different sections.

**Overrides:**

`retrieveDescriptors` in interface `SIInformation`

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIReivalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentExpection` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIInformation`, `SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIReivalListener)`

---

**retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveDescriptors(short retrieveMode,
        java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
        short[] someDescriptorTags)
        throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

This method defines extra semantics for the SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors method (second prototype). If the NIT sub-table on which this SINetwork object is based consists of multiple sections, then this method returns the requested descriptors in the order they appear when concatenating the descriptor loops of the different sections.

**Overrides:**

retrieveDescriptors in interface SIInformation

**Parameters:**

retrieveMode - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

appData - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

listener - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

someDescriptorTags - A list of tags for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the the behaviour is implementation dependent. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

SIIllegalArgumentException - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

SIInformation, SIInformation.retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])

---

**retrieveSITransportStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSITransportStreams(short retrieveMode,
        java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
        short[] someDescriptorTags)
        throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with transport streams carried via the network.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the SITransportStreamNIT interface. This method will retrieve SITransportStreams from the same sub-table version as this SINetwork instance. If this version of the sub-table is no longer available, an SITableUpdatedEvent is returned.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the behaviour is implementation dependent. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentExeption` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SITransportStreamNIT`, `DescriptorTag`

# org.dvb.si SINotInCacheEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SINotInCacheEvent extends SIRetrievalEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SINotInCacheEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the request was made with the FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY mode and the requested data is not present in the cache.

## See Also:

```
SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### **SINotInCacheEvent(Object, SIRequest)**

```
public SINotInCacheEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the [SIRequest](#) instance which is the source of the event

# org.dvb.si SIObjectNotInTableEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SIObjectNotInTableEvent extends SIRetrievalEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIObjectNotInTableEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the SI table where the information about the requested object should be located has been retrieved but the requested object is not present in it. The reason may be that the object corresponding to the requested identifiers does not exist.

## See Also:

```
SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### **SIObjectNotInTableEvent(Object, SIRequest)**

```
public SIObjectNotInTableEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the [SIRequest](#) instance which is the source of the event

# org.dvb.si SIRequest

## Declaration

```
public class SIRequest  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRequest
```

## Description

Object instances of this class represent SI retrieval requests made by the application. The application may cancel the request using this object.

## Constructors

---

### SIRequest()

```
protected SIRequest()
```

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### cancelRequest()

```
public boolean cancelRequest()
```

Cancels the retrieval request.

**Returns:**

true if the request was cancelled and an `SIRequestCancelledEvent` will be delivered to the listener, false if the request has already completed (either successfully, with an error or due to a prior cancel method call)

---

### isAvailableInCache()

```
public boolean isAvailableInCache()
```

Returns whether the information will be returned from cache or from the stream

**Returns:**

true if the information is available in the cache and will be returned from there otherwise false

# org.dvb.si SIRequestCancelledEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SIRequestCancelledEvent extends SIRetrievalEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRequestCancelledEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the request is cancelled with the `SIRequest.cancelRequest` method call.

## See Also:

```
SIRequest, SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### **SIRequestCancelledEvent(Object, SIRequest)**

```
public SIRequestCancelledEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the `SIRequest` instance which is the source of the event

# org.dvb.si SIRetrievalEvent

## Declaration

```
public abstract class SIRetrievalEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
SILackOfResourcesEvent, SINotInCacheEvent, SIOBJECTNotInTableEvent,  
SIRequestCancelledEvent, SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent, SITableNotFoundEvent,  
SITableUpdatedEvent
```

## Description

This class is the base class for events about completion of a SI retrieval request. Exactly one event will be returned in response to an SI retrieval request.

## See Also:

```
SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### SIRetrievalEvent(Object, SIRequest)

```
public SIRetrievalEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the SIRequest instance which is the source of the event

## Methods

---

### getAppData()

```
public java.lang.Object getAppData()
```

Returns the application data that was passed to the retrieve method

#### Returns:

the application data



---

**getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the SIRequest object that is the source of this event

**Overrides:**

```
getSource in class EventObject
```

**Returns:**

the SIRequest object

# org.dvb.si SIRetrievalListener

## Declaration

```
public interface SIRetrievalListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

This interface shall be implemented by application classes in order to receive events about completion of SI requests.

## See Also:

[SIRetrievalEvent](#)

## Methods

---

### postRetrievalEvent(SIRetrievalEvent)

```
public void postRetrievalEvent(org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent event)
```

This method is called by the SI API implementation to notify the listener about completion of an SI request.

#### Parameters:

`event` - The event object.

#### See Also:

[SIRetrievalEvent](#)

# org.dvb.si SIRunningStatus

## Declaration

```
public interface SIRunningStatus
```

## Description

This interface defines the constants corresponding to the running status values for services and events.

## Fields

---

### NOT\_RUNNING

```
public static final byte NOT_RUNNING
```

Constant value for the running status as specified in EN 300 468

---

### PAUSING

```
public static final byte PAUSING
```

Constant value for the running status as specified in EN 300 468

---

### RUNNING

```
public static final byte RUNNING
```

Constant value for the running status as specified in EN 300 468

---

### STARTS\_IN\_A\_FEW\_SECONDS

```
public static final byte STARTS_IN_A_FEW_SECONDS
```

Constant value for the running status as specified in EN 300 468

---

### UNDEFINED

```
public static final byte UNDEFINED
```

Constant value for the running status as specified in EN 300 468

# org.dvb.si

# SIService

## Declaration

```
public interface SIService extends SIInformation, TextualServiceIdentifierQuery
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
SIInformation, TextualServiceIdentifierQuery
```

## Description

This interface represents a particular service carried by a transport stream. Information that can be obtained through the methods of this interface is retrieved from the SDT table.

Each object that implements the SIService interface is identified by the combination of the following identifiers: original\_network\_id, transport\_stream\_id, service\_id.

## Methods

---

### getDvbLocator()

```
public org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator getDvbLocator()
```

Gets a DvbLocator that identifies this service.

**Returns:**

The DvbLocator of this service

---

### getEITPresentFollowingFlag()

```
public boolean getEITPresentFollowingFlag()
```

Get the EIT\_present\_following\_flag value, true indicates this service has present and/or following event information.

**Returns:**

The EIT\_present\_following\_flag value.

---

### getEITScheduleFlag()

```
public boolean getEITScheduleFlag()
```

Get the EIT\_schedule\_flag value, true indicates this services has scheduled event information.

**Returns:**

The EIT\_schedule\_flag value.

---

### getFreeCAMode()

```
public boolean getFreeCAMode()
```

Retrieve the free\_CA\_mode value of this service, false indicates none of the components of this service are scrambled.

**Returns:**

The free\_CA\_mode value of this service.

---

**getName()**

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

This method returns the name of the service represented by this service. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor` and the name in the `service_descriptor`. If this descriptor is not present "" is returned. All control characters as defined in ETR 211 are ignored. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The name of this service.

---

**getOriginalNetworkID()**

```
public int getOriginalNetworkID()
```

Get the original network identification.

**Returns:**

The original network identification identifier.

---

**getProviderName()**

```
public java.lang.String getProviderName()
```

This method returns the service provider name of this service. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor` and the name in the `service_descriptor`. If this descriptor is not present "" is returned. All control characters as defined in ETR 211 are ignored. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The service provider name of this service.

---

**getRunningStatus()**

```
public byte getRunningStatus()
```

Retrieve the running status of this service.

**Returns:**

The running status (the possible values are defined in the `SIRunningStatus` interface)

**See Also:**

[SIRunningStatus](#)

---

**getServiceID()**

```
public int getServiceID()
```

Get the service identification.

**Returns:**

The service identification identifier.

---

**getShortProviderName()**

```
public java.lang.String getShortProviderName()
```

This method returns the short name (ETR 211) of the service provider of this service without emphasis marks. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor` and the name in the `service_descriptor`. When this information is not available "" is returned. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The short service provider name of this service.

---

**getShortServiceName()**

```
public java.lang.String getShortServiceName()
```

This method returns the short name (ETR 211) of this service without emphasis marks. If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` is one of those in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor`, return the name in that language, otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the names in the `multilingual_service_name_descriptor` and the name in the `service_descriptor`. If the descriptor is not present, "" is returned. If the string can be found but does not contain control codes for abbreviating it, the full string shall be returned. For each character the DVB-SI 8 bit character code is mapped to the appropriate Unicode representation.

**Returns:**

The short name of this service.

---

**getSIServiceType()**

```
public short getSIServiceType()
```

Get the service type. The service type is extracted from the `service_descriptor`.

**Returns:**

The service type. (Some of the possible values are defined in the `SIServiceType` interface.)

**See Also:**

[SIServiceType](#)

---

**getTransportStreamID()**

```
public int getTransportStreamID()
```

Get the transport stream identification.

**Returns:**

The transport stream identification identifier.

**retrieveFollowingSIEvent(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveFollowingSIEvent(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with the following event from the EIT-present/following.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the SIEvent interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT or SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

SIIllegalArgumentException - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

SIRequest, SIRetrievalListener, SIEvent, DescriptorTag

**retrievePMTService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePMTService(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve the PMTService information associated with this service.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the PMTService interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: SIOBJECTNOTINCACHEEVENT SIOBJECTNOTINTABLEEVENT or SITABLENOTFOUNDEVENT.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `PMTService`, `DescriptorTag`

**retrievePresentSIEvent(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrievePresentSIEvent(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with the present event from the EIT-present/following.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain an object that implements the `SIEvent` interface. If no matching object was found, the appropriate one of the following events is sent: `SIObjctNotInCacheEvent`, `SIObjctNotInTableEvent` or `SITableNotFoundEvent`.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIEvent`, `DescriptorTag`



**retrieveScheduledSIEvents(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[], Date, Date)**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveScheduledSIEvents(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags, java.util.Date startTime, java.util.Date endTime)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException, SIInvalidPeriodException
```

Retrieve information associated with the scheduled events within the service for a requested period from the EIT-schedule. The events are presented in the order they are present in the EIT-schedule. A scheduled event is retrieved by this method if the time interval from the start time of the event (inclusive) (as returned by `SIEvent.getStartTime`) to the end time of the event (exclusive) (as defined by the sum of `SIEvent.getStartTime` and `SIEvent.getDuration`) intersects the time interval from `startTime` (inclusive) to `endTime` (exclusive) specified by the input parameters to this method.

The `SIIterator` that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain one or more objects that implement the `SIEvent` interface.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (`FROM_CACHE_ONLY`), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (`FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM`), or always from the stream (`FROM_STREAM_ONLY`).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - `SIRetrievalListener` that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If `someDescriptorTags` is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

`startTime` - The beginning of the required period in UTC time.

`endTime` - The end of the required period in UTC time.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object

**Throws:**

`SIIllegalArgumentException` - thrown if the `retrieveMode` is invalid

`SIInvalidPeriodException` - When no valid period is indicated.

**See Also:**

`SIRequest`, `SIRetrievalListener`, `SIEvent`, `DescriptorTag`

# org.dvb.si

# SIServiceType

## Declaration

```
public interface SIServiceType
```

## Description

This interface defines constants corresponding to the different service types.

## See Also:

```
SIService.getServiceType()
```

## Fields

---

### D\_D2\_MAC

```
public static final short D_D2_MAC
```

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

### DATA\_BROADCAST

```
public static final short DATA_BROADCAST
```

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

### DIGITAL\_RADIO\_SOUND

```
public static final short DIGITAL_RADIO_SOUND
```

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

### DIGITAL\_TELEVISION

```
public static final short DIGITAL_TELEVISION
```

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

### FM\_RADIO

```
public static final short FM_RADIO
```

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

### MHP\_APPLICATION

```
public static final short MHP_APPLICATION
```

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**MOSAIC**

public static final short **MOSAIC**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**NTSC**

public static final short **NTSC**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**NVOD\_REFERENCE**

public static final short **NVOD\_REFERENCE**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**NVOD\_TIME\_SHIFTED**

public static final short **NVOD\_TIME\_SHIFTED**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**PAL**

public static final short **PAL**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**SECAM**

public static final short **SECAM**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**TELETEXT**

public static final short **TELETEXT**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

**UNKNOWN**

public static final short **UNKNOWN**

Constant value for the service type as specified in EN 300 468

---

# org.dvb.si SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent

## Declaration

public class **SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent** extends [SIRetrievalEvent](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.si.SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

[java.io.Serializable](#)

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the retrieve request was successfully completed. The result of the request can be obtained from the getResult method.

## See Also:

[SIRetrievalListener](#)

## Constructors

---

### SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent(Object, SIRequest, SIIterator)

```

public SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request,
    org.dvb.si.SIIterator result)
  
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

- `appData` - the application data passed in the request method call
- `request` - the [SIRequest](#) instance which is the source of the event
- `result` - an [SIIterator](#) containing the retrieved objects

## Methods

---

### getResult()

```

public org.dvb.si.SIIterator getResult()
  
```

Returns the requested data in an [SIIterator](#) object.

#### Returns:

An [SIIterator](#) containing the requested objects

#### See Also:

[SIObjectNotInTableEvent](#)

# org.dvb.si SITableNotFoundEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SITableNotFoundEvent extends SIRetrievalEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|   |  
|   +--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent  
|       |  
|       +--org.dvb.si.SITableNotFoundEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI retrieval request when the SI table that should contain the requested information could not be retrieved. The reason may be that the requested table is not broadcast in the transport stream currently associated with the SI database.

## See Also:

```
SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### **SITableNotFoundEvent(Object, SIRequest)**

```
public SITableNotFoundEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the [SIRequest](#) instance which is the source of the event

# org.dvb.si SITableUpdatedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SITableUpdatedEvent extends SIRetrievalEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SITableUpdatedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent in response to a SI descriptor retrieval request when the table carrying the information about the object has been updated and the set of descriptors consistent with the old object can not be retrieved. The application should in this case first update the SIInformation object and then request the descriptors again.

## See Also:

```
SIRetrievalListener
```

## Constructors

---

### **SITableUpdatedEvent(Object, SIRequest)**

```
public SITableUpdatedEvent(java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRequest request)
```

The constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`appData` - the application data passed in the request method call

`request` - the [SIRequest](#) instance which is the source of the event

# org.dvb.si

# SITime

## Declaration

```
public interface SITime extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## Description

This interface represents the Time and Date Table (TDT) and the (optional) Time Offset Table (TOT). When it represents a TDT table, the `retrieveDescriptors` and `getDescriptorTags` methods behave as documented in the case when there are no descriptors, because the TDT does not contain any descriptors.

## See Also:

[SIDatabase](#)

## Methods

---

### `getUTCtime()`

```
public java.util.Date getUTCtime()
```

Get the UTC time as coded in the TDT or TOT table.

#### **Returns:**

The UTC as coded in the TDT or TOT table.

# org.dvb.si

# SITransportStream

## Declaration

```
public interface SITransportStream extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## All Known Subinterfaces:

[SITransportStreamBAT](#), [SITransportStreamNIT](#)

## Description

This interface is the base interface for representing information about transport streams.

Transport stream retrieval methods in the SIDatabase class and the SINetwork interface use the NIT table and will return objects that implement the SITransportStreamNIT interface.

Transport stream retrieval methods in the SIBouquet interface use the BAT table and will return objects that implement the SITransportStreamBAT interface.

## Methods

---

### getDvbLocator()

```
public org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator getDvbLocator()
```

Gets a DvbLocator that identifies this transport stream.

**Returns:**

The DvbLocator of this transport stream.

---

### getOriginalNetworkID()

```
public int getOriginalNetworkID()
```

Get the original network identification.

**Returns:**

The original network identification identifier.

---

### getTransportStreamID()

```
public int getTransportStreamID()
```

Get the transport stream identification.

**Returns:**

The transport stream identification identifier.



---

**retrieveSIServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])**

```
public org.dvb.si.SIRequest retrieveSIServices(short retrieveMode,
    java.lang.Object appData, org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener listener,
    short[] someDescriptorTags)
    throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

Retrieve information associated with services carried via the transport stream. This method works in the same way for objects that implement the SITransportStreamNIT and SITransportStreamBAT interfaces.

The SIIterator that is returned with the event when the request completes successfully will contain objects that implement the SIService interface.

**Parameters:**

`retrieveMode` - Mode of retrieval indicating whether the data should be retrieved only from the cache (FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY), from the cache if available and if not from the stream (FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM), or always from the stream (FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY).

`appData` - An object supplied by the application. This object will be delivered to the listener when the request completes. The application can use this objects for internal communication purposes. If the application does not need any application data, the parameter can be null.

`listener` - SIRetrievalListener that will receive the event informing about the completion of the request.

`someDescriptorTags` - A list of hints for descriptors (identified by their tags) the application is interested in. If the array contains -1 as its one and only element, the application is interested in all descriptors. If someDescriptorTags is null, the application is not interested in descriptors. All values that are out of the valid range for descriptor tags (i.e. 0...255) are ignored, except for the special meaning of -1 as the only element in the array.

**Returns:**

An SIRequest object

**Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if the retrieveMode is invalid

**See Also:**

[SIRequest](#), [SIRetrievalListener](#), [SIService](#), [DescriptorTag](#)

# org.dvb.si SITransportStreamBAT

## Declaration

```
public interface SITransportStreamBAT extends SITransportStream
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#), [SITransportStream](#)

## Description

This interface represents information about transport streams that has been retrieved from a BAT table. All descriptor accessing methods return descriptors retrieved from a BAT table. Methods in SIBouquet for retrieving transport streams return objects that implement this interface.

## Methods

---

### getBouquetID()

```
public int getBouquetID()
```

Get the identification of the bouquet this transport stream is part of.

#### Returns:

The bouquet identification identifier.

org.dvb.si

# SITransportStreamDescription

## Declaration

```
public interface SITransportStreamDescription extends SIInformation
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#)

## Description

This interface represents the Transport Stream Description Table (TSDT).

It defines no methods of its own other than those inherited from SIInformation.

## See Also:

[SIDatabase](#), [SITransportStream](#)

org.dvb.si

# SITransportStreamNIT

## Declaration

```
public interface SITransportStreamNIT extends SITransportStream
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[SIInformation](#), [SITransportStream](#)

## Description

This interface represents information about transport streams that has been retrieved from a NIT table. All descriptor accessing methods return descriptors retrieved from a NIT table. Methods in SIDatabase and SINetwork for retrieving transport streams return objects that implement this interface.

## Methods

---

### getNetworkID()

```
public int getNetworkID()
```

Get the identification of the network this transport stream is part of.

#### Returns:

The network identification identifier.

# org.dvb.si SIUtil

## Declaration

```
public class SIUtil  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.si.SIUtil
```

## Description

This class contains SI related utility functions.

## Methods

---

### **convertSIStringToJavaString(byte[], int, int, boolean)**

```
public static java.lang.String convertSIStringToJavaString(byte[] dvbSIText, int offset,  
int length, boolean emphasizedPartOnly)  
throws SIIllegalArgumentException
```

This method converts a text string that is coded according to annex A of the DVB-SI specification (EN 300 468) to a Java String object.

The text that must be converted is contained in 'dvbSIText' from index 'offset' to index 'offset+length-1' (inclusive).

If the text that must be converted is not validly coded according to annex A of the DVB-SI specification, then the result is undefined.

#### **Parameters:**

`dvbSIText` - The byte array that contains the string that must be converted.

`offset` - The offset indicates the start of the DVB-SI text in `dvbSIText`.

`length` - Length of the DVB-SI text in bytes.

`emphasizedPartOnly` - If `emphasizedPartOnly` is true, then only the text that is marked as emphasized (using the character emphasis on [0x86] and character emphasis off [0x87] control codes) will be returned. Otherwise, the character emphasis codes will be ignored, and all of the converted text will be returned.

#### **Returns:**

The converted text.

#### **Throws:**

[SIIllegalArgumentException](#) - thrown if `offset` and/or `offset+length-1` is not a valid index in `dvbSIText`.

org.dvb.si

# TextualServiceIdentifierQuery

## Declaration

```
public interface TextualServiceIdentifierQuery
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

[SIService](#)

## Description

An interface that can be implemented by objects representing DVB services. Allows applications to obtain the textual service identifiers related to a service.

## Since:

MHP1.0.1

## Methods

---

### getTextualServiceIdentifiers()

```
public java.lang.String[] getTextualServiceIdentifiers()
```

Returns the textual service identifiers related to this object.

#### Returns:

an array of String objects containing the textual service identifiers or null if none are present.

#### Since:

MHP1.0.1

---

## **Annex N (normative): Streamed Media API Extensions**

# Package org.dvb.media

## Description

Provides DVB specific extensions to the Java Media Framework.

| Class Summary                                    |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                                |  |
| <code>BackgroundVideoPresentationControl</code>  | A control to support the setting and querying of the video presentation for background players.  |
| <code>DVBMediaSelectControl</code>               | <code>DVBMediaSelectControl</code> extends <code>MediaSelectControl</code> allowing the selection of different kinds of content in a running <code>Player</code> . |
| <code>SubtitleListener</code>                    | Report that a subtitle event has happened.   |
| <code>SubtitlingEventControl</code>              | Allow applications to register and unregister their interest in events related to the availability and presentation of subtitles.                                  |
| <code>VideoFormatControl</code>                  | This provides a means for applications to get information associated with the format and aspect ratio of the video being presented to the user.                    |
| <code>VideoFormatListener</code>                 | The listener used to receive video format events   |
| <code>VideoPresentationControl</code>            | A control to support setting and querying the video presentation.  |
| <b>Classes</b>                                   |  |
| <code>ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent</code> | Event signalling that the transmitted active format definition has changed   |
| <code>AspectRatioChangedEvent</code>             | Event signalling that the aspect ratio of the transmitted video has changed  |
| <code>CAStopEvent</code>                         | This event is generated whenever access to a service is withdrawn by the CA system, e.g.   |
| <code>DFCChangedEvent</code>                     | Event signalling that the decoder format conversion being used has changed   |
| <code>DripFeedDataSource</code>                  | This class allows to create a source for a JMF player to be able to feed the decoder progressively with parts of a clip (e.g.                                      |
| <code>DripFeedPermission</code>                  | This class represents a permission to access the drip feed mode.   |
| <code>NoComponentSelectedEvent</code>            | This event is generated whenever presentation of a stream stops because there are no selected components to present.   |
| <code>PresentationChangedEvent</code>            | This event is generated whenever the content being presented by a player changes for reasons outside the control of the application.                               |
| <code>ServiceRemovedEvent</code>                 | This event is generated whenever access to a service stops because the service concerned has been removed from the network.  |
| <code>StopByResourceLossEvent</code>             | This event is generated whenever presentation of a stream stops because the player has lost so many resources that it cannot continue.                             |
| <code>SubtitleAvailableEvent</code>              | Report that subtitles are available to be presented having been unavailable.   |
| <code>SubtitleNotAvailableEvent</code>           | Inform an application that a subtitle stream has vanished from the network.  |



**Class Summary**

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <code>SubtitleNotSelectedEvent</code> | Report that subtitles are not now selected.  |
| <code>SubtitleSelectedEvent</code>    | Report that subtitles are now selected.  |
| <code>VideoFormatEvent</code>         | The base class for all other events relating to changes in video format            |
| <code>VideoTransformation</code>      | VideoTransformation objects express video transformations, i.e.                    |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                     |  |
| <code>CAException</code>              | This exception is thrown when access to a media stream is denied by the CA system. |

org.dvb.media

# ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent extends VideoFormatEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.media.VideoFormatEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.media.ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Event signalling that the transmitted active format definition has changed

## Constructors

---

### ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent(Object, int)

```
public ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent(java.lang.Object source, int newFormat)
```

Construct the event

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`newFormat` - the new active format description

## Methods

---

### getNewFormat()

```
public int getNewFormat()
```

Get the new active format description

#### Returns:

the new active format description. The value of this is represented by one of the constants from [VideoFormatControl](#) and shall be the value passed into the constructor of the event.

# org.dvb.media AspectRatioChangedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class AspectRatioChangedEvent extends VideoFormatEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.VideoFormatEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.AspectRatioChangedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Event signalling that the aspect ratio of the transmitted video has changed

## Constructors

---

### AspectRatioChangedEvent(Object, int)

```
public AspectRatioChangedEvent(java.lang.Object source, int newRatio)
```

Construct the event

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`newRatio` - the new aspect ratio of the transmitted video

## Methods

---

### getNewRatio()

```
public int getNewRatio()
```

Get the new aspect ratio of the transmitted video

#### Returns:

the new aspect ratio of the video. The value of this is represented by one of the constants from the `VideoFormatControl` class and shall be the value passed into the constructor of the event.

org.dvb.media

# BackgroundVideoPresentationControl

## Declaration

```
public interface BackgroundVideoPresentationControl extends VideoPresentationControl
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.media.Control, VideoPresentationControl
```

## Description

A control to support the setting and querying of the video presentation for background players.

## Methods

---

### getClosestMatch(VideoTransformation)

```
public org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation getClosestMatch(org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation t)
```

This method takes a video transformation and returns the closest match of that video transformation that can be supported for the currently selected video. If the input video transformation can be supported, then the output video transformation will have the same parameters as the input video transformation. The definition of 'closest match' is implementation dependent.

#### Parameters:

t - the input video transformation

#### Returns:

the closest match to the input video transformation. If the input video transformation is supported, then the input video transformation will be returned (the same instance), otherwise a newly created instance will be returned.

---

### getVideoTransformation()

```
public org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation getVideoTransformation()
```

Return the current video transformation

#### Returns:

the video transformation (clipping/scaling/positioning) that is currently used for displaying the video.

---

### setVideoTransformation(VideoTransformation)

```
public boolean setVideoTransformation(org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation t)
```

Sets a new video transformation (clipping/scaling/positioning). If the new video transformation is not supported, then the video transformation will not be changed at all (no best effort attempt is made).

#### Parameters:

t - the new video transformation

#### Returns:

true if the video transformation is supported and has been set, false otherwise.

# org.dvb.media CAException

## Declaration

```
public class CAException extends java.io.IOException
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--java.io.IOException
         |
         +--org.dvb.media.CAException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This exception is thrown when access to a media stream is denied by the CA system. It will typically be thrown by calls to `DataSource.start()` when access to the stream accessed by the `DataSource` is denied.

## Constructors

---

### CAException()

```
public CAException()
```

Constructor without a reason

---

### CAException(String)

```
public CAException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor with a reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why access to the stream failed

# org.dvb.media CAStopEvent

## Declaration

```
public class CAStopEvent extends javax.media.StopEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--javax.media.ControllerEvent
        |
        +--javax.media.TransitionEvent
            |
            +--javax.media.StopEvent
                |
                +--org.dvb.media.CAStopEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
javax.media.MediaEvent, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is generated whenever access to a service is withdrawn by the CA system, e.g. at the end of a free preview period. It is not generated when an attempt to construct a Player or DataSource fails due to CA restrictions, or when only some of the presented content is not available or alternate content is presented. Generation of this event informs the application that the Player is no longer presenting any content.

## Constructors

---

### CAStopEvent(Controller)

```
public CAStopEvent(javax.media.Controller source)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the controller which was presenting the service

---

### CAStopEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)

```
public CAStopEvent(javax.media.Controller source, int previous, int current, int target,
    javax.media.MediaLocator stream)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the controller which was presenting the service

`stream` - the locator of the stream from which access has been withdrawn.

`previous` - the previous state of the controller

`current` - the current state of the controller

`target` - the target state of the controller

## Methods

---

### **getStream()**

```
public javax.media.MediaLocator getStream()
```

This method returns the stream from which access has been withdrawn.

**Returns:**

the locator for the stream concerned

# org.dvb.media DFCChangedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class DFCChangedEvent extends VideoFormatEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|   |  
|   +--org.dvb.media.VideoFormatEvent  
|       |  
|       +--org.dvb.media.DFCChangedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Event signalling that the decoder format conversion being used has changed

## Constructors

---

### DFCChangedEvent(Object, int)

```
public DFCChangedEvent(java.lang.Object source, int newDFC)
```

Construct the event

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`newDFC` - the new decoder format conversion being used

## Methods

---

### getNewDFC()

```
public int getNewDFC()
```

Get the new decoder format conversion

#### Returns:

the new decoder format conversion. The value of this is represented by one of the constants from the `VideoFormatControl` class and shall be the value passed into the constructor of the event.



# org.dvb.media DripFeedDataSource

## Declaration

```
public class DripFeedDataSource extends javax.media.protocol.DataSource
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--javax.media.protocol.DataSource
|
+--org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
javax.media.protocol.Controls, javax.media.Duration
```

## Description

This class allows to create a source for a JMF player to be able to feed the decoder progressively with parts of a clip (e.g. I or P MPEG-2 frame) according to the drip-fed mode format defined in the MHP content format chapter.

To start using the drip-feed mode, the application needs to instantiate a player representing a MPEG-2 video decoder and have its source be a DripFeedDataSource instance.

A DripFeedDataSource instance can be obtained by calling the default constructor of the class.

A player that will be bound to a MPEG-2 video decoder (when realized) can be created with a locator of the following text representation: "dripfeed://".

After having the DripFeedDataSource connected to a Player representing a MPEG-2 video decoder, the following rules applies:

- If the feed method is called when the player is in the "prefetched" state the image will be stored so that when the player goes in the "started" state it will be automatically displayed.
- If the feed method is called when the player is in the "started" mode, the frame shall be displayed immediately. In particular it is not required to feed a second frame to the decoder to display the first frame.
- If the feed method is called when the player is in any other state (or if the DripFeedDataSource is not connected to a player), it will be ignored by the platform implementation.

## Constructors

---

### DripFeedDataSource()

```
public DripFeedDataSource()
```

Constructor. A call to the constructor will throw a security exception if the application is not granted the right to use the drip feed mode.

## Methods

---

### connect()

```
public void connect()
    throws IOException
```

This method shall not be used and has no effect. This source is considered as always connected.

**Overrides:**

connect in class DataSource

**Throws:**

java.io.IOException - never thrown in this sub-class

---

### disconnect()

```
public void disconnect()
```

This method shall not be used and has no effect. This source is considered as always connected.

**Overrides:**

disconnect in class DataSource

---

### feed(byte[])

```
public void feed(byte[] clip_part)
```

This method allows an application to feed the decoder progressively with parts of a clip (e.g. I or P MPEG-2 frame) according to the drip-fed mode format defined in the MHP content format chapter.

The feed method shall not be called more often than every 500ms. If this rule is not respected, display is not guaranteed.

While in the prefetch state the drip feed data source is only required to correctly process a single invocation of this method where the data consists only of a single I frame. Possible additional invocations while in the prefetch state shall have implementation specific results.

**Parameters:**

clip\_part - Chunk of bytes compliant with the drip-fed mode format defined in the MHP content format chapter (i.e. one MPEG-2 frame with optional syntactic MPEG-2 elements).

---

### getContentType()

```
public java.lang.String getContentType()
```

This method shall return the content type for mpeg-2 video "drips"

**Overrides:**

getContentType in class DataSource

**Returns:**

the content type for MPEG-2 video drips

---

### getControl(String)

```
public java.lang.Object getControl(java.lang.String controlType)
```

Obtain the object that implements the specified Class or Interface. The full class or interface name must be used. If the control is not supported then null is returned.

**Overrides:**

`getControl` in class `DataSource`

**Parameters:**

`controlType` - the full class or interface name of the requested control

**Returns:**

the object that implements the control, or null.

---

**getControls()**

```
public java.lang.Object[] getControls()
```

Obtain the collection of objects that control this object. If no controls are supported, a zero length array is returned.

**Overrides:**

`getControls` in class `DataSource`

**Returns:**

the collection of object controls

---

**getDuration()**

```
public javax.media.Time getDuration()
```

This method shall not be used and has no effect.

**Overrides:**

`getDuration` in class `DataSource`

**Returns:**

`DURATION_UNKNOWN`.

---

**start()**

```
public void start()  
    throws IOException
```

This method shall not be used and has no effect. This source is considered as always started.

**Overrides:**

`start` in class `DataSource`

**Throws:**

`java.io.IOException` - never thrown in this sub-class

---

**stop()**

```
public void stop()  
    throws IOException
```

This method shall not be used and has no effect. This source is considered as always started.

**Overrides:**

`stop` in class `DataSource`

**Throws:**

`java.io.IOException` - never thrown in this sub-class

# org.dvb.media DripFeedPermission

## Declaration

```
public class DripFeedPermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.security.Permission  
|  
+--java.security.BasicPermission  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class represents a permission to access the drip feed mode.

## Constructors

---

### DripFeedPermission(String)

```
public DripFeedPermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Create a new DripFeedPermission.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name string is currently unused and should be empty

---

### DripFeedPermission(String, String)

```
public DripFeedPermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Create a new DripFeedPermission. This constructor is used by the policy class to instantiate new permission objects.

#### Parameters:

`name` - The name string is currently unused and should be empty

`actions` - The actions string is currently unused and should be null.

## Methods

---

### **implies(Permission)**

```
public boolean implies(java.security.Permission p)
```

Checks if the specified permission is “implied” by this object.

Since name and actions aren’t used, the only check needed is whether p is also a DripFeedPermission.

**Overrides:**

```
implies in class BasicPermission
```

**Parameters:**

p - the permission to check against.

**Returns:**

true if the passed permission is equal to or implied by this permission, false otherwise.

# org.dvb.media

# DVBMediaSelectControl

## Declaration

```
public interface DVBMediaSelectControl extends javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.media.Control, javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl
```

## Description

DVBMediaSelectControl extends MediaSelectControl allowing the selection of different kinds of content in a running Player. The extension is to allow the selection in a single operation of all the media service components in a service without needing knowledge about which media service components are present in that service.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.2

## See Also:

```
javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl
```

## Methods

---

### selectServiceMediaComponents(Locator)

```
public void selectServiceMediaComponents(javax.tv.locator.Locator l)
    throws InvalidLocatorException, InvalidServiceComponentException, Insufficient
    ResourcesException
```

Selects for presentation the media service components from a service. If some content is currently playing, it is replaced in its entirety by the media service components from the specified service. This is an asynchronous operation that is completed upon receipt of a MediaSelectEvent. Note that for most selections that imply a different time base or otherwise change synchronization relationships, a RestartingEvent will be posted by the Player. The rules for deciding which media service components shall be presented are defined in the main body of this specification.

#### Parameters:

l - the locator for a service

#### Throws:

javax.tv.locator.InvalidLocatorException - If the locator provided does not reference a service.

javax.tv.service.selection.InvalidServiceComponentException - If the locator provided does not reference a service which contains at least one media service component

javax.tv.service.selection.InsufficientResourcesException - If the operation cannot be completed due to a lack of system resources.

# org.dvb.media NoComponentSelectedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class NoComponentSelectedEvent extends javax.media.StopEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--javax.media.ControllerEvent
|
+--javax.media.TransitionEvent
|
+--javax.media.StopEvent
|
+--org.dvb.media.NoComponentSelectedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
javax.media.MediaEvent, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is generated whenever presentation of a stream stops because there are no selected components to present. One example of this would be use of the `javax.tv.media.MediaSelectControl.remove` method to remove all components of a service. Generation of this event informs the application that the Player is no longer presenting any content.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### **NoComponentSelectedEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)**

```
public NoComponentSelectedEvent(javax.media.Controller source, int previous, int current,
    int target, javax.media.MediaLocator stream)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

- `source` - the controller which was presenting the service
- `stream` - the locator of the stream whose presentation has stopped
- `previous` - the previous state of the controller
- `current` - the current state of the controller
- `target` - the target state of the controller

## Methods

---

### **getStream()**

```
public javax.media.MediaLocator getStream()
```

This method returns the stream whose presentation has stopped

**Returns:**

the locator for the stream concerned



# org.dvb.media PresentationChangedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class PresentationChangedEvent extends javax.media.ControllerEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--javax.media.ControllerEvent
|
+--org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
javax.media.MediaEvent, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is generated whenever the content being presented by a player changes for reasons outside the control of the application. The state of the player does not change - only the content being presented.

## Fields

---

### CA\_FAILURE

```
public static final int CA_FAILURE
```

Presentation changed due an action by the CA subsystem. Alternate content is being played, not the content selected by the user (e.g. adverts in place of a scrambled service)

**See Also:**

[getReason\(\)](#)

---

### CA\_RETURNED

```
public static final int CA_RETURNED
```

Presentation changed due to an action by the CA subsystem. Normal content is now being presented as requested by the user. This reason code is used when the CA subsystem commands the MHP terminal to switch back to the normal presentation after having previously selected an alternate content.

**See Also:**

[getReason\(\)](#)

---

### STREAM\_UNAVAILABLE

```
public static final int STREAM_UNAVAILABLE
```

The stream being presented is no longer available in the transport stream.

**See Also:**

[getReason\(\)](#)

## Constructors

---

### PresentationChangedEvent(Controller, MediaLocator, int)

```
public PresentationChangedEvent(javax.media.Controller source,  
                                javax.media.MediaLocator stream, int reason)
```

Constructor for the event

**Parameters:**

`source` - the controller whose presentation changed

`stream` - the stream now being presented.

`reason` - the reason for the change encoded as one of the constants in this class

## Methods

---

### getReason()

```
public int getReason()
```

This method returns the reason why access has been withdrawn.

**Returns:**

the reason for the change specified when the event was constructed

---

### getStream()

```
public javax.media.MediaLocator getStream()
```

This method returns the locator for the stream now being presented.

**Returns:**

the locator for the stream now being presented

# org.dvb.media ServiceRemovedEvent

## Declaration

public class **ServiceRemovedEvent** extends javax.media.StopEvent

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--javax.media.ControllerEvent
        |
        +--javax.media.TransitionEvent
            |
            +--javax.media.StopEvent
                |
                +--org.dvb.media.ServiceRemovedEvent
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

javax.media.MediaEvent, java.io.Serializable

## Description

This event is generated whenever access to a service stops because the service concerned has been removed from the network. Generation of this event informs the application that the Player is no longer presenting any content.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### ServiceRemovedEvent(Controller)

```
public ServiceRemovedEvent(javax.media.Controller source)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the controller which was presenting the service

---

### ServiceRemovedEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)

```
public ServiceRemovedEvent(javax.media.Controller source, int previous, int current,
    int target, javax.media.MediaLocator stream)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the controller which was presenting the service

`stream` - the locator of the stream which was removed from the network

`previous` - the previous state of the controller

`current` - the current state of the controller

`target` - the target state of the controller

## Methods

---

### **getStream()**

```
public javax.media.MediaLocator getStream()
```

This method returns the stream which was removed from the network

**Returns:**

the stream concerned

# org.dvb.media StopByResourceLossEvent

## Declaration

```
public class StopByResourceLossEvent extends javax.media.StopEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--javax.media.ControllerEvent
|
+--javax.media.TransitionEvent
|
+--javax.media.StopEvent
|
+--org.dvb.media.StopByResourceLossEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
javax.media.MediaEvent, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is generated whenever presentation of a stream stops because the player has lost so many resources that it cannot continue. Generation of this event informs the application that the Player is no longer presenting any content.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### StopByResourceLossEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)

```
public StopByResourceLossEvent(javax.media.Controller source, int previous, int current,
    int target, javax.media.MediaLocator stream)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

- `source` - the controller which was presenting the service
- `stream` - the locator of the stream which was being presented
- `previous` - the previous state of the controller
- `current` - the current state of the controller
- `target` - the target state of the controller

## Methods

---

### **getStream()**

```
public javax.media.MediaLocator getStream()
```

This method returns the stream which was being presented

**Returns:**

the locator for the stream concerned

# org.dvb.media SubtitleAvailableEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SubtitleAvailableEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.SubtitleAvailableEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Report that subtitles are available to be presented having been unavailable. This event is not generated on service selection or other forms of 'zapping'. Its generation is restricted to changes in the composition of the subtitle aspects of the same broadcast stream.

## Constructors

---

### SubtitleAvailableEvent(Object)

```
public SubtitleAvailableEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor.

#### Parameters:

*source* - the source of the event. The platform shall always pass in the JMF player presenting the subtitles.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Return the JMF player which is the source of the event.

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `EventObject`

#### Returns:

the source of the event. This shall be the JMF player passed in to the constructor of the event.

# org.dvb.media SubtitleListener

## Declaration

```
public interface SubtitleListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

Report that a subtitle event has happened.

## Methods

---

### subtitleStatusChanged(EventObject)

```
public void subtitleStatusChanged(java.util.EventObject event)
```

Report a subtitle event has happened.

#### Parameters:

`event` - the event which happened



# org.dvb.media SubtitleNotAvailableEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SubtitleNotAvailableEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.SubtitleNotAvailableEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Inform an application that a subtitle stream has vanished from the network. This event is not generated on service selection or other forms of 'zapping'. Its generation is restricted to changes in the composition of the subtitle aspects of the same broadcast stream.

## Constructors

---

### SubtitleNotAvailableEvent(Object)

```
public SubtitleNotAvailableEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor.

#### Parameters:

*source* - the source of the event. The platform shall always pass in the JMF player presenting the subtitles.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Return the source of the event.

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `EventObject`

#### Returns:

the source of the event. This shall be the JMF player passed in to the constructor of the event.

# org.dvb.media SubtitleNotSelectedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SubtitleNotSelectedEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.SubtitleNotSelectedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Report that subtitles are not now selected. Even if subtitles are available in the network, they will not be presented. This event is generated when the combination of end user control of subtitles through the navigator and application control of subtitles through `SubtitlingLanguageControl.setSubtitling` changes whether subtitles are to be presented if they are available. It is not generated for changes in the underlying availability of subtitles even if those cause changes in whether subtitles are presented or not.

## Constructors

---

### SubtitleNotSelectedEvent(Object)

```
public SubtitleNotSelectedEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event. The platform shall always pass in the JMF player presenting the subtitles.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Return the source of the event

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `EventObject`

#### Returns:

the source of the event. This shall be the JMF player passed in to the constructor of the event.

# org.dvb.media SubtitleSelectedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class SubtitleSelectedEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.SubtitleSelectedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Report that subtitles are now selected. If subtitles are also available then they will be presented. This event is generated when the combination of end user control of subtitles through the navigator and application control of subtitles through `SubtitlingLanguageControl.setSubtitling` changes whether subtitles are to be presented if they are available. It is not generated for changes in the underlying availability of subtitles even if those cause changes in whether subtitles are presented or not.

## Constructors

---

### SubtitleSelectedEvent(Object)

```
public SubtitleSelectedEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event. The platform shall always pass in the JMF player presenting the subtitles.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Return the source of the event

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `EventObject`

#### Returns:

the source of the event. This shall be the JMF player passed in to the constructor of the event.

# org.dvb.media SubtitlingEventControl

## Declaration

```
public interface SubtitlingEventControl extends org.davic.media.SubtitlingLanguageControl
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.media.Control, org.davic.media.LanguageControl,  
org.davic.media.SubtitlingLanguageControl
```

## Description

Allow applications to register and unregister their interest in events related to the availability and presentation of subtitles.

## Methods

---

### addSubtitleListener(SubtitleListener)

```
public void addSubtitleListener(org.dvb.media.SubtitleListener l)
```

Add a listener for subtitle events

#### Parameters:

l - the listener to report the events to

---

### removeSubtitleListener(SubtitleListener)

```
public void removeSubtitleListener(org.dvb.media.SubtitleListener l)
```

Remove a listener for subtitle events

#### Parameters:

l - the listener to remove

# org.dvb.media VideoFormatControl

## Declaration

```
public interface VideoFormatControl extends javax.media.Control
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
    javax.media.Control
```

## Description

This provides a means for applications to get information associated with the format and aspect ratio of the video being presented to the user. This control will only be available for Players presenting MPEG-2 video streams.

It is important to note that due to different video and display formats (and user preferences), not all of the full video frame may be displayed. Similarly, it may not always be possible to map video and graphics with perfect accuracy.

## Fields

---

### AFD\_14\_9

```
public static final int AFD_14_9
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 14:9 (centre)

---

### AFD\_14\_9\_TOP

```
public static final int AFD_14_9_TOP
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 14:9 (top)

---

### AFD\_16\_9

```
public static final int AFD_16_9
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 16:9 (centre)

---

### AFD\_16\_9\_SP\_14\_9

```
public static final int AFD_16_9_SP_14_9
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 16:9 (with shoot & protect 14:9 centre)

---

### AFD\_16\_9\_SP\_4\_3

```
public static final int AFD_16_9_SP_4_3
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 16:9 (with shoot & protect 4:3 centre)

---

**AFD\_16\_9\_TOP**

```
public static final int AFD_16_9_TOP
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 16:9 (top)

---

**AFD\_4\_3**

```
public static final int AFD_4_3
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 4:3 (centre)

---

**AFD\_4\_3\_SP\_14\_9**

```
public static final int AFD_4_3_SP_14_9
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of 4:3 (with shoot & protect 14:9 centre)

---

**AFD\_GT\_16\_9**

```
public static final int AFD_GT_16_9
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description of greater than 16:9 (centre)

---

**AFD\_NOT\_PRESENT**

```
public static final int AFD_NOT_PRESENT
```

Constant showing an MPEG active format description is not present

---

**AFD\_SAME**

```
public static final int AFD_SAME
```

Constant representing an MPEG active format description that is the same as the coded frame

---

**ASPECT\_RATIO\_16\_9**

```
public static final int ASPECT_RATIO_16_9
```

Constant representing an aspect ratio of 16:9

---

**ASPECT\_RATIO\_2\_21\_1**

```
public static final int ASPECT_RATIO_2_21_1
```

Constant representing an aspect ratio of 2.21:1

---

**ASPECT\_RATIO\_4\_3**

```
public static final int ASPECT_RATIO_4_3
```

Constant representing an aspect ratio of 4:3

---

---

**ASPECT\_RATIO\_UNKNOWN**

```
public static final int ASPECT_RATIO_UNKNOWN
```

Constant representing an unknown aspect ratio

---

**DAR\_16\_9**

```
public static final int DAR_16_9
```

Constant representing a display aspect ratio of 16:9

---

**DAR\_4\_3**

```
public static final int DAR_4_3
```

Constant representing a display aspect ratio of 4:3

---

**DFC\_PLATFORM**

```
public static final int DFC_PLATFORM
```

Control over the decoder format conversions is returned to being managed by the platform. This is the same as the value used if no MHP application has set a video transformation. It is not required to correspond to a single decoder format conversion and may change over time as the video input format & signalling change. This constant can only be used to set the decoder format conversion. Reading the decoder format conversion shall always return the DFC used at the time concerned.

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_16\_9\_ZOOM**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_16_9_ZOOM
```

The central 16:9 letterbox area of the 4:3 720x576 input grid is expanded to fill the 16:9 output frame.

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_CCO**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_CCO
```

A 4:3 central part out of the 720x576 input 16:9 frame is transferred into a 720x576 4:3 output frame

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_FULL**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_FULL
```

The full 720x576 frame is transferred (this may be either 4:3 or 16:9; part of this may be black, e.g. in the "pillar box" cases)

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_14\_9**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_LB_14_9
```

The 720x576 input grid is transferred into a 14:9 LB in a 4:3 frame

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_16\_9**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_LB_16_9
```

The 720x576 input grid is transferred into a 16:9 letterbox in a 4:3 frame

---

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1\_ON\_16\_9**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_LB_2_21_1_ON_16_9
```

The 720x576 input grid is transferred into a 2.21:1 letterbox in a 16:9 frame.

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1\_ON\_4\_3**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_LB_2_21_1_ON_4_3
```

The 720x576 input grid is transferred into a 2.21:1 letterbox in a 4:3 frame.

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_NONE**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_NONE
```

Decoder format conversion is inactive

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_PAN\_SCAN**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_PAN_SCAN
```

A 4:3 part out of the 720x576 input 16:9 or 2.21:1 frame is transferred into a 720x576 4:3 output frame. The horizontal position of this part is determined by pan&scan vectors from the MPEG video stream.

---

**DFC\_PROCESSING\_UNKNOWN**

```
public static final int DFC_PROCESSING_UNKNOWN
```

Constant representing an unknown format conversion being performed by the decoder

## Methods

---

**addVideoFormatListener(VideoFormatListener)**

```
public void addVideoFormatListener(org.dvb.media.VideoFormatListener l)
```

Add a listener for VideoFormatChangedEvents

**Parameters:**

l - the listener to add

---

**getActiveFormatDefinition()**

```
public int getActiveFormatDefinition()
```

Return the value of the active\_format field of the MPEG Active Format Description of the video if it is transmitted (one of the constants AFD\_\* above). If this field is not available then AFD\_NOT\_PRESENT is returned. The constant values for the constants representing the Active Format Description should be identical to the values specified in ETR154, annex B.

**Returns:**

the value of the active\_format field of the MPEG Active Format Description of the video if it is transmitted. If this field is not available, or the video is not MPEG, then AFD\_NOT\_PRESENT is returned.



---

**getAspectRatio()**

```
public int getAspectRatio()
```

Return the aspect ratio of the video as it is transmitted. If the aspect ratio is not known, ASPECT\_RATIO\_UNKNOWN is returned

**Returns:**

the aspect ratio of the video

---

**getDecoderFormatConversion()**

```
public int getDecoderFormatConversion()
```

Return a value representing what format conversion is being done by the decoder in the platform (one of the constants DFC\_\* above). A receiver may implement only a subset of the available options. This decoder format conversion may be active or not depending upon the mode of operation.

**Returns:**

the decoder format conversion being performed or DFC\_PROCESSING\_UNKNOWN if this is not known

---

**getDisplayAspectRatio()**

```
public int getDisplayAspectRatio()
```

Return the aspect ratio of the display device connected to this MHP decoder (one of the constants DAR\_\* above)

**Returns:**

the aspect ratio of the display device connected to the decoder

---

**getVideoTransformation(int)**

```
public org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation getVideoTransformation(int dfc)
```

This method returns a VideoTransformation object that corresponds with the specified Decoder Format Conversion when applied to the currently selected video. If the specified Decoder Format Conversion is not supported for the currently selected video, then this method returns null.

**Parameters:**

dfc - the Decoder Format Conversion (one of the DFC\_\* constants specified in this interface)

**Returns:**

the video transformation, or null if the specified Decoder Format Conversion is not supported for the currently selected video.

---

**isPlatform()**

```
public boolean isPlatform()
```

Test if control over the decoder format conversions is being managed by the platform as defined by DFC\_PLATFORM.

**Returns:**

true if control over the decoder format conversions is being managed by the platform, false otherwise

**See Also:**

[DFC\\_PLATFORM](#)

---

**removeVideoFormatListener(VideoFormatListener)**

```
public void removeVideoFormatListener(org.dvb.media.VideoFormatListener l)
```

Remove a listener for VideoFormatChangedEvents

**Parameters:**

1 - the listener to remove

# org.dvb.media VideoFormatEvent

## Declaration

```
public abstract class VideoFormatEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.media.VideoFormatEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent, AspectRatioChangedEvent,  
DFCChangedEvent
```

## Description

The base class for all other events relating to changes in video format

## Constructors

---

### VideoFormatEvent(Object)

```
public VideoFormatEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Constructor

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event. The platform shall always pass in the JMF Player presenting the video whose format changed.

# org.dvb.media VideoFormatListener

## Declaration

```
public interface VideoFormatListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

The listener used to receive video format events

## Methods

---

### receiveVideoFormatEvent(VideoFormatEvent)

```
public void receiveVideoFormatEvent(org.dvb.media.VideoFormatEvent anEvent)
```

receive a VideoFormatEvent

#### Parameters:

`anEvent` - the VideoFormatEvent that has been received

# org.dvb.media VideoPresentationControl

## Declaration

```
public interface VideoPresentationControl extends javax.media.Control
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.media.Control
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

```
BackgroundVideoPresentationControl
```

## Description

A control to support setting and querying the video presentation.

Note: For a component-based player the scaling and positioning of the video is done by manipulating the corresponding AWT component. The VideoPresentationControl only allows for the setting of the clipping region.

Note: If the hardware supports the positioning of interlaced video on even lines only (when counting from 0), then a component-based player is allowed to position the top of the video one line below where it should be.

For a background player there is the BackgroundVideoPresentationControl that allows for the setting of the clipping region, the position and the scaling of the video in one atomic action.

## Fields

---

### POS\_CAP\_FULL

```
public static final byte POS_CAP_FULL
```

Constant representing that the video can be positioned anywhere on the screen, even if a part of the video is off screen as a result of that.

---

### POS\_CAP\_FULL\_EVEN\_LINES

```
public static final byte POS_CAP_FULL_EVEN_LINES
```

n Constant representing that the video can be positioned anywhere on the screen, even if a part of the video is off screen as a result of that, with the restriction that the field order is respected. This implies that interlaced video can be positioned on even lines only (when counting from 0).

---

### POS\_CAP\_FULL\_EVEN\_LINES\_IF\_ENTIRE\_VIDEO\_ON\_SCREEN

```
public static final byte POS_CAP_FULL_EVEN_LINES_IF_ENTIRE_VIDEO_ON_SCREEN
```

Constant representing that the video can be positioned anywhere on screen as long as all the video is on screen, with the restriction that the field order is respected. This implies that interlaced video can be positioned on even lines only (when counting from 0).

---

**POS\_CAP\_FULL\_IF\_ENTIRE\_VIDEO\_ON\_SCREEN**

```
public static final byte POS_CAP_FULL_IF_ENTIRE_VIDEO_ON_SCREEN
```

Constant representing that the video can be positioned anywhere on screen as long as all the video is on screen.

---

**POS\_CAP\_OTHER**

```
public static final byte POS_CAP_OTHER
```

Constant representing that the video positioning capability cannot be expressed by another POS\_CAP\_\* constant.

## Methods

---

**getActiveVideoArea()**

```
public org.havi.ui.HScreenRectangle getActiveVideoArea()
```

This method returns the size and location of the active video area. The active video area excludes any “bars” used for letterboxing or pillarboxing that the receiver knows about. Bars that are included in the broadcast stream and not signalled by active format descriptors are included in the active video area. The active video area may be larger/smaller than the screen, and may possibly be offset. The offsets will be negative if the origin of the active video area is above/left of the top, left corner of the screen. In case of pan&scan, the value returned may vary over time. This method only describes the relationship between the active video and the screen. It does not describe which portion of the screen is displaying the video.

Note: This method includes any video scaling.

**Returns:**

an HScreenRectangle representing the active video area in the normalised coordinate space.

---

**getActiveVideoAreaOnScreen()**

```
public org.havi.ui.HScreenRectangle getActiveVideoAreaOnScreen()
```

This method returns the size and location of the active video area on-screen. The active video area excludes any “bars” used for letterboxing or pillarboxing that the receiver knows about. Bars that are included in the broadcast stream and not signalled by active format descriptors are included in the active video area. The active video area on-screen may be smaller than the area of the screen, and may possibly be offset a positive amount. This method only describes the area on-screen where active video is being presented. It does not really describe which part of the video is being shown on-screen. This is especially true for pan&scan.

Note: This method includes any video scaling.

**Returns:**

an HScreenRectangle representing the active video area on-screen in the normalised coordinate space.

---

**getClipRegion()**

```
public java.awt.Rectangle getClipRegion()
```

This method returns the area of the decoded video that will be displayed. If clipping is not supported, the dimensions of the bounding box will be the same as the displayed video. Note that when the

MHP terminal is in `pan & scan mode`, the return value of this method will be out of date almost as soon as the method has returned.

**Returns:**

area of the decoded video that will be displayed. The coordinate space used to express the region is that of the decoded video after possible ETR154 up-sampling.

---

**getHorizontalScalingFactors()**

```
public float[] getHorizontalScalingFactors()
```

This method gives information about the supported discrete horizontal scaling factors in case arbitrary horizontal scaling is not supported.

**Returns:**

an array with the supported discrete horizontal scaling factors (including the scaling factor 1), sorted in ascending order. null is returned when arbitrary horizontal scaling is supported.

---

**getInputVideoSize()**

```
public java.awt.Dimension getInputVideoSize()
```

This method returns the dimensions of the video before any scaling has taken place (but after ETR154 up-sampling). On 50Hz standard definition systems this method always returns 720x576.

**Returns:**

the size of the decoded video before any scaling has taken place (but after ETR154 up-sampling)

---

**getPositioningCapability()**

```
public byte getPositioningCapability()
```

This method gives information about how the video can be positioned on screen.

**Returns:**

the positioning capability for the currently selected video as one of the POS\_CAP\_\* constants.

---

**getTotalVideoArea()**

```
public org.havi.ui.HScreenRectangle getTotalVideoArea()
```

This method returns a relative size and location of the total video area, including any "bars" used for letterboxing or pillarboxing that are included in the broadcast stream, but excluding any "bars" introduced as a result of video filtering. This may be larger or smaller than the size of the physical display device. This method only describes the relationship between the total video and the screen. It does not describe which portion of the screen is displaying the video.

Note: This method includes any video scaling.

**Returns:**

an HScreenRectangle representing the total video area in the normalised coordinate space.

---

**getTotalVideoAreaOnScreen()**

```
public org.havi.ui.HScreenRectangle getTotalVideoAreaOnScreen()
```

This method returns a relative size and location of the total video area on-screen, including any "bars" used for letterboxing or pillarboxing that are included in the broadcast stream, but excluding any "bars" introduced as a result of video filtering. This method only describes the area on-screen where total video is being presented. This does not really describe which part of the video is being

shown on-screen. This is especially true for pan&scan.

Note: This method includes any video scaling.

**Returns:**

an HScreenRectangle representing the total video area on-screen in the normalised coordinate space.

---

### getVerticalScalingFactors()

```
public float[] getVerticalScalingFactors()
```

This method gives information about the supported discrete vertical scaling factors in case arbitrary vertical scaling is not supported.

**Returns:**

an array with the supported discrete vertical scaling factors (including the scaling factor 1), sorted in ascending order. null is returned when arbitrary vertical scaling is supported.

---

### getVideoSize()

```
public java.awt.Dimension getVideoSize()
```

This method returns the size of the decoded video as it is being presented to the user. It takes scaling and clipping into account.

**Returns:**

the size of the decoded video as it is being presented to the user

---

### setClipRegion(Rectangle)

```
public java.awt.Rectangle setClipRegion(java.awt.Rectangle clipRect)
```

Set the region of the decoded video that will be displayed. If clipping is not supported, this method has no effect. If the bounding box extends beyond the decoded video, the results are implementation dependent. By default, the clipping region is set to the dimensions of the decoded video. This method returns the bounding box of the clipping region that was actually set. Implementations may approximate the requested rectangle if they have restrictions on video clipping.

If the player is a component-based player (as opposed to a background player), then the top left corner of the clip region will be aligned with the top left corner of the java.awt.Component returned by the method javax.media.Player.getVisualComponent(). Hence changing the position of the clip region within the video moves the video with respect to the coordinate space used by java.awt.

**Parameters:**

clipRect - the bounding box of the clipping region. The coordinate space used to express the region is that of the decoded video after possible ETR154 up-sampling.

**Returns:**

the set clipping region. If the requested clipping region is supported exactly, then the input parameter clipRect is returned, otherwise a newly created object will be returned.

---

### supportsArbitraryHorizontalScaling()

```
public float[] supportsArbitraryHorizontalScaling()
```

This method gives information about whether arbitrary horizontal scaling is supported for the currently playing video. If arbitrary horizontal scaling is supported, then an array with two elements is returned. The first element returns the smallest allowed scaling factor (e.g. 0.5) and the second element returns the largest allowed scaling factor (e.g. 4). If arbitrary horizontal scaling is not



supported, null is returned. In that case the method `getHorizontalScalingFactors` can be used to query which discrete scaling factors are supported.

**Returns:**

an array with the minimum and maximum allowed horizontal scaling factor, or null if arbitrary horizontal scaling is not supported.

---

**supportsArbitraryVerticalScaling()**

```
public float[] supportsArbitraryVerticalScaling()
```

This method gives information about whether arbitrary vertical scaling is supported for the currently playing video. If arbitrary vertical scaling is supported, then an array with two elements is returned. The first element returns the smallest allowed scaling factor (e.g. 0.5) and the second element returns the largest allowed scaling factor (e.g. 2). If arbitrary vertical scaling is not supported, null is returned. In that case the method `getVerticalScalingFactors` can be used to query which discrete scaling factors are supported.

**Returns:**

an array with the minimum and maximum allowed vertical scaling factor, or null if arbitrary vertical scaling is not supported.

---

**supportsClipping()**

```
public boolean supportsClipping()
```

Test if the decoder supports clipping

**Returns:**

true if and only if the decoder supports clipping.

# org.dvb.media

# VideoTransformation

## Declaration

```
public class VideoTransformation

java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation
```

## Description

VideoTransformation objects express video transformations, i.e. the clipping, the horizontal and vertical scaling and the position of the video. All transformations are to be applied after possible ETR154 up-sampling.

Note: Instances of VideoTransformation can represent pan and scan, but an application cannot create such instances itself. An application can get a VideoTransformation representing pan and scan, by calling the VideoFormatControl.getVideoTransformation() method with the pan and scan Decoder Format Conversion constant.

## Constructors

---

### VideoTransformation()

```
public VideoTransformation()
```

Creates a VideoTransformation object with default parameters. Clipping is disabled, both the horizontal and the vertical scaling factors are 1, and the video position is (0,0) in the normalised coordinate space.

---

### VideoTransformation(Rectangle, float, float, HScreenPoint)

```
public VideoTransformation(java.awt.Rectangle clipRect, float horizontalScalingFactor,
    float verticalScalingFactor, org.havi.ui.HScreenPoint location)
```

Creates a VideoTransformation object with the supplied parameters.

#### Parameters:

`clipRect` - the bounding box of the clipping region. The coordinate space used to express the region is that of the decoded video after possible ETR154 up-sampling. A non-null ClipRect enables clipping. A null ClipRect disables it.

`horizontalScalingFactor` - the horizontal scaling factor.

`verticalScalingFactor` - the vertical scaling factor.

`location` - the location of the video on the screen in the normalised coordinate space.

## Methods

---

### **getClipRegion()**

```
public java.awt.Rectangle getClipRegion()
```

Gets the clipping region.

**Returns:**

the bounding box of the clipping region. The coordinate space used to express the region is that of the decoded video after possible ETR154 up-sampling. null is returned if this video transformation represents pan and scan or if clipping is disabled.

---

### **getScalingFactors()**

```
public float[] getScalingFactors()
```

Gets the horizontal and vertical scaling factors.

**Returns:**

an array with two elements. The first element contains the horizontal scaling factor, the second element the vertical scaling factor.

---

### **getVideoPosition()**

```
public org.havi.ui.HScreenPoint getVideoPosition()
```

Returns the video position.

**Returns:**

the location of the video on the screen in the normalised coordinate space.

---

### **isPanAndScan()**

```
public boolean isPanAndScan()
```

Returns whether this video transformation represents pan and scan.

**Returns:**

true is this video transformation represents pan and scan, false otherwise.

---

### **setClipRegion(Rectangle)**

```
public void setClipRegion(java.awt.Rectangle clipRect)
```

Sets the clipping region.

If this video transformation represents pan and scan, then it will no longer represent pan and scan when this method is called. A non-null ClipRect enables clipping. A null ClipRect disables it.

**Parameters:**

`clipRect` - the bounding box of the clipping region. The coordinate space used to express the region is that of the decoded video after possible ETR154 up-sampling.

---

**setScaleFactors(float, float)**

```
public void setScaleFactors(float horizontalScalingFactor, float verticalScalingFactor)
```

Sets the horizontal and vertical scaling factors.

**Parameters:**

`horizontalScalingFactor` - the horizontal scaling factor.

`verticalScalingFactor` - the vertical scaling factor.

---

**setVideoPosition(HScreenPoint)**

```
public void setVideoPosition(org.havi.ui.HScreenPoint location)
```

Sets the video position.

**Parameters:**

`location` - the location of the video on the screen in the normalised coordinate space.

---

# Annex O (normative): Integration of the JavaTV SI API and DVB SI

## O.1 Introduction

This section describes how the JavaTV Service Information API as described in [51] can be mapped to the data structures of DVB Service Information as defined in ETSI EN 300 468 [4]. Secondly this document describes how the JavaTV API and the DVB SI API (as described in annex M, "(normative): SI Access API" on page 570) can be integrated.

## O.2 Mapping of the JavaTV SI API to DVB SI

This section describes for every relevant Java interface and method in the JavaTV SI API how it is mapped to the DVB Service Information.

When adding a listener to monitor for changes in an SI table (or data carried in an SI table), an event shall not be generated for the current version of that table (or data) found in the network at the time the listener is added. Events shall only be generated for changes following the detection of that current version.

### O.2.1 javax.tv.service.Service

MHP terminals normally maintain a stored list of "installed" services discovered through the process explained in Z.5, "How does the platform know which services are available?" on page 910. The Service interface shall represent the entries in this list and also those services which are discovered in the network but which are not yet stored in this list (see O.2.8.5, "getService" on page 704).

Depending on the MHP terminal implementation, the objects implementing this interface may or may not implement the ServiceNumber interface as well. Furthermore, it is allowed that even within the same MHP terminal implementation, some objects implementing the Service interface implement the ServiceNumber while other objects implement only the Service interface.

Objects implementing this interfaces and representing DVB services shall also implement the `org.dvb.si.TextualServiceIdentifierQuery` interface.

The methods are mapped as follows:

#### O.2.1.1 getName

Returns the name of the service as stored in the MHP terminal. Depending on the MHP terminal implementation, the end user may have the possibility to edit these names according to his preferences. If the contents of this field are retrieved by the MHP terminal by default from DVB SI, it is recommended that the MHP terminal uses the abbreviated form of the service name from the Service descriptor (see 4.6.1 "Use of control codes in names" in ETSI ETR 211 [11]).

#### O.2.1.2 getServiceType

Returns the ServiceType according to the mapping defined in section O.2.3, "javax.tv.service.ServiceType" on page 702.

### O.2.2 javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceComponent

The ServiceComponent interface provides the information contained in the Component descriptors, Multilingual component descriptors or Data broadcast descriptors in the EIT.

#### O.2.2.1 getComponentName

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a multilingual component descriptor or data broadcast descriptor in the EIT, return the description in that language. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the descriptions available in the EIT.

### O.2.2.2 getAssociatedLanguage

Returns the [ISO 639.2 \[66\]](#) language code indicating the language of the component (i.e. not necessarily the selected language for the name returned by `getName ( )`) from the component descriptor, multilingual component descriptor or data broadcast descriptor.

### O.2.2.3 getStreamType

Returns the stream type according to the mapping from the `stream_content` field and the `component_type` field of the Component descriptor or the Data broadcast descriptor to the JavaTV stream types according to [O.2.4](#), "[javax.tv.service.navigation.StreamType](#)" on page 702.

## O.2.3 javax.tv.service.ServiceType

The DVB SI service types are defined in Table 61 of [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#). These should be mapped to the JavaTV service types as follows.

**Table O.1 : Mapping DVB to JavaTV service types**

| DVB Service type code                | DVB Service Type Description | JavaTV Service Type |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 0x01                                 | Digital television service   | DIGITAL_TV          |
| 0x02                                 | Digital radio sound service  | DIGITAL_RADIO       |
| 0x03                                 | Teletext service             | DATA_BROADCAST      |
| 0x04                                 | NVOD Reference service       | NVOD_REFERENCE      |
| 0x05                                 | NVOD time-shifted service    | NVOD_TIME_SHIFTED   |
| 0x06                                 | Mosaic service               | DIGITAL_TV          |
| 0x07                                 | PAL coded signal             | ANALOG_TV           |
| 0x08                                 | SECAM coded signal           | ANALOG_TV           |
| 0x09                                 | D/D2-MAC                     | ANALOG_TV           |
| 0x0A                                 | FM Radio                     | ANALOG_RADIO        |
| 0x0B                                 | NTSC coded signal            | ANALOG_TV           |
| 0x0C                                 | Data broadcast service       | DATA_BROADCAST      |
| 0x10                                 | MHP application service      | DATA_APPLICATION    |
| 0x00,<br>0x0D...0x0F,<br>0x11...0xFF |                              | UNKNOWN             |

## O.2.4 javax.tv.service.navigation.StreamType

The DVB SI `stream_content` and `component_type` values are defined in Table 15 of [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#). These should be mapped to the JavaTV Stream types as follows. If the component does not have an associated Component descriptor, but a Data broadcast descriptor, the stream type DATA shall be used.

**Table O.2 : Mapping DVB stream & component types to JavaTV**

| DVB stream_content | DVB component_type             | JavaTV Stream type |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| 0x01               | 0x00...0xff                    | VIDEO              |
| 0x02               | 0x00...0xff                    | AUDIO              |
| 0x03               | 0x01, 0x10...0x13, 0x20...0x23 | SUBTITLES          |
| 0x03               | 0x02                           | DATA               |
| 0x03               | 0x00, 0x14...0x1F, 0x24...0xFF | UNKNOWN            |
| 0x04...0x0F        | 0x00...0xFF                    | UNKNOWN            |

## O.2.5 `javax.tv.service.SIElement`

This interface is implemented by objects implementing the `Network`, `Bouquet`, `TransportStream`, `ServiceDetails`, `ServiceComponent` and `ProgramEvent` interfaces.

### O.2.5.1 `getServiceInformationType`

This method shall return the `DVB_SI ServiceInformationType`.

## O.2.6 `javax.tv.service.SIManager`

### O.2.6.1 `getSupportedDimensions`

The parental rating descriptor defined in DVB SI standardizes one rating scheme that is based on age. To describe this DVB defined rating scheme, the `getSupportedDimensions` shall return an array that contains the string "DVB Age based rating".

### O.2.6.2 `getRatingDimension`

When given the string "DVB Age based rating", this method shall return an object implementing the `RatingDimension` interface as described in section O.2.10, "["javax.tv.service.RatingDimension" on page 704](#)".

### O.2.6.3 `retrieveSIElement`

When passed a locator that points to a service, an object implementing the `ServiceDetails` interface shall be returned. Locators representing program events are not supported and shall fail with an `SIRequestFailureType(INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES)`.

Other types of locators are supported as defined.

NOTE: program events can still be retrieved for specific times using the methods in `javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramSchedule`.

### O.2.6.4 `getTransports`

The object returned by this method shall implement the `Transport` interface as described in O.2.12, "["javax.tv.service.transport.Transport" on page 705](#)".

### O.2.6.5 `filterServices`

Filtering of Services shall be supported with `ServiceFilters`. The `SIElementFilter` is required to be supported as defined in O.2.7, "["javax.tv.service.navigation.SIElementFilter" on page 703](#)".

### O.2.6.6 `retrieveProgramEvent`

This method shall fail with a `SIRequestFailureType(INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES)`.

NOTE: program events can still be retrieved for specific times using the methods in `javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramSchedule`.

## O.2.7 `javax.tv.service.navigation.SIElementFilter`

The `SIElementFilter` allows filtering of Services based on another `SIElement`. This filter type shall be supported for the `Network` and `TransportStream` objects. For other `SIElement` objects, the constructor may throw `FilterNotSupportedException`.

## O.2.8 `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceDetails`

The `ServiceDetails` interface represents the information regarding the service as retrieved from the broadcast DVB SI. The object implementing this interface for DVB SI implements the `CAIdentification` interface according to the mapping defined in section O.2.9, "["javax.tv.service.navigation.CAIdentification" on page 704](#)". These objects shall not implement the `ServiceNumber` interface.

### O.2.8.1 getLongName

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a multilingual service descriptor in the SDT, return the service name in that language. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection between the descriptors available in the SDT.

### O.2.8.2 getServiceType

Returns the `ServiceType` according to the mapping defined in section O.2.3, "`javax.tv.service.ServiceType`" on page 702.

### O.2.8.3 retrieveServiceDescription

Shall always result in a `notifyFailure` of the `SIRequestor` object being called with the `DATA_UNAVAILABLE` `SIRequestFailureType`, as DVB SI does not include a service description.

### O.2.8.4 retrieveComponents

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a multilingual component descriptors or data broadcast descriptors in the EIT present/following table then the information for the `ServiceComponents` shall be retrieved from those descriptors. Otherwise the information for the `ServiceComponents` shall be returned from an implementation dependent selection between the descriptors available in the EIT present/following table.

### O.2.8.5 getService

Calling this method for a `ServiceDetails` instance whose corresponding service is not in the "installed" services list (i.e. a new service found in the SDT which would not previously have been returned from `SIManager.FilterServices(null)`) shall return a `Service` instance and shall not return null. The implementation is responsible for creating this `Service` instance. It is implementation dependent whether this `Service` instance is also "installed" and hence whether or not it is returned by `FilterServices(null)`. This `Service` instance shall have no different behaviour from "installed" services apart from this.

## O.2.9 javax.tv.service.navigation.CAIdentification

This interface shall be implemented by objects implementing the `ServiceDetails`, `ProgramEvent` or `Bouquet` interface.

### O.2.9.1 getCASystemIds

Returns the array of integer values containing the `CA_system_ids` from the CA identifier descriptor. If the CA identifier descriptor is not present, returns an empty array.

### O.2.9.2 isFree

When implemented in an object implementing the `ServiceDetails` or `ProgramEvent` interface, this method shall return true if and only if the `free_CA_mode` bit is set to "0" in the SDT or EIT entry, respectively.

When implemented in an object implementing the `Bouquet` interface, this method shall return true if and only if there is no CA identifier descriptor present in the BAT.

## O.2.10 javax.tv.service.RatingDimension

The Parental rating descriptor defined in DVB SI standardizes one rating scheme that is based on age. This rating scheme contains 15 distinct age rating levels from 4 to 18 years.

An object that describes this DVB defined rating scheme shall implement the methods as follows.

### O.2.10.1 getDimensionName

Returns the string "DVB Age based rating".

### O.2.10.2 getNumberOfLevels

Returns 15.



### O.2.10.3 `getRatingLevelDescription`

Returns an array of 2 strings of the form:

```
{"Over n", "Recommended minimum age: n years"}
```

where n is the input parameter + 4.

## O.2.11 `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceProviderInformation`

This interface shall be implemented by objects implementing the `ServiceDetails` interface.

### O.2.11.1 `getProviderName`

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a multilingual service descriptor or service descriptor in the SDT, return the provider name from that descriptor. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection from the descriptors available in the SDT.

## O.2.12 `javax.tv.service.transport.Transport`

The object implementing the `Transport` interface shall also implement the interfaces `NetworkCollection` and `BouquetCollection`.

## O.2.13 `javax.tv.service.transport.Bouquet`

The `Bouquet` interface is implemented by an object that represents a DVB SI Bouquet.

Objects implementing this interface shall also implement the `CAIdentification` interface. See [O.2.9, "javax.tv.service.navigation.CAIdentification" on page 704](#).

### O.2.13.1 `getBouquetID`

Returns the integer DVB SI Bouquet ID value.

### O.2.13.2 `getName`

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a multilingual bouquet name descriptor in the BAT, return the name in that language. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection from the descriptors available in the BAT.

### O.2.13.3 `getLocator`

Returns an implementation dependent `javax.tv.locator.Locator` object that does not have a standardized external representation and might not be a `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator`.

## O.2.14 `javax.tv.service.transport.Network`

The `Network` interface is implemented by an object that represents a DVB SI Network.

### O.2.14.1 `getNetworkID`

Returns the integer DVB SI Network ID value.

### O.2.14.2 `getName`

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a multilingual network name descriptor in the NIT, return the name in that language. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection from the descriptors available in the NIT.

### O.2.14.3 `getLocator`

Returns an implementation dependent `javax.tv.locator.Locator` object that does not have a standardized external representation and might not be a `org.davic.net.dvb.DvbLocator`.

## O.2.15 `javax.tv.service.transport.TransportStream`

The `TransportStream` interface is implemented by an object that represents a transport stream.

### O.2.15.1 `getTransportStreamID`

Returns the integer DVB SI transport stream ID value.

### O.2.15.2 `getDescription`

Transport streams do not have descriptions in DVB SI, so this method shall return an empty string.

## O.2.16 `javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramEvent`

This interface is implemented by objects representing DVB SI Events.

Objects implementing this interface shall also implement the `CAIdentification` interface. See [O.2.9, "javax.tv.service.navigation.CAIdentification" on page 704](#).

### O.2.16.1 `getDuration`

Returns the duration value from the event entry in the body of the EIT.

### O.2.16.2 `getStartTime`

Returns the start time value from the event entry in the body of the EIT.

### O.2.16.3 `getEndTime`

Returns the end time value calculated from the start time and duration in the body of the EIT.

### O.2.16.4 `getName`

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a short event descriptor in the EIT, return the name from that descriptor. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection from the descriptors available in the EIT.

### O.2.16.5 `retrieveDescription`

If the language returned by `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getPreferredLanguage` corresponds to the language of a short event descriptor in the EIT, return the description from that descriptor. Otherwise return an implementation dependent selection from the descriptors available in the EIT.

The description text in the `ProgramEventDescription` object is just passed through as a String containing the description as it was transmitted in the EIT table with just a character set mapping performed.

Codes 0x8a and 0xe08a defined in tables A.1 and A.2 of [ETSI EN 300 468 \[4\]](#) shall be mapped to the Java newline character, '\n'.

### O.2.16.6 `getRating`

Returns the rating from the Parental rating descriptor according to the mapping defined in section [O.2.17, "javax.tv.service.guide.ContentRatingAdvisory" on page 706](#).

## O.2.17 `javax.tv.service.guide.ContentRatingAdvisory`

### O.2.17.1 `getDimensionNames`

Returns an array containing the string "DVB Age based rating" as one of the elements in the array.

### O.2.17.2 `getRatingLevel`

When the parameter is "DVB Age based rating" and the parental rating descriptor contains a rating value between 0x01 and 0x0F for the current region, returns the integer rating value contained in the parental rating descriptor decremented by one (i.e. the value in the descriptor - 1). In other cases when the parameter is "DVB Age based rating" returns -1.

### O.2.17.3 `getRatingText`

When the parameter is "DVB Age based rating" and the parental rating descriptor contains a rating value between 0x01 and 0x0F for the current region, returns a string of the form "Recommended minimum age: n years" where n is the rating value in the descriptor incremented by 3 (i.e. the value in the descriptor + 3). In other cases when the parameter is "DVB Age based rating" returns an empty string.

NOTE: Applications wishing to present this information in languages other than English should use the `getRatingLevel()` method and perform their own encoding of this for end-user presentation.

### O.2.17.4 `getDisplayText`

When the parental rating descriptor contains a rating value between 0x01 and 0x0F for the current region, returns a string that contains the string "Over n", where n is the rating value in the descriptor incremented by 3 (i.e. the value in the descriptor + 3), as its substring.

NOTE: Applications wishing to present this information in languages other than English should use the `getRatingLevel()` method and perform their own encoding of this for end-user presentation.

### O.2.17.5 O.2.x.1 `retrieveProgramEvent(Locator, SIRequestor)`

This method is not supported and shall fail with an `SIRequestFailureType(INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES)`.

## O.3 Integration of the JavaTV SI API and the DVB SI API

In order for the protocol independent service information API to be useful, there needs to be an easy and convenient way for applications to use the DVB specific parts when they are needed. The information provided in the protocol independent API is quite minimal and does not cover all the aspects of the standardized DVB Service Information nor access to the private extensions carried in the standard protocol. If there is no integration between these APIs and the application programmer needs to use a completely different API to retrieve additional information on the object retrieved from the protocol independent API, the usefulness of the protocol independent API is very questionable. In this case, the application programmer will start using only the protocol dependent API, as it provides the complete information and is as easy to use as the other API.

To overcome these problems and make the protocol independent API somehow useful, it needs to be well integrated with the protocol dependent API, so that if an application uses first the protocol independent API for browsing the information, it can easily get additional, protocol dependent information on the objects of interest.

The Java language provides an easy way to achieve this integration: the same objects can implement both the protocol independent interface as well as the protocol dependent interface. This way the application programmer only needs to cast the object to the protocol dependent interface and can directly call methods from the protocol specific API.

Objects implementing the following interfaces of the DVB SI API should implement also the corresponding JavaTV SI API interfaces. When retrieving SI objects through the JavaTV APIs, they shall also implement the corresponding DVB SI API interfaces.

The interfaces of both APIs shall be implemented on the objects as follows:

**Table O.3 :**

|                                 |                        |  |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| org.dvb.si.SINetwork            | objects implement also | javax.tv.service.transport.Network         |
| org.dvb.si.SIBouquet            | objects implement also | javax.tv.service.transport.Bouquet         |
| org.dvb.si.SITransportStreamNIT | objects implement also | javax.tv.service.transport.TransportStream |
| org.dvb.si.SIService            | objects implement also | javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceDetails |
| org.dvb.si.SIEvent              | objects implement also | javax.tv.service.guide.ProgramEvent        |

---

## Annex P (normative): Broadcast Transport Protocol Access

The Object Carousel represents the best suited protocol to carry a structure of objects. Thus, the Object Carousel "mimics" a remote server.

The structure of the objects carried in an Object Carousel is identical to the structure of UU-Objects located on a remote DSMCC-UU Server.

The aim of this API is to enable an application to access files encapsulated in an object carousel or accessible through a DSMCC interactive network. Note that the protocol is abstracted from the application viewpoint, so, objects accessible through this API are either objects encapsulated in an Object Carousel, or Objects located in an interactive DSMCC network on a remote server.

To benefit from the fact that most of the functionalities are already covered by the java.io package, this API inherits from java.io and only defines the extra-functionalities pertaining to:

- a) the nature of the network (broadcast or DSMCC remote server) and its latency (e.g. possibility to asynchronously load the objects)
- b) the type of the objects that can be encapsulated in a carousel and that do not exist in a classical File structure. These are: ServiceGateway, Directory, File, Stream and StreamEvent.
- c) Definition of ServiceGateway, which defines a new namespace corresponding to the new Domain, and enables the mounting of a new volume.

An application can optionally use only the classes of java.io. Alternatively/additionally applications can use additional classes and methods adapted to the specific nature and latency of the network (such as for example, the asynchronous loading of objects).

The following, briefly explains the functionalities offered by this API

The ServiceDomain class enables attaching to a ServiceDomain. Attachment to a serviceDomain corresponds to the mounting of a volume in the file hierarchy system and the loading of the Service Gateway.

When attached to a Service Domain the DSM-CC UU-File, UU-Stream, UU-Directory and UU-StreamEvent objects are accessible through this API.

The class DSMCCObject represents a UU-object. Due to the close relationship between resident files and downloaded files, this class inherits from the java.io.File class. The DSMCCObject class just defines the additional methods specific to DSMCC-UU that basically deal with asynchronous or synchronous loading of Objects.

For the UU-Files or UU-Directory Objects, their content is accessible as it would be for a classical file system, i.e. by using the java.io package (e.g. for listing the objects pointed to by a Directory object, you invoke the list() method of the java.io.File class, or to access the content of a UU-File, you can instantiate a FileInputStream to read the File, etc. ?).

Additionally, the DSMCCStream and DSMCCStreamEvent classes define functionalities specific to the respective types of Objects (Stream and StreamEvent), which basically consists in accessing the attributes of these Objects.

The DSMCCStream class provides access to the following attributes Duration, current NPT. In addition, an application can retrieve the list of Taps (modeled by the 'Locator' class), in order for a Player to be able to control and play that Stream.

The DSMCCStreamEvent class inherits from the DSMCCStream class, and provides access to the event list attributes of a StreamEvent Object. In addition, the application has the possibility to subscribe the events which are present in the eventList.

The AsynchronousLoadingEvent class and its subclasses represent events that are sent to a listener to notify it of the loading of an Object that had been activated by the application (asynchronous loading mode).

The StreamEvent class represents an abstraction of the real event that is generated, i.e. the streameventdescriptor, which enables the broadcaster to synchronize the application with the stream. This class enables the access to the content of an event, the content of the event being described by the StreamEventDescriptor, which is inserted in the stream in DSMCC sections at the transport level.

Finally, the StreamEventListener and AsynchronousLoadingEventListener are interfaces that must be implemented by the application, in order for it to receive the respective StreamEvents and AsynchronousLoadingEvents.

# Package org.dvb.dsmcc

## Description

Provides extended access to files carried in the broadcast stream. It includes some extensions to java.io which are generic to (possibly) long-latency file systems and some concepts which are specific to the DSMCC object carousel.

| Class Summary                                    |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                                |   |
| <a href="#">AsynchronousLoadingEventListener</a> | Listener for applications which perform asynchronous loading, in order to be informed if the loading is done or if an error has occurred.   |
| <a href="#">NPTListener</a>                      | Objects that implement the <a href="#">NPTListener</a> interface can receive <a href="#">NPTStatusEvent</a> and <a href="#">NPTRateChangedEvent</a> events.   |
| <a href="#">ObjectChangeEventListener</a>        | The objects that implements the <a href="#">ObjectChangeEventListener</a> interface can receive <a href="#">ObjectChangeEvent</a> event.  |
| <a href="#">StreamEventListener</a>              | Objects that implement the <a href="#">StreamEventListener</a> interface can receive <a href="#">StreamEvent</a> event.   |
| <b>Classes</b>                                   |   |
| <a href="#">AsynchronousLoadingEvent</a>         | This class described an Object event which is used to notify the loading of a DSMCC object.   |
| <a href="#">DSMCCObject</a>                      | A <a href="#">DSMCCObject</a> is an object which belongs to a DSMCC ServiceDomain.  |
| <a href="#">DSMCCStream</a>                      | The <a href="#">DSMCCStream</a> class is used to manage DSMCC Stream Objects.   |
| <a href="#">DSMCCStreamEvent</a>                 | The <a href="#">DSMCCStreamEvent</a> class is used to manage DSMCC StreamEvent Objects.   |
| <a href="#">InsufficientResourcesEvent</a>       | This event is generated if there are insufficient resources available to load a <a href="#">DSMCCObject</a> .   |
| <a href="#">InvalidFormatEvent</a>               | This event is generated if the format of the data received is inconsistent.   |
| <a href="#">InvalidPathnameEvent</a>             | The pathname does not exist or the ServiceDomain has been detached.   |
| <a href="#">LoadingAbortedEvent</a>              | This event will be sent to the <a href="#">AsynchronousEventListener</a> when an asynchronous loading operation is aborted.   |
| <a href="#">MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent</a>           | An <a href="#">MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent</a> indicates that an error (for instance, a time out or accessing the data would require tuning) has occurred while loading data from an MPEG Stream.                    |
| <a href="#">NotEntitledEvent</a>                 | This event is sent when an attempt to asynchronously load an object has failed because the elementary stream carrying the object is scrambled and the user is not entitled to access the content of the object. |
| <a href="#">NPTDiscontinuityEvent</a>            | Sent when an MHP terminal detects a permanent discontinuity in NPT as defined in the main body of this specification.   |
| <a href="#">NPTPresentEvent</a>                  | Sent to listeners on a <a href="#">DSMCCStream</a> object when NPT newly appears for that DSMCC stream when it was not previously present.  |
| <a href="#">NPTRate</a>                          | Represents the rate at which an NPT time-base progresses.   |
| <a href="#">NPTRateChangeEvent</a>               | Sent only when the rate of an NPT time-base changes value.  |

| <b>Class Summary</b>                       |   |
|--|---|
| <code>NPTRemovedEvent</code>               | Sent to listeners on a <code>DSMCCStream</code> object when NPT which was present for that DSMCC stream is removed.   |
| <code>NPTStatusEvent</code>                | Sent when an MHP terminal detects a change of status in the NPT of a stream.  |
| <code>ObjectChangeEvent</code>             | This class describes an object change event that is used to monitor the arrival of a new version of a <code>DSMCCObject</code> .  |
| <code>ServerDeliveryError-Event</code>     | The local machine can not communicate with the server.  |
| <code>ServiceDomain</code>                 | A <code>ServiceDomain</code> represents a group of DSMCC objects.   |
| <code>ServiceXFRErrorEvent</code>          | The object requested is available in an alternate <code>ServiceDomain</code> .  |
| <code>ServiceXFRReference</code>           | A <code>ServiceXFRReference</code> object is used when a DSMCC Object can not be loaded in the current <code>ServiceDomain</code> but is available in an alternate <code>ServiceDomain</code> .   |
| <code>StreamEvent</code>                   | This class describes a Stream event which is used to synchronize an application with an MPEG Stream.  |
| <code>SuccessEvent</code>                  | This event indicates that the asynchronous loading was successful.  |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                          |   |
| <code>DSMCCException</code>                | The <code>DSMCCException</code> is the root class of all DSMCC related exceptions   |
| <code>IllegalObjectTypeException</code>    | This Exception is thrown when the application attempted to create a <code>DSMCCStream</code> or <code>DSMCCStreamEvent</code> object with an object or a path that did not correspond to a DSMCC Stream or DSMCC StreamEvent respectively |
| <code>InsufficientResourceException</code> | This exception gets thrown when a request to perform a DSMCC related operation cannot be completed due to resource limitations.   |
| <code>InvalidAddressException</code>       | An <code>InvalidAddressException</code> is thrown when the format of an NSAP address is not recognized.   |
| <code>InvalidFormatException</code>        | An <code>InvalidFormatException</code> is thrown when an inconsistent DSMCC message is received.  |
| <code>InvalidPathNameException</code>      | The <code>InvalidPathNameException</code> is thrown when the path name to a <code>DSMCCObject</code> does not exist or if the <code>ServiceDomain</code> has been detached.   |
| <code>MPEGDeliveryException</code>         | An <code>MPEGDeliveryException</code> is thrown when an error (for instance, a time out or accessing the data would require tuning) occurs while loading data from an MPEG Stream.  |
| <code>NotEntitledException</code>          | This Exception is thrown when the user is not entitled to access the content of the object (the Elementary Stream is scrambled and the user is not entitled).   |
| <code>NothingToAbortException</code>       | A <code>NothingToAbortException</code> is thrown when the abort method is called and there is no loading in progress.   |
| <code>NotLoadedException</code>            | A <code>NotLoadedException</code> is thrown when the Stream object constructor is called with a DSMCC Object which is not loaded.   |
| <code>ServerDeliveryException</code>       | A <code>ServerDeliveryException</code> is thrown when the local machine can not communicate with the server.  |
| <code>ServiceXFRException</code>           | A <code>ServiceXFRException</code> is thrown when a DSMCC Object can not be loaded in the current <code>ServiceDomain</code> but is available in an alternate <code>ServiceDomain</code> (i.e.  |
| <code>UnknownEventException</code>         | The <code>UnknownEventException</code> is thrown when a method tries to access to an unknown event.   |



org.dvb.dsmcc

# AsynchronousLoadingEvent

## Declaration

```
public abstract class AsynchronousLoadingEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
InsufficientResourcesEvent, InvalidFormatEvent, InvalidPathnameEvent,  
LoadingAbortedEvent, MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent, NotEntitledEvent,  
ServerDeliveryErrorEvent, ServiceXFRErrorEvent, SuccessEvent
```

## Description

This class described an Object event which is used to notify the loading of a DSMCC object.

## Constructors

---

### AsynchronousLoadingEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public AsynchronousLoadingEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Creates an AsynchronousLoadingEvent.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

#### Overrides:

```
getSource in class EventObject
```

#### Returns:

the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

org.dvb.dsmcc

# AsynchronousLoadingEventListener

## Declaration

```
public interface AsynchronousLoadingEventListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

Listener for applications which perform asynchronous loading, in order to be informed if the loading is done or if an error has occurred.

## Methods

---

### **receiveEvent(AsynchronousLoadingEvent)**

```
public void receiveEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent e)
```

Method called when an event is sent to the application.

#### **Parameters:**

e - an AsynchronousLoadingEvent event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc DSMCCEXception

## Declaration

```
public class DSMCCEXception extends java.io.IOException
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEXception
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
IllegalObjectTypeException, InsufficientResourcesException,
InvalidAddressException, InvalidFormatException, InvalidPathNameException,
MPEGDeliveryException, NotEntitledException, NothingToAbortException,
NotLoadedException, ServerDeliveryException, ServiceXFRException,
UnknownEventException
```

## Description

The DSMCCEXception is the root class of all DSMCC related exceptions

## Constructors

---

### DSMCCEXception()

```
public DSMCCEXception()
```

Construct a DSMCCEXception with no detail message

---

### DSMCCEXception(String)

```
public DSMCCEXception(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a DSMCCEXception with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

s - the detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc DSMCCObject

## Declaration

```
public class DSMCCObject extends java.io.File
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.io.File
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

A DSMCCObject is an object which belongs to a DSMCC ServiceDomain. As soon as a ServiceDomain has been attached to the file system hierarchy, DSMCCObject objects can be created to access the ServiceDomain objects.

A DSMCCObject is specified by a pathname, which can either be an absolute pathname or a relative pathname. Relative paths shall work as defined in “Broadcast Transport Protocol Access API” in the main body of the specification. Path names must follow the naming conventions of the host platform. The constructors of this class shall accept the absolute paths returned by java.io.File.getAbsolutePath().

To access the content of the object:

- For a Directory, the method list of the java.io.File class has to be used to get the entries of the directory.
- For a Stream object, the class DSMCCStream has to be used.
- For a File, the java.io.FileInputStream class or the java.io.RandomAccessFile has to be used.

NB :

- Obviously, for the Object Carousel, the write mode of java.io.RandomAccessFile is not allowed.

DSMCCObjects exist in two states, loaded and unloaded as returned by the isLoaded method. Transitions from unloaded to loaded are triggered by applications calling the asynchronousLoad or synchronousLoad or getSigners(boolean) methods. Transitions from loaded to unloaded are triggered by applications calling the unload method. Attempting to load an already loaded object does not cause it to be re-loaded.

The only state transitions for a DSMCCObject shall be only in response to these method calls. There shall be no implicit state transitions in either direction. When the application no longer has any references to an object in the loaded state, the system resources allocated should be freed by the system.

The state machine of DSMCCObject is disconnected from any state model of the cache of an MHP receiver’s DSMCC client. Objects may appear in that cache without any corresponding DSMCCObject being in the loaded state. Objects which are in that cache and where any corresponding DSMCCObject is not in the loaded state may disappear from that cache at any time. The contents of a object may be accessible to applications from the cache without the DSMCCObject ever being in the loaded state.

NOTE: DSMCCObjects in the loaded state will consume memory in the MHP receiver. If memory in the MHP receiver is short, this memory can only be recovered by the receiver killing the MHP application. Applications which can accept weaker guarantees about the data of a DSMCCObject being available should use the prefetch methods.

## See Also:

[ServiceDomain](#)

## Fields

---

### FROM\_CACHE

```
public static final int FROM_CACHE
```

Constant to indicate that the data for an object shall only be retrieved where it is already in cache and meets the requirements of cache priority signaling. Where data is not in the cache, or the contents don't meet the requirements of the of cache priority signaling (i.e. cache priority signalling indicates that an object re-acquisition is required), attempts to load a DSMCCObject shall fail with `MPEGDeliveryException` or `MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent` for `synchronousLoad` and `asynchronousLoad` respectively.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

### FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM

```
public static final int FROM_CACHE_OR_STREAM
```

Constant to indicate that the data for an object shall be automatically be retrieved from the network where the data is not already cached. Note that this method does not modify the caching policy controlled by the signaling in the OC. So, if the data is signalled as requiring transparent caching then data will be retrieved from the network if required.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

### FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY

```
public static final int FROM_STREAM_ONLY
```

Constant to indicate that the data for an object shall always be retrieved from the network even if the data has already been cached.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### DSMCCObject(DSMCCObject, String)

```
public DSMCCObject(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject dir, java.lang.String name)
```

Create a DSMCCObject object.

**Parameters:**

`dir` - the directory object.

`name` - the file pathname.

---

**DSMCCObject(String)**

```
public DSMCCObject(java.lang.String path)
```

Create a DSMCCObject object.

**Parameters:**

`path` - the path to the file.

---

**DSMCCObject(String, String)**

```
public DSMCCObject(java.lang.String path, java.lang.String name)
```

Create a DSMCCObject object.

**Parameters:**

`path` - the directory Path.

`name` - the file pathname.

---

**Methods**

---

**abort()**

```
public void abort()
    throws NothingToAbortException
```

This method is used to abort a load in progress. It can be used to abort either a synchronousLoad or an asynchronousLoad.

**Throws:**

[NothingToAbortException](#) - There is no loading in progress.

---

**addObjectChangeListener(ObjectChangeListener)**

```
public void addObjectChangeListener(org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeListener listener)
    throws InsufficientResourcesException
```

Subscribes an ObjectChangeListener to receive notifications of version changes of DSMCCObject.

This listener shall never be fired until after the object has successfully entered the loaded state for the first time. Hence objects which never successfully enter the loaded state (e.g. because the object cannot be found) shall never have this listener fire. Once an object has successfully entered the loaded state once, this event shall continue to be fired when changes are detected by the MHP regardless of further transitions in or out of the loaded state.

NOTE: The algorithm used for this change monitoring is implementation dependent. In some implementations, this exception will always be thrown. In other implementations, it will never be thrown. In other implementations, whether it is thrown or not will depend on the complexity and design of the object carousel in which the object is carried. Even where no exception is thrown, implementations are not required to detect all possible forms in which an object may change.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the ObjectChangeListener to be notified .

**Throws:**

[InsufficientResourcesException](#) - if there are not sufficient resources to monitor the object for changes.

---

---

**asynchronousLoad(AsynchronousLoadingEventListener)**

```
public void asynchronousLoad(org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEventListener l)
    throws InvalidPathNameException
```

This method is used to asynchronously load a carousel object. This method can fail either asynchronously with an event or synchronously with an exception. When it fails synchronously with an exception, no event shall be sent to the listener. For each call to this method which returns without throwing an exception, one of the following events will be sent to the application (by a listener mechanism) as soon as the loading is done or if an error has occurred: SuccessEvent, InvalidFormatEvent, InvalidPathNameEvent, MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent, ServerDeliveryErrorEvent, ServiceXFRErrorEvent, NotEntitledEvent, LoadingAbortedEvent, InsufficientResourcesEvent.

**Parameters:**

l - an AsynchronousLoadingEventListener to receive events related to asynchronous loading.

**Throws:**

InvalidPathNameException - the Object can not be found, or the serviceDomain isn't in a attached state.

---

**getSigners()**

```
public java.security.cert.X509Certificate[][] getSigners()
```

This method shall attempt to validate all certificate chains found for this file in the network. Valid chains do not need to originate from root certificates known to the MHP terminal, e.g. self signing of data files. Applications should note that calls to this method may take some time. If the DSMCCObject is not loaded, this method will return null. If the DSMCCObject is loaded but not authenticated this method will return an outer array of size zero. If the DSMCCObject is loaded, this method returns the same as getSigners(false), except if getSigners(false) would throw an exception, this method will return an outer array of size zero.

NOTE: If the file in the network changes between when it was loaded and when the hash file(s), signature & certificate files are read and those files have been updated to match the new version of the file then the hash value of the data which was loaded will not match the hash value in the hash file in the network and hence no certificate chains will be valid.

**Returns:**

a two-dimensional array of X.509 certificates, where the first index of the array determines a certificate chain and the second index identifies the certificate within the chain. Within one certificate chain the leaf certificate is first followed by any intermediate certificate authorities in the order of the chain with the root CA certificate as the last item.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**getSigners(boolean)**

```
public java.security.cert.X509Certificate[][] getSigners(boolean known_root)
    throws InvalidFormatException, InterruptedException, MPEGDeliveryException,
    ServerDeliveryException, InvalidPathNameException, NotEntitledException, Servi
    ceXFRException, InsufficientResourcesException
```

This method shall attempt to validate all certificate chains found for this file in the network. The known\_root parameter to the method defines whether the MHP terminal shall check if the root certificate in each chain is known to it or not. If the root certificate is checked then chains with unknown root certificates shall not be considered to be valid. If root certificates are not checked then the MHP application is responsible for comparing them with some certificate which it provides (e.g. for self signing of data files). The hash file(s), signature & certificate files shall be fetched from the network in compliance with the caching priority defined in the main body of this

specification. If the object is in the loaded state then the data of the file which was loaded shall be used and no new file contents loaded. If the object is not in the loaded state then this method shall attempt to load it as if synchronousLoad had been called. Applications should note that calls to this method may take some time.

NOTE: If the file in the network changes between when it was loaded and when the hash file(s), signature & certificate files are read and those files have been updated to match the new version of the file then the hash value of the data which was loaded will not match the hash value in the hash file in the network and hence no certificate chains will be valid.

**Parameters:**

`known_root` - if true then valid certificate chains are only those where the root is known to the MHP terminal. If false, the validity of the chain shall be determined without considering whether the root is known to the MHP terminal or not.

**Returns:**

a two-dimensional array of X.509 certificates, where the first index of the array determines a certificate chain and the second index identifies the certificate within the chain. Within one certificate chain the leaf certificate is first followed by any intermediate certificate authorities in the order of the chain with the root CA certificate as the last item. If no certificate chains are found to be valid then an outer array of size zero shall be returned.

**Throws:**

`java.io.InterruptedIOException` - the loading has been aborted.

`InvalidPathNameException` - the Object can not be found, or the serviceDomain isn't in a attached state.

`NotEntitledException` - the stream carrying the object is scrambled and the user has no entitlements to descramble the stream.

`ServiceXFRException` - the IOR of the object or one of its parent directories is a Lite Option Profile Body.

`InvalidFormatException` - an inconsistent DSMCC message has been received.

`MPEGDeliveryException` - an error has occurred while loading data from MPEG stream such as a timeout

`ServerDeliveryException` - when an MHP terminal cannot communicate with the server for files delivered over a bi-directional IP connection.

`InsufficientResourcesException` - there is not enough memory to load the object

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.3

**getURL()**

```
public java.net.URL getURL()
```

Returns a URL identifying this carousel object. If the directory entry for the object has not been loaded then null shall be returned.

**Returns:**

a URL identifying the carousel object or null

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1



---

**isLoading()**

```
public boolean isLoading()
```

Returns a boolean indicating whether or not the DSMCCObject has been loaded.

**Returns:**

true if the file is already loaded, false otherwise.

---

**isObjectKindKnown()**

```
public boolean isObjectKindKnown()
```

Returns a boolean indicating if the kind of the object is known. (The kind of an object is known if the directory containing it is loaded).

**Returns:**

true if the type of the object is known, false otherwise.

---

**isStream()**

```
public boolean isStream()
```

Returns a boolean indicating whether or not the DSMCCObject is a DSMCC Stream object.

**Returns:**

true if the file is a stream, false if the object is not a stream or if the object kind is unknown.

---

**isStreamEvent()**

```
public boolean isStreamEvent()
```

Returns a boolean indicating whether or not the DSMCCObject is a DSMCC StreamEvent object. NB: If isStreamEvent is true then isStream is true also.

**Returns:**

true if the file is a stream event, false if the object is not a stream event or if the object kind is unknown.

---

**loadDirectoryEntry(AsynchronousLoadingEventListener)**

```
public void loadDirectoryEntry(org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEventListener l)
    throws InvalidPathNameException
```

Asynchronous loading of the directory entry information. Calling this is equivalent of calling the method `asynchronousLoad` on the parent directory of a `DSMCCObject`. This method can fail either asynchronously with an event or synchronously with an exception. When it fails synchronously with an exception, no event shall be sent to the listener.

**Parameters:**

l - a listener which will be called when the loading is done.

**Throws:**

`InvalidPathNameException` - if the object cannot be found.

---

---

**prefetch(DSMCCObject, String, byte)**

```
public static boolean prefetch(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject dir, java.lang.String path,
    byte priority)
```

Calling this method will issue a hint to the MHP for pre-fetching the object data for that DSMCC object into cache.

**Parameters:**

`dir` - the directory object in which to pre-fetch the data.

`path` - the relative path name of object to pre-fetch, starting from the directory object passes as parameter.

`priority` - the relative priority of this pre-fetch request (higher = more important)

**Returns:**

true if the MHP supports pre-fetching (i.e. will try to process the request) and false otherwise. Note that a return value of 'true' is only an indication that the MHP receiver supports pre-fetching. It is not a guarantee that the requested data will actually be loaded into cache as the receiver may decide to drop the request in order to make resources available for regular load requests.

---

**prefetch(String, byte)**

```
public static boolean prefetch(java.lang.String path, byte priority)
```

Calling this method will issue a hint to the MHP for pre-fetching the object data for that DSMCC object into cache.

**Parameters:**

`path` - the absolute pathname of the object to pre-fetch.

`priority` - the relative priority of this pre-fetch request (higher = more important)

**Returns:**

true if the MHP supports pre-fetching (i.e. will try to process the request) and false otherwise. Note that a return value of 'true' is only an indication that the MHP receiver supports pre-fetching. It is not a guarantee that the requested data will actually be loaded into cache as the receiver may decide to drop the request in order to make resources available for regular load requests.

---

**removeObjectChangeListener(ObjectChangeListener)**

```
public void removeObjectChangeListener(org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeListener
    listener)
```

Unsubscribes an ObjectChangeListener to receive notifications of version changes of DSMCCObject.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - a previously registered ObjectChangeListener.

---

**setRetrievalMode(int)**

```
public void setRetrievalMode(int retrieval_mode)
```

Set the retrieval mode for a DSMCCObject. The default retrieval mode is FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM. The retrieval mode state is sampled when the object is loaded (whether explicitly or as described in "Constraints on the java.io.File methods for broadcast carousels"). Changing the retrieval mode for a loaded object has no effect until the object is unloaded and loaded again.

**Parameters:**

`retrieval_mode` - the retrieval mode to be used for the object specified as one of the public static final constants in this class.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the `retrieval_mode` specified is not one listed defined for use with this method.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

**synchronousLoad()**

```
public void synchronousLoad()
    throws InvalidFormatException, InterruptedException, MPEGDeliveryException,
           ServerDeliveryException, InvalidPathNameException, NotEntitledException, Servi
           ceXFRException, InsufficientResourcesException
```

This method is used to load a DSMCCObject. This method blocks until the file is loaded. It can be aborted from another thread with the abort method. In this case the `InterruptedException` is thrown. If the IOR of the object itself or one of its parent directories is a Lite Option Profile Body, the MHP implementation will not attempt to resolve it : a `ServiceXFRException` is thrown to indicate to the application where the DSMCCObject is actually located.

**Throws:**

`java.io.InterruptedIOException` - the loading has been aborted.

`InvalidPathNameException` - the Object can not be found, or the serviceDomain isn't in a attached state.

`NotEntitledException` - the stream carrying the object is scrambled and the user has no entitlements to descramble the stream.

`ServiceXFRException` - the IOR of the object or one of its parent directories is a Lite Option Profile Body.

`InvalidFormatException` - an inconsistent DSMCC message has been received.

`MPEGDeliveryException` - an error has occurred while loading data from MPEG stream such as a timeout

`ServerDeliveryException` - when an MHP terminal cannot communicate with the server for files delivered over a bi-directional IP connection.

`InsufficientResourcesException`

**unload()**

```
public void unload()
    throws NotLoadedException
```

When calling this method, the applications gives a hint to the MHP that if this object is not consumed by another application/thread, the system can free all the resources allocated to this object. It is worth noting that if other clients use this object (e.g. a file input stream is opened on this object or if the corresponding stream or stream event is being consumed) the system resources allocated to this object will not be freed. This method puts the DSMCCObject into the unloaded state.

**Throws:**

`NotLoadedException` - the carousel object is not loaded.

# org.dvb.dsmcc DSMCCStream

## Declaration

```
public class DSMCCStream
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

[DSMCCStreamEvent](#)

## Description

The DSMCCStream class is used to manage DSMCC Stream Objects. The BIOP::Stream message shall be read from the network once only, before the constructor of this class returns. Hence methods which return information from that message shall not be affected by any subsequent changes to that information.

## See Also:

[DSMCCObject](#)

## Constructors

---

### DSMCCStream(DSMCCObject)

```
public DSMCCStream(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject aDSMCCObject)
    throws NotLoadedException, IllegalObjectTypeException
```

Creates a Stream Object from a DSMCC Object. The BIOP message referenced by the DSMCCObject has to be a Stream or StreamEvent BIOP message.

#### Parameters:

`aDSMCCObject` - the DSMCC object which describes the stream

#### Throws:

[NotLoadedException](#) - the DSMCCObject is not loaded.

[IllegalObjectTypeException](#) - the DSMCCObject is neither a DSMCC Stream nor a DSMCCStreamEvent

---

### DSMCCStream(String)

```
public DSMCCStream(java.lang.String path)
    throws IOException, IllegalObjectTypeException
```

Create a Stream Object from its pathname. For an object Carousel, this method will block until the module which contains the object is loaded. The BIOP message referenced by the DSMCCObject pointed to by the parameter path has to be a Stream or StreamEvent BIOP message.

#### Parameters:

`path` - the pathname of the DSMCCStream Object.

#### Throws:

[java.io.IOException](#) - If an IO error occurred.

[IllegalObjectTypeException](#) - the DSMCCObject is neither a DSMCC Stream nor a DSMCCStreamEvent

---

**DSMCCStream(String, String)**

```
public DSMCCStream(java.lang.String path, java.lang.String name)
    throws IOException, IllegalArgumentException
```

Create a DSMCCStream from its pathname. For an object Carousel, this method will block until the module which contains the object is loaded. The BIOP message referenced by the DSMCCObject pointed to be the parameters path and name has to be a Stream or StreamEvent BIOP message.

**Parameters:**

path - the directory path.  
name - the name of the DSMCCStream Object.

**Throws:**

java.io.IOException - If an IO error occurred.  
IllegalObjectTypeException - the DSMCCObject is neither a DSMCC Stream nor a DSMCCStreamEvent

---

**Methods**

---

**addNPTListener(NPTListener)**

```
public void addNPTListener(org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTListener l)
```

Add a listener to NPT events on the DSMCCStream object. Adding the same listener a second time has no effect.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**getDuration()**

```
public long getDuration()
```

This function returns the duration in milliseconds of the DSMCC Stream. If the DSMCCStream BIOP message doesn't specify duration, zero will be returned.

**Returns:**

The duration in milliseconds of the DSMCC Stream.

---

**getNPT()**

```
public long getNPT()
    throws MPEGDeliveryException
```

This function is used to get the current NPT in milliseconds. Implementations are not required to continuously monitor for NPT. In implementations which do not continuously monitor, this method will block while the current NPT is retrieved from the stream.

**Returns:**

the current NPT in milliseconds or zero if DSMCC Stream object BIOP message doesn't contain any taps pointing to NPT reference descriptors.

**Throws:**

MPEGDeliveryException - if there's an error in retrieving NPT reference descriptors

---

**getNPTRate()**

```
public org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRate getNPTRate()  
    throws MPEGDeliveryException
```

Get the NPT rate for the `DSMCCStream` object. Returns null if the DSMCC stream has no associated NPT rate (i.e. no `STR_NPT_USE` tap in the list of taps).

**Returns:**

the NPT rate or null

**Throws:**

throws - `MPEGDeliveryException` if there's an error in retrieving NPT reference descriptors

`MPEGDeliveryException`

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**getStreamLocator()**

```
public org.davic.net.Locator getStreamLocator()
```

This function returned a `Locator` referencing the streams of this collection. The interpretation of the return value is determined by the `isMPEGProgram` method.

**Returns:**

a locator.

---

**isAudio()**

```
public boolean isAudio()
```

This function returns a boolean indicating if the `Stream` Object refers to an audio stream. This is the case if the `audio` field in the `Stream(Event)` `BIOP` message has a value different from zero.

**Returns:**

true only if the `Stream` object refers to an audio stream

---

**isData()**

```
public boolean isData()
```

This function returns a boolean indicating if the `Stream` Object refers to a data stream. This is the case if the `data` field in the `Stream(Event)` `BIOP` message has a value different from zero.

**Returns:**

true only if the `Stream` object refers to a data stream

---

**isMPEGProgram()**

```
public boolean isMPEGProgram()
```

This method will return true if the `Stream(Event)` `BIOP` message contains a tap with use field `BIOP_PROGRAM_USE`, otherwise it will return false.

**Returns:**

true only if the `Stream(Event)` `BIOP` message is as described above

---

**isVideo()**

```
public boolean isVideo()
```

This function returns a boolean indicating if the Stream Object refers to an video stream. This is the case if the `video` field in the Stream(Event) BIOP message has a value different from zero otherwise false is returned.

**Returns:**

true only if the Stream object refers to an video stream

---

**removeNPTListener(NPTListener)**

```
public void removeNPTListener(org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTListener l)
```

Remove a listener to NPT events on the DSMCCStream object. Removing a non-subscribed listener has no effect.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener to remove

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

# org.dvb.dsmcc DSMCCStreamEvent

## Declaration

```
public class DSMCCStreamEvent extends DSMCCStream
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent
```

## Description

The `DSMCCStreamEvent` class is used to manage DSMCC StreamEvent Objects. Applications wishing to monitor changes in the list of events which are part of this stream event should use

`DSMCCObject.addObjectChangeListener` on the `DSMCCObject` representing which describes this set of stream events. The `BIOP::StreamEvent` message shall be read from the network once only, before the constructor of this class returns. Hence methods which return information from that message shall not be effected by any subsequent changes to that information.

The subscribe method only verifies that the event name can be bound to an `eventId` but it does not require that the stream event descriptors for that event id can be received at that moment. While the event listener is registered the MHP terminal shall filter the stream event descriptors as specified in Monitoring stream eventt in the main body of the specification.

## Constructors

---

### DSMCCStreamEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public DSMCCStreamEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject aDSMCCObject)
    throws NotLoadedException, IllegalObjectTypeException
```

Create a `DSMCCStreamEvent` from a `DSMCCObject`. The Object has to be a `DSMCCStreamEvent`.

#### Parameters:

`aDSMCCObject` - the DSMCC object which describes the stream.

#### Throws:

[NotLoadedException](#) - the `DSMCCObject` is not loaded.

[IllegalObjectTypeException](#) - the `DSMCCObject` does not lead to a `DSMCCStreamEvent`.

---

### DSMCCStreamEvent(String)

```
public DSMCCStreamEvent(java.lang.String path)
    throws IOException, IllegalObjectTypeException
```

Create a `DSMCCStreamEvent` Object from its pathname. The path has to lead to a `DSMCCStreamEvent`.

#### Parameters:

`path` - the pathname of the `DSMCCStreamEvent` object

#### Throws:

[java.io.IOException](#) - An IO error has occurred.

[IllegalObjectTypeException](#) - the path does not lead to a `DSMCCStreamEvent`.



---

## DSMCCStreamEvent(String, String)

```
public DSMCCStreamEvent(java.lang.String path, java.lang.String name)
    throws IOException, IllegalArgumentException
```

Create a DSMCCStreamEvent from its pathname. For an object Carousel, this method will block until the module which contains the object is loaded. The path has to lead to a DSMCC Stream Event

**Parameters:**

path - the directory path.

name - the name of the DSMCCStreamEvent Object.

**Throws:**

java.io.IOException - If an IO error occurred.

IllegalArgumentException - the path does not lead to a DSMCC StreamEvent.

## Methods

---

**getEventList()**

```
public java.lang.String[] getEventList()
```

This function is used to get the list of the events of the DSMCCStreamEvent object.

**Returns:**

The list of the eventName.

---

**subscribe(String, StreamEventListener)**

```
public int subscribe(java.lang.String eventName, org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEventListener l)
    throws UnknownEventException, InsufficientResourcesException
```

This function is used to subscribe to an event of a DSMCC StreamEvent object.

**Parameters:**

eventName - the name of the event.

l - an object that implements the StreamEventListener Interface.

**Returns:**

The event Identifier.

**Throws:**

UnknownEventException - the event cannot be found at this time

InsufficientResourcesException - if resources needed to perform the subscription are not available

---

**unsubscribe(int, StreamEventListener)**

```
public void unsubscribe(int eventId, org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEventListener l)
    throws UnknownEventException
```

This function is used to cancel the subscription to an event of a DSMCCEvent object.

**Parameters:**

eventId - Identifier of the event.

l - an object that implements the StreamEventListener Interface.

**Throws:**

UnknownEventException - The event can not be found.

---

**unsubscribe(String, StreamEventListener)**

```
public void unsubscribe(java.lang.String eventName, org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEventListener l)  
    throws UnknownEventException
```

This function is used to cancel the subscription to an event of a DSMCCEvent object.

**Parameters:**

eventName - the name of the event.

l - an object that implements the StreamEventListener Interface.

**Throws:**

[UnknownEventException](#) - The event can not be found.

org.dvb.dsmcc

# IllegalObjectTypeException

## Declaration

public class `IllegalObjectTypeException` extends `DSMCCException`

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.IllegalObjectTypeException
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

`java.io.Serializable`

## Description

This Exception is thrown when the application attempted to create a `DSMCCStream` or `DSMCCStreamEvent` object with an object or a path that did not correspond to a `DSMCC Stream` or `DSMCC StreamEvent` respectively

## Constructors

---

### `IllegalObjectTypeException()`

```
public IllegalObjectTypeException()
```

constructor of the exception with no detail message

---

### `IllegalObjectTypeException(String)`

```
public IllegalObjectTypeException(java.lang.String s)
```

constructor of the exception

#### Parameters:

`s` - detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc InsufficientResourcesEvent

## Declaration

public class **InsufficientResourcesEvent** extends [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.InsufficientResourcesEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

This event is generated if there are insufficient resources available to load a DSMCCObject. e.g. if there's not enough memory.

## Constructors

---

### InsufficientResourcesEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public InsufficientResourcesEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Create an InsufficientResourcesException object.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the DSMCCObject that generated the event

org.dvb.dsmcc

# InsufficientResourcesException

## Declaration

```
public class InsufficientResourcesException extends DSMCCEException
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--java.io.IOException
         |
         +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.InsufficientResourcesException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This exception gets thrown when a request to perform a DSMCC related operation cannot be completed due to resource limitations. For example, no section filters or system timers may be available.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### InsufficientResourcesException()

```
public InsufficientResourcesException()
```

Construct an InsufficientResourcesException with no detail message

---

### InsufficientResourcesException(String)

```
public InsufficientResourcesException(java.lang.String message)
```

Construct an InsufficientResourcesException with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

message - the message for the exception

# org.dvb.dsmcc InvalidAddressException

## Declaration

public class **InvalidAddressException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidAddressException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

An `InvalidAddressException` is thrown when the format of an NSAP address is not recognized.

## Constructors

---

### **InvalidAddressException()**

```
public InvalidAddressException()
```

Construct a `InvalidAddressException` with no detail message

---

### **InvalidAddressException(String)**

```
public InvalidAddressException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a `InvalidAddressException` with the specified detail message

#### **Parameters:**

`s` - the detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc InvalidFormatEvent

## Declaration

```
public class InvalidFormatEvent extends AsynchronousLoadingEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidFormatEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is generated if the format of the data received is inconsistent.

## Constructors

---

### InvalidFormatEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public InvalidFormatEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Create an InvalidFormatException object.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the DSMCCObject that generated the event

# org.dvb.dsmcc InvalidFormatException

## Declaration

public class **InvalidFormatException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--java.io.IOException
         |
         +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidFormatException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

An `InvalidFormatException` is thrown when an inconsistent DSMCC message is received.

## Constructors

---

### **InvalidFormatException()**

```
public InvalidFormatException()
```

Construct an `InvalidFormatException` with no detail message

---

### **InvalidFormatException(String)**

```
public InvalidFormatException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct an `InvalidFormatException` with the specified detail message

#### **Parameters:**

`s` - the detail message



# org.dvb.dsmcc InvalidPathnameEvent

## Declaration

public class **InvalidPathnameEvent** extends [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidPathnameEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

The pathname does not exist or the ServiceDomain has been detached.

## Constructors

---

### InvalidPathnameEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public InvalidPathnameEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Create an InvalidPathnameEvent.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated this event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc InvalidPathNameException

## Declaration

public class **InvalidPathNameException** extends [DSMCCException](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidPathNameException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

The `InvalidPathNameException` is thrown when the path name to a `DSMCCObject` does not exist or if the `ServiceDomain` has been detached.

## Constructors

---

### **InvalidPathNameException()**

```
public InvalidPathNameException()
```

Construct an `InvalidPathNameException` with no detail message

---

### **InvalidPathNameException(String)**

```
public InvalidPathNameException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct an `InvalidPathNameException` with the specified detail message

#### **Parameters:**

s - the detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc LoadingAbortedEvent

## Declaration

public class **LoadingAbortedEvent** extends [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.LoadingAbortedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

This event will be sent to the [AsynchronousEventListener](#) when an asynchronous loading operation is aborted.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### LoadingAbortedEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public LoadingAbortedEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject aDSMCCObject)
```

Creates a **LoadingAbortedEvent** object.

#### Parameters:

aDSMCCObject - the [DSMCCObject](#) that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the [DSMCCObject](#) that generated the event.

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the [DSMCCObject](#) whose loading was aborted

# org.dvb.dsmcc MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent

## Declaration

```
public class MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent extends AsynchronousLoadingEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

An MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent indicates that an error (for instance, a time out or accessing the data would require tuning) has occurred while loading data from an MPEG Stream.

## Constructors

---

### MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Creates an MPEGDeliveryEvent.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

#### Overrides:

getSource in class AsynchronousLoadingEvent

#### Returns:

the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc MPEGDeliveryException

## Declaration

public class **MPEGDeliveryException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.MPEGDeliveryException
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

An MPEGDeliveryException is thrown when an error (for instance, a time out or accessing the data would require tuning) occurs while loading data from an MPEG Stream.

## Constructors

---

### MPEGDeliveryException()

```
public MPEGDeliveryException()
```

Construct an MPEGDeliveryException with no detail message

---

### MPEGDeliveryException(String)

```
public MPEGDeliveryException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct an MPEGDeliveryException with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

s - the detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc NotEntitledEvent

## Declaration

```
public class NotEntitledEvent extends AsynchronousLoadingEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NotEntitledEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event is sent when an attempt to asynchronously load an object has failed because the elementary stream carrying the object is scrambled and the user is not entitled to access the content of the object.

## Constructors

---

### NotEntitledEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public NotEntitledEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Creates a NotEntitledEvent object.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc NotEntitledException

## Declaration

public class **NotEntitledException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--java.io.IOException
         |
         +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.NotEntitledException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

This Exception is thrown when the user is not entitled to access the content of the object (the Elementary Stream is scrambled and the user is not entitled).

## Constructors

---

### NotEntitledException()

```
public NotEntitledException()
```

construct a NotEntitledException with no detail message

---

### NotEntitledException(String)

```
public NotEntitledException(java.lang.String s)
```

construct a NotEntitledException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc NothingToAbortException

## Declaration

public class **NothingToAbortException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
|
+--java.lang.Exception
|
+--java.io.IOException
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NothingToAbortException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

A **NothingToAbortException** is thrown when the abort method is called and there is no loading in progress.

## Constructors

---

### **NothingToAbortException()**

```
public NothingToAbortException()
```

Construct a **NothingToAbortException** with no detail message

---

### **NothingToAbortException(String)**

```
public NothingToAbortException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a **NothingToAbortException** with the specified detail message

#### **Parameters:**

*s* - the detail message



# org.dvb.dsmcc NotLoadedException

## Declaration

public class **NotLoadedException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.NotLoadedException
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

A NotLoadedException is thrown when the Stream object constructor is called with a DSMCC Object which is not loaded.

## Constructors

---

### NotLoadedException()

```
public NotLoadedException()
```

Construct a NotLoadedException with no detail message

---

### NotLoadedException(String)

```
public NotLoadedException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a NotLoadedException with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

s - the detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTDiscontinuityEvent

## Declaration

```
public class NPTDiscontinuityEvent extends NPTStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTDiscontinuityEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Sent when an MHP terminal detects a permanent discontinuity in NPT as defined in the main body of this specification. This represents an error condition in the incoming broadcast.

This event shall be sent following a PCR discontinuity when the MHP terminal has enough information to determine that there will be an NPT discontinuity. If the `NPTDiscontinuityEvent` is because of invalid data in a new `NPTReferenceDescriptor` then the event will be generated when that new `NPTReferenceDescriptor` is detected by the MHP terminal. If the `NPTDiscontinuityEvent` is because no new `NPTReferenceDescriptor` is detected within the time allowed by the main body of this specification then it will be generated when that time interval has elapsed.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### NPTDiscontinuityEvent(DSMCCStream, long, long)

```
public NPTDiscontinuityEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream source, long before, long after)
```

Construct an event. The `before` and `after` values used shall be the values at the time when the receiver determined that a NPT discontinuity has happened. If the `NPTDiscontinuityEvent` is because of invalid data in a new `NPTReferenceDescriptor` then this is the time when that new descriptor was known to be invalid. If `NPTDiscontinuityEvent` is because of the absence of a new `NPTReferenceDescriptor` then this will be when the MHP terminal detects that the time interval allowed by this specification for such new descriptors has elapsed. Where an NPT value is unknown or cannot be computed, -1 shall be used.

#### Parameters:

- `source` - the stream whose NPT suffered a discontinuity
- `before` - the last NPT value detected before the discontinuity
- `after` - the first NPT value detected after the discontinuity

## Methods

---

### **getFirstNPT()**

```
public long getFirstNPT()
```

Return the first known stable value of NPT after the discontinuity

**Returns:**

an NPT value

---

### **getLastNPT()**

```
public long getLastNPT()
```

Return the last known stable value of NPT before the discontinuity

**Returns:**

an NPT value

# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTListener

## Declaration

```
public interface NPTListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

Objects that implement the NPTListener interface can receive NPTStatusEvent and NPTRateChangeEvent events.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Methods

---

### receiveNPTStatusEvent(NPTStatusEvent)

```
public void receiveNPTStatusEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent e)
```

Send a NPTStatusEvent to a registered listener.

#### Parameters:

e - a NPTStatusEvent describing the status change

---

### receiveRateChangeEvent(NPTRateChangeEvent)

```
public void receiveRateChangeEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRateChangeEvent e)
```

Send a NPTRateChangeEvent to a registered listener.

#### Parameters:

e - the NPTRateChangeEvent event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTPresentEvent

## Declaration

```
public class NPTPresentEvent extends NPTStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTPresentEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Sent to listeners on a DSMCCStream object when NPT newly appears for that DSMCC stream when it was not previously present. This is specific to the particular timebase for this stream.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### NPTPresentEvent(DSMCCStream)

```
public NPTPresentEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream source)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the DSMCCStream for which the NPT event appeared.

# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTRate

## Declaration

```
public class NPTRate
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRate
```

## Description

Represents the rate at which an NPT time-base progresses. Rates are expressed as the combination of a numerator and a denominator. Instances of this class are constructed by the platform and returned to applications. A rate of 1/1 shall indicate “the standard presentation rate” as defined in the NPT specification.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Methods

---

### getDenominator()

```
public int getDenominator()
```

Get the NPT rate's denominator.

**Returns:**

the denominator

---

### getNumerator()

```
public int getNumerator()
```

Get the NPT rate's numerator. A value of zero indicates that the NPT is not progressing.

**Returns:**

the numerator

# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTRateChangeEvent

## Declaration

```
public class NPTRateChangeEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRateChangeEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Sent only when the rate of an NPT time-base changes value.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### NPTRateChangeEvent(DSMCCStream, NPTRate)

```
public NPTRateChangeEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream source, org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRate rate)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the stream whose rate changed

`rate` - the new rate of that stream immediately following the change

## Methods

---

### getRate()

```
public org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRate getRate()
```

Return the new rate of the stream immediately after the change.

#### Returns:

a NPTRate object encapsulating the new rate

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Return the stream whose rate changed.

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `EventObject`

#### Returns:

the `DSMCCStream` object on which the rate change has occurred.

# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTRemovedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class NPTRemovedEvent extends NPTStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRemovedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Sent to listeners on a DSMCCStream object when NPT which was present for that DSMCC stream is removed. This is specific to the particular timebase for this stream.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### NPTRemovedEvent(DSMCCStream)

```
public NPTRemovedEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream source)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

`source` - the DSMCCStream from which the NPT was removed



# org.dvb.dsmcc NPTStatusEvent

## Declaration

```
public abstract class NPTStatusEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
NPTDiscontinuityEvent, NPTPresentEvent, NPTRemovedEvent
```

## Description

Sent when an MHP terminal detects a change of status in the NPT of a stream.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Constructors

---

### NPTStatusEvent(DSMCCStream)

```
public NPTStatusEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream source)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

source - the stream whose NPT status changed

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Return the stream whose NPT status changed.

#### Overrides:

getSource in class EventObject

#### Returns:

the DSMCCStream whose status changed

# org.dvb.dsmcc ObjectChangeEvent

## Declaration

```
public class ObjectChangeEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class describes an object change event that is used to monitor the arrival of a new version of a DSMCCObject. For files carried in a DSMCC object carousel, when a change in a module is detected, this event shall be sent to all registered listeners for all objects carried in that module.

## Constructors

---

### ObjectChangeEvent(DSMCCObject, int)

```
public ObjectChangeEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject source, int aVersionNumber)
```

Creates an ObjectChangeEvent indicating that a new version of the monitored DSMCC Object has been detected. It is up to the application to reload the new version of the object.

#### Parameters:

source - the DSMCCObject whose version has changed

aVersionNumber - the new version number.

## Methods

---

### getNewVersionNumber()

```
public int getNewVersionNumber()
```

This method is used to get the new version number of the monitored DSMCCObject. For files carried in a DSMCC object carousel, this method shall return the version number of the module carrying the file.

#### Returns:

the new version number.

---

**getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that has changed

**Overrides:**

getSource in class EventObject

**Returns:**

the DSMCCObject that has changed

org.dvb.dsmcc

# ObjectChangeListener

## Declaration

```
public interface ObjectChangeListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

The objects that implements the ObjectChangeListener interface can receive ObjectChangeEvent event.

## Methods

---

### receiveObjectChangeEvent(ObjectChangeEvent)

```
public void receiveObjectChangeEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeEvent e)
```

Send a ObjectChangeEvent to the ObjectChangeListener.

#### Parameters:

e - the ObjectChangeEvent event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc ServerDeliveryErrorEvent

## Declaration

public class **ServerDeliveryErrorEvent** extends [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.dsmcc.ServerDeliveryErrorEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

[java.io.Serializable](#)

## Description

The local machine can not communicate with the server. This event is only used with files implemented by delivery over bi-directional IP connections. For the object carousel the `MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent` is used instead.

## Constructors

---

### ServerDeliveryErrorEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public ServerDeliveryErrorEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Creates a `ServerDeliveryEvent` object.

#### Parameters:

- o - the `DSMCCObject` that generated the event.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the `DSMCCObject` that generated the event.

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the `DSMCCObject` that generated the event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc ServerDeliveryException

## Declaration

public class **ServerDeliveryException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--java.io.IOException
         |
         +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.ServerDeliveryException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

A `ServerDeliveryException` is thrown when the local machine can not communicate with the server. This exception is only used with files implemented by delivery over a bi-directional IP connection. For the object carousel the `MPEGDeliveryException` is used instead.

## Constructors

---

### ServerDeliveryException()

```
public ServerDeliveryException()
```

Construct a `ServerDeliveryException` with no detail message

---

### ServerDeliveryException(String)

```
public ServerDeliveryException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a `ServerDeliveryException` with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

`s` - the detail message

# org.dvb.dsmcc ServiceDomain

## Declaration

```
public class ServiceDomain
{
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain
}
```

## Description

A `ServiceDomain` represents a group of DSMCC objects. The objects are sent either using the object carousel for a broadcast network or with the DSM-CC User-to-User protocol for an interactive network.

To access the objects of a `ServiceDomain`, it has to be attached to the file system name space of the MHP terminal. To access the content of an object, the application has four ways:

- It can instantiate the class that is used to read the object (`java.io.FileInputStream` or `java.io.RandomAccessFile` for a File or `DSMCCStream` for a stream) from its pathname. The loading of the object is implicit but the application has no way to abort it. NB: Obviously, for the Object Carousel, the write mode of `java.io.RandomAccessFile` is not allowed.
- It can instantiate a `DSMCCObject` and carry out a Synchronous loading. The loading can be aborted by the `abort` method of the `DSMCCObject` class. When the object is loaded, the application will instantiate the class used to read the object.
- It can instantiate a `DSMCCObject` and carry out an Asynchronous loading. So several loading can be started in parallel from the same thread.
- It is also possible to create directly a `java.io.File` for a DSMCC object.

Instances of `ServiceDomain` exist in two states, attached and detached. Newly created instances are always in the detached state. They become attached when a call to the `attach` method succeeds. They become detached following a call to the `detach` method.

When service domains in the attached state temporarily lose their network connection, (e.g. if the MHP terminal tunes away from the transport stream where they are carried), the behaviour of DSMCC objects which are part of the service domain is specified in the main body of this specification. If such a network connection becomes available again then the service domain shall resume normal behaviour.

A service domain which is temporarily lost its network connection may be forced into the detached state by the implementation if the loss of the network connection becomes irrecoverable. The precise details of when this happens are implementation dependent. This is the only situation when shall be forced into the detached state. Once a `ServiceDomain` is detached, it will never be automatically attached.

## Constructors

---

### ServiceDomain()

```
public ServiceDomain()
```

Creates a `ServiceDomain` object.

## Methods

---

### attach(byte[])

```
public void attach(byte[] NSAPAddress)
    throws DSMCCEException, InterruptedException, InvalidAddressException, MPEGDe
    liveryException
```

This function is used to attach a `ServiceDomain` from either an object carousel or from an interactive network. This call will block until the attachment is done.

Calling this method on a `ServiceDomain` object already in the attached state shall imply a detach of the `ServiceDomain` object before the attach operation unless the `ServiceDomain` is already attached to the correct location. Hence if the attach operation fails, the appropriate exception for the failure mode shall be thrown and the `ServiceDomain` is left in a detached state and not attached to the former object carousel / service domain. If the `ServiceDomain` is already attached to the correct location then the method call shall have no effect.

#### Parameters:

`NSAPAddress` - The NSAP Address of a `ServiceDomain` as defined in in ISO/IEC 13818-6

#### Throws:

`java.io.InterruptedIOException` - The attachment has been aborted.

`InvalidAddressException` - The NSAP Address is invalid.

`DSMCCEException` - An error has occurred during the attachment.

`MPEGDeliveryException` - attaching to this domain would require tuning.

---

### attach(Locator)

```
public void attach(org.davic.net.Locator l)
    throws DSMCCEException, InterruptedException, MPEGDeliveryException
```

This function is used to attach a `ServiceDomain` from an object carousel. It loads the module which contains the service gateway object and mounts the `ServiceDomain` volume in the file system hierarchy. This call will block until the service gateway is loaded. It can be aborted by another thread with the method `detach`. In this case an `InterruptedException` is thrown.

Calling this method on a `ServiceDomain` object already in the attached state shall imply a detach of the `ServiceDomain` object before the attach operation unless the `ServiceDomain` is already attached to the correct location. Hence if the attach operation fails, the appropriate exception for the failure mode shall be thrown and the `ServiceDomain` is left in a detached state and not attached to the former object carousel / service domain. If the `ServiceDomain` is already attached to the correct location then the method call shall have no effect.

#### Parameters:

`l` - The locator pointing to the elementary stream carrying the DSI of the object carousel, or to a DVB service that carries one and only one object carousel.

#### Throws:

`DSMCCEException` - An error has occurred during the attachment. For example, the locator does not point to a component carrying a DSI of an Object Carousel or to a service containing a single carousel

`java.io.InterruptedIOException` - The attachment has been aborted.

`MPEGDeliveryException` - attaching to this domain would require tuning.



---

**attach(Locator, int)**

```
public void attach(org.davic.net.Locator aDVBSERVICE, int aCarouselId)
    throws ServiceXFRException, InterruptedException, MPEGDeliveryException
```

This function is used to attach a ServiceDomain from an object carousel. It loads the module which contains the service gateway object and mounts the ServiceDomain volume in the file system hierarchy. This call will block until the service gateway is loaded. It can be aborted by another thread with the method detach. In this case an InterruptedException is thrown.

Calling this method on a ServiceDomain object already in the attached state shall imply a detach of the ServiceDomain object before the attach operation unless the ServiceDomain is already attached to the correct location. Hence if the attach operation fails, the appropriate exception for the failure mode shall be thrown and the ServiceDomain is left in a detached state and not attached to the former object carousel / service domain. If the ServiceDomain is already attached to the correct location then the method call shall have no effect.

**Parameters:**

aDVBSERVICE - The coordinates of the DVB service which contains the object carousel. This locator has to point to a DVB service.

aCarouselId - The identifier of the carousel.

**Throws:**

java.io.InterruptedException - The attachment has been aborted.

MPEGDeliveryException - An MPEG error occurred (such as time-out).

ServiceXFRException - The service gateway cannot be loaded in the current service domain. This exception shall not be thrown in this version of the specification.

---

**detach()**

```
public void detach()
    throws NotLoadedException
```

A call to this method is a hint that the applications gives to the MHP to unmount the volume and delete the objects of the service domain. When another application is using objects of the same service domain the method has no effects. When there are no other application using objects of the service domain, a call to this method is a hint that the MHP can free all the resources allocated to this service domain.

After this, the ServiceDomain will be in a non-attached state and will behave as if it had just been constructed. Subsequent calls to detach shall throw NotLoadedException.

**Throws:**

NotLoadedException - is thrown if the ServiceDomain is not attached or if there is no call to attach in progress.

---

**getLocator()**

```
public org.davic.net.Locator getLocator()
```

Return the locator for this service domain. If this ServiceDomain instance was last attached by specifying a locator then an equivalent locator shall be returned except if the original locator contained extra information that is not necessary to identify the service domain in which case this extra information is removed. If the attach was done with the attach(locator, int) signature, the locator is complemented with the component\_tag value that the platform has identified during attaching the ServiceDomain. If this ServiceDomain instance was last attached by specifying an NSAP address then the locator shall be generated from that address. If this ServiceDomain has never been attached then null shall be returned.

The syntax of the NSAP address is defined in section titled “LiteOptionsProfileBody” in annex B of the MHP specification. It contains the same fields as the locator syntax specified in the System integration aspects chapter. The locator is constructed by taking the fields out of the NSAP address and encoding them in the locator syntax together with the `component_tag` value that the platform has identified during attaching the `ServiceDomain`.

**Returns:**

a locator for this service domain

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

**getMountPoint()**

```
public org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject getMountPoint()
```

Returns a `DSMCCObject` object describing the top level directory of this `ServiceDomain`. If the `ServiceDomain` object is not attached then null is returned.

**Returns:**

an instance of `org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject` if attached or null otherwise

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

**getNSAPAddress()**

```
public byte[] getNSAPAddress()
    throws NotLoadedException
```

This method returns the NSAP address of the `ServiceDomain`.

**Returns:**

the NSAP address of the `ServiceDomain`.

**Throws:**

`NotLoadedException` - is thrown if the `ServiceDomain` is not attached.

**getURL(Locator)**

```
public static java.net.URL getURL(org.davic.net.Locator l)
    throws NotLoadedException, InvalidLocatorException, FileNotFoundException
```

Obtain a `java.net.URL` corresponding to a 'dvb:' locator. If the service domain corresponding to the locator is attached and the file referenced in the locator exists then an instance of `java.net.URL` is returned which can be used to reference this file.

**Parameters:**

`l` - a locator object encapsulating a 'dvb:' locator which includes a 'dvb\_abs\_path' element.

**Returns:**

a `java.net.URL` which can be used to access the file referenced by the 'dvb:' locator

**Throws:**

`org.davic.net.InvalidLocatorException` - if the locator is not a valid 'dvb:' locator or does not includes all elements including 'dvb\_abs\_path' element

`NotLoadedException` - is thrown if the locator is valid and includes enough information but it references a service domain which is not attached.

`java.io.FileNotFoundException` - if the service domain is attached but the file referenced by the locator does not exist

---

**isAttached()**

```
public boolean isAttached()
```

Return whether this service domain is in the attached or detached state.

**Returns:**

true if this service domain is in the attached state, otherwise false

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**isNetworkConnectionAvailable()**

```
public boolean isNetworkConnectionAvailable()
```

Return whether the network connection for this service domain is available. This return value is independent of whether the service domain is attached or not. If a service domain is distributed across multiple network connections (e.g. using the optional support for DSMCC over IIOp) then this will reflect the availability of the network connection carrying the object mounted to the mount point.

**Returns:**

true if the network connection for this service domain is available otherwise false

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

# org.dvb.dsmcc ServiceXFRErrorEvent

## Declaration

public class **ServiceXFRErrorEvent** extends [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRErrorEvent
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

The object requested is available in an alternate ServiceDomain. When an application attempts to asynchronously load an object that has itself a LiteOptionProfileBody IOR or that has a parent directory that has a LiteOptionProfileBody IOR, this event shall be sent to the application. There is no implicit mounting by the implementation of the carousel that actually contains the object. This event is also sent even if the Service Domain that actually contains the DSMCCObject is already mounted.

## Constructors

---

### ServiceXFRErrorEvent(DSMCCObject, ServiceXFRReference)

```
public ServiceXFRErrorEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o,
                             org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference ref)
```

Creates a ServiceXFRErrorEvent object.

#### Parameters:

- o - the DSMCCObject that generated the event.
- ref - the address of an alternate ServiceDomain where the object can be found.

## Methods

---

### getServiceXFR()

```
public org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference getServiceXFR()
```

This method is used to get a reference to the service domain that contains the requested object.

#### Returns:

- The address of an alternate ServiceDomain where the object can be found.

---

**getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

**Overrides:**

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

**Returns:**

the DSMCCObject that generated the event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc ServiceXFRException

## Declaration

public class **ServiceXFRException** extends [DSMCCException](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRException
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

A ServiceXFRException is thrown when a DSMCC Object can not be loaded in the current ServiceDomain but is available in an alternate ServiceDomain (i.e. for an object Carousel, the IOR of the object or one of its parent directories contains a Lite Option Profile Body). There is no implicit mounting by the implementation of the carousel that actually contain the object. This exception is also thrown even if the Service Domain that actually contains the DSMCCObject is already mounted.

## Constructors

---

### ServiceXFRException(byte[], String)

```
public ServiceXFRException(byte[] NSAPAddress, java.lang.String pathName)
```

Creates a ServiceXFRException object.

#### Parameters:

NSAPAddress - The NSAP Address of a ServiceDomain as defined in ISO/IEC 13818-6

pathName - pathName of the object in the alternate ServiceDomain

---

### ServiceXFRException(Locator, int, String)

```
public ServiceXFRException(org.davic.net.Locator aService, int carouselId,
    java.lang.String pathName)
```

Creates a ServiceXFRException object.

#### Parameters:

aService - Locator of the Service

carouselId - Carousel Identifier

pathName - pathName of the object in the alternate ServiceDomain

## Methods

---

### **getServiceXFR()**

```
public org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference getServiceXFR()
```

This method is used to get the alternate ServiceDomain which contains the object requested.

**Returns:**

the address of an alternate ServiceDomain where the object can be found.

# org.dvb.dsmcc ServiceXFRReference

## Declaration

```
public class ServiceXFRReference  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference
```

## Description

A ServiceXFRReference object is used when a DSMCC Object can not be loaded in the current ServiceDomain but is available in an alternate ServiceDomain. Instances of this class are just containers. The parameters passed are merely stored and returned by the access methods. It is the responsibility of the platform when generating instances to use correct values.

## Constructors

---

### ServiceXFRReference(byte[], String)

```
public ServiceXFRReference(byte[] nsapAddress, java.lang.String pathName)
```

Creates a ServiceXFRReference object.

#### Parameters:

nsapAddress - The NSAP Address of a ServiceDomain as defined in ISO/IEC 13818-6  
pathName - pathName of the object in the alternate ServiceDomain

---

### ServiceXFRReference(Locator, int, String)

```
public ServiceXFRReference(org.davic.net.Locator serviceLocator, int carouselId,  
    java.lang.String pathName)
```

Creates a ServiceXFRReference object.

#### Parameters:

serviceLocator - Locator of the Service  
carouselId - Carousel Identifier  
pathName - pathName of the object in the alternate ServiceDomain

## Methods

---

### getCarouselId()

```
public int getCarouselId()
```

This method returns the carousel identifier. If the object was constructed using the constructor which includes a carousel ID or if it was constructed using the constructor which includes an NSAP



address and that NSAP address contains a carouselID then this method shall return that carousel ID otherwise this method shall return -1.

**Returns:**

the carousel identifier or -1.

---

**getLocator()**

```
public org.davic.net.Locator getLocator()
```

This method returns the Locator of the Service for an Object Carousel.

**Returns:**

the Locator of the Service for an Object Carousel. This method returns null, if the ServiceDomain is not associated with an Object Carousel. In this case the NSAP address must be used instead.

---

**getNSAPAddress()**

```
public byte[] getNSAPAddress()
```

This method returns the NSAP Address of a ServiceDomain as defined in ISO/IEC 13818-6. If the object was constructed using an NSAP address then this method shall return the NSAP address passed into the constructor. If the object was constructed with a locator and a carouselID then this method shall return an NSAP address derived from this information when locator is an instance of org.davic.net.dvb.DVBLocator. Otherwise this method shall return null

**Returns:**

the NSAP Address of a ServiceDomain as defined in ISO/IEC 13818-6 or null

---

**getPathName()**

```
public java.lang.String getPathName()
```

This method returns the pathname of the object in the alternate ServiceDomain.

**Returns:**

the pathname of the object in the alternate ServiceDomain.

# org.dvb.dsmcc StreamEvent

## Declaration

```
public class StreamEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class describes a Stream event which is used to synchronize an application with an MPEG Stream.

## Constructors

---

### StreamEvent(DSMCCStreamEvent, long, String, int, byte[])

```
public StreamEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent source, long npt, java.lang.String name,
                    int eventId, byte[] eventData)
```

Creates a StreamEvent object.

#### Parameters:

`source` - The DSMCCStreamEvent that has generated the event.

`npt` - The value of the NPT (Normal Play Time) when the event is triggered. This value is equal to the field eventNPT in the DSMCC StreamEventDescriptor except where the event is a "do it now" event in which case the value -1 is returned (as the value of NPT may not be meaningful).

`name` - The name of this event. The list of event names is located in the DSMCC StreamEvent object. This list is returned by the method DSMCCStreamEvent.getEventList.

`eventId` - The eventId of this event. The list of event IDs is located in the DSMCC StreamEvent object.

`eventData` - The application specific data found in the DSMCC StreamEventDescriptor.

## Methods

---

### getEventData()

```
public byte[] getEventData()
```

This method is used to retrieve the private data associated with the event.

#### Returns:

The private data associated with the event.

---

**getEventId()**

```
public int getEventId()
```

This method is used to get the identifier of the StreamEvent.

**Returns:**

The identifier of the StreamEvent.

---

**getEventName()**

```
public java.lang.String getEventName()
```

This method is used to get the name of the StreamEvent

**Returns:**

the name of the StreamEvent

---

**getEventNPT()**

```
public long getEventNPT()
```

This method is used to get the NPT of the Event in milliseconds.

**Returns:**

The NPT of the Event in milliseconds.

---

**getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

This method returns the DSMCCStreamEvent that generated the event.

**Overrides:**

getSource in class EventObject

**Returns:**

the DSMCCStreamEvent that generated the event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc StreamEventListener

## Declaration

```
public interface StreamEventListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

Objects that implement the StreamEventListener interface can receive StreamEvent event.

## Methods

---

### receiveStreamEvent(StreamEvent)

```
public void receiveStreamEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent e)
```

Send a StreamEvent to the StreamEventListener.

#### Parameters:

e - the StreamEvent event.

# org.dvb.dsmcc SuccessEvent

## Declaration

public class **SuccessEvent** extends [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent
|
+--org.dvb.dsmcc.SuccessEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

This event indicates that the asynchronous loading was successful.

## Constructors

---

### SuccessEvent(DSMCCObject)

```
public SuccessEvent(org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject o)
```

Creates a SuccessEvent object.

#### Parameters:

o - the DSMCCObject which was successfully loaded.

## Methods

---

### getSource()

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the DSMCCObject which was successfully loaded.

#### Overrides:

[getSource](#) in class [AsynchronousLoadingEvent](#)

#### Returns:

the loaded DSMCCObject

# org.dvb.dsmcc UnknownEventException

## Declaration

public class **UnknownEventException** extends [DSMCCEException](#)

```

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--java.io.IOException
            |
            +--org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCEException
                |
                +--org.dvb.dsmcc.UnknownEventException
  
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

The `UnknownEventException` is thrown when a method tries to access to an unknown event. This exception may get thrown because the event in question is not being signalled yet. It does not indicate that the event is permanently unavailable. Applications may choose to attempt to subscribe to the event again at a later point in time in the expectation that the event has become available since the previous attempt.

## Constructors

---

### UnknownEventException()

```
public UnknownEventException()
```

Construct an `UnknownEventException` with no detail message

---

### UnknownEventException(String)

```
public UnknownEventException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct an `UnknownEventException` with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

`s` - the detail message

---

## **Annex Q (normative): Datagram Socket Buffer Control**

# Package org.dvb.net

## Description

Provides general networking features not found elsewhere.

### Class Summary

#### Classes

`DatagramSocketBufferControl` This class provides additional control over buffering for `DatagramSockets`.



org.dvb.net

# DatagramSocketBufferControl

## Declaration

```
public class DatagramSocketBufferControl
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.net.DatagramSocketBufferControl
```

## Description

This class provides additional control over buffering for DatagramSockets.

## Methods

---

### getReceiveBufferSize(DatagramSocket)

```
public static int getReceiveBufferSize(java.net.DatagramSocket d)
    throws SocketException
```

Get value of the SO\_RCVBUF option for this socket, that is the buffer size used by the platform for input on the this Socket. The value returned need not be the value previously set by setReceiveBufferSize (if any).

#### Parameters:

d - The DatagramSocket for which to query the receive buffer size.

#### Returns:

The size of the receive buffer, in bytes.

#### Throws:

java.net.SocketException - - If there is an error when querying the SO\_RCVBUF option.

---

### setReceiveBufferSize(DatagramSocket, int)

```
public static void setReceiveBufferSize(java.net.DatagramSocket d, int size)
    throws SocketException
```

Sets the SO\_RCVBUF option to the specified value for this DatagramSocket. The SO\_RCVBUF option is used by the platform's networking code as a hint for the size to use when allocating the underlying network I/O buffers.

Increasing buffer size can increase the performance of network I/O for high-volume connection, while decreasing it can help reduce the backlog of incoming data. For UDP, this sets the buffer size for received packets.

Because SO\_RCVBUF is a hint, applications that want to verify what size the buffers were set to should call getReceiveBufferSize. This method shall throw IllegalArgumentException - if size is 0 or is negative.

#### Parameters:

d - The DatagramSocket for which to change the receive buffer size.

size - The requested size of the receive buffer, in bytes.

#### Throws:

java.net.SocketException - - If there is an error when setting the SO\_RCVBUF option.

---

## **Annex R (normative): DVB-J Return Channel Connection Management API**

# Package org.dvb.net.rc

## Description

Provides session management for bi-directional IP connections which are session based from the point of view of an application. The best example of this is a conventional modem.

| Class Summary                           |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                       |  |
| <code>ConnectionListener</code>         | This interface should be implemented by objects wishing to be notified about the connection status of a <code>ConnectionRCInterface</code> .   |
| <b>Classes</b>                          |  |
| <code>ConnectionEstablishedEvent</code> | <code>ConnectionEstablishedEvent</code> - An event generated after a connection is established for a <code>ConnectionRCInterface</code> .      |
| <code>ConnectionFailedEvent</code>      | <code>ConnectionFailedEvent</code> - An event generated after an attempt to setup a connection for a <code>ConnectionRCInterface</code> fails. |
| <code>ConnectionParameters</code>       | This class encapsulates the parameters needed to specify the target of a connection.   |
| <code>ConnectionRCEvent</code>          | <code>ConnectionRCEvent</code> - the base class for events related to connection oriented return channels.                                     |
| <code>ConnectionRCInterface</code>      | This class models a connection based return channel network interface for use in receiving and transmitting IP packets over a return channel.  |
| <code>ConnectionTerminatedEvent</code>  | <code>ConnectionTerminatedEvent</code> - An event generated after a connected <code>ConnectionRCInterface</code> is disconnected.              |
| <code>RCInterface</code>                | This class models a return channel network interface for use in receiving and transmitting IP packets over a logical return channel.           |
| <code>RCInterfaceManager</code>         | This class is the factory and manager for all return channel interfaces in the system.   |
| <code>RCInterfaceReleasedEvent</code>   | This event informs an application that a <code>RCInterface</code> has been released by an application or other entity in the system.           |
| <code>RCInterfaceReservedEvent</code>   | This event informs an application that a <code>RCInterface</code> has been reserved by an application or other entity in the system.           |
| <code>RCPermission</code>               | This class is for return channel set-up permissions.   |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                       |  |
| <code>IncompleteTargetException</code>  | Thrown when the target for a connection is incompletely specified.   |
| <code>PermissionDeniedException</code>  | Thrown when an application calls a method which it does not have permission to call at that time.  |

org.dvb.net.rc

# ConnectionEstablishedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class ConnectionEstablishedEvent extends ConnectionRCEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionEstablishedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

ConnectionEstablishedEvent - An event generated after a connection is established for a ConnectionRCInterface.

## Constructors

---

### ConnectionEstablishedEvent(Object)

```
public ConnectionEstablishedEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Construct an event.

#### Parameters:

source - the ConnectionRCInterface whose connection was established

# org.dvb.net.rc ConnectionFailedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class ConnectionFailedEvent extends ConnectionRCEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|   |  
|   +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCEvent  
|       |  
|       +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionFailedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

**ConnectionFailedEvent** - An event generated after an attempt to setup a connection for a [ConnectionRCInterface](#) fails.

## Constructors

---

### **ConnectionFailedEvent(Object)**

```
public ConnectionFailedEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Construct an event.

#### **Parameters:**

source - the [ConnectionRCInterface](#) whose connection attempt failed

# org.dvb.net.rc ConnectionListener

## Declaration

```
public interface ConnectionListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

This interface should be implemented by objects wishing to be notified about the connection status of a `ConnectionRCInterface`.

## Methods

---

### **connectionChanged(ConnectionRCEvent)**

```
public void connectionChanged(org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCEvent e)
```

This method is called to report events related to the setup and termination of return channel interface connections.

#### **Parameters:**

e - the event which happened

org.dvb.net.rc

# ConnectionParameters

## Declaration

```
public class ConnectionParameters
|
| java.lang.Object
| |
| | +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters
```

## Description

This class encapsulates the parameters needed to specify the target of a connection.

## Constructors

---

### ConnectionParameters(String, String, String)

```
public ConnectionParameters(java.lang.String number, java.lang.String username,
                             java.lang.String password)
```

Construct a set of connection parameters. Details of the DNS server to use are supplied by the server.

#### Parameters:

- `number` - the target of the connection, e.g. a phone number
- `username` - the username to use in connection setup
- `password` - the password to use in connection setup

---

### ConnectionParameters(String, String, String, InetAddress[])

```
public ConnectionParameters(java.lang.String number, java.lang.String username,
                             java.lang.String password, java.net.InetAddress[] dns)
```

Construct a set of connection parameters.

#### Parameters:

- `number` - the target of the connection, e.g. a phone number
- `username` - the username to use in connection setup
- `password` - the password to use in connection setup
- `dns` - the list of DNS servers to try before reporting failure. The order in which they are interrogated is not specified. Once one result has been obtained, there is no requirement to try others.

## Methods

---

### **getDNSServer()**

```
public java.net.InetAddress[] getDNSServer()
```

Return the addresses of the DNS servers to use for the connection

**Returns:**

return the addresses of the DNS servers passed into the constructor of the instance or null if none was provided.

---

### **getPassword()**

```
public java.lang.String getPassword()
```

Return the password used in establishing this connection The value returned shall be the one passed into the constructor of this instance.

**Returns:**

the password used in establishing this connection

---

### **getTarget()**

```
public java.lang.String getTarget()
```

Return the target of this connection for example a phone number. The value returned shall be the one passed into the constructor of this instance.

**Returns:**

the target of the connection

---

### **getUsername()**

```
public java.lang.String getUsername()
```

Return the username used in establishing this connection The value returned shall be the one passed into the constructor of this instance.

**Returns:**

the username used in establishing the connection



# org.dvb.net.rc ConnectionRCEvent

## Declaration

```
public class ConnectionRCEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
ConnectionEstablishedEvent, ConnectionFailedEvent,  
ConnectionTerminatedEvent
```

## Description

ConnectionRCEvent - the base class for events related to connection oriented return channels.

## Constructors

---

### ConnectionRCEvent(Object)

```
public ConnectionRCEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Construct an event

#### Parameters:

source - the ConnectionRCInterface for which the event was generated.

# org.dvb.net.rc ConnectionRCInterface

## Declaration

```
public class ConnectionRCInterface extends RCInterface implements
    org.davic.resources.ResourceProxy
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface
    |
    +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
org.davic.resources.ResourceProxy
```

## Description

This class models a connection based return channel network interface for use in receiving and transmitting IP packets over a return channel. Targets for connections are specified as strings including the number to dial. These strings can only include either numbers or a “+” character (as the first character only).

When a `ConnectionRCInterface` instance is first obtained by an application, the current target shall be set to the default. Applications which wish to use a non-default target need to set this target before attempting to reserve the `ConnectionRCInterface`. This is because if the application does not have the permission to use the default target, the `reserve()` method is required throw a `SecurityException`.

## Constructors

---

### ConnectionRCInterface()

```
protected ConnectionRCInterface()
```

Constructor for instances of this class. This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### addConnectionListener(ConnectionListener)

```
public void addConnectionListener(org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionListener l)
```

Add a listener for events related to connections of this interface.

#### Parameters:

l - the listener for the connection related events

---

**connect()**

```
public void connect()  
    throws IOException, PermissionDeniedException
```

Connect this return channel to the current target. If this ResourceProxy does not have the underlying resource reserved then a PermissionDeniedException will be thrown. Where the underlying resource is reserved but at the time the method is called, it is known that connection is impossible then an IOException will be thrown. Apart from this, this method is asynchronous and completion or failure is reported through the event listener on this class. If a connection is already established when this method is called then the method call shall have no effect.

The details of the current connection target shall be obtained from the ConnectionParameters instance which is the current target during the call to this method. Hence changes to that ConnectionParameters instance before a call to this method shall be taken account of during the method call. Changes after the call to this method shall have no effect on that connection.

**Throws:**

PermissionDeniedException - if this application does not own the resource

java.io.IOException - if connection is known to be impossible at the time when the method is called

---

**disconnect()**

```
public void disconnect()  
    throws PermissionDeniedException
```

Disconnect this return channel from the current target. This method is asynchronous and completion is reported through the event listener on this class. This method does not release the underlying resource from the ResourceProxy. If no connection is established then this method shall have no effect.

**Throws:**

PermissionDeniedException - if this application does not own the resource

---

**getClient()**

```
public org.davic.resources.ResourceClient getClient()
```

Return the object which asked to be notified about withdrawal of the underlying resource. This is the object provided as the first parameter to the last call to the reserve method on this object. If this object does not have the underlying resource reserved then null is returned.

**Specified By:**

getClient in interface ResourceProxy

**Returns:**

the object which asked to be notified about withdrawal of the underlying physical resource from this resource proxy or null

---

**getConnectedTime()**

```
public int getConnectedTime()
```

Return the time an interface has been connected

**Returns:**

the time in seconds for which this interface has been connected or -1 if the device is not connected

---

**getCurrentTarget()**

```
public org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters getCurrentTarget()  
    throws IncompleteTargetException
```

Get the current target for connections.

If this ConnectionRCInterface is connected then this method shall return the target to which the connection was made. If this ConnectionRCInterface is not connected then this method shall return the last target set by the setTarget method (if any) otherwise the default.

This returns either the default target or the last target set by this application calling the setTarget method on this instance before the connection was established. This applies regardless of whether the connection was established by another MHP application or if some of the connection parameters have been supplied by the server.

**Returns:**

the current set of connection target parameters

**Throws:**

`IncompleteTargetException` - if the current target is not completely configured

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not allowed to read the current target as defined by the security policy of the platform

---

**getSetupTimeEstimate()**

```
public float getSetupTimeEstimate()
```

Obtain an estimate of the setup time for a successful connection for this interface in seconds.

**Returns:**

an estimate of the setup time for a successful connection for this interface in seconds.

---

**isConnected()**

```
public boolean isConnected()
```

Check if this interface is connected. Connected means able to receive and transmit packets.

**Returns:**

true if the interface is connected, otherwise false

---

**release()**

```
public void release()
```

Release the right to control this return channel interface. If this object does not have the right to control this return channel interface then this method shall have no effect.

---

**removeConnectionListener(ConnectionListener)**

```
public void removeConnectionListener(org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionListener l)
```

Remove a listener for events related to connections of this interface. If the listener specified is not currently receiving these events then this method has no effect.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener for the connection related events

---

**reserve(ResourceClient, Object)**

```
public void reserve(org.davic.resources.ResourceClient c, java.lang.Object requestData)
    throws PermissionDeniedException
```

Request the right to control this return channel interface. If the right to control the return channel interface has already been reserved then this method shall have no effect.

**Parameters:**

`c` - the object to be notified when resources are removed

`requestData` - Used by the Resource Notification API in the `requestRelease` method of the ResourceClient interface. The usage of this parameter is optional and a null reference may be supplied.

**Throws:**

`PermissionDeniedException` - if this interface cannot be reserved

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is denied access to the resource by security policy.

---

**setTarget(ConnectionParameters)**

```
public void setTarget(org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters target)
    throws IncompleteTargetException, PermissionDeniedException
```

Set a non-default target for connections.

If this method is called for a ConnectionRCInterface which is connected then successful calls to this method shall not interrupt that connection. The newly set target shall just be stored until either the next time a connection is established with that ConnectionRCInterface instance or until a subsequent call to `setTarget` on that ConnectionRCInterface.

The details of the current connection target shall be obtained from the newly set target during the call to the `connect` method. Hence changes to that `ConnectionParameters` instance before a call to the `connect` method shall be taken account of during the call to the `connect` method. Changes after the call to the `connect` method shall have no effect on that connection.

**Parameters:**

`target` - the new set of connection target parameters

**Throws:**

`IncompleteTargetException` - if the application owns the resource but the target is not completely specified

`PermissionDeniedException` - if this application does not own the resource

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not allowed to modify the target as defined by the security policy of the platform

---

**setTargetToDefault()**

```
public void setTargetToDefault()
    throws PermissionDeniedException
```

Set the target for connections to the default.

**Throws:**

`PermissionDeniedException` - if this application does not own the resource

`java.lang.SecurityException` - this exception shall never be thrown

org.dvb.net.rc

# ConnectionTerminatedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class ConnectionTerminatedEvent extends ConnectionRCEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|   |  
|   +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCEvent  
|       |  
|       +--org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionTerminatedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

**ConnectionTerminatedEvent** - An event generated after a connected [ConnectionRCInterface](#) is disconnected.

## Constructors

---

### **ConnectionTerminatedEvent(Object)**

```
public ConnectionTerminatedEvent(java.lang.Object source)
```

Construct an event.

#### **Parameters:**

source - the [ConnectionRCInterface](#) whose status changed

org.dvb.net.rc

# IncompleteTargetException

## Declaration

```
public class IncompleteTargetException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.net.rc.IncompleteTargetException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown when the target for a connection is incompletely specified. This is thrown either when the default connection target is incompletely defined in the device or when an application provides an incompletely defined connection target to the device or when the connection target is badly formed, e.g. includes illegal characters in a number parameter.

## Constructors

---

### IncompleteTargetException()

```
public IncompleteTargetException()
```

Default constructor for the exception

---

### IncompleteTargetException(String)

```
public IncompleteTargetException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised

org.dvb.net.rc

# PermissionDeniedException

## Declaration

```
public class PermissionDeniedException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.net.rc.PermissionDeniedException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

Thrown when an application calls a method which it does not have permission to call at that time.

## Constructors

---

### PermissionDeniedException()

```
public PermissionDeniedException()
```

Default constructor for the exception

---

### PermissionDeniedException(String)

```
public PermissionDeniedException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Constructor for the exception with a specified reason

#### Parameters:

`reason` - the reason why the exception was raised



# org.dvb.net.rc RCInterface

## Declaration

```
public class RCInterface  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

[ConnectionRCInterface](#)

## Description

This class models a return channel network interface for use in receiving and transmitting IP packets over a logical return channel. This can include real analog modems, cable return channel and all the other options allowed by the relevant DVB specification. This class does not model any concept of connection. Hence interfaces represented by this class and not by a sub-class of it are permanently connected.

## Fields

---

### TYPE\_CATV

```
public static final int TYPE_CATV  
Constant to indicate a CATV return channel.
```

---

### TYPE\_DECT

```
public static final int TYPE_DECT  
Constant to indicate a DECT return channel.
```

---

### TYPE\_ISDN

```
public static final int TYPE_ISDN  
Constant to indicate an ISDN return channel.
```

---

### TYPE\_LMDS

```
public static final int TYPE_LMDS  
Constant to indicate a LMDS return channel.
```

---

### TYPE\_MATV

```
public static final int TYPE_MATV  
Constant to indicate a MATV return channel.
```

---

## TYPE\_OTHER

```
public static final int TYPE_OTHER
```

Constant to indicate all other return channel technologies not having a suitable defined constant in this class.

NOTE: DVB does not intend to add future constants to this list for future return channel technologies. These should be represented as TYPE\_OTHER.

---

## TYPE\_PSTN

```
public static final int TYPE_PSTN
```

Constant to indicate a PSTN return channel.

---

## TYPE\_RCS

```
public static final int TYPE_RCS
```

Constant to indicate a DVB-RCS return channel.

---

## TYPE\_UNKNOWN

```
public static final int TYPE_UNKNOWN
```

Constant to indicate an unknown return channel technology. There is an intermediate physical interface between the MHP terminal and the return channel device. This return value gives no information about whether the return channel is connection oriented or connectionless.

## Constructors

---

### RCInterface()

```
protected RCInterface()
```

Constructor for instances of this class. This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### getDataRate()

```
public int getDataRate()
```

Return the maximum data rate of the connection over the immediate access network to which this network interface is connected. For asymmetric connections, the data rate coming into the MHP terminal shall be returned. For connection oriented interfaces which are not currently connected, the value returned shall be that of the last connection established where that information is available. Where that information is not available, (e.g. where no connection has been established since an MHP terminal was power cycled), -1 shall be returned.

**Returns:**

a data rate in KBaud or -1 where this is not available

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**getType()**

```
public int getType()
```

Return the type of return channel represented by this object. Note, applications wishing to discover whether a return channel interface is connection oriented or not are recommended to test whether an object is an instance of `ConnectionRCInterface` or not. A non-connection oriented interface really means a permanently connected return channel.

**Returns:**

the type of return channel represented by this object encoded as one of the constants defined in this class

# org.dvb.net.rc RCInterfaceManager

## Declaration

```
public class RCInterfaceManager implements org.davic.resources.ResourceServer

java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

org.davic.resources.ResourceServer

## Description

This class is the factory and manager for all return channel interfaces in the system. The methods on this class which return instances of the `RCInterface` will only return new instances of that class under the following conditions :-

- on the first occasion an instance needs to be returned to a particular application for a particular interface.
- when new return channel interfaces are added to the system

## Methods

---

### addResourceStatusEventListener(ResourceStatusListener)

```
public void addResourceStatusEventListener(org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusListener
listener)
```

This method informs a resource server that a particular object should be informed of changes in the state of the resources managed by that server.

#### Specified By:

`addResourceStatusEventListener` in interface `ResourceServer`

#### Parameters:

`listener` - the object to be informed of state changes

---

### getInstance()

```
public static org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager getInstance()
```

Factory method to obtain a manager. The `RCInterfaceManager` is either a singleton for each MHP application or a singleton for the MHP terminal.

#### Returns:

an instance of an `RCInterfaceManager`

---

### getInterface(InetAddress)

```
public org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface getInterface(java.net.InetAddress addr)
```

Return the interface which will be used when connecting to a particular host. Null is returned if this is not known when the method is called.

**Parameters:**

addr - the IP address of the host to connect to

**Returns:**

the interface which will be used or null if this is not known

---

**getInterface(Socket)**

```
public org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface getInterface(java.net.Socket s)
```

Return the interface which is used for a particular socket.

**Parameters:**

s - the socket to use

**Returns:**

the interface which is used or null if the socket isn't connected

---

**getInterface(URLConnection)**

```
public org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface getInterface(java.net.URLConnection u)
```

Return the interface which is used for a particular URLConnection

**Parameters:**

u - the URLConnection to use

**Returns:**

the interface which is used or null if the URLConnection isn't connected

---

**getInterfaces()**

```
public org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface[] getInterfaces()
```

Factory method to return a list of all return channel interfaces visible to this application. The number of entries in the array will exactly match the number of return channel interfaces visible to the application. Null is returned if no interfaces are visible to this application.

**Returns:**

an array of available return channel interfaces

---

**removeResourceStatusEventListener(ResourceStatusListener)**

```
public void removeResourceStatusEventListener(org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusListener listener)
```

This method informs a resource server that a particular object is no longer interested in being informed about changes in state of resources managed by that server. If the object had not registered its interest initially then this method has no effect.

**Specified By:**

removeResourceStatusEventListener in interface ResourceServer

**Parameters:**

listener - the object which is no longer interested

# org.dvb.net.rc RCInterfaceReleasedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class RCInterfaceReleasedEvent extends org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceReleasedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event informs an application that a `RCInterface` has been released by an application or other entity in the system. It is generated when an application which had successfully reserved a `RCInterface` calls the `ConnectionRCInterface.release` method. It will also be generated if any other entities in the system own such an interface and then release that interface in such a way that it could then become available to applications using this API.

## Constructors

---

### **RCInterfaceReleasedEvent(Object)**

```
public RCInterfaceReleasedEvent(java.lang.Object bg)
```

Constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

bg - the `RCInterface` which has been released

## Methods

---

### **getSource()**

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the device that has been released

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `ResourceStatusEvent`

#### Returns:

the `RCInterface` object representing the interface that has been released

# org.dvb.net.rc RCInterfaceReservedEvent

## Declaration

```
public class RCInterfaceReservedEvent extends org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.davic.resources.ResourceStatusEvent  
|  
+--org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceReservedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This event informs an application that a `RCInterface` has been reserved by an application or other entity in the system. It is generated when an application successfully reserves a `RCInterface`. It will also be generated if any other entities in the system reserve such an interface with the effect of something which was visible to applications using this API becoming unavailable.

## Constructors

---

### `RCInterfaceReservedEvent(Object)`

```
public RCInterfaceReservedEvent(java.lang.Object bg)
```

Constructor for the event

#### Parameters:

`bg` - the `RCInterface` representing the device which has been reserved

## Methods

---

### `getSource()`

```
public java.lang.Object getSource()
```

Returns the device that has been reserved

#### Overrides:

`getSource` in class `ResourceStatusEvent`

#### Returns:

an `RCInterface` representing the device that has been reserved

# org.dvb.net.rc RCPermission

## Declaration

```
public class RCPermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.security.Permission
|
+--java.security.BasicPermission
|
+--org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class is for return channel set-up permissions. An RCPermission contains a name, but no actions list.

The permission name can be “target:default”, which indicates the permission to use the default connection parameters.

The permission name can also be “target:<phone number>”, which indicates the permission to use the specified phone number in the connection set-up (ConnectionRCInterface.setTarget(ConnectionParameters) method).

A wildcard may be used at the end of the permission name. In that case, all phone numbers starting with the number before the wildcard are included in the permission. A “+” may be used at the start of the phone number to indicate a phone number including the international country code.

Examples:

- target:0206234342 (Permission to dial the specified phone number)
- target:020\* (Permission to dial phone numbers starting with 020)
- target:\* (Permission to dial all phone numbers, including the default)

Note: ConnectionRCInterface.reserve(ResourceClient, Object) will throw a SecurityException if the application is not allowed to set-up a connection over the return channel at all (i.e., there is no valid target allowed).

## Constructors

---

### RCPermission(String)

```
public RCPermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new RCPermission with the specified name. The name is the symbolic name of the RCPermission.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the RCPermission



---

## RCPermission(String, String)

```
public RCPermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new RCPermission object with the specified name. The name is the symbolic name of the RCPermission, and the actions String is unused and should be null. This constructor exists for use by the Policy object to instantiate new Permission objects.

**Parameters:**

`name` - the name of the RCPermission

`actions` - should be null.

## Methods

---

### implies(Permission)

```
public boolean implies(java.security.Permission p)
```

Checks if this RCPermission “implies” the specified Permission.

More specifically, this returns true if and only if:

- `p` is an instance of RCPermission, and
- `p`'s name is implied by the name of this permission, as described by the wildcarding rules specified in the the description of this class.

**Overrides:**

`implies` in class `BasicPermission`

**Parameters:**

`p` - The Permission to check against.

---

## **Annex S (normative): Application Listing and Launching**

# Package org.dvb.application

## Description

Provides access to lists of applications which are available in this context and the ability to launch those applications.

| Class Summary                                 |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                             |   |
| <code>AppAttributes</code>                    | The <code>AppAttributes</code> class is a mapping of various information about a registered application.  |
| <code>AppProxy</code>                         | An <code>AppProxy</code> Object is a proxy to an application.   |
| <code>AppsDatabaseEventListener</code>        | The <code>AppsDatabaseListener</code> class allows an application to monitor the application database so that it can keep an up to date interface without polling the state.  |
| <code>AppStateChangeListener</code>           | The <code>AppStateChangeListener</code> class allows a launcher application to keep track of applications it launches or other applications running as part of the same service.  |
| <code>DVBHTMLProxy</code>                     | A <code>DVBHTMLProxy</code> Object is a proxy to a DVBHTML application.   |
| <code>DVBJSProxy</code>                       | A <code>DVBJSProxy</code> Object is a proxy to a DVBJS application.   |
| <b>Classes</b>                                |   |
| <code>AppIcon</code>                          | The <code>AppIcon</code> encapsulates the information concerning the icon attached to the application   |
| <code>AppID</code>                            | The <code>AppID</code> is a representation of the unique identifier for applications.   |
| <code>AppsControlPermission</code>            | This class represents a Permission to control the lifecycle of another application.   |
| <code>AppsDatabase</code>                     | The <code>AppsDatabase</code> is an abstract view of the currently available applications.  |
| <code>AppsDatabaseEvent</code>                | The <code>AppsDatabaseEvent</code> class indicates either an entry in the application database has changed, or so many changes have occurred.   |
| <code>AppsDatabaseFilter</code>               | Abstract class for the filters.   |
| <code>AppStateChangeEvent</code>              | The <code>AppStateChangeEvent</code> class indicates a state transition of the application.   |
| <code>CurrentServiceFilter</code>             | Instances of <code>CurrentServiceFilter</code> are used to set a filter on the list of applications that are retrieved from the <code>AppsDatabase</code> (See methods <code>getAppAttributes</code> and <code>getAppIDs</code> ).      |
| <code>RunningApplicationsFilter</code>        | Instances of <code>RunningApplicationsFilter</code> are used to set a filter on the list of applications that are retrieved from the <code>AppsDatabase</code> (See methods <code>getAppAttributes</code> and <code>getAppIDs</code> ). |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                             |   |
| <code>IllegalProfileParameterException</code> | The <code>IllegalProfileParameter</code> exception is thrown if the application attempts to ask for a version number for a profile not specified for the application.   |

**Class Summary**

`LanguageNotAvailable-  
Exception`

The `LanguageNotAvailableException` exception is thrown if the application asks for the name of an application in a language not signalled in the AIT.

# org.dvb.application

# AppAttributes

## Declaration

```
public interface AppAttributes
```

## Description

The `AppAttributes` class is a mapping of various information about a registered application. For applications which are signalled in an AIT, the mapping between the values returned by methods in this class and the fields and descriptors of the AIT shall be as specified in the main body of this specification.

Instances of objects implementing this interface are immutable and populated before the instance is first returned to an application.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Fields

---

### DVB\_HTML\_application

```
public static final int DVB_HTML_application
```

The DVB registered value for all DVB-HTML applications.

---

### DVB\_J\_application

```
public static final int DVB_J_application
```

The DVB registered value for all DVB-J applications.

## Methods

---

### getAppIcon()

```
public org.dvb.application.AppIcon getAppIcon()
```

This method returns an object encapsulating the information about the icon(s) for the application.

#### Returns:

the information related to the icons that are attached to the application or null if no icon information is available

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

**getIdentifier()**

```
public org.dvb.application.AppID getIdentifier()
```

This method returns the application identifier.

**Returns:**

the application identifier

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getIsServiceBound()**

```
public boolean getIsServiceBound()
```

This method determines whether the application is bound to a single service.

**Returns:**

true if the application is bound to a single service, false otherwise.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getName()**

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

This method returns the name of the application. If the default language (as specified in user preferences) is in the set of available language / name pairs then the name in that language shall be returned. Otherwise this method will return a name which appears in that set on a “best-effort basis”. If no application names are signalled, an empty string shall be returned.

**Returns:**

the name of the application

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getName(String)**

```
public java.lang.String getName(java.lang.String iso639code)
    throws LanguageNotAvailableException
```

This method returns the name of the application in the language which is specified by the parameter passed as an argument. If the language specified is not in the set of available language /name pairs then an exception shall be thrown.

**Parameters:**

`iso639code` - the specified language, encoded as per ISO 639.

**Returns:**

returns the name of the application in the specified language

**Throws:**

[LanguageNotAvailableException](#) - if the name is not available in the language specified or if the parameter passed is null

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

---

**getNames()**

```
public java.lang.String[][] getNames()
```

This method returns all the available names for the application together with their ISO 639 language code. If no application names are signalled, an array of length zero shall be returned.

**Returns:**

the possible names of the application, along with their ISO 639 language code. The first string in each sub-array is the ISO 639 language code. The second string in each sub-array is the corresponding application name.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getPriority()**

```
public int getPriority()
```

This method returns the priority of the application.

**Returns:**

the priority of the application.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getProfiles()**

```
public java.lang.String[] getProfiles()
```

This method returns those minimum profiles required for the application to execute. Profile names shall be encoded using the same encoding specified elsewhere in this specification as input for use with the `java.lang.System.getProperty` method to query if a profile is supported by this platform.

For example, for implementations conforming to the first version of the specification, the translation from AIT signaling values to strings shall be as follows :

- '1' in the signaling will be translated into 'mhp.profile.enhanced\_broadcast'
- '2' in the signaling will be translated into 'mhp.profile.interactive\_broadcast'

Only profiles known to this particular MHP terminal shall be returned. Hence the method can return an array of size zero where all the profiles on which an application can execute are unknown.

**Returns:**

an array of Strings, each String describing a profile.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getProperty(String)**

```
public java.lang.Object getProperty(java.lang.String index)
```

The following method is included for properties that do not have explicit property accessors. The naming of properties and their return values are described in the main body of this specification.

**Parameters:**

`index` - a property name

**Returns:**

either the return value corresponding to the property name or null if the property name is unknown or null

**Since:**  
MHP1.0

---

**getServiceLocator()**

```
public org.davic.net.Locator getServiceLocator()
```

This method returns the locator of the Service describing the application. For an application transmitted on a remote connection, the returned locator shall be the service for that remote connection. For applications not transmitted on a remote connection, the service returned shall be the currently selected service of the service context within which the application calling the method is running.

**Returns:**  
the locator of the Service describing the application.

**Since:**  
MHP1.0

---

**getType()**

```
public int getType()
```

This method returns the type of the application ( as registered by DVB).

**Returns:**  
the type of the application ( as registered by DVB).

**Since:**  
MHP1.0

---

**getVersions(String)**

```
public int[] getVersions(java.lang.String profile)
    throws IllegalProfileParameterException
```

This method returns an array of integers containing the version number of the specification required to run this application at the specified profile.

**Parameters:**  
`profile` - a profile encoded as described in the main body of this specification for use with `java.lang.System.getProperty`.

**Returns:**  
an array of integers, containing the major, minor and micro values (in that order) required for the specified profile.

**Throws:**  
[IllegalProfileParameterException](#) - thrown if the profile specified is not one of the minimum profiles required for the application to execute or if the parameter passed in is null

**Since:**  
MHP1.0



---

**isStartable()**

```
public boolean isStartable()
```

This method determines whether the application is startable or not. An Application is not startable if any of the following apply.

- The application is transmitted on a remote connection.
- The caller of the method does not have the Permissions to start it.
- if the application is signalled with a control code which is neither AUTOSTART nor PRESENT.

If none of the above apply, then the application is startable.

The value returned by this method does not depend on whether the application is actually running or not.

**Returns:**

true if an application is startable, false otherwise.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**isVisible()**

```
public boolean isVisible()
```

This method determines whether the application is marked as being visible to users. An inter-operable application shall honour this visibility setting. Thus a generic launching application shall list applications that are marked as visible and shall not list applications that are not marked as visible.

**Returns:**

true if this application is marked as being visible to users, false otherwise.

**Since:**

MHP1.0.3

# org.dvb.application AppIcon

## Declaration

```
public class AppIcon
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.AppIcon
```

## Description

The `AppIcon` encapsulates the information concerning the icon attached to the application

## Constructors

---

### `AppIcon()`

```
protected AppIcon()
```

The constructor for the class. This constructor is intended for implementation convenience and evolution of the specification and not for use by MHP applications. Applications should obtain instances of this class from `AppAttributes.getAppIcon()`.

**See Also:**

[AppAttributes.getAppIcon\(\)](#)

## Methods

---

### `getIconFlags()`

```
public java.util.BitSet getIconFlags()
```

This method returns the flags identifying which icons are provided for the application.

**Returns:**

the icon flags encoded as a `BitSet`

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

### `getLocator()`

```
public org.davic.net.Locator getLocator()
```

This method returns the location of the directory containing the application icons.

**Returns:**

the location of the directory containing the application icons.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application AppID

## Declaration

```
public class AppID
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.application.AppID
```

## Description

The AppID is a representation of the unique identifier for applications.

Its string form is the Hex representation of the 48 bit number.

## Constructors

---

### AppID(int, int)

```
public AppID(int oid, int aid)
```

Create a new AppID based on the given integers. There is no range checking on these numbers.

#### Parameters:

oid - the globally unique organization number.

aid - the unique count within the organization.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

## Methods

---

### equals(Object)

```
public boolean equals(java.lang.Object obj)
```

Compares two AppIDs for equality.

#### Overrides:

equals in class Object

#### Parameters:

obj - the reference object with which to compare.

#### Returns:

true if this obj is an AppID and its Organisation ID and its Application ID match the ID's for this AppID; false otherwise.

---

**getAID()**

```
public int getAID()
```

This method returns the integer value of the application count supplied in the constructor

**Returns:**

the integer value of the application count supplied in the constructor

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getOID()**

```
public int getOID()
```

This method returns the integer value of the organization number supplied in the constructor.

**Returns:**

the integer value of the organization number supplied in the constructor.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**hashCode()**

```
public int hashCode()
```

Returns a hash code value for this AppID. The hashcode for two AppID's with the same Organisation ID and Application ID are equal.

**Overrides:**

hashCode in class Object

**Returns:**

a hash code value for this AppID

---

**toString()**

```
public java.lang.String toString()
```

This method returns a string containing the Hex representation of the 48 bit number. The string shall be formatted as specified in the section on "Text encoding of application identifiers" in the System Integration chapter of the MHP specification.

**Overrides:**

toString in class Object

**Returns:**

a string containing the Hex representation of the 48 bit number.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

# org.dvb.application

# AppProxy

## Declaration

```
public interface AppProxy
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

[DVBHTMLProxy](#), [DVBJProxy](#)

## Description

An `AppProxy` Object is a proxy to an application. A call to the `start`, `stop` or `pause` will cause the resident Application Manager to respectively start, stop or pause the application bound to this `AppProxy` object. Each of these three method calls can throw a Security Exception if the calling application is not entitled to do so.

Each of these method calls are asynchronous and will result in exactly one `AppStateChangeEvent` to be generated whether the method call was successful or not. If the method call was not successful, any call to the `hasFailed` method of the corresponding `AppStateChangeEvent` will return true.

Some of the methods here allow the `AppProxy` to transition through several states before the final state is reached. If this compound state transition is unsuccessful at any point, the resulting `AppStateChangeEvent` shall have a `fromstate` which is the last state in this transition which the `AppProxy` successfully entered and a `toState` which would have been the next state in the compound state transition.

For instance, if an application were to call `start` on an `AppProxy` for a DVB-J application in the `NOT_LOADED` state and that DVB-J application was to throw a `XletStateChangeException` from its `startXlet` method, the `getFromState` will return `PAUSED` and `getToState` will return `STARTED`. If an application were to call `start` on an `AppProxy` for a DVB-J application in the `NOT_LOADED` state and that DVB-J application was to throw a `XletStateChangeException` from its `initXlet` method, the `getFromState` will return `NOT_LOADED` and `getToState` will return `PAUSED`. Calling the `start` method for an application which is already running shall fail and generate an `AppStateChangeEvent` with `hasFailed` returning true and both `fromstate` and `tostate` being `STARTED`.<sup>1</sup>

See the definition of `AppStateChangeEvent` for more information.

## See Also:

[AppStateChangeEvent](#)

## Fields

---

### DESTROYED

```
public static final int DESTROYED
```

The application is in the destroyed state. This state is transient and entry to this state shall be followed with a transition to the `NOT_LOADED` state almost immediately. It shall be possible to re-start the application after the transition to the `NOT_LOADED` state.

---

### NOT\_LOADED

```
public static final int NOT_LOADED
```

The application has not yet been loaded from the network at all.

---

**PAUSED**

```
public static final int PAUSED
```

The application is in the paused state.

---

**STARTED**

```
public static final int STARTED
```

The application is in the active state.

## Methods

---

**addAppStateChangeListener(AppStateChangeListener)**

```
public void addAppStateChangeListener(org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeListener  
listener)
```

Add a listener to the application proxy so that an application can be informed if the application changes state.

**Parameters:**

listener - the listener to be added.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getState()**

```
public int getState()
```

Return the current state of the application.

**Returns:**

the state of the application.

---

**pause()**

```
public void pause()
```

Request that the application manager pause the application bound to this information structure.

The application will be paused. Calls to this method shall fail if the application is not in the active state. If the application represented by this AppProxy is a DVB-J application, calling this method will, if successful, result in the `pauseXlet` method being called on the Xlet making up the DVB-J application.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to pause this application. Note that if an application is entitled to stop an application, it is also entitled to pause it : having the right to stop an application is logically equivalent to having the right to pause it.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**removeAppStateChangeListener(AppStateChangeListener)**

```
public void  
    removeAppStateChangeListener(org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeListener listener)
```

Remove a listener on the database.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the listener to be removed.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**resume()**

```
public void resume()
```

Request that the application manager resume the execution of the application. The `application` will be started. This method will throw a security exception if the application does not have the authority to resume the application. Calls to this method shall fail if the application is not in the paused state.

This method is asynchronous and its completion will be notified by an `AppStateChangeEvent`. In case of failure, the `hasFailed` method of the `AppStateChangeEvent` will return true. If the application represented by this `AppProxy` is a DVB-J application, calling this method will, if successful, result in the `startXlet` method being called on the Xlet making up the DVB-J application.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to resume this application.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**start()**

```
public void start()
```

Request that the application manager start the application bound to this information structure.

The `application` will be started. This method will throw a security exception if the application does not have the authority to start applications. Calls to this method shall only succeed if the application if the application is signalled with a control code which is either AUTOSTART or PRESENT and any one of the following applies:

- if the application (DVB-J or DVB-HTML) is in the not loaded or paused states,
- if a DVB-J application is in the “loaded” state,
- if a DVB-HTML application is in the “loading” state.

If the application was not loaded at the moment of this call, then the application will be started. In the case of a DVB-J application, it will be initialized and then started by the Application Manager, hence causing the Xlet to go from NotLoaded to Paused and then from Paused to Active. If the application was in the Paused state at the moment of the call and had never been in the Active state, then the application will be started. If the application represented by this `AppProxy` is a DVB-J application, calling this method will, if successful, result in the `startXlet` method being called on the Xlet making up the DVB-J application.

This method is asynchronous and its completion will be notified by an `AppStateChangeEvent`. In case of failure, the `hasFailed` method of the `AppStateChangeEvent` will return true.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to start this application.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

---

**start(String[])**

```
public void start(java.lang.String[] args)
```

Request that the application manager start the application bound to this information structure passing to that application the specified parameters.

The `application` will be started. This method will throw a security exception if the application does not have the authority to start applications. Calls to this method shall only succeed if the application if the application is signalled with a control code which is either AUTOSTART or PRESENT and any one of the following applies:

- if the application (DVB-J or DVB-HTML) is in the not loaded or paused states,
- if a DVB-J application is in the “loaded” state,
- if a DVB-HTML application is in the “loading” state.

If the application was not loaded at the moment of this call, then the application will be started. In the case of a DVB-J application, it will be initialized and then started by the Application Manager, hence causing the Xlet to go from NotLoaded to Paused and then from Paused to Active. If the application was in the Paused state at the moment of the call and had never been in the Active state, then the application will be started. If the application represented by this AppProxy is a DVB-J application, calling this method will, if successful, result in the `startXlet` method being called on the Xlet making up the DVB-J application.

This method is asynchronous and its completion will be notified by an `AppStateChangeEvent`. In case of failure, the `hasFailed` method of the `AppStateChangeEvent` will return true.

**Parameters:**

`args` - the parameters to be passed into the application being started

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to start this application.

**Since:**

MHP1.0.1

---

**stop(boolean)**

```
public void stop(boolean forced)
```

Request that the application manager stop the application bound to this information structure.

The `application` will be stopped. A call to this method shall fail if the application was already in the destroyed state. This method call will stop the application if it was in any other state before the call. If the application is in the NOT\_LOADED state then it shall move directly to the DESTROYED state with no other action being taken. If the application represented by this AppProxy is a DVB-J application and is not in the DESTROYED state then calling this method will, if successful, result in the `destroyXlet` method being called on the Xlet making up the DVB-J application with the same value for the parameter as passed to this method.

This method is asynchronous and its completion will be notified by an `AppStateChangeEvent`. In case of failure, the `hasFailed` method of the `AppStateChangeEvent` will return true.

**Parameters:**

`forced` - if true then do not ask the application but forcibly terminate it, if false give the application an opportunity to refuse.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to stop this application.

**Since:**

MHP1.0



# org.dvb.application AppsControlPermission

## Declaration

```
public final class AppsControlPermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.security.Permission
|
+--java.security.BasicPermission
|
+--org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class represents a Permission to control the lifecycle of another application.

## Constructors

---

### AppsControlPermission()

```
public AppsControlPermission()
```

Creates a new AppsControlPermission. There is a simple mapping between the Application control Permission requests and the way the AppsControlPermission are granted. This mapping is defined in the main body of this specification.

---

### AppsControlPermission(String, String)

```
public AppsControlPermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new AppsControlPermission. There is a simple mapping between the Application control Permission requests and the way the AppsControlPermission are granted. This mapping is defined in the main body of this specification. The actions string is currently unused and should be null. The name string is currently unused and should be empty. This constructor exists for use by the java.security.Policy object to instantiate new permission objects.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name of the permission

`actions` - the actions string

## Methods

---

### **equals(Object)**

```
public boolean equals(java.lang.Object obj)
```

Checks for equality against this AppsControlPermission object.

**Overrides:**

equals in class BasicPermission

**Parameters:**

obj - the object to test for equality with this AppsControlPermission object.

**Returns:**

true if and only if obj is an AppsControlPermission

---

### **getActions()**

```
public java.lang.String getActions()
```

Returns the list of actions that had been passed to the constructor - it shall return null.

**Overrides:**

getActions in class BasicPermission

**Returns:**

a null String.

---

### **hashCode()**

```
public int hashCode()
```

Returns the hash code value for this object.

**Overrides:**

hashCode in class BasicPermission

**Returns:**

the hash code value for this object.

---

### **implies(Permission)**

```
public boolean implies(java.security.Permission permission)
```

Checks if this AppsControlPermission object “implies” the specified permission.

**Overrides:**

implies in class BasicPermission

**Parameters:**

permission - the specified permission to check.

**Returns:**

true if and only if the specified permission is an instanceof AppsControlPermission

# org.dvb.application AppsDatabase

## Declaration

```
public class AppsDatabase
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase
```

## Description

The `AppsDatabase` is an abstract view of the currently available applications. The entries will be provided by the application manager, and gleaned from the AIT signaling. When the service context in which an application is running undergoes service selection, instances of `AppsDatabase` used by that application shall be updated from the new service before an `AppsDatabaseEvent` is sent to the `newDatabase` method of any registered `AppsDatabaseEventListeners`. For applications fully signalled in the current service (i.e. excluding externally authorised ones), the attributes entries shall be the ones from the signalling of the current service even if the application was originally launched from another service and then survived service selection. For running externally authorised applications, the entries will be those from the last service in which they ran fully signalled.

Externally authorized applications shall not appear unless an instance of that application is actually running.

A generic launcher may be written which uses the database to display information in `AppAttributes` and uses an `AppProxy` to launch it

Methods on classes in this package do not block, they return the information the system currently has. Therefore applications should be aware that data may be stale, to within one refresh period of the AIT.

eg:

```
AppsDatabase theDatabase = AppsDatabase.getDatabase();
if (theDatabase != null ) {
    Enumeration attributes = theDatabase.getAppAttributes();
    if(attributes != null) {
        while(attributes.hasMoreElements()) {
            AppAttributes info ;
            AppProxy proxy ;

            info = (AppAttributes)attributes.nextElement();
            proxy = (AppProxy)theDatabase.getAppProxy(info.getIdentifier());
            URL icon = info.getIcon();
            // blah blah..
            // lets start it.
            proxy.start(false, null);
        }
    }
}
```

Where methods on this class as specified as working on “available” applications or “currently available” applications the following definition shall apply. An application is “currently available” if and only if one of the following applies in the service context within which the application calling the method is executing.

- it is signalled as being present or autostart in the currently selected service of that service context and could be started.
- it is currently running in that service context.

In addition to the methods listed below, all calls made using an `AppsDatabaseFilter` shall only use that filter to test “currently available” applications as defined here.

Applications whose information (e.g. signaling) is invalid (e.g. one or more mandatory descriptors are missing or incorrect) may not be listed in the `AppsDatabase`. Where applications are signalled in a broadcast AIT and the MHP

terminal tunes away from the service on which the AIT is carried, but without selecting a new service, the `AppsDatabase` shall retain the entries as signalled in that AIT until a new service is selected.

## Constructors

---

### `AppsDatabase()`

```
protected AppsDatabase()
```

This constructor is provided for the use of implementations and specifications which extend this specification. Applications shall not define sub-classes of this class. Implementations are not required to behave correctly if any such application defined sub-classes are used.

## Methods

---

### `addListener(AppsDatabaseEventListener)`

```
public void addListener(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEventListener listener)
```

Add a listener to the database so that an application can be informed if the database changes.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the listener to be added.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

### `getAppAttributes(AppID)`

```
public org.dvb.application.AppAttributes getAppAttributes(org.dvb.application.AppID key)
```

Returns the properties associated with the given ID. Returns null if no such application is available.

Only one `AppAttributes` object shall be returned in the case where there are several applications having the same (`organisationId`, `applicationId`) pair. In such a case, the same algorithm as would be used to autostart such applications shall be used to decide between the available choices by the implementation.

This method shall return instances which reflect the contents of the database at the time the method is called. After an `AppsDatabaseEvent` has been generated, new instances may be returned. After a service selection has taken place, applications which survived the service selection may call this method in order to discover the attributes of the applications signalled on the new service.

**Parameters:**

`key` - an application ID.

**Returns:**

the value to which the key is mapped in this dictionary or `null` if the key is not an application ID, or not mapped to any application currently available.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

---

**getAppAttributes(AppsDatabaseFilter)**

```
public java.util.Enumeration getAppAttributes(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter
    filter)
```

Returns an enumeration of AppAttributes of the applications available. The Enumeration will contain the set of AppAttributes that satisfy the filtering criteria. For implementations conforming to this version of the specification, only `CurrentServiceFilter` or `RunningApplicationsFilter` filters may return a non empty Enumeration. If the filter object is not an instance of `CurrentServiceFilter` or `RunningApplicationsFilter` or a subclass of either then, the method shall return an empty Enumeration.

This method shall return instances which reflect the contents of the database at the time the method is called. After an `AppsDatabaseEvent` has been generated, new instances may be returned. After a service selection has taken place, applications which survived the service selection may call this method in order to discover the attributes of the applications signalled on the new service.

This method will return an empty Enumeration if there are no attributes.

**Parameters:**

`filter` - the filter to apply

**Returns:**

an enumeration of the applications attributes.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getAppIDs(AppsDatabaseFilter)**

```
public java.util.Enumeration getAppIDs(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter filter)
```

Returns an enumeration of the application ID's available. The Enumeration will contain the set of AppID that match the filtering criteria. For implementations conforming to this version of the specification, only `CurrentServiceFilter` or `RunningApplicationsFilter` filters may return a non empty Enumeration. If the filter object is not an instance of `CurrentServiceFilter` or `RunningApplicationsFilter` or one of their subclasses then, the method shall return an empty Enumeration. No IDs shall be returned for externally authorized applications, unless they are executing. This method will return an empty Enumeration if there are no matching applications.

**Parameters:**

`filter` - the filter to apply

**Returns:**

the applications available matching the filtering criteria

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getAppProxy(AppID)**

```
public org.dvb.application.AppProxy getAppProxy(org.dvb.application.AppID key)
```

Returns the ApplicationProxy associated with the given ID. Returns null if no such application available.

Only one AppProxy object shall be returned in the case where there are several applications having the same (organisationId, applicationId) pair. In such a case, the same algorithm as would be used to autostart such applications shall be used to decide between the available choices by the implementation.

**Parameters:**

`key` - an application ID. `null` if the key is not an application ID, or not mapped to any application available.

**Returns:**

the value to which the key is mapped in this dictionary;

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - shall not be thrown for AppIDs which are returned by `getAppIDs(CurrentServiceFilter)` or `getAppIDs(RunningApplicationsFilter)`

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**getAppsDatabase()**

```
public static org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase getAppDatabase()
```

Returns the singleton AppsDatabase object. The AppsDatabase is either a singleton for each MHP application or a singleton for the MHP terminal.

**Returns:**

the singleton AppsDatabase object.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**removeListener(AppsDatabaseEventListener)**

```
public void removeListener(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEventListener listener)
```

remove a listener on the database.

**Parameters:**

`listener` - the listener to be removed.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**size()**

```
public int size()
```

Returns the number of applications currently available.

**Returns:**

the number of applications currently available.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application AppsDatabaseEvent

## Declaration

```
public class AppsDatabaseEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

The `AppsDatabaseEvent` class indicates either an entry in the application database has changed, or so many changes have occurred. that the database should be considered totally new. An event with `event_id` `NEW_DATABASE` shall always be sent after switching to a new service. After such an event, the contents of the database (both the set of applications and their attributes) shall reflect the new database contents. All former contents of the database shall be discarded except for running extenally authorised applications. It is platform dependant if and when a new database event is thrown while tuned to the same service except that a `NEW_DATABASE` event shall not be sent when only one application has changed within a service.

The `APP_ADDED`, `APP_CHANGED` and `APP_DELETED` events shall not be generated in response to the same database change as caused a `NEW_DATABASE` event to be generated.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Fields

---

### APP\_ADDED

```
public static final int APP_ADDED
```

The addition event id. The `APP_ADDED` event is generated whenever an entry is added to the `AppsDatabase`. It is NOT generated when the entry already in the `AppsDatabase` changes.

---

### APP\_CHANGED

```
public static final int APP_CHANGED
```

The changed event id. The `APP_CHANGED` event is generated whenever any of the information about an application changes. It is NOT generated when the entry is added to or removed from the `AppsDatabase`. In such cases, the `APP_ADDED` or `APP_DELETED` events will be generated instead.

---

## APP\_DELETED

```
public static final int APP_DELETED
```

The deletion event id. The APP\_DELETED event is generated whenever an entry is removed from the AppsDatabase.

---

## NEW\_DATABASE

```
public static final int NEW_DATABASE
```

The new database event id.

## Constructors

---

### AppsDatabaseEvent(int, AppID, Object)

```
public AppsDatabaseEvent(int id, org.dvb.application.AppID appid, java.lang.Object source)
```

Create a new AppsDatabaseEvent object for the entry in the database that changed, or for a new database.

**Parameters:**

`id` - the cause of the event

`appid` - the AppID of the entry that changed

`source` - the AppsDatabase object.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

## Methods

---

### getAppID()

```
public org.dvb.application.AppID getAppID()
```

gets the application ID object for the entry in the database that changed.

When the event type is NEW\_DATABASE, AppID will be null.

**Returns:**

application ID representing the application

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

### getEventId()

```
public int getEventId()
```

gets the type of the event.

**Returns:**

an integer that matches one of the static fields describing events.

**Since:**

MHP1.0



org.dvb.application

# AppsDatabaseEventListener

## Declaration

```
public interface AppsDatabaseEventListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

The `AppsDatabaseEventListener` class allows an application to monitor the application database so that it can keep an up to date interface without polling the state. The application shall receive these events in a timely fashion after the AIT changes, however it is system dependant how often the AIT table is checked.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Methods

---

### entryAdded(AppsDatabaseEvent)

```
public void entryAdded(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent evt)
```

The AppsDataBase has had an application entry added.

#### Parameters:

`evt` - the AppsDatabaseEvent.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

### entryChanged(AppsDatabaseEvent)

```
public void entryChanged(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent evt)
```

The AppsDataBase has had an application entry changed.

#### Parameters:

`evt` - the AppsDatabaseEvent.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

### entryRemoved(AppsDatabaseEvent)

```
public void entryRemoved(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent evt)
```

The AppsDataBase has had an application entry removed.

#### Parameters:

`evt` - the AppsDatabaseEvent.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

**newDatabase(AppsDatabaseEvent)**

```
public void newDatabase(org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent evt)
```

The AppsDataBase has radically changed.

**Parameters:**

`evt` - the AppsDatabaseEvent.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application AppsDatabaseFilter

## Declaration

```
public abstract class AppsDatabaseFilter
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

[CurrentServiceFilter](#), [RunningApplicationsFilter](#)

## Description

Abstract class for the filters. Instances of concrete classes that extend `AppsDatabaseFilter` are passed to the `AppsDatabase.getAppAttributes` and `AppsDatabase.getAppIDs` methods to allow an applications to set a filter on the list of applications (respectively `AppAttributes` and `AppIDs`) that it wants to retrieve from the `AppDatabase`.

## Since:

MHP 1.0

## Constructors

---

### AppsDatabaseFilter()

```
public AppsDatabaseFilter()
```

Construct an `AppsDatabaseFilter` object.

## Methods

---

### accept(AppID)

```
public abstract boolean accept(org.dvb.application.AppID appid)
```

Test if a specified `appid` should be included in the Enumeration.

#### Parameters:

`appid` - the specified `appid` to test.

#### Returns:

true if the application with identifier `appid` should be listed, false otherwise.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application AppStateChangeEvent

## Declaration

```
public class AppStateChangeEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

The `AppStateChangeEvent` class indicates a state transition of the application. These events are only generated for running applications or formerly running applications on completion of a state transition into the DESTROYED state. If the state transition was requested by an application through this API, the method `hasFailed` indicates whether the state change failed or not. Where a state change succeeds, `fromState` and `toState` shall indicate the original and destination state of the transition. If it failed, `fromState` shall return the state the application was in before the state transition was requested and the `toState` method shall return the state the application would have been in if the state transition had succeeded.

Attempting to start an application which is already running shall fail and generate an `AppStateChangeEvent` with `hasFailed` returning true and both `fromstate` and `tostate` being STARTED.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Constructors

---

### AppStateChangeEvent(AppID, int, int, Object, boolean)

```
public AppStateChangeEvent(org.dvb.application.AppID appid, int fromstate, int tostate,
    java.lang.Object source, boolean hasFailed)
```

Create an `AppStateChangeEvent` object.

#### Parameters:

`appid` - a registry entry representing the tracked application

`fromstate` - the state the application was in before the state transition was requested, where the value of `fromState` is one of the state values defined in the `AppProxy` interface or in the interfaces inheriting from it

`tostate` - state the application would be in if the state transition succeeds, where the value of `toState` is one of the state values defined in the `AppProxy` interface or in the interfaces inheriting from it

`hasFailed` - an indication of whether the transition failed (true) or succeeded (false)

`source` - the `AppProxy` where the state transition happened

## Methods

---

### getAppID()

```
public org.dvb.application.AppID getAppID()
```

The application the listener was tracking has made a state transition from `fromState` to `toState`.

**Returns:**

a registry entry representing the tracked application

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

### getFromState()

```
public int getFromState()
```

The application the listener is tracking was in `fromState`, where the value of `fromState` is one of the state values defined in the `AppProxy` interface or in the interfaces inheriting from it.

**Returns:**

the old state

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

### getToState()

```
public int getToState()
```

If the `hasFailed` method returns false, then the application the listener is tracking is now in `toState`. If the `hasFailed` method returns true, then the `toState` is the state where the state transition was attempted to but the transition failed. The value of `toState` is one of the state values defined in the `AppProxy` interface or in the interfaces inheriting from it.

**Returns:**

the intended or actual new state

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

### hasFailed()

```
public boolean hasFailed()
```

This method determines whether an attempt to change the state of an application has failed.

**Returns:**

true if the attempt to change the state of the application failed, false otherwise

**Since:**

MHP1.0

org.dvb.application

# AppStateChangeListener

## Declaration

```
public interface AppStateChangeListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

The `AppStateChangeListener` class allows a launcher application to keep track of applications it launches or other applications running as part of the same service.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Methods

---

### `stateChange(AppStateChangeEvent)`

```
public void stateChange(org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent evt)
```

The application the listener was tracking has made a state transition from `fromState` to `toState` and this method will be given the state event.

#### Parameters:

`evt` - the `AppStateChangeEvent`.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application CurrentServiceFilter

## Declaration

```
public class CurrentServiceFilter extends AppsDatabaseFilter
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
|--org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter
|   |
|   |--org.dvb.application.CurrentServiceFilter
```

## Description

Instances of `CurrentServiceFilter` are used to set a filter on the list of applications that are retrieved from the AppsDatabase (See methods `getAppsAttributes` and `getAppsIDs`).

A `CurrentServiceFilter` is used to indicate that only applications that signalled as part of the current service shall be returned by the `getAppsAttributes` and `getAppIDs` methods of `AppsDatabase`. Externally authorized applications in the AIT are not considered to be signalled as part of the current service for this filter. If an application signalled as part of the current service has an application instance in the destroyed state then information on that application instance shall not be retrieved. Instead, what shall be retrieved is information on another application instance which would normally be in the not loaded state. Subclasses of `CurrentServiceFilter` can override the `accept` method so as to implement their own filter criteria on the AppID's values.

## Since:

MHP 1.0

## Constructors

---

### CurrentServiceFilter()

```
public CurrentServiceFilter()
```

public Constructor of the `CurrentServiceFilter`

## Methods

---

### accept(AppID)

```
public boolean accept(org.dvb.application.AppID appid)
```

Test if a specified appid should be included in the Enumeration.

#### Overrides:

`accept` in class [AppsDatabaseFilter](#)

#### Parameters:

appid - the specified appid to test.

#### Returns:

true if the application with identifier appid should be listed, false otherwise.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application DVBHTMLProxy

## Declaration

public interface `DVBHTMLProxy` extends `AppProxy`

## All Superinterfaces:

`AppProxy`

## Description

A `DVBHTMLProxy` Object is a proxy to a DVBHTML application.

## Fields

---

### KILLED

public static final int `KILLED`

The application is in the killed state.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.2

---

### LOADING

public static final int `LOADING`

The application is in the loading state.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.2

## Methods

---

### prefetch()

public void `prefetch()`

Loads the initial entry page of the application and waits for a signal. This method mimics the PREFETCH control code and is intended to be called instead of and not as well as start. Calling prefetch on a started application will have no effect.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the calling application does not have permission to start applications

**Since:**

MHP1.0



---

**startTrigger(Date)**

```
public void startTrigger(java.util.Date starttime)
```

Sends the application a start trigger at the specified time.

**Parameters:**

`starttime` - the specified time to send a start trigger to the application. If the time has already passed the application manager shall send the trigger immediately. Dates pre-epoch shall always cause the application manager to send the trigger immediately.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the calling application does not have permission to start applications

**Since:**

MHP1.0

---

**trigger(Date, Object)**

```
public void trigger(java.util.Date time, java.lang.Object triggerPayload)
```

Sends the application a trigger with the given payload at the specified time.

**Parameters:**

`time` - the specified time to send a start trigger to the application. If the time has already passed the application manager should send the trigger immediately. Dates pre-epoch shall always cause the application manager to send a 'now' trigger.

`triggerPayload` - the specified payload to deliver with the trigger. The payload is specified as object, but this will be refined once DVB-HTML Triggers are properly defined.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the calling application does not have permission to start applications

**Since:**

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application DVBJProxy

## Declaration

```
public interface DVBJProxy extends AppProxy
```

## All Superinterfaces:

[AppProxy](#)

## Description

A DVBJProxy Object is a proxy to a DVBJ application.

## Fields

---

### LOADED

```
public static final int LOADED
```

The application is in the loaded state.

## Methods

---

### init()

```
public void init()
```

Requests the application manager calls the `initXlet` method on the application.

This method is asynchronous and its completion will be notified by an `AppStateChangedEvent`. In case of failure, the `hasFailed` method of the `AppStateChangedEvent` will return true. Calls to this method shall only succeed if the application is in the `NOT_LOADED` or `LOADED` states. If the application is in the `NOT_LOADED` state, the application will move through the `LOADED` state into the `PAUSED` state before calls to this method complete.

In all cases, an `AppStateChangeEvent` will be sent, whether the call was successful or not.

#### Throws:

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to load this application.  
Being able to init an application requires to be entitled to start it.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

**load()**

```
public void load()
```

Provides a hint to preload at least the initial class of the application into local storage, resources permitting. This does not require loading of classes into the virtual machine or creation of a new logical virtual machine which are implications of the `init` method.

This method is asynchronous and its completion will be notified by an `AppStateChangeEvent`. In case of failure, the `hasFailed` method of the `AppStateChangeEvent` will return `true`. Calls to this method shall only succeed if the application is in the `NOT_LOADED` state. In all cases, an `AppStateChangeEvent` will be sent, whether the call was successful or not.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the application is not entitled to load this application.  
Being able to load an application requires to be entitled to start it.

**Since:**

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.application IllegalProfileParameterException

## Declaration

```
public class IllegalProfileParameterException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.IllegalProfileParameterException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

The `IllegalProfileParameter` exception is thrown if the application attempts to ask for a version number for a profile not specified for the application.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Constructors

---

### **IllegalProfileParameterException()**

```
public IllegalProfileParameterException()
```

Construct a `IllegalProfileParameterException` with no detail message

---

### **IllegalProfileParameterException(String)**

```
public IllegalProfileParameterException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a `IllegalProfileParameterException` with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

org.dvb.application

# LanguageNotAvailableException

## Declaration

```
public class LanguageNotAvailableException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.application.LanguageNotAvailableException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

The `LanguageNotAvailableException` exception is thrown if the application asks for the name of an application in a language not signalled in the AIT.

## Since:

MHP1.0

## Constructors

---

### `LanguageNotAvailableException()`

```
public LanguageNotAvailableException()
```

Construct a `LanguageNotAvailableException` with no detail message

---

### `LanguageNotAvailableException(String)`

```
public LanguageNotAvailableException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a `LanguageNotAvailableException` with a detail message

#### Parameters:

`s` - detail message

# org.dvb.application RunningApplicationsFilter

## Declaration

```
public class RunningApplicationsFilter extends AppsDatabaseFilter
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
|--org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter
|   |
|   |--org.dvb.application.RunningApplicationsFilter
```

## Description

Instances of `RunningApplicationsFilter` are used to set a filter on the list of applications that are retrieved from the `AppsDatabase` (See methods `getAppsAttributes` and `getAppsIDs`).

A `RunningApplicationsFilter` is used to indicate that only applications that are running as part of the current service shall be returned by the `getAppsAttributes` and `getAppIDs` methods of `AppsDatabase`. Externally authorized applications in the AIT shall be returned if they are currently running in the same service context as the caller. Subclasses of `RunningApplicationsFilter` can override the `accept` method so as to implement their own filter criteria on the `AppID`'s values.

## Since:

MHP 1.0

## Constructors

---

### `RunningApplicationsFilter()`

```
public RunningApplicationsFilter()
```

public Constructor of the `RunningApplicationsFilter`

## Methods

---

### `accept(AppID)`

```
public boolean accept(org.dvb.application.AppID appid)
```

Test if a specified `appid` should be included in the Enumeration.

#### Overrides:

`accept` in class [AppsDatabaseFilter](#)

#### Parameters:

`appid` - the specified `appid` to test.

#### Returns:

true if the application with identifier `appid` should be listed, false otherwise.

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

## **Annex T (normative): Permissions**

# Package org.dvb.net.ca

## Description

Provides extensions to the conditional access API from DAVIC.

### Class Summary

#### Classes

[CAPermission](#)

This class is for CA permissions.



# org.dvb.net.ca CAPermission

## Declaration

```
public class CAPermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.security.Permission
    |
    +--java.security.BasicPermission
        |
        +--org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class is for CA permissions. A CAPermission contains a name, but no actions list.

A CAPermission contains a range of CA system ids and a specific permission for that range of CA system ids. Instead of a range of CA system ids, the CAPermission can also refer to a single CA system id.

The name has the following syntax:

CASystemIdRange ":" Permission

where CASystemIdRange = CASystemId [ "-" CASystemId ] | "\*"

and Permission = "MMI" | "buy" | "entitlementInfo" | "messagePassing" | "\*"

Examples:

- 0x1200-0x120A:buy (The permission to buy entitlement for all the CA systems with ids between 0x1200 and 0x120A inclusive.)
- 0x1201:entitlementInfo (The permission to get entitlement information for the CA system with id 0x1201)
- 0x120d:\* (This wildcard expresses all the permissions for the CA system with id 0x120d).

Note: The CASystemId is expressed as a hexadecimal value.

The permission "MMI" corresponds with the SecurityException on CAModuleManager.addMMIListener(). The permission "buy" corresponds with the SecurityException on CAModule.buyEntitlement(). The permission "entitlementInfo" corresponds with the SecurityException on CAModule.queryEntitlement() and CAModule.listEntitlements(). The permission "messagePassing" corresponds with CAModule.openMessageSession(MessageListener)

## Constructors

---

### CAPermission(String)

```
public CAPermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new CAPermission with the specified name. The name is the symbolic name of the CAPermission.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the CAPermission

---

**CAPermission(String, String)**

```
public CAPermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new CAPermission object with the specified name. The name is the symbolic name of the CAPermission, and the actions String is unused and should be null. This constructor exists for use by the Policy object to instantiate new Permission objects.

**Parameters:**

`name` - the name of the CAPermission

`actions` - should be null.

## Methods

---

**implies(Permission)**

```
public boolean implies(java.security.Permission p)
```

Checks if the specified permission is “implied” by this object.

**Overrides:**

`implies` in class `BasicPermission`

**Parameters:**

`p` - the permission to check against.

**Returns:**

true if the passed permission is equal to or implied by this permission, false otherwise.

# Package org.dvb.net.tuning

## Description

Provides extensions to the tuning API from DAVIC.

### Class Summary

#### Classes

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <code>DvbNetworkInterface-</code><br><code>SIUtil</code> | Each SI database is associated with a network interface and vice versa. |
| <code>TunerPermission</code>                             | This class is for tuner permissions.                                    |

# org.dvb.net.tuning DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil

## Declaration

```
public class DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.net.tuning.DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil
```

## Description

Each SI database is associated with a network interface and vice versa. This class allows the application to query this association.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## Methods

---

### getNetworkInterface(SIDatabase)

```
public static org.davic.net.tuning.NetworkInterface  
    getNetworkInterface(org.dvb.si.SIDatabase sd)
```

Gets the network interface for a particular SI database.

#### Parameters:

`sd` - the SI database for which the associated network interface will be returned.

#### Returns:

the associated network interface

---

### getSIDatabase(NetworkInterface)

```
public static org.dvb.si.SIDatabase getSIDatabase(org.davic.net.tuning.NetworkInterface ni)
```

Gets the SI database for a particular network interface.

#### Parameters:

`ni` - the network interface for which the associated SI database will be returned.

#### Returns:

the associated SI database

# org.dvb.net.tuning TunerPermission

## Declaration

```
public class TunerPermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.security.Permission  
|  
+--java.security.BasicPermission  
|  
+--org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class is for tuner permissions. A `TunerPermission` contains no name and no actions list. If an application has the tuner permission, then it shall not receive a `SecurityException` from those methods in that API defined to throw one. Without such a permission, it shall receive such an exception.

## Constructors

---

### TunerPermission(String)

```
public TunerPermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new `TunerPermission`. The name string is currently unused and should be empty.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the `TunerPermission`.

---

### TunerPermission(String, String)

```
public TunerPermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new `TunerPermission`. The name string is currently unused and should be empty. The actions string is currently unused and should be null. This constructor exists for use by the Policy object to instantiate new Permission objects.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the `TunerPermission`.

actions - the actions list

## Methods

---

### **implies(Permission)**

```
public boolean implies(java.security.Permission p)
```

Checks if the specified permission is “implied” by this object.

Since name and actions aren’t used, the only check needed is whether p is also a TunerPermission.

#### **Overrides:**

```
implies in class BasicPermission
```

#### **Parameters:**

p - the permission to check against.

#### **Returns:**

true if the passed permission is equal to or implied by this permission, false otherwise.

---

## **Annex U (normative): Extended graphics APIs**

# Package org.dvb.ui

## Description

Provides extended graphics functionality.

| Class Summary                                     |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                                 |  |
| <code>TestOpacity</code>                          | Interface implemented by Components or Containers in order to allow the platform to query whether their paint method is fully opaque.  |
| <code>TextOverflowListener</code>                 | The <code>TextOverflowListener</code> is an interface that an application may implement and register in the <code>DVBTextLayoutManager</code> .  |
| <b>Classes</b>                                    |  |
| <code>DVBAlphaComposite</code>                    | This <code>DVBAlphaComposite</code> class implements the basic alpha compositing rules for combining source and destination pixels to achieve blending and transparency effects with graphics, images and video. |
| <code>DVBBufferedImage</code>                     | The <code>DVBBufferedImage</code> subclass describes an <code>java.awt.Image</code> with an accessible buffer of image data.   |
| <code>DVBColor</code>                             | A <code>Color</code> class which adds the notion of alpha.   |
| <code>DVBGraphics</code>                          | The <code>DVBGraphics</code> class is a adapter class to support alpha compositing in an MHP device.   |
| <code>DVBTextLayoutManager</code>                 | The <code>DVBTextLayoutManager</code> provides a text rendering layout mechanism for the <code>org.havi.ui.HStaticText</code> <code>org.havi.ui.HText</code> and <code>org.havi.ui.HTextButton</code> classes.   |
| <code>FontFactory</code>                          | Provides a mechanism for applications to instantiate fonts that are not built into the system.   |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                                 |  |
| <code>DVBRasterFormatException</code>             | This exception is thrown for some invalid operations on instances of <code>DVBBufferedImage</code> .   |
| <code>FontFormatException</code>                  | Thrown when attempt is made to read a file describing a font when the contents of that file are not valid.   |
| <code>FontNotAvailableException</code>            | Thrown when attempt is made to instantiate a font that cannot be located.  |
| <code>UnsupportedDrawingOperationException</code> | The <code>UnsupportedDrawingOperationException</code> class represents an exception that is thrown if an drawing operation is not supported on this platform.  |



# org.dvb.ui DVBAAlphaComposite

## Declaration

```
public final class DVBAAlphaComposite

java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.ui.DVBAAlphaComposite
```

## Description

This `DVBAAlphaComposite` class implements the basic alpha compositing rules for combining source and destination pixels to achieve blending and transparency effects with graphics, images and video. The rules implemented by this class are a subset of the Porter-Duff rules described in T. Porter and T. Duff, "Compositing Digital Images", SIGGRAPH 84, 253-259.

If any input does not have an alpha channel, an alpha value of 1.0, which is completely opaque, is assumed for all pixels. A constant alpha value can also be specified to be multiplied with the alpha value of the source pixels.

The following abbreviations are used in the description of the rules:

- $C_s$  = one of the color components of the source pixel without alpha.
- $cs$  = color component of a source pixel premultiplied with alpha ( $cs = A_s * A_r * C_s$ )
- $C_d$  = one of the color components of the destination pixel without alpha.
- $cd$  = color component of a destination pixel premultiplied with alpha
- $C_n$  = the new constructed color without alpha.
- $cn$  = the new constructed color premultiplied with alpha
- $A_s$  = alpha component of the source pixel.
- $A_d$  = alpha component of the destination pixel.
- $A_n$  = the new alpha after compositing
- $A_r$  = alpha, specified by `getInstance(int Rule, float Ar)`. Unless otherwise specified  $A_r = 1.0$
- $F_s$  = fraction of the source pixel that contributes to the output.
- $F_d$  = fraction of the input destination pixel that contributes to the output.

The color and alpha components produced by the compositing operation are calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} cn &= (A_s * A_r) * C_s * F_s + A_d * C_d * F_d \\ An &= (A_s * A_r) * F_s + A_d * F_d \\ Cn &= cn / An \end{aligned}$$

where  $F_s$  and  $F_d$  are specified by each rule.

The alpha resulting from the compositing operation is stored in the destination if the destination has an alpha channel. Otherwise, the resulting color is divided by the resulting alpha before being stored in the destination and the alpha is discarded. If the alpha value is 0.0, the color values are set to 0.0.

## See Also:

`java.awt.AlphaComposite`

## Fields

---

**Clear**

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite Clear
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque CLEAR rule with an alpha (Ar) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[CLEAR](#)

---

**CLEAR**

```
public static final int CLEAR
```

Porter-Duff Clear rule. Both the color and the alpha of the destination are cleared. Neither the source nor the destination is used as input.

Fs = 0 and Fd = 0, thus:

```
cn = 0
An = 0
Cn = 0
```

**Note that this operation is a fast drawing operation** This operation is the same as using a source with alpha= 0 and the SRC rule

---

**DST\_IN**

```
public static final int DST_IN
```

Porter-Duff Destination In Source rule. The part of the destination lying inside of the source replaces the destination.

Fs = 0 and Fd = (As\*Ar), thus:

```
cn = Ad*Cd*(As*Ar)
An = Ad*(As*Ar)
Cn = Cd
```

**Note that this operation is faster than e.g. SRC\_OVER but slower than SRC**

---

**DST\_OUT**

```
public static final int DST_OUT
```

Porter-Duff Destination Held Out By Source rule. The part of the destination lying outside of the source replaces the destination.

Fs = 0 and Fd = (1-(As\*Ar)), thus:

```
cn = Ad*Cd*(1-(As*Ar))
An = Ad*(1-(As*Ar))
Cn = Cd
```

**Note that this operation is faster than e.g. SRC\_OVER but slower than SRC**

---

**DST\_OVER**

```
public static final int DST_OVER
```

Porter-Duff Destination Over Source rule. The destination is composited over the source and the result replaces the destination.

Fs = (1-Ad) and Fd = 1, thus:

```
cn = (As*Ar)*Cs*(1-Ad) + Ad*Cd
An = (As*Ar)*(1-Ad) + Ad
```

**Note that this can be a very slow drawing operation**

---

**DstIn**

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite DstIn
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque DST\_IN rule with an alpha (Ar) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[DST\\_IN](#)

---

**DstOut**

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite DstOut
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque DST\_OUT rule with an alpha (Ar) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[DST\\_OUT](#)

---

**DstOver**

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite DstOver
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque DST\_OVER rule with an alpha (Ar) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[DST\\_OVER](#)

---

**Src**

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite Src
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque SRC rule with an alpha (Ar) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[SRC](#)

---

**SRC**

```
public static final int SRC
```

Porter-Duff Source rule. The source is copied to the destination. The destination is not used as input.

Fs = 1 and Fd = 0, thus:

```
cn = (As*Ar)*Cs
An = As*Ar
Cn = Cs
```

**Note that this is a fast drawing routine**

---

**SRC\_IN**

```
public static final int SRC_IN
```

Porter-Duff Source In Destination rule. The part of the source lying inside of the destination replaces the destination.

Fs = Ad and Fd = 0, thus:

```
cn = (As*Ar)*Cs*Ad
An = (As*Ar)*Ad
Cn = Cs
```

**Note that this operation is faster than e.g. SRC\_OVER but slower than SRC**

---

## SRC\_OUT

```
public static final int SRC_OUT
```

Porter-Duff Source Held Out By Destination rule. The part of the source lying outside of the destination replaces the destination.

$F_s = (1 - A_d)$  and  $F_d = 0$ , thus:

```
cn = (As*Ar)*Cs*(1-Ad)
An = (As*Ar)*(1-Ad)
Cn = Cs
```

**Note that this operation is faster than e.g. SRC\_OVER but slower than SRC**

---

## SRC\_OVER

```
public static final int SRC_OVER
```

Porter-Duff Source Over Destination rule. The source is composited over the destination.

$F_s = 1$  and  $F_d = (1 - (A_s * A_r))$ , thus:

```
cn = (As*Ar)*Cs + Ad*Cd*(1-(As*Ar))
An = (As*Ar) + Ad*(1-(As*Ar))
```

**Note that this can be a very slow drawing operation**

---

## SrcIn

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite SrcIn
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque SRC\_IN rule with an alpha ( $A_r$ ) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[SRC\\_IN](#)

---

## SrcOut

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite SrcOut
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque SRC\_OUT rule with an alpha ( $A_r$ ) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[SRC\\_OUT](#)

---

## SrcOver

```
public static final org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite SrcOver
```

DVBAlphaComposite object that implements the opaque SRC\_OVER rule with an alpha ( $A_r$ ) of 1.0f.

**See Also:**

[SRC\\_OVER](#)

## Methods

---

### **equals(Object)**

```
public boolean equals(java.lang.Object obj)
```

Tests if the specified `java.lang.Object` is equal to this `DVBAlphaComposite` object.

**Overrides:**

`equals` in class `Object`

**Parameters:**

`obj` - the `Object` to test for equality

**Returns:**

`true` if `obj` is a `DVBAlphaComposite` and has the same values for rule and alpha as this object. Otherwise `false` shall be returned.

---

### **getAlpha()**

```
public float getAlpha()
```

Returns the alpha value of this `DVBAlphaComposite`. If this `DVBAlphaComposite` does not have an alpha value, 1.0 is returned.

**Returns:**

the alpha value of this `DVBAlphaComposite`.

---

### **getInstance(int)**

```
public static org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite getInstance(int rule)
```

Creates an `DVBAlphaComposite` object with the specified rule. The value for alpha shall be 1.0f.

**Parameters:**

`rule` - the compositing rule

**Returns:**

an `DVBAlphaComposite` object with the specified rule.

---

### **getInstance(int, float)**

```
public static org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite getInstance(int rule, float alpha)
```

Creates an `DVBAlphaComposite` object with the specified rule and the constant alpha (`Ar`) to multiply with the alpha of the source (`As`). The source is multiplied with the specified alpha before being composited with the destination.

**Parameters:**

`rule` - the compositing rule

`alpha` - the constant alpha (`Ar`) to be multiplied with the alpha of the source (`As`). `alpha` must be a floating point number in the inclusive range [0.0, 1.0].

**Returns:**

an `DVBAlphaComposite` object with the specified rule and the constant alpha to multiply with the alpha of the source.

---

**getRule()**

```
public int getRule()
```

Returns the compositing rule of this DVBAAlphaComposite.

**Returns:**

the compositing rule of this DVBAAlphaComposite.

# org.dvb.ui DVBBufferedImage

## Declaration

```
public class DVBBufferedImage extends java.awt.Image
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.awt.Image
|
+--org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage
```

## Description

The DVBBufferedImage subclass describes an `java.awt.Image` with an accessible buffer of image data. The DVBBufferedImage is an adapter class for `java.awt.image.BufferedImage`. It supports two different platform dependent sample models `TYPE_BASE` and `TYPE_ADVANCED`. Buffered images with the `TYPE_BASE` have the same sample model as the on screen graphics buffer, thus `TYPE_BASE` could be CLUT based. `TYPE_ADVANCED` has a direct color model but it is not specified how many bits are used to store the different color components. By default, a new DVBBufferedImage is transparent. All alpha values are set to 0; Instances of DVBBufferedImage shall be considered to be off-screen images for the purpose of the inherited method `Image.getGraphics`.

## Since:

MHP 1.0

## Fields

---

### TYPE\_ADVANCED

```
public static final int TYPE_ADVANCED
```

Represents an image stored in a best possible SampleModel (platform dependent) The image has a DirectColorModel with alpha. The color data in this image is considered not to be premultiplied with alpha. The data returned by `getRGB()` will be in the `TYPE_INT_ARGB` color model that is alpha component in bits 24-31, the red component in bits 16-23, the green component in bits 8-15, and the blue component in bits 0-7. The data for `setRGB()` shall be in the `TYPE_INT_ARGB` color model as well.

#### Since:

MHP 1.0

---

### TYPE\_BASE

```
public static final int TYPE_BASE
```

Represents an image stored in a platform dependent Sample Model. This color model is not visible to applications. The data returned by `getRGB()` will be in the `TYPE_INT_ARGB` color model that is alpha component in bits 24-31, the red component in bits 16-23, the green component in bits 8-15, and the blue component in bits 0-7. The data for `setRGB()` shall be in the `TYPE_INT_ARGB` color model as well.

#### Since:

MHP 1.0

## Constructors

---

### DVBBufferedImage(int, int)

```
public DVBBufferedImage(int width, int height)
```

Constructs a DVBBufferedImage with the specified width and height. The Sample Model used the image is the native Sample Model (TYPE\_BASE) of the implementation. Note that a request can lead to an `java.lang.OutOfMemoryError`. Applications should be aware of this.

**Parameters:**

`width` - the width of the created image

`height` - the height of the created image

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

### DVBBufferedImage(int, int, int)

```
public DVBBufferedImage(int width, int height, int type)
```

Constructs a new DVBBufferedImage with the specified width and height in the Sample Model specified by type. Note that a request can lead to an `java.lang.OutOfMemoryError`. Applications should be aware of this.

**Parameters:**

`width` - the width of the DVBBufferedImage

`height` - the height of the DVBBufferedImage

`type` - the ColorSpace of the DVBBufferedImage

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

## Methods

---

### createGraphics()

```
public org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics createGraphics()
```

Creates a DVBGraphics, which can be used to draw into this DVBBufferedImage. Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall return null.

**Returns:**

a DVBGraphics, used for drawing into this image.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0



---

**dispose()**

```
public void dispose()
```

Disposes of this buffered image. This method releases the resources (e.g. pixel memory) underlying this buffered image. After calling this method ;

- the image concerned may not be used again
- the image shall be considered to have a width and height of -1, -1 as specified for instances of `java.awt.Image` where the width and height are not yet known.
- the `getGraphics` method may return null

**Since:**

MHP 1.0.1

---

**flush()**

```
public void flush()
```

Flushes all resources being used to cache optimization information. The underlying pixel data is unaffected. Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall fail silently.

**Overrides:**

`flush` in class `Image`

---

**getGraphics()**

```
public java.awt.Graphics getGraphics()
```

This method returns a `java.awt.Graphics`, it is here for backwards compatibility. `createGraphics` is more convenient, since it is declared to return a `DVBGraphics`. Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall return null.

**Overrides:**

`getGraphics` in class `Image`

**Returns:**

a `Graphics`, which can be used to draw into this image.

---

**getHeight()**

```
public int getHeight()
```

Returns the height of the `DVBBufferedImage`.

**Returns:**

the height of this `DVBBufferedImage`.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

**getHeight(ImageObserver)**

```
public int getHeight(java.awt.image.ImageObserver observer)
```

Returns the height of the image. If the height is not known yet then the `ImageObserver` is notified later and -1 is returned.

**Overrides:**

`getHeight` in class `Image`

**Parameters:**

`observer` - the `ImageObserver` that receives information about the image

**Returns:**

the height of the image or `-1` if the height is not yet known.

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Image.getWidth(ImageObserver)`, `java.awt.image.ImageObserver`

---

**getImage()**

```
public java.awt.Image getImage()
```

Returns a `java.awt.Image` representing this buffered image. In implementations which implement `java.awt.image.BufferedImage` this returns a `java.awt.image.BufferedImage` cast to a `java.awt.Image`. Otherwise it is implementation dependent whether it returns this image or whether it returns an instance of an underlying platform specific sub-class of `java.awt.Image`. Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall return null.

**Returns:**

a `java.awt.image` representing this buffered image

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

**getProperty(String, ImageObserver)**

```
public java.lang.Object getProperty(java.lang.String name,  
    java.awt.image.ImageObserver observer)
```

Returns a property of the image by name. Individual property names are defined by the various image formats. If a property is not defined for a particular image, this method returns the `UndefinedProperty` field. If the properties for this image are not yet known, then this method returns null and the `ImageObserver` object is notified later. The property name "comment" should be used to store an optional comment that can be presented to the user as a description of the image, its source, or its author. Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall return null.

**Overrides:**

`getProperty` in class `Image`

**Parameters:**

`name` - the property name

`observer` - the `ImageObserver` that receives notification regarding image information

**Returns:**

an `java.lang.Object` that is the property referred to by the specified `name` or null if the properties of this image are not yet known.

**See Also:**

`java.awt.image.ImageObserver`, `java.awt.Image.UndefinedProperty`

---

**getRGB(int, int)**

```
public int getRGB(int x, int y)
```

Returns the specified integer pixel in the default RGB color model (`TYPE_INT_ARGB`) and default sRGB colorspace. Color conversion takes place if the used Sample Model is not 8-bit for each color component. There are only 8-bits of precision for each color component in the returned data when using this method. Note that when a lower precision is used in this buffered image `getRGB` may return different values than those used in `setRGB()`

**Parameters:**

`x` - the x-coordinate of the pixel

`y` - the y-coordinate of the pixel

**Returns:**

an integer pixel in the default RGB color model (TYPE\_INT\_ARGB) and default sRGB colorspace.

**Throws:**

ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException - if `x` or `y` is out of bounds or if the dispose method has been called on this instance

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**getRGB(int, int, int, int, int[], int, int)**

```
public int[] getRGB(int startX, int startY, int w, int h, int[] rgbArray, int offset,
                  int scansize)
```

Returns an array of integer pixels in the default RGB color model (TYPE\_INT\_ARGB) and default sRGB color space, from a rectangular region of the image data. There are only 8-bits of precision for each color component in the returned data when using this method. With a specified coordinate (`x`, `y`) in the image, the ARGB pixel can be accessed in this way:

```
pixel = rgbArray[offset + (y-startY)*scansize + (x-startX)];
```

**Parameters:**

`startX` - the x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the specified rectangular region

`startY` - the y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the specified rectangular region

`w` - the width of the specified rectangular region

`h` - the height of the specified rectangular region

`rgbArray` - if not null, the rgb pixels are written here

`offset` - offset into the `rgbArray`

`scansize` - scanline stride for the `rgbArray`

**Returns:**

array of ARGB pixels.

**Throws:**

ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException - if the specified portion of the image data is out of bounds or if the dispose method has been called on this instance

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**getScaledInstance(int, int, int)**

```
public java.awt.Image getScaledInstance(int width, int height, int hints)
```

Creates a scaled version of this image. A new `Image` object is returned which will render the image at the specified `width` and `height` by default. The new `Image` object may be loaded asynchronously even if the original source image has already been loaded completely. If either the `width` or `height` is a negative number then a value is substituted to maintain the aspect ratio of the original image dimensions. If the `dispose` method has been called on this instance than null shall be returned.

**Overrides:**

`getScaledInstance` in class `Image`

**Parameters:**

`width` - the width to which to scale the image.

`height` - the height to which to scale the image.

`hints` - flags to indicate the type of algorithm to use for image resampling.

**Returns:**

a scaled version of the image.

---

**getSource()**

```
public java.awt.image.ImageProducer getSource()
```

Returns the object that produces the pixels for the image.

**Overrides:**

`getSource` in class `Image`

**Returns:**

the `java.awt.image.ImageProducer` that is used to produce the pixels for this image.

If the `dispose` method has been called on this instance than null shall be returned. The source returned by this method is platform generated to provide access to the current contents of the `DVBBufferedImage` buffer.

**See Also:**

`java.awt.image.ImageProducer`

---

**getSubimage(int, int, int, int)**

```
public org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage getSubimage(int x, int y, int w, int h)
    throws DVBRasterFormatException
```

Returns a subimage defined by a specified rectangular region. The returned `DVBBufferedImage` shares the same data array as the original image. If the `dispose` method has been called on this instance than null shall be returned.

**Parameters:**

`x` - the x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the specified rectangular region

`y` - the y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the specified rectangular region

`w` - the width of the specified rectangular region

`h` - the height of the specified rectangular region

**Returns:**

a `DVBBufferedImage` that is the subimage of this `DVBBufferedImage`.

**Throws:**

`DVBRasterFormatException` - if the specified area is not contained within this `DVBBufferedImage`.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

**getWidth()**

```
public int getWidth()
```

Returns the width of the `DVBBufferedImage`.

**Returns:**

the width of this `DVBBufferedImage`.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**getWidth(ImageObserver)**

```
public int getWidth(java.awt.image.ImageObserver observer)
```

Returns the width of the image. If the width is not known yet then the `java.awt.image.ImageObserver` is notified later and `-1` is returned.

**Overrides:**

`getWidth` in class `Image`

**Parameters:**

`observer` - the `ImageObserver` that receives information about the image

**Returns:**

the width of the image or `-1` if the width is not yet known.

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Image.getHeight(ImageObserver)`, `java.awt.image.ImageObserver`

**setRGB(int, int, int)**

```
public void setRGB(int x, int y, int rgb)
```

Sets a pixel in this `DVBBufferedImage` to the specified ARGB value. The pixel is assumed to be in the default RGB color model, `TYPE_INT_ARGB`, and default sRGB color space. Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall throw an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`.

**Parameters:**

`x` - the x-coordinate of the pixel to set

`y` - the y-coordinate of the pixel to set

`rgb` - the ARGB value

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**setRGB(int, int, int, int, int[], int, int)**

```
public void setRGB(int startX, int startY, int w, int h, int[] rgbArray, int offset,
                  int scansize)
```

Sets an array of integer pixels in the default RGB color model (`TYPE_INT_ARGB`) and default sRGB color space, into a rectangular portion of the image data. There are only 8-bits of precision for each color component in the returned data when using this method. With a specified coordinate (`x`, `y`) in the this image, the ARGB pixel can be accessed in this way:

```
pixel = rgbArray[offset + (y-startY)*scansize + (x-startX)];
```

**WARNING:** No dithering takes place.

Calls to this method after calls to the `dispose` method on the same instance shall throw an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`.

**Parameters:**

`startX` - the x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the specified rectangular region

`startY` - the y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the specified rectangular region

`w` - the width of the specified rectangular region

`h` - the height of the specified rectangular region

`rgbArray` - the ARGB pixels

`offset` - offset into the `rgbArray`

`scansize` - scanline stride for the `rgbArray`

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

**toString()**

```
public java.lang.String toString()
```

Returns a `String` representation of this `DVBBufferedImage` object and its values.

**Overrides:**

`toString` in class `Object`

**Returns:**

a `String` representing this `DVBBufferedImage`.

# org.dvb.ui

# DVBColor

## Declaration

```
public class DVBColor extends javax.tv.graphics.AlphaColor
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.awt.Color
|
+--javax.tv.graphics.AlphaColor
|
+--org.dvb.ui.DVBColor
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

A Color class which adds the notion of alpha. Because DVBColor extends Color the signatures in the existing classes do not change. Classes like Component should work with DVBColor internally. Instances of this class are a container for the values which are passed in to the constructor. Any approximations made by the platform are made when the colors are used. Note: org.dvb.ui.DVBColor adds support for alpha (compared to JDK1.1.8) and is intended to be compatible with the JDK1.2 java.awt.Color class - since org.dvb.ui.DVBColor extends javax.tv.graphics.AlphaColor which in turn extends java.awt.Color. In implementations where java.awt.Color supports alpha, such as JDK1.2, etc., the alpha-related methods in org.dvb.ui.DVBColor could just call super.

## Since:

MHP 1.0

## Constructors

---

### DVBColor(Color)

```
public DVBColor(java.awt.Color c)
```

Constructs a new DVBColor using the specified color. If c supports alpha, e.g. if it is an instance of javax.tv.graphics.AlphaColor or JDK 1.2's java.awt.Color, then the alpha value of c shall be used. If this color has no alpha value, alpha will be set to 255 (opaque).

#### Parameters:

c - the java.awt.Color used to create a new DVBColor

---

### DVBColor(float, float, float, float)

```
public DVBColor(float r, float g, float b, float a)
```

Creates an sRGB color with the specified red, green, blue, and alpha values in the range (0.0 - 1.0). The actual color used in rendering will depend on finding the best match given the color space available for a given output device.

**Parameters:**

- r - the red component
- g - the green component
- b - the blue component
- a - the alpha component

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Color.getRed()`, `java.awt.Color.getGreen()`,  
`java.awt.Color.getBlue()`, [getAlpha\(\)](#), [getRGB\(\)](#)

**DVBColor(int, boolean)**

```
public DVBColor(int rgba, boolean hasalpha)
```

Creates an sRGB color with the specified combined RGBA value consisting of the alpha component in bits 24-31, the red component in bits 16-23, the green component in bits 8-15, and the blue component in bits 0-7. If the hasalpha argument is False, alpha is defaulted to 255.

**Parameters:**

- rgba - the combined RGBA components
- hasalpha - true if the alpha bits are valid, false otherwise

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Color.getRed()`, `java.awt.Color.getGreen()`,  
`java.awt.Color.getBlue()`, [getAlpha\(\)](#), [getRGB\(\)](#)

**DVBColor(int, int, int, int)**

```
public DVBColor(int r, int g, int b, int a)
```

Creates an sRGB color with the specified red, green, blue, and alpha values in the range (0 - 255).

**Parameters:**

- r - the red component
- g - the green component
- b - the blue component
- a - the alpha component

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Color.getRed()`, `java.awt.Color.getGreen()`,  
`java.awt.Color.getBlue()`, [getAlpha\(\)](#), [getRGB\(\)](#)

## Methods

**brighter()**

```
public java.awt.Color brighter()
```

Creates a brighter version of this color. This method applies an arbitrary scale factor to each of the three RGB components of the color to create a brighter version of the same color. Although brighter and darker are inverse operations, the results of a series of invocations of these two methods may be inconsistent because of rounding errors. The alpha value shall be preserved.

**Overrides:**

`brighter` in class `AlphaColor`



**Returns:**

a new DVBColor object (cast to a java.awt.Color object) representing a brighter version of this color. Applications can recast it to a org.dvb.ui.DVBColor object

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Color.brighter()`

---

**darker()**

```
public java.awt.Color darker()
```

Creates a darker version of this color. This method applies an arbitrary scale factor to each of the three RGB components of the color to create a darker version of the same color. Although brighter and darker are inverse operations, the results of a series of invocations of these two methods may be inconsistent because of rounding errors. The alpha value shall be preserved.

**Overrides:**

darker in class AlphaColor

**Returns:**

a new DVBColor object (cast to a java.awt.Color object), representing a darker version of this color. Applications can recast it to a org.dvb.ui.DVBColor object

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Color.darker()`

---

**equals(Object)**

```
public boolean equals(java.lang.Object obj)
```

Determines whether another object is equal to this color. The result is true if and only if the argument is not null and is a DVBColor object that has the same red, green, blue and alpha values as this object.

**Overrides:**

equals in class AlphaColor

**Parameters:**

obj - - the object to compare with.

**Returns:**

true if the objects are the same; false otherwise.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

**getAlpha()**

```
public int getAlpha()
```

Returns the alpha component. In the range 0-255.

**Overrides:**

getAlpha in class AlphaColor

**Returns:**

the alpha component

**See Also:**

[getRGB\(\)](#)

---

---

**getRGB()**

```
public int getRGB()
```

Returns the RGB value representing the color in the default sRGB ColorModel. (Bits 24-31 are alpha, 16-23 are red, 8-15 are green, 0-7 are blue).

**Overrides:**

`getRGB` in class `AlphaColor`

**Returns:**

the RGB value representing the color in the default sRGB ColorModel.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Color.getRed()`, `java.awt.Color.getGreen()`,  
`java.awt.Color.getBlue()`, [getAlpha\(\)](#)

---

**toString()**

```
public java.lang.String toString()
```

Creates a string that represents this color and indicates the values of its ARGB components.

**Overrides:**

`toString` in class `AlphaColor`

**Returns:**

a representation of this color as a String object.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

# org.dvb.ui DVBGraphics

## Declaration

```
public abstract class DVBGraphics extends java.awt.Graphics
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.awt.Graphics
|
+--org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics
```

## Description

The `DVBGraphics` class is a adapter class to support alpha compositing in an MHP device. Most methods directly delegate to `java.awt.Graphics` other methods could delegate to the appropriate methods in `java.awt.Graphics2D` where available or could be implemented in native code. In implementations where the class `java.awt.Graphics2D` is visible to MHP applications, `org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics` inherits from `java.awt.Graphics2D`. Otherwise, `org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics` inherits from `java.awt.Graphics`. **In MHP devices all Graphics Objects are DVBGraphics objects.** Thus one can get a `DVBGraphics` by casting a given `Graphics` object. The normal compositing rule used is **DVBAlphaComposite.SRC\_OVER**. Note that the default rule of `SRC_OVER` may not give the highest performance. Under many circumstances, applications will find that the `SRC` rule will give higher performance. The intersection between `setDVBComposite` in this class and the `setPaintMode` and `setXORMode` methods inherited from `java.awt.Graphics` shall be as follows.

- Calling `setPaintMode` on an instance of this class shall be equivalent to calling `setDVBComposite(DVBAlphaComposite.SrcOver)`.
- Calling `setXORMode` on an instance of this class shall be equivalent to calling `setDVBComposite` with a special and implementation dependent `DVBAlphaComposite` object which implements the semantics specified for this method in the parent class.
- Calling `getDVBComposite` when `setXORMode` is the last `DVBComposite` set shall return this implementation dependent object. Conformant MHP applications shall not do anything with or to this object including calling any methods on it.
- This specification does not tighten, refine or detail the definition of the `setXORMode` beyond what is specified for the parent class.

Note: Implementations of XOR mode may change colours with alpha to without and vice versa (reversibly).

## Since:

MHP1.0

## See Also:

`java.awt.Graphics`

## Constructors

---

### DVBGraphics()

```
protected DVBGraphics()
```

Constructs a new `DVBGraphics` object. This constructor is the default constructor for a graphics context.

Since `DVBGraphics` is an abstract class, applications cannot call this constructor directly. `DVBGraphics` contexts are obtained from other `DVBGraphics` contexts or are created by casting `java.awt.Graphics` to `DVBGraphics`.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**`java.awt.Graphics.create()`, `java.awt.Component.getGraphics()`

## Methods

---

### `getAvailableCompositeRules()`

```
public abstract int[] getAvailableCompositeRules()
```

Returns all available Porter-Duff Rules for this specific Graphics context. E.g. a devices could support the `SRC_OVER` rule when using a destination which does not has Alpha or where the alpha is null, while this rule is not available when drawing on a graphic context where the destination has alpha. Which rules are supported for the different graphics objects is defined in the Minimum Platform Capabilities of the MHP spec.

**Returns:**

all available Porter-Duff Rules for this specific Graphics context.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

### `getBestColorMatch(Color)`

```
public org.dvb.ui.DVBColor getBestColorMatch(java.awt.Color c)
```

Returns the best match for the specified `Color` as a `DVBColor`, in a device-dependent manner, as constrained by the MHP graphics reference model.

**Parameters:**`c` - the specified `Color`.**Returns:**the best `DVBColor` match for the specified `Color`.**Since:**

MHP 1.0

---

### `getColor()`

```
public abstract java.awt.Color getColor()
```

Gets this graphics context's current color. This will return a `DVBColor` cast to `java.awt.Color`.

**Overrides:**`getColor` in class `Graphics`**Returns:**

this graphics context's current color.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**

[DVBColor](#), [java.awt.Color](#), [setColor\(Color\)](#)

---

**getDVBComposite()**

```
public abstract org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite getDVBComposite()
```

Returns the current [DVBAlphaComposite](#) in the [DVBGraphics](#) context. This method could delegate to a [java.awt.Graphics2D](#) object where available

**Returns:**

the current [DVBGraphics](#) [DVBAlphaComposite](#), which defines a compositing style.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**

[setDVBComposite\(DVBAlphaComposite\)](#)

---

**getType()**

```
public int getType()
```

Returns the [Sample Model](#) ([DVBBufferedImage.TYPE\\_BASE](#), [DVBBufferedImage.TYPE\\_ADVANCED](#)) which is used in the on/off screen buffer this graphics object draws into.

**Returns:**

the type of the [Sample Model](#)

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**

[DVBBufferedImage](#)

---

**setColor(Color)**

```
public abstract void setColor(java.awt.Color c)
```

Sets this graphics context's current color to the specified color. All subsequent graphics operations using this graphics context use this specified color. Note that color *c* can be a [DVBColor](#)

**Overrides:**

[setColor](#) in class [Graphics](#)

**Parameters:**

*c* - the new rendering color.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**

[java.awt.Color](#), [DVBColor](#), [getColor\(\)](#)

---

**setDVBComposite(DVBAlphaComposite)**

```
public abstract void setDVBComposite(org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite comp)
    throws UnsupportedOperationException
```

Sets the `DVBAlphaComposite` for the `DVBGraphics` context. The `DVBAlphaComposite` is used in all drawing methods such as `drawImage`, `drawString`, `draw`, and `fill`. It specifies how new pixels are to be combined with the existing pixels on the graphics device during the rendering process.

This method could delegate to a `Graphics2D` object or to an native implementation

**Parameters:**

`comp` - the `DVBAlphaComposite` object to be used for rendering

**Throws:**

`UnsupportedOperationException` - when the requested Porter-Duff rule is not supported by this graphics context

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

**See Also:**

`java.awt.Graphics.setXORMode(Color)`, `java.awt.Graphics.setPaintMode()`, `DVBAlphaComposite`

---

**toString()**

```
public java.lang.String toString()
```

Returns a `String` object representing this `DVBGraphics` object's value.

**Overrides:**

`toString` in class `Graphics`

**Returns:**

a string representation of this graphics context.

**Since:**

MHP 1.0

# org.dvb.ui DVBRasterFormatException

## Declaration

```
public class DVBRasterFormatException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.ui.DVBRasterFormatException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This exception is thrown for some invalid operations on instances of `DVBBufferedImage`. The precise conditions are defined in the places where this exception is thrown.

## Since:

MHP 1.0.1

## See Also:

[DVBBufferedImage](#)

## Constructors

---

### DVBRasterFormatException(String)

```
public DVBRasterFormatException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs an instance of `DVBRasterFormatException` with the specified detail message.

#### Parameters:

`s` - the detail message

#### Since:

MHP1.0

# org.dvb.ui DVBTextLayoutManager

## Declaration

```
public class DVBTextLayoutManager implements org.havi.ui.HTextLayoutManager
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
org.havi.ui.HTextLayoutManager
```

## Description

The `DVBTextLayoutManager` provides a text rendering layout mechanism for the `org.havi.ui.HStaticText`, `org.havi.ui.HText` and `org.havi.ui.HTextButton` classes.

The semantics of the rendering behaviour and the settings are specified in the “Text presentation” annex of this specification. The `DVBTextLayoutManager` renders the text according to the semantics described in that annex.

## Fields

---

### **HORIZONTAL\_CENTER**

```
public static final int HORIZONTAL_CENTER
```

The text should be centered horizontally.

---

### **HORIZONTAL\_END\_ALIGN**

```
public static final int HORIZONTAL_END_ALIGN
```

The text should be horizontally to the horizontal end side (e.g. when start corner is upper left and line orientation horizontal, meaning text that is read left to right from top to bottom, this implies alignment to right).

---

### **HORIZONTAL\_START\_ALIGN**

```
public static final int HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN
```

The text should be aligned horizontally to the horizontal start side (e.g. when start corner is upper left and line orientation horizontal, meaning text that is read left to right from top to bottom, this implies alignment to left).

---

### **LINE\_ORIENTATION\_HORIZONTAL**

```
public static final int LINE_ORIENTATION_HORIZONTAL
```

Horizontal line orientation.



---

**LINE\_ORIENTATION\_VERTICAL**

```
public static final int LINE_ORIENTATION_VERTICAL
```

Vertical line orientation.

---

**START\_CORNER\_LOWER\_LEFT**

```
public static final int START_CORNER_LOWER_LEFT
```

Lower left text start corner.

---

**START\_CORNER\_LOWER\_RIGHT**

```
public static final int START_CORNER_LOWER_RIGHT
```

Lower right text start corner.

---

**START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_LEFT**

```
public static final int START_CORNER_UPPER_LEFT
```

Upper left text start corner.

---

**START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_RIGHT**

```
public static final int START_CORNER_UPPER_RIGHT
```

Upper right text start corner.

---

**VERTICAL\_CENTER**

```
public static final int VERTICAL_CENTER
```

The text should be centered vertically.

---

**VERTICAL\_END\_ALIGN**

```
public static final int VERTICAL_END_ALIGN
```

The text should be aligned vertically to the vertical end side (e.g. when start corner is upper left and line orientation horizontal, meaning text that is read left to right from top to bottom, this implies alignment to bottom).

This is defined by the section “Vertical limits” in the “Text presentation” annex of this specification.

---

**VERTICAL\_START\_ALIGN**

```
public static final int VERTICAL_START_ALIGN
```

The text should be aligned vertically to the vertical start side (e.g. when start corner is upper left and line orientation horizontal, meaning text that is read left to right from top to bottom, this implies alignment to top).

This is defined by the section “Vertical limits” in the “Text presentation” annex of this specification.

## Constructors

---

### DVBTextLayoutManager()

```
public DVBTextLayoutManager()
```

Constructs a DVBTextLayoutManager object with default parameters (HORIZONTAL\_START\_ALIGN, VERTICAL\_START\_ALIGN, LINE\_ORIENTATION\_HORIZONTAL, START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_LEFT, wrap = true, linespace = (point size of the default font for HVisible) + 7, letterspace = 0, horizontalTabSpace = 56)

---

### DVBTextLayoutManager(int, int, int, int, boolean, int, int, int)

```
public DVBTextLayoutManager(int horizontalAlign, int verticalAlign, int lineOrientation,
    int startCorner, boolean wrap, int linespace, int letterspace,
    int horizontalTabSpace)
```

Constructs a DVBTextLayoutManager object.

#### Parameters:

horizontalAlign - Horizontal alignment setting

verticalAlign - Vertical alignment setting

lineOrientation - Line orientation setting

startCorner - Starting corner setting

wrap - Text wrapping setting

linespace - Line spacing setting expressed in points

letterspace - Letterspacing adjustment relative to the default letterspacing. Expressed in units of 1/256th point as the required increase in the spacing between consecutive characters. May be either positive or negative.

horizontalTabSpace - Horizontal tabulation setting in points

## Methods

---

### addTextOverflowListener(TextOverflowListener)

```
public void addTextOverflowListener(org.dvb.ui.TextOverflowListener l)
```

Register a TextOverflowListener that will be notified if the text string does not fit in the component when rendering.

#### Parameters:

l - a listener object

---

### getHorizontalAlign()

```
public int getHorizontalAlign()
```

Get the horizontal alignment.

#### Returns:

Horizontal alignment setting

---

**getHorizontalTabSpacing()**

```
public int getHorizontalTabSpacing()
```

Get the horizontal tabulation spacing.

**Returns:**

the horizontal tabulation spacing

---

**getInsets()**

```
public java.awt.Insets getInsets()
```

Returns the insets set by the setInsets method. These Insets are added to the ones passed to the `render` method for rendering the text. When not previously set, zero Insets are returned.

**Returns:**

Insets set by the setInsets method

---

**getLetterSpace()**

```
public int getLetterSpace()
```

Get the letter space setting. This is a 16 bit signed integer specifying in units of 1/256th point the required increase in the spacing between consecutive characters. It corresponds to the “track” parameter in the MHP text rendering rules.

**Returns:**

letter space setting

---

**getLineOrientation()**

```
public int getLineOrientation()
```

Get the line orientation.

**Returns:**

Line orientation setting

---

**getLineSpace()**

```
public int getLineSpace()
```

Get the line space setting.

**Returns:**

line space setting or -1, if the default line spacing is determined from the size of the default font used.

---

**getStartCorner()**

```
public int getStartCorner()
```

Get the starting corner.

**Returns:**

Starting corner setting

---

---

**getTextWrapping()**

```
public boolean getTextWrapping()
```

Get the text wrapping setting.

**Returns:**

text wrapping setting

---

**getVerticalAlign()**

```
public int getVerticalAlign()
```

Get the vertical alignment.

**Returns:**

Vertical alignment setting

---

**removeTextOverflowListener(TextOverflowListener)**

```
public void removeTextOverflowListener(org.dvb.ui.TextOverflowListener l)
```

Removes a TextOverflowListener that has been registered previously.

**Parameters:**

l - a listener object

---

**render(String, Graphics, HVisible, Insets)**

```
public void render(java.lang.String markedUpString, java.awt.Graphics g,  
org.havi.ui.HVisible v, java.awt.Insets insets)
```

Render the string. The `HTextLayoutManager` should use the passed `HVisible` object to determine any additional information required to render the string, e.g. `Font`, `Color` etc.

The text should be laid out in the layout area, which is defined by the bounds of the specified `HVisible`, after subtracting the insets. If the insets are `null` the full bounding rectangle is used as the area to render text into.

The `HTextLayoutManager` should not modify the clipping rectangle of the `Graphics` object.

**Specified By:**

`render` in interface `HTextLayoutManager`

**Parameters:**

`markedUpString` - the string to render.

`g` - the graphics context, including a clipping rectangle which encapsulates the area within which rendering is permitted. If a valid insets value is passed to this method then text must only be rendered into the bounds of the widget after the insets are subtracted. If the insets value is `null` then text is rendered into the entire bounding area of the `HVisible`. It is implementation specific whether or not the renderer takes into account the intersection of the clipping rectangle in each case for optimization purposes.

`v` - the `HVisible` into which to render.

`insets` - the insets to determine the area in which to layout the text, or `null`.

---

**setHorizontalAlign(int)**

```
public void setHorizontalAlign(int horizontalAlign)
```

Set the horizontal alignment. The setting shall be one of `HORIZONTAL_CENTER`, `HORIZONTAL_END_ALIGN` or `HORIZONTAL_START_ALIGN`. The failure mode if other values are used is implementation dependent.

**Parameters:**

`horizontalAlign` - Horizontal alignment setting

---

**setHorizontalTabSpacing(int)**

```
public void setHorizontalTabSpacing(int horizontalTabSpace)
```

Set the horizontal tabulation spacing.

**Parameters:**

`horizontalTabSpace` - tab spacing in points

---

**setInsets(Insets)**

```
public void setInsets(java.awt.Insets insets)
```

Sets the insets which shall be used by this `DVBTextLayoutManager` to provide a "virtual margin". These shall be added to the insets passed to the `Render` method (which are to be considered as "bounds"). If this method is not called, the default insets are 0 at each edge.

**Parameters:**

`insets` - Insets that should be used

---

**setLetterSpace(int)**

```
public void setLetterSpace(int letterSpace)
```

Set the letter space setting. This is a 16 bit signed integer specifying in units of 1/256th point the required increase in the spacing between consecutive characters. It corresponds to the "track" parameter in the MHP text rendering rules.

**Parameters:**

`letterSpace` - letter space setting

---

**setLineOrientation(int)**

```
public void setLineOrientation(int lineOrientation)
```

Set the line orientation. The setting shall be one of `LINE_ORIENTATION_VERTICAL`, `LINE_ORIENTATION_HORIZONTAL`. The failure mode if other values are used is implementation dependent.

**Parameters:**

`lineOrientation` - Line orientation setting

---

**setLineSpace(int)**

```
public void setLineSpace(int lineSpace)
```

Set the line space setting. Using -1 as the line space setting shall cause the line spacing to be determined from the size of the default font.

**Parameters:**

lineSpace - line space setting

---

**setStartCorner(int)**

```
public void setStartCorner(int startCorner)
```

Set the starting corner. The setting shall be one of START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_LEFT, START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_RIGHT, START\_CORNER\_LOWER\_LEFT or START\_CORNER\_LOWER\_RIGHT. The failure mode if other values are used is implementation dependent.

**Parameters:**

startCorner - Starting corner setting

---

**setTextWrapping(boolean)**

```
public void setTextWrapping(boolean wrap)
```

Set the text wrapping setting.

**Parameters:**

wrap - Text wrapping setting

---

**setVerticalAlign(int)**

```
public void setVerticalAlign(int verticalAlign)
```

Set the vertical alignment. The setting shall be one of VERTICAL\_CENTER, VERTICAL\_END\_ALIGN or VERTICAL\_START\_ALIGN. The failure mode if other values are used is implementation dependent.

**Parameters:**

verticalAlign - Vertical alignment setting

# org.dvb.ui FontFactory

## Declaration

```
public class FontFactory
    java.lang.Object
    |
    +--org.dvb.ui.FontFactory
```

## Description

Provides a mechanism for applications to instantiate fonts that are not built into the system. The two constructors of this class allow fonts to be downloaded either through the font index file of the application or directly from a font file in the format(s) specified in the main body of the specification.

## Constructors

---

### FontFactory()

```
public FontFactory()
    throws FontFormatException, IOException
```

Constructs a **FontFactory** for the font index file bound to this application in the application signalling. The call to the constructor is synchronous and shall block until the font index file has been retrieved or an an exception is thrown.

#### Throws:

[FontFormatException](#) - if there is an error in the font index file bound with the application.

[java.io.IOException](#) - if there is no font index file bound with the application, or if there is an error attempting to access the data in that file.

---

### FontFactory(URL)

```
public FontFactory(java.net.URL u)
    throws IOException, FontFormatException
```

Constructs a **FontFactory** for the font file found at the given location. The call to the constructor is synchronous and shall block until the font file has been retrieved or an exception is thrown.

#### Parameters:

`u` - The location of the font file

#### Throws:

[java.io.IOException](#) - if there is an error attempting to access the data referenced by the URL

[java.lang.IllegalArgumentException](#) - if the URL is not both valid and supported

[java.lang.SecurityException](#) - if access to the specified URL is denied by security policy

[FontFormatException](#) - if the file at that URL is not a valid font file as specified in the main body of this specification

## Methods

---

### **createFont(String, int, int)**

```
public java.awt.Font createFont(java.lang.String name, int style, int size)
    throws FontNotAvailableException, FontFormatException, IOException
```

Creates a font object from the font source associated with this FontFactory. This font will remain valid even if the FontFactory is no longer reachable from application code. The name returned by Font.getName() might not be the same as the name supplied, for example, it might have a string prepended to it that identifies the source FontFactory in a platform-dependant manner. For FontFactory instances bound to the font index file of an application, the call to the method is synchronous and shall block until either an exception is thrown or any required network access has completed.

The value of the style argument must be as defined in java.awt.Font. Valid values are the following:

- java.awt.Font.PLAIN
- java.awt.Font.BOLD
- java.awt.Font.ITALIC
- java.awt.Font.BOLD + java.awt.Font.ITALIC

#### **Parameters:**

name - the font name

style - the constant style used, such as java.awt.Font.PLAIN.

size - the point size of the font

#### **Throws:**

[FontNotAvailableException](#) - if a font with given parameters cannot be located or created.

[java.io.IOException](#) - if there is an error retrieving a font from the network. Thrown only for font factory instances bound to the font index file of an application.

[java.lang.IllegalArgumentException](#) - if the style parameter is not in the set of valid values, or if the size parameter is zero or negative.

[FontFormatException](#) - if the font file is not a valid font file as specified in the main body of this specification. Thrown only for font factory instances bound to the font index file of an application.



# org.dvb.ui FontFormatException

## Declaration

public class **FontFormatException** extends java.lang.Exception

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.ui.FontFormatException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

Thrown when attempt is made to read a file describing a font when the contents of that file are not valid.

## Constructors

---

### FontFormatException()

```
public FontFormatException()
```

Constructs a `FontFormatException` with `null` as its error detail message.

---

### FontFormatException(String)

```
public FontFormatException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs a `FontFormatException` with the specified detail message. The error message string `s` can later be retrieved by the `java.lang.Throwable.getMessage()` method of class `java.lang.Throwable`.

#### Parameters:

`s` - the detail message.

# org.dvb.ui FontNotAvailableException

## Declaration

```
public class FontNotAvailableException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.ui.FontNotAvailableException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown when attempt is made to instantiate a font that cannot be located.

## Constructors

---

### FontNotAvailableException()

```
public FontNotAvailableException()
```

Constructs a `FontNotAvailableException` with `null` as its error detail message.

---

### FontNotAvailableException(String)

```
public FontNotAvailableException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs a `FontNotAvailableException` with the specified detail message. The error message string `s` can later be retrieved by the `java.lang.Throwable.getMessage()` method of class `java.lang.Throwable`.

#### Parameters:

`s` - the detail message.

# org.dvb.ui TestOpacity

## Declaration

```
public interface TestOpacity
```

## Description

Interface implemented by Components or Containers in order to allow the platform to query whether their paint method is fully opaque.

## Methods

---

### isOpaque()

```
public boolean isOpaque()
```

Returns true if the entire area of the component as given by the `getBounds` method, is fully opaque. Hence its paint method (or surrogate methods) guarantees that all pixels are painted in an opaque Color.

Classes implementing this interface shall return true from their implementation of this method if and only if their implementation can guarantee full opacity. The consequences of an invalid overridden value are implementation specific.

#### Returns:

true if all the pixels with the `java.awt.Component#getBounds` method are fully opaque, otherwise false.

# org.dvb.ui TextOverflowListener

## Declaration

```
public interface TextOverflowListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

The TextOverflowListener is an interface that an application may implement and register in the DVBTextLayoutManager. This listener will be notified if the text string does not fit within the component as a result of a call to the render method. It is the rendering process which triggers this event to be dispatched. The timing of this is implementation dependent.

## Methods

---

### notifyTextOverflow(String, HVisible, boolean, boolean)

```
public void notifyTextOverflow(java.lang.String markedUpString, org.havi.ui.HVisible v,  
    boolean overflowedHorizontally, boolean overflowedVertically)
```

This method is called by the DVBTextLayoutManager if the text does not fit within the component

#### Parameters:

`markedUpString` - the string that was successfully rendered within the component

`v` - the HVisible object that was being rendered

`overflowedHorizontally` - true if the text overflow the bounds of the component in the horizontal direction; otherwise false

`overflowedVertically` - true if the text overflow the bounds of the component in the vertical direction; otherwise false

org.dvb.ui

# UnsupportedDrawingOperationException

## Declaration

```
public class UnsupportedDrawingOperationException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.ui.UnsupportedDrawingOperationException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

The `UnsupportedDrawingOperationException` class represents an exception that is thrown if an drawing operation is not supported on this platform. E.g. `DVBGraphics.setComposite` could throw an `Exception` when setting the `DST_IN` rule on some devices while the `SRC_OVER` rule will always work.

## Since:

MHP 1.0

## Constructors

---

### **UnsupportedDrawingOperationException(String)**

```
public UnsupportedDrawingOperationException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs an instance of `UnsupportedDrawingOperationException` with the specified detail message.

#### Parameters:

`s` - the detail message

#### Since:

MHP1.0

---

**Annex V : Void**

## Annex W (informative): DVB-J examples

### W.1 DVB-J Application lifecycle implementation example

```

import org.havi.ui.HScene;
import org.havi.ui.HSceneFactory;
import java.awt.Component;
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import org.dvb.ui.DVBColor;
import javax.tv.xlet.Xlet;
import javax.tv.xlet.XletContext;
import javax.tv.xlet.XletStateChangeException;

public class HelloDVB extends Component implements Xlet {

    private XletContext context;
    private HScene scene;

    public void initXlet(XletContext context) throws XletStateChangeException {
        this.context = context;
        scene = HSceneFactory.getInstance().getDefaultHScene();
        scene.setBounds( 90,72,540,432 );
        scene.setLayout(new BorderLayout(0, 0));
        scene.add(this, "Center");
    }

    public void startXlet() throws XletStateChangeException {
        scene.setVisible(true);
        requestFocus();
    }

    public void pauseXlet() {
        scene.setVisible(false);
    }

    public void destroyXlet(boolean unconditional) throws XletStateChangeException {
        scene.dispose();
    }

    public void paint(java.awt.Graphics g) {
        g.setColor(new DVBColor(0, 0, 70, 180));
        g.fillRect(0, 0, getSize().width, getSize().height);
        g.setColor(DVBColor.yellow);
        g.drawString("Hello DVB", (getSize().width-110) / 2, getSize().height / 2);
    }
}

```

A simple example of Xlet lifecycle is a stock ticker application that uses a back channel to retrieve stock quotes, which it displays on the viewer's television.

- a) The application manager retrieves the Xlet's code.
- b) The application manager creates an instance of the XletContext Object and initializes it for the new Xlet.
- c) The application manager initializes the Xlet by calling its `initXlet()` method and passing it the context object.
- d) The Xlet uses the context object to initialize itself and enters the **Paused** state.
- e) The application manager calls the Xlet's `startXlet()` method. The application manager assumes that the Xlet is performing its service.
- f) Upon receiving this signal, the Xlet creates a new thread that opens the back channel to retrieve the stock quotes. The Xlet is now in the **Active** state.
- g) The Xlet begins to show the stock quotes.
- h) Due to circumstances beyond the control of the Xlet, it is no longer able to retrieve updated stock quotes.

- i) The Xlet decides to continue displaying the most recent quotes it has. Note that the Xlet is still in the `Active` state.
- j) After a time, the Xlet is still unable to open the back channel. It decides that the quotes it is displaying are too old to present and that it can no longer perform its service. It chooses to take itself out of the `Active` state. It calls the `paused()` method on `XletContext` to signal this change to the application manager.
- k) Finally, the Xlet decides it no longer has any chance of performing its service, so it decides it should be terminated. It calls the `destroyed()` method on the `XletContext` to signal application manager that it has entered the `Destroyed` state. The Xlet does some final clean up.
- l) The application manager prepares the Xlet for garbage collection.

## W.2 Example of exporting an object for inter-application communication

```
public interface MyService extends java.rmi.Remote {
    public String getData() throws java.rmi.RemoteException;
}

public class MyServer implements MyService {

    private static javax.tv.xlet.XletContext ctx;

    public String getData() throws java.rmi.RemoteException {
        return "Hello from " + ctx.getXletProperty("dvb.app.id");
    }

    //
    // Called upon Xlet initialization
    //
    public static void export(XletContext ctx) {
        this.ctx = ctx;
        Remote server = new MyServer();
        org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry.bind(ctx, "myserver", server);
    }

    //
    // Try to import the object that we previously exported.
    // Note that this would typically be done from a different
    // Xlet, but importing from yourself works, too.
    // Called when the Xlet is run.
    //
    public static void import(XletContext ctx) {
        String appId = (String) ctx.getXletProperty("dvb.app.id");
        String orgId = (String) ctx.getXletProperty("dvb.org.id");

        Remote obj;
        try {
            org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry.lookup(ctx, "/" + orgId + "/" + appId + "/myserver");
            MyService r = (MyService) obj;
            System.out.println("Success " + r
                + ", " + r.getData());
        } catch (Exception ex) {
        }
    }
}
```

## W.3 Example of use of video drip feed

```
import java.lang.*;
import java.io.*;
import javax.tv.xlet.*;
import javax.media.*;
import java.net.URL;
import org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission;
import org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource;
```



```

/**
 * VideoDripTest creates an instance of DripFeedDataSource and creates a player
 * using this source.
 */
public class SingleVideoDripTest implements javax.tv.xlet.Xlet
{
    static final int    MAX_DRIP_DATA_SIZE = 32000;
    private DripFeedDataSource dripDataSource = null;
    private Player dripPlayer = null, oldPlayer = null;

    public void initXlet(XletContext ctx) throws XletStateChangeException
    {
        /* Check if this application has permission to play video drip
         * feed or not.
         */
        System.err.println("initXlet called");

        SecurityManager sm = System.getSecurityManager();

        System.err.println("Checking the permission");

        if (sm != null) {
            try {
                sm.checkPermission(new DripFeedPermission(""));
            }
            catch (java.lang.SecurityException ex) {
                throw new XletStateChangeException(ex.getMessage());
            }
        }

        System.err.println("Exiting initXlet method");
    }

    public void startXlet() throws XletStateChangeException
    {
        byte[] dripData = new byte[MAX_DRIP_DATA_SIZE];

        /* Assumption: No media player is active. If this is not true, we
         * need to get the current player and stop/close it.
         */
        System.err.println("startXlet called");

        try {
            /* Create a data source for video drip */
            dripDataSource = new DripFeedDataSource();

            System.err.println("Got the DataSource");

            /* Create a player and start it */
            dripPlayer = Manager.createPlayer(dripDataSource);
        }
        catch (IOException ioel)
        {
            System.err.println(ioel.getMessage());
            throw new XletStateChangeException(ioel.getMessage());
        }
        catch (NoPlayerException pse)
        {
            System.err.println(pse.getMessage());
            throw new XletStateChangeException(pse.getMessage());
        }

        System.err.println("Starting Drip Player");

        dripPlayer.start();

        System.err.println("Started the player");

        /* Read drip data from a file */
        try

```

```

    {
        FileInputStream fin = new FileInputStream("images.mpg");
        fin.read(dripData);
        fin.close();
    }
    catch (IOException ioe2)
    {
        System.err.println("IOException: " + ioe2.getMessage());
        throw new XletStateChangeException(ioe2.getMessage());
    }
    catch (SecurityException se)
    {
        System.err.println(se.getMessage());
        throw new XletStateChangeException("Security Exception" + se.getMessage());
    }
}

System.err.println("Feeding data to the datasource");

/* Feed the data to the data source */
dripDataSource.feed(dripData);

System.err.println("Fed data to the datasource");
}

public void pauseXlet()
{
}

public void destroyXlet(boolean unconditional)
{
    dripPlayer.close();
}
}

```

## W.4 Example of CPU bound animation

```

/**
 * This is an example of doing CPU-bound animation. This
 * code attempts to do animation as fast as possible, using
 * a low-priority thread so that the animation doesn't interfere
 * with more important tasks, like responding to user input. Animation
 * is limited to 25 frames per second, just in case we're running on
 * a really fast box.
 */

import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.Component;
import java.awt.Dimension;
import java.awt.Toolkit;
import org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage;

public abstract class AnimatedView extends Component implements Runnable {

    private Thread worker = null;
    private Graphics theScreen = null;
    private DVBufferedImage buffer = null;
    private boolean stopping = false;

    /**
     * Called by the Xlet to start animation. Must never be called
     * when animation is in progress!
     */
    public synchronized void startAnimation() {
        if (worker != null) {
            throw new IllegalStateException();// It's a bug
        }
        worker = new Thread(this);
        worker.setPriority(2);// Animation is CPU-bound
        theScreen = getGraphics();// Component.getGraphics()
        Dimension d = getSize();
        buffer = new DVBufferedImage(d.width, d.height);
    }
}

```

```

stopping = false;
worker.start();
}

/**
 * Stop animation, and don't return until it has stopped.
 */
public synchronized void stopAnimation() {
if (worker == null) {
    throw new IllegalStateException();// it's a bug
}
stopping = true;
for (;;) { // Wait until stopped
    if (Thread.interrupted()) { // Xlet being terminated
        return;
    }
    notifyAll();
    try {
        wait();
    } catch (InterruptedException ex) {
        Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
    }
    if (!stopping) {
        theScreen.dispose();
        theScreen = null;
        buffer.flush();
        buffer = null;
        worker = null;
        return;
    }
}
}

/**
 * Run the animation until stopped. Called from the worker thread
 * only. This will probably be CPU-bound, as it sets an ambitious
 * target of 25fps animation.
 */
public void run() {

long start = System.currentTimeMillis();
long lastFrameTime = start - 40;
long now = 0;

animation:
for (;;) {

    // Wait until at least 1/25 of a second after last frame, and
    // bail out of thread if we're stopping
    synchronized(this) {
for (;;) {
    if (stopping) {
        stopping = false;
        notifyAll();
        return;
    }
    if (Thread.interrupted()) { // Xlet being terminated
        return;
    }
    now = System.currentTimeMillis();
    long delta = now - lastFrameTime;
    if (delta >= 40) {
        break;
    } else {
        try {
            wait(40 - delta);
        } catch (InterruptedException ex) {
            Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
        }
    }
}
}
}
}

```

```

    }
    lastFrameTime = now;
    long timeSinceStart = now - start;

    Graphics g = buffer.getGraphics();

    for (int part = 0; part < getNumParts(); part++) {
        drawPart(part, g, timeSinceStart);

        if (shouldStop()) {
            continue animation;// Bail out if animation should stop
        }
    }

    g.dispose();
    theScreen.drawImage(buffer, 0, 0, null);
    Toolkit.getDefaultToolkit().sync();
}
}

private synchronized boolean shouldStop() {
return Thread.interrupted() || stopping;
}

public synchronized void paint(Graphics g) {
if (worker == null || stopping) {
    // Paint whatever we paint when we're not animating
} else {
    // Probably do nothing.  If our animation target were
    // significantly less than 25 fps, we'd want to set a variable
    // to cause a repaint ASAP, then call notifyAll() to break
    // the animation loop out of any wait() it might be in.
}
}

/**
 * Draw a part of the animation. For each frame, AnimatedView will call
 * this method first for part 0, then part 1, up to getNumParts()-1.
 * Between each part, AnimatedView will check if animation needs to
 * stop for some reason.
 * <p>
 * Subclasses should ensure that drawing the entire scene is divided
 * into enough parts to ensure that animation can be stopped quickly.
 *
 * @see #getNumParts
 */
protected abstract void drawPart(int num, Graphics g, long timeSinceStart);

/**
 * @return the number of parts in this animation. This determines how
 * many times drawPart will be called.
 *
 * @see #drawPart
 */
protected abstract int getNumParts();
}

```

---

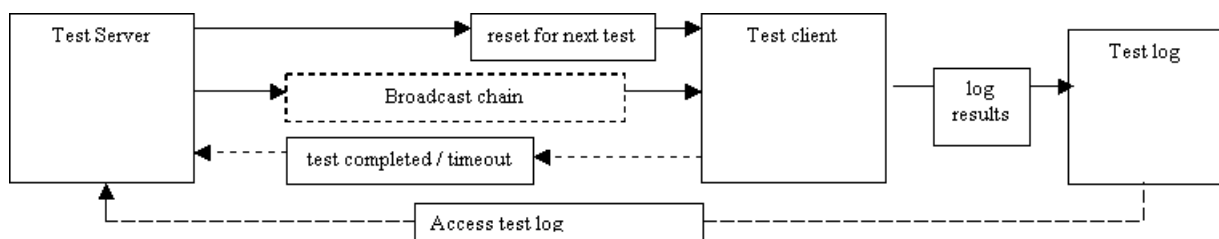
## **Annex X (normative): Test support**

# Package org.dvb.test

## Description

In a broadcast-based conformance system, there are effectively three main entities involved in an automated test process:

1. The test server that is used to hold and initiate all of the tests.
2. The test client which runs the tests and logs the results.
3. The broadcast chain that is used to transfer applications and application data from the server to the client.



The communication order is as follows:

1. The test-server uses the “reset for next test” mechanism to set the test client into a known default state, ready to receive the test-application.
2. The test-server uses the “broadcast chain” mechanism to supply the test-application to the test client and to signal that the test-application should be executed.
3. The test-client runs the test-application.
4. The test-application either:
  - finishes within a given timelimit, the result of the test is known and shall be considered to be the value reported by the test application for the purposes of compliance.
  - Optionally, the test-client may signal to the test-server that the test-application has finished executing and that the test-client is ready to be reset in order to receive the next test-application.
  - fails to finish the test-application within a given timeout, the result of the test is unknown and shall be treated as a failure for the purposes of compliance. The test-server may treat the test-client as ready to be reset in order to receive the next application.

[Successive tests are then repeated from stage 1.]

### “Reset for next test”

The “reset for next test” path is used by the test server to reset the test client to receive the next test. The reset for next test API is considered to be a private implementation issue between the test-server and test-client and therefore has no public Java API implications. Note that this “communication” needs to take place prior to any application being executed. Note that the precise manner of the reset mechanism is intentionally not specified — in the worst case, this may involve “power cycling” the test client.

### Test log

Communication from the test client to the test log is considered as write-only access. Hence, results from successive tests cannot overwrite results from previous ones. Multiple (intermediate) results may be sent to the test log for any given test. It is recommended that all communication to the test log is synchronous.

See the DVCTest.log method for details of the proposed API and implementation issues.

### “Test completed”

The “test completed” path is used by the test client to indicate to the test server that it has completed the previous test and is now able to accept a subsequent one. Note that this communication path is an optimisation, since direct communication from the client to the server is not actually required, e.g. the server might simply “time-out” the client, and then perform a “reset for next test” action. However, this optimisation may be important when large numbers of tests are being performed on a “capable” platform, since e.g. if a 30 second timeout is applied for 1000 test cases which typically run within say 6 seconds, then the timeout implies a typical running time of 500 minutes, i.e. ~4.5 hours — rather than 100 minutes, i.e. ~1.5 hours.

See the DVCTest.terminate method for details of the proposed API and implementation issues.

### Access test log

The mechanism by which the test-log is accessed is not considered in this document, this is a private mechanism, which might include reading a file from flash / RAM. Similarly, the mechanism by which results are recovered from the test log is not considered in this document, e.g. the test-log may actually reside on the test server, e.g. as in the case that results are transmitted over an IP connection.

| Class Summary           |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <b>Classes</b>          |   |
| <a href="#">DVCTest</a> | The DVCTest class allows test applications to log messages during their execution and to indicate their termination condition in a platform independent manner. |

# org.dvb.test

# DVBTest

## Declaration

```
public class DVBTest
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.test.DVBTest
```

## Description

The DVBTest class allows test applications to log messages during their execution and to indicate their termination condition in a platform independent manner.

A number of constants are defined in the DVBTest class and are reserved as follows

- Zero and negative values defined within the class are reserved by DVB.
- Positive return values are available for test application specific return values, which must be defined within the procedure for executing the test application as to their precise meaning as regards conformance.

## Fields

---

### FAIL

```
public static final int FAIL
```

The application executed and terminated unsuccessfully and has therefore operated in a non-conformant manner.

---

### HUMAN\_INTERVENTION

```
public static final int HUMAN_INTERVENTION
```

The application is unable to determine whether it has operated conformantly and therefore requires some human intervention to determine whether conformance has been achieved. Until the application has been checked the result of the application should be considered as non-conformant.

It is envisaged that tests returning this value may be those requiring evaluation of presented content, such as graphics, etc. Such presentation may require (subjective) human evaluation.

---

### OPTION\_UNSUPPORTED

```
public static final int OPTION_UNSUPPORTED
```

The platform does not contain the option under test and therefore the test is inapplicable, the test result should not be considered when determining the status of the platform's conformance.

---

### PASS

```
public static final int PASS
```

The application executed and terminated successfully and has therefore operated in a conformant manner.



---

**UNRESOLVED**

```
public static final int UNRESOLVED
```

A setup stage necessary to execute the application failed, and hence the result of the application is unknown and therefore should be considered to have operated in a non-conformant manner.

---

**UNTESTED**

```
public static final int UNTESTED
```

The application ran successfully, but the particular test was unable to execute. Hence the result of is unknown, and may require human evaluation to determine conformance.

For example, an out of disk space test may not execute within a fixed number of iterations (within a practical amount of time) for devices with large capacity storage, etc.

## Methods

---

**log(String, int)**

```
public static void log(java.lang.String id, int no)
    throws IOException
```

This method has the same behaviour, implementation options and restrictions as log(String, String) - except that it allows an integer value to be logged, rather than a String, which may prove a useful option for automating tests.

**Parameters:**

`id` - a string identifying the application (thread) that is logging the test result.

`no` - the integer value that the application wishes to be logged.

**Throws:**

`java.io.IOException` - under the same conditions as log(String, String).

---

**log(String, String)**

```
public static void log(java.lang.String id, java.lang.String message)
    throws IOException
```

This synchronous, blocking, method logs a result (intermediate result) of a test application using write-only access. The method takes both an identifier string, e.g. "Test number 1" and a message to output, e.g. "Now invoking the xletPause method...". The application is not required to open a file or network connection, per se, and the log() method is always available for writing (in principle).

The precise format of the logged message is left deliberately unspecified, implementers may choose to output compressed messages, XML documents, or other formats of their choice (obviously provided that the original information can be recovered). It is an implementation option to include additional information with each logging message, e.g. including:

- version of the specification being implemented
- compiler version and options.
- build-version
- timestamp
- date
- debug info

Messages sent using this method should “atomic”, i.e. that they are not interleaved with other messages sent using the methods defined in the DVCTest class.

### **Implementation**

The precise mechanism(s) by which the this method may be implemented are intentionally unspecified, implementation options might include:

- logging the message to a local file system.
- logging the message to a mounted remote file system.
- logging the message to a RAM disk, etc.
- logging the message via an RS-232 (or other serial) connection.
- logging the message to a remote host via some IP / UDP based mechanism, e.g. using a socket-based connection.

Note that the implementation of the log method may use the same or a different mechanism to that used by the terminate method.

The log method does not require any explicit initialisation on the part of the application under test. For example if messages are being stored to a file system, then the application is not required to mount / open any storage file. Similarly, if the messages are being logged via a network connection, then the application is not required to open a connection to the storage host, etc. In principle, the mechanism should always be available to accept messages.

If this method is implemented on top of some buffering mechanism, it is strongly recommended that the buffer be flushed for each occurrence of a message being logged.

### **Security and implementation options**

There is no Java security mechanism that is used to secure the log method.

Note that even if the log method is based on a particular implementation option, it shall be able to operate in spite of that particular implementation option itself being subject to security checks. For example, a log method implemented using the `java.net.Socket` class shall always be able to log a message from a test-application, even if the test-application is unable to directly access the `java.net.Socket` class due to security restrictions, etc.

It is an allowed implementation option to require that the test-client be put into some particular “test-mode” before any test-results are logged. This mechanism is required to reduce any inadvertent interaction due to downloaded applications accessing the test methods.

### **Authoring guidelines**

The log method is not intended to be accessed by downloaded applications directly, it is purely intended for the use of conformance test applications. Authors of downloaded applications should not call this method, since there may be interactions between this method and normal in-field operation of the test-client (MHP platform).

It is an allowed implementation option to require that the test-client be put into some particular “test-mode” before any test-results are logged. This mechanism is required to reduce any inadvertent interaction due to downloaded applications accessing the test methods.

It is an allowed implementation option to have a number of “test-modes” that are appropriate to different elements being conformance tested, for example, it is a valid implementation for a test-client to have a test-mode where results are stored via a serial port, and a separate test-mode where results are stored via a RAM disk. It is allowable for a conformance test to be performed with the test-client in some specific test- mode, e.g. a `java.net` test (using a serial modem) might have its test results logged to a RAM disk, to avoid interaction between test-log messages and the serial protocol.

The mechanism by which a test-client is put into a given test mode is intentionally left unspecified.

### **Relationship to `java.io`**

It is an implementation option to map the implementation of this method onto corresponding write method(s) of appropriate java.io classes. These classes may in turn be obtained, e.g. from java.net Socket classes, etc.

**Parameters:**

`id` - a string identifying the application (thread) that is logging the test result.

`message` - the message that the application wishes to be logged.

**Throws:**

`java.io.IOException` - if there is any problem in providing synchronous logging to an application. This `IOException` may be due to failure to write to a file system, inability to access a remote socket, etc. the precise causes are deliberately unspecified and are implementation dependent.

**prompt(String, int, String)**

```
public static void prompt(java.lang.String id, int controlCode, java.lang.String message)
    throws IOException
```

This is a method is used to “approximately” synchronise a test-client and test-server, the method blocks until the test-server positively or negatively acknowledges the particular message. The intended use of this method is to remove critical timing issues from conformance tests, e.g. a conformance test to ensure that an Xlet responds to a change in broadcast signalling must first ensure that the Xlet is in a state where it is able to respond to such signalling — since the time taken for an Xlet to achieve such a state is reliant on aspects outside of the scope of the conformance test itself (delivery bit rate, hardware and CPU capabilities of the test-client, etc.).

Messages sent using this method should “atomic”, i.e. that they are not interleaved with other messages sent using the methods defined in the `DVBTest` class.

**Implementation**

The precise mechanism(s) by which the this method may be implemented are intentionally unspecified. Implementation options for sending the prompt might include:

- logging the controlCode via an RS-232 (or other serial) connection.
- logging the controlCode to a remote host via some IP / UDP based mechanism, e.g. using a socket-based connection.
- displaying the message on-screen for a (human) test operator, e.g. for systems not implementing a return channel capability.

Implementation options for receiving the acknowledgement might include:

- acknowledgement via an RS-232 (or other serial) connection.
- acknowledgement from a remote host via some IP / UDP based mechanism, e.g. using a socket-based connection.
- a (human) test operator manually acknowledging the message, e.g. for systems not implementing a return channel capability.

**Parameters:**

`id` - a string identifying the application (thread) that is sending the prompt.

`controlCode` - an integer value (unique within a given Xlet) intended for use by some automated test process (corresponding to the readable message).

`message` - a message (unique within a given Xlet) intended to be readable by a (human) test operator (corresponding to the automated controlCode).

**Throws:**

`java.io.IOException` - If there is any problem in receiving a positive acknowledgement from the test-server, then an this shall be thrown. This may be due to a negative acknowledgement from the test-server, or due to other communication based causes — which are deliberately left unspecified.

---

**terminate(String, int)**

```
public static void terminate(java.lang.String id, int terminationCondition)
    throws IOException
```

This synchronous, blocking, method logs the termination condition of a test application using write-only access. The method takes both an identifier string, e.g. "Test number 1" and a integer value to output, e.g. org.dvb.test.DVBTest.PASS. In addition to logging the termination condition of the test, invoking this method also indicates that the test application has terminated its operation. Note that termination of operation does not necessarily correspond to the application being in any particular lifecycle state (as defined in the "Application Model" chapter of the MHP specification). The application is not required to open a file or network connection, per se, and the terminate() method is always available for writing (in principle).

The precise format of the termination message is left deliberately unspecified, implementers may choose to output compressed messages, XML documents, or other formats of their choice (obviously provided that the original information can be recovered). It is an implementation option to include additional information with each termination message, e.g. including:

- version of the specification being implemented
- compiler version and options.
- build-version
- timestamp
- date
- debug info

On test-clients whose implementation of the terminate() method supports external communication to its test-server, implementations of this method may optionally indicate to the test-server that the test-client can be reset by its test-server so that another test may be initiated. The precise mechanism by which this communication takes place is not specified it may be via a IP / socket, serial port, etc.

In the case of an test-client that does not support communication to its test-server, or in the case of an unsuccessful (hanging) test, or inability of this method to return (without throwing an exception) the test-server must be prepared to "time out" the application running on the test-client and then reset the test-client.

**Implementation**

The precise mechanism(s) by which the this method may be implemented are intentionally unspecified, implementation options might include:

- storing the termination condition to a local file system.
- storing the termination condition to a mounted remote file system.
- storing the termination condition to a RAM disk, etc.
- storing the termination condition via an RS-232 (or other serial) connection.
- storing the termination condition to a remote host via some IP / UDP based mechanism, e.g. using a socket-based connection.

Messages sent using this method should "atomic", i.e. that they are not interleaved with other messages sent using the methods defined in the DVBTest class.

Note that the implementation of the terminate method may use the same or a different mechanism to that used by the log method.

The terminate method does not require any explicit initialisation on the part of the application under test. For example if termination conditions are being stored to a file system, then the application is not required to mount / open any storage file. Similarly, if the results are being logged via a network connection, then the application is not required to open a connection to the storage host, etc. In principle, the mechanism should always be available to accept termination messages.

If this method is implemented on top of some buffering mechanism, it is strongly recommended that the buffer be flushed for each occurrence of a message being logged.

## Security and implementation options

There is no Java security mechanism that is used to secure the terminate method.

Note that even if the terminate methods is based on a particular implementation option, it shall be able to operate in spite of that particular implementation option itself being subject to security checks. For example, a terminate method implemented using the `java.net.Socket` class shall always be able to log the termination condition of a test-application, even if the test-application is unable to directly access the `java.net.Socket` class due to security restrictions, etc.

It is an allowed implementation option to require that the test-client be put into some particular “test-mode” before any test-results are logged. This mechanism is required to reduce any inadvertent interaction due to downloaded applications accessing the test methods.

### Authoring guidelines

The terminate method is not intended to be accessed by downloaded applications directly, it is purely intended for the use of conformance test applications. Authors of downloaded applications should not call this method, since there may be interactions between this method and normal in-field operation of the test-client (MHP platform).

It is an allowed implementation option to require that the test-client be put into some particular “test-mode” before any test-results are logged. This mechanism is required to reduce any inadvertent interaction due to downloaded applications accessing the test methods.

It is an allowed implementation option to have a number of “test-modes” that are appropriate to different elements being conformance tested, for example, it is a valid implementation for a test-client to have a test-mode where results are stored via a serial port, and a separate test-mode where results are stored via a RAM disk. It is allowable for a conformance test to be performed with the test-client in some specific test- mode, e.g. a `java.net` test (using a serial modem) might have its test results logged to a RAM disk, to avoid interaction between test-log messages and the serial protocol.

The mechanism by which a test-client is put into a given test mode is intentionally left unspecified.

### Relationship to `java.io`

It is an implementation option to map the implementation of this method onto corresponding write method(s) of appropriate `java.io` classes. These classes may in turn be obtained, e.g. from `java.net.Socket` classes, etc.

### Parameters:

`id` - a string identifying the application (thread) that is terminating the test.

`terminationCondition` - the termination condition of the test application.

### Throws:

`java.io.IOException` - thrown if there is any problem in terminating an application. This may be due to failure to write to a file system, inability to access a remote socket, etc. the precise causes are deliberately unspecified.

---

## **Annex Y (normative): Inter-application and Inter-Xlet communication API**

# Package org.dvb.io.ixc

## Description

Provides support for inter-application communication.

## Class Summary

### Classes

`IxcRegistry`

This is the bootstrap mechanism for obtaining references to remote objects residing in other Xlets executing on the same MHP terminal, using a URL-like syntax.

# org.dvb.io.ixc

# IxcRegistry

## Declaration

```
public class IxcRegistry

java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry
```

## Description

This is the bootstrap mechanism for obtaining references to remote objects residing in other Xlets executing on the same MHP terminal, using a URL-like syntax. The identification of a remote object is given using a syntax indicating the organisation ID and application ID:

/organisation\_id/application\_id/name

organisation\_id = the organisation ID of the Xlet, as signalled in the application\_identifier record, defined in the MHP specification.

application\_id = the application ID of the Xlet, as signalled in the application\_identifier record, defined in the MHP specification.

name = the name under which the remote object was exported.

The organisation ID and the application ID shall each be encoded as a hexadecimal string, as would be accepted by `java.lang.Integer.parseInt(String s, 16)`.

When RMI is used to communicate over a network, stubs generated by a tool like `rmic` are often required. This is not necessary for inter-xlet communication initiated with `IxcRegistry`. If such stubs are present, they shall be ignored.

Similarly, network RMI objects often extend the class `server.RemoteObject`, in order to get appropriate implementations for `Object.hashCode()`, `Object.equals()`, and `Object.toString()`. Overriding `Object`'s implementation of these methods in this way is not necessary for inter-xlet communication initiated with `IxcRegistry`, although it is not harmful. Note that the class `server.RemoteObject` is not required in all MHP profiles.

## Methods

---

### **bind(XletContext, String, Remote)**

```
public static void bind(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc, java.lang.String name,
    java.rmi.Remote obj)
    throws AlreadyBoundException
```

Exports an object under a given name in the namespace of an Xlet. The name can be any valid non-null String. No hierarchical namespace exists, e.g. the names "foo" and "bar/../foo" are distinct. If the exporting xlet has been destroyed, this method may fail silently.

The object shall be made visible to other applications. A call to `bind(xc, name, obj)` is thus equivalent to a call to `bind(xc, name, obj, true)`.

#### **Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the Xlet exporting the object.

`name` - The name identifying the object.

`obj` - The object being exported



**Throws:**

`java.rmi.AlreadyBoundException` - if this Xlet has previously exported an object under the given name.

`NullPointerException` - if `xc`, `name` or `obj` is null

**bind(XletContext, String, Remote, boolean)**

```
public static void bind(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc, java.lang.String name,
    java.rmi.Remote obj, boolean external)
    throws AlreadyBoundException
```

Exports an object under a given name in the namespace of an Xlet. The name can be any valid non-null String. No hierarchical namespace exists, e.g. the names "foo" and "bar/../foo" are distinct. If the exporting xlet has been destroyed, this method may fail silently.

**Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the Xlet exporting the object.

`name` - The name identifying the object.

`obj` - The object being exported

`external` - Determines if this object is exported outside the scope of the current application, as defined in this specification. If set true, the object shall be visible to other applications; if false, it shall only be visible to Xlets within the same application. Note that an embedded Xlet with a different app ID than its enclosing HTML page is still considered to be the same application as that which contains the enclosing page.

**Throws:**

`java.rmi.AlreadyBoundException` - if this Xlet has previously exported an object under the given name.

`NullPointerException` - if `xc`, `name` or `obj` is null

**Since:**

MHP 1.1

**list(XletContext)**

```
public static java.lang.String[] list(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc)
```

Returns an array of string path objects available in the registry. The array contains a snapshot of the names present in the registry that the current Xlet would be allowed to import using `lxcRegistry.lookup`.

**Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the current Xlet.

**Returns:**

A non-null array of strings containing a snapshot of the path names of all objects available to the caller in this registry.

**See Also:**

[lookup\(XletContext, String\)](#)

**lookup(XletContext, String)**

```
public static java.rmi.Remote lookup(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc, java.lang.String path)
    throws NotBoundException, RemoteException
```

Returns a remote object previously exported by an Xlet that has not been destroyed. The identification of a remote object is given using a syntax indicating the organisation ID and application

ID:

/organisation\_id/application\_id/name

organisation\_id = the organisation ID of the Xlet, as signalled in the application\_identifier record.

application\_id = the application ID of the Xlet, as signalled in the application\_identifier record.

name = the name under which the remote object was exported.

The organisation ID and the application ID shall each be encoded as a hexadecimal string, as would be accepted by `java.lang.Integer.parseInt(String s, 16)`. If the caller is not authorized to import a given object due to the security policy, then this API will behave as though the object had not been exported, that is, a `NotBoundException` shall be thrown.

**Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the current Xlet (that is, the Xlet importing the object).

`path` - A file pathname-like string identifying the Xlet and the name of the object to be imported.

**Returns:**

A remote object

**Throws:**

`java.rmi.NotBoundException` - If the path is not currently bound.

`java.rmi.RemoteException` - If a remote stub class cannot be generated for the object being imported.

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - If the path is not formatted in the syntax given above.

`NullPointerException` - if path is null

**rebind(XletContext, String, Remote)**

```
public static void rebind(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc, java.lang.String name,
    java.rmi.Remote obj)
```

Rebind the name to a new object in the context of an Xlet; replaces any existing binding. The name can be any valid non-null String. No hierarchical namespace exists, e.g. the names "foo" and "bar/../foo" are distinct. If the exporting xlet has been destroyed, this method may fail silently.

The object shall be made visible to other applications. A call to `rebind(xc, name, obj)` is thus equivalent to a call to `rebind(xc, name, obj, true)`.

**Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the Xlet that exported the object.

`name` - The name identifying the object.

`obj` - The object being exported

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `xc`, `name` or `obj` is null

**rebind(XletContext, String, Remote, boolean)**

```
public static void rebind(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc, java.lang.String name,
    java.rmi.Remote obj, boolean external)
```

Rebind the name to a new object in the context of an Xlet; replaces any existing binding. The name can be any valid non-null String. No hierarchical namespace exists, e.g. the names "foo" and "bar/../foo" are distinct. If the exporting xlet has been destroyed, this method may fail silently.

**Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the Xlet that exported the object.

`name` - The name identifying the object.

`obj` - The object being exported

`external` - Determines if this object is exported outside the scope of the current application, as defined in this specification. If set true, the object shall be visible to other applications; if false, it shall only be visible to Xlets within the same application. Note that an embedded Xlet with a different app ID than its enclosing HTML page is still considered to be the same application as that which contains the enclosing page.

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `xc`, `name` or `obj` is null

**Since:**

MHP 1.1

---

**unbind(XletContext, String)**

```
public static void unbind(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext xc, java.lang.String name)
    throws NotBoundException
```

Unbind the name.

**Parameters:**

`xc` - The context of the Xlet that exported the object to be unbound.

`name` - The name identifying the object.

**Throws:**

`java.rmi.NotBoundException` - if this is not currently any object exported by this Xlet under the given name.

`NullPointerException` - if `xc` or `name` is null

---

# Annex Z (informative): Services, Service Contexts and Applications in an MHP Environment

## Z.1 Introduction

This document describes the concepts that link the various parts of an MHP execution environment so that it can display a complete MHP service, including media and applications. This is really an overview to the MHP application lifecycle model, but does include some additional information.

We assume some familiarity with MHP and the JavaTV specification.

## Z.2 Basic concepts

The unit for the presentation and execution of content in the MHP specification is the service. A service in MHP represents a group of pieces of content which are intended to be presented together to the end-user. In this version of the specification, the service is the contents of a broadcast DVB service, including audio/video streams, data streams and all the service information, applications and application signalling that is being broadcast. The current service will largely be responsible for determining what media and applications are presented to the user.

Every service that gets presented by an MHP platform is presented within a service context. These form one of the foundations for the runtime environment and the execution model. A service context is an "environment" in which a service gets presented - it defines the boundaries of the service (letting the platform and applications identify which of the pieces of content that are being presented make up a given service). It also enables that service to be addressed and controlled as a single entity. A DVB-J application can call the select method on a service context (represented by `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContext`) and the platform will stop presenting all of the content that makes up the current service being presented by that service context and start presenting the content that makes up the new service. In this case, "content" may include one or more applications.

A service context has some major differences from a DVB-J Xlet context. It is not necessary to have one service context for every possible service that can or will get presented - one service context is needed for every service that can be presented simultaneously, but that is all. Also, a service context is not destroyed when the service within it is stopped, unlike the Xlet context for a DVB-J application. The service context exists until an application or the platform explicitly destroys it. In normal operational mode, the built-in navigator or EPG for an MHP system will create one single service context when it starts and never destroy that. MHP applications will run in that service context.

## Z.3 Presenting a service in MHP

From the MHP point of view, the content of a service can be one of two types - media or applications. Media is the simplest case and is described first.

### Z.3.1 Presenting the media components of a service

If there are several different streams of media that may get presented (such as several different video streams) then the platform uses a variety of methods to tell which streams should be used. These include user preferences and platform defaults, but will also include using service information to determine which streams get presented to the user.

For a DVB-J application, all real-time media components sharing the same clock are presented by the same JMF player. These players are directly linked to the service context, and the service context can be queried to find out which JMF Players are linked with it. It is also possible for applications to create JMF Player objects directly without linkage to the applications service context.

### Z.3.2 Presenting the application components of a service

Applications are handled in a slightly different way. The lifecycle of all applications in an MHP environment is controlled by an application manager, a software entity that forms part of the MHP runtime environment. It takes its instructions on which applications to start and stop from the user, but also from information that is included in the MHP broadcast (called an "AIT", can logically be considered an extension to MPEG's PMT) and the free resources in the platform.

The information carried in the AIT (Application Information Table) not only says which applications are available, but also provides some instructions to the application manager about whether an application should be started automatically or whether an application should be killed automatically. The application manager monitors this information for changes, and creates, starts or kills applications as appropriate.

Every DVB-J application executes within an Xlet context. This is a similar concept to the applet context that a Java applet executes in, and it provides the Xlet with a link to its environment, both for accessing system properties and for telling the environment that the Xlet has changed its own state.

Since every Xlet executes as part of a DVB service, there is also a link between the Xlet and its associated service. This link is the class `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContextFactory`. Using methods on this class, an Xlet can lookup its service context from its xlet context. From the service context, an Xlet can discover which service it is currently running as part of. It can also register for events to be told when the service being presented in its service context changes.

The application manager must maintain a list of all the applications in a system, so that it knows which ones are currently executing. It must also know (directly or indirectly) which applications are associated with which service context, so that if the service being presented in that service context changes due to a new service being selected, it can kill the

applications that are not signalled in the new service. When a service is selected in a service context, the following steps happen in approximately this order:

- a) The platform examines the MPEG PMT for the service that has been selected (tuning first if necessary) and works out which media streams are to be presented.
- b) Any media streams currently playing are stopped and any new media streams that need to be presented are started. Any JMF players presenting the old content are stopped and destroyed, and players for the new content are created and started if necessary.
- c) The platform monitors the application information table for the new service to find out which applications should be running. Any applications that are currently running but which are not signalled in the application information table of the new service (or which are signalled as killed) are killed and the Xlet contexts of DVB-J applications associated with the old service are destroyed.
- d) For any applications which are signalled as autostart and are not currently running, the following steps are taken:
  - The platform attaches to the object carousel signalled in the application information table
  - The platform attempts to load the main application file as signalled in the application information table
  - For a DVB-J application, the platform creates an instance of the main class using the default constructor, creates an XletContext object for the application and calls the `Xlet.initXlet()` method on the newly loaded class, passing the XletContext object as a parameter. Once this call is complete, the platform calls the `Xlet.startXlet()` method.

If several applications are signalled as autostart, the platform will load and start every one in the same way. Each DVB-J application will have a different Xlet context and will execute independently, although they are all associated with the same service context.

## Z.4 Multiple service contexts in an MHP platform

The MHP specification allows the platform to have any number of service contexts, although the platform may choose to limit the number it can produce, possibly even to one. Each service context can present a different service, completely independently of the other service contexts. Operations carried out on one service context will not affect another (unless they cause tuning which prevents the contents of a service in another service context from being presented). It is even possible to display the same service in several service contexts simultaneously - this may not be very useful, but it is allowed. This may result in several instances of the same application running in at the same time in different service contexts. In practice, this is most likely to happen in future MHP terminals with multiple independent video output channels.

## Z.5 How does the platform know which services are available?

In order to select a new service, an application (or the platform) has to know three things about the service it wants to start: the original network ID, the transport stream ID and the service ID for the service in question. In the case of an application, those values may be hard-wired into the application by the developer, but this not required. The application can find out about a service in the same way that the platform can - using service information.

The platform can not know the details of every available service when it started for the first time, and so it must use another method to find out about what services it can receive. A set-top box may do the following to find this out, for instance:

- a) Scan the input (satellite, cable or some other input) to find out which transport streams are available and the physical parameters it needs to tune to them successfully.
- b) For every transport stream:
  - Tune to it
  - Use the service information API to access the service description table (SDT) and network information table (NIT) for that transport stream.
  - Use these tables to find what services are in the transport stream and the values needed to select those services
  - In the case of the platform performing an initial scan, write this information to non-volatile memory
- c) When the application has found the service it wants (or in the case of the platform performing a scan, once every transport stream has been scanned in this way), a service can be selected.

At this point, the platform has all the information it needs to start presenting services to the user. It is important to realise that this is not the only way of finding this information - other ways may be possible, depending on the MHP implementation.

# Annex AA (normative): DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD

## AA.1 DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD

### AA.1.1 DVB-HTML DTD driver

This section contains the driver for the DVB-HTML 1.0 document type implementation as an XML DTD. It relies upon XHTML module implementations defined in [Modularization of XHTML \[94\]](#) and in this annex. This driver is the DTD that shall be referenced by conformant DVB-HTML 1.0 documents.

```

<!-- ..... -->
<!--          DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD          -->
<!-- ..... -->
<!-- file: dvbhtml-1-0.dtd             -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!--          This is the DTD driver for DVB-HTML 1.0.

          The following formal public identifier shall be used to identify it:
              "-//DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML 1.0//EN"

          The following URL may be used to reference this file :
              "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-1-0.dtd"          -->

<!-- ..... -->
<!--          XHTML Driver Parameters          -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!ENTITY % XHTML.version "-//DVB//DTD XHTML DVB-HTML 1.0//EN" >
<!-- reserved for use with document profiles          -->
<!ENTITY % XHTML.profile "" >

<!-- ..... -->
<!--          Framework          -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!-- Tell the XHTML Framework module to use the DVB-HTML Qualified Names          -->
<!-- module as an extra qname driver          -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-qname-extra.mod
PUBLIC "-//DVB//ENTITIES DVB-HTML Qualified Names 1.0//EN"
"dvb-qname-1.mod" >

<!-- Define the Content Model for the framework to use -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-model.mod
PUBLIC "-//DVB//ENTITIES DVB-HTML Content Model 1.0//EN"
"dvbhtml-model-1-0.mod" >

<!-- Include bidirectional text support -->
<!ENTITY % XHTML.bidi "INCLUDE" >

<!-- Comment : Needed for tool verification purpose -->
<!ENTITY % iframe.qname "iframe" >

<!-- XHTML Inline Style Module ..... -->
<!-- needs to be included prior to the XHTML Modular Framework to be taken -->
<!-- into account          -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-inlstyle.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-inlstyle.module;[
!ENTITY % xhtml-inlstyle.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ENTITIES XHTML Inline Style 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-inlstyle-1.mod" >
%xhtml-inlstyle.mod;]]>

<!-- Bring in the XHTML Framework module -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-framework.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ENTITIES XHTML Modular Framework 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-framework-1.mod" >

```

```

%xhtml-framework.mod;

<!-- Using tables, so we need to declare this. Is also present on the Content Model -->
<!ENTITY % Table.class "| %table.qname;">

<!-- instantiate the DVB Character Entities module (for the VK_* codes). -->
<!--
NOTE 1: The content of this module is not defined in this specification
since the mappings of those DVB character entities to the character
set are implementation specific

NOTE 2: The DVB-HTML Character Entities Module is referenced from the
DVB-HTML DTDs using a local URL (see <xref AA.1.1 "DVB-HTML DTD Driver").
Hence the location from which the DTD is fetched will affect the
values given to the "VK_*" entities defined for use with the HTML
"accesskey" attribute, described in <xref to 8.5.3.1.8 "Accesskey
attribute">. Implementations may therefore choose to store these DTDs
locally and access them in an implementation-defined manner.
-->
<!ENTITY % dvb-charent.module "INCLUDE" >
<![%dvb-charent.module;[
<!ENTITY % dvb-charent.mod
SYSTEM "dvb-charent-1.mod" >
%dvb-charent.mod;]]>

<!-- ..... -->
<!-- Modules List -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!-- This DTD will accept both frameset and body elements as root element childs -->
<!ENTITY % html.content "( %head.qname; , (%frameset.qname; | %body.qname; ) )" >

<!-- XHTML Document Structure Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-struct.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-struct.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-struct.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Document Structure 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-struct-1.mod" >
%xhtml-struct.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Text Module ..... -->
<!-- Fix up the blockquote content model -->
<!ENTITY % blockquote-fixed.element "INCLUDE">
<![%blockquote-fixed.element;[
<!ENTITY % blockquote.content
"( #PCDATA | %Block.mix;)*"
>
<!ENTITY % blockquote.qname "blockquote" >
<!ELEMENT %blockquote.qname; %blockquote.content; >
<!-- end of blockquote.element -->]]>
<!ENTITY % xhtml-text.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-text.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-text.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Text 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-text-1.mod" >
%xhtml-text.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Hypertext Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-hypertext.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-hypertext.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-hypertext.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Hypertext 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-hypertext-1.mod" >
%xhtml-hypertext.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Lists Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-list.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-list.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-list.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Lists 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-list-1.mod" >

```



```

%xhtml-list.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Presentation Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-pres.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-pres.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-pres.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Presentation 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-pres-1.mod" >
%xhtml-pres.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML BDO Element Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-bdo.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-bdo.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-bdo.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML BDO Element 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-bdo-1.mod" >
%xhtml-bdo.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Forms Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-form.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-form.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-form.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Forms 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-form-1.mod" >
%xhtml-form.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Basic Tables Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-basic-table.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-basic-table.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-basic-table.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Basic Tables 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-basic-table-1.mod">
%xhtml-basic-table.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Images module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-image.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-image.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-image.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Images 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-image-1.mod" >
%xhtml-image.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Client Side Image Map module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-csismap.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-csismap.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-csismap.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Client Side Image Maps 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-csismap-1.mod" >
%xhtml-csismap.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Embedded Object module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-object.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-object.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-object.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Embedded Object 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-object-1.mod" >
%xhtml-object.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Frames module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-frames.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-frames.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-frames.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Frames 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-frames-1.mod" >
%xhtml-frames.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Target module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-target.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-target.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-target.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Target 1.0//EN"

```

```

"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-target-1.mod" >
%xhtml-target.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML IFrame module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-iframe.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-iframe.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-iframe.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Inline Frame Element 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-iframe-1.mod" >
%xhtml-iframe.mod;]]>

<!-- DVB-HTML Intrinsic Events Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml-events.module "INCLUDE" >
<![%dvbhtml-events.module;[
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml-events.mod
PUBLIC "-//DVB//ENTITIES DVB-HTML Intrinsic Events 1.0//EN"
"http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-events-1.mod" >
%dvbhtml-events.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Document Metainformation Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-meta.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-meta.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-meta.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Metainformation 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-meta-1.mod" >
%xhtml-meta.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Document Scripting Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-script.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-script.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-script.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Scripting 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-script-1.mod" >
%xhtml-script.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Document Stylesheet Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-style.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-style.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-style.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Stylesheets 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-style-1.mod" >
%xhtml-style.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Link Element Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-link.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-link.module;[
<!ENTITY % xhtml-link.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Link Element 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-link-1.mod" >
%xhtml-link.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Base Element Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-base.module "INCLUDE">
<![%xhtml-base.module;[
!ENTITY % xhtml-base.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Base Element 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-base-1.mod" >
%xhtml-base.mod;]]>

<!-- ..... -->
<!-- XHTML Modularization modules ignored in DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD..... -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!-- XHTML Java Applet Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-applet.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-applet.module;[
!ENTITY % xhtml-applet.mod
PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Java Applets 1.0//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-applet-1.mod" >
%xhtml-applet.mod;]]>

```

```

<!-- XHTML Edit Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-edit.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-edit.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-edit.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Editing Markup 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-edit-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-edit.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Basic Forms Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-basic-form.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-basic-form.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-basic-form.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Basic Forms 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-basic-form-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-basic-form.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Table Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-table.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-table.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-table.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Tables 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-table-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-table.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Server Side Image Map Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-ssismap.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-ssismap.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-ssismap.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Server-side Image Maps 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-ssismap-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-ssismap.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Intrinsic Events Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-events.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-events.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-events.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Intrinsic Events 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-events-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-events.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Name Identification Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-nameident.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-nameident.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-nameident.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Name Identifier 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-nameident-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-nameident.mod;]]>

<!-- XHTML Legacy Markup Module ..... -->
<!ENTITY % xhtml-legacy.module "IGNORE">
<![%xhtml-legacy.module;[
    !ENTITY % xhtml-legacy.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ELEMENTS XHTML Legacy Markup 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-legacy-1.mod" >
    %xhtml-legacy.mod;]]>

<!-- end of DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD ..... -->
<!-- ..... -->

```

## AA.1.2 DVB-HTML DVB Intrinsic Events module

This DVB defined module adds some event attributes to the <body> and <frame> element.

```

<!-- ..... -->
<!--          DVB-HTML Intrinsic Events 1.0 Module          -->
<!-- ..... -->
<!-- file: dvbhtml-events-1.mod          -->
<!-- ..... -->

```

```

<!-- This is the DTD module for the DVB-HTML defined events.

The following formal public identifier shall be used to identify it:
    "-//DVB//ENTITIES DVB-HTML Intrinsic Events 1.0//EN"

The following URL may be used to reference this file :
    "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-events-1.mod"

The namespace and the default prefix of this module are respectively
    xmlns:dvbhtml="http://www.dvb.org/mhp/"
-->

<!-- Declare PEs for the DVB Intrinsic events attributes on the body element -->
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.body.onload.qname "%dvbhtml.pfx;onload" >
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.body.onunload.qname "%dvbhtml.pfx;onunload" >
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.body.ondvbdomstable.qname "%dvbhtml.pfx;ondvbdomstable" >

<!-- Declare PEs for the DVB-HTML Intrinsic events attributes on the -->
<!-- frameset element (only used in the DVB-HTML Frameset DTD) -->
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.frameset.onload.qname "%dvbhtml.pfx;onload" >
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.frameset.onunload.qname "%dvbhtml.pfx;onunload" >
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.frameset.ondvbdomstable.qname "%dvbhtml.pfx;ondvbdomstable" >

<!-- additional attributes on body element -->
<!ATTLIST %body.qname;
    %dvbhtml.body.onload.qname      %Script.datatype;      #IMPLIED
    %dvbhtml.body.onunload.qname    %Script.datatype;      #IMPLIED
    %dvbhtml.body.ondvbdomstable.qname %Script.datatype;    #IMPLIED
>

<!-- end of dvbhtml-events-1.mod ..... -->
<!-- ..... -->

```

### AA.1.3 DVB-HTML Qualified Names module

This DVB-defined module is declared in the DVB-HTML DTD driver and instantiated through the XHTML Modular Framework. It defines parameter entities to support namespace-qualified names. In particular, it defines namespace declarations and name prefixing rules. The actual namespace defined by this module is provided by the following URI: "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/" and the default prefix by the string "dvbhtml".

It is defined below:

```

<!-- ..... -->
<!-- DVB-HTML 1.0 QName Module -->
<!-- ..... -->
<!-- file: dvbhtml-qname-1.mod -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!--
The following formal public identifier shall be used to identify it:
    "-//DVB//ENTITIES DVB-HTML Qualified Names 1.0//EN"

The following URL may be used to reference this file :
    "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-qname-1.mod"
-->

<!-- Bring in the XHTML datatypes, since the URI.datatype parameter entity -->
<!-- is used for declaring the xmlns attributes. -->
<!ENTITY % dvb-datatypes.mod
    PUBLIC "-//W3C//ENTITIES XHTML Datatypes 1.0//EN"
    "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml-modularization/DTD/xhtml-datatypes-1.mod" >
%dvb-datatypes.mod;

<!-- Declare the default value for prefixing of this module's attributes -->
<!-- Note that the NS.prefixed will get overridden by the XHTML Framework -->
<!-- or by a document instance. -->

```

```

<!ENTITY % NS.prefixed "IGNORE" >
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.prefixed "%NS.prefixed;" >

<!-- Declare the actual namespace of this module -->
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.xmlns "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/" >

<!-- Declare the default prefix for this module -->
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.prefix "dvbhtml" >

<!-- Declare the prefix and any prefixed namespaces that are required by -->
<!-- this module. -->
<![%dvbhtml.prefixed;[
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.pfx "%dvbhtml.prefix;" >
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.xmlns.extra.attrib
  "xmlns:%dvbhtml.prefix; %URI.datatype; #FIXED '%dvbhtml.xmlns;' " >
]]>
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.pfx "" >

<!-- Declare a Parameter Entity (PE) that defines any external namespaces -->
<!-- that are used by this module -->
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.xmlns.extra.attrib "" >

<!-- Declare a PE that defines the xmlns attributes for use by dvbhtml. -->
<![%dvbhtml.prefixed;[
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.xmlns.attrib
  "xmlns:%dvbhtml.prefix; %URI.datatype; #FIXED 1%dvbhtml.xmlns;1
  %dvbhtml.xmlns.extra.attrib;"
>
]]>
<!ENTITY % dvbhtml.xmlns.attrib
  "xmlns %URI.datatype; #FIXED 1%dvbhtml.xmlns;1
  %dvbhtml.xmlns.extra.attrib;"
>
<!-- Make sure that the dvbhtml namespace attributes are included on the -->
<!-- XHTML attribute set -->
<![%NS.prefixed;[
<!ENTITY % XHTML.xmlns.extra.attrib
  "%dvbhtml.xmlns.extra.attrib;" >
]]>
<!ENTITY % XHTML.xmlns.extra.attrib "" >

<!-- end of dvbhtml-gname-1.mod ..... -->
<!-- ..... -->

```

## AA.1.4 DVB-HTML Content Model module

The DVB-HTML content model module works together with the DVB-HTML 1.0 DTD driver to customize the XHTML module implementations to the document type's specific requirements. This module is instantiated by the XHTML modular framework module.

It is defined below:

```

<!-- ..... -->
<!--      DVB-HTML 1.0 Document Model Module      -->
<!-- ..... -->
<!-- file: dvbhtml-model-1-0.mod      -->
<!-- ..... -->

<!-- This is the DTD module for the DVB-HTML Document Model.

      The following formal public identifier shall be used to identify it:
      PUBLIC "-//DVB//ENTITIES DVB-HTML Document Model 1.0//EN"

      The following URL may be used to reference this file :
      "http://www.dvb.org/mhp/dtd/dvbhtml-model-1-0.mod"      -->

<!-- Document Model

```

This module describes the groupings of elements that make up common content models for DVB-HTML elements.

-->

```

<!-- ..... Optional Elements in head ..... -->

<!ENTITY % HeadOpts.mix "(
    | %script.qname;
    | %style.qname;
    | %meta.qname;
    | %link.qname;
    | %object.qname;)*" >

<!-- ..... Miscellaneous Elements ..... -->

<!-- script and noscript are used to contain scripts -->

<!ENTITY % Misc.extra " | %script.qname;
    | %noscript.qname; " >

<!-- These elements are neither block nor inline, and can
      essentially be used anywhere in the document body. -->
<!ENTITY % Misc.class " %Misc.extra; " >

<!-- ..... Inline Elements ..... -->

<!ENTITY % InlStruct.class " | %br.qname;
    | %span.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % InlPhras.class " | %em.qname;
    | %strong.qname;
    | %dfn.qname;
    | %code.qname;
    | %samp.qname;
    | %kbd.qname;
    | %var.qname;
    | %cite.qname;
    | %abbr.qname;
    | %acronym.qname;
    | %q.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % InlPres.class " | %tt.qname;
    | %i.qname;
    | %b.qname;
    | %big.qname;
    | %small.qname;
    | %sub.qname;
    | %sup.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % I18n.class " | %bdo.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % Anchor.class " | %a.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % InlSpecial.class " | %img.qname;
    | %map.qname;
    | %object.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % Control.class " | %input.qname;
    | %select.qname;
    | %textarea.qname;
    | %label.qname;
    | %button.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % Inline.extra " | %iframe.qname; " >

<!-- %Inline.class; includes all inline elements, used as a component in mixes -->
<!ENTITY % Inline.class " %InlStruct.class;
    %InlPhras.class;
    %InlPres.class;
    %I18n.class;

```

```

        %Control.class;
                %Anchor.class;
                %InlSpecial.class;
                %Inline.extra;" >

<!-- %InlNoAnchor.class; includes all non-anchor inline elements,
used as a component in mixes -->

<!ENTITY % InlNoAnchor.class      " %InlStruct.class;
                %InlPhras.class;
                %InlPres.class;
                %I18n.class;
        %Control.class;
                %InlSpecial.class;
                %Inline.extra;" >

<!-- %Inline-noa.mix; includes all non-anchor inlines -->
<!ENTITY % InlNoAnchor.mix        " %InlNoAnchor.class;
                %Misc.class;">

<!-- %Inline.mix; includes all inline elements, including %Misc.class; -->
<!ENTITY % Inline.mix             " %Inline.class;
                %Misc.class;" >

<!-- ..... Block Elements ..... -->

<!ENTITY % Heading.class          " %h1.qname;
        | %h2.qname;
        | %h3.qname;
        | %h4.qname;
        | %h5.qname;
        | %h6.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % List.class             " %ul.qname;
        | %ol.qname;
        | %dl.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % BlkStruct.class        " %p.qname;
        | %div.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % BlkPhras.class        " | %pre.qname;
        | %blockquote.qname;
        | %address.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % BlkPres.class         " | %hr.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % BlkNoTable.extra      " | %form.qname;
        | %fieldset.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % Table.class           " | %table.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % Block.extra           "%Table.class;
        | %form.qname;
        | %fieldset.qname; " >

<!ENTITY % BlkNoTable.class      "%BlkStruct.class;
        %BlkPhras.class;
        %BlkPres.class;
        %BlkNoTable.extra;" >

<!-- %Block.class; includes all block elements, used as a component in mixes -->
<!ENTITY % Block.class           "%BlkStruct.class;
        %BlkPhras.class;
        %BlkPres.class;
        %Block.extra;" >

<!-- %Block.mix; includes all block elements plus %Misc.class; -->
<!ENTITY % Block.mix             "%Heading.class;

```

```
        | %List.class;  
        | %Block.class;  
        %Misc.class;" >  
  
<!-- ..... All Content Elements ..... -->  
  
<!ENTITY % FlowNoTable.mix      "%Heading.class;  
        | %List.class;  
        | %BlkNoTable.class;  
        | %Inline.class;  
        %Misc.class;" >  
  
<!-- %Flow.mix; includes all text content, block and inline -->  
<!ENTITY % Flow.mix            "%Heading.class;  
        | %List.class;  
        | %Block.class;  
        | %Inline.class;  
        %Misc.class;" >  
  
<!-- ..... -->  
<!-- end of dvbhtml-model-1-0.mod ..... -->  
<!-- ..... -->
```



## Annex AB (normative): DVB HTML StyleSheet

In the absence of any other styling information for a page, the support application shall render using the following default stylesheet:

```

/*
 * Since MHP implementations may add element types, this rule prevents
 * any such elements from being displayed by default. The following
 * rule restores the default "inline" value to HTML element types which
 * should be displayed inline.
 */
*
      { display: none }
style, meta, link,
script, noscript,
br, span,
em, strong, dfn,
code, samp, kbd,
var, cite, abbr,
acronym, q,
tt, i, d, big,
small, sub, sup,
bdo, a,
img, map, object,
input, select,
textarea, label,
button      { display: inline }

address,
blockquote,
body, dd, div,
dl, dt, fieldset,
form, frame,
frameset, h1, h2,
h3, h4, h5, h6,
hr, noframes, ol,
p, pre, ul   { display: block }
object      { display: inline }
li          { display: list-item }
head        { display: none }
table       { display: table }
tr          { display: table-row }

/*
 * NOTE: Removed for DVB-HTML, as these elements and these values of display
 * property are not supported.
 *
 * thead      { display: table-header-group }
 * tbody     { display: table-row-group }
 * tfoot      { display: table-footer-group }
 * col        { display: table-column }
 * colgroup   { display: table-column-group }
 */
td, th      { display: table-cell }
caption     { display: table-caption }
th          { font-weight: bolder; text-align: center }
caption     { text-align: center }

/*
 * NOTE: The padding here and the initial block below (in the @viewport
 * rule) is defined such that the initial block matches the "Safe Action
 * Area" and the content area of the BODY matches the "Safe Title Area".
 * The Safe Action Area is the centre 90% of the screen; the Safe Title
 * Area is the centre 80%. Percentages are not used to specify the body
 * padding because both axes are interpreted with respect to the *width*
 * of the containing block. Therefore the padding below is in pixels.
 *
 * NOTE: The sample HTML 4.0 stylesheet in the CSS2 specification, derived
 * from a survey of existing User Agents, has "line-height: 1.33". However,
 * the errata (as of 19980512) reduce this to 1.12em.

```

```

*/
body          { font-family: Tiresias; font-size: 26pt;
               padding: 29px 36px; line-height: 1.12em;
               opacity: 0;
               background-color: rgb(0, 0, 0);
               color: rgb(255, 255, 255); }

/*
* NOTE: The margins here are chosen to be 26pt/18px (according to the
* information on Tiresias in TAM232r16). They are
* expressed in "em" units so overriding stylesheets can change just the
* font-size and have the margins scaled.
*/
h6, h4, h2    { text-transform: uppercase }
h6            { font-size: 24pt; margin: 1.08em 0 }
h5, h4        { font-size: 26pt; margin: 1em 0 }
h3, h2        { font-size: 31pt; margin: 0.84em 0 }
h1            { font-size: 36pt; margin: 0.72em 0 }

/*
* NOTE: The vertical margin here is left at 1.33em despite the CSS 2 errata
* mentioned above.
*/
blockquote, dl, fieldset, form, ol, p, ul { margin: 1.33em 0 }
h1, h2, h3, h4, h5, h6,
strong        { font-weight: bolder }
blockquote    { margin-left: 1.5em; margin-right: 1.5em }
address, cite,
em, i, var    { font-style: italic }
pre, code, kbd,
samp          { font-family: monospace }
pre           { white-space: pre }
big           { font-size: larger }
small, sub, sup { font-size: smaller }
sub           { vertical-align: sub }
sup           { vertical-align: super }
hr            { border: 1px solid }
ol, ul, dd    { margin-left: 1.5em }
ol            { list-style-type: decimal }
ol ul, ul ol,
ul ul, ol ol  { margin-top: 0; margin-bottom: 0 }

br:before     { content: "\A" }

abbr, acronym { letter-spacing: 0.1em }

:link         { color: rgb(0, 127, 255) } /* opaque blue */
:focus        { color: rgb(0, 127, 255); } /* opaque blue */
              { outline: 2px solid rgb(255, 0, 127) } /* opaque blue */
:active       { color: rgb(255, 31, 0); } /* opaque red */
              { outline: 2px solid rgb(255, 31, 0) } /* opaque red */
:visited      { color: rgb(191, 0, 127) } /* opaque violet */

/* Begin bidirectionality settings (do not change) */
bdo[dir="ltr"] { direction: ltr; unicode-bidi: bidi-override }
bdo[dir="rtl"] { direction: rtl; unicode-bidi: bidi-override }

*[dir="ltr"]   { direction: ltr; unicode-bidi: embed }
*[dir="rtl"]   { direction: rtl; unicode-bidi: embed }

/* Elements that are block-level in HTML4 */
/*
* NOTE: Removed for DVB-HTML, as these elements and these values of display
* property are not supported: thead, tbody, tfoot, col, colgroup
*/
address, blockquote, body, dd, div, dl, dt, fieldset,
form, frame, frameset, h1, h2, h3, h4, h5, h6, iframe,
noscript, noframes, object, ol, p, ul,
hr, pre, li, table, tr, td, th, caption { unicode-bidi: embed }
/* End bidi settings */

```

```
@viewport {  
  /* scene: defaults to rect(0%, 0%, 100%, 100%), full screen */  
  /* horizontal-resolution: defaults to 720px; */  
  /* vertical-resolution: 576px; */  
  /* By default, stay within Safe Action Area (centre 90%) */  
  /* initial: (36px, 29px, 648px, 518px); */  
  initial: rect(10%, 10%, 90%, 90%);  
  type: none;  
  background: rgb(0, 0, 0);  
  area: screen;  
}
```

## Annex AC (normative): ECMAScript Binding

This appendix contains the complete [ECMAScript \[95\]](#) binding for the DVB HTML Document Object Model ECMAScript Language Binding.

### AC.1 ECMAScript language binding

Since ECMAScript is a prototype-based language, the DOM implementation using this language can add mechanisms which can't be defined using the IDL language. This section defines two sets of functionalities that an ECMAScript DOM DVB implementation shall support.

For other considerations concerning the ECMAScript language binding, please refer to the appendix D of [HTML 4 \[104\]](#).

#### AC.1.1 Shortcuts to access objects

The IDL interfaces defined in section 8.11.4.6, "[DVB-HTML element related interfaces](#)" on page 145 provide access to some objects using DVB HTML collections. For example, the third form element of a document can be accessed by using the following instruction, where `document` is the name of the object representing the DVB HTML document :

```
document.forms[2]
```

In this perspective, each object shall add a new property for each object that it encapsulates. The name of the property shall be the identifier of the corresponding encapsulated object (i.e. the value of the `id` attribute inherited by the `DVBHTMLInputElement` interface). The document will fail to parse if the `id` of an element would rename a property of the host object. Setting a property on the ECMAScript GlobalObject will override the shortcut of the same name.

This property only exists if the element has an `id` attribute. This shall be applied for the following interfaces:

- `DVBHTMLAnchorElement`,
- `DVBHTMLMapElement`,
- `DVBHTMLAreaElement`,
- `DVBHTMLButtonElement`,
- `DVBHTMLFrameElement`,
- `DVBHTMLFramesetElement`,
- `DVBHTMLImageElement`,
- `DVBHTMLInputElement`,
- `DVBHTMLOptionElement`,
- `DVBHTMLSelectElement`,
- `DVBHTMLTextareaElement`.

For example, if a document contains a form whose identifier is `myForm`, the form can be accessed using the following equivalent instructions :

```
document.myForm
document["myForm"]
myForm // since document is the global object
```

Subsequently, if the form contains a button identified by the `myButton` string, the button can be accessed using :

```
document.myForm.myButton
```

## AC.1.2 Grouping the objects of a form

In DVB HTML, the following elements of a form may belong to different groups: button, input, select, textarea. The `name` attribute of those elements identifies this group. The `DVBHTMLFormElement` interface doesn't represent this relation. Instead, all the elements included in the form are accessed by the `elements` collection. To determine the elements belonging to the same group, an application can list all the elements, looking for the ones with the `name` attribute equals to a particular group name.

A DOM DVB HTML implementation shall provide an easier access by integrating a property in a form element for each group included in this form. The property is a table containing all the elements of the group. The name of the property shall be the `name` attribute of the elements which corresponds to the name of the group. For example, if the DVB HTML document contains a form identified by `myForm`, with two elements having their `name` attribute set to `myGroup`, these buttons will be accessed using the following instructions :

```
document.myForm.myGroup[0]
document.myForm.myGroup[1]
```

The rule defined in the previous section also applies. Thus, if the two elements are respectively identified by `myInput1`, and `myInput2`, they can also be accessed by the following instructions :

```
document.myForm.myInput1
document.myForm.myInput2
```

Methods that attempt to set read-only attributes shall cause the `DOMException` with the error code `NO_MODIFICATION_ALLOWED_ERR` to be raised.

## AC.2 The DVB-HTML host objects

### AC.2.1 Object `DVBHTMLCollection`

The `DVBHTMLCollection` object has the following properties:

**length:** This read-only property is of type `Number`.

The `DVBHTMLCollection` object has the following methods:

**item(index):** This method returns a `Node` object.

The **index** parameter is of type `Number`.

Note: This object can also be dereferenced using square bracket notation (e.g. `obj[1]`).

Dereferencing with an integer index is equivalent to invoking the `item` method with that index.

**namedItem(name):** This method returns a `Node` object.

The **name** parameter is of type `String`.

Note: This object can also be dereferenced using square bracket notation (e.g. `obj["foo"]`). Dereferencing using a string index is equivalent to invoking the `namedItem` method with that name.

NOTE: In DVB HTML names are not used for identification purposes, so only `Nodes` with `id` attributes will appear in a `DVBHTMLCollection` object.

See:

- [8.11.4.5.1, "DVB-HTMLCollection Interface" on page 142](#)

### AC.2.2 Object `DVBHTMLDocument`

`DVBHTMLDocument` has the all the properties and methods of the `Document` object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLDocument object has the following properties:

**title:** This property is of type String.

**referrer:** This read-only property is of type String.

**domain:** This read-only property is of type String.

**URL:** This read-only property is of type String.

**body:** This property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**images:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**links:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**forms:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**anchors:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**cookie:** This property is of type String.

The DVBHTMLDocument object has the following methods:

**open():** This method has no return value. The ECMAScript context which opened the new document cannot be destroyed until it calls document.close().

**close():** This method has no return value. Deletes the ECMAScript context that opened the document.

**write(text):** This method has no return value.

The **text** parameter is of type String.

**writeln(text):** This method has no return value.

The **text** parameter is of type String.

See:

- [8.11.4.5.2, "DVBHTMLDocument Interface" on page 143](#)

### AC.2.3 Object DVBHTMLCollection

DVBHTMLCollection has all the properties and methods of the Element object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLCollection object has the following properties:

**id:** This property is of type String.

**title:** This property is of type String.

**lang:** This property is of type String; This property can raise a DOMException on setting.

**dir:** This property is of type String; This property can raise a DOMException on setting.

**className:** This property is of type String.

## AC.2.4 Object DVBHTMLFormElement

DVBHTMLFormElement has all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLFormElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLFormElement object has the following properties:

**elements:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**length:** This read-only property is of type Number.

**acceptCharset:** This property is of type String.

**action:** This property is of type String.

**enctype:** This property is of type String.

**method:** This property is of type String; This property can raise a DOMException on setting.

**target:** This property is of type String.

The DVBHTMLFormElement object has the following methods:

**submit():** This method has no return value.

**reset():** This method has no return value.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.6, "DVBHTMLFormElement Interface" on page 148](#)

## AC.2.5 Object DVBHTMLSelectElement

DVBHTMLSelectElement has all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLFormElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLSelectElement object has the following properties:

**type:** This read-only property is of type String.

**selectedIndex:** This property is a long object.

**value:** This property is of type String.

**length:** This read-only property is of type Number

**form:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLFormElement object.

**options:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

**disabled:** This property is of type Boolean.

**multiple:** This read-only property is of type Boolean.

**name:** This property is of type String.

**size:** This property is of type Number.

The DVBHTMLSelectElement object has the following methods:

**add(element, before):** This method has no return value.

The **element** parameter is a DVBHTMLInputElement object.

The **before** parameter is a DVBHTMLInputElement object.

This method can raise a **DOMException** object.

**remove(index)**: This method has no return value.

The **index** parameter is of type Number.

**blur()**: This method has no return value.

**focus()**: This method has no return value.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.14, "DVBHTMLSelectElement Interface" on page 155](#)

## AC.2.6 Object DVBHTMLOptionElement

DVBHTMLOptionElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLInputElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLOptionElement object has the following properties:

**form**: This read-only property is a DVBHTMLFormElement object.

**defaultSelected**: This property is of type Boolean.

**text**: This read-only property is of type String.

**index**: This read-only property is of type Number.

**disabled**: This property is of type Boolean.

**label**: This property is of type String.

**selected**: This property is of type Boolean.

**value**: This property is of type String.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.13, "DVBHTMLOptionElement Interface" on page 154](#)

## AC.2.7 Object DVBHTMLInputElement

DVBHTMLInputElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLInputElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLInputElement object has the following properties:

**defaultValue**: This property is of type String.

**defaultChecked**: This property is of type Boolean.

**form**: This read-only property is a DVBHTMLFormElement object.

**accept**: This property is of type String.

**accessKey**: This property is of type String.



**alt:** This property is of type String.

**checked:** This property is of type Boolean.

**disabled:** This property is of type Boolean.

**maxLength:** This property is of type Number.

**name:** This property is of type String.

**readOnly:** This property is of type Boolean.

**size:** This property is of type String.

**src:** This property is of type String.

**type:** This read-only property is of type String.

**useMap:** This read-only property is of type String.

**value:** This property is of type String.

The DVBHTMLInputElement object has the following methods:

**blur():** This method has no return value.

**focus():** This method has no return value.

**select():** This method has no return value.

**click():** This method has no return value.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.12, "DVBHTMLInputElement Interface" on page 152](#)

## AC.2.8 Object DVBHTMLTextAreaElement

DVBHTMLTextAreaElement has all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLFormElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLTextAreaElement object has the following properties:

**defaultValue:** This property is of type String.

**form:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLFormElement object.

**accessKey:** This property is of type String.

**cols:** This read-only property is a long object.

**disabled:** This property is of type Boolean.

**name:** This property is of type String.

**readOnly:** This property is of type Boolean.

**rows:** This property is a long object.

**type:** This read-only property is of type String.

**value:** This property is of type String.

The DVBHTMLTextAreaElement object has the following methods:

**blur():** This method has no return value.

**focus():** This method has no return value.

**select():** This method has no return value.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.15, "DVBHTMLTextAreaElement Interface" on page 156](#)

## AC.2.9 Object DVBHTMLButtonElement

DVBHTMLButtonElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLInputElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLButtonElement object has the following properties:

**form:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLFormElement object.

**accessKey:** This property is of type String.

**disabled:** This property is of type Boolean.

**name:** This property is of type String.

**type:** This read-only property is of type String.

**value:** This property is of type String.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.5, "DVBHTMLButtonElement Interface" on page 147](#)

## AC.2.10 Object DVBHTMLAnchorElement

DVBHTMLAnchorElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLInputElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLAnchorElement object has the following properties:

**accessKey:** This property is of type String.

**charset:** This property is of type String.

**href:** This property is of type String.

**hreflang:** This property is of type String.

**target:** This property is of type String.

**type:** This property is of type String.

The DVBHTMLAnchorElement object has the following methods:

**blur():** This method has no return value.

**focus():** This method has no return value.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.2, "DVBHTMLAnchorElement Interface" on page 146](#)

## AC.2.11 Object DVBHTMLImageElement

DVBHTMLImageElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLImageElement object has the following properties:

**lowSrc:** This property is of type String.

**alt:** This property is of type String.

**height:** This property is of type String.

**longDesc:** This property is of type String.

**src:** This property is of type String.

**useMap:** This read-only property is of type String.

**width:** This property is of type String.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.10, "DVBHTMLImageElement Interface" on page 150](#)

## AC.2.12 Object DVBHTMLObjectElement

DVBHTMLObjectElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLObjectElement object has the following properties:

**form:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLFormElement object.

**code:** This property is of type String.

**archive:** This property is of type String.

**codeBase:** This property is of type String.

**codeType:** This property is of type String.

**data:** This property is of type String.

**declare:** This property is of type Boolean.

**height:** This property is of type String.

**standby:** This property is of type String.

**tabIndex:** This property is a long object.

**type:** This property is of type String.

**useMap:** This read-only property is of type String.

**width:** This property is of type String.

**contentDocument:** This read-only property is a Document object.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.11, "DVBHTMLObjectElement Interface" on page 151](#)

## AC.2.13 Object DVBHTMLMapElement

DVBHTMLMapElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLMapElement object has the following properties:

**areas:** This read-only property is a DVBHTMLCollection object.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.3, "DVBHTMLMapElement Interface" on page 146](#)

## AC.2.14 Object DVBHTMLAreaElement

DVBHTMLAreaElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLAreaElement object has the following properties:

**accessKey:** This property is of type String.

**alt:** This property is of type String.

**href:** This property is of type String.

**noHref:** This property is of type Boolean.

**target:** This property is of type String.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.4, "DVBHTMLAreaElement Interface" on page 147](#)

## AC.2.15 Object DVBHTMLFrameSetElement

DVBHTMLFrameSetElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLFrameSetElement object has the following properties:

**cols:** This read-only property is of type String.

**rows:** This read-only property is of type String.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.8, "DVBHTMLFrameSetElement Interface" on page 150](#)

## AC.2.16 Object DVBHTMLFrameElement

DVBHTMLFrameElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLFrameElement object has the following properties:

**frameBorder:** This read-only property is of type String.

**longDesc:** This property is of type String.

**marginHeight:** This read-only property is of type String.

**marginWidth:** This read-only property is of type String.

**scrolling:** This read-only property is of type String.

**src:** This property is of type String.

**contentDocument:** This read-only property is a Document object.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.7, "DVBHTMLFrameElement Interface" on page 149](#)

## AC.2.17 Object DVBHTMLIFrameElement

DVBHTMLIFrameElement has the all the properties and methods of the DVBHTMLElement object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBHTMLIFrameElement object has the following properties:

**frameBorder:** This read-only property is of type String.

**longDesc:** This property is of type String.

**marginHeight:** This read-only property is of type String.

**marginWidth:** This read-only property is of type String.

**scrolling:** This read-only property is of type String.

**src:** This property is of type String.

**contentDocument:** This read-only property is a Document object.

See:

- [8.11.4.6.9, "DVBHTMLIFrameElement Interface" on page 150](#)

## AC.3 DVB-HTML event host objects

### AC.3.1 Object DVBLifecycleEvent

DVBLifecycleEvent has the all the properties and methods of the DOMEvent object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

The DVBLifecycleEvent object has the following properties:

**detail** : this readonly property is of type Number

The DVBHTMLAnchorElement object has the following methods:

**initDVBLifecycleEvent(typeArg, canBubbleArg, cancelableArg, detailArg):** This method has no return value.

The **typeArg** parameter is of type String

The **canBubbleArg** parameter is of type Boolean

The **cancelableArg** parameter is of type Boolean

The **detailArg** parameter is of type Number

See:

- [8.11.2.2.1, "Interface DVBLifecycleEvent" on page 134](#)

## AC.4 DVB-HTML environment host objects

### AC.4.1 Navigator Object

**appCodeName**: this read-only property is of type String ;

**appName**: this read-only property is of type String ;

**appVersion**: this read-only property is of type String ;

**userAgent**: this read-only property is of type String ;

See:

- [8.11.7.2.1, "Navigator Object" on page 159](#)

### AC.4.2 Window Object

Window object has the all the properties and methods defined below.

The Window object has the following properties:

**document**: this read-only property is of type DVBHTMLDocument ;

**DOMImplementation**: this read-only property is of type DVBDOMImplementation ;

**frames**: this read-only property is of type DVBHTMLCollection ;

**length**: this read-only property is of type Number

**location**: this property is of type Location ;

**name**: this read-only property is of type String ;

**navigator**: this read-only property is of type Navigator

**parent**: this read-only property is of type Window ;

**window**: this read-only property is of type Window

**self**: this read-only property is of type Window ;

**status**: this property is of type String ;

**defaultStatus**: this property is of type String ;

**top**: this read-only property is of type Window

The Window object has the following methods:

**clearTimeout(timerId)**: This method has no return value

The parameter **timerId** is of type Number

**open(url, name, features)**: This method returns a Window object

The parameter **url** is of type String

The parameter **name** is of type String

The parameter **features** is of type String

**setTimeout(statement, delay)**: This method returns a Number

The **statement** parameter is of type String

The **delay** parameter is of type Number

See:

- [8.11.7.2.2, "Window object" on page 159](#)

### AC.4.3 Location object

:Location has the all the properties and methods defined below.

The Location object has the following properties:

**hash**; This property is of type String

**host**; This property is of type String

**hostname**; This property is of type String

**href**; This property is of type String

**pathname**; This property is of type String

**port**; This property is of type String

**protocol**; This property is of type String

**search**; This property is of type String

See:

- [8.11.7.2.3, "Location object." on page 162](#)

## AC.5 DVB-HTML CSS host objects

### AC.5.1 DVBCSSInlineStyle

The DVBElement object for elements supporting the 'style' attribute has the additional properties:

**style**: This read-only property is of type CSS2Properties

See:

- [8.11.8.1.1, "DVBCSSInlineStyle" on page 162](#)

### AC.5.2 DVBCSSStyle

The DVBElement object for the root element in a top level document has the additional properties:

**viewport**: This read-only property is of type DVBCSSViewportRule

See:

- [8.11.8.1.2, "DVBCSSStyle" on page 163](#)

### AC.5.3 DVBCSSViewportRule

DVBCSSviewportRule has the all the properties and methods of the CSSRule object as well as the properties and methods defined below.

**style:** This read-only property is of type DVBCSSViewportProperties

See:

- [8.11.8.1.3, "DVBCSSViewportRule" on page 163](#)

### AC.5.4 DVBCSSViewportProperties

DVBCSSViewportProperties has the following properties:

**pseudoClass:** This property is of type String

**area:** This property is of type String

**backgroundVideoTransform:** This property is of type Array of String

**backgroundVideo:** This property is of type Array of String

**backgroundVideoPreserveAspect:** This property is of type Array of String

**backgroundVideoClip:** This property is of type Array of String

**backgroundVideoRectangle:** This property is of type Array of String

**background:** This property is of type String

**backgroundImageRectangle:** This property is of type String

**initial:** This property is of type String

**verticalResolution:** This property is of type Number

**horizontalResolution:** This property is of type Number

**scene:** This property is of type String"

See:

- [8.11.8.1.4, "DVBCSSViewportProperties" on page 163](#)



---

## Annex AD (normative): Support for DVB-HTML

### AD.1 Java bindings to DVB extensions

#### AD.1.1 The org.dvb.dom.dvbhtml package

All of these are in the package `org.dvb.dom.dvbhtml`.

##### AD.1.1.1 DVBHTMLButtonElement

```
public interface DVBHTMLButtonElement
    extends DVBHTMLFormElement {
    public String getAccessKey();
    public void setAccessKey(String key);
    public boolean getDisabled();
    public void setDisabled(boolean disabled);
    public DVBHTMLFormElement getForm();
    public String getName();
    public void setName(String name);
    public String getType();
    public void setValue(String value);
    public String getValue();
    public void blur();
    public void focus();
};
```

##### AD.1.1.2 DVBHTMLCollection

See:

- [8.11.4.5.1, "DVB-HTMLCollection Interface" on page 142](#)
- [AC.2.1, "Object DVBHTMLCollection" on page 925](#)

```
public interface DVBHTMLCollection {
//Methods
    public Node getIdentifiedItem(String name)
    public Node getItem(Number index)
    public Number getLength()
}
```

##### AD.1.1.3 DVBHTMLDocument

See:

- [8.11.4.5.2, "DVBHTMLDocument Interface" on page 143](#)
- [AC.2.2, "Object DVBHTMLDocument" on page 925](#)

```
public interface DVBHTMLDocument
    extends Document {
//Methods
    public DVBHTMLCollection getAnchors()
    public DVBHTMLFormElement getBody()
    public String getCookie()
    public String getDomain()
    public DVBHTMLCollection getForms()
    public DVBHTMLCollection getImages()
    public DVBHTMLCollection getLinks()
    public String getReference()
    public String getTitle()
    public void setTitle(String title)
    public String getURL()
    public void open()
}
```

```

    throws IllegalStateException
public void close()
    throws IllegalStateException
public void write(String text)
    throws IllegalStateException
public void writeIn(String text)
    throws IllegalStateException
}

```

#### AD.1.1.4 DVBHTMLElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.1, "DVBHTMLElement Interface" on page 145](#)
- [AC.2.3, "Object DVBHTMLElement" on page 926](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLElement
extends Element {
    public String getClassName()
    public void setClassName()
    public String getDir()
    public void setDir()
    public String getId()
    public void setId(String id)
    public String getLang()
    public void setLang(String lang)
    public String getTitle()
    public void setTitle(String)
}

```

#### AD.1.1.5 DVBHTMLFormElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.6, "DVBHTMLFormElement Interface" on page 148](#)
- [AC.2.4, "Object DVBHTMLFormElement" on page 927](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLFormElement
extends DVBHTMLElement {
    public String getAction()
    public void setAction(String action)
    public String getCharSet()
    public void setCharSet(String charset)
    public DVBHTMLCollection getElements()
    public String getEncType()
    public void setEncType(String action)
    public long getLength()
    public String getMethod()
    public void setMethod(String action)
    public String getTarget()
    public void setTarget(String action)
    public void submit()
    public void reset()
}

```

#### AD.1.1.6 DVBHTMLSelectElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.14, "DVBHTMLSelectElement Interface" on page 155](#)
- [AC.2.5, "Object DVBHTMLSelectElement" on page 927](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLSelectElement
extends DVBHTMLElement {
    public String getType()
}

```

```

public long getSelectedIndex()
public void setSelectedIndex(long index)
public String getValue()
public void setValue(String value)
public long getLength()
public DVBHTMLFormElement getForm()
public DVBHTMLCollection getOptions()
public boolean isDisabled()
public void setDisabled(Boolean disabled)
public boolean isMultiple()
public String getName()
public void setName(String name)
public long getSize()
public void setSize(long index)
public long getTabIndex()
public void setTabIndex(long index)
public void add(DVBHTMLFormElement element, DVBHTMLFormElement before)
    throws DOMException
public void remove(long index)
public void blur()
public void focus()
}

```

### AD.1.1.7 DVBHTMLOptionElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.13, "DVBHTMLOptionElement Interface" on page 154](#)
- [AC.2.6, "Object DVBHTMLOptionElement" on page 928](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLOptionElement
    extends DVBHTMLFormElement {
    public boolean isDefaultSelected()
    public void setDefaultSelected(boolean defaultselected)
    public boolean isSelected()
    public void setSelected(boolean selected)
    public boolean isDisabled()
    public void setDisabled(boolean disabled)
    public DVBHTMLFormElement getForm()
    public long getIndex()
    public String getLabel()
    public void setLabel(String label)
    public String getText()
    public void setText(String text)
    public String getValue()
    public void setValue(String value)
}

```

### AD.1.1.8 DVBHTMLInputElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.12, "DVBHTMLInputElement Interface" on page 152](#)
- [AC.2.7, "Object DVBHTMLInputElement" on page 928](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLInputElement
    extends DVBHTMLFormElement {
    public boolean isChecked()
    public void setChecked(boolean checked)
    public boolean isDefaultChecked()
    public void setDefaultChecked(boolean defaultchecked)
    public boolean isDisabled()
    public void setDisabled(boolean disabled)
    public boolean isReadOnly()
    public void setReadOnly(boolean readonly)
    public String getAccept()
    public void setAccept(String accept)
}

```

```

public String getAccessKey()
public void setAccessKey(String accesskey)
public String getAlt()
public void setAlt(String alt)
public String getDefaultValue()
public void setDefaultValue(String value)
public DVBHTMLFormElement getForm()
public long getMaxLength()
public void setMaxLength(long length)
public String getName()
public void setName(String name)
public String getSize()
public void setSize(String size)
public String getSrc()
public void setSrc(String src)
public String getType()
public void setType(String type)
public String getUseMap()
public String getValue()
public void setValue(String value)
public void blur()
public void click()
public void focus()
public void select()
}

```

#### AD.1.1.9 DVBHTMLTextAreaElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.15, "DVBHTMLTextAreaElement Interface" on page 156](#)
- [AC.2.8, "Object DVBHTMLTextAreaElement" on page 929](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLTextAreaElement
extends DVBHTMLFormElement {
public boolean isDisabled()
public void setDisabled(boolean disabled)
public String getAccessKey()
public void setAccessKey(String accesskey)
public String getDefaultValue()
public void setDefaultValue(String value)
public DVBHTMLFormElement getForm()
public String getName()
public void setName(String name)
public String getType()
public void setType(String type)
public String getValue()
public void setValue(String value)
}

```

#### AD.1.1.10 DVBHTMLAnchorElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.2, "DVBHTMLAnchorElement Interface" on page 146](#)
- [AC.2.10, "Object DVBHTMLAnchorElement" on page 930](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLAnchorElement
extends DVBHTMLFormElement {
public String getAccessKey()
public void setAccessKey(String accesskey)
public String getCharSet()
public void setCharSet(String charset)
public String getHref()
public void setHref(String href)
public String getHrefLang()
public void setHrefLang(String hreflang)
}

```

```

    public String getTarget()
    public void setTarget(String target)
    public String getType()
    public void setType(String type)
    public void blur()
    public void focus()
}

```

### AD.1.1.11 DVBHTMLImageElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.10, "DVBHTMLImageElement Interface" on page 150](#)
- [AC.2.11, "Object DVBHTMLImageElement" on page 931](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLImageElement
    extends DVBHTMLMLElement {
    public String getLowSrc()
    public void setLowSrc(String lowsrc)
    public String getAlt()
    public void setAlt(String alt)
    public String getHeight()
    public void setHeight(String height)
    public String getLongDesc()
    public void setLongDesc(String longdesc)
    public String getArc()
    public void setArc(String arc)
    public String getUsemap()
    public void setUseMap(String usemap)
    public String getWidth()
    public void setWidth(String width)
}

```

### AD.1.1.12 DVBHTMLObjectElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.11, "DVBHTMLObjectElement Interface" on page 151](#)
- [AC.2.12, "Object DVBHTMLObjectElement" on page 931](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLObjectElement
    extends DVBHTMLMLElement {
    public boolean isDeclare()
    public void setDeclare(boolean declare)
    public DVBHTMLFormElement getForm()
    public String getCode()
    public void setCode(String code)
    public String getArchive()
    public void setArchive(String archive)
    public String getCodeBase()
    public void setCodeBase(String codebase)
    public String getCodeType()
    public void setCodeType(String codetype)
    public String getData()
    public void setData(String data)
    public String getHeight()
    public void setHeight(String height)
    public String getStandby()
    public void setStandby(String standby)
    public long getTabIndex()
    public void setTabIndex(String index)
    public String getType()
    public void setType(String type)
    public String getUseMap()
    public void setUseMap(String usemap)
    public String getWidth()
    public void setWidth(String width)
}

```

```

    public Document getContentDocument()
}

```

### AD.1.1.13 DVBHTMLMapElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.3, "DVBHTMLMapElement Interface" on page 146](#)
- [AC.2.13, "Object DVBHTMLMapElement" on page 932](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLMapElement
    extends DVBHTMLMElement {
    public DVBHTMLCollection getAreas()
}

```

### AD.1.1.14 DVBHTMLAreaElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.4, "DVBHTMLAreaElement Interface" on page 147](#)
- [AC.2.14, "Object DVBHTMLAreaElement" on page 932](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLAreaElement
    extends DVBHTMLMElement {
    public boolean isNoHref()
    public void setNoHref(boolean nohref)
    public String getAccessKey()
    public void setAccessKey(String accesskey)
    public String getAlt()
    public void setAlt(String alt)
    public String getHref()
    public void setHref(String href)
    public String getTarget()
    public void setTarget(String target)
}

```

### AD.1.1.15 DVBHTMLFrameSetElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.8, "DVBHTMLFrameSetElement Interface" on page 150](#)
- [AC.2.15, "Object DVBHTMLFrameSetElement" on page 932](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLFrameSetElement
    extends DVBHTMLMElement {
    public String getCols()
    public void setCols(String cols)
    public String getRows()
    public void setRows(String rows)
}

```

### AD.1.1.16 DVBHTMLFrameElement

See:

- [8.11.4.6.7, "DVBHTMLFrameElement Interface" on page 149](#)
- [AC.2.16, "Object DVBHTMLFrameElement" on page 932](#)

```

public interface DVBHTMLFrameElement
    extends DVBHTMLMElement {
    public Document getContentDocument()
    public String getFrameBorder()
}

```

```

public void setFrameBorder(String border)
public String getLongDesc()
public void setLongDesc(String longdesc)
public String getMarginHeight()
public void setMarginHeight(String marginheight)
public String getMarginWidth()
public void setMarginWidth(String marginwidth)
public String getScrolling()
public void setScrolling(String scrolling)
public String getSrc()
public void setSrc(String src)
}

```

### AD.1.1.17 DVBHTMLIFrameElement

See:

- 8.11.4.6.9, "DVBHTMLIFrameElement Interface" on page 150
- AC.2.17, "Object DVBHTMLIFrameElement" on page 933

```

public interface DVBHTMLIFrameElement
extends DVBHTMLIElement {
public String getAlign()
public void setAlign(String align)
public Document getContentDocument()
public String setFrameBorder()
public void setFrameBorder(String border)
public String getHeight()
public void setHeight(String height)
public String getLongDesc()
public void setLongDesc(String longdesc)
public String getMarginHeight()
public void setMarginHeight(String marginheight)
public String getMarginWidth()
public void setMarginWidth(String marginwidth)
public String getName()
public void setName(String name)
public String getScrolling()
public void setScrolling(String scrolling)
public String getSrc()
public void setSrc(String src)
public String getWidth()
public void setWidth(String width)
}

```

## AD.1.2 The org.dvb.dom.css package

All of these are in the package `org.dvb.dom.css`.

### AD.1.2.1 DVBCSSInlineStyle

This interface shall be implemented by objects that implement the `org.w3c.dom.Element` interface and which represent elements that support the style attribute.

```

public interface DVBCSSInlineStyle {
public CSS2Properties getStyle();
};

```

See:

- 8.11.8.1.1, "DVBCSSInlineStyle" on page 162
- AC.5.1, "DVBCSSInlineStyle" on page 935

### AD.1.2.2 DVBCSSStyle

This interface shall be implemented by objects that implement the `org.w3c.dom.Element` interface that represent the root element of a document.

```
public interface DVBCSSStyle {
    public DVBCSSViewportRule getViewport();
};
```

See:

- [8.11.8.1.2, "DVBCSSStyle" on page 163](#)
- [AC.5.2, "DVBCSSStyle" on page 935](#)

### AD.1.2.3 DVBCSSViewportRule

```
public interface DVBCSSViewportRule extends org.w3c.dom.CSSRule {
    public DVBCSSViewportProperties getStyle();
};
```

See:

- [8.11.8.1.3, "DVBCSSViewportRule" on page 163](#)
- [AC.5.3, "DVBCSSViewportRule" on page 936](#)

### AD.1.2.4 DVBCSSViewportProperties

```
public interface DVBCSSViewportProperties {
    public String getPseudoClass();
    public String getArea();
    public void setArea(String area);
    public String[] getBackgroundVideoTransform();
    public void setBackgroundVideoTransform(String transform[]);
    public String[] getBackgroundVideo();
    public void setBackgroundVideo(String video[]);
    public String[] getBackgroundVideoPreserveAspect();
    public void setBackgroundVideoPreserveAspect(String aspect[]);
    public String[] getBackgroundVideoClip();
    public void setBackgroundVideoClip(String clip[]);
    public String[] getBackgroundVideoRectangle();
    public void setBackgroundVideoRectangle(String rectangle[]);
    public String getBackground();
    public void setBackground(String background);
    public String getBackgroundImageRectangle();
    public void setBackgroundImageRectangle(String rect);
    public String getInitial();
    public void setInitial(String initial);
    public int getVerticalResolution();
    public void setVerticalResolution(int res);
    public int getHorizontalResolution();
    public void setHorizontalResolution(int res);
    public String getScene();
    public void setScene(String scene);
};
```

See:

- [8.11.8.1.4, "DVBCSSViewportProperties" on page 163](#)
- [AC.5.4, "DVBCSSViewportProperties" on page 936](#)



## AD.1.3 The org.dvb.dom.environment package

All of these are in the package org.dvb.dom.environment.

### AD.1.3.1 Navigator

See:

- [8.11.7.2.1, "Navigator Object" on page 159](#)
- [AC.4.1, "Navigator Object" on page 934](#)

```
public class Navigator
  extends java.lang.Object {
  public Navigator()
  public Navigator(String appname, String appcodename,
    String appversion, String useragent)
  public String getAppCodeName()
  public String getAppName()
  public String getAppVersion()
  public String getUserAgent()
}
```

### AD.1.3.2 Window

See:

- [8.11.7.2.2, "Window object" on page 159](#)
- [AC.4.2, "Window Object" on page 934](#)

```
public class Window
  extends java.lang.Object {
  public Window()
  public Window(DVBHTMLDocument document, DVBDOMImpl impl,
    DVBHTMLCollection frames, long length, Navigator navigator,
    Window parent, Window window, Window top)
  public String getDefaultStatus()
  public void setDefaultStatus(String defaultstatus)
  public DVBHTMLDocument getDocument()
  public DVBDOMImpl getDVBDOMImpl()
  public DVBHTMLCollection getFrames()
  public long getLength()
  public Location getLocation()
  public void setLocation(Location location)
  public String getName()
  public void setName(String name)
  public Navigator getNavigator()
  public Window getParent()
  public Window getWindow()
  public Window getSelf()
  public String getStatus()
  public void setStatus(String status)
  public Window getTop()
  public void open(String url, String name, String features)
}
```

### AD.1.3.3 Location

See:

- [8.11.7.2.3, "Location object." on page 162](#)
- [AC.4.3, "Location object" on page 935](#)

```
public class Location
  extends java.lang.Object {
  public Location()
```

```
public String getNash()
public void setHash(String hash)
public String getHost()
public void setHost(String host)
public String getHostName()
public void setHostName(String hostname)
public String getHRef()
public void setHRef(String href)
public String getPathName()
public void setPathName(String pathname)
public String getPort()
public void setPort(String port)
public String getProtocol()
public void setProtocol(String protocol)
public String getSearch()
public void setSearch(String search)
}
```

## AD.1.4 The org.dvb.dom.event package

All of these are in the package org.dvb.dom.event.

### AD.1.4.1 DVBLifecycleEvent

See:

- [8.11.2.2.1, "Interface DVBLifecycleEvent" on page 134](#)
- [AC.3.1, "Object DVBLifecycleEvent" on page 933](#)

```
public class DVBLifecycleEvent
extends java.util.event {
public DVBLifecycleEvent()
public DVBLifecycleEvent(String typearg, boolean canbubblearg,
boolean candisablearg, long detailarg)
public long getDetail()
}
```

# Package org.dvb.dom.bootstrap

## Description

Provides the entry point to the W3C DOM APIs for Java applications.

## Class Summary

### Interfaces

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <a href="#">DocumentAction</a>          | DocumentAction is used for an action that modifies a W3C Document.  |
| <a href="#">DocumentFactory</a>         | DocumentFactory contains bootstrap methods for applications embedded in a document to access the document object model of the document in which they are contained. |
| <a href="#">MultipleDocumentsAction</a> | MultipleDocumentAction is used for an action that modifies zero or more W3C Document instances.   |

# org.dvb.dom.bootstrap DocumentAction

## Declaration

```
public interface DocumentAction
```

## Description

DocumentAction is used for an action that modifies a W3C Document. When an application wishes to access a Document, it creates an instance of a class that implements DocumentAction, and passes this instance to the system. The system then calls back to the user code via the DocumentAction interface.

## See Also:

[MultipleDocumentsAction](#), [DocumentFactory](#)

## Methods

---

### run(Document)

```
public void run(org.w3c.dom.Document doc)
```

Access and/or modify a W3C DOM Document. All modifications must take place during this callback. The results of retaining and using DOM references outside the context of this callback are undefined.

#### Parameters:

`doc` - the DOM document to modify

# org.dvb.dom.bootstrap DocumentFactory

## Declaration

```
public interface DocumentFactory
```

## Description

DocumentFactory contains bootstrap methods for applications embedded in a document to access the document object model of the document in which they are contained.

## Since:

MHP 1.1

## Fields

---

### DOM

```
public static final java.lang.String DOM
```

The property string to use with `XletContext.getXletProperty` in order to obtain the DocumentFactory for this Xlet (if one exists).

## Methods

---

### performAction(DocumentAction)

```
public void performAction(org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentAction act)
```

Perform an action on the document that contains the Xlet controlled by the given XletContext.

#### Parameters:

`act` - The action to perform. It will be called by the system either synchronously, or on a system thread.

---

### performActionOnFrames(String[], MultipleDocumentsAction)

```
public void performActionOnFrames(java.lang.String[] names,  
    org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.MultipleDocumentsAction act)
```

Perform an action on a set of documents, each contained in a frame that is a part of the same application as the Xlet controlled by the given XletContext.

#### Parameters:

`names` - The names of the desired frames.

`act` - The action to perform. It will be called by the system either synchronously, or on a system thread.

---

**performActionReadOnly(DocumentAction)**

```
public void performActionReadOnly(org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentAction act)
```

Perform an action on the document that contains the Xlet controlled by the given XletContext. The action is called without any ability to modify the DOM.

**Parameters:**

*act* - The action to perform. It will be called by the system either synchronously, or on a system thread. Attempts by this action to modify the DOM shall fail.

# org.dvb.dom.bootstrap MultipleDocumentsAction

## Declaration

```
public interface MultipleDocumentsAction
```

## Description

MultipleDocumentAction is used for an action that modifies zero or more W3C Document instances. When an application wishes to access a number of Documents simultaneously, it creates an instance of a class that implements MultipleDocumentAction, and passes this instance to the system. The system then calls back to the user code via the MultipleDocumentAction interface.

## See Also:

[DocumentAction](#), [DocumentFactory](#)

## Methods

---

### run(Document[])

```
public void run(org.w3c.dom.Document[] docs)
```

Access and/or modify a set of W3C DOM Documents. All modifications must take place during this callback. The results of retaining and using DOM references outside the context of this callback are undefined.

#### Parameters:

`docs` - The array of documents on which to operate. If a requested document is not found, the corresponding entry in this array will be null.

# Package org.dvb.dom.inner

## Description

Provides support for embedding DVB-HTML applications within the user interface of a DVB-J application.

## Class Summary

### Classes

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <code>HTMLApplication</code>                     | Encapsulates the information needed to define a DVB-HTML application.                                   |
| <code>HTMLInnerApplication-<br/>Container</code> | Represents embedding of an DVB-HTML inner application within the user interface of a DVB-J application. |



# org.dvb.dom.inner HTMLApplication

## Declaration

public class **HTMLApplication** extends `org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplication`

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplication
|
+--org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLApplication
```

## Description

Encapsulates the information needed to define a DVB-HTML application.

## Constructors

---

### HTMLApplication(URL, String, String)

```
public HTMLApplication(java.net.URL physicalRoot, java.lang.String initialPathBytes,
    java.lang.String parameters)
```

Constructor for instances of the class. The semantics of these shall be as defined in the main body of this specification for the equivalent information when provided through an AIT.

#### Parameters:

`physicalRoot` - the physical root of the application entry point.

`initialPathBytes` - a string specifying the URL path component to the entry point document. This path is relative to the root defined in the `physicalRoots` parameter.

`parameters` - the string that is appended to the application initial path as parameters

---

### HTMLApplication(URL, String, String, String[], String[])

```
public HTMLApplication(java.net.URL physicalRoot, java.lang.String initialPathBytes,
    java.lang.String parameters, java.lang.String[] label,
    java.lang.String[] regex)
```

Constructor for instances of the class. The semantics of these shall be as defined in the main body of this specification for the equivalent information when provided through an AIT.

#### Parameters:

`physicalRoot` - the physical root of the application entry point.

`initialPathBytes` - a string specifying the URL path component to the entry point document. This path is relative to the root defined in the `physicalRoots` parameter.

`parameters` - the string that is appended to the application initial path as parameters

`label` - an array of one or more strings specifying a label that is associated with the set of data identified by the regular expression. This label can be used for pre-fetching in a transport specific manner.

`regex` - an array of one or more strings specifying a regular expressions that can generate all URLs that are in the domain of the application.

#### Throws:

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if either the `regex` or `label` parameters are an array of length zero or if the lengths of these two arrays are not the same

# org.dvb.dom.inner HTMLInnerApplicationContainer

## Declaration

```
public class HTMLInnerApplicationContainer extends
    org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer

java.lang.Object
|
+--java.awt.Component
    |
    +--org.havi.ui.HComponent
        |
        +--org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer
            |
            +--org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLInnerApplicationContainer
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

org.havi.ui.HMatteLayer, org.havi.ui.HNavigable,  
org.havi.ui.HNavigationInputPreferred, java.awt.image.ImageObserver,  
java.awt.MenuContainer, java.io.Serializable, org.dvb.ui.TestOpacity

## Description

Represents embedding of an DVB-HTML inner application within the user interface of a DVB-J application.

## Constructors

---

### HTMLInnerApplicationContainer(HTMLApplication)

```
public HTMLInnerApplicationContainer(org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLApplication a)
    throws IOException
```

Construct an instance of this class with a DVB-HTML application as its content. The instance is initialised to present the entry point document of the application.

#### Parameters:

a - the DVB-HTML application

#### Throws:

java.io.IOException - if an error occurred while reading the code or data for the inner application

## Methods

---

### performAction(DocumentAction)

```
public void performAction(org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentAction act)
```

Perform an action on the DVB-HTML document.

#### Parameters:

act - The action to perform. It will be called by the system either synchronously, or on a system thread.

---

## **Annex AĒ (normative): Inner Applications**

# Package org.dvb.application.inner

## Description

Provides support for embedding other interactive applications within the user interface of a DVB-J application.

| Class Summary                             |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                         |   |
| <a href="#">DVBScene</a>                  | Represents various features which are common to the top level Container of applications whether running stand-alone or embedded in a DVB-HTML application.    |
| <a href="#">InnerApplicationListener</a>  | Listener for events related to inner applications   |
| <b>Classes</b>                            |   |
| <a href="#">InnerApplication</a>          | Encapsulates the information needed to define an inner application.   |
| <a href="#">InnerApplicationContainer</a> | Represents embedding of an inner application within the user interface of a DVB-J application.  |
| <a href="#">InnerApplicationEvent</a>     | InnerApplicationEvent is used to notify applications which have registered interest in events coming from inner applications that such an event has happened. |

# org.dvb.application.inner DVBScene

## Declaration

```
public interface DVBScene
```

## Description

Represents various features which are common to the top level Container of applications whether running stand-alone or embedded in a DVB-HTML application. All integer constants used in this class are those defined in the class `org.havi.ui.HScene`.

## Methods

---

### addWindowListener(WindowListener)

```
public void addWindowListener(java.awt.event.WindowListener wl)
```

Add a listener to receive any `java.awt.event.WindowEvents` sent from this `DVBScene`. If the listener has already been added further calls will add further references to the listener, which will then receive multiple copies of a single event.

**Parameters:**

`wl` - The `java.awt.event.WindowListener` to be notified of any `java.awt.event.WindowEvents`.

---

### enableShortcuts(boolean)

```
public void enableShortcuts(boolean enable)
```

Enables or disables all short cuts that are currently set on the Scene. To enable or disable a single shortcut use `addShortcut` or `removeShortcut`.

Note `enableShortcuts(false)` does not remove existing added `DVBScene` shortcuts - they are merely disabled and may be subsequently re-enabled with `enableShortcuts(true)`.

**Parameters:**

`enable` - a value of true indicates all shortcuts are to be enabled, and a value of false indicates all shortcuts are to be disabled.

---

### getAllShortcutKeycodes()

```
public int[] getAllShortcutKeycodes()
```

Returns all keycodes added in the `DVBScene` as shortcuts.

**Returns:**

all keycodes added in the `DVBScene` as shortcuts, there are no ordering guarantees.

---

### getBackgroundImage()

```
public java.awt.Image getBackgroundImage()
```

Retrieve any image used as a background for this `DVBScene`.

**Returns:**

an image used as a background, or `null` if no image is set. Note that depending on the current render mode any image set may not actually be rendered.

**See Also:**

[setRenderMode\(int\)](#)

---

**getBackgroundMode()**

```
public int getBackgroundMode()
```

Get the background mode of this [DVBScene](#). The return value specifies whether the paint method should draw the background (i.e. a rectangle filling the bounds of the [DVBScene](#)).

**Returns:**

one of `NO_BACKGROUND_FILL` or `BACKGROUND_FILL`.

---

**getFocusOwner()**

```
public java.awt.Component getFocusOwner()
```

Returns the child component of this [DVBScene](#) which has focus if and only if this [DVBScene](#) is active.

**Returns:**

the component with focus, or `null` if no children have focus assigned to them.

---

**getRenderMode()**

```
public int getRenderMode()
```

Get the rendering mode of any background image associated with this [DVBScene](#).

**Returns:**

the rendering mode, one of `IMAGE_NONE`, `IMAGE_STRETCH`, `IMAGE_CENTER` or `IMAGE_TILE`.

---

**getShortcutComponent(int)**

```
public org.havi.ui.HActionable getShortcutComponent(int keyCode)
```

Retrieve the `HActionable` associated with the specified shortcut key.

**Parameters:**

`keyCode` - the shortcut key code to be queried for an associated `HActionable`.

**Returns:**

the `HActionable` associated with the specified key if `keyCode` is a valid shortcut key for this [DVBScene](#), `null` otherwise.

---

**getShortcutKeycode(HActionable)**

```
public int getShortcutKeycode(org.havi.ui.HActionable comp)
```

Returns the keycode associated with the specified `HActionable` component.

**Parameters:**

`comp` - the `HActionable` to return the keycode that it is associated with.

**Returns:**

the keycode associated with the specified `HActionable` component, if it is currently a valid shortcut "target", otherwise return `java.awt.event.KeyEvent#VK_UNDEFINED`.

---

**isDoubleBuffered()**

```
public boolean isDoubleBuffered()
```

Returns `true` if all the drawing done during the update and paint methods for this specific `DVBScene` object is automatically double buffered.

**Returns:**

`true` if all the drawing done during the update and paint methods for this specific `DVBScene` object is automatically double buffered, or `false` if drawing is not double buffered. The default value for the double buffering setting is platform-specific.

---

**isEnabledShortcuts()**

```
public boolean isEnabledShortcuts()
```

Returns the status of all short cuts that are currently set on the `DVBScene`.

**Returns:**

`true` if shortcuts are enabled, `false` otherwise.

**See Also:**

`enableShortcuts(boolean)`

---

**isOpaque()**

```
public boolean isOpaque()
```

Returns `true` if the entire `DVBScene` area, as given by the `java.awt.Component#getBounds` method, is fully opaque, i.e. its paint method (or surrogate methods) guarantee that all pixels are painted in an opaque `Color`.

By default, the return value depends on the value of the current background mode, as set by the `setBackgroundMode` method. The return value should be overridden by subclasses that can guarantee full opacity. The consequences of an invalid overridden value are implementation specific.

**Returns:**

`true` if all the pixels within the area given by the `java.awt.Component#getBounds` method are fully opaque, i.e. its paint method (or surrogate methods) guarantee that all pixels are painted in an opaque `Color`, otherwise `false`.

---

**isVisible()**

```
public boolean isVisible()
```

Determines if the `DVBScene` (or more properly its added child components) is Visible. Initially an `DVBScene` is invisible.

**Returns:**

`true` if the `DVBScene` is visible; `false` otherwise.

---

**removeShortcut(int)**

```
public void removeShortcut(int keyCode)
```

Removes the specified short-cut key. if the specified short-cut key is not registered, the method has no effect

**Parameters:**

`keyCode` - The keycode that represents the short cut

---

**removeWindowListener(WindowListener)**

```
public void removeWindowListener(java.awt.event.WindowListener wl)
```

Remove a listener so that it no longer receives any `java.awt.event.WindowEvents`. If the specified listener is not registered, the method has no effect. If multiple references to a single listener have been registered it should be noted that this method will only remove one reference per call.

**Parameters:**

`wl` - The `java.awt.event.WindowListener` to be removed from notification of any `java.awt.event.WindowEvents`.

---

**setBackgroundImage(Image)**

```
public void setBackgroundImage(java.awt.Image image)
```

Set an image which shall be painted in the background of the `DVBScene`, after the background has been drawn according to the current mode set with `setBackgroundMode`, but before any children are drawn. The image is rendered according to the current render mode set with `setRenderMode`.

Note that the use of a background image in this way may affect the return value of the `isOpaque` method, depending on the image and the current rendering mode.

**Parameters:**

`image` - the image to be used as a background. If this parameter is `null` any current image is removed. Note that depending on the current render mode any image set may not actually be rendered.

**See Also:**

[setRenderMode\(int\)](#)

---

**setBackgroundMode(int)**

```
public void setBackgroundMode(int mode)
```

Set the background mode of this `DVBScene`. The value specifies whether the paint method should draw the background (i.e. a rectangle filling the bounds of the `DVBScene`).

Note that the background mode will affect the return value of the `isOpaque` method, depending on the value of the `mode` parameter. A fill mode of `BACKGROUND_FILL` implies that `isOpaque` must return `true`.

**Parameters:**

`mode` - one of `NO_BACKGROUND_FILL` or `BACKGROUND_FILL`. If `mode` is not a valid value, an `IllegalArgumentException` will be thrown.

---

**setRenderMode(int)**

```
public boolean setRenderMode(int mode)
```

Set the rendering mode of any background image associated with this `DVBScene`.

Note that the minimum requirement is to support only the `IMAGE_NONE` mode. Support of the other modes is platform and implementation specific.

**Parameters:**

`mode` - the rendering mode, one of `IMAGE_NONE`, `IMAGE_STRETCH`, `IMAGE_CENTER` or `IMAGE_TILE`.

**Returns:**

`true` if the mode was set successfully, `false` if the mode is not supported by the platform.



# org.dvb.application.inner InnerApplication

## Declaration

```
public abstract class InnerApplication
```

```
java.lang.Object
```

```
|
```

```
+--org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplication
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLApplication
```

## Description

Encapsulates the information needed to define an inner application.

## Constructors

---

### InnerApplication()

```
protected InnerApplication()
```

A protected constructor. This shall not be used by inter-operable applications.

# org.dvb.application.inner InnerApplicationContainer

## Declaration

```
public abstract class InnerApplicationContainer extends org.havi.ui.HComponent implements
    org.havi.ui.HNavigable
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.awt.Component
    |
    +--org.havi.ui.HComponent
        |
        +--org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
org.havi.ui.HMatteLayer, org.havi.ui.HNavigable,
org.havi.ui.HNavigationInputPreferred, java.awt.image.ImageObserver,
java.awt.MenuContainer, java.io.Serializable, org.dvb.ui.TestOpacity
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLInnerApplicationContainer
```

## Description

Represents embedding of an inner application within the user interface of a DVB-J application. The inner application shall be started when the object of this class is constructed. The behaviour of instances of this class when an inner application exits is either implementation or inner application format dependent.

When an instance of this class gains input focus, shall gain the input focus. The meaning of this is specific to the format of the inner application concerned. Inner applications are allowed to consume the events VK\_UP, VK\_DOWN, VK\_LEFT and VK\_RIGHT. While this is happening, the HNavigable focus management shall be disabled and the actions defined by `setFocusTraversal` shall not happen. The mechanisms by which inner applications start and stop consuming these events are specific to the content format of the inner application.

## Constructors

---

### InnerApplicationContainer(InnerApplication)

```
protected InnerApplicationContainer(org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplication a)
    throws IOException
```

Construct an instance of this class with a particular inner application as its content. This shall not be used by inter-operable applications.

#### Parameters:

a - the inner application

#### Throws:

`java.io.IOException` - if an error occurred while reading the code or data for the inner application

## Methods

---

### addHFocusListener(HFocusListener)

```
public void addHFocusListener(org.havi.ui.event.HFocusListener l)
```

Adds the specified `HFocusListener` to receive `HFocusEvent` events sent from this `HNavigable`. If the listener has already been added further calls will add further references to the listener, which will then receive multiple copies of a single event.

**Specified By:**

`addHFocusListener` in interface `HNavigable`

**Parameters:**

l - the `HFocusListener` to add

---

### addInnerApplicationListener(InnerApplicationListener)

```
public void addInnerApplicationListener(org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationListener l)
```

Add a listener for events when the inner application exits.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener to be notified when the inner application exits

---

### getGainFocusSound()

```
public org.havi.ui.HSound getGainFocusSound()
```

Get the sound associated with the gain focus event.

**Specified By:**

`getGainFocusSound` in interface `HNavigable`

**Returns:**

The sound played when the component gains focus. If no sound is associated with gaining focus, then null shall be returned.

---

### getLoseFocusSound()

```
public org.havi.ui.HSound getLoseFocusSound()
```

Get the sound associated with the lost focus event.

**Specified By:**

`getLoseFocusSound` in interface `HNavigable`

**Returns:**

The sound played when the component loses focus. If no sound is associated with losing focus, then null shall be returned.

---

### getMove(int)

```
public org.havi.ui.HNavigable getMove(int keyCode)
```

Provides the `HNavigable` object that is navigated to when a particular key is pressed.

**Specified By:**

`getMove` in interface `HNavigable`

---

**Parameters:**

`keyCode` - The key code of the pressed key.

**Returns:**

Returns the `HNavigable` object, or if no `HNavigable` is associated with the `keyCode` then returns `null`.

---

**getNavigationKeys()**

```
public int[] getNavigationKeys()
```

Retrieve the set of key codes which this component maps to navigation targets.

**Specified By:**

`getNavigationKeys` in interface `HNavigationInputPreferred`

**Returns:**

an array of key codes, or `null` if no navigation targets are set on this component.

---

**isSelected()**

```
public boolean isSelected()
```

Indicates if this component has focus.

**Specified By:**

`isSelected` in interface `HNavigable`

**Returns:**

`true` if the component has focus, otherwise returns `false`.

---

**processHFocusEvent(HFocusEvent)**

```
public void processHFocusEvent(org.havi.ui.event.HFocusEvent evt)
```

Process an `HFocusEvent` sent to this `HNavigationInputPreferred`.

**Specified By:**

`processHFocusEvent` in interface `HNavigationInputPreferred`

**Parameters:**

`evt` - the `HFocusEvent` to process.

---

**removeHFocusListener(HFocusListener)**

```
public void removeHFocusListener(org.havi.ui.event.HFocusListener l)
```

Removes the specified `HFocusListener` so that it no longer receives `HFocusEvent` events from this `HNavigable`. If the specified listener is not registered, the method has no effect. If multiple references to a single listener have been registered it should be noted that this method will only remove one reference per call.

**Specified By:**

`removeHFocusListener` in interface `HNavigable`

**Parameters:**

`l` - the `HFocusListener` to remove

---

**removeInnerApplicationListener(InnerApplicationListener)**

```
public void
    removeInnerApplicationListener(org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationListe
        ner l)
```

Remove a listener for events when the inner application exits.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener to be removed

---

**setFocusTraversal(HNavigable, HNavigable, HNavigable, HNavigable)**

```
public void setFocusTraversal(org.havi.ui.HNavigable up, org.havi.ui.HNavigable down,
    org.havi.ui.HNavigable left, org.havi.ui.HNavigable right)
```

Set the focus control for an `HNavigable` component. Note `setFocusTraversal` is a convenience function for application programmers where a standard up, down, left and right focus traversal between components is required.

Note `setFocusTraversal` is equivalent to multiple calls to `setMove`, where the key codes `VK_UP`, `VK_DOWN`, `VK_LEFT`, `VK_RIGHT` are used.

Note that this API does not prevent the creation of “isolated” `HNavigable` components — authors should endeavor to avoid confusing the user.

**Specified By:**

`setFocusTraversal` in interface `HNavigable`

**Parameters:**

up - The `HNavigable` component to move to, when the user generates a `VK_UP` `KeyEvent`. If there is no `HNavigable` component to move “up” to, then null should be specified.

down - The `HNavigable` component to move to, when the user generates a `VK_DOWN` `KeyEvent`. If there is no `HNavigable` component to move “down” to, then null should be specified.

left - The `HNavigable` component to move to, when the user generates a `VK_LEFT` `KeyEvent`. If there is no `HNavigable` component to move “left” to, then null should be specified.

right - The `HNavigable` component to move to, when the user generates a `VK_RIGHT` `KeyEvent`. If there is no `HNavigable` component to move “right” to, then null should be specified.

---

**setGainFocusSound(HSound)**

```
public void setGainFocusSound(org.havi.ui.HSound sound)
```

Associate a sound with gaining focus, i.e. when the `HNavigable` receives a `java.awt.event.FocusEvent` event of type `FOCUS_GAINED`. This sound will start to be played when an object implementing this interface gains focus. It is not guaranteed to be played to completion. If the object implementing this interface loses focus before the audio completes playing, the audio will be truncated. Applications wishing to ensure the audio is always played to completion must implement special logic to slow down the focus transitions.

By default, an `HNavigable` object does not have any gain focus sound associated with it.

Note that the ordering of playing sounds is dependent on the order of the focus lost, gained events.

**Specified By:**

`setGainFocusSound` in interface `HNavigable`

**Parameters:**

`sound` - the sound to be played, when the component gains focus. If sound content is already set, the original content is replaced. To remove the sound specify a null `HSound`.

---

**setLoseFocusSound(HSound)**

```
public void setLoseFocusSound(org.havi.ui.HSound sound)
```

Associate a sound with losing focus, i.e. when the `HNavigable` receives a `java.awt.event.FocusEvent` event of type `FOCUS_LOST`. This sound will start to be played when an object implementing this interface loses focus. It is not guaranteed to be played to completion. It is implementation dependent whether and when this sound will be truncated by any gain focus sound played by the next object to gain focus.

By default, an `HNavigable` object does not have any lose focus sound associated with it.

Note that the ordering of playing sounds is dependent on the order of the focus lost, gained events.

**Specified By:**

`setLoseFocusSound` in interface `HNavigable`

**Parameters:**

`sound` - the sound to be played, when the component loses focus. If sound content is already set, the original content is replaced. To remove the sound specify a null `HSound`.

---

**setMove(int, HNavigable)**

```
public void setMove(int keyCode, org.havi.ui.HNavigable target)
```

Defines the navigation path from the current `HNavigable` to another `HNavigable` when a particular key is pressed.

Note that `setFocusTraversal` is equivalent to multiple calls to `setMove`, where the key codes `VK_UP`, `VK_DOWN`, `VK_LEFT`, `VK_RIGHT` are used.

**Specified By:**

`setMove` in interface `HNavigable`

**Parameters:**

`keyCode` - The key code of the pressed key. Any numerical keycode is allowed, but the platform may not be able to generate all keycodes. Application authors should only use keys for which `HRcCapabilities.isSupported()` or `HKeyCapabilities.isSupported()` returns true.

`target` - The target `HNavigable` object that should be navigated to. If a target is to be removed from a particular navigation path, then `null` should be specified.

# org.dvb.application.inner InnerApplicationEvent

## Declaration

```
public class InnerApplicationEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

InnerApplicationEvent is used to notify applications which have registered interest in events coming from inner applications that such an event has happened.

## Constructors

---

### InnerApplicationEvent(InnerApplicationContainer)

```
public InnerApplicationEvent(org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer source)
```

Constructor for an event.

#### Parameters:

source - the InnerApplicationContainer which generated the event.

# org.dvb.application.inner InnerApplicationListener

## Declaration

```
public interface InnerApplicationListener
```

## Description

Listener for events related to inner applications

## Methods

---

### InnerApplicationExited(InnerApplicationEvent)

```
public void InnerApplicationExited(org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationEvent e)
```

Called when an inner application exits.

#### Parameters:

e - an event object encapsulating what happened



---

## **Annex AF (normative): Plug-in APIs**

# Package org.dvb.application.plugins

## Description

Provides support for inter-operable plugins in the MHP specification. The following classes and interfaces are intended for generic plug-ins and are not specific to any particular content format.

- InvalidApplicationException
- Plugin
- ApplicationSecurityContext

The following classes are intended specifically for DVB-HTML plug-ins.

- XletContainer
- XletSystemCall

| Class Summary                             |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                         |  |
| <code>InvocationHandler</code>            | <code>InvocationHandler</code> is the interface implemented by the <i>invocation handler</i> of a proxy instance.  |
| <code>Plugin</code>                       | This interface allows an application or service manager to control the lifecycle of applications being executed by an inter-operable plug-in.  |
| <b>Classes</b>                            |  |
| <code>ApplicationSecurityContext</code>   | This class represents the security context for an application whose permissions are defined by the MHP security model, in particular a permission request file.  |
| <code>Proxy</code>                        | <code>Proxy</code> provides static methods for creating dynamic proxy classes and instances, and it is also the superclass of all dynamic proxy classes created by those methods.  |
| <code>XletContainer</code>                | This class provides a container that can be embedded in a widget hierarchy, and can provide a container that can safely be used as the top-level container of an embedded Xlet.  |
| <code>XletSystemCall</code>               | This class permits user code to intercept certain system calls initiated by an embedded Xlet that need to be serviced by a support application.  |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                         |  |
| <code>InvalidApplicationException</code>  | Thrown if an application is not valid for execution by a plug-in.  |
| <code>UndeclaredThrowableException</code> | Thrown by a method invocation on a proxy instance if its invocation handler's <code>invoke</code> method throws a checked exception (a <code>Throwable</code> that is not assignable to <code>RuntimeException</code> or <code>Error</code> ) that is not assignable to any of the exception types declared in the <code>throws</code> clause of the method that was invoked on the proxy instance and dispatched to the invocation handler. |

# org.dvb.application.plugins ApplicationSecurityContext

## Declaration

```
public class ApplicationSecurityContext
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext
```

## Description

This class represents the security context for an application whose permissions are defined by the MHP security model, in particular a permission request file. One example of this is DVB-HTML applications managed by a plug-in application. This would also apply to applications in other content format where the permissions for that content format are signalled with MHP mechanisms and governed by the MHP security model.

## Constructors

---

### ApplicationSecurityContext(URL[], URL, AppID)

```
public ApplicationSecurityContext(java.net.URL[] path, java.net.URL entryPoint,
    org.dvb.application.AppID appID)
    throws IOException
```

Creates a new security context for an application whose code can be found on the path supplied, and whose entry point directory is as given. Under no circumstances will an application managed by a plug-in be given access to resources not available to the plug-in itself. This policy is reflected in the permissions granted to the `ApplicationSecurityContext`, as well as the permissions granted to any classes loaded by any class loaders managed by a security context.

If there is a permission request file in the directory identified by the `entryPoint`, it will be processed in the same way as the permission request file of a DVB-J application. i.e. reading it in, parsing it and taking account of the access rights granted by the user as defined under "General principles" in the main body of this specification.

#### Parameters:

- `path` - The search path for locating resources within the application.
- `entryPoint` - The directory containing the permission request file to use
- `appID` - the application ID which the application is to run under

#### Throws:

`IOException` - when there is an IO error reading in the permission request file or attempting to read in the permission request file or attempting to discover the existence of a permission request file.

`NullPointerException` - if `entryPoint` is null, if `path` is null, or if any element of `path` is null.

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if `path.length < 1`

`java.io.IOException`

## Methods

---

### checkPermission(Permission)

```
public void checkPermission(java.security.Permission p)
```

Throws a `SecurityException` if the requested access, specified by the given permission, is not permitted to the application or sub-application represented by this application security context object. The set of permissions granted to an entity is be a function of receiver policy, possibly influenced by user settings, application signer, and permission request file.

**Parameters:**

`p` - A permission object representing the resource for which access is being checked.

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `p` is null

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if this application has not been granted access to the resource represneted by `p`.

---

### createEmbeddedContext(URL[], Locator)

```
public org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext  
    createEmbeddedContext(java.net.URL[] path,  
        javax.tv.locator.Locator entryPoint)
```

Creates a context for an embedded part of an application, e.g. an Xlet embedded within a DVB-HTML page. The set of premissions granted to the application will be the same as the parent `ApplicationSecurityContext`.

**Parameters:**

`path` - The search path for locating resources within the application.

`entryPoint` - The resource of the entry point of this application.

**Returns:**

a context for the part of the application concerned

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `entryPoint` is null, if `path` is null, or if any element of `path` is null.

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if `path.length < 1`

---

### doPrivileged(PrivilegedAction)

```
public java.lang.Object doPrivileged(java.security.PrivilegedAction action)
```

Performs the specified `PrivilegedAction` with privileges enabled and restricted by the specified `AccessControlContext`. The action is performed with the intersection of the permissions possessed by the caller's protection domain, and those possessed by the domains represented by the specified `AccessControlContext`. If the action's run method throws an (unchecked) exception, it will propagate through this method.

**Parameters:**

`action` - the action to be performed.

**Returns:**

the value returned by the action's run method.

---

**getClassLoader(String[])**

```
public java.lang.ClassLoader getClassLoader(java.lang.String[] forbiddenPackages)
```

Get a classloader that is appropriate for loading classes for the application (or sub-application) represented by this application security context object. If this method is called more than once, the same instance will be returned.

It is important that embedded DVB-J code be prevented from accessing classes that implement the plug-in applicaiton. To this end, the plug-in may specify a list of forbidden packages. Classes loaded by the returned classloader will be forbidden from loading or accessing classes in the named packages.

**Parameters:**

`forbiddenPackages` - a list of forbidden package names, e.g. { "de.tu-bs.ing.ifn.plugin.impl" }.

**Returns:**

A class loader that is appropriate for loading and DVB-J classes that are a part of this application or sub-application.

---

**getResource(String, boolean)**

```
public java.net.URL getResource(java.lang.String name, boolean sameSigner)
```

Get a locator to the named resource, within the search path for this application. Will return null if a resource with the given name that is appropriately signed (if necessary) cannot be found.

Note (informative): This method can be used, for example, by an interoperable plug-in that needs to fetch part of an application that is not loaded by a classloader. For example, it could be used to get a locator to an HTML page, if and only if that page is appropriately signed.

**Parameters:**

`name` - The name of the resource (e.g. com/foo/MyPage.html)

`sameSigner` - True if this is code, or any other resource for which the signer must be the same as the signer of the entry point.

**Returns:**

URL to the named resource, or null.

# org.dvb.application.plugins InvalidApplicationException

## Declaration

```
public class InvalidApplicationException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.plugins.InvalidApplicationException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if an application is not valid for execution by a plug-in.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### InvalidApplicationException()

```
public InvalidApplicationException()
```

Construct a `InvalidApplicationException` with no detail message

---

### InvalidApplicationException(String)

```
public InvalidApplicationException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a `InvalidApplicationException` with a detail message

#### Parameters:

`s` - detail message

# org.dvb.application.plugins InvocationHandler

## Declaration

```
public interface InvocationHandler
```

## Description

`InvocationHandler` is the interface implemented by the *invocation handler* of a proxy instance.

Each proxy instance has an associated invocation handler. When a method is invoked on a proxy instance, the method invocation is encoded and dispatched to the `invoke` method of its invocation handler.

## Methods

---

### `invoke(Object, Method, Object[])`

```
public java.lang.Object invoke(java.lang.Object proxy, java.lang.reflect.Method method,  
    java.lang.Object[] args)  
    throws Throwable
```

Processes a method invocation on a proxy instance and returns the result. This method will be invoked on an invocation handler when a method is invoked on a proxy instance that it is associated with.

#### Parameters:

`proxy` - the proxy instance that the method was invoked on

`method` - the `Method` instance corresponding to the interface method invoked on the proxy instance. The declaring class of the `Method` object will be the interface that the method was declared in, which may be a superinterface of the proxy interface that the proxy class inherits the method through.

`args` - an array of objects containing the values of the arguments passed in the method invocation on the proxy instance, or `null` if interface method takes no arguments. Arguments of primitive types are wrapped in instances of the appropriate primitive wrapper class, such as `java.lang.Integer` or `java.lang.Boolean`.

#### Returns:

the value to return from the method invocation on the proxy instance. If the declared return type of the interface method is a primitive type, then the value returned by this method must be an instance of the corresponding primitive wrapper class; otherwise, it must be a type assignable to the declared return type. If the value returned by this method is `null` and the interface method's return type is primitive, then a `NullPointerException` will be thrown by the method invocation on the proxy instance. If the value returned by this method is otherwise not compatible with the interface method's declared return type as described above, a `ClassCastException` will be thrown by the method invocation on the proxy instance.

#### Throws:

`java.lang.Throwable` - the exception to throw from the method invocation on the proxy instance. The exception's type must be assignable either to any of the exception types declared in the `throws` clause of the interface method or to the unchecked exception types `java.lang.RuntimeException` or `java.lang.Error`. If a checked exception is thrown by this method that is not assignable to any of the exception types declared in the `throws` clause of the interface method, then an `UndeclaredThrowableException` containing the exception that was thrown by this method will be thrown by the method invocation on the proxy instance.

#### See Also:

[UndeclaredThrowableException](#)

# org.dvb.application.plugins Plugin

## Declaration

```
public interface Plugin
```

## Description

This interface allows an application or service manager to control the lifecycle of applications being executed by an inter-operable plug-in. It shall be implemented by inter-operable plug-ins and shall be called by implementation of the application manager in an MHP terminal. It shall not be called by MHP applications. The usage model for this interface is the reuse of the `javax.tv.xlet.Xlet` interface to represent applications in formats other than DVB-J. It is the responsibility of the plug-in to provide implementations of the methods in that interface and to perform the translation between the semantics specified for DVB-J applications and the semantics of the application format which the plug-in supports. The plug-in is initialised by the application manager calling the no-argument constructor of the object implementing this interface. Plug-ins are not expected to perform any time consuming activities or hold any scarce resources in this call.

## Methods

---

### **initApplication(AppAttributes)**

```
public javax.tv.xlet.Xlet initApplication(org.dvb.application.AppAttributes app)  
    throws InvalidApplicationException
```

Request the plug-in to prepare for executing an instance of an application in a format which it supports. If the application cannot be prepared then null shall be returned. While the plug-in is in the terminated state then this method shall always return null. The application shall only be considered to be started when the application manager calls the methods on the Xlet interface returned by this method.

#### **Parameters:**

`app` - an instance of `AppAttributes` for the application which is to be started.

#### **Returns:**

an object implementing the Xlet interface or null if the application cannot be started.

#### **Throws:**

`InvalidApplicationException` - if the application to be started is not valid for this plug-in

---

### **initApplication(InnerApplication)**

```
public javax.tv.xlet.Xlet initApplication(org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplication app)  
    throws InvalidApplicationException
```

Request the plug-in to prepare for executing an instance of an application in a format which it supports. If the application cannot be prepared then null shall be returned. While the plug-in is in the terminated state then this method shall always return null. The application shall only be considered to be started when the application manager calls the methods on the Xlet interface returned by this method.

#### **Parameters:**

`app` - an instance of `InnerApplication` for the application which is to be started

#### **Throws:**

`InvalidApplicationException` - if the application to be started is not valid for this plug-in



---

**initPlugin()**

```
public boolean initPlugin()
```

Initialise the plug-in. Any time consuming initialisations should be performed during this method call. This method shall be called after the no-argument constructor of the object implementing this interface and before any calls to the `startApplication`. It may also be called after a call to `terminatePlugin` if a plug-in was not removed from the virtual machine where it was executing. The behaviour of an application manager should a plug-in fail to initialise is intentionally unspecified.

**Returns:**

true if the plug-in initialised successfully otherwise false

---

**isSupported(AppAttributes)**

```
public boolean isSupported(org.dvb.application.AppAttributes app)
```

Test whether this plug-in is able to support a particular application. This method shall work regardless of whether the plug-in has been initialised or not.

**Parameters:**

`app` - an instance of `AppAttributes` for the application which is to be started.

**Returns:**

true if the plug-in can support this application otherwise false

---

**terminatePlugin()**

```
public void terminatePlugin()
```

Terminate the plug-in. This method shall only be called after all applications being executed by this plug-in have been terminated. The implementation of this method shall release all resources held by the plug-in. Once this method has returned, the plug-in shall either be unloaded from the virtual machine where it was executing or the `initPlugin` method shall be called again to put the plug-in again in an initialised condition. A plug-in may not refuse to terminate and throwing a runtime exception or error from this method shall result in the plug-in being removed from the virtual machine where it was executing.

# org.dvb.application.plugins Proxy

## Declaration

```
public class Proxy
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy
```

## Description

Proxy provides static methods for creating dynamic proxy classes and instances, and it is also the superclass of all dynamic proxy classes created by those methods.

To create a proxy for some interface Foo:

```
InvocationHandler handler = new MyInvocationHandler(...);
Class proxyClass = Proxy.getProxyClass(
    Foo.class.getClassLoader(), new Class[] { Foo.class });
Foo f = (Foo) proxyClass.
    getConstructor(new Class[] { InvocationHandler.class }).
    newInstance(new Object[] { handler });
```

or more simply:

```
Foo f = (Foo) Proxy.newProxyInstance(Foo.class.getClassLoader(),
    new Class[] { Foo.class },
    handler);
```

A *dynamic proxy class* (simply referred to as a *proxy class* below) is a class that implements a list of interfaces specified at runtime when the class is created, with behavior as described below. A *proxy interface* is such an interface that is implemented by a proxy class. A *proxy instance* is an instance of a proxy class. Each proxy instance has an associated *invocation handler* object, which implements the interface `InvocationHandler`. A method invocation on a proxy instance through one of its proxy interfaces will be dispatched to the `invoke` method of the instance's invocation handler, passing the proxy instance, a `java.lang.reflect.Method` object identifying the method that was invoked, and an array of type `Object` containing the arguments. The invocation handler processes the encoded method invocation as appropriate and the result that it returns will be returned as the result of the method invocation on the proxy instance.

A proxy class has the following properties:

- Proxy classes are public, final, and not abstract.
- The unqualified name of a proxy class is unspecified. The space of class names that begin with the string "\$Proxy" should be, however, reserved for proxy classes.
- A proxy class extends `org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy`.
- A proxy class implements exactly the interfaces specified at its creation, in the same order.
- If a proxy class implements a non-public interface, then it will be defined in the same package as that interface. Otherwise, the package of a proxy class is also unspecified. Note that package sealing will not prevent a proxy class from being successfully defined in a particular package at runtime, and neither will classes already defined in the same class loader and the same package with particular signers.
- Since a proxy class implements all of the interfaces specified at its creation, invoking `getInterfaces` on its `Class` object will return an array containing the same list of interfaces (in the order specified at its creation), invoking `getMethods` on its `Class` object will return an array of `Method` objects that include all of the methods in those interfaces, and invoking `getMethod` will find methods in the proxy interfaces as would be expected.
- The `Proxy.isProxyClass` method will return true if it is passed a proxy class— a class returned by `Proxy.getProxyClass` or the class of an object returned by `Proxy.newProxyInstance`— and false otherwise.
- The `java.security.ProtectionDomain` of a proxy class is the same as that of system classes loaded

by the bootstrap class loader, such as `java.lang.Object`, because the code for a proxy class is generated by trusted system code. This protection domain will typically be granted `java.security.All-Permission`.

- Each proxy class has one public constructor that takes one argument, an implementation of the interface `InvocationHandler`, to set the invocation handler for a proxy instance. Rather than having to use the reflection API to access the public constructor, a proxy instance can be also be created by calling the `Proxy.newInstance` method, which combines the actions of calling `Proxy.getProxyClass` with invoking the constructor with an invocation handler.

A proxy instance has the following properties:

- Given a proxy instance `proxy` and one of the interfaces implemented by its proxy class `Foo`, the following expression will return true:

```
proxy instanceof Foo
```

and the following cast operation will succeed (rather than throwing a `ClassCastException`):

```
(Foo) proxy
```

- Each proxy instance has an associated invocation handler, the one that was passed to its constructor. The static `Proxy.getInvocationHandler` method will return the invocation handler associated with the proxy instance passed as its argument.
- An interface method invocation on a proxy instance will be encoded and dispatched to the invocation handler's `invoke` method as described in the documentation for that method.
- An invocation of the `hashCode`, `equals`, or `toString` methods declared in `java.lang.Object` on a proxy instance will be encoded and dispatched to the invocation handler's `invoke` method in the same manner as interface method invocations are encoded and dispatched, as described above. The declaring class of the `Method` object passed to `invoke` will be `java.lang.Object`. Other public methods of a proxy instance inherited from `java.lang.Object` are not overridden by a proxy class, so invocations of those methods behave like they do for instances of `java.lang.Object`.

### ***Methods Duplicated in Multiple Proxy Interfaces***

When two or more interfaces of a proxy class contain a method with the same name and parameter signature, the order of the proxy class's interfaces becomes significant. When such a *duplicate method* is invoked on a proxy instance, the `Method` object passed to the invocation handler will not necessarily be the one whose declaring class is assignable from the reference type of the interface that the proxy's method was invoked through. This limitation exists because the corresponding method implementation in the generated proxy class cannot determine which interface it was invoked through. Therefore, when a duplicate method is invoked on a proxy instance, the `Method` object for the method in the foremost interface that contains the method (either directly or inherited through a superinterface) in the proxy class's list of interfaces is passed to the invocation handler's `invoke` method, regardless of the reference type through which the method invocation occurred.

If a proxy interface contains a method with the same name and parameter signature as the `hashCode`, `equals`, or `toString` methods of `java.lang.Object`, when such a method is invoked on a proxy instance, the `Method` object passed to the invocation handler will have `java.lang.Object` as its declaring class. In other words, the public, non-final methods of `java.lang.Object` logically precede all of the proxy interfaces for the determination of which `Method` object to pass to the invocation handler.

Note also that when a duplicate method is dispatched to an invocation handler, the `invoke` method may only throw checked exception types that are assignable to one of the exception types in the `throws` clause of the method in *all* of the proxy interfaces that it can be invoked through. If the `invoke` method throws a checked exception that is not assignable to any of the exception types declared by the method in one of the the proxy interfaces that it can be invoked through, then an unchecked `UndeclaredThrowableException` will be thrown by the invocation on the proxy instance. This restriction means that not all of the exception types returned by invoking `getExceptionTypes` on the `Method` object passed to the `invoke` method can necessarily be thrown successfully by the `invoke` method.

## Fields

---

### h

protected `org.dvb.application.plugins.InvocationHandler` **h**  
the invocation handler for this proxy instance.

## Constructors

---

### Proxy(InvocationHandler)

protected **Proxy**(`org.dvb.application.plugins.InvocationHandler` h)

Constructs a new `Proxy` instance from a subclass (typically, a dynamic proxy class) with the specified value for its invocation handler.

**Parameters:**

h - the invocation handler for this proxy instance

## Methods

---

### getInvocationHandler(Object)

```
public static org.dvb.application.plugins.InvocationHandler  
    getInvocationHandler(java.lang.Object proxy)  
    throws IllegalArgumentException
```

Returns the invocation handler for the specified proxy instance.

**Parameters:**

proxy - the proxy instance to return the invocation handler for

**Returns:**

the invocation handler for the proxy instance

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the argument is not a proxy instance

---

### getProxyClass(ClassLoader, Class[])

```
public static java.lang.Class getProxyClass(java.lang.ClassLoader loader,  
    java.lang.Class[] interfaces)  
    throws IllegalArgumentException
```

Returns the `java.lang.Class` object for a proxy class given a class loader and an array of interfaces. The proxy class will be defined in the specified class loader and will implement all of the supplied interfaces. If a proxy class for the same permutation of interfaces has already been defined in the class loader, then the existing proxy class will be returned; otherwise, a proxy class for those interfaces will be generated dynamically and defined in the class loader.

There are several restrictions on the parameters that may be passed to `Proxy.getProxyClass`:

- All of the `Class` objects in the `interfaces` array must represent interfaces, not classes or primitive types.
- No two elements in the `interfaces` array may refer to identical `Class` objects.
- All of the interface types must be visible by name through the specified class loader. In other words, for class loader `cl` and every interface `i`, the following expression must be true:  

```
Class.forName(i.getName(), false, cl) == i
```
- All non-public interfaces must be in the same package; otherwise, it would not be possible for the proxy class to implement all of the interfaces, regardless of what package it is defined in.
- No two interfaces may each have a method with the same name and parameter signature but different return type.
- The resulting proxy class must not exceed any limits imposed on classes by the virtual machine. For example, the VM may limit the number of interfaces that a class may implement to 65535; in that case, the size of the `interfaces` array must not exceed 65535.

If any of these restrictions are violated, `Proxy.getProxyClass` will throw an `IllegalArgumentException`. If the `interfaces` array argument or any of its elements are `null`, a `NullPointerException` will be thrown.

Note that the order of the specified proxy interfaces is significant: two requests for a proxy class with the same combination of interfaces but in a different order will result in two distinct proxy classes.

**Parameters:**

`loader` - the class loader to define the proxy class in

`interfaces` - the list of interfaces for the proxy class to implement

**Returns:**

a proxy class that is defined in the specified class loader and that implements the specified interfaces

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if any of the restrictions on the parameters that may be passed to `getProxyClass` are violated

`NullPointerException` - if the `interfaces` array argument or any of its elements are `null`

### **isProxyClass(Class)**

```
public static boolean isProxyClass(java.lang.Class cl)
```

Returns true if and only if the specified class was dynamically generated to be a proxy class using the `getProxyClass` method or the `newProxyInstance` method.

The reliability of this method is important for the ability to use it to make security decisions, so its implementation should not just test if the class in question extends `Proxy`.

**Parameters:**

`cl` - the class to test

**Returns:**

`true` if the class is a proxy class and `false` otherwise

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `cl` is `null`

---

**newProxyInstance(ClassLoader, Class[], InvocationHandler)**

```
public static java.lang.Object newProxyInstance(java.lang.ClassLoader loader,  
        java.lang.Class[] interfaces, org.dvb.application.plugins.InvocationHandler h)  
        throws IllegalArgumentException
```

Returns an instance of a proxy class for the specified interfaces that dispatches method invocations to the specified invocation handler. This method is equivalent to:

```
Proxy.getProxyClass(loader, interfaces).  
    getConstructor(new Class[] { InvocationHandler.class }).  
    newInstance(new Object[] { handler });
```

`Proxy.newProxyInstance` throws `IllegalArgumentException` for the same reasons that `Proxy.getProxyClass` does.

**Parameters:**

- `loader` - the class loader to define the proxy class in
- `interfaces` - the list of interfaces for the proxy class to implement
- `h` - the invocation handler to dispatch method invocations to

**Returns:**

a proxy instance with the specified invocation handler of a proxy class that is defined in the specified class loader and that implements the specified interfaces

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if any of the restrictions on the parameters that may be passed to `getProxyClass` are violated

`NullPointerException` - if the `interfaces` array argument or any of its elements are `null`, or if the invocation handler, `h`, is `null`

org.dvb.application.plugins

# UndeclaredThrowableException

## Declaration

```
public class UndeclaredThrowableException extends java.lang.RuntimeException
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
|
+--java.lang.Exception
|
+--java.lang.RuntimeException
|
+--org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown by a method invocation on a proxy instance if its invocation handler's `invoke` method throws a checked exception (a `Throwable` that is not assignable to `RuntimeException` or `Error`) that is not assignable to any of the exception types declared in the `throws` clause of the method that was invoked on the proxy instance and dispatched to the invocation handler.

An `UndeclaredThrowableException` instance contains the undeclared checked exception that was thrown by the invocation handler, and it can be retrieved with the `getUndeclaredThrowable()` method.

`UndeclaredThrowableException` extends `RuntimeException`, so it is an unchecked exception that wraps a checked exception.

## Constructors

---

### UndeclaredThrowableException(Throwable)

```
public UndeclaredThrowableException(java.lang.Throwable undeclaredThrowable)
```

Constructs an `UndeclaredThrowableException` with the specified `Throwable`.

#### Parameters:

`undeclaredThrowable` - the undeclared checked exception that was thrown

---

### UndeclaredThrowableException(Throwable, String)

```
public UndeclaredThrowableException(java.lang.Throwable undeclaredThrowable,
    java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs an `UndeclaredThrowableException` with the specified `Throwable` and a detail message.

#### Parameters:

`undeclaredThrowable` - the undeclared checked exception that was thrown

`s` - the detail message

## Methods

---

### **getUndeclaredThrowable()**

```
public java.lang.Throwable getUndeclaredThrowable()
```

Returns the `Throwable` instance wrapped in this `UndeclaredThrowableException`.

**Returns:**

the undeclared checked exception that was thrown

---

### **printStackTrace()**

```
public void printStackTrace()
```

Prints this `UndeclaredThrowableException` and its backtrace to the standard error stream.

**Overrides:**

`printStackTrace` in class `Throwable`

---

### **printStackTrace(PrintStream)**

```
public void printStackTrace(java.io.PrintStream ps)
```

Prints this `UndeclaredThrowableException` and its backtrace to the specified `PrintStream`.

**Overrides:**

`printStackTrace` in class `Throwable`

**Parameters:**

`ps` - the `PrintStream` to print the exception to

---

### **printStackTrace(PrintWriter)**

```
public void printStackTrace(java.io.PrintWriter pw)
```

Prints this `UndeclaredThrowableException` and its backtrace to the specified `PrintWriter`.

**Overrides:**

`printStackTrace` in class `Throwable`

**Parameters:**

`pw` - the `PrintWriter` to print this exception to



# org.dvb.application.plugins XletContainer

## Declaration

```
public class XletContainer extends java.awt.Container
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.awt.Component
   |
   +--java.awt.Container
      |
      +--org.dvb.application.plugins.XletContainer
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.awt.image.ImageObserver, java.awt.MenuContainer, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class provides a container that can be embedded in a widget hierarchy, and can provide a container that can safely be used as the top-level container of an embedded Xlet. This solves the problem of an embedded Xlet being able to call `getParent()` to discover the widget hierarchy in which it is embedded.

## Since:

MHP 1.1

## Constructors

---

### XletContainer(Container)

```
public XletContainer(java.awt.Container parent)
```

Construct a new XletContainer as a child of Parent. The XletContainer contains exactly one widget: A child container. The child container is constrained to be at the same location and the same size as the parent XletContainer.

#### Parameters:

`parent` - The widget that is to have an Xlet embedded within it.

#### Throws:

`NullPointerException` - if parent is null

#### See Also:

[getXletContainer\(\)](#)

## Methods

---

### **getXletContainer()**

```
public java.awt.Container getXletContainer()
```

Get the only child of the XletContainer. This container can safely be used as the top-level container of an Xlet, e.g. an Xlet embedded in a DVB-HTML page. Calling getParent() on this container from client code will return null, unless the caller has been granted special access via a platform-dependent mechanism.

If this method is invoked more than once for the same instance of XletContainer, it will return the same instance.

**Returns:**

The child of this XletContainer.

# org.dvb.application.plugins XletSystemCall

## Declaration

```
public abstract class XletSystemCall
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.plugins.XletSystemCall
```

## Description

This class permits user code to intercept certain system calls initiated by an embedded Xlet that need to be serviced by a support application. For example, a DVB-HTML plug-in application needs to service requests that are made by an embedded Xlet, typically via static method calls.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### XletSystemCall()

```
protected XletSystemCall()
```

Create a new XletSystemCall

## Methods

---

### getRootContainer(XletContext)

```
public abstract java.awt.Container getRootContainer(javax.tv.xlet.XletContext ctx)
```

Called when the Xlet calls `javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer.getRootContainer()`.

#### Parameters:

`ctx` - The context of the Xlet making the request; it shall be identical to the XletContext used to create this instance of XletSystemCall.

#### Returns:

a container object to be returned to the embedded xlet

#### See Also:

```
javax.tv.graphics.TVContainer.getRootContainer
```

---

### register(Plugin, XletContext)

```
public final void register(org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin p,  
                           javax.tv.xlet.XletContext ctx)
```

Register this instance of XletSystemCall with the system.

**Parameters:**

`p` - The Plugin that services calls made by the xlet, i.e. the Plugin of which this instance of `XletSystemCall` is a part.

`ctx` - The `XletContext` of the Xlet making the calls

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `p` or `ctx` is null

**See Also:**

`unregister(Plugin, XletContext)`

---

**unregister(Plugin, XletContext)**

```
public final void unregister(org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin p,  
                             javax.tv.xlet.XletContext ctx)
```

Unregister this instance of `XletSystemCall` with the system. When an interoperable Plugin terminates, or an Xlet managed by a Plugin is asked to terminate, the Plugin must unregister any relevant `XletSystemCall` instances.

**Parameters:**

`p` - The Plugin that services calls made by the xlet, i.e. the Plugin of which this instance of `XletSystemCall` is a part.

`ctx` - The `XletContext` of the Xlet making the calls

**Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if `p` or `ctx` is null

**See Also:**

`register(Plugin, XletContext)`

---

## **Annex AG (normative): Stored application APIs**

The current draft of this package is a partial definition of the org.dvb.application package. It includes changed classes or interfaces, new classes or interfaces and some existing classes & interfaces which have not changed. These existing classes / interfaces which are included but which have not changed can be identified by the absence of any comment or description apart from the class or interface signature. It is an open editing issue to discover whether they can easily be removed or not.

# Package org.dvb.application.storage

## Description

Provides support for storage of applications.

| Class Summary                                |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Interfaces</b>                            |   |
| <code>ApplicationStorage</code>              | An interface that shall be implemented by the objects that implement <code>javax.service.Service</code> interface and where the MHP terminal supports storing applications. |
| <code>ExtendedAppAttributes</code>           | The <code>ExtendedAppAttributes</code> interface provides additional attributes that are useful when application can be stored in the MHP terminal.                         |
| <code>StoredApplicationService</code>        | Defines the information about a stored application service.   |
| <code>StoredServiceCreator</code>            | This interface supports creating new <code>Service</code> objects representing stand-alone stored application services.   |
| <b>Classes</b>                               |   |
| <code>ApplicationStoragePermission</code>    | This class represents a permission to manage applications stored in the MHP terminal.   |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                            |   |
| <code>ApplicationDownloadException</code>    | Thrown if the downloading of the application failed.  |
| <code>InvalidApplicationException</code>     | Thrown if an application is not valid for installing into a particular service.   |
| <code>InvalidDescriptionFileException</code> | Thrown if the description of the application to be stored is invalid or otherwise not conformant to the specification.  |
| <code>NotEnoughResourcesException</code>     | Thrown if the MHP terminal does not have enough resources to install the application.   |
| <code>ServiceAlreadyExistsException</code>   | Thrown if a <code>StoredApplicationService</code> already exists with the identifiers the application tried to create a new one.  |
| <code>UserRejectedInstallException</code>    | Thrown if the end user rejects the request to install an application.   |

# org.dvb.application.storage ApplicationDownloadException

## Declaration

```
public class ApplicationDownloadException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
    |  
    +--java.lang.Exception  
        |  
        +--org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationDownloadException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if the downloading of the application failed.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### ApplicationDownloadException()

```
public ApplicationDownloadException()
```

Constructs an ApplicationDownloadException with no detail message.

---

### ApplicationDownloadException(String)

```
public ApplicationDownloadException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs an ApplicationDownloadException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

# org.dvb.application.storage

# ApplicationStorage

## Declaration

```
public interface ApplicationStorage extends javax.tv.service.Service
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.tv.service.Service
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

```
StoredApplicationService
```

## Description

An interface that shall be implemented by the objects that implement `javax.service.Service` interface and where the MHP terminal supports storing applications. MHP terminals which do not support storing applications shall not return objects implementing this interface.

When this object represents a service that is retrieved from a network, e.g. a broadcast service, storing applications using the methods in this interface will install them in the receiver as broadcast service related stored applications.

When this object represents a stored application service, storing applications using the methods in this interface will add the application into this service.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Methods

---

### getStoredAppIDs()

```
public org.dvb.application.AppID[] getStoredAppIDs()
```

Lists the AppIDs of the applications that are stored within this service.

#### Returns:

an array of AppID object representing the stored application

#### Throws:

`java.lang.SecurityException` - Thrown for broadcast services if the service represented by this object is not the currently selected service of the the service context in which the calling application is running. Thrown for a stand-alone stored service if the application calling this method does not have the same `organisation_id` as the application which originally created the stand-alone stored service.

#### Since:

MHP1.1



---

**getVersionNumber(AppID)**

```
public int getVersionNumber(org.dvb.application.AppID appId)
```

Return the version number of the stored application whose AppID is given as a parameter.

**Parameters:**

appId - the AppID of the application whose version is queried

**Returns:**

the version number of the stored application, returns -1 if the application given as a parameter is not stored

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - Thrown for broadcast services if the service represented by this object is not the currently selected service of the the service context in which the calling application is running. Thrown for a stand-alone stored service if the application calling this method does not have the same organisation\_id as the application which originally created the stand-alone stored service.

**Since:**

MHP1.1

---

**initiateApplicationInstall(AppProxy, boolean, String[])**

```
public void initiateApplicationInstall(org.dvb.application.AppProxy app, boolean autoStart,
    java.lang.String[] args)
    throws InvalidApplicationException, UserRejectedInstallException, NotEnoughRes
    sourcesException, InvalidDescriptionFileException, ApplicationDownloadException
```

Requests the MHP terminal to initiate the installation of an application into the MHP terminal.

Applications should be prepared for the platform consulting the end user of the MHP terminal for the permission to install the application

Note: This method is synchronous and will block until the installation is either completed or fails.

**Parameters:**

app - an AppProxy representing the application to be installed

autoStart - true, if the application becomes an autostart application in the stored application service; false, if the application becomes a normal present (non-autostart) application in the stored application service. This parameter is not used if storing a broadcast service related application.

args - parameters to be available to the application when started. Passing in either null or an array of size zero indicates no parameters are to be available. These parameters shall be available to applications when running as part of the stored application service using the Xlet property "dvb.installer.parameters".

**Throws:**

`InvalidApplicationException` - thrown if the application is not valid for installation into this service. For a broadcast service, only applications signalled in that service are valid. For a stand-alone stored service, all applications identified as able to run stand-alone in their application description file are defined to be valid for the purposes of this exception.

`UserRejectedInstallException` - thrown if the end user rejects the installation

`NotEnoughResourcesException` - thrown if the MHP terminal does not have enough resources, e.g. storage space, available for the application

`InvalidDescriptionFileException` - thrown if the application description file is not valid

`ApplicationDownloadException` - thrown if the downloading of the application files was not successful

`java.lang.SecurityException` - Thrown if the application calling this method does not have an `ApplicationStoragePermission` with action "store" or "\*" for the `organisation_id` of the application to be stored. Also thrown for a stand-alone stored service if the application calling this method does not have the same `organisation_id` as the application which originally created the stand-alone stored service.

**Since:**

MHP1.1

---

**initiateApplicationRemoval(AppID)**

```
public void initiateApplicationRemoval(org.dvb.application.AppID app)
```

Requests the MHP terminal to initiate the removal of an application stored in the MHP terminal from this service.

Applications should be prepared for the platform consulting the end user of the MHP terminal for the permission to remove the application

If the application identified by the AppID passed in as a parameter is not installed in this service, the method shall fail silently.

**Parameters:**

`app` - AppID of the application to be removed

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - thrown if the application calling this method does not have an `ApplicationStoragePermission` with action "remove" or "\*" for the `organisation_id` of the application to be removed. Also thrown for a stand-alone stored service if the application calling this method does not have the same `organisation_id` as the application which originally created the stand-alone stored service.

**Since:**

MHP1.1

**See Also:**

[ApplicationStoragePermission](#)

# org.dvb.application.storage ApplicationStoragePermission

## Declaration

```
public class ApplicationStoragePermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.security.Permission
|
+--java.security.BasicPermission
|
+--org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class represents a permission to manage applications stored in the MHP terminal. An ApplicationStoragePermission contains a name representing the organisation\_id whose applications can be managed and an actions list representing the permitted actions, i.e. store and/or remove applications.

The name of the permission contains the organisation\_id represented in hexadecimal form without any "0x" prefix. When the application possesses this permission, it is able to initiate storage or removal of applications signalled with this organisation\_id. If the application does not have the ApplicationStoragePermission granted with the same organisation\_id as the application is signalled with when it tries to initiate either storing or removal of an application, the methods to store/remove will throw a SecurityException.

The actions string shall be one of the following :-

- "store", representing permission to store an application
- "remove", representing permission to remove an application
- "create", representing permission to create a stored application service
- "remove\_service", representing permission to remove a stored application service
- "\*", representing all of the above

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### ApplicationStoragePermission(String)

```
public ApplicationStoragePermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new ApplicationStoragePermission with the specified name. Permissions created with this constructor implicitly have the actions string set to "\*".

#### Parameters:

`name` - the organisation\_id whose applications can be managed. This is encoded in hexadecimal representation without any preceding "0x" prefix.

---

**ApplicationStoragePermission(String, String)**

```
public ApplicationStoragePermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new `ApplicationStoragePermission` object with the specified name. The name contains the `organisation_id` of the applications that can be managed and the actions `String` shall be either "store", "remove" or "\*". Permission objects constructed with incorrectly encoded parameters do not represent any permission and are ignored by the platform.

**Parameters:**

`name` - the `organisation_id` whose applications can be managed. This is encoded in hexadecimal representation without any preceding "0x" prefix.

`actions` - Shall contain "store", "remove" or "\*"

# org.dvb.application.storage ExtendedAppAttributes

## Declaration

```
public interface ExtendedAppAttributes
```

## Description

The `ExtendedAppAttributes` interface provides additional attributes that are useful when application can be stored in the MHP terminal.

`AppAttributes` objects that are returned from the `AppsDatabase` shall implement this interface

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Methods

---

### `getCurrentVersionNumber()`

```
public int getCurrentVersionNumber()
```

Returns the optional version number currently signalled for this application. e.g. in the AIT. If this is not available, -1 shall be returned.

#### Returns:

the version number signalled for this application.

#### Since:

MHP1.1

# org.dvb.application.storage InvalidApplicationException

## Declaration

```
public class InvalidApplicationException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.storage.InvalidApplicationException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if an application is not valid for installing into a particular service.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### InvalidApplicationException()

```
public InvalidApplicationException()
```

Constructs an InvalidApplicationException with no detail message.

---

### InvalidApplicationException(String)

```
public InvalidApplicationException(java.lang.String s)
```

Construct a InvalidApplicationException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

# org.dvb.application.storage InvalidDescriptionFileException

## Declaration

```
public class InvalidDescriptionFileException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.storage.InvalidDescriptionFileException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if the description of the application to be stored is invalid or otherwise not conformant to the specification.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### InvalidDescriptionFileException()

```
public InvalidDescriptionFileException()
```

Constructs an InvalidDescriptionFileException with no detail message.

---

### InvalidDescriptionFileException(String)

```
public InvalidDescriptionFileException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs an InvalidDescriptionFileException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

org.dvb.application.storage

# NotEnoughResourcesException

## Declaration

```
public class NotEnoughResourcesException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
    |
    +--java.lang.Exception
        |
        +--org.dvb.application.storage.NotEnoughResourcesException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if the MHP terminal does not have enough resources to install the application. e.g. not enough storage space.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### NotEnoughResourcesException()

```
public NotEnoughResourcesException()
```

Constructs a NotEnoughResourcesException with no detail message.

---

### NotEnoughResourcesException(String)

```
public NotEnoughResourcesException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs a NotEnoughResourcesException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message



# org.dvb.application.storage ServiceAlreadyExistsException

## Declaration

```
public class ServiceAlreadyExistsException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.storage.ServiceAlreadyExistsException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if a StoredApplicationService already exists with the identifiers the application tried to create a new one.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### ServiceAlreadyExistsException()

```
public ServiceAlreadyExistsException()
```

Constructs a ServiceAlreadyExistsException with no detail message.

---

### ServiceAlreadyExistsException(String)

```
public ServiceAlreadyExistsException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs a ServiceAlreadyExistsException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

# org.dvb.application.storage StoredApplicationService

## Declaration

```
public interface StoredApplicationService extends javax.tv.service.Service, ApplicationStorage
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
ApplicationStorage, javax.tv.service.Service
```

## Description

Defines the information about a stored application service.

Stored application services can be created by applications that have a permission to store applications for an organisation\_id.

Stored application services are uniquely identified within the terminal by the combination of the organisation\_id and service\_id.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Fields

---

### STORED

```
public static final javax.tv.service.ServiceInformationType STORED
```

The service information is from storage

---

### STORED\_APPLICATION\_SERVICE

```
public static final javax.tv.service.ServiceType STORED_APPLICATION_SERVICE
```

The service type for a stored application

#### See Also:

```
javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceTypeFilter
```

## Methods

---

### getLocator()

```
public javax.tv.locator.Locator getLocator()
```

Gets the Locator for this stored application service. This locator is opaque and platform specific. It is not required to be an instance of any public locator class in the platform.

#### Overrides:

```
getLocator in interface Service
```

#### Returns:

a locator for this stored application service

---

**getName()**

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

Returns the name of the stored application service as defined when the stored application service was created.

**Overrides:**

getName in interface Service

**Returns:**

the name of the stored application service

---

**getOrganisationId()**

```
public int getOrganisationId()
```

Return the organisation id of this stored application service

**Returns:**

the organisation id of this stored application service

---

**getServiceId()**

```
public int getServiceId()
```

Return the service id of this stored application service

**Returns:**

the service id of this stored application service

---

**getServiceInformationType()**

```
public javax.tv.service.ServiceInformationType getServiceInformationType()
```

Returns the service information format of this object. This shall always return STORED.

**Returns:**

the service information format

---

**getServiceType()**

```
public javax.tv.service.ServiceType getServiceType()
```

Returns the type of this service. For stored application services, this method shall always return STORED\_APPLICATION\_SERVICE.

**Overrides:**

getServiceType in interface Service

**Returns:**

service type of this service

---

**hasMultipleInstances()**

```
public boolean hasMultipleInstances()
```

Indicates whether the service represented by this Service is available on multiple transports. For stored application services, this shall always return false.

**Overrides:**

`hasMultipleInstances` in interface `Service`

**Returns:**

`false`

---

**removeService()**

```
public void removeService()
```

Request the removal of the whole stored application service from the terminal. Removal of the service results in the removal of all the applications from within that service.

---

**retrieveDetails(SIRequestor)**

```
public javax.tv.service.SIRequest retrieveDetails(javax.tv.service.SIRequestor requestor)
```

This method retrieves additional information about the service. This shall result in failure with the `SIRequestFailureType DATA_UNAVAILABLE`.

**Overrides:**

`retrieveDetails` in interface `Service`

**Parameters:**

`requestor` - The `SIRequestor` to be notified when this operation completes.

**Returns:**

A `SIRequest` object identifying this request.

# org.dvb.application.storage StoredServiceCreator

## Declaration

```
public interface StoredServiceCreator
```

## Description

This interface supports creating new Service objects representing stand-alone stored application services. Services thus created shall appear in the list of services maintained by the SIManager until removed using `StoredApplicationService.remove` or some MHP terminal specific mechanism. i.e. they shall be returned by `filterServices` both when passed an instance of `ServiceTypeFilter` constructed with the type `StoredApplicationService.STORED_APPLICATION_SERVICE` and when passed null to list all known services.

This interface shall be implemented by the object returned from `javax.tv.service.SIManager.getInstance` only in those MHP implementations which support stand-alone stored applications.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Methods

---

### **createStoredApplicationService(int, int, String)**

```
public org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService  
    createStoredApplicationService(int organisation_id, int service_id,  
    java.lang.String serviceName)  
    throws NotEnoughResourcesException, UserRejectedInstallException, ServiceAlreadyExistsException
```

Requests the platform to create a new stored application service.

#### **Parameters:**

`organisation_id` - the `organisation_id` of the organisation to whom this service belongs to  
`service_id` - unique identifier for this service within the organisation  
`serviceName` - a name for the service that can be displayed to the end user to identify this service

#### **Returns:**

the stored application service created

#### **Throws:**

[UserRejectedInstallException](#) - thrown if the end user rejects the installation  
[NotEnoughResourcesException](#) - thrown if the MHP terminal does not have enough resources, e.g. storage space, available for the application  
[ServiceAlreadyExistsException](#) - thrown if a stored application service with the same `organisation_id` and `service_id` already exists in the terminal

# org.dvb.application.storage UserRejectedInstallException

## Declaration

```
public class UserRejectedInstallException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.application.storage.UserRejectedInstallException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Thrown if the end user rejects the request to install an application.

## Since:

MHP1.1

## Constructors

---

### UserRejectedInstallException()

```
public UserRejectedInstallException()
```

Constructs a UserRejectedInstallException with no detail message.

---

### UserRejectedInstallException(String)

```
public UserRejectedInstallException(java.lang.String s)
```

Constructs a UserRejectedInstallException with a detail message

#### Parameters:

s - detail message

---

## **Annex AH (normative): Internet client APIs**

# Package org.dvb.internet

## Description

Provides a mechanism for MHP applications to control internet clients that may be present on an MHP such as a web browser or email client.

This package provides a mechanism for MHP applications to control internet clients that may be present on an MHP such as a web browser or email client. The API makes no assumptions about whether an internet client and downloaded MHP application can run simultaneously, and in some cases starting an internet client may result in the calling application being killed.

The API consists of two main class hierarchies. `InternetClientService` and its clients provide a mechanism to get a locator for a resident internet client so that it can be started, and also provide any functionality that does not require the client to be started. This can include adding bookmarks or getting the capabilities of the clients. The second major part of the API is the `InternetClient` class and its subclasses. These provide an interface to a running instance of an internet client and support the operations that can only be carried out when the client is running.

The internet client API uses the JavaTV service navigation API for accessing resident applications. Any effect that the invocation of a resident internet client has on the lifecycle of a downloaded application is dependent on the service context in which the resident application is started (using `ServiceContext.select()`). If the internet client is started in the same service context as the downloaded application, then the downloaded application will be terminated, following the usual semantics of the service selection API. The following section introduces the basic concepts and then explores a few scenarios to illustrate combinations or broadcast application versus resident application execution.

## Concepts

The first implication of resident applications is that it should be feasible for broadcast applications to isolate, browse, and select such services. The collection of `javax.tv.service.*` packages provides the framework for the solution to this requirement.

The class `ServiceType` in the `javax.tv.service` package defines various kinds of services. This is extended in this API to provide additional service types for Internet clients. The `javax.tv` framework lets a client filter the services known to a platform to create a `ServiceCollection`. The client would first create an instance of `ServiceTypeFilter`

```
public ServiceTypeFilter(ServiceType type)
```

where the `ServiceType` in the signature would be the instance for the resident service in question. The client would then filter the services known to the platform to isolate the resident services of this type. The `ServiceCollection` interface provides the filter operation.

```
public ServiceCollection createServiceCollection(ServiceFilter filter)
```

Given the `ServiceCollection`, the client can iterate over the resident services to find a specific resident service. Given the `Service`, the client can recover its locator:

```
public Locator getLocator()
```

The last step is to `select()` the resident service. The `ServiceContext` interface of the `javax.tv.service.selection` package provides the operation:

```
public void select(Locator selection)
throws InvalidLocatorException, java.lang.SecurityException,
java.lang.IllegalStateException
```

The semantics of `select()` are that the implementation first examines the locator of the signature. If the locator is found to be valid, the operation returns. The implementation does not stall while it attempts to allocate resources to download the service, and then attempts to allocate resources to execute the service.



If the implementation determines that it can not realize the service due to scarce resources, it forwards a `SelectionFailedEvent` (of the `javax.tv.service.selection` package) with the reason code `INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES`. The `ServiceContextListener` interface fields the event:

```
public void receiveServiceContextEvent(ServiceContextEvent e)
```

Thus the client should implement an instance of the `ServiceContextListener` interface and register interest in service context events. The `ServiceContext` interface provides the mechanism:

```
public void addListener(ServiceContextListener listener)
throws java.lang.IllegalStateException
```

The semantics of a `ServiceContext` are that at most a single `Service` can execute within a `ServiceContext` at a time. Since the premise is that a broadcast service selects a resident service, there are two scenarios of interest.

The first scenario presumes that the broadcast service wants to select the resident service but not survive. It expects the selection to cause its termination. The broadcast service in this case should create an instance of `ServiceContextFactory`. The operation on `ServiceContextFactory` itself is:

```
public static ServiceContextFactory getInstance()
```

The broadcast application then requests the service contexts that are visible to the broadcast application:

```
public abstract ServiceContext getServiceContext(XletContext ctx)
```

which returns *its* `ServiceContext`. The broadcast application selects the resident application within its service context:

```
public void select(Locator selection)
throws InvalidLocatorException, java.lang.SecurityException,
java.lang.IllegalStateException
```

which causes the broadcast application to terminate.

The premise of the second scenario is that the broadcast application wants to survive the selection of the resident service. In this case the broadcast again creates a `ServiceContextFactory` but then creates a `ServiceContext` which is not its `ServiceContext`:

```
public abstract ServiceContext createServiceContext()
throws InsufficientResourcesException,
java.lang.SecurityException
```

The broadcast application selects the resident application. Since the operation is on a `ServiceContext` that is not its `ServiceContext`, the broadcast application survives the selection.

One subtle aspect of the invocation patterns is that the platform does not know whether the broadcast application will attempt to select a resident application versus another broadcast application until the broadcast application invokes the `select()` operation. For example, assume the platform supports a single broadcast application plus a single resident application. Further assume that, after the broadcast application creates a second `ServiceContext`, it selects a second broadcast application rather than a resident application. If the locator is valid, the operation succeeds, but the broadcast application then receives a `SelectionFailedEvent`.

Likewise assume the platform supports multiple broadcast applications but not (for the present) a resident application. If the broadcast application selects a resident application, and if the locator is valid, the operation succeeds, but the broadcast application then receives a `SelectionFailedEvent`. (The second case is rather improbable. If the platform does not support resident applications, it is not clear how the broadcast application could obtain a valid locator to a broadcast application. The platform would have to support resident applications in concept, but not at the instant the broadcast applications selects a resident application.)

## Class Summary

### Interfaces

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>EmailClient</code>        | Interface supporting the operations required on an email client. |
| <code>EmailClientService</code> | Service representing the resident email client                   |
| <code>InternetClient</code>     | Base interface for the internet clients.                         |

| <b>Class Summary</b>                    |   |
|---|---|
| <code>InternetClientListener</code>     | Interface for objects that wish to receive <code>InternetClientEvents</code>  |
| <code>InternetClientService</code>      | The base class for the interface to resident applications that are supported by the internet access profile.  |
| <code>UsenetClient</code>               | This interface supports the operations required on a Usenet news client.  |
| <code>UsenetClientService</code>        | Service representing the resident usenet news client  |
| <code>WWWBrowser</code>                 | This interface provides support for the operations required on an WWW browser.  |
| <code>WWWBrowserService</code>          | Service representing a resident WWW browser   |
| <b>Classes</b>                          |   |
| <code>CancelledByUserEvent</code>       | Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed because the operation was canceled by the user  |
| <code>HomePagePermission</code>         | This class is for permissions related to the ability for an MHP application to set the home page of a WWW browser in the internet access profile.   |
| <code>InternetClientEvent</code>        | Base class for all status events from internet clients.   |
| <code>InternetClientFailureEvent</code> | Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed.  |
| <code>InternetClientSuccessEvent</code> | Event indicating that an operation on an internet client succeeded  |
| <code>InternetServiceFilter</code>      | <code>InternetServiceFilter</code> represents a service type for a particular kind of internet client.  |
| <code>InternetServiceType</code>        | Class representing the additional service types available in the Internet Access profile.   |
| <code>PermissionDeniedEvent</code>      | Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed due to the specified URL not being accessible by the client due to access controls on the server.                             |
| <code>URLUnavailableEvent</code>        | Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed due to the specified URL not being available.   |
| <b>Exceptions</b>                       |   |
| <code>ClientNotRunningException</code>  | Exception thrown when a method of <code>InternetClient</code> or one of its subclasses is called while the client is not running, for instance if the client has been terminated by the user. |
| <code>EntryExistsException</code>       | Exception generated when an application tries to add a bookmark or address book entry that already exists   |

# org.dvb.internet CancelledByUserEvent

## Declaration

public class **CancelledByUserEvent** extends [InternetClientFailureEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientFailureEvent
            |
            +--org.dvb.internet.CancelledByUserEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed because the operation was canceled by the user

## Constructors

---

### CancelledByUserEvent(Object, URL)

```
public CancelledByUserEvent(java.lang.Object source, java.net.URL url)
```

Construct a new `CancelledByUserEvent`

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`url` - the URL to which the event relates.

# org.dvb.internet ClientNotRunningException

## Declaration

```
public class ClientNotRunningException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.lang.Throwable
   |
   +--java.lang.Exception
      |
      +--org.dvb.internet.ClientNotRunningException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Exception thrown when a method of `InternetClient` or one of its subclasses is called while the client is not running, for instance if the client has been terminated by the user.

## Constructors

---

### **ClientNotRunningException()**

```
public ClientNotRunningException()
```

Construct a `ClientNotRunningException` with no detail message

---

### **ClientNotRunningException(String)**

```
public ClientNotRunningException(java.lang.String reason)
```

Construct a `ClientNotRunningException` with the specified detail message

#### **Parameters:**

`reason` - the reason why the exception was thrown

# org.dvb.internet EmailClient

## Declaration

```
public interface EmailClient extends InternetClient
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
InternetClient, javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContentHandler
```

## Description

Interface supporting the operations required on an email client.

## Methods

---

### **createMessage(String, String, String)**

```
public void createMessage(java.lang.String to, java.lang.String subject,  
    java.lang.String messageBody)  
    throws ClientNotRunningException
```

Create a new email message. If any of the parameters are an empty string, the user will be prompted for the missing information.

This is an asynchronous operation, whose success or failure will be indicated by an `InternetClientSuccessEvent` or `InternetClientFailureEvent` or one of their subclasses.

#### **Parameters:**

`to` - the address to which the email should be sent.

`subject` - the subject for the email.

`messageBody` - the body of the message.

#### **Throws:**

`NullPointerException` - if any of the `to` address, `subject` or `message body` are null.

`ClientNotRunningException` - if the client is not currently running.

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the destination address is an empty string.

# org.dvb.internet EmailClientService

## Declaration

public interface **EmailClientService** extends [InternetClientService](#)

## All Superinterfaces:

[InternetClientService](#), [javax.tv.service.Service](#)

## Description

Service representing the resident email client

## Methods

---

### **addToAddressBook(String, String)**

```
public void addToAddressBook(java.lang.String address, java.lang.String name)
    throws EntryExistsException, IOException
```

Add an entry to the address book. As a side-effect an entry previously added by this method may be lost. Implementations may restrict the number of entries a single MHP application or source of applications may add.

#### Parameters:

address - the address to be added to the address book

name - the name that should be associated with that address

#### Throws:

[EntryExistsException](#) - if an entry with both the same name and the same address already exists in the address book.

[java.lang.IllegalArgumentException](#) - if the string passed as the email address does not conform to the internet email address format

[IOException](#) - if no more address book entries can be added due to a lack of storage space or a limitation in the client

[java.io.IOException](#)

---

### **getUserEmailAddress()**

```
public java.lang.String getUserEmailAddress()
```

Get the email address of the user. The returned value shall be the same as that obtained by reading the value of the "User @" preference (see [org.dvb.user.GeneralPreferences](#) for details).

#### Returns:

the email address of the user, or null if no email address is set or the email address is not available to the client.

#### Throws:

[java.lang.SecurityException](#) - if the caller does not have a [UserPreferencePermission](#) with the name "read".

---

**setInitialMessage(String, String, String)**

```
public void setInitialMessage(java.lang.String to, java.lang.String subject,  
                               java.lang.String messageBody)
```

Set the initial recipient, subject & message body to be used when the email client starts. This URL is specific to this instance of EmailClientService and will not impact any other instance and is only valid for the lifetime of this instance. Calling this method and then selecting the EmailClientService instance is equivalent to selecting the EmailClientService instance, obtaining the EmailClient and then calling the createMessage method there. If the application calling this method is still running when the message is sent (or fails) and has registered an InternetClientListener then the appropriate InternetClientEvent shall be sent corresponding to the success or failure of the operation to send the message.

**Parameters:**

to - the address to which the email should be sent

subject - the subject for the email

messageBody - the body of the message.

**Throws:**

NullPointerException - if any of the to address, subject or message body are null.

java.lang.IllegalArgumentException - if the destination address is an empty string.

# org.dvb.internet EntryExistsException

## Declaration

```
public class EntryExistsException extends java.lang.Exception
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.lang.Throwable  
|  
+--java.lang.Exception  
|  
+--org.dvb.internet.EntryExistsException
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Exception generated when an application tries to add a bookmark or address book entry that already exists

## Constructors

---

### EntryExistsException()

```
public EntryExistsException()
```

Construct a `EntryExistsException` with no detail message

---

### EntryExistsException(String)

```
public EntryExistsException(java.lang.String message)
```

Construct a `EntryExistsException` with the specified detail message

#### Parameters:

message - the reason why the exception was thrown



# org.dvb.internet HomePagePermission

## Declaration

```
public class HomePagePermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.security.Permission
|
+--java.security.BasicPermission
|
+--org.dvb.internet.HomePagePermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class is for permissions related to the ability for an MHP application to set the home page of a WWW browser in the internet access profile. If an application has this permission then shall be able to set the home page.

## Constructors

---

### HomePagePermission(String)

```
public HomePagePermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new `HomePagePermission`. The name parameter is not used and must be set to empty string "". Implementations of this version of this specification shall ignore the name, but it could be taken into use in future versions of this specification.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the `HomePagePermission`. Not used, shall be "".

---

### HomePagePermission(String, String)

```
public HomePagePermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new `HomePagePermission`. The name and actions parameters are not used. Implementations of this version of this specification shall ignore the name and actions, but they could be taken into use in future versions of this specification. This constructor exists for use by the Policy object to instantiate new `Permission` objects.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the `HomePagePermission`. Not used, shall be "".

actions - Not used, shall be null.

# org.dvb.internet InternetClient

## Declaration

```
public interface InternetClient extends javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContentHandler
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContentHandler
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

```
EmailClient, UsenetClient, WWWBrowser
```

## Description

Base interface for the internet clients. Access to those methods common to all running instances of the client (e.g. operations on bookmark lists) are all carried out through the service objects associated with the `InternetClient` object in question. These are accessed using the `getService()` method.

## Methods

---

### `addInternetClientListener(InternetClientListener)`

```
public void addInternetClientListener(org.dvb.internet.InternetClientListener l)
```

Add a listener for `InternetClientEvents`. If the listener is already registered, or the client is not running, then calls to this method have no effect.

#### Parameters:

l - the listener to be added.

---

### `getService()`

```
public org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService getService()
```

Get the service object which matches this internet client. In the case of a web browser, for example, this would be an instance of the `WWWBrowserService` class.

#### Returns:

the service which matches the `InternetClient` object.

---

### `getServiceContentLocators()`

```
public javax.tv.locator.Locator[] getServiceContentLocators()
```

Reports the portions of the service on which this handler operates.

#### Overrides:

`getServiceContentLocators` in interface `ServiceContentHandler`

#### Returns:

An array of length 1, containing the locator representing the internet client. This shall be the same locator returned by calls to `getService().getLocator()`.

---

**removeInternetClientListener(InternetClientListener)**

```
public void removeInternetClientListener(org.dvb.internet.InternetClientListener l)
```

Remove a listener for `InternetClientEvents`. If the listener is not registered, or the client is not running, then calls to this method have no effect.

**Parameters:**

l - the listener to be added.

# org.dvb.internet InternetClientEvent

## Declaration

```
public class InternetClientEvent extends java.util.EventObject
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|  
+--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Direct Known Subclasses:

```
InternetClientFailureEvent, InternetClientSuccessEvent
```

## Description

Base class for all status events from internet clients.

## Constructors

---

### InternetClientEvent(Object, URL)

```
public InternetClientEvent(java.lang.Object source, java.net.URL url)
```

Construct a new `InternetClientEvent`

#### Parameters:

- `source` - the source of the event
- `url` - the URL to which the event relates.

## Methods

---

### getUrl()

```
public java.net.URL getUrl()
```

Get the URL for which this event was generated. In the case that a URL was not specified when the event was constructed, null shall be returned.

#### Returns:

an instance of `java.net.URL` or null

# org.dvb.internet InternetClientFailureEvent

## Declaration

public class **InternetClientFailureEvent** extends [InternetClientEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientFailureEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

[java.io.Serializable](#)

## Direct Known Subclasses:

[CancelledByUserEvent](#), [PermissionDeniedEvent](#), [URLUnavailableEvent](#)

## Description

Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed. Typically, internet clients will post subclasses of this event detailing the reason why the operation failed.

## Constructors

---

### **InternetClientFailureEvent(Object, URL)**

```
public InternetClientFailureEvent(java.lang.Object source, java.net.URL url)
```

Construct a new `InternetClientFailureEvent`

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`url` - the URL to which the event relates.

# org.dvb.internet InternetClientListener

## Declaration

```
public interface InternetClientListener extends java.util.EventListener
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
java.util.EventListener
```

## Description

Interface for objects that wish to receive InternetClientEvents

## Methods

---

### receiveInternetClientEvent(InternetClientEvent)

```
public void receiveInternetClientEvent(org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent event)
```

The method to be called when an InternetClientEvent is received.

#### Parameters:

event - the received InternetClientEvent

# org.dvb.internet InternetClientService

## Declaration

```
public interface InternetClientService extends javax.tv.service.Service
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
javax.tv.service.Service
```

## All Known Subinterfaces:

```
EmailClientService, UsenetClientService, WWWBrowserService
```

## Description

The base class for the interface to resident applications that are supported by the internet access profile.

The lifecycle of an application which implements this interface or its subclasses is for a broadcast service. The application is started by selecting the appropriate service (using the `Locator` object returned by calls to `getLocator()`). If this service is selected in the service context which contains the executing application, any currently presented content will be stopped and the application will be destroyed before the client is launched. Calling `destroy()` or `stop()` on the service context in which the client is running will cause the client to be terminated.

Methods in this API will not affect the lifecycle of the calling application.

## Methods

---

### canRunApplication()

```
public boolean canRunApplication()
```

Returns true if the application can run without having to stop the downloaded MHP application.

**Returns:**

true if the application can be run without stopping the calling application, or false otherwise.

---

### getName()

```
public java.lang.String getName()
```

Returns a short service name or an acronym. In the case of subclasses of `InternetClient`, the returned value is implementation dependent

**Overrides:**

```
getName in interface Service
```

**Returns:**

A string representing this service's short name.

---

**getServiceType()**

```
public javax.tv.service.ServiceType getServiceType()
```

Returns the type of this service. In the case of internet clients, one of the service types defined in the `InternetServiceType` class shall be returned.

**Overrides:**

`getServiceType` in interface `Service`

**Returns:**

The service type of this `Service`.

---

**getSupportedClientServices()**

```
public org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService[] getSupportedClientServices()
```

Returns all `InternetClientServices` supported by the same application as this one. This `InternetClientService` is included in the array.

**Returns:**

an array of `InternetClientServices`

---

**hasMultipleInstances()**

```
public boolean hasMultipleInstances()
```

This method indicates whether the service represented by this `Service` is available on multiple transports. This method has no effect in the case of an `InternetClient`

**Overrides:**

`hasMultipleInstances` in interface `Service`

**Returns:**

`FALSE` always for `InternetClient` instances

---

**retrieveDetails(SIRequestor)**

```
public javax.tv.service.SIRequest retrieveDetails(javax.tv.service.SIRequestor requestor)
```

This method will always fail when called for an `InternetClient`. The requestor will always be notified of a failure of type `DATA_UNAVAILABLE`.

**Overrides:**

`retrieveDetails` in interface `Service`

**Parameters:**

`requestor` - - The `SIRequestor` to be notified when this retrieval operation completes.

**Returns:**

An `SIRequest` object identifying the request

---



# org.dvb.internet InternetClientSuccessEvent

## Declaration

public class **InternetClientSuccessEvent** extends [InternetClientEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
|
+--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent
|
+--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientSuccessEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

Event indicating that an operation on an internet client succeeded

## Constructors

---

### InternetClientSuccessEvent(Object, URL)

```
public InternetClientSuccessEvent(java.lang.Object source, java.net.URL url)
```

Construct a new `InternetClientSuccessEvent`

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`url` - the URL to which the event relates.

# org.dvb.internet InternetServiceFilter

## Declaration

```
public final class InternetServiceFilter extends javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceFilter  
  
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceFilter  
|  
+--org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter
```

## Description

`InternetServiceFilter` represents a service type for a particular kind of internet client. A `ServiceList` resulting from this filter will include only services providing access to the specified type of internet client.

## Fields

---

### EMAIL\_CLIENT

```
public static final int EMAIL_CLIENT  
Constant identifying an email client service
```

---

### NEWS\_CLIENT

```
public static final int NEWS_CLIENT  
Constant identifying a usenet news client service
```

---

### WWW\_CLIENT

```
public static final int WWW_CLIENT  
Constant identifying a WWW client service
```

## Constructors

---

### InternetServiceFilter(int)

```
public InternetServiceFilter(int service_type)
```

Constructs the filter based on a particular type of internet client service. The types of service required are those defined by the constants in this class. Support for other values is platform dependent. Platforms not supporting services of the type specified shall return an empty `ServiceList` when instances of this class constructed using that type are used.

#### Parameters:

`service_type` - the type of service required

## Methods

---

### **accept(Service)**

```
public boolean accept(javax.tv.service.Service service)
```

Tests if a particular service represents an internet client of the type specified in the constructor of this instance.

**Overrides:**

accept in class ServiceFilter

**Parameters:**

*service* - A Service to be evaluated against the filtering algorithm.

**Returns:**

true if service satisfies the filtering algorithm; false otherwise.

# org.dvb.internet InternetServiceType

## Declaration

```
public class InternetServiceType extends javax.tv.service.ServiceType
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--javax.tv.service.ServiceType  
|  
+--org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceType
```

## Description

Class representing the additional service types available in the Internet Access profile. When this service type is used in a `javax.tv.service.navigation.ServiceTypeFilter` for filtering available services on their type, all internet client services shall be returned. Applications wishing to obtain a specific sub-type of internet client service should use `InternetServiceFilter`.

## See Also:

[InternetServiceFilter](#)

## Fields

---

### INTERNET\_CLIENT

```
public static final javax.tv.service.ServiceType INTERNET_CLIENT  
WWW service type
```

## Constructors

---

### InternetServiceType(String)

```
protected InternetServiceType(java.lang.String name)
```

This protected constructor is provided for implementation use and to enable future evolution of this or other specifications. It shall not be called by inter-operable applications.

#### Parameters:

name - the name of the service type

# org.dvb.internet PermissionDeniedEvent

## Declaration

public class **PermissionDeniedEvent** extends [InternetClientFailureEvent](#)

```
java.lang.Object
|
+--java.util.EventObject
    |
    +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent
        |
        +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientFailureEvent
            |
            +--org.dvb.internet.PermissionDeniedEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

java.io.Serializable

## Description

Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed due to the specified URL not being accessible by the client due to access controls on the server.

## Constructors

---

### PermissionDeniedEvent(Object, URL)

```
public PermissionDeniedEvent(java.lang.Object source, java.net.URL url)
```

Construct a new `PermissionDeniedEvent`

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`url` - the URL to which the event relates.

# org.dvb.internet URLUnavailableEvent

## Declaration

```
public class URLUnavailableEvent extends InternetClientFailureEvent
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.util.EventObject  
|   |  
|   +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent  
|       |  
|       +--org.dvb.internet.InternetClientFailureEvent  
|           |  
|           +--org.dvb.internet.URLUnavailableEvent
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

Event indicating that an operation on an internet client failed due to the specified URL not being available. This could be because a server is not available or because a file is not available on that server

## Constructors

---

### URLUnavailableEvent(Object, URL)

```
public URLUnavailableEvent(java.lang.Object source, java.net.URL url)
```

Construct a new `URLUnavailableEvent`

#### Parameters:

`source` - the source of the event

`url` - the URL to which the event relates.

# org.dvb.internet UsenetClient

## Declaration

```
public interface UsenetClient extends InternetClient
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
InternetClient, javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContentHandler
```

## Description

This interface supports the operations required on a Usenet news client.

Any URLs passed to methods in this interface should correspond to the usenet news URL format specified in RFC 1738

## Methods

---

### selectGroup(URL)

```
public void selectGroup(java.net.URL group)
    throws ClientNotRunningException
```

Select and display messages in the specified newsgroup. If the news client is not running, then this method will not cause it to be started and the call will fail.

This is an asynchronous operation, whose success or failure will be indicated by an `InternetClientSuccessEvent` or `InternetClientFailureEvent` or one of their subclasses.

#### Parameters:

`group` - the URL of the group. This may or may not include the address of a news server.

#### Throws:

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the caller does not have a `SocketPermission` for the host part of the specified URL.

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the specified URL does not correspond to the Usenet news URL format specified in RFC 1738

`ClientNotRunningException` - if the client is not currently running.

---

**selectMessage(URL)**

```
public void selectMessage(java.net.URL message)
    throws ClientNotRunningException
```

Select and display a message with the given message ID. If the news client is not running, then this method will not cause it to be started and the call will fail.

This is an asynchronous operation, whose success or failure will be indicated by an `InternetClientSuccessEvent` or `InternetClientFailureEvent` or one of their subclasses.

**Parameters:**

`message` - the URL of the message. This may or may not include the address of a news server.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the caller does not have a `SocketPermission` for the host part of the specified URL

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the specified URL does not include a Usenet news message ID or does not correspond to the Usenet news URL format specified in RFC 1738

`ClientNotRunningException` - if the client is not currently running.



# org.dvb.internet UsenetClientService

## Declaration

```
public interface UsenetClientService extends InternetClientService
```

## All Superinterfaces:

```
InternetClientService, javax.tv.service.Service
```

## Description

Service representing the resident usenet news client

## Methods

---

### setInitialGroup(URL)

```
public void setInitialGroup(java.net.URL group)
```

Set the initial group to be displayed when the news client starts. This URL is specific to this instance of UsenetClientService and will not impact any other instance and is only valid for the lifetime of this instance. Calling this method and then selecting the UsenetClientService instance is equivalent to selecting the UsenetClientService instance, obtaining the UsenetClient and then calling the selectMessage method there. If the application calling this method is still running when the message is sent (or fails) and has registered an InternetClientListener then the appropriate InternetClientEvent shall be sent corresponding to the success or failure of the operation to send the message. Calls to setInitialGroup shall cancel previous calls to setInitialMessage and vice-versa on the same UsenetClientService instance.

#### Parameters:

`message` - the URL of the message. This may or may not include the address of a news server

#### Throws:

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the specified URL does not correspond to the Usenet news URL format specified in RFC 1738

---

### setInitialMessage(URL)

```
public void setInitialMessage(java.net.URL message)
```

Set the initial message to be used when the news client starts. This URL is specific to this instance of UsenetClientService and will not impact any other instance and is only valid for the lifetime of this instance. Calling this method and then selecting the UsenetClientService instance is equivalent to selecting the UsenetClientService instance, obtaining the UsenetClient and then calling the selectMessage method there. If the application calling this method is still running when the message is sent (or fails) and has registered an InternetClientListener then the appropriate InternetClientEvent shall be sent corresponding to the success or failure of the operation to send the message. Calls to setInitialGroup shall cancel previous calls to setInitialMessage and vice-versa on the same UsenetClientService instance.

#### Parameters:

`message` - the URL of the message. This may or may not include the address of a news server

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the specified URL does not include a Usenet news message ID or does not correspond to the Usenet news URL format specified in RFC 1738

---

**subscribe(String)**

```
public void subscribe(java.lang.String newsgroup)
    throws IOException
```

Add a newsgroup to the list currently subscribed newsgroups. If the newsgroup is already in the list, then this method has no effect. As a side-effect a newsgroup previously subscribed to by this method may be unsubscribed. Implementations may restrict the number of newsgroups a single MHP application or source of applications may subscribe to.

**Parameters:**

`newsgroup` - the name of the newsgroup that should be subscribed to

**Throws:**

`IOException` - if no more newsgroups can be added due to a lack of storage space

```
java.io.IOException
```

# org.dvb.internet WWWBrowser

## Declaration

public interface **WWWBrowser** extends [InternetClient](#)

## All Superinterfaces:

[InternetClient](#), `javax.tv.service.selection.ServiceContentHandler`

## Description

This interface provides support for the operations required on an WWW browser.

Any URLs passed to methods in this interface should correspond to the HTTP or FTP URL schemes specified in RFC 1738. Other schemes or URL formats may be supported, but these are implementation-specific and additional supported schemes should be discovered by querying the capabilities of the web browser if they are required.

## Methods

---

### goToURL(URL)

```
public void goToURL(java.net.URL url)
    throws ClientNotRunningException
```

Direct the web browser to display the page at the specified URL. If the web browser is not already running, then this method will not cause the web browser to be started and the call will fail.

This is an asynchronous operation, whose success or failure will be indicated by an `InternetClientSuccessEvent` or `InternetClientFailureEvent` or one of their subclasses.

#### Parameters:

`url` - the URL to visit

#### Throws:

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the caller does not have a `SocketPermission` for the host part of the specified URL

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the URL scheme is not supported by the web browser.

[ClientNotRunningException](#) - if the client is not currently running.

# org.dvb.internet WWWBrowserService

## Declaration

public interface **WWWBrowserService** extends [InternetClientService](#)

## All Superinterfaces:

[InternetClientService](#), [javax.tv.service.Service](#)

## Description

Service representing a resident WWW browser

## Methods

---

### addBookmark(Locator, String)

```
public void addBookmark(javax.tv.locator.Locator locator, java.lang.String name)
    throws EntryExistsException, IOException
```

Add a bookmark to the list of bookmarks in the current application. As a side-effect a bookmark previously added by this method may be lost. Implementations may restrict the number of bookmarks a single MHP application or source of applications may add.

#### Parameters:

`locator` - the Locator that should be added to the bookmarks list

`name` - the name that should be displayed for that locator in the bookmarks list. Multiple entries in the bookmarks list may not have the same name.

#### Throws:

[EntryExistsException](#) - if a bookmark with both the same name and the same locator already exists in the bookmarks list.

[IOException](#) - if no more bookmarks can be added due to a lack of storage space or a limitation in the client

[java.io.IOException](#)

---

### addBookmark(URL, String)

```
public void addBookmark(java.net.URL bookmarkUrl, java.lang.String name)
    throws EntryExistsException, IOException
```

Add a bookmark to the list of bookmarks in the current application. As a side-effect a bookmark previously added by this method may be lost. Implementations may restrict the number of bookmarks a single MHP application or source of applications may add.

#### Parameters:

`bookmarkUrl` - the URL that should be added to the bookmarks list.

`name` - the name that should be displayed for that URL in the bookmarks list.

#### Throws:

[EntryExistsException](#) - if a bookmark with both the same name and the same URL already exists in the bookmarks list.

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the URL scheme is not supported by the application.

`IOException` - if no more bookmarks can be added due to a lack of storage space or other limitation in the client

`java.io.IOException`

---

### **areFramesSupported()**

```
public boolean areFramesSupported()
```

Check whether frames are supported by the browser and enabled.

**Returns:**

true if the browser supports frames and frame support is enabled by the user, false otherwise.

---

### **getAcceptedMediaTypes()**

```
public java.lang.String[] getAcceptedMediaTypes()
```

Returns an array of supported MIME types, e.g. "application/vnd.rn-realmedia". The returned MIME types shall include at least one entry with type "text/html". Each entry of this type shall have a 'version' parameter that indicates the version of HTML that is supported, for example text/html; version = "4.0". A browser may claim to support an HTML version while only implementing a subset of the features - this is implementation-dependent. A browser that wishes to explicitly indicate support for multiple HTML versions shall return multiple entries of type "text/html" with different values for the 'version' parameter.

**Returns:**

an array of MIME types supported by the web browser

---

### **getSupportedPlugins()**

```
public java.lang.String[] getSupportedPlugins()
```

Returns an array of names of installed plug-ins. The name in each string is defined by the plug-in provider

**Returns:**

an array of plugin names

---

### **getUserAgent()**

```
public java.lang.String getUserAgent()
```

Returns the string used in the HTTP "User-Agent" header.

**Returns:**

the string identifying the user agent

---

### **setHomepage(URL)**

```
public void setHomepage(java.net.URL defaultUrl)
```

Set the home page for the web browser.

**Parameters:**

`defaultUrl` - the URL to be used as the default when the application is launched with no starting URL.

**Throws:**

`java.lang.SecurityException` - if the caller does not have a `HomePagePermission`

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the URL scheme is not supported by the application. Different classes which implement or extend this interface may implement different schemes.

---

**setInitialURL(URL)**

```
public void setInitialURL(java.net.URL initialUrl)
```

Set the initial URL to be used when the WWW browser starts. This URL is specific to this instance of `WWWBrowserService` and will not impact any other instance and is only valid for the lifetime of this instance. Calling this method and then selecting the `WWWBrowserService` instance is equivalent to selecting the `WWWBrowserService` instance, obtaining the `WWWBrowser` and then calling the `goToURL` method there. If the application calling this method is still running when the specified initial page is displayed (or fails) and has registered an `InternetClientListener` then the appropriate `InternetClientEvent` shall be sent corresponding to the success or failure of the operation to display the specified initial URL.

**Parameters:**

`initialUrl` - the URL to use

**Throws:**

`java.lang.IllegalArgumentException` - if the URL scheme is not supported by the application. Different classes which implement or extend this interface may implement different schemes.

---

## **Annex AI (normative): Non-CA Smartcard APIs**

# Package

# org.dvb.smartcard

## Description

Provides DVB specific support for smart card reader APIs.

### Class Summary

#### Classes

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <code>SmartCardPermission</code> | This class is for permissions related to access to smart cards via the smart card API. |
|----------------------------------|--|



# org.dvb.smartcard SmartCardPermission

## Declaration

```
public class SmartCardPermission extends java.security.BasicPermission
```

```
java.lang.Object  
|  
+--java.security.Permission  
|  
+--java.security.BasicPermission  
|  
+--org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission
```

## All Implemented Interfaces:

```
java.security.Guard, java.io.Serializable
```

## Description

This class is for permissions related to access to smart cards via the smart card API. A `SmartCardPermission` contains no name and no actions list. If an application has the `SmartCard` permission, then it is allowed to access the `SmartCard` API and any smart cards via that API.

## Constructors

---

### SmartCardPermission(String)

```
public SmartCardPermission(java.lang.String name)
```

Creates a new `SmartCardPermission`. The name parameter is not used and must be set to empty string `""`. Implementations of this version of this specification shall ignore the name, but it could be taken into use in future versions of this specification.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name of the `SmartCardPermission`. Not used, shall be `""`.

---

### SmartCardPermission(String, String)

```
public SmartCardPermission(java.lang.String name, java.lang.String actions)
```

Creates a new `SmartCardPermission`. The name and actions parameters are not used. Implementations of this version of this specification shall ignore the name and actions, but they could be taken into use in future versions of this specification. This constructor exists for use by the Policy object to instantiate new `Permission` objects.

#### Parameters:

`name` - the name of the `SmartCardPermission`. Not used, shall be `""`.

`actions` - Not used, shall be null.

# Index

---

## Symbols

- abort()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 718
- accept(AppID)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter 827
  - of org.dvb.application.CurrentServiceFilter 831
  - of org.dvb.application.RunningApplicationsFilter 838
- accept(Service)
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter 1027
- ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent
  - of org.dvb.media 658
- ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent(Object, int)
  - of org.dvb.media.ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent 658
- add(int, String)
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 561
- add(String)
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 561
- add(String[])
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 561
- addAllArrowKeys()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 545
- addAllColourKeys()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 545
- addAllNumericKeys()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 545
- addAppStateChangeListener(AppStateChangeListener)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 814
- addBookmark(Locator, String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1036
- addBookmark(URL, String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1036
- addBouquetMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 589
- addConnectionListener(ConnectionListener)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 786
- addEventPresentFollowingMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 590
- addEventScheduleMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int, Date, Date)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 590
- addExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent(ResourceClient, UserEventRepository)
  - of org.dvb.event.EventManager 532
- addHFocusListener(HFocusListener)
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 963
- addInnerApplicationListener(InnerApplicationListener)
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 963
- addInternetClientListener(InternetClientListener)
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetClient 1018
- addKey(int)
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 545
- addListener(AppsDatabaseEventListener)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 820

addNetworkMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)  
of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 591

addNPTListener(NPTListener)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 725

addObjectChangeEventListener(ObjectChangeEventListener)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 718

addPMTServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)  
of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 592

addResourceStatusEventListener(ResourceStatusListener)  
of org.dvb.event.EventManager 533  
of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 796

addServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int)  
of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 592

addSubtitleListener(SubtitleListener)  
of org.dvb.media.SubtitlingEventControl 684

addTextOverflowListener(TextOverflowListener)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 874

addToAddressBook(String, String)  
of org.dvb.internet.EmailClientService 1014

addUserEvent(UserEvent)  
of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 545

addUserEventListener(UserEventListener, ResourceClient, UserEventRepository)  
of org.dvb.event.EventManager 533

addUserEventListener(UserEventListener, UserEventRepository)  
of org.dvb.event.EventManager 534

addUserPreferenceChangeListener(UserPreferenceChangeListener)  
of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager 567

addVideoFormatListener(VideoFormatListener)  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688

addWindowListener(WindowListener)  
of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 957

AFD\_14\_9  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 685

AFD\_14\_9\_TOP  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 685

AFD\_16\_9  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 685

AFD\_16\_9\_SP\_14\_9  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 685

AFD\_16\_9\_SP\_4\_3  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 685

AFD\_16\_9\_TOP  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686

AFD\_4\_3  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686

AFD\_4\_3\_SP\_14\_9  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686

AFD\_GT\_16\_9  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686

AFD\_NOT\_PRESENT  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686

AFD\_SAME  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686

APP\_ADDED  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 823

APP\_CHANGED  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 823

APP\_DELETED  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 824

AppAttributes  
of org.dvb.application 805

AppIcon  
of org.dvb.application 810

AppIcon()  
of org.dvb.application.AppIcon 810

AppID  
of org.dvb.application 811

AppID(int, int)  
of org.dvb.application.AppID 811

ApplicationDownloadException  
of org.dvb.application.storage 991

ApplicationDownloadException()  
of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationDownloadException 991

ApplicationDownloadException(String)  
of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationDownloadException 991

ApplicationSecurityContext  
of org.dvb.application.plugins 971

ApplicationSecurityContext(URL[], URL, AppID)  
of org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext 971

ApplicationStorage  
of org.dvb.application.storage 992

ApplicationStoragePermission  
of org.dvb.application.storage 995

ApplicationStoragePermission(String)  
of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission 995

ApplicationStoragePermission(String, String)  
of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStoragePermission 996

AppProxy  
of org.dvb.application 813

AppsControlPermission  
of org.dvb.application 817

AppsControlPermission()  
of org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission 817

AppsControlPermission(String, String)  
of org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission 817

AppsDatabase  
of org.dvb.application 819

AppsDatabase()  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 820

AppsDatabaseEvent  
of org.dvb.application 823

AppsDatabaseEvent(int, AppID, Object)  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 824

AppsDatabaseEventListener  
of org.dvb.application 825

AppsDatabaseFilter  
of org.dvb.application 827

AppsDatabaseFilter()  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseFilter 827

AppStateChangeEvent

- of org.dvb.application 828
- AppStateChangeEvent(AppID, int, int, Object, boolean)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent 828
- AppStateChangeListener
  - of org.dvb.application 830
- areFramesSupported()
  - of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1037
- ASPECT\_RATIO\_16\_9
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686
- ASPECT\_RATIO\_2\_21\_1
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686
- ASPECT\_RATIO\_4\_3
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 686
- ASPECT\_RATIO\_UNKNOWN
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- AspectRatioChangedEvent
  - of org.dvb.media 659
- AspectRatioChangedEvent(Object, int)
  - of org.dvb.media.AspectRatioChangedEvent 659
- asynchronousLoad(AsynchronousLoadingEventListener)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 719
- AsynchronousLoadingEvent
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 713
- AsynchronousLoadingEvent(DSMCCObject)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent 713
- AsynchronousLoadingEventListener
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 714
- attach(byte[])
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 760
- attach(Locator)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 760
- attach(Locator, int)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 761
- BackgroundVideoPresentationControl
  - of org.dvb.media 660
- bind(XletContext, String, Remote)
  - of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 904
- bind(XletContext, String, Remote, boolean)
  - of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 905
- BOUQUET
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType 623
- BOUQUET\_NAME
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 576
- brighter()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 864
- CA\_FAILURE
  - of org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent 673
- CA\_IDENTIFIER
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 576
- CA\_RETURNED
  - of org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent 673
- CABLE\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 576
- CAException
  - of org.dvb.media 661

- CAException()
  - of org.dvb.media.CAException 661
- CAException(String)
  - of org.dvb.media.CAException 661
- CancelledByUserEvent
  - of org.dvb.internet 1011
- CancelledByUserEvent(Object, URL)
  - of org.dvb.internet.CancelledByUserEvent 1011
- cancelRequest()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIRequest 630
- canRunApplication()
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService 1023
- CAPermission
  - of org.dvb.net.ca 841
- CAPermission(String)
  - of org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission 841
- CAPermission(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission 842
- CAStopEvent
  - of org.dvb.media 662
- CAStopEvent(Controller)
  - of org.dvb.media.CAStopEvent 662
- CAStopEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)
  - of org.dvb.media.CAStopEvent 662
- checkPermission(Permission)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext 972
- CLEAR
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 850
- Clear
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 850
- ClientNotRunningException
  - of org.dvb.internet 1012
- ClientNotRunningException()
  - of org.dvb.internet.ClientNotRunningException 1012
- ClientNotRunningException(String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.ClientNotRunningException 1012
- close() - of org.davic.net.ca.MMIObjct 416
- COMPONENT
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 576
- connect()
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 666
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 787
- connectionChanged(ConnectionRCEvent)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionListener 782
- ConnectionEstablishedEvent
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 780
- ConnectionEstablishedEvent(Object)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionEstablishedEvent 780
- ConnectionFailedEvent
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 781
- ConnectionFailedEvent(Object)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionFailedEvent 781
- ConnectionListener
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 782
- ConnectionParameters

- of org.dvb.net.rc 783
- ConnectionParameters(String, String, String)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters 783
- ConnectionParameters(String, String, String, InetAddress[])
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters 783
- ConnectionRCEvent
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 785
- ConnectionRCEvent(Object)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCEvent 785
- ConnectionRCInterface
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 786
- ConnectionRCInterface()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 786
- ConnectionTerminatedEvent
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 790
- ConnectionTerminatedEvent(Object)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionTerminatedEvent 790
- CONTENT
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 576
- convertSIStrngToJavaString(byte[], int, int, boolean)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIUtil 653
- COUNTRY\_AVAILABILITY
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 576
- createEmbeddedContext(URL[], Locator)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext 972
- createFont(String, int, int)
  - of org.dvb.ui.FontFactory 880
- createGraphics()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 856
- createMessage(String, String, String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.EmailClient 1013
- createStoredApplicationService(int, int, String)
  - of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredServiceCreator 1005
- CurrentServiceFilter
  - of org.dvb.application 831
- CurrentServiceFilter()
  - of org.dvb.application.CurrentServiceFilter 831
- D\_D2\_MAC
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 642
- DAR\_16\_9
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DAR\_4\_3
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- darker()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 865
- DATA\_BROADCAST
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 642
- DatagramSocketBufferControl
  - of org.dvb.net 777
- Descriptor
  - of org.dvb.si 574
- Descriptor()
  - of org.dvb.si.Descriptor 574
- DescriptorTag

- of org.dvb.si 576
- DESTROYED
  - of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 813
- detach()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 761
- DFC\_PLATFORM
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_16\_9\_ZOOM
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_CCO
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_FULL
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_14\_9
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_16\_9
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 687
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1\_ON\_16\_9
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_LB\_2\_21\_1\_ON\_4\_3
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_NONE
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_PAN\_SCAN
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688
- DFC\_PROCESSING\_UNKNOWN
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688
- DFCChangedEvent
  - of org.dvb.media 664
- DFCChangedEvent(Object, int)
  - of org.dvb.media.DFCChangedEvent 664
- DIGITAL\_RADIO\_SOUND
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 642
- DIGITAL\_TELEVISION
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 642
- disconnect()
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 666
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 787
- dispose()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 857
- DocumentAction
  - of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap 948
- DocumentFactory
  - of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap 949
- DOM
  - of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentFactory 949
- doPrivileged(PrivilegedAction)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext 972
- DripFeedDataSource
  - of org.dvb.media 665
- DripFeedDataSource()
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 665
- DripFeedPermission
  - of org.dvb.media 668
- DripFeedPermission(String)



- of org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission 668
- DripFeedPermission(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission 668
- DSMCCException
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 715
- DSMCCException()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCException 715
- DSMCCException(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCException 715
- DSMCCObject
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 716
- DSMCCObject(DSMCCObject, String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 717
- DSMCCObject(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 718
- DSMCCObject(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 718
- DSMCCStream
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 724
- DSMCCStream(DSMCCObject)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 724
- DSMCCStream(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 724
- DSMCCStream(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 725
- DSMCCStreamEvent
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 728
- DSMCCStreamEvent(DSMCCObject)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 728
- DSMCCStreamEvent(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 728
- DSMCCStreamEvent(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 729
- DST\_IN
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 850
- DST\_OUT
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 850
- DST\_OVER
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 850
- DstIn
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 851
- DstOut
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 851
- DstOver
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 851
- DVB\_HTML\_application
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 805
- DVB\_J\_application
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 805
- DVBAlphaComposite
  - of org.dvb.ui 849
- DVBBufferedImage
  - of org.dvb.ui 855
- DVBBufferedImage(int, int)
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 856

DVBBufferedImage(int, int, int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 856

DVBClassLoader  
of org.dvb.lang 525

DVBClassLoader(URL[])  
of org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader 525

DVBClassLoader(URL[], ClassLoader)  
of org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader 525

DVBColor  
of org.dvb.ui 863

DVBColor(Color)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 863

DVBColor(float, float, float, float)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 863

DVBColor(int, boolean)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 864

DVBColor(int, int, int, int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 864

DVBGraphics  
of org.dvb.ui 867

DVBGraphics()  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 867

DVBHTMLProxy  
of org.dvb.application 832

DVBJProxy  
of org.dvb.application 834

DVBMediaSelectControl  
of org.dvb.media 670

DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil  
of org.dvb.net.tuning 844

DVBRasterFormatException  
of org.dvb.ui 871

DVBRasterFormatException(String)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBRasterFormatException 871

DVBScene  
of org.dvb.application.inner 957

DVBTest  
of org.dvb.test 896

DVBTextLayoutManager  
of org.dvb.ui 872

DVBTextLayoutManager()  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 874

DVBTextLayoutManager(int, int, int, int, boolean, int, int, int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 874

EMAIL\_CLIENT  
of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter 1026

EmailClient  
of org.dvb.internet 1013

EmailClientService  
of org.dvb.internet 1014

enableShortcuts(boolean)  
of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 957

entryAdded(AppsDatabaseEvent)  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEventListener 825

entryChanged(AppsDatabaseEvent)

- of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEventListener 825
- EntryExistsException
  - of org.dvb.internet 1016
- EntryExistsException()
  - of org.dvb.internet.EntryExistsException 1016
- EntryExistsException(String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.EntryExistsException 1016
- entryRemoved(AppsDatabaseEvent)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEventListener 825
- equals(Object)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppID 811
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission 818
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 853
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 865
- EventManager
  - of org.dvb.event 532
- EventManager()
  - of org.dvb.event.EventManager 532
- EXTENDED\_EVENT
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577
- ExtendedAppAttributes
  - of org.dvb.application.storage 997
- Facility
  - of org.dvb.user 558
- Facility(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.user.Facility 558
- Facility(String, String[])
  - of org.dvb.user.Facility 558
- FAIL
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 896
- feed(byte[])
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 666
- FileAccessPermissions
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent 551
- FileAccessPermissions(boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean)
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 551
- FileAttributes
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent 553
- fillBackground(Graphics, HVisible, int) - of org.havi.ui.HExtendedLook 447
- findClass(String)
  - of org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader 526
- flush()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 857
- FM\_RADIO
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 642
- FontFactory
  - of org.dvb.ui 879
- FontFactory()
  - of org.dvb.ui.FontFactory 879
- FontFactory(URL)
  - of org.dvb.ui.FontFactory 879
- FontFormatException
  - of org.dvb.ui 881
- FontFormatException()
  - of org.dvb.ui.FontFormatException 881

FontFormatException(String)  
of org.dvb.ui.FontFormatException 881

FontNotAvailableException  
of org.dvb.ui 882

FontNotAvailableException()  
of org.dvb.ui.FontNotAvailableException 882

FontNotAvailableException(String)  
of org.dvb.ui.FontNotAvailableException 882

FREQUENCY\_LIST  
of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577

FROM\_CACHE  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 717

FROM\_CACHE\_ONLY  
of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 612

FROM\_CACHE\_OR\_STREAM  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 717  
of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 612

FROM\_STREAM\_ONLY  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 717  
of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 612

fromActual()  
of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 613

GeneralPreference  
of org.dvb.user 559

GeneralPreference(String)  
of org.dvb.user.GeneralPreference 559

getAcceptedMediaTypes()  
of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1037

getActions()  
of org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission 818

getActiveFormatDefinition()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 688

getActiveVideoArea()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 694

getActiveVideoAreaOnScreen()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 694

getAID()  
of org.dvb.application.AppID 812

getAllShortcutKeycodes()  
of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 957

getAlpha()  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 853  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 865

getAppAttributes(AppID)  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 820

getAppAttributes(AppsDatabaseFilter)  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 821

getAppData()  
of org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent 632

getAppIcon()  
of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 805

getAppID()  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 824  
of org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent 829

getAppIDs(AppsDatabaseFilter)

- of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 821
- getAppProxy(AppID)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 821
- getAppsDatabase()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 822
- getAspectRatio()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 689
- getAvailableCompositeRules()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 868
- getBackgroundImage()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 957
- getBackgroundMode()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 958
- getBestColorMatch(Color)
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 868
- getBouquetID()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 585
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 620
  - of org.dvb.si.SITransportStreamBAT 650
- getByteAt(int)
  - of org.dvb.si.Descriptor 574
- getCarouselId()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference 768
- getClassLoader(String[])
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext 973
- getClient()
  - of org.dvb.event.RepositoryDescriptor 536
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 787
- getClipRegion()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 694
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 699
- getClosestMatch(VideoTransformation)
  - of org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl 660
- getCode()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 538
- getColor()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 868
- getComponentTag()
  - of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 580
- getConnectedTime()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 787
- getContent()
  - of org.dvb.si.Descriptor 575
- getContentLength()
  - of org.dvb.si.Descriptor 575
- getContentNibbles()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 606
- getContentType()
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 666
- getControl(String)
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 666
- getControls()
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 667
- getCurrentTarget()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 788

getCurrentVersionNumber()  
of org.dvb.application.storage.ExtendedAppAttributes 997

getDataRate()  
of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 794

getDataSource()  
of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 613

getDecoderFormatConversion()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 689

getDenominator()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRate 750

getDescriptorTags()  
of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 585  
of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 613  
of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 624

getDisplayAspectRatio()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 689

getDNSServer()  
of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters 784

getDuration()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 725  
of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 667  
of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 606

getDVBComposite()  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 869

getDvbLocator()  
of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 580  
of org.dvb.si.PMTService 582  
of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 607  
of org.dvb.si.SIService 636  
of org.dvb.si.SITransportStream 648

getEITPresentFollowingFlag()  
of org.dvb.si.SIService 636

getEITScheduleFlag()  
of org.dvb.si.SIService 636

getElementaryPID()  
of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 580

getElementaryStreams() - of org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException 402

getEndTime()  
of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 620

getEventData()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent 770

getEventID()  
of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 607

getEventId()  
of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 824  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent 771

getEventList()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 729

getEventName()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent 771

getEventNPT()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent 771

getExpirationDate()  
of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 553

getFamily()

- of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 538
- getFavourites()
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 561
- getFileAttributes(File)
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 554
- getFirstNPT()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTDiscontinuityEvent 747
- getFocusOwner()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 958
- getFreeCAMode()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 607
  - of org.dvb.si.SIService 636
- getFromState()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent 829
- getGainFocusSound()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 963
- getGraphics()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 857
- getHeight()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 857
- getHeight(ImageObserver)
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 857
- getHorizontalAlign()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 874
- getHorizontalScalingFactors()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 695
- getHorizontalTabSpacing()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 875
- getIconFlags()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppIcon 810
- getIdentifier()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 806
- getImage()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 858
- getInputVideoSize()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 695
- getInsets()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 875
- getInstance()
  - of org.dvb.event.EventManager 534
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 796
  - of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager 567
- getInstance(int)
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 853
- getInstance(int, float)
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 853
- getInterface(InetAddress)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 796
- getInterface(Socket)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 797
- getInterface(URLConnection)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 797
- getInterfaces()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 797
- getInvocationHandler(Object)

- of org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy 980
- getServiceBound()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 806
- getKeyChar()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 538
- getLastNPT()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTDiscontinuityEvent 747
- getLetterSpace()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 875
- getLevel1ContentNibbles()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 607
- getLineOrientation()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 875
- getLineSpace()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 875
- getLocator()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppIcon 810
  - of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1002
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 761
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference 769
- getLoseFocusSound()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 963
- getModifiers()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 538
- getMostFavourite()
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 561
- getMountPoint()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 762
- getMove(int)
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 963
- getName()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 806
  - of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1003
  - of org.dvb.event.RepositoryDescriptor 536
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService 1023
  - of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 586
  - of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 607
  - of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 624
  - of org.dvb.si.SIService 637
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 562
  - of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeEvent 565
- getName(String)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 806
- getNames()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 807
- getNavigationKeys()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 964
- getNetworkID()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 620
  - of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 625
  - of org.dvb.si.SITransportStreamNIT 652
- getNetworkInterface(SIDatabase)
  - of org.dvb.net.tuning.DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil 844
- getNewDFC()
  - of org.dvb.media.DFCChangedEvent 664



getNewFormat()  
of org.dvb.media.ActiveFormatDescriptionChangedEvent 658

getNewRatio()  
of org.dvb.media.AspectRatioChangedEvent 659

getNewVersionNumber()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeEvent 754

getNPT()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 725

getNPTRate()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 726

getNSAPAddress()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 762  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference 769

getNumerator()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRate 750

getOID()  
of org.dvb.application.AppID 812

getOrganisationId()  
of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1003

getOriginalNetworkID()  
of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 581  
of org.dvb.si.PMTService 582  
of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 607  
of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 620  
of org.dvb.si.SIService 637  
of org.dvb.si.SITransportStream 648

getPassword()  
of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters 784

getPathName()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference 769

getPcrPid()  
of org.dvb.si.PMTService 582

getPermissions()  
of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 554

getPosition(String)  
of org.dvb.user.Preference 562

getPositioningCapability()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 695

getPriority()  
of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 807  
of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 554

getProfiles()  
of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 807

getProperty(String)  
of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 807

getProperty(String, ImageObserver)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 858

getProviderName()  
of org.dvb.si.SIService 637

getProxyClass(ClassLoader, Class[])  
of org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy 980

getRate()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRateChangeEvent 751

getReason()  
of org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent 674

getReason(int) - of org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException 403  
getReceiveBufferSize(DatagramSocket)  
    of org.dvb.net.DatagramSocketBufferControl 777  
getRenderMode()  
    of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 958  
getResource(String, boolean)  
    of org.dvb.application.plugins.ApplicationSecurityContext 973  
getResult()  
    of org.dvb.si.SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent 644  
getRGB()  
    of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 866  
getRGB(int, int)  
    of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 858  
getRGB(int, int, int, int, int[], int, int)  
    of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 859  
getRootContainer(XletContext)  
    of org.dvb.application.plugins.XletSystemCall 987  
getRule()  
    of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 854  
getRunningStatus()  
    of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 608  
    of org.dvb.si.SIService 637  
getScaledInstance(int, int, int)  
    of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 859  
getScalingFactors()  
    of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 699  
getService()  
    of org.dvb.internet.InternetClient 1018  
getService() - of org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException 403  
getServiceContentLocators()  
    of org.dvb.internet.InternetClient 1018  
getServiceID()  
    of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 581  
    of org.dvb.si.PMTService 582  
    of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 608  
    of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 620  
    of org.dvb.si.SIService 637  
getServiceId()  
    of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1003  
getServiceInformationType()  
    of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1003  
getServiceLocator()  
    of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 808  
getServiceType()  
    of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1003  
    of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService 1024  
getServiceXFR()  
    of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRErrorEvent 764  
    of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRException 767  
getSetupTimeEstimate()  
    of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 788  
getShortBouquetName()  
    of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 586  
getShortcutComponent(int)  
    of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 958

getShortcutKeycode(HActionable)  
     of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 958  
 getShortDescription()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 608  
 getShortEventName()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 608  
 getShortNetworkName()  
     of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 625  
 getShortProviderName()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 638  
 getShortServiceName()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 638  
 getSIDatabase()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 593  
     of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 613  
 getSIDatabase(NetworkInterface)  
     of org.dvb.net.tuning.DvbNetworkInterfaceSIUtil 844  
 getSigners()  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 719  
 getSigners(boolean)  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 719  
 getSIInformationType()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 621  
 getSIServiceLocators()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 586  
 getSIServiceType()  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 638  
 getSource()  
     of org.davic.mpeg.sections.TimeOutEvent 406  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEvent 713  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.InsufficientResourcesEvent 732  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidFormatEvent 735  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidPathnameEvent 737  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.LoadingAbortedEvent 739  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent 740  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.NotEntitledEvent 742  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRateChangeEvent 751  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent 753  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeEvent 755  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServerDeliveryErrorEvent 757  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRErrorEvent 765  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent 771  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.SuccessEvent 773  
     of org.dvb.event.UserEventAvailableEvent 542  
     of org.dvb.event.UserEventUnavailableEvent 548  
     of org.dvb.media.SubtitleAvailableEvent 679  
     of org.dvb.media.SubtitleNotAvailableEvent 681  
     of org.dvb.media.SubtitleNotSelectedEvent 682  
     of org.dvb.media.SubtitleSelectedEvent 683  
     of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceReleasedEvent 798  
     of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceReservedEvent 799  
     of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 621  
     of org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalEvent 633  
     of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 860  
 getStartCorner()

- of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 875
- getTime()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 608
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 621
- getState()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 814
- getStoredAppIDs()
  - of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStorage 992
- getStream()
  - of org.dvb.media.CAStopEvent 663
  - of org.dvb.media.NoComponentSelectedEvent 672
  - of org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent 674
  - of org.dvb.media.ServiceRemovedEvent 676
  - of org.dvb.media.StopByResourceLossEvent 678
- getStreamLocator()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 726
- getStreamType()
  - of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 581
- getSubimage(int, int, int, int)
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 860
- getSupportedClientServices()
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService 1024
- getSupportedPlugins()
  - of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1037
- getTag()
  - of org.dvb.si.Descriptor 575
- getTarget()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters 784
- getTextualServiceIdentifiers()
  - of org.dvb.si.TextualServiceIdentifierQuery 654
- getTextWrapping()
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 876
- getToState()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent 829
- getTotalVideoArea()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 695
- getTotalVideoAreaOnScreen()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 695
- getTransportStreamID()
  - of org.dvb.si.PMTElementaryStream 581
  - of org.dvb.si.PMTService 583
  - of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 608
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 621
  - of org.dvb.si.SIService 638
  - of org.dvb.si.SITransportStream 648
- getType()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 808
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 539
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 795
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 869
- getType() - of org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException 403
- getUndeclaredThrowable()
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException 984
- getUpdateTime()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 614

getURL()  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 720  
 getUrl()  
     of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent 1020  
 getURL(Locator)  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 762  
 getUserAgent()  
     of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1037  
 getUserEmailAddress()  
     of org.dvb.internet.EmailClientService 1014  
 getUserEvent()  
     of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 546  
 getUsername()  
     of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionParameters 784  
 getUTCTime()  
     of org.dvb.si.SITime 647  
 getVersionNumber(AppID)  
     of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStorage 993  
 getVersions(String)  
     of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 808  
 getVerticalAlign()  
     of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 876  
 getVerticalScalingFactors()  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 696  
 getVideoPosition()  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 699  
 getVideoSize()  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 696  
 getVideoTransformation()  
     of org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl 660  
 getVideoTransformation(int)  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 689  
 getWhen()  
     of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 539  
 getWidth()  
     of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 860  
 getWidth(ImageObserver)  
     of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 861  
 getXletContainer()  
     of org.dvb.application.plugins.XletContainer 986  
 goToURL(URL)  
     of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowser 1035  
 h  
     of org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy 980  
 hasFailed()  
     of org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeEvent 829  
 hashCode()  
     of org.dvb.application.AppID 812  
     of org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission 818  
 hasMultipleInstances()  
     of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1003  
     of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService 1024  
 hasReadApplicationAccessRight()  
     of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 551  
 hasReadOrganisationAccessRight()

- of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 551
- hasReadWorldAccessRight()
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 552
- hasValue()
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 562
- hasWriteApplicationAccessRight()
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 552
- hasWriteOrganisationAccessRight()
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 552
- hasWriteWorldAccessRight()
  - of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 552
- HExtendedLook - of org.havi.ui 447
- HomePagePermission
  - of org.dvb.internet 1017
- HomePagePermission(String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.HomePagePermission 1017
- HomePagePermission(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.internet.HomePagePermission 1017
- HORIZONTAL\_CENTER
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 872
- HORIZONTAL\_END\_ALIGN
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 872
- HORIZONTAL\_START\_ALIGN
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 872
- HTMLApplication
  - of org.dvb.dom.inner 953
- HTMLApplication(URL, String, String)
  - of org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLApplication 953
- HTMLApplication(URL, String, String, String[], String[])
  - of org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLApplication 953
- HTMLInnerApplicationContainer
  - of org.dvb.dom.inner 954
- HTMLInnerApplicationContainer(HTMLApplication)
  - of org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLInnerApplicationContainer 954
- HUMAN\_INTERVENTION
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 896
- IllegalObjectTypeException
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 731
- IllegalObjectTypeException()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.IllegalObjectTypeException 731
- IllegalObjectTypeException(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.IllegalObjectTypeException 731
- IllegalProfileParameterException
  - of org.dvb.application 836
- IllegalProfileParameterException()
  - of org.dvb.application.IllegalProfileParameterException 836
- IllegalProfileParameterException(String)
  - of org.dvb.application.IllegalProfileParameterException 836
- implies(Permission)
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsControlPermission 818
  - of org.dvb.media.DripFeedPermission 669
  - of org.dvb.net.ca.CAPermission 842
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission 801
  - of org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission 846
- IncompleteTargetException

- of org.dvb.net.rc 791
- IncompleteTargetException()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.IncompleteTargetException 791
- IncompleteTargetException(String)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.IncompleteTargetException 791
- init()
  - of org.dvb.application.DVBProxy 834
- initApplication(AppAttributes)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin 976
- initApplication(InnerApplication)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin 976
- initiateApplicationInstall(AppProxy, boolean, String[])
  - of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStorage 993
- initiateApplicationRemoval(AppID)
  - of org.dvb.application.storage.ApplicationStorage 994
- initPlugin()
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin 977
- InnerApplication
  - of org.dvb.application.inner 961
- InnerApplication()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplication 961
- InnerApplicationContainer
  - of org.dvb.application.inner 962
- InnerApplicationContainer(InnerApplication)
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 962
- InnerApplicationEvent
  - of org.dvb.application.inner 967
- InnerApplicationEvent(InnerApplicationContainer)
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationEvent 967
- InnerApplicationExited(InnerApplicationEvent)
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationListener 968
- InnerApplicationListener
  - of org.dvb.application.inner 968
- InsufficientResourcesEvent
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 732
- InsufficientResourcesEvent(DSMCCObject)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.InsufficientResourcesEvent 732
- InsufficientResourcesException
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 733
- InsufficientResourcesException()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.InsufficientResourcesException 733
- InsufficientResourcesException(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.InsufficientResourcesException 733
- INTERNET\_CLIENT
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceType 1028
- InternetClient
  - of org.dvb.internet 1018
- InternetClientEvent
  - of org.dvb.internet 1020
- InternetClientEvent(Object, URL)
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientEvent 1020
- InternetClientFailureEvent
  - of org.dvb.internet 1021
- InternetClientFailureEvent(Object, URL)
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientFailureEvent 1021

InternetClientListener  
of org.dvb.internet 1022

InternetClientService  
of org.dvb.internet 1023

InternetClientSuccessEvent  
of org.dvb.internet 1025

InternetClientSuccessEvent(Object, URL)  
of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientSuccessEvent 1025

InternetServiceFilter  
of org.dvb.internet 1026

InternetServiceFilter(int)  
of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter 1026

InternetServiceType  
of org.dvb.internet 1028

InternetServiceType(String)  
of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceType 1028

InvalidAddressException  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 734

InvalidAddressException()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidAddressException 734

InvalidAddressException(String)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidAddressException 734

InvalidApplicationException  
of org.dvb.application.plugins 974  
of org.dvb.application.storage 998

InvalidApplicationException()  
of org.dvb.application.plugins.InvalidApplicationException 974  
of org.dvb.application.storage.InvalidApplicationException 998

InvalidApplicationException(String)  
of org.dvb.application.plugins.InvalidApplicationException 974  
of org.dvb.application.storage.InvalidApplicationException 998

InvalidDescriptionFileException  
of org.dvb.application.storage 999

InvalidDescriptionFileException()  
of org.dvb.application.storage.InvalidDescriptionFileException 999

InvalidDescriptionFileException(String)  
of org.dvb.application.storage.InvalidDescriptionFileException 999

InvalidFormatEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 735

InvalidFormatEvent(DSMCCObject)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidFormatEvent 735

InvalidFormatException  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 736

InvalidFormatException()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidFormatException 736

InvalidFormatException(String)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidFormatException 736

InvalidLocatorException - of org.davic.net 409

InvalidLocatorException() - of org.davic.net.InvalidLocatorException 409

InvalidLocatorException(String) - of org.davic.net.InvalidLocatorException 409

InvalidPathnameEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 737

InvalidPathnameEvent(DSMCCObject)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidPathnameEvent 737

InvalidPathNameException



- of org.dvb.dsmcc 738
- InvalidPathNameException()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidPathNameException 738
- InvalidPathNameException(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.InvalidPathNameException 738
- InvocationHandler
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins 975
- invoke(Object, Method, Object[])
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.InvocationHandler 975
- isAltDown()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 539
- isAttached()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 763
- isAudio()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 726
- isAvailableInCache()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIRequest 630
- isConnected()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 788
- isControlDown()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 539
- isData()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 726
- isDoubleBuffered()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 959
- isEnabledShortcuts()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 959
- isLoaded()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 721
- isMetaDown()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 540
- isMPEGProgram()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 726
- isNetworkConnectionAvailable()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 763
- isObjectKindKnown()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 721
- isOpaque()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 959
  - of org.dvb.ui.TestOpacity 883
- isPanAndScan()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 699
- isPlatform()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 689
- isProxyClass(Class)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy 981
- isSelected()
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 964
- isShiftDown()
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 540
- isStartable()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 809
- isStream()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 721
- isStreamEvent()

- of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 721
- isSupported(AppAttributes)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin 977
- isVideo()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 727
- isVisible()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppAttributes 809
  - of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 959
- IxcRegistry
  - of org.dvb.io.ixc 904
- KILLED
  - of org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy 832
- LanguageNotAvailableException
  - of org.dvb.application 837
- LanguageNotAvailableException()
  - of org.dvb.application.LanguageNotAvailableException 837
- LanguageNotAvailableException(String)
  - of org.dvb.application.LanguageNotAvailableException 837
- LINE\_ORIENTATION\_HORIZONTAL
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 872
- LINE\_ORIENTATION\_VERTICAL
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873
- LINKAGE
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577
- list(XletContext)
  - of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 905
- load()
  - of org.dvb.application.DVBJProxy 835
- loadDirectoryEntry(AsynchronousLoadingEventListener)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 721
- LOADED
  - of org.dvb.application.DVBJProxy 834
- LOADING
  - of org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy 832
- LoadingAbortedEvent
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 739
- LoadingAbortedEvent(DSMCCObject)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.LoadingAbortedEvent 739
- LOCAL\_TIME\_OFFSET
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577
- log(String, int)
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 897
- log(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 897
- lookup(XletContext, String)
  - of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 905
- MHP\_APPLICATION
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 642
- MMIOject - of org.davic.net.ca 416
- MOSAIC
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643
- MPEG1\_AUDIO
  - of org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType 584
- MPEG1\_VIDEO

of org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType 584  
 MPEG2\_AUDIO  
 of org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType 584  
 MPEG2\_VIDEO  
 of org.dvb.si.PMTStreamType 584  
 MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent  
 of org.dvb.dsmcc 740  
 MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent(DSMCCObject)  
 of org.dvb.dsmcc.MPEGDeliveryErrorEvent 740  
 MPEGDeliveryException  
 of org.dvb.dsmcc 741  
 MPEGDeliveryException()  
 of org.dvb.dsmcc.MPEGDeliveryException 741  
 MPEGDeliveryException(String)  
 of org.dvb.dsmcc.MPEGDeliveryException 741  
 MULTILINGUAL\_BOUQUET\_NAME  
 of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577  
 MULTILINGUAL\_COMPONENT  
 of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577  
 MULTILINGUAL\_NETWORK\_NAME  
 of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577  
 MULTILINGUAL\_SERVICE\_NAME  
 of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 577  
 MultipleDocumentsAction  
 of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap 951  
 NETWORK  
 of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType 623  
 NETWORK\_NAME  
 of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
 NEW\_DATABASE  
 of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEvent 824  
 newDatabase(AppsDatabaseEvent)  
 of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabaseEventListener 826  
 newInstance(URL[])  
 of org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader 526  
 newInstance(URL[], ClassLoader)  
 of org.dvb.lang.DVBClassLoader 526  
 newInstance(ClassLoader, Class[], InvocationHandler)  
 of org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy 982  
 NEWS\_CLIENT  
 of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter 1026  
 NoComponentSelectedEvent  
 of org.dvb.media 671  
 NoComponentSelectedEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)  
 of org.dvb.media.NoComponentSelectedEvent 671  
 NoFreeCapacityException - of org.davic.net.ca 415  
 NoFreeCapacityException() - of org.davic.net.ca.NoFreeCapacityException 415  
 NoFreeCapacityException(String) - of org.davic.net.ca.NoFreeCapacityException 415  
 NOT\_LOADED  
 of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 813  
 NOT\_RUNNING  
 of org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus 635  
 NotAuthorizedException - of org.davic.mpeg 402  
 NotAuthorizedException() - of org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException 402  
 NotAuthorizedException(String) - of org.davic.mpeg.NotAuthorizedException 402

NotAuthorizedMediaException(ElementaryStream[], int[]) - of org.davic.media.NotAuthorizedMediaException 407

NotAuthorizedMediaException(Service, int) - of org.davic.media.NotAuthorizedMediaException 408

NotAuthorizedMediaException(Service, int, int)  
of org.davic.media.NotAuthorizedMediaException 408

NotEnoughResourcesException  
of org.dvb.application.storage 1000

NotEnoughResourcesException()  
of org.dvb.application.storage.NotEnoughResourcesException 1000

NotEnoughResourcesException(String)  
of org.dvb.application.storage.NotEnoughResourcesException 1000

NotEntitledEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 742

NotEntitledEvent(DSMCCObject)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NotEntitledEvent 742

NotEntitledException  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 743

NotEntitledException()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NotEntitledException 743

NotEntitledException(String)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NotEntitledException 743

NothingToAbortException  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 744

NothingToAbortException()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NothingToAbortException 744

NothingToAbortException(String)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NothingToAbortException 744

notifyTextOverflow(String, HVisible, boolean, boolean)  
of org.dvb.ui.TextOverflowListener 884

NotLoadedException  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 745

NotLoadedException()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NotLoadedException 745

NotLoadedException(String)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NotLoadedException 745

NPTDiscontinuityEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 746

NPTDiscontinuityEvent(DSMCCStream, long, long)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTDiscontinuityEvent 746

NPTListener  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 748

NPTPresentEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 749

NPTPresentEvent(DSMCCStream)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTPresentEvent 749

NPTRate  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 750

NPTRateChangeEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 751

NPTRateChangeEvent(DSMCCStream, NPTRate)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRateChangeEvent 751

NPTRemovedEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 752

NPTRemovedEvent(DSMCCStream)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTRemovedEvent 752

NPTStatusEvent  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc 753  
NPTStatusEvent(DSMCCStream)  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTStatusEvent 753  
NTSC  
  of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643  
numberOfRemainingObjects()  
  of org.dvb.si.SIIterator 617

## **Numer-**

NVOD\_REFERENCE  
  of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
  of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643  
NVOD\_TIME\_SHIFTED  
  of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643  
ObjectChangeEvent  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc 754  
ObjectChangeEvent(DSMCCObject, int)  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeEvent 754  
ObjectChangeListener  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc 756  
OPTION\_UNSUPPORTED  
  of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 896  
org.davic.net - package 409  
org.dvb.application  
  package 803  
org.dvb.application.inner  
  package 956  
org.dvb.application.plugins  
  package 970  
org.dvb.application.storage  
  package 990  
org.dvb.dom.bootstrap  
  package 947  
org.dvb.dom.inner  
  package 952  
org.dvb.dsmcc  
  package 711  
org.dvb.event  
  package 531  
org.dvb.internet  
  package 1008  
org.dvb.io.ixc  
  package 903  
org.dvb.io.persistent  
  package 550  
org.dvb.lang  
  package 524  
org.dvb.media  
  package 656  
org.dvb.net  
  package 776  
org.dvb.net.ca  
  package 840

- org.dvb.net.rc
  - package 779
- org.dvb.net.tuning
  - package 843
- org.dvb.si
  - package 571
- org.dvb.smartcard
  - package 1040
- org.dvb.test
  - package 894
- org.dvb.ui
  - package 848
- org.dvb.user
  - package 557
- OverallRepository
  - of org.dvb.event 535
- OverallRepository()
  - of org.dvb.event.OverallRepository 535
- OverallRepository(String)
  - of org.dvb.event.OverallRepository 535
- PAL
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643
- PARENTAL\_RATING
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578
- PARTIAL\_TRANSPORT\_STREAM
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578
- PASS
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 896
- pause()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 814
- PAUSED
  - of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 814
- PAUSING
  - of org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus 635
- performAction(DocumentAction)
  - of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentFactory 949
  - of org.dvb.dom.inner.HTMLInnerApplicationContainer 954
- performActionOnFrames(String[], MultipleDocumentsAction)
  - of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentFactory 949
- performActionReadOnly(DocumentAction)
  - of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentFactory 950
- PermissionDeniedEvent
  - of org.dvb.internet 1029
- PermissionDeniedEvent(Object, URL)
  - of org.dvb.internet.PermissionDeniedEvent 1029
- PermissionDeniedException
  - of org.dvb.net.rc 792
- PermissionDeniedException()
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.PermissionDeniedException 792
- PermissionDeniedException(String)
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.PermissionDeniedException 792
- Plugin
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins 976
- PMT\_SERVICE
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType 623

PMTElementaryStream  
     of org.dvb.si 580  
 PMTService  
     of org.dvb.si 582  
 PMTStreamType  
     of org.dvb.si 584  
 POS\_CAP\_FULL  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 693  
 POS\_CAP\_FULL\_EVEN\_LINES  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 693  
 POS\_CAP\_FULL\_EVEN\_LINES\_IF\_ENTIRE\_VIDEO\_ON\_SCREEN  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 693  
 POS\_CAP\_FULL\_IF\_ENTIRE\_VIDEO\_ON\_SCREEN  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 694  
 POS\_CAP\_OTHER  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 694  
 postMonitoringEvent(SIMonitoringEvent)  
     of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringListener 622  
 postRetrievalEvent(SIRetrievalEvent)  
     of org.dvb.si.SIRetrievalListener 634  
 Preference  
     of org.dvb.user 560  
 Preference()  
     of org.dvb.user.Preference 560  
 Preference(String, String)  
     of org.dvb.user.Preference 560  
 Preference(String, String[])  
     of org.dvb.user.Preference 560  
 prefetch()  
     of org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy 832  
 prefetch(DSMCCObject, String, byte)  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 722  
 prefetch(String, byte)  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 722  
 PRESENT\_FOLLOWING\_EVENT  
     of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType 623  
 PresentationChangedEvent  
     of org.dvb.media 673  
 PresentationChangedEvent(Controller, MediaLocator, int)  
     of org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent 674  
 printStackTrace()  
     of org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException 984  
 printStackTrace(PrintStream)  
     of org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException 984  
 printStackTrace(PrintWriter)  
     of org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException 984  
 PRIORITY\_HIGH  
     of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 553  
 PRIORITY\_LOW  
     of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 553  
 PRIORITY\_MEDIUM  
     of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 553  
 PRIVATE\_DATA\_SPECIFIER  
     of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
 processHFocusEvent(HFocusEvent)

of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 964  
 prompt(String, int, String)  
   of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 899  
 Proxy  
   of org.dvb.application.plugins 978  
 Proxy(InvocationHandler)  
   of org.dvb.application.plugins.Proxy 980  
 RCInterface  
   of org.dvb.net.rc 793  
 RCInterface()  
   of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 794  
 RCInterfaceManager  
   of org.dvb.net.rc 796  
 RCInterfaceReleasedEvent  
   of org.dvb.net.rc 798  
 RCInterfaceReleasedEvent(Object)  
   of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceReleasedEvent 798  
 RCInterfaceReservedEvent  
   of org.dvb.net.rc 799  
 RCInterfaceReservedEvent(Object)  
   of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceReservedEvent 799  
 RCPermission  
   of org.dvb.net.rc 800  
 RCPermission(String)  
   of org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission 800  
 RCPermission(String, String)  
   of org.dvb.net.rc.RCPermission 801  
 read(Preference)  
   of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager 567  
 read(Preference, Facility)  
   of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager 568  
 rebind(XletContext, String, Remote)  
   of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 906  
 rebind(XletContext, String, Remote, boolean)  
   of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 906  
 receiveEvent(AsynchronousLoadingEvent)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.AsynchronousLoadingEventListener 714  
 receiveInternetClientEvent(InternetClientEvent)  
   of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientListener 1022  
 receiveNPTStatusEvent(NPTStatusEvent)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTListener 748  
 receiveObjectChangeEvent(ObjectChangeEvent)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ObjectChangeListener 756  
 receiveRateChangedEvent(NPTRateChangeEvent)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.NPTListener 748  
 receiveStreamEvent(StreamEvent)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEventListener 772  
 receiveUserPreferenceChangeEvent(UserPreferenceChangeEvent)  
   of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeListener 566  
 receiveVideoFormatEvent(VideoFormatEvent)  
   of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatListener 692  
 register(Plugin, XletContext)  
   of org.dvb.application.plugins.XletSystemCall 987  
 release()  
   of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 788



remove(String)  
  of org.dvb.user.Preference 562

removeAll()  
  of org.dvb.user.Preference 562

removeAllArrowKeys()  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 546

removeAllColourKeys()  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 546

removeAllNumericKeys()  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 546

removeAppStateChangeListener(AppStateChangeListener)  
  of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 815

removeBouquetMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)  
  of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 593

removeConnectionListener(ConnectionListener)  
  of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 788

removeEventPresentFollowingMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)  
  of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 594

removeEventScheduleMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)  
  of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 594

removeExclusiveAccessToAWTEvent(ResourceClient)  
  of org.dvb.event.EventManager 534

removeHFocusListener(HFocusListener)  
  of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 964

removeInnerApplicationListener(InnerApplicationListener)  
  of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 965

removeInternetClientListener(InternetClientListener)  
  of org.dvb.internet.InternetClient 1019

removeKey(int)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 546

removeListener(AppsDatabaseEventListener)  
  of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 822

removeNetworkMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int)  
  of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 594

removeNPTListener(NPTListener)  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStream 727

removeObjectChangeListener(ObjectChangeListener)  
  of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 722

removePMTServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int, int)  
  of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 595

removeResourceStatusEventListener(ResourceStatusListener)  
  of org.dvb.event.EventManager 534  
  of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterfaceManager 797

removeService()  
  of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1004

removeServiceMonitoringListener(SIMonitoringListener, int, int)  
  of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 595

removeShortcut(int)  
  of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 959

removeSubtitleListener(SubtitleListener)  
  of org.dvb.media.SubtitlingEventControl 684

removeTextOverflowListener(TextOverflowListener)  
  of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 876

removeUserEvent(UserEvent)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 546

removeEventListener(UserEventListener)  
     of org.dvb.event.EventManager 534  
 removeUserPreferenceChangeListener(UserPreferenceChangeListener)  
     of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager 568  
 removeVideoFormatListener(VideoFormatListener)  
     of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatControl 690  
 removeWindowListener(WindowListener)  
     of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 960  
 render(String, Graphics, HVisible, Insets)  
     of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 876  
 renderBorders(Graphics, HVisible, int) - of org.havi.ui.HExtendedLook 448  
 renderVisible(Graphics, HVisible, int) - of org.havi.ui.HExtendedLook 448  
 RepositoryDescriptor  
     of org.dvb.event 536  
 reserve(ResourceClient, Object)  
     of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 789  
 resume()  
     of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 815  
 retrieveActualSINetwork(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 596  
 retrieveActualSIServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 596  
 retrieveActualSITransportStream(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 597  
 retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener)  
     of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 586  
     of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 614  
     of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 625  
 retrieveDescriptors(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 587  
     of org.dvb.si.SIInformation 614  
     of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 626  
 retrieveDetails(SIRequestor)  
     of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1004  
     of org.dvb.internet.InternetClientService 1024  
 retrieveFollowingSIEvent(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 639  
 retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, DvbLocator, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 598  
 retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, int, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 598  
 retrievePMTElementaryStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.PMTService 583  
 retrievePMTService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, DvbLocator, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 599  
 retrievePMTService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 639  
 retrievePMTServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 600  
 retrievePresentSIEvent(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 640  
 retrieveScheduledSIEvents(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[], Date, Date)  
     of org.dvb.si.SIService 641  
 retrieveSIBouquets(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 601

retrieveSIBouquetTransportStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIBouquet 588  
 retrieveSINetworks(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 601  
 retrieveSIService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, DvbLocator, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 602  
 retrieveSIService(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIEvent 609  
 retrieveSIServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, int, int, int, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 603  
 retrieveSIServices(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SITransportStream 649  
 retrieveSITimeFromTDT(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener)  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 604  
 retrieveSITimeFromTOT(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 604  
 retrieveSITransportStreamDescription(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 605  
 retrieveSITransportStreams(short, Object, SIRetrievalListener, short[])  
     of org.dvb.si.SINetwork 626  
 run(Document)  
     of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.DocumentAction 948  
 run(Document[])  
     of org.dvb.dom.bootstrap.MultipleDocumentsAction 951  
 RUNNING  
     of org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus 635  
 RunningApplicationsFilter  
     of org.dvb.application 838  
 RunningApplicationsFilter()  
     of org.dvb.application.RunningApplicationsFilter 838  
 SATELLITE\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM  
     of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
 SCHEDULED\_EVENT  
     of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType 623  
 SECAM  
     of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643  
 selectGroup(URL)  
     of org.dvb.internet.UsenetClient 1031  
 selectMessage(URL)  
     of org.dvb.internet.UsenetClient 1032  
 selectServiceMediaComponents(Locator)  
     of org.dvb.media.DVBMediaSelectControl 670  
 ServerDeliveryErrorEvent  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc 757  
 ServerDeliveryErrorEvent(DSMCCObject)  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServerDeliveryErrorEvent 757  
 ServerDeliveryException  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc 758  
 ServerDeliveryException()  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServerDeliveryException 758  
 ServerDeliveryException(String)  
     of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServerDeliveryException 758  
 SERVICE  
     of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
     of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringType 623

SERVICE\_LIST  
   of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
 SERVICE\_MOVE  
   of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578  
 ServiceAlreadyExistsException  
   of org.dvb.application.storage 1001  
 ServiceAlreadyExistsException()  
   of org.dvb.application.storage.ServiceAlreadyExistsException 1001  
 ServiceAlreadyExistsException(String)  
   of org.dvb.application.storage.ServiceAlreadyExistsException 1001  
 ServiceDomain  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc 759  
 ServiceDomain()  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceDomain 759  
 ServiceRemovedEvent  
   of org.dvb.media 675  
 ServiceRemovedEvent(Controller)  
   of org.dvb.media.ServiceRemovedEvent 675  
 ServiceRemovedEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)  
   of org.dvb.media.ServiceRemovedEvent 675  
 ServiceXFRErrorEvent  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc 764  
 ServiceXFRErrorEvent(DSMCCObject, ServiceXFRReference)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRErrorEvent 764  
 ServiceXFRException  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc 766  
 ServiceXFRException(byte[], String)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRException 766  
 ServiceXFRException(Locator, int, String)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRException 766  
 ServiceXFRReference  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc 768  
 ServiceXFRReference(byte[], String)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference 768  
 ServiceXFRReference(Locator, int, String)  
   of org.dvb.dsmcc.ServiceXFRReference 768  
 setBackgroundImage(Image)  
   of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 960  
 setBackgroundMode(int)  
   of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 960  
 setClipRegion(Rectangle)  
   of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 696  
   of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 699  
 setColor(Color)  
   of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 869  
 setDVBComposite(DVBAlphaComposite)  
   of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 870  
 setExpirationDate(Date)  
   of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 554  
 setFileAttributes(FileAttributes, File)  
   of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 554  
 setFocusTraversal(HNavigable, HNavigable, HNavigable, HNavigable)  
   of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 965  
 setGainFocusSound(HSound)  
   of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 965

setHomepage(URL)  
of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1037

setHorizontalAlign(int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 877

setHorizontalTabSpacing(int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 877

setInitialGroup(URL)  
of org.dvb.internet.UsenetClientService 1033

setInitialMessage(String, String, String)  
of org.dvb.internet.EmailClientService 1015

setInitialMessage(URL)  
of org.dvb.internet.UsenetClientService 1033

setInitialURL(URL)  
of org.dvb.internet.WWWBrowserService 1038

setInsets(Insets)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 877

setLetterSpace(int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 877

setLineOrientation(int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 877

setLineSpace(int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 877

setLoseFocusSound(HSound)  
of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 966

setMostFavourite(String)  
of org.dvb.user.Preference 562

setMove(int, HNavigable)  
of org.dvb.application.inner.InnerApplicationContainer 966

setPermissions(boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean, boolean)  
of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAccessPermissions 552

setPermissions(FileAccessPermissions)  
of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 555

setPriority(int)  
of org.dvb.io.persistent.FileAttributes 555

setReceiveBufferSize(DatagramSocket, int)  
of org.dvb.net.DatagramSocketBufferControl 777

setRenderMode(int)  
of org.dvb.application.inner.DVBScene 960

setRetrievalMode(int)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 722

setRGB(int, int, int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 861

setRGB(int, int, int, int, int[], int, int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 861

setScalingFactors(float, float)  
of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 700

setStartCorner(int)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 878

setTarget(ConnectionParameters)  
of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 789

setTargetToDefault()  
of org.dvb.net.rc.ConnectionRCInterface 789

setTextWrapping(boolean)  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 878

setVerticalAlign(int)

- of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 878
- setVideoPosition(HScreenPoint)
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 700
- setVideoTransformation(VideoTransformation)
  - of org.dvb.media.BackgroundVideoPresentationControl 660
- SHORT\_EVENT
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 578
- SHORT\_SMOOTHING\_BUFFER
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579
- showLook(Graphics, HVisible, int) - of org.havi.ui.HExtendedLook 448
- SIBouquet
  - of org.dvb.si 585
- SIDatabase
  - of org.dvb.si 589
- SIDatabase()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIDatabase 589
- SIEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 606
- SIException
  - of org.dvb.si 610
- SIException()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIException 610
- SIException(String)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIException 610
- SIIllegalArgumentException
  - of org.dvb.si 611
- SIIllegalArgumentException()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIIllegalArgumentException 611
- SIIllegalArgumentException(String)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIIllegalArgumentException 611
- SIInformation
  - of org.dvb.si 612
- SIInvalidPeriodException
  - of org.dvb.si 616
- SIInvalidPeriodException()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIInvalidPeriodException 616
- SIInvalidPeriodException(String)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIInvalidPeriodException 616
- SIIterator
  - of org.dvb.si 617
- SILackOfResourcesEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 618
- SILackOfResourcesEvent(Object, SIRequest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SILackOfResourcesEvent 618
- SIMonitoringEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 619
- SIMonitoringEvent(SIDatabase, byte, int, int, int, int, Date, Date)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIMonitoringEvent 619
- SIMonitoringListener
  - of org.dvb.si 622
- SIMonitoringType
  - of org.dvb.si 623
- SINetwork
  - of org.dvb.si 624
- SINotInCacheEvent

- of org.dvb.si 628
- SINotInCacheEvent(Object, SIREquest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SINotInCacheEvent 628
- SIOBJECTNotInTableEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 629
- SIOBJECTNotInTableEvent(Object, SIREquest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIOBJECTNotInTableEvent 629
- SIREquest
  - of org.dvb.si 630
- SIREquest()
  - of org.dvb.si.SIREquest 630
- SIREquestCancelledEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 631
- SIREquestCancelledEvent(Object, SIREquest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIREquestCancelledEvent 631
- SIREtrievalEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 632
- SIREtrievalEvent(Object, SIREquest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SIREtrievalEvent 632
- SIREtrievalListener
  - of org.dvb.si 634
- SIRunningStatus
  - of org.dvb.si 635
- SIService
  - of org.dvb.si 636
- SIServiceType
  - of org.dvb.si 642
- SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 644
- SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent(Object, SIREquest, SIIterator)
  - of org.dvb.si.SISuccessfulRetrieveEvent 644
- SITableNotFoundEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 645
- SITableNotFoundEvent(Object, SIREquest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SITableNotFoundEvent 645
- SITableUpdatedEvent
  - of org.dvb.si 646
- SITableUpdatedEvent(Object, SIREquest)
  - of org.dvb.si.SITableUpdatedEvent 646
- SITime
  - of org.dvb.si 647
- SITransportStream
  - of org.dvb.si 648
- SITransportStreamBAT
  - of org.dvb.si 650
- SITransportStreamDescription
  - of org.dvb.si 651
- SITransportStreamNIT
  - of org.dvb.si 652
- SIUtil
  - of org.dvb.si 653
- size()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppsDatabase 822
- SmartCardPermission
  - of org.dvb.smartcard 1041

SmartCardPermission(String)  
of org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission 1041

SmartCardPermission(String, String)  
of org.dvb.smartcard.SmartCardPermission 1041

SRC  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 851

Src  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 851

SRC\_IN  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 851

SRC\_OUT  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 852

SRC\_OVER  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 852

SrcIn  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 852

SrcOut  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 852

SrcOver  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBAlphaComposite 852

start()  
of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 815  
of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 667

start(String[])  
of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 816

START\_CORNER\_LOWER\_LEFT  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

START\_CORNER\_LOWER\_RIGHT  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_LEFT  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

START\_CORNER\_UPPER\_RIGHT  
of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

STARTED  
of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 814

STARTS\_IN\_A\_FEW\_SECONDS  
of org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus 635

startTrigger(Date)  
of org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy 833

stateChange(AppStateChangeEvent)  
of org.dvb.application.AppStateChangeListener 830

stop()  
of org.dvb.media.DripFeedDataSource 667

stop(boolean)  
of org.dvb.application.AppProxy 816

StopByResourceLossEvent  
of org.dvb.media 677

StopByResourceLossEvent(Controller, int, int, int, MediaLocator)  
of org.dvb.media.StopByResourceLossEvent 677

STORED  
of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1002

STORED\_APPLICATION\_SERVICE  
of org.dvb.application.storage.StoredApplicationService 1002

StoredApplicationService  
of org.dvb.application.storage 1002



StoredServiceCreator  
of org.dvb.application.storage 1005

STREAM\_IDENTIFIER  
of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579

STREAM\_UNAVAILABLE  
of org.dvb.media.PresentationChangedEvent 673

StreamEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 770

StreamEvent(DSMCCStreamEvent, long, String, int, byte[])  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.StreamEvent 770

StreamEventListener  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 772

STUFFING  
of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579

subscribe(String)  
of org.dvb.internet.UsenetClientService 1034

subscribe(String, StreamEventListener)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 729

SubtitleAvailableEvent  
of org.dvb.media 679

SubtitleAvailableEvent(Object)  
of org.dvb.media.SubtitleAvailableEvent 679

SubtitleListener  
of org.dvb.media 680

SubtitleNotAvailableEvent  
of org.dvb.media 681

SubtitleNotAvailableEvent(Object)  
of org.dvb.media.SubtitleNotAvailableEvent 681

SubtitleNotSelectedEvent  
of org.dvb.media 682

SubtitleNotSelectedEvent(Object)  
of org.dvb.media.SubtitleNotSelectedEvent 682

SubtitleSelectedEvent  
of org.dvb.media 683

SubtitleSelectedEvent(Object)  
of org.dvb.media.SubtitleSelectedEvent 683

subtitleStatusChanged(EventObject)  
of org.dvb.media.SubtitleListener 680

SUBTITLING  
of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579

SubtitlingEventControl  
of org.dvb.media 684

SuccessEvent  
of org.dvb.dsmcc 773

SuccessEvent(DSMCCObject)  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.SuccessEvent 773

supportsArbitraryHorizontalScaling()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 696

supportsArbitraryVerticalScaling()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 697

supportsClipping()  
of org.dvb.media.VideoPresentationControl 697

synchronousLoad()  
of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 723

TELEPHONE

- of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579
- TELETEXT
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643
- terminate(String, int)
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 900
- terminatePlugin()
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.Plugin 977
- TERRESTRIAL\_DELIVERY\_SYSTEM
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579
- TestOpacity
  - of org.dvb.ui 883
- TextOverflowListener
  - of org.dvb.ui 884
- TextualServiceIdentifierQuery
  - of org.dvb.si 654
- TIME\_SHIFTED\_EVENT
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579
- TIME\_SHIFTED\_SERVICE
  - of org.dvb.si.DescriptorTag 579
- TimeoutEvent
  - of org.davic.mpeg.sections 406
- TimeoutEvent(SectionFilter, Object)
  - of org.davic.mpeg.sections.TimeoutEvent 406
- toString()
  - of org.dvb.application.AppID 812
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 862
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBColor 866
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBGraphics 870
  - of org.dvb.user.Preference 563
- trigger(Date, Object)
  - of org.dvb.application.DVBHTMLProxy 833
- TunerPermission
  - of org.dvb.net.tuning 845
- TunerPermission(String)
  - of org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission 845
- TunerPermission(String, String)
  - of org.dvb.net.tuning.TunerPermission 845
- TYPE\_ADVANCED
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 855
- TYPE\_BASE
  - of org.dvb.ui.DVBBufferedImage 855
- TYPE\_CATV
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 793
- TYPE\_DECT
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 793
- TYPE\_ISDN
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 793
- TYPE\_LMDS
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 793
- TYPE\_MATV
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 793
- TYPE\_OTHER
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 794
- TYPE\_PSTN

- of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 794
- TYPE\_RCS
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 794
- TYPE\_UNKNOWN
  - of org.dvb.net.rc.RCInterface 794
- UEF\_KEY\_EVENT
  - of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 537
- unbind(XletContext, String)
  - of org.dvb.io.ixc.IxcRegistry 907
- UndeclaredThrowableException
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins 983
- UndeclaredThrowableException(Throwable)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException 983
- UndeclaredThrowableException(Throwable, String)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.UndeclaredThrowableException 983
- UNDEFINED
  - of org.dvb.si.SIRunningStatus 635
- UNKNOWN
  - of org.dvb.si.SIServiceType 643
- UnknownEventException
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc 774
- UnknownEventException()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.UnknownEventException 774
- UnknownEventException(String)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.UnknownEventException 774
- unload()
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCObject 723
- unregister(Plugin, XletContext)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.XletSystemCall 988
- UNRESOLVED
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 897
- unsubscribe(int, StreamEventListener)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 729
- unsubscribe(String, StreamEventListener)
  - of org.dvb.dsmcc.DSMCCStreamEvent 730
- UnsupportedDrawingOperationException
  - of org.dvb.ui 885
- UnsupportedDrawingOperationException(String)
  - of org.dvb.ui.UnsupportedDrawingOperationException 885
- UnsupportedPreferenceException
  - of org.dvb.user 564
- UnsupportedPreferenceException()
  - of org.dvb.user.UnsupportedPreferenceException 564
- UnsupportedPreferenceException(String)
  - of org.dvb.user.UnsupportedPreferenceException 564
- UNTESTED
  - of org.dvb.test.DVBTest 897
- URLUnavailableEvent
  - of org.dvb.internet 1030
- URLUnavailableEvent(Object, URL)
  - of org.dvb.internet.URLUnavailableEvent 1030
- UsenetClient
  - of org.dvb.internet 1031
- UsenetClientService
  - of org.dvb.internet 1033

UserEvent  
  of org.dvb.event 537

UserEvent(Object, int, char, long)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 537

UserEvent(Object, int, int, int, int, long)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEvent 538

UserEventAvailableEvent  
  of org.dvb.event 541

UserEventAvailableEvent(Object)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventAvailableEvent 541

UserEventListener  
  of org.dvb.event 543

userEventReceived(UserEvent)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventListener 543

UserEventRepository  
  of org.dvb.event 544

UserEventRepository(String)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventRepository 544

UserEventUnavailableEvent  
  of org.dvb.event 547

UserEventUnavailableEvent(Object)  
  of org.dvb.event.UserEventUnavailableEvent 547

UserPreferenceChangeEvent  
  of org.dvb.user 565

UserPreferenceChangeEvent(String)  
  of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceChangeEvent 565

UserPreferenceChangeListener  
  of org.dvb.user 566

UserPreferenceManager  
  of org.dvb.user 567

UserPreferencePermission  
  of org.dvb.user 569

UserPreferencePermission(String)  
  of org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission 569

UserPreferencePermission(String, String)  
  of org.dvb.user.UserPreferencePermission 569

UserRejectedInstallException  
  of org.dvb.application.storage 1006

UserRejectedInstallException()  
  of org.dvb.application.storage.UserRejectedInstallException 1006

UserRejectedInstallException(String)  
  of org.dvb.application.storage.UserRejectedInstallException 1006

VERTICAL\_CENTER  
  of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

VERTICAL\_END\_ALIGN  
  of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

VERTICAL\_START\_ALIGN  
  of org.dvb.ui.DVBTextLayoutManager 873

VideoFormatControl  
  of org.dvb.media 685

VideoFormatEvent  
  of org.dvb.media 691

VideoFormatEvent(Object)  
  of org.dvb.media.VideoFormatEvent 691

VideoFormatListener

- of org.dvb.media 692
- VideoPresentationControl
  - of org.dvb.media 693
- VideoTransformation
  - of org.dvb.media 698
- VideoTransformation()
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 698
- VideoTransformation(Rectangle, float, float, HScreenPoint)
  - of org.dvb.media.VideoTransformation 698
- write(Preference)
  - of org.dvb.user.UserPreferenceManager 568
- WWW\_CLIENT
  - of org.dvb.internet.InternetServiceFilter 1026
- WWWBrowser
  - of org.dvb.internet 1035
- WWWBrowserService
  - of org.dvb.internet 1036
- XletContainer
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins 985
- XletContainer(Container)
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.XletContainer 985
- XletSystemCall
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins 987
- XletSystemCall()
  - of org.dvb.application.plugins.XletSystemCall 987

# History

| Document history |               |                         |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| V1.1.1           | November 2001 | Publication (withdrawn) |
| V1.2.1           | June 2003     | Publication             |
|                  |               |                         |
|                  |               |                         |
|                  |               |                         |
|                  |               |                         |